



Library of The Theological Seminary

PRINCETON · NEW JERSEY



From the library of  
Prof. Benjamin Breckinridge Warfield

~~BT 75 .U873~~  
Usher, James, 1581-1656.  
A body of divinity

~~BT 75 .U873~~

5CC  
#1,638











Paul J. Warfield  
Lexington Ky. 18<sup>th</sup> 8.













JACOBUS USSERIUS, ARCHIEPISCOPUS ARMACHIANUS,  
TOTIUS HIBERNIÆ PRIMAS.

William Patten His Book July 15-1778

A BODY of  
**DIVINITY:**  
 OR, THE <sup>1821 1300 0.6. 1878 -</sup>  
**Sum and Substance**  
 OF <sup>Rev. Beeching's</sup>  
**Christian Religion.** <sup>London 1836.</sup>

Catechistically propounded and explained, by way  
 of *Question and Answer*. Methodically and  
 familiarly handled, for the Use of Families.

To which are adjoined a Tract, Intitu'd,

**I M M A N U E L:**  
 OR,

**The Mystery of the Incarnation of the *Son of God*.**

By the most Reverend

**JAMES USHER,** late Arch-Bishop of *Armagh*.

To which are added,

**The LIFE of the Author, containing many remark-  
 able Passages: His Model of Church Government, and Advices to  
 Young Ministers. With an Alphabetical Table. And likewise the Prin-  
 ciples of Christian Religion in short, for the use of Younger People.**

The Eighth Edition, carefully corrected from very many Errors in former Editions.

London: Printed by R. J. for Jonathan Robinson, A. and J. Churchill,  
 J. Taylor, and J. Wyatt. 1702.

# DIVINE

OF THE

SCRIPTURES

AND

THE

OF THE

OF THE

OF THE

OF THE

OF THE

OF THE

OF THE

OF THE

OF THE

---

T O T H E

# Christian Reader.

**C**hristian Reader, I do here present and commend unto thee a Book of great worth and singular use, which was written and finished about 60 years since: The Author whereof is well known to be so universally eminent in all Learning, and of that deep Knowledge and Judgment in Sacred Divinity, that he transcendeth all Elogies and Praises which I can give him. I commend it unto thee (Christian Reader) under a twofold Notion. The first respecteth the Subject Matter of this whole Work, which is of greatest Excellency; as being *The Sum and Substance of Christian Religion*; upon which, as a most sure Foundation, we build our Faith, ground ail our Hopes, from which we reap and retain all our Joy and Comfort in the Assurance of our Salvation. Which as at all times it is most profitable to be read, studied, and known, so now (if ever) most necessary in these our Days, wherein Men never more neglected these Fundamental Principles, as being but common and ordinary Truths, and spend their whole Time, Study, and Discourse about Discipline, Ceremonies, and Circumstantial Points; and herein a'fo not contenting themselves with those common Rules, and that clear Light which shineth in the Word; they are only led by their own Phantasies, daily creating unto themselves diversities of new Opinions; and so falling into Heats, they break the Bond of Love, and fall off from the Communion of Saints, as though it were no Article of their Creed; and being in love with their own new Tenets, as being the conception and birth of their own Brains, they contend for them more than for any Fundamental Truths; and not only so, but also hate, malign, and most bitterly and uncharitably censure all those that differ from them in their Opinions, though never so conscientious and religious, as tho' they professed not the same Faith; yea, served not the same God, nor believed in the same Christ, but remain still Aliens from the Common-wealth of *Israel*, and in comparison of themselves no better than Papists, or at the best but carnal Gospellers. The second Notion under which I commend it, respecteth the Work it self, or the manner of the Author's handling it, which is done so soundly and solidly, so judiciously and exactly, so methodically and orderly, and with that familiar plainness, perspicuity and clearness,

B that

---

*To the Christian Reader.*

---

that it giveth place to no other in this kind, either Ancient or Modern, either in our own, or any other Language which ever yet came to my view ; in which regard I may say of it, as it is said of the Vertuous Woman ; *Many have done excellently, but this our Author exceedeth them all.* I will add no more in the deserved Praises of this Work, but leave it (Christian Reader) to thy self to peruse and judge of it ; commending thee to the Word of God's Grace, and the good guidance of his Holy Spirit, who is able to build thee up in a fruitful Knowledge, to lead thee into all Truth, to direct and support thee in the Ways of Godliness, and to give thee an everlasting Inheritance amongst the Blessed.

*Thine in the Lord Jesus Christ,*

John Downname.

---

The

The *Epistle to the Reader*, concerning the *Book* it self,  
and this new *Edition* of it.

R E A D E R,

I Shall venture to say some few things deservedly to the credit of this *Book*. It's of the most useful nature in the *World*, being a *Collection* of those *Principles* that are necessary to *Salvation*, delivered with so much happy plainness, that every one acquainted with the *Bible* may understand them; and yet so much *Judgment* and *Scholasticallness*, that *Men of Reading and Learning* may enlarge and adorn their *Knowledge* by the serious humble perusal of them. *Truths* here are as little above the *Vulgar*, as below the *Learned*, and in neither case to be contemned by any means: They are here also competently proved to those that doubt or want confirming, and illustrated to them that as yet do not sufficiently understand their meaning. And that which is one of the choice *Excellencies* of this *Volume* is, That *Notional Truths* are seldom left to swim and float in the *Brain*, but are usually brought close to the *Conscience* and *Affections*, and as usually applied to *Life and Practice*. I know no *Writings* (meerly humane) that are perfect; no doubt there are several that get nearer to perfection than this doth; though do not mistake, I know a vast number of *Books* of the very same nature with this in several *Languages*, that are very much short of it, and very few, if any, in our own, of this *Magnitude and Design*, that deserves to take place of it. How low soever this *Piece* may be valued by some, yet I have *Four things* to say of it that will satisfy sober *Minds*, and much advance it in their esteem.

First, That the *Method*, and most of the *Materials*, are the incomparable *Bishop Usher's*, (a *Man* whose younger days wonderfully out-did the most grave, experienced and thoughtful *Age* of the greatest number of *Men* that ever lived in the *Christian World*); this I speak upon the satisfying evidence of eye-witnesses.

Secondly, That the Most Reverend *Author*, in his elder *Days*, blessed *God* for its publication, (though at first it started into the *World* without his consent) because he perceived it had done much good; which those have affirmed to hear him say, which had no fondness for the *Book*.

Thirdly, That all along the exercise of his *Ministry* in his *Native Country* in all his *Catechetical Lectures*, he imitated the method and way in which this was drawn up; and that not only to ordinary *Persons*, but his *Order* throughout his *Diocess* to the *Ministers*, was to go through the *Body of Divinity*, which he had drawn up accordingly into *Fifty Heads*, the nature of which you may see introductory to this *Book*.

Fourthly, That it's sufficiently commended by some worthy *Men*, as by

## The Epistle to the Reader, &c.

Mr. John Downname, who helpt to midwife it into the World; as you see under his own Hand in the foregoing Epistle; and Ludovicus Crocius, in his *Instructio, de Ratione Studii Theologici*, cap. 7. having said that the Author was, Dominus plurimum colendus; he begs importunately that some English Man would translate it into Latin, *Desideramus & sollicitè expectamus plenum Systema Theologiæ Practicæ, &c. calling it Insignem Thesaurum.*

As to this Edition I might say many things, but shall comprize all in a few words, viz. That it has been compar'd with the best of those that went before it, and hath some thousands of Typographical Errors corrected, with a Supplement of some few choice and necessary things left out in very many of the later Editions, as truly Orthodox and Necessary as any of the rest; with a very great care to examine all the places of Scripture quoted there, and to render them pertinent to those things they are designed, either to prove or illustrate, which were so abundantly defective, as to put the Doer to very much pains and care to bring them to some exactness. Here you have also the Addition of the Great Bishop Usher's Life, performed with more than ordinary Elaborateness. And in the last place, you have a pure Alphabetical Index, a thing much desired, and here carefully drawn up, by which you may with much ease find out any of those important Matters that are therein contained.

What remains, but, 1. That Ministers imitate this meritorious Example; not only in Catechising of those that are young, in the Afternoon on Lord's Days before the publick Service of God, but also that they, by this Pattern of the Sum and Substance of Religion, spend half an hour more in the brief, plain, and pithy opening of the Principles of Religion; and that at first giving but the Sum of each chief Head, so as to go through the whole number with greater brevity; and afterward to enlarge upon every Head, first three or four Heads at a time, and in the close but one?

2. That Masters of Families should follow the Example of the holy and truly imitable Author, viz. Instruct their private Families out of it twice a Week; and also take an account, at the beginning of the next Reading, of those that were present, what they remember and observe? The faithful reverent practice of which, by the blessing of God, would produce noble Fruits of Righteousness and Peace; and make Families not only great blessings to themselves, but also to the Church of God, and State in which they dwell. The performance of which things, is the hearty wish and prayer of him who performed all that's new in this Edition: And remains a ready

Friend to any Design for the right Advancement  
of Learning and Religion,

J. D A N.  
THE



T H E

L I F E

O F

Dr. James Usher,

Arch-Bishop of *Armagh*.

C O N T A I N I N G

*Some remarkable Passages never before published.*

**T**HE written *Lives* of Men are very often flattering things, and are drawn (much like their Pictures) to the best advantage; their Learned Friends rather saying in many things what they should have been, than really what they were: but the Subject on which I am to write, because of its universal Accomplishments and Perfections, prevents my being guilty of the like *enormity*.

That we may miss nothing of things that are precious (for the smallest filings of *Gold* are charily to be preserv'd) I shall endeavour to gather up all the scattered hints and intimations of the excellencies of this *great Man*, dispersed up and down great variety of worthy and credited *Authors*, and put them into a regular and useful Scheme.

We are to consider him in his *Relations*, and in himself.

First, *In his Relations*; for these give no small advantage to a Man's being observ'd in the World, and that even among the wisest Men; *The Stream deserves to be respected for the Fountain's sake*. Great Example and Education are of vast importance towards the greatning of Posterity, inviting the attendance and helps of *Divine Providence*, and awakening *natural Conscience* and Ingenuity to attempt things that may

*excel*

excell. His Relations are very well worth observance, if we consider them either on the Father or Mother's side ; and that either separate or conjoined.

First, Separate, and that,

I. On the *Father's* side, where we have,

1. The *Father* himself, Mr. *Arnold Usher*, a Man of Parts and Endowment, raised above the ordinary Rank of Men ; brought up in the Study of the Law, and so employ'd, being one of the Clerks of the *Chancery*.

2. His Uncle, *Henry Usher*, trained up at *Cambridge* ; the owner of much Learning, and full as much Wisdom : Acknowledged, by being pitcht upon (by the Church and Council of *Ireland*) as a Person once and again fit to come over into *England* to Petition Queen *Elizabeth* ; in both which Affairs he obtained the Smiles of that wife and mighty Queen : The first, to preserve the *Cathedral* in *Dublin*, being begged and designed for a private and worldly Use. The second, to Found an University there. The Worth of this Man raised him to the highest Dignity in that Church.

II. For his Relations on his Mother's side ; not to mention her in this place, but in the close of what I have to say.

1. His Grandfather was *James Staniburst*, a Man so highly valued by the Parliament of *Ireland*, as to be chosen three times *Speaker* of the House of Commons. So highly valued by the City of *Dublin*, as to be chosen her *Recorder* ; by the State, as to be chosen one of the *Masters of the Chancery* : A Man of great Employment, Wisdom, and Integrity. 'Twas He that made the first motion for the Founding an University in *Dublin* ; the Uncle by the Father's side that obtained the leave of doing it of Queen *Elizabeth* ; and this Nephew and Grandson that was the first Student there.

2. His Uncle, *Richard Staniburst*, bred up in the University of *Oxford* ; of great renown in *France* and other Nations, much applauded for his learned Books upon divers Subjects : He adorned *Initial Philosophy*, by his Writings upon *Porphyry*, and that at Eighteen Years of Age : Enriched *History* by his Tract *De rebus Hybernicis* ; and advanced *Poetry* by his English Translation of *Virgil* into Heroick Verse. He was one of the most Eminent Scholars and Philosophers of his time ; between whom and his great Nephew passed many Letters filled with the most Sorts of Learning.

Thus much for his Relations on Father and Mother's side considered separately.

Secondly, We'll consider both sides as conjoined, and that in his Brother *Ambrose Usher*, one who did much in a little time, came and looked into the World, and give it a longing taste of Wonders, and so withdrew

drew again. He was Excellent in the more remote and abstruse Languages of the World: He hath left behind him, under his own Hand, an Elaborate Translation of the Old Testament out of *Hebrew* into *English*, from the beginning to the Book of *Job*, which might have been finished, had not the appearance of the New Testament in King *James* his time withdrawn his Hand.

Thus much for his *Relations*, whom you see to be worthy and very much crediting. Only there remains two *Aunts* of his not to be passed over in silence, both of them Born Blind, but of most Seeing Intellectuals; well acquainted with Letters, in a way extraordinary to our manner of knowing them. These were them who first entered him into the Gates of Learning, teaching him to read his own Native Tongue. They were *Persons* of such incomparable readines in the Divine Oracles, that they were either of them able of a sudden to have repeated any part of the Bible.

Thus you have seen what sort of Men and Women this great Man descended from, and that such as are to be valued above those that are (*Magni nominis Umbra*) heaped up with splendid worldly Titles, but want their Virtues and Accomplishments.

———*Nobilitas sola est atque unica Virtus.*

Secondly, *We are to consider him in Himself*: Which will not prove to his diminution, when laid in the Ballance with what is said; for he really added more greatness to his Family than he drew from thence. I know that *Greatness*, as to Parts and Moral Worth, are things not Hereditary :

———*Ole quid ad te ?  
Nam genus & Proavis & qua non fecimus ipsi,  
Vix ea Nosira voco.*———

As I have sometimes seen a brave Spring changed into a dirty Stream, by passing through rotten, black, and defiling Ground: So on the contrary, a mean and ordinary one bettered by passing over refining things, in its further distance from the Fountain Head.

In Himself, we'll consider,

*First*, His Birth.

*Secondly*, His Education.

*Thirdly*, His Setting up in the World for himself.

*Fourthly*, His Advancements.

*Fifthly*, Several Matters relating to his Learning and Religion.

*Sixthly*,

*Sixthly*, Some extraordinary Providences that befel him, or referred to him.

*Lastly*, His Death.

*First*, His Birth: Where we are to consider the *Time* and *Place*.

I. The *Time*. He was Born *January* 4. 1580. A very happy *New-Years Gift*; not only to that his Native Soil, but also to all the Protestant Churches, yea, the whole Learned World, both in that Age, and all those that may follow it. About this time was Founded the Beautiful Colledge (or University of *Dublin*) as it were, purposed by the Divine Will and Foresight, to be ready for his Training up, and Exercise in Arts. About this time also appeared in the World some of the most learned Men that have lived in it, as designed for his Correspondence.

II. The *Place* was *Dublin* in *Ireland*; Seven Cities contested about the Birth of *Homer*; but our Man was not so obscure in his Original as to have any contest with this City for the glory of his appearance in the World. The Scholars in *Ireland*, in the younger Days of Christianity, were so notable in the Holy Life, from the Doctrine and Example of one *great leading Man*, that in a little time it began to be called *Sanctorum Patria*; but much more might it have been called so from what our Bishop *Usher* began and practised there. *Bertius* in his Geographical Tables says of *Dublin* and the *University* there, *Quam, quum ista scriberemus, ornabat Jacobus Ufferius Theologus eruditione & pietate & scriptis imprimis clarus, ei Patria Dublinum.*

*Secondly*, His Education: Man without this would only be what some have ignorantly said of the Bear's Whelp, *an unshapen Lump: Emollit mores, nec sinit esse feros*; as soon may Fields or Gardens produce the most pleasing Grain, Seeds, or Plants, without Culture and Dressing, as Youth without Education be creditable and advantageous to Church or State: But our *hopeful Youth*, of whom we treat, was not left to his own Conduct to scramble for Attainments, but had them instill'd into him by such as were dexterous at the Work; *Providence* in this predicted and conspired his future Greatness.

I. His beginning-steps towards Learning, were guided by his two incomparable *Aunts* forementioned; who at the same time taught him to know his Alphabet, and the use thereof in the advancing Letters into Words, and also to spell and read the Mind of God in his own Conscience and the Sacred Writings of the Bible.

II. At Eight Years old he was sent to the *Grammar School*; where he had two excellent Masters, Sir *James Fullerton*, afterward Leger Ambassador in *France*, and closed up his time in a great Office at Court; and Sir *James Hamilton*, who in following time was advanced to the Dignity of a Viscount; who continued disguised under that Employment

ment for some time ; both of them very Learned Men, of which that Time and Place was very defective : This no doubt was the doing of God, and so interpreted and admired by himself, even to the close of his Life. During the time of his abode at School, which was five years, he was thoroughly instructed in *Grammar*, *Rhetorick*, and *Poetry* : wherein he so much excell'd, and was so much delighted, that he found it difficult to address himself to other Studies ; which is the usual method of those that attain to greatness in Arts, they give their minds so much unto them.

III. At the Age of thirteen he was admitted into the *Colledge of Dublin* : being the first Scholar that was entered there, and that upon design to convey a glory to the place, from his pregnancy, forwardness and blooming hopes of future greatness. And here again Sir *James Hamilton* became his *Tutor*, being newly chosen Fellow there ; who often would admire the acuteness and proficiency of his *Pupil*, averring that in a short time he equalliz'd his Instructors : here he first began to study the *Greek* and *Hebrew* Tongues, in both which he afterwards excell'd ; and in a little time made himself *Master* of all the most necessary *Arts*, most of which he modelled into a Method of his own, and put *Musick* also into Art and Method. Once a week his Tutor hallowed and adorned these by a *Latin Divinity Lecture*, dictated with so much deliberation, that he always put it into writing from his Mouth, as he did his other Lectures, which proved much to the gain of Knowledge and Godliness. He took all his degrees with wonderful applause ; and even in his *Minority* did some publick *Academick Exercises* at the ordinary Acts, and in some extraordinary cases before *Grandees*, with high Approbation and admirable Praise. And even then he was an incomparable *Chronologer*, and a most strenuous *Disputant*, as you may see afterwards.

*Thirdly*, His setting up in the World for himself, when left to his own conduct ; an hour but too much and too frequently unhappy to many great Wits : but here he continues his Excellencies and Industry ; nay, more than so, constantly grows in them, which shews that foregoing Actings were animated more from himself, than those that instructed him. He being stepp'd beyond the guidance of *Tutors*, and his *Fathers* Head laid in the Grave, doubles his diligence for Learning, and especially the more *Divine* Part of it ; yea, he gives up the Revenue of a very fair Estate in Land (being attended with some Incumbrances) to his Brothers and Sisters, that he might have no *Worldly Concerns* to retard his eager pursuits after *Learning* and *Sacred Knowledge*.

*Fourthly*, His *Advancements* : These were entered upon, not by Bribes nor Interest of Friends, but from his own real Merit and Worth. These were of two sorts : in the *University*, and the *Church*.

I. *In the University.* The

1. *Was to be Catechist to the Colledge :* Then he was Master of Arts, though but about twenty years of Age. That he might add lustre to this Advancement by the business of it, he with great diligence went through a great part of the Body of Divinity in the Chappel, by way of Common Place. The

2. *Was to be Professor of Divinity* in the University. He entered upon this about the twenty seventh year of his Age, having newly commenced *Bachelior of Divinity*. In this place he read twice every week at the beginning, and afterwards once a week throughout the whole year without any intermission, going through a great part of *Bellarmino's Controversies*. About thirteen or fourteen years he continued a great Ornament to this place, and in it wrote Three Volumes of the *Lectures* he delivered there; the printing of which would be no small honour to that *University*. The

3. *Was to be Provost of the Colledge of Dublin,* unto which he was elected by all the *Fellows* with the greatest unanimity that could be, though then but thirty years of Age: but he was so abundantly in love with his *Studies*, that unless the Worldly Encumbrances of this place could have been laid aside, the good *annual allowance* of it could not invite him to accept, but with great modesty and thankfulness he refused their endearing Kindness, and his own Honour and Enrichment.

I only mention these *Advancements* in the *University*, because they were not devolved upon him by Course, or Custom, or necessary Order, but from a free Election, only invited by his great Fitness and Excellencies.

II. *In the Church :* Having preached some time in the nature of a *Probationer*, with the great applause even of the wiser sort, he received *Ordination*, and that before his one and twentieth year; because the most grave and learned Men took away all his Scruples about his being so young, telling him, *The Lord had need of him*, and as *Nullum tempus occurrit Regi*, so neither *Deo*: and so, like *Samuel*, he must continue this *Ministration to the Lord in his Youth*. He was put into the Ministry by the hands of his Uncle *Henry Usher*, Arch-Bishop of *Armagh*, with the assistance of other Ministers, *Anno Dom. 1601*. His *Advancements* in the Church, were

1. *The Chancellorship of St. Patrick's, Dublin;* conferr'd upon him by Arch-Bishop *Loftus* (a very wise Man) a little before his death, unto which he took no other *Benefice*. In which place our great *Antiquary* Mr. *Cambden* found him when he was writing his *Brittannia*, *An. Dom. 1607*. and in his *Observations* upon *Dublin*, saith of him, *Most of these things things I acknowledge my self to owe to the diligence and Labour*

labour of James Usher, Chancellor of the Church of St. Patrick's, *Qui annos variâ Doctrinâ & judicio longè superet.* In this place he was highly industrious, and did not take the *Pap* without requiring the Church by his *Pains*.

2. *The Bishoprick of Meath in Ireland.* This King James gave him, notwithstanding some great Men did all they could to hinder it, reproaching him to the King, in order to the accomplishing their Designs; but the King was so taken with the glory of this Action, that he would often boast, *He was a Bishop of his own making*: At his Consecration in *Drogheda* there was given him an *Anagram* of his Name, as he was then to write himself, which he made good to his dying day, *viz.* James Meath, *I am the same.* In this *Diocess* he preached constantly, not only in the Church, but in the *Sessions House*, because the Papists would not attend his Ministry, unless he would exercise it in the latter place: Here he used to visit them in private Families, and by most weighty humble Discourses prevailed with several to close in with their own Happiness, in embracing the *Reformed Church*.

3. *The Primacy of Ireland.* This was 1624, making up exactly the number of one hundred Arch-Bishops of that See, from the first, supposed to be *Patricius*; of whom we read much, and much to his credit, in divers Ancient *Writers*. Being thus promoted to the highest *Dignity* his *Profession* was capable of in his Native Country, he was so far from being elated or puffed up with such an high Advancement, so far from ceasing to preach the Gospel, that he became so exceeding lowly, as to put Pride out of countenance wherefoever he met with it; and so laborious in the Ministry, as to over-toyl himself, even to the wasting of his Spirits, (by constant *Lord's-day* and *Week-day* Labours) till a *Quartain Ague* seized upon him, and afflicted him for three quarters of a year together. The *grandeur* of this place rather invited him to most lowly converse with the meanest of the Ministry under his Government, than to any the least appearance of domineering over them; though they might be such Men as others in his Office would rather have bestowed frowns than smiles upon: but he was satisfied these Men were of honest *Intentions* and *Lives*, and so he carried to them as *Brethren*, a name he loved to call the *lowest* by.

Thus for his *Advancements*, (not to mention his being one of the King's *Privy Council*) you see they were numerous and great; the disposal of these lay always at the Will of others, and no doubt but some Men of great Friends, Ambition, and Interest, would have carried them; but that his extraordinary Worth and Accomplishments struck Reverence and Admiration into all that knew him, and pleaded and prevailed for him, where his own Endeavours made not the least

motion nor attempt. Thus the *Hand of Almighty Goodness*, in order to the encouragement of Industry and Vertue, guides the favours of great Men to Meritorious Objects.

*Fifthly, Several Matters referring to his Learning and Religion.* These were such, when we consider their *Circumstances*, as did very much gratify him, especially in the computation of all those that prize Divine and Humane Knowledge, with the wise improvement of them into Use and Life. Of which our Dr. Walton in his Preface to the *Biblia Polyglotta*, saith, *Primus ille Reverendissimus Hiberniæ Jacobus Usserius, Archiepiscopus Armachanus & maxacensis, Vir Doctrina multifaria, pietate, modestia, omnibusque virtutibus conspicuus, &c.* And Gerardus Vossius (*de vit. Serm. & de scient. Mathem.*) frequently admires him as a Man that had arrived at a transcending pitch in Learning and Religion, and stiles him, *Undicunque Doctissimus*; and concludes, *De viro hoc rerum Divinarum humanarumque peritissimo nil possum dicere tam sublime quin ejus id virtus superet.*

I. *Several Matters referring to his Learning*; as, *His early Address: His swift motion in arriving at Scholastical Attainments, and his large Progress.*

1. *His early Address*: He began his *Learning* very near as soon as the use of his *Tongue*; for by that time he was ten years old, he not only performed all his *Grammar-School Exercises* with great freedom and exactness, but he also read many other Books, and Writings not then printed; and some of them not only learned in the *Language*, but in the *Matter* also; and this he did without prompting. At twelve years old he began to express his hunger and thirst after *Chronology* and *Antiquity*, for reading of *Sleidan's Four Monarchies*, and other Authors on the like Subject, he drew up an exact *Series of Times* when each *eminent Person* lived: and by that time he was fifteen, he was grown so perfect in this kind of noble and difficult Learning, that in *Latin* he drew up an exact *Chronology* of the *Bible*, and that in the more abstruse part of it, from the beginning to the *Book of Kings*; not much differing from that of his *Annals*, excepting some *Observations*, and the *Synchronisms* of *Heaven Story*. By that time he had arrived at his sixteenth year, or something sooner, he had read some of the most Elaborate *Writings* of the greatest *Champions* among the *Romanists*, without being at all caught by their cunning *Artifices*; wisely suspending his consent to their seeming-plausible *Arguments* and *Importunities*, till he had time to compare what they said with the *Writings* of the *Ancients*, (concluding, that *Verum quodcunque primum, adulterum quodcunque posterius*) which he presently fell upon: for I find that about his seventeenth year he had read several Books of the



the *Fathers*, and most *Authors* writing of the *Body of Divinity*, not only *Positive* but *Polemical*; and had so critically acquainted himself with the state of each *Controversie* between us and the *Papists*, that he was able to dispute triumphantly with any of their most learned *Priests*: as hear what a *Jesuit*, a great *Disputant* of theirs, says, *There came once to me a Youth of about eighteen years of Age, one of a too-soon ripe Wit, scarce (as you would think) gone through his course of Philosophy, or got out of his Childhood, yet [Disputandi avidus de abstrusissimis rebus Theologicis, &c.] very importunate to dispute upon the most hidden and dark Points in Divinity. Vid. Prefat. ad Britanno-Machianum Ministrorum, &c. per Hen. Fitz Symonds.* But although the *Jesuit* at first despised his *Youth*, yet afterward he admired it; and no doubt would have told the *World* more, but that he could not do it without a great degradation both to Himself and his Cause. Now all these things were done and obtained by himself a considerable time before he was twenty years of Age, performing all his Exercises in the *College* as his fellow *Pupils* did, if not much above them.

2. *His swift motion in arriving at Scholastical Attainments.* He ran apace, and yet did not over-run himself; through the Grace of God he was not one that was *soon ripe, soon rotten*. His swift motion appears in what I have just said upon the last Head; to which I add, That in five years time he ascended to very great excellency in *Grammar, Rhetorick, and Poetry*: after this, in three or four years, he obtained an equal excellency in *Greek and Hebrew*, (not to mention that more than common skill he had in several other *Oriental and Occidental Languages*); as also a wonderful proficiency in *Logick*, and all other parts of *Philosophy, Musick*, and some other *Arts and Sciences*; all which he annalized into Schemes of his own with great judgment, shewing his thorow and extensive knowledge of them all. You observe here the abundance he did in a little time; and yet I shewed you before how many other, and how great things he did besides what was proposed to him by his *Instructors*. He so hastened away to maturity before the ordinary Season, that the full ripe Fruits of Summer were found growing upon him in the early Spring; for before he was got to his one and twentieth year, he was *Philologus, Philosophus, & Theologus Eximius*. It's much to find a *Preacher*, and that put upon the *Work* by great and godly Men, before the Age of one and twenty; but so it was here, and not without a large degree of fitness. Was it not a wonder to find a *Youth* of twelve years of Age to be a *Chronologer* and an *Antiquary*? (*vid. vit. ejus per D. Bernard, p. 25.*) Was it not as great a wonder to find one of eighteen or nineteen to encounter and overcome a *Jesuit*, to commence *Master of Arts*, to be chosen *Catechist* to an *University*, to go through a great part of a *Body of Divinity* N<sup>o</sup> 6

nity in the Chappel, by way of Common Place, before *learned Men*, and to act to admiration in all these? Was not here wonderful expedition? Nay, still further, Before he was thirty eight, he had read over all the *Schoolmen*, and all the *Fathers*, and every part of them, and the most noted *Historians*, and had made these all his own, and was Master of all other *Learning* besides. Now however the reading of all that large number of bulky Volumes was a mighty work, yet the pains he took out of the common road of Learning, in searching of *Records*, and all the *Manuscripts* he could get throughout Christendom, with that severe study of *Chronology* and *Antiquity*, was equal to the former, if not quite beyond it. Many Volumes he read, only aiming at the knowledge of the use of words in several Ages, as *Galen* and *Hippocrates*. Most of the Rarities Printed or Written in both the English *Universities*, in *London*, and private *Libraries*, as of Sir *Robert Cotton*, and of several other Learned Men: The *Records* of the Tower of *London* he had warily search'd into: Scarce a Book in that great *Library* of his own, though of the smallest size and esteem, but he remembered it; *And to my great wonder* (saith *Dr. Bernard*) *he had in readines in his head all he had read*. There was scarce a choice Book in any eminent Persons Library in *France*, *Italy*, *Germany*, or *Rome*, but he had his way to it, or what he desired transcribed: He was better acquainted with the *Pope's Vatican*, than some that daily visited it. Now may we not call this *Helluo Librorum*, as once *Dr. Hyle* did, without mentioning any other Name or Title, *The Grand Reader of Europe*, and yet speak intelligibly enough to any that are acquainted with Books and Learning? But if we consider all his other Business of constant Lectures, Preaching, and Converse, and think that all this while he was but a *young Man*, we shall not need to be told again, that his *motion in arriving at Scholastical Attainments was very swift*.

3. *His large Progress therein*. What I have just said, has competently manifested what I have here to say. Yet I shall further intimate several things, to shew that his progress in Learning was so large, as to make a notable approach towards Perfection. This will appear by his *Writings*, *Disputes*, and *Testimonies of Learned Men*.

I. *By his Writings*: Let us here consider,

1. *Their Nature*: Many of them upon very abstruse and difficult, yet necessary Subjects, but highly Elaborate and Learned. He first got himself a splendid Name in the *Church*, by that first and excellent Book of his, *De Christianarum Ecclesiarum Successione & Statu*. His Book, *De Britannicarum Ecclesiarum Primordiis*, *Vossius de Vitis Sermonis*, (c. 10.) calls *Laudatissimum Opus*; it is generally well esteem-

ed: In this he fifteth to the Bran the *Antiquities* of the *British Church*, Leigh. *Relig. & Lear.* p. 359. As his Themes he undertook to write upon were neither mean nor easie, so neither was his manner of writing, but always testified his exactness and industry. This will easily appear to any that please to look into them, where they will find much of the Learning of the World put into some single Volumes, as it were a *Library* put into a *Book*: Which is something of what *Sparhemius* means when he saith, *Non tam tua quam orbis literati Bibliotheca est.* *Dub. Eoan. Par. 3. Epist. Ded.* So *Morus* in his Oration at *Geneva* dedicated to him, saith, *Tuum pectus Bibliotheca spirans.*

2. *Their Number*, not a few: Though some one might have held the most Writers a long time in the Composing. The sole proof I shall give you of this, shall be to tell you what they are. *Jacobus Usserius Armachanus, de Ecclesiarum Christianarum Successione & Statu.---Epistolarum Hibernicarum Sylloge.---Historia Goteschalci.---De Primordiis Ecclesiarum Britannicarum.---Ignatii Epistole cum Annotationibus.---Ignatiana Appendix.---De Anno Solari Macedonum.---Annales Veteris Testamenti.---Annales Novi Testamenti, &c.---Epistola ad Cappellum de variantibus Textus Hebraici Lectionibus.---De Græca Septuaginta Interpretum versione Syntagma.---In English, A Sermon preached before the House of Commons, Feb. 18. 1618.---A Declaration of the Visibilty of the Church, in a Sermon before King James, June 20. 1624.---A Speech delivered in the Castle of *Dublin*, Nov. 22. 1622.---His Answer to *Malone*, the Jesuite, 1631.---The Religion profest by the Ancient *Irish* and *Britains*, 1631.---*Immanuel*: or, The Incarnation of the Son of God, 1639.---A Geographical Description of the Lesser *Asia*, 1644.---Confessions and Proofs of *Dr. Reynolds*, and other Protestant Divines, concerning the Right of *Episcopacy*, 1644.---A Discourse of the Original of *Bishops* and *Arch-Bishops*, 1644.---His small Catechism revived, with an Epistle of his, &c. 1654.---The Sum and Substance of Religion, in a great part his.---His Annals of the Old and New Testament, with the *Synchronisms* of Heathen Story, to the Destruction of *Jerusalem*.---A Method for Meditation.---The Articles of *Ireland*, Learned and Orthodox, 1625.---Eighteen Sermons preached in *Oxford*, 1640. recommended to the World by one that was his Chaplain.---He had others in Manuscript full as learned, see *Dr. Bernard*, *in vit. ejus*, p. 29, &c. and p. 49, &c. and p. 100, &c. Besides some published under his Name, but disowned by himself, mentioned in a Book of *Dr. Bernard's*, published 1657.*

His Writings are of themselves great in an extraordinary Degree; yet there are some Circumstances, well considered, will much advance the Learning of the *Author* of them. As,

1. *The Age he was of when he writ some of them.* He began to write one about twelve years of Age, another about fifteen, a third at twenty, and when he was but a little turned of thirty, he published that Piece, so much magnified by *Causabon* and *Sculceins*, *De Ecclesiarum Christianarum Successione & Statu*. His first Writings, yea, even those that he drew up when a Child, were done with so much greatness and exactness, that they were scarcely to be advanced in the greatness and worth of their composition by any hand but his own.

2. *The Business he had to do when he writ most of them.* He had always Business for both Hands, enough for any one Man for Night and Day, without bestowing any time in writing Books.---If you consider,

1. *His Study*; which appears by his numerous Languages he was the Master of; that exactness he had in some of them: though he was rarely knowing in the most Eastern and Western Languages, yet he excelled in Hebrew and Greek; and both *Dr. Bernard* and *Dr. Hoyl* affirm, that his Eloquence in the Latin Tongue, though put upon it *extempore*, did fully equallize the greatest Orator that has at any time lived in this latter Age of the World; and that certainly *Tully* himself, if alive, could not have excelled him in Eloquence. How much he studied, will further appear by his exact knowledge of all Books that were worth the knowing, and his capableness to give an account of any thing in them; by his universal search into all Libraries, and his poring into every thing that might heighten Knowledge, and his often Journeys for that end. In the Winter Evenings he constantly spent two hours in comparing of old *Manuscripts of the Bible*, Greek and Latin, taking with his own hand all the *Variæ Lectiones* of each.

2. *His Preaching and Praying.* He mist no week without Preaching, if he had his Health. How frequent and continued this Work was, has been hinted before, and will be more spoken to afterwards. And for Prayer, over and above his own praying in private, he constantly attended Prayer four times a day in his House and Chappel; as in the Morning at six, in the Evening at eight, and before Dinner and Supper.

3. *His constant correspondence with very many Learned Men in divers parts of the World*: As in *France, Italy, and Germany*; yea, even as far as the *Turk's Dominions*, he employing Men there to get him Manuscripts and Rarities, and corresponding with them for that end; besides, a constant intercourse of Letters between himself and very many Learned Men at home, of differing Minds, about Subjects widely differing; these amounted to a great and constant Labour. A considerable

siderable deal of time also was bestow'd in converse with a large number of Visitors, in the resolution of Difficulties in Divinity, and Cases of Conscience, &c.

Now who could have thought that this Man had done any thing else but any one of these three last things, if we consider how fully and constantly they were done? And yet his Writings were as many, and as great, as I have shew'd. If we view his Writings we would be ready to think he could do nothing else; and if we view what he did besides, we cannot imagine how he could do them.---Thus his wonderful Learning (and Industry) appears by his Writings. So it does,

2. *By his Diffutes*: These were not only many, but such as al-<sup>ways</sup> carried the Conquest, and that over very well-furnisht Adversaries. Only to name these is proof enough; as, with the *Jesuit Fitz Simonds* in the Castle of *Dublin*, for which he is applauded even by his Adversary himself; but of this enough before.---With the *Jesuit Malone*, who gave him a bold and daring Challenge, but acted, as I have sometimes seen an haughty and peevish Cur come forth with great fierceness, and assault a generous Mastiff upon the Road, but by only facing about, casting an offended look, or making one leap towards him, the poor Cur hath suddenly given a frightful start, if not a fall, and has found his best defence has been to grovel in the Dust, with his Tail between his Legs, or to fly to some distant security, and there bawl and make a noise for a long time. Thus did this peevish *Romanist*, till he had awakened two eminent Divines, *Dr. Hyle* and *Dr. Sing*, to drive him out of his quarrelsome retreat to an utter silence.---With the *Jesuit Rookwood*, who went under the more creditable name of *Beumont*, because his right name was made horrid by his own Brother's being a Gunpowder-Traytor: with this Man (being but just stept out of a great Sickness) he held three days of Disputation, at *Drayton* in *Northamptonshire*, before some Persons of Honour, of both the Romish and Protestant way, concerning *Transubstantiation*, *Invocation of Saints*, *Worshipping of Images*, and the *Visibility of the Church*; where he so wonderfully overcame this strong Antagonist, that one of his own Tribe, *Chaloner*, a *Secular Priest*, even in Print, scoffs *Beumont*, and bids him beware of coming any more to *Drayton* to meet with another *Usher* to foil him again, to the dishonour of his Profession and himself.---With three *Jesuits* together, *viz. Fisher*, *Sweet*, *Swetnam*, in a private House in *Drury-Lane*, also before several Persons of Honour; where they disputed of *Image-Worship* and *Free-Will*; but after some few Arguments, the *Jesuits* found themselves miserably too weak to deal with him; and so pretending some urgent Business, left the place in

an hurry, very much dash'd in their Countenances, though they knew not who their Adversary was.---With another Jesuit before a Protestant Knight and his Lady (a Papist) in Ireland; the Popish Party used to call this Jesuit, *The Rock of Learning*: The Disputation was to be managed by plain Texts of *Scripture*, and such *Terms* and *Distinctions* as were intelligible to those that stood by; which so prevented Tergiversation, and Sophistical Shifts and Evasions, that the Jesuit found himself to have nought left to say, and so left the place with shame.---I could have enlarged these short Relations to tediousness, setting before you much of the Matter and Way of managing these Disputes; but it is expected, that in the whole, I be as compendious as is possible. I could also have acquainted you with many other *Disputes* of his, as one in *Dublin* before an *Assembly* of the Nation, where he had all the *Learning* of that Kingdom to set upon him, which was used to the utmost to have conquered him, but he really carried away the *Trophies* of that day; the consequence of which was as great and as useful to that *Church*, as ever any Dispute in the World, when managed by one Man against so great a number of Men, furnished with so much Learning and Resolution to oppose him, and so much time to prepare in, when as the whole was a surprize to himself. But this one Instance shall suffice. The Disputes he had with those Popish *Antagonists*, did much shew the quickness of his Parts, and greatness of his Learning; having therein to do with some of the most subtile Men in the World, such as are for the most part throughly instructed in *School-Learning*, and all the crafty Methods of *Disputation*; and such as will readily equivocate, shift, and lie, and abuse the most *Quotations*, to make them serve their own lame and needy Interest and Principles; to be able smoothly to deal with these, to detect their Folly, and to gain the clearer Conquest, shews a vast degree of *Learning*. As it does further appear in the

Third and last Place. *By the Valuation and Testimony of Men highly Learned*. Such only as are *Great*, are only able to set a right Value, and pass a true Judgment, upon *Great Things*. To this end I'll let you see what has been said, both by Friends and Enemies.

I. *By Friends*; and that both at Home and Abroad.

1. At *Home*; These, by reason of their nearness, could not but know him well, and so be satisfied, that the great things found in his Writings, were no greater than himself; that there was none left to say something resembling that in the Poet *Virgil*.

*Hos ego versiculos feci, tulit alter honores.*

Here we have Mr. *Cambden*, whose Testimony and Eulogy I have given you before.---The next was one of the greatest Scholars of this last

Age, viz. Mr. Selden, who says, *The most Reverend Prelate, James Usher, Arch-Bishop of Armagh, Vir summa Pietate, Judicio singulari, usque ad miraculum doctus, & literis severioribus promovendis natus.* I ejus Marm. Arundel.---Dr. Prideaux (*de mille Annis Apocal.*) calls him, *Locupletissimum solidæ eruditionis & totius antiquitatis Gazophilacium.*---Dr. Davenant speaks thus of him, *Vir singularis Pietatis, &c. A Man of singular Piety, and abounding with all manner of Learning. Ad pacem Exhort.*---Sir Roger Twissden, acknowledging the assistance he had from him in his History, saith thus, *This we owe to the most worthy Arch-Bishop of Armagh; in whom, with incredible Learning, and rare Knowledge of purer Antiquity (which both Tagus and Ganges, and perhaps the Antipodes know) his most courteous conversation, and wonderful sweetness in instructing the unskilful, mixed with a certain serious Episcopal Gravity, were seen to strive one with the other. Histor. Anglican. &c. Epist. ad Lect.*---Dr. Walton's Testimony you had before.---Dr. Hoyle (in his Rejoynd. to Malone) stiles him, *The gracious and most Learned Lord Primate.*---But the Relator of Mrs. Drake's Case, magnifies him to a wonder, saying, *That famous worthy Man, Dr. Usher, since Primate of Ireland, a Magazine of all Knowledge and Learning, a powerful plain Preacher, none like him in his setting forth Christ in his high Perfections, and surmounting Excellencies, and in painting the right straight way unto him; and withal, as a very wise stout Man, so the mildest, humblest, and meekest Man alive of his infinite Reading, Knowledge, and Parts.*---Gataker in his *Cinnus* (c. 5.) stiles him, *Præsulum decus ille Jacobus Armachanus.*---The last Character is given by the whole University of Oxford, by a solemn Order in the Convocation; given in charge to sixteen eminent Persons, of which number seven were then Doctors, chosen from the Vice-Chancellor and Proctors, to see his *Effigies* cut, and an *Elogium* worthy of him, to be prefixed to his Annotations on *Ignatius* his Epistles (there then in the Press) and at the Charges of the University, and in the publick name of it; indeed it was omitted to that Book, but afterwards affixed to his Book *De Symbolis*, and some others since; the *Elogium* is as follows.

Jacobus Usserius, Archiepiscopus Armachanus, totius Hyberniæ Primas, Antiquitatis Primevæ peritissimus, Orthodoxæ Religionis Vindex ἀναντιρρήτως, Errorum Malleus, in concionando Frequens, Facundus, Præpotens, Vitæ inculpatæ Exemplar spectabile.

ROB. PINK, Vicecancel.

James Usher, Arch-Bishop of Armagh, Primate of all Ireland, the most skilful of Primitive Antiquity, the unanswerable Defender of the Orthodox Religion, the Maul of Errors, in preaching Frequent, Eloquent, and Powerful, a rare Example of unblameable Life.

D 2

These

These are but some of those many Testimonies which our Learned Men at Home have given of him, but enough to shew how highly he was valued by them.

2. By *Forreigners* : One writing to him, saith, *Your Name is precious in all the Reformed Churches, witness the Dedication of divers learned Treatises to you; and the honourable mention which many learned Men make of you.* He was highly esteemed by those that were Learned in other Nations abroad; as I'll shew you by some few Testimonies.--- The first shall be the Great *Spanhemius*, in his Epistle to him,

*Ingentes tue Virtutes, Summe Usseri, non vstro tantum orbi notæ sunt sed & nostro, & ubicunque terrarum pietati suum decus & eruditioni suum pretium constat, &c. Dub. Evan. par. 3. Ep.*

Your very great Parts, most excellent *Usher*, are known, not only within your own Country, but in ours, and wherefoever else there is honour given to Piety, or a price set upon Learning, &c.

He there magnifies his *Charity to Strangers*, his *Humility*, his *several Works*, and his *Library*, with the use he made of it. *Gerardus Vossius* frequently admires him, *As a Man of vast Learning, worthy of an everlasting Monument, and (Summa summi viri, & undique doctissimi merita, &c.) that the high merits of this most excellent and throughout most learned Man, both of the Church and the whole Common-Wealth of Learning, deserves an everlasting grateful Memory.* G. Vol. de Vit. Serm. --- *Ludovicus de Deiu*, in his *Animadversions* upon the *Acts*, dedicated to him, intitles him, *The Excellent Prelate, worthy of an eternal Memory, James Usher, Arch-Bishop of Armagh, &c.*--- *Paulus Testardus Blesensis*, styles him, *Seculi & Ecclesiæ Decus eximium*, The greatest Honour of the Church and Age, *De Nat. & Orat. p. 425.*--- *Bochartus* and *Simplicius* calls him frequently, *Magnum Usserium, Usher the Great, in Geogr. Sacr. & Synops. loc. Script.*--- *Morus* in his Oration at Geneva, dedicated to him, styles him, *Excellentissimum Dei Servum, Reverendissimum Virum Dei, Seculi Nostri Athanasium, Maximum Britannicæ Decus, &c.* The most Excellent Servant of God, the most Reverend Man of God, the *Athanasius* of our Age, *Britain's greatest Glory, &c.*--- *Arnoldus Bootius*, saith, *He did excel with a most singular Judgment in the Oriental Languages, and in all other hidden (or deep) Learning; Illud Venerabile toti Europæ Caput, &c. Venerable to all Europe, whose Authority prevails much with all Men, &c. Epist. Contr. Capellum, & Apend. ad Buxtorf.*--- *Voetius* saith, *Jacobus Usserius, vastæ Lectiōis & Eruditionis Theologus, inque Antiquitate Ecclesiastica Versatissimus.*--- Thus you see what his *Forreign Friends* thought of him: But that you may see



that his Greatness was more than the Applauses and high Praises of Friends, you shall hear in the

2. Place, *what hath been said of him by Enemies* : Who seldom or never give Praises to them that offend them; but that mighty Excellencies extort Testimonies of Praise, even from the most rude and irreconcilable Adversaries. Our *Great Divine* had many Enemies to his being Orthodox, but none to his being Learned, for here even the most froward Romanists could not but consent to what his Friends said, *viz.* That he was a Man of very much Learning.--*Fitz Simonds*, with whom he disputed about the Pope's being Antichrist, (forementioned) in one of his Books styles him, *A catholicorum Doctissimus*.--*Moranez* in his *Anti-Jansenius* (Disp. 11. Sect. 2.) calls him *Insignem Calvinistam*; and says, That *Jansenius* (the Father of a very numerous Party in France) was beholden to our *Usher* for his Arguments, Word for Word, and yet was so unjust as not to mention him nor his Book, *Goteschalci Historia*, out of which he took his Opinion, and the defence of the same.--A *Jesuit*, in a Book called *Hyberniæ Vindiciæ*, Written against *Dempster* a Scotch-man, who had undervalued the Irish for Learning, after he had reckoned up many Learned Men of his own and other Orders of that Nation, at length he adds this of him; *Quid si adversæ Religionis homines inserere voluissent, verè affirmare possim, quod Usserum alterum nunquam videret Scotia, cujus utinam sublime ingenium atque humanissimos mores infausa inter Sectarios educatio nouercata non fuisset, &c. i. e.* And if I should put in Men of a different Religion, I might truly say *Scotland* never saw another *Usher*, whose *sublime Wit*, and *most courteous Behaviour*, I wish that unlucky Education among the Sectaries had not been his Step-mother.--We may see that *Infinite Goodness* and *Wisdom* governs the World, when irreconcilable Enemies speak and act candidly towards such good and great Men, as cannot from Principles of Conscience but oppose their way as false: You have seen what some such have said of him, and I'll only give you one Instance of what was acted or offered to him, upon his Losses in *Ireland*, and the Straits he was brought into in *England*: *Cardinal Richlieu*, only in relation to his *eminent Learning*, offered him a large Maintenance in *France*, with liberty to live where he pleased among the Protestants in that Kingdom. I have now done with all these *Testimonies*, which are full enough, though I might have added many more, both of Friends and Enemies at Home and Abroad; only I'll subjoin one more, *viz.* The Testimony of *Dr. William Chapel*, sometimes Fellow of *Christ's-Colledge* in *Cambridge*, and afterward Provost of *Trinity-Colledge, Dublin*, who was an Acute, Judicious, and Learned Man; He gave three Reasons why he thought this Renowned *Usher* was the greatest Scholar in the Christian World.--

1. Because of his rare natural Parts, having, a quick Invention, a prompt Wit, a strong Memory, a clear Understanding, a piercing Judgment, and a ready Utterance; seldom (said he) shall you meet all these in an eminent degree in the same Person; but in him they so concurred, that it is hard to say in which of them he most excelled.---2. Because few Men, though they had such Parts, were either able or willing to make such a rich Improvement of them, by choice Libraries, unwearied studying in them, and by constant endeavours to have all the Rarities of Ferreign Libraries brought over to their view and perusal; few Mens Bodies and Brains being able to bear such large and continued pains.---3. Because he was so esteemed in these Universities, and those beyond the Seas: And whosoever conversed with him, found him a skilful Linguist, a subtil Disputant, a fluent Orator, a profound Divine, a mighty Antiquary, an exact Chronologer; and indeed, a living and walking Library: The greatest Professors have admired the concatenation of so much variety of Learning in one Person.

Enough is said to set off his *Transcendent Learning*.

II. *Several Matters referring to his Religion*. This is the principal thing that raiseth a Man above a Beast, and enables him to make a near approach to the nature and grandeur of an *Angel*; Religion is undoubtedly the most crediting Accomplishment or Qualification *Humane Nature* is capable of in this lower World; ---the more therefore any Man excels in it, the greater *Glory* and *Dignity* attends him: Well, in this our Famous *Usher* was very excellent, as I shall easily shew in some seven or eight Particulars.

1. *In his early Conversion*. It's never too late to do well, but the sooner Good is done, the better is the Action, As the most disgracing thing in the World was the *Apostacy* of Mankind from God the chiefest Good, and highest Glory and Happiness; so that which doth most honour Mankind, is its Return to God again; which Return is the more honourary the sooner it is done. So this young and hopeful Plant, in the very blossom of his Age (being but ten years old) found in himself the true sense of Religion in his serious Conversion unto God, which was instrumentally wrought by a Sermon he heard preached upon *Rom. 12. 1. I beseech you, Brethren, by the Mercies of God, that you present your Bodies a living Sacrifice, holy, and acceptable unto God, &c.* His reading of some Notes taken in writing from Mr. *Perkins* (before his Works were printed) concerning the sanctifying of the Lord's Day, proved, through God's Blessing, so effectual with him, that he was ever observant and strict to keep that Day holy. He then read in Latin St. *Augustine's* Meditations, which so affected him, that he often wept in the reading of them.

2. *In his devout Practices, even under Juvenility*. As soon as he was entred upon the Divine Life, he did inure and accustom himself

to the Duties thereof with very much Zeal ; which did so awaken that grand *Enemy* of Souls, the *Devil*, that he neglected nothing in his power to nip him in the Bud, continually assailing him with divers Terrors and Affrightments, both sleeping and waking, endeavouring thereby to discourage and take him off from that fervent pursuit of the way of Godliness. This looked the more terrible, because he never met with any thing of it before, but he *constantly applied himself to Prayer* to be delivered from these Satanical Delusions and Assaults, and at length *was heard in that he feared*, by being freed from them, and strengthened against them, with more than ordinary support and comfort ; which took such an impression in him, as to abide fresh in his Memory in his *elder Years*. The Devil now finding that he could not be *frighted* out of his course of Godliness, made use of another Engine which was to allure him with the *flattering sweets of Pleasure* ; some of his Friends teaching him to *play at Cards*, wherewith he became so much delighted, that it not only took place of the *love to his Book*, but began to grow into competition with *his love to God*, and to play the *Rival* with that better Part which Grace had newly planted within his Soul ; which being seasonably discovered to him by the Spirit of God, he presently gave over this way of Recreation, and never play'd at it any more.--At the Age of fourteen (being judged fit for, and admitted to the Sacrament of the *Lord's Supper*) he was very strict in his preparing himself for that Holy Ordinance : His usual custom was, the afternoon before he was to receive, to separate himself into some private place, and there to search into himself by a *close and thorough Examination*, and there to exercise penitential humiliation for all his Sins ; which was so operative, that streams of *Tears* ran from him : This he often reflected upon, as an exemplary provocation and censure of himself when he was of *elder Years*.---There was a certain place by a Water-side, whither he frequently resorted sorrowfully to recount his Sins, and with floods of *Tears* to pour out *Confessions* and *Bewailings* of them ; the Fruit whereof he experienced so *sweet to his devout Mind*, that he longed for all occasions of such a retirement and sequestration, and usually on the *Saturday* in the afternoon he was employed in this happy custom. Among other Sins he much lamented his excessive *love to his Book*, and humane Learning, because he found himself as glad when *Monday* came, that he might renew his *Studies*, as he was when the *Lord's Day* came, in which he was to apply himself to the *Service of God* ; this, even at that Age, cost him many a Tear, groaning in his Spirit that he could not enjoy higher flames of Devotion towards the things of God than those of Learning.---About the Age of fifteen, he lying under some fears of *God's Love* towards him, because he had no *external Afflictions nor Troubles of Conscience*, (occasioned by

by some inconsiderate Passages in some Writers he met withal ) did for a long time trouble and afflict himself about it.---I might give you other Instances, but these are competent to prove, That his devout Practices in his Youth (which I need not tell you he continued to his dying-day) were very frequent and fervently performed.

3. *In his Reverence to Divine Ordinances.* This appeared in his preparation, which was always serious and thorow; and, when in the exercise of them, he would always behave himself as if he had been really, (with *Moses*) on the Mount with God, where he had heard and seen things filled with wonderful *Majesty, Terror, and Glory*. He never came where *Divine Things* were performing, but he always behaved himself with extraordinary seriousness and gravity, working up his Affections to such a noble strain, till they produced both in his Soul and Body a very gracious deportment and respect, without *affectation*, or much *external shew*.

4. *In his Contempt of the World.* This was notably seen in one great Instance I gave you before, in his passing over the benefit of a fair Estate left him by his Father to his Brothers and Sisters, suffering his Uncle to take Letters of Administration for that end, resolving to cast himself upon the gracious Providence of God, to whose Service he had devoted himself in the Work of the Ministry: The doing of this was not the result either of weakness or rashness, but of his most considerate Thoughts. You may also see how little the things of this World seemed in his eye, if you consider his refusal of the Provostship of the Colledge of *Dublin*, especially if you remember that he was then in the flourish of Age, when such Preferments, if it was but merely for the honour of them, seem very taking with the most of his standing in the World. I might give you many such Instances, but I'll take up with one in the close of his time, when necessity might have invited him to an acceptance; He being reduced to some lowness in worldly things, was offered, by the *States of Holland*, the place of *Professor Honorarius* in the University of *Leyden*; which was not an empty Title, but had a good Stipend belonging to it; but now he thought himself too old to catch at the most pleasing Bait referring to the present Life. The World was so far from being obeyed as a *Lord*, that it was never admired nor embraced as a *Friend*, but ever used as a *Servant*: which he witnessed by his vast Expences about good Designs, laying out even the whole of what Providence brought him in, to advance Learning and Religion.

5. *In his Self-denial.* Self was denied in what is just said, but shall be further in what follows; A little before the Parliament in *Ireland*

1634, there was a Letter sent over from our late Sovereign *Charles* the First, to the Lord-Deputy and Council, for determining the Question, *Of the Precedency between the Primate and the Arch-Bishop of Dublin*; the Question refer'd nothing to their *Persons*, but their *Sees*. This good Man, out of his great *humility*, was with much difficulty drawn to speak to that Argument, (which of later times had been much difficult) but being commanded to speak, he shewed a great deal of *Learning*, and rare *Observations* in matter of *Antiquity*, so that the Business was determined on his side, who afterward, by another Letter, (procured wholly without his seeking) had the precedency given him by the Lord *Chancellor*. These things took little with him, but were rather burthens to him, because he really was an Enemy to any thing that might so much as seem to lift up *Carnal-Self*. It was familiar with him to abound with humble Expressions of his own meanness and unworthiness, and to demean himself as if he had been the least of all Saints, which he would express with many Tears. Although he was οὐδέν ὑπερ ἢ καρτερία Ἐπισκόπου, yet he ever thought himself to be ἐλαχίστους πάντων ἁγίων. His constant Speech and Deportment testified that he had high thoughts of others, and as low of himself, and that in every condition of Life, both in Prosperity and Adversity. As he was a Man of the highest *worth* in his time, so he was as truly of the most *humble* and *self-denying* Conversation.

6. *In his Charity, and readiness to Communicate.* He obeyed that of the Apostle, *To do good, and to communicate, forget not*. He had the true *Character* of *Goodness* in being *diffusive*. This appeared to all that had to do with him; for he was very *communicative*, not only of his Studies, for the advantage of their *Minds*, but of part of his Stipend, for the relief of their *Bodies*. It's well said of him by One, being no less than his true merit, *That in Works of Charity he always rather needed a Bridle than a Spur*. Mr. *Leigh* in his Epistle Dedicatory to Him, before his Treatise of *Religion and Learning*, saith, One thing I look upon as your great Accomplishment, Your readiness to communicate your self to all; which appeared in your sending to *Samaria* for several Copies of the *Samaritan Pentateuch*, bringing them first into *Europe*, and dispersing them many ways; and also your purchasing at a dear rate the *Syriack Bible*, and many other *Syriack Books* from *Syria*, and your free imparting them to such as were skilful in that Language: This is deservedly celebrated by Mr. *Selden*, in his Preface *ad Marmoram Arundelianam*; *De Dieu*, in his Epistle Dedicatory to the *Acts*; and Dr. *Bort* in his *Judex Autorum*, before his *Animal-versiones Sacrae*. Your *liberality* to such as are in a necessitous condition is also well known.

7. In his humble, amicable, peaceful Mind and Life. For his *humility* of Mind and Life abundance hath been already said; A great Scholar and *Divine* professeth, That he and others once standing by and observing the wonderful humility and self-annihilation of this miraculous sort of Man, with the Tears he shed about his own unworthiness, emptiness, and useflessness; *We were* (saith he) *very much awakened and impress'd with the sense of what we our selves were, finding our selves so exceedingly beneath him.* Another in an Epistle to him saith, *Your humble affable Disposition, in a free admission, and ready opening your mind to the very meanest of Men, I look upon as a noble quality, and more especially because practis'd by you when you were at your highest.*---But for his amicable peaceful Mind and Life I have more to say; This temper is the happiness of the World, the Church of God, and of him that hath it; envious Minds, and turbulent Dispositions, take it for Neutrality and Softness; but they are among the choicest Men in the World that have this true *Evangelick Temper.* This displayed it self in this happy Man.

1. In his being an hearty lover of all good Men; though in some disputable lesser Matters not wholly of his own Mind. One says of him, *He was no Dictator, nor would impose upon other Mens Judgments or Consciences, but was as ready to receive from others, as to impart to them; and would much incline [in many things] to Vulgar Christians, rather than unto others that were more Learned. Godly Persons, of what Rank soever, had great power with him; he would put them in his Bosom, visit them in their Sickness, supply their Wants, beg their Prayers, and countenance their Cause and Persons.* He would as soon, and with as much cheerfulness, admit into his Chamber, and entertain discourse with any that had the Life and Power of Godliness in them, though of the lowest Rank, in any place where he came, as those that were much above them in *Worldly* things, being inferior in *Spirituals*; and would as soon be put upon preaching in any Town where he lodged upon the Road by One such an ordinary consciencious Person, as by the Mayor or Head of the Town. Whereby he demonstrated that his delight was in the Saints, and that he was a Companion of all them that feared God, (*Cl. in vit. ejus.*) He was ever an Advocate and Patron to all Godly Consciencious Men, and could not abide to have such abused and trampled on by Great Men of differing and furious Principles. It was a noble saying of his own, *If I* (saith he) *had all Mens Consciences in my keeping, I could, in disputable Cases, give Laws unto them, as well as unto my self; but it's one thing what I can do, and another thing what all other Men must do.* This he speaks to take off that fierceness which was in some Churchmen against those that could not in disputable things harmonize with them, because he saw they were of

\*

very

very Holy Lives. Dr. Bernard saith of him, He was not wanting, with St. Paul, to *magnifie his own Office*, but he did it without partiality; and in what most nearly concern'd himself, rather in the *Wane* than in the *Full*: He was not so severe as to disown the Ministry of other Reformed Churches, but did declare, *He did love and honour them as true Members of the Church Universal, and was ready, both for the Ministers of Holland and France, to testify his Communion with them.* He was (saith he) a Man of a most exemplary *Moderation, Meekness, Humility, and Ingenuity*: according to which, if others concerned in some late Transactions had been tempered, it had been the better for the whole: He had in 1641, drawn up an *Expedient, by way of Accommodation in some Ecclesiastical Affairs*; which some moderate Persons of each Party were ready to subscribe. Indeed, in Matters of *Doctrine for Substantials*, no Man was more resolute and constant than he, *not giving place, by way of subjection, no, not for an hour*; but he thought the case was altered in *Circumstantials*, that it was our duty, with St. Paul, to *please all Men, and not our selves in all such things*, to Edification and Concord. In a word, He was without *wavering*, always one and the same, *holding fast the form of sound Words* in Doctrine and Practice to his last. He was of an Apostolical Saint-like Spirit, and walked in the *old Path, and good Way*; and there is none that *bath drunk of the Old Wine, that straightway desires the New*; for he saith the Old is better. Thus far that Reverend Doctor, who knew him far above most. He dearly loved Men of such a temper, and kept up correspondence with them, and intimate converse when nearer them; such as Dr. Sibbs, Dr. Preston, and many other London Ministers.

2. *In his being a Reconciler of Differences, not jarring with sound Faith and Life.* This desire and endeavour in him, did show that he was of an Harmonious *Mind*; that his *Soul* dwelt in a smooth and quiet Region, where the stormy Winds of *Pride, Self-seeking, Faction, and Passion*, did not use to blow. He could not be persuaded, but the Divisions and Animosities of Men were at best enkindled by that turbulent Spirit that hates the peace of Mankind, because he never enjoys any such thing himself; but especially when the vexatious brawl and scuffle is made about *Trifles*, and Matters no more but *Indifferent*, even in the judgment of those who bestow their warmest Zeal upon them. This *Good Man* used to act to his utmost to preserve peace among Protestants in Ireland: 'I'll give you one Instance in his younger days; Some of the *highest Church-men* in Ireland combined together, and obtained of King James a *Commission* to reduce that Kingdom to the same Ecclesiastical Government with that of England, and to set up the same *Courts, Canons, and High Commission*; the King in

the Commission, ordered the calling of a great Assembly of the whole Nation, and required them to consult with Mr. Usher, whose *Learning, Judgment, and Esteem*, would much conduce to the promoting of that Work; but if he approved it not, the King required that they should proceed no further, for that he would not be the Author of any *Innovation* amongst them: This reserve stuck fore in the Minds of some that first hatched the Project, therefore they concealed it from *him they feared*, till the very day before the Assembly was to meet; which displeas'd that prudent Governor, who was then *Lord Deputy*, when Mr. Usher came but the day before the Assembly was to meet to ask him the reason of that Convention; Well, Mr. Usher, (saith he) I wonder what they mean, for without *you* all the rest are but Cyphers, for the King hath reterr'd the whole Business to your *Judgment*, Whether the Power of the Hierarchy shall be established here as it is in *England*: Well, but the day comes, and Mr. Usher hearing the King's Commission and Letters read in the Assembly, tells them, That his Majesty did not so strongly interest him in a business of such great Concernment, without *convenient time* to weigh the thing very well in his mind before he delivered his Opinion; but they being unwilling to grant him that favour, he urg'd for an uninterrupted hearing, liberty to answer those that were unsatisfied, and that at that time the whole Business might be finally determined. These being all granted, Mr. Usher undertook to prove, *That such a Jurisdiction could not be introduced into that Kingdom, neither by the Laws of God, nor by the Civil or Ecclesiastical Constitutions of that Kingdom; nor yet without the violation of the King's Prerogative in that Nation*: All which he performed with wonderful admiration and applause, (*Vid. plu. in Cla. in vit. ejus.*) By what is said you may see what Spirit this Holy Man was of, even in the day when the World hugged him, and Preferences (up to the highest degree of them) stood with Arms wide open to give him entertainment and kind embraces; when one would have thought he should rather have pleaded for, than against that which would have heightned the Grandeur and Dominion of the *highest Ecclesiasticks*, into which number he might easily expect to rise. Any one that desires to see more of the Endeavours of this truly *Evangelical Bishop*, in reconciling the Differences of some Protestant Divines about their Dignities and Government, may see a Book published by Dr. Bernard, entituled, *The Judgment of the late Arch-Bishop of Armagh*. It treats upon various *Subjects*, which shew his reconciling Temper; but there is *two* of them that look immediately at the thing in hand, *viz. His Judgment of the Ordination of the Ministers in France and Holland*; upon this Dr. Bernard hath writ *Animadversions*; and *De Reductione Episcopatus ad formam regiminis Synodici, in Antiqua Ecclesia recep-*



ti, in English. This was subscribed by the *Arch-Bishop* himself; and *Dr. Holdsworth*, published to the World by *Dr. Bernard*, and largely noted upon in Latin by the Learned *Hoornbeck*, Professor of Divinity in *Leyden*. *Dr. Bernard* hath there also shewed of what a reconciling temper he was, in several Matters referring to *Doctrine, Discipline, and other Subjects*; and that he had ever been of the same mind, notwithstanding he not only approved of *Episcopacy, and Set-Forms of Prayer, &c.* as lawful, but necessary, and not the Blemish, but Perfection of a Church, when wisely managed. We stand in need to wish, as that Holy Divine did, *That in these divided Times, wherein each Party hath a great and reverend Opinion of him, they would shew it by taking his Spirit of Moderation for their Copy to write after.*---But though he was for reconciling Differences, yet it was only among them that were of *sound Faith and Life*; for he was so far from reconciling the Papists to the Protestants, that when the thing was moved in the year 1626, he would not yeild so much as to a Toleration of their Religion, but set forth a *Protestation* against it, subscribed by himself and the rest of the Bishops of *Ireland*; which take as follows. The Judgment of the Arch-Bishops and Bishops of *Ireland*, concerning Toleration of [the Popish] Religion.---*The Religion of the Papists is Superstitious and Idolatrous; their Faith and Doctrine Erroneous and Heretical; their Church, in respect of both, Apostatical: To give them therefore a Toleration, or to consent that they may freely exercise their Religion, and profess their Faith and Doctrine, is a grievous Sin, and that in two respects.*---For, 1. *It is to make our selves accessory, not only to their Superstitions, Idolatries, Heresies, and in a word, to all the abominations of Popery, but also (which is a consequent of the former) to the perdition of the seduced People, which perishes in the Deluge of the Catholick Apostacy.*---2. *To grant them a Toleration in respect of any Money to be given, or Contribution to be made by them, is to set Religion to sale, and with it the Souls of the People, whom Christ our Saviour hath redeemed with his most precious Blood. And as it is a great Sin, so also a matter of most dangerous Consequence. The consideration whereof we commend to the Wise and Judicious; Beseeching the Zealous God of Truth, to make them who are in Authority zealous of God's Glory, and of the Advancement of true Religion; Zealous, Resolute, and Courageous against all Popery, Superstition, and Idolatry. Amen.*

Jac. Armachanus.  
Mal. Cashellen.  
Anth. Medensis.  
Tho. Hern. & Laghlin.  
Ro. Dunensis, &c.  
Georg. Derens.

Rich. Cork, Cloyn, Rosses.  
Aud. Alachadens.  
Tho. Kilmore & Ardagh.  
Theo. Dromore.  
Mic. Waterford, & Lyfmore.  
Fran. Lymerrick.

This was published by the Bishop of *Derry* in *Christ's-Church*, in the midst of his Sermon, before the Lord Deputy and Council; after which the People gave their Votes with a general Acclamation, crying, *Amen*. He often stood in the gap, in opposition (to his utmost) of Errors and False-Doctrines; he withstood to the face any toleration of Popery and Superstition, by whomsoever attempted; like *Shammah*, one of the prime Worthies of *David*, defending a Field of *Lentils* from the breaking in of a whole Troop of *Philistins*. Once in an Assembly of the whole Nation, he averr'd, That the Magistrates yielding to meet the Papists as far as they might in their own way, in the first Reformation in England, had (upon the experience of many years) rather hardened them in their Errors, than brought them to a liking of our Religion; this being their usual saying, *If our Flesh be not good, why do you drink of our Broth?* Many years after this was spoken in *Dublin*, he being to preach before the King in *Oxford*, on the 5th of November, in the last unhappy War, took for his Text, *Nehem. 4. 11. And our Adversaries said, they shall not know, neither see, till we come in the midst among them, and slay them, and cause their Works to cease.* A most apt Text for the day; but one passage in his Sermon against the Papists offended some Persons there attending, he advising not to repose any trust in them, said, *That upon the first opportunity they will serve us here as they did the poor Protestants in Ireland.*---Thus you have seen he was a Reconciler of Differences, not jarring with sound Faith and Life: The last time he was in *London*, he much lamented, with great thoughts of Heart, the disjointing of Affections, and the hatred he saw kindling in the Hearts of Men one against another, by the several Opinions in matters of Religion; affirming, That he was confident these were begot and blown up by Popish Emissaries in various disguises, and cou'd only end in their advantage, but the lamentable disadvantage, if not ruin, of Protestantcy.---Thus you have seen his Religion made apparent, in his being of an humble, amicable, peaceful Mind and Life; and this illustrated, by his being an hearty lover of all Good Men, and in his being a Reconciler of Differences, not jarring with sound Faith and Life. If I had not taken these things to be of very vast importance, I had not said so much to them; and yet I find so very much referring to these things in the passages of his Life, that I found it very difficult to say so little.

8. And lastly; *In his Love to, and labour after Souls.* This must of necessity be one of the best endeavours of Life, (when prudently managed) especially for a Man of his Function. Though he was importunate in pressing this upon all other Ministers that came within his Converse and Advice, yet he was not like them who love to be instructing others, but

but do not themselves practice their own Instructions, for he used to be one of the forwardest in doing the Duties of the Ministry, and was ever full and constant in his endeavours to bring over the Souls of Men unto Jesus Christ, to yeild up a compleat subjection to his Government.

*His love to, and labour after Souls*, appeared in Catechising, Preaching, repetition of Sermons, and strenuous endeavours to convert the blind Followers of the Romish Antichrist.

1. *In Catechising.* This he set up in his own Family, and had it constantly performed; and not only there, but urged it much upon the Ministers within his Diocess, giving them directions for the best way of performing it with success; I have told you how in the Epistle to the Reader. He found the fruit of this to be very great and pleasing, even among the ordinary sort of People, upon their coming to receive the *Lord's Supper*, because they bringing in their Names, had constantly some account taken of their fitness, which was found to be considerable, and to derive it self very much from frequent catechising. He used constantly to have his own Family this way instructed every *Friday* in the afternoon, for a full hour together; and the younger sort of his Auditors every *Lord's Day* before the Evening Prayer and Sermon. He found Catechising an excellent way *to build up Souls in the most Holy Faith*; and that none were more found and serious Christians, than those who were well instructed in these Fundamental Principles. This was the way Reformation was advanced in *Europe*, and Christianity in the Primitive Days; and this will be found the principal way to keep them alive, to maintain their Vigour and Flourish. The first *Reformers* from the *Popish Defection* laboured abundantly in this, and saw and rejoiced in the great success thereof: It's affirmed by *Egesippus*, in his *Ecclesiastical History*, *That by virtue of Catechising, there were few Nations in the World, (I think he says none) but what had received an alteration in their Heathenish Religion within forty years after the Passion of Christ.* And I have read it as an usual complaint of some *Jesuits*, *That they found there was but little hope of bringing back to the Romish Church, or of unsettling or discomposing such Reformed Churches as were constant and serious in the use of Catechising.*

2. *In Preaching.* Herein also appeared his love to Souls; though some make but a slight business of this great Engine of converting Souls to the Gospel-Life and Doctrine, yet he was really of St. Paul's mind, *ὡς αὐτοὶ ἔσθ' ἰδοὺ μὴ εὐαγγελίζομαι, Wo is me if I preach not the Gospel*; which words he made the *Motto* of his Episcopal and Archiepiscopal Seal, the rather to bind himself unto that great Work: He knew that  
it

it hath pleased God, by the foolishness of Preaching, to save Souls, as 1 Cor. 1. 21.

His Preaching was very effectual, usually prevailing upon very many of his Auditors to address themselves to the Divine Life, and to make further progresses therein. His Preaching was attended with some *Circumstances*, which made it usually so powerful and prevailing; as in this Work he used to be *Full, Plain, Zealous, and Constant*.

1. *Full*. He was a pithy Preacher: though he was the Master of excellent Language, when he pleased to use it; yet his Matter for the most part excell'd his words, and the riches thereof was rather *Divinity* than *Philosophy*; though he would, upon some extraordinary occasions, (as upon Fasting-days, &c.) continue at least two hours in Preaching, and more than ordinary extend himself in Prayer; yet his Matter was ever as large as his Time: The Wine at the latter end of the Feast would equallize, if not over-match, that which was poured forth at the beginning thereof: He mightily loved *fit words* and expressions, rather than those that had little to commend them, excepting that they were *gay* and *fine*: His Language usually was attended with the Spirit and with Power. He loved always to speak wisely, and yet *home*; not to spin out time with impertinent trifles, but to fill his Discourses with things of the highest worth and use.

2. *Plain*. I do not mean slovenly and clouterly Language, but such as was clean and smoothly intelligible to ordinary Capacities. Mr. Gower, one of his Chaplains, says of him, *That although he was an Apollos, an Eloquent Man, and mighty in the Scriptures, yet he in his Sermons in Oxford did much deny himself, that Christ might have the more glory; and did there rebuke that affected frothy way of strong Lines (as some used to call it) which was there practised among the University Preachers.* In a Sermon of his before King James, he hath a considerable passage looking this way; *Great Scholars (said he) possibly may think it not for their credit to stoop so low, &c. but let the most learned of us all try it whenever we please, we shall find that to lay this ground-work right, that is, to apply our selves to the capacity of the common Auditory, and to make an ignorant Man to understand these Mysteries in some good measure, will put us to the tryal of our skill, and trouble us a great deal more than if we were to discuss a Controversie, or to handle a subtil Point of Learning in the Schools.*

3. *Zealous*. His fervour in his Preaching was not like mettle in a blind Horse, that rusheth against any thing in the way, but always was managed with great discretion: But yet in this Work, when labouring about the Souls of Men, you might see that (like Paul) at Athens,

*Athens, His Spirit would be exceedingly stirred in him, striving to bring them to their greatest happiness comprehended in the Holy Life. One who knew him well, saith of him, That he would be so fervent in his Preaching, that what the Psalmist says, might fitly be applied to him; The Zeal of thy House hath eaten me up.* He was much like *Moses*, of a meek and cool Constitution, yet his zeal in labouring after Souls would easily convert his Words into *Thunder*, and his Actings into *Lightning*, as is said of one of the Fathers of the Primitive Church. He hath often acknowledged, that sometimes that which he hath fully resolved in his Sermon not to utter, when he came to it, was like *Jeremiah's Fire, shut up in his Bones that he could not forbear*, unless he would have stood mute, and have proceeded no further: which shewed what a wonderful degree of Zeal God used to kindle and blow up in him, in the mighty concernment of saving the Souls of Men.

4. *Constant.* He preached once a week, and many times oftner, even to the end of his Life, if not hindered by sickness; no Preferments, no Business, used to hinder this: Though his Places and Offices were such, that the Law for the most part of his Life would have exempted him from the laborious and troublesome *toyl* of Preaching, yet he would not make use of this Indulgence, but gave himself up to the Work, spending himself very much in it. It is an usual *Maxim* or *Proverb*, *That the greatest Scholars are not the best Preachers*; Queen Elizabeth was wont to say, *That she made a Bishop, and marr'd a Preacher*: But (says Mr. Leigh, in his Epistle to him) you have really confuted both these by your plain and powerful Preaching, and by your constant labouring for above fifty years in that Sacred Function, even after the time, through a natural decay, you were unable to read your Text. Another Learned Man also saith of him, That when he found himself unable to continue his Preaching, he was mightily burthened with the sense thereof; when *awake*, he could not be at quiet; and when *asleep*, his Dreams disturbed him so, that he was resolved, if he had lived to have got some small Place, and have exercised his Ministry there as long as he could speak to be heard.

Thus you have seen how *Full*, how *Plain*, how *Zealous*, and how *Constant*, he used to be in preaching all along his Life. He could never endure to spare *sin*, but would rebuke it even in the greatest Presence in the World. Though none was more *loyal* than himself, neither were any more *observant*, and *tender* of that Sovereign Authority, under which he dwelt, yet he would venture in his preaching, to testify, with all humility, that he was more a *Servant* to Christ, than to any of the *Grand Rules* of the World; so that they might expect, when he

preached before them, to hear what was necessary for them to know, both referring to *Sin* and *Duty*, with the necessary rebukes to the first, and quicknings to the latter. When the Work of the great God, and of the greatest among Men in this Kingdom, did once accidentally a little interfere, he made no long dispute whether should be served first, as I'll give you one Instance, though I might give you several; He, being once preaching in the Church of *Covent-Garden*, received a Message from the King to have him come then to Court, that his Majesty might speak with him; upon the first intimation of this he descended from the Pulpit, but told the Messenger, *That he was then (as he saw) employed in God's Business, which as soon as he had done, he would attend upon the King to understand his pleasure.* Thus much for his *Preaching*; which you see did highly testify his love to, and labour after, Souls. He testified these also,

3. *In his Repetition of Sermons.* Which he endeavoured to advance where he came, knowing the slipperiness of most Mens Memories, what uncertain hold they take of Divine Things, he thought it highly necessary to befriend and help them, by the repetition of so good and precious Truths as Sermons comprehend. All Learning is this way attained; and what Learning more difficult than that which is *Divine*? Surely then none is more needful to be repeated to us again than this. While he preached in *St. Katherines* in *Dublin*, his custom was to draw up the sum of what he had delivered into Questions and Answers, and the next Sabbath Persons of good esteem voluntarily offered themselves to repeat the Answers before the whole Congregation. Every Lord's Day at Night he always had the Sermon he preached in the Morning repeated to his own Family, and what number soever pleased to come besides. I never yet knew a Family eminent for Religion, where this Holy Practice was not in use, if there was but any One in it capable to perform it. This was the way of those noble *Bereans*, whom *Paul* commends above many other Professors of Christianity, for they did really repeat *Paul's* Sermons o're again, in order to the judging them by the Scriptures, and themselves by what he delivered.

4. *In Heavenly Discourse and Converse upon all Occasions.* This was another way his love to, and labour after Souls, did appear. If you took him upon the *Road*, he could easily spiritualize all Objects, and turn the Journey Heavenwards: If in a *Visit*, he was more importunate to see and help the state of the Soul, than that of the Body: If at his *Table*, there you should find him clearing Difficulties of Scripture, especially when Learned Men did associate or visit him; however, improving

proving every Subject exceedingly to the Edification of his Hearers ; the most Learned or the meanest Capacities might very much improve by his Table-Talk: He was so excellent in this, that Dr. Bernard says, It oiten put him in mind of the Speech of the Queen of Sheba to Solomon, *Happy are these thy Servants that stand about thee, and continually hear thy Wisdom.*

His love to Souls, and labour after their chiefest good, did appear,

5. *And ult. In his strenuous endeavours to convert the blind Followers of the Romish Antichrist ;* (As he was highly confident of the *morality of the Sabbath*, so also that the *Man of Sin*, spoken of by Paul, was the Bishop of Rome ; and often wished that some of our Learned Men of late had spared their pains when they went about to prove the contrary). Oh how did he pity and mourn over those poor deluded Souls, who are kept in all the darkness possible, that they may not so much as whisper one syllable against the juggles and fooleries of that pretended Holy Church? All along the large Tract of his Ministry, he used all possible endeavours to do these miserable Souls good, to bring them to the Light, that they might importunately fly away from that eternal danger, even their very Religion leads them into: He laboured to gain the Souls of these Men by frequent *Writing*, constant *Preaching*, and very many private *Conferences* ; and did now and then rescue some of the choicest of them out of the jaws of destruction: As we have a famous Instance in that *Lady in Ireland* I mentioned before, who became not only a sound Protestant, but a very gracious Woman: Another we have in a great Lord in *England* who was so converted by him, as to continue faithful to his dying hour ; and one more, with which I'll cease to illustrate *his love to, and labour after, Souls* ; which will notably discover what I intimated in the beginning, and am to say something to, *viz.*

*That he was a very prudent manager of his endeavours for the good of Souls ;* which is a mighty requisite in a wise and successful Divine: without this all other endeavours, though numerous and proper, may never arrive at the desired end. The dear Jesus would not only have his Disciples *as harmless as Doves*, but also *as wise as Serpents*. The Instance take as follows ; (A Lord's eldest Son, who from his Childhood had been trained up in Popery, but was the owner of excellent Parts and Learning, was at last prevailed with by his Father to sojourn for a while with this Learned Prelate in *Drogheda*. The Wise Prelate studied nothing more than how he might take him by craft, (as Paul did the *Corinthians*) and therefore did not presently fall into discourse with him about his Religion, but recreated himself for a time in discoursing with him about some Philosophical Questions and School-Points,

Points, in which Studies he perceived the Gentleman was well versed, and much delighted : This he continued, till at last he gained so far upon his Affections, that of his own accord he moved some discourse about Matters of Religion ; the Bishop then finding him studious, did not presently go to instruct him in the Truth, but sought to puzzle him with doubts about his own Religion, which had for happy an influence upon the Gentleman's Conscience, as to awaken it to such a degree, that his Scruples could not be removed, though he had recourse to a *Monastery* hard by where they were debated ; so that at last he came with Tears to the Learned Primate for satisfaction, who promised to deal faithfully with him ; But, saith he, *those whom you trust do not so, for they will not suffer you to see with your Eyes, nor to understand the Scripture but according to their Churches Commentary.* Well, but the issue was, that after the Gentleman had prayed, meditated, and conferred with the Primate for some time, he came into the Church unexpected, and after Sermon made a confession of his Faith, and proclaimed a hearty farewell to the *Romish* Way.

Thus you have sufficiently seen his love to, and labour after, Souls, with the prudent management of Actings referring unto them ; which was the last thing to be spoke to in Matters of Religion. Now put all these things together, and we may really think that what has been said of him as to these Matters, has been rather short of him, than beyond his true worth and excellency therein. *Hoornbeck* says he was, *Magnus Vir & Ætate, Doctrinâ, ac Pietate excellens admodum atque venerandus.* A great Divine of our own, says, in the words of *Virgil* a little changed,

——— *O famâ ingens, ingentior arte,  
Armachane, quibus te Cælo laudibus æquem ?  
Doctrinamve tuam mirer, doctosque labores,  
An Pietas laudanda prius ?*———

*Note* Sixthly, I am to give you any account of *some extraordinary Providences that beset him, or referr'd to him.* It would be very much if such an extraordinary Man should not have some extraordinary Things belonging to his Life. I'll give you an account of several of these with much brevity.

1. *His change of Study and Desgn.* It was no small Action of the Divine Hand, to give a young Man (capable of the Glory of the World) an unwearied inclination to the *humbling Work of the Ministry*; especially when his *Father* had designed him, even to his dying-day (without any change in his inclination to the last) for the State and Court ; where his  
vast



vast Endowments of Nature and Art would have raised him to Places and Degrees of the highest Rank : To see such an One (I say) unsatisfied in any thing else but such Projects as oblige a Man to humble himself even to the meanest Souls he meets withal to bring them to Christ, to make himself an Object to the buffetings of Men and Devils, to live in the constant denial of himself, to crucifie his desires and hopes unto great things in this lower World ; to hug and kiss the Cross of Christ without one winch or murmur ; and to betake himself as he did to these, like *Moses*, when things of the highest Splendor offered themselves, and he by his Father's Death left to his own Conduct, was great, and very great, and shewed an extraordinary appearance of God in the thing.

2. *The Temptations of Satan.* He's a crafty Enemy, as full of malignity as he can hold, and has arrived at a vast skill in the predicting of future things ; and will be sure to oppose to the utmost all such as shall obstruct his Designs, as he easily concluded the rising greatness of this Man, both in Learning and Godliness, would endeavour and perform, if some way or other he did not divert him in his Labours and pious Inclinations ; he therefore first set upon him with *Desperation*, as supposing the plausible pretences of Religion therein, God's Justice being most strict against that which all humane Nature is sadly defiled withal, and which an ingenuous Mind cannot but aggravate, and more especially when it first comes to the true Light of it self and God : Here the Impetuous Adversary plyed his business night and day, to the lamentable disturbance of him whose Conscience was but tender, and just before had known none of these things ; but this he waded through, and in good time got to the quiet Shore. The next assault was to loosen him in his Life and Labours, to take him off his zealous endeavours after Learning and Holiness, and to trifle away his Life in unuseful Recreations : This Temptation went a long way, and got but too much ground, but by the supply of the All-sufficient Grace of God, he not only conquered this, but prevented his most enraged Adversary from ever getting so much ground again. These things, though they seem small to some, yet were represented by himself in his more experienced and settled Age, *as very troublesome and dangerous to him ; professing the conquest cost him many a Tear, extraordinary Prayer, Watching and Resolution*, as has been said in part before.

3. *Surprising Business, which without preparation he performed to a wonder.* All surprises in things that are great, are difficult to manage wisely and with ease ; yea, so difficult, as the most stick in the narrow Passage, and return baffled and disgraced : As for Instance, to extricate a Man's self out of false Reports very displeasing to the Mind of a jealous

lous King, but this he did; and not only by a short converse, to beget a good Opinion of himself in the King's Mind, but to be highly honoured with his *favour*, and immediately *advanced* to considerable Dignity. Further, to engage in some of the most Scholastical (and sometimes Political) Controversies and Disputations, and that with some of the most learned (or crafty) Men in the World, without time to prepare himself in, if not almost to know of what he was to do before he entered upon the Work; and yet here also to come off with glory and success: To do Grand Actions before Persons or Assemblies of the highest grandeur, and that when altogether unpremeditated, and yet with great dexterity to succeed, does add much Fame and Greatness to a Man's History and Worth.

4. *His Power in Prayer.* He was like *Jacob*, that could upon any emergency wrestle all night with God, and at last prevail. This was the way he delivered himself from the forementioned Temptations, and fitted himself for surprizing Business, as I could give you particulars, but shall forbear, because I must draw to a period, *Vid. in ejus Vit. Ber. p. 24. & Cla. p. 286. in fol.* One that knew him, and conversed with him above most, saith, *His experiences in Prayer were many, and very observable in the return of his desires in kind, and that immediately when he had been in some distresses.* And I may add, when Protestantism in Ireland hath been under great Distresses, it hath been supposed (by many that made a critical observation of him and these times) that his most incessant Prayers hath turned the Scales to the weakening of Popery, and cutting off its Designs, to cut off all besides itself by Rebellion, Blood, and War. The very first Prayers he put up after he was ordained, was on a Fasting-day, at which time the Battel of *Kinsale* was fought, and being his *first Fruits*, and most fervently managed, *I know no reason* (says one) *why the success might not very much be ascribed to his Prayers;* for God gave the Victory on the better side. So his Prayers were wonderful night and day, with deep groans, that the barbarous Rebellion in *Ireland* in 1641, might not destroy the Protestant Religion there; which God graciously answered him in.

5. *The defection of his Mother from the Truth;* which will prove not a little strange, when you consider what a most knowing, holy, and humble Son he was; how observant and tender he was over her, and how fit above all her other Advisers, to give her the best Counsel for her Soul, and the Exercises of the devout Life: But this frail and weak Woman being ensnar'd by some Popish Priests in her Son's absence in *England*, continued to her dying day, persevering in her *Vows* to these Murderers of precious Souls, notwithstanding all the Tears, Advice, and Importunities her *Son* could use: This begat the boasting and triumphs of the Papists, but was one of the *greatest griefs* he ever

ever met withal in his Life. Thus it was also with Dr. *Whitaker*, being not able to prevail in matter of Religion, either with his *Father* or *Mother*: *but* there are some single things which God denies the *greatest* <sup>showe</sup> *Men* for the exercise of their Graces, and to shew that they are but *Men*, and he is *God*.)

6. *Prophetick Impulse*. He really gave out several true *Predictions* or *Prophecies* of things, a considerable time before they came to pass, and some not yet accomplished. He was one that abhor'd *Enthusiastick Notions*; he was too great, considerate, rational, and knowing, to admit of such idle freaks and whims; but he profess'd, *That several times in his Life he had many things impress upon his Mind concerning future Events, with so much warmth and importunity, that he was not able to keep them secret, but lay under an unavoidable necessity of making them known*. But seeing that *Wise* and *Learned* Man Dr. *Bernard*, and some others really *Wise*, *Sober*, and *Orthodox*, have given us some particular account of these; I'll, in as few words as is possible, set them before you.

1. *He foretold the Rebellion in Ireland forty years before it came to pass, with the very time in which it should break forth*. In the year 1601, preaching before the State in *Dublin*, in his Application he mourned over that Toleration which was just then allowed to the *Popish Idolatry*, and alluding to *Ezek. 4. 6.* concerning the Prophet's bearing the *Iniquity* of *Judah* forty days, the Lord therein appointing him a day for a year; This, by consent of Interpreters, signifying the time of forty years to the destruction of *Jerusalem*, and that Nation for their *Idolatry*; He made then this direct Application in relation to that connivance of Popery, *viz. From this year will I reckon the Sin of Ireland, that those whom you now embrace shall be your ruin, and you shall bear this Iniquity*. This Prediction was exactly true; for if you reckon from the year he preached it in, to the year the *Rebellion* (and *Destruction of Ireland*) began, done by those *Papists* and *Popish Priests* then connived at, which was 1641; you'll find it was just forty years: And that which makes this much more observable is, That he then put a Note in the Margin of his Bible, and reserved the Notes of that Sermon, with the year and day he preached it, which was one of the last Sermons he wrote throughout word for word, ever after only writing the Heads, and putting all the rest to the strength of his Memory: And which still heightens the observableness of it, is what Dr. *Bernard* says, That for near twenty years time before the fulfilling of this, (that was from the Doctor's first conversing with him) he always lived in the expectation of the fulfilling thereof; and the nearer the time approached, the more confident he was, *that it would be accomplish'd, and was even at the door*: This, says the Doctor, I often used to wonder and admire

at,

at, because there was no visible appearance of any thing that had a tendency that way : But more especially, says he, did I stand and wonder, when in the year before the *Rebellion* broke forth, he taking his leave of me, being called into *England*, advised me to a serious preparation for *heavy sorrows and miseries I should see before I saw him again* ; this he delivered with as great confidence as if it had been within the view of sense : It put me in mind of that of *Amos* 3. 7. *Surely the Lord will do nothing but he will reveal it unto his Servants the Prophets* ; at least to so great an One, and of that *Nation*.

2. *The Changes and Miseries of England both in Church and State*. It would scarce seem credible to relate what a great number of years before any such thing made the least sign of appearance, he did confidently foretel the Changes that have since come to pass in *England*, both in Ecclesiastick and Civil Affairs ; This was experienced by many that conversed with him. And there is also a Passage in his Tract *De Primordiis Ecclesiarum Britannicarum*, of the very same importance ; where, after he hath at large related the manner of the utter destroying of this Church and State by the *Saxons*, about 550 years after Christ ; one of the Reasons he gives for his prolixity therein, is, *His foresight of a like Judgment yet behind, if timely Repentance and Reformation did not prevent it*. He would often mourn upon the foresight of this, long before it came.

3. *He gave mournful intimations of the untimely death of our Sovereign Charles the First*. He would often be speaking, when the King was in greatest success, of what he feared, and trembled at, concerning him ; which was one Reason why he put up constant *Prayers*, and gave all the *Advice*, he could, for the preventing of any thing that might have the least tendency that way. And once he spoke to this distinct enough in a publick Sermon in *St. Mary's in Cambridge*, about twenty years time before it came to pass.

*his own  
humility*

4. *He would often predict his own Poverty in worldly things*. It was a thing very much stranged at by many that knew him, to hear, in his greatest Prosperity, (when he had most, and was in all probability as well settled in the World as any Person in his Circumstances could be, to hear, I say) his humbling Predictions of that low and mean Estate he should be reduced to before his Death ; of which his confidence was not to be diverted, notwithstanding all Arguments to the contrary.

5. *Upon the Confusions and Divisions in England in Matters of Religion, he would foretel sad Consequences as the punishment of them* : Many of which I my self have seen ; I pray God neither I nor my Posterity may be convinced that he was a *Prophet*, in the fulfilling of what is yet unaccomplished. As he foretold these long enough before they broke forth,

forth, not only in private Converse, but also in a Sermon of his before a great Auditory, upon 1 Cor. 14. 33. So afterward when they were existent, he would frequently be telling of several fearful Judgments which would be the doom of them.

6. And ult. That the greatest stroke to the Reformed Churches was yet to come. I remember (says Dr. Bernard) a Speech of his in the year 1624, uttered before many Witnesses, which he hath often confirmed since, viz. That he was persuaded the greatest stroke to the Reformed Churches was yet to come; that the time of the utter ruin of the See of Rome should be when she thought her self most secure; according to that Text, Rev. 18. 7. His Farewel Sermon, in or near the place where he had lived and preached in England upon James 1. 15. was much observed to speak the same things with the same Emphasis. (Not long before his Death, he being asked whether he thought that great Persecution (which he had formerly spoken of to fall upon the Protestant Churches) were past, or yet to come; He then turned his Eyes towards the Face of the Inquirer, and fixing them there in a strange kind of manner, as he used to do when he spake not his own words, and when the Power of God was upon him, said, Fool not your self with vain hopes of its being past: for I tell you, What you have seen is but the beginning of Sorrow, to that which is yet to come on all the Protestant Churches, which e're long will fall under a sharper Persecution then ever yet they have had upon them, and that by the cruel Hands of the Papists.) One day he being found in his Room with many Tears in his Eyes, and upon his Face, and being asked the reason of them, told the Inquirer, That his thoughts were exercised in contemplating the great Misery and Persecution which were drawing nigh; and because he saw how sharp and bitter they should be, he could not, without a flood of Tears, lay out his Thoughts upon them. Many such things he spake of this nature to many differing Persons, and in differing Places, which I have seen in Manuscript by safe Hands; but I'll add no more, not so much as that preparatory Advice which he used to give his Friends in order to their being ready for such sorrowful and lamentable Days. There are many Witnesses yet alive that have heard him speak on this Subject, with much confidence, and as much sorrow. I confess, my business here is only to be an Historian, otherwise were I to write upon the Subject, I should easily affirm I cannot tell how to be fond of Common and Modern Prophecies; but yet when I remember the words of a German Synod. in the year 1633. *Nondum ullam Ecclesiam, aut Consistorium, vel Academiam, novas id genus Prophetias penitus rejecisse, aut condemnasse, &c. That as yet no Church, or Consistory, or University, have altogether rejected or condemned such kind of new Prophecies, &c.* then certainly (to use the words of Dr. Spencer, Van. Vulg. Prop. p. 111.) it will ill become my privacy

and obscurity to take the Chair, and pronounce confidently, That Folly is with them all, and that there is nothing of Divine Prophecy now in the World besides the vain noise and affectation thereof. I'll close with the words of Dr. Bernard, speaking on these things; *Now, howsoever, I am as far from heeding of Prophecies this way as any, yet with me 'tis not improbable, that so great a Prophet, so sanctified from his youth, so knowing and eminent throughout the Universal Church, might have at some special times more than ordinary Motions and Impulses, in doing the Watchman's part, of giving warning of Judgments approaching.*

The next Extraordinary Providence that besel or referr'd to this Great Man, was,

7. *Reproach.* One would have thought that such a Man as this, from his wonderful *Humility*, should have been too low for *Envy*; and from his as wonderful *Accomplishments*, and transcending *Worth*, and most exact and critical *manner of living*, should have been too high for *Reproach*; but it seems nothing can escape its malignant Tongue, no, not *perfect Innocence* it self. But that which made this look the more extraordinary, was that this *Reproach* came from such as were obliged to have praised and admired him; and that when reproached he had even *Kings* to vindicate him: As when he was reproached for being Heterodox to the *Discipline* of that Church in which he was born, he had King *James* to clear him; when accused once and again (even in print) to have given our late *Sovereign* some Advice about the Death of the *Earl of Strafford*, that had a very unlovely and untheological Aspect; the King once hearing the Report, answered the Man that delivered it *in very great passion, and with an Oath professed his Innocency therein.* He was really a Man of very great *Innocence*, being constant-ly both sincere and just; what the *Apostle* saith of *Demetrius*, might be said of him, (with very little variation) *viz. That he merited a good Report of all Men, and of the Truth it self.*

8. *Success in his Labours.* He converted many from the *Romish Way*, that were of great Parts, and strongly fixed in their Principles before he undertook them; he was so successful herein, that the *Priests* prohibited the *People* from hearing or conversing with him, or coming near him, as if his Shadow had enjoyed a Power (something resembling that which was supposed to be in *Peter's*, *viz.*) *to Heal and Cure:* His *Bow* turn'd not back, neither did his *Sword* return empty, but his *Weapons* were mighty through God to the pulling down strong Holds. Whilst he preached in *Oxford*, many young Scholars were brought under the true saving Principles and Practice of the Gospel, as many of them have declared in an after-Day; and several young Divines, of a more excellent qualification than ordinary, have profest themselves to receive, under God, their vitality in Religion from him. Towards his

his latter end especially, it was common for a Sermon or two of his to convert many Souls from the folly of their ways unto God. One says of him, *God was mighty in him which way soever he bent himself, either in Conviction, Conversion, or Consolation; wherein he had the Tongue of the Learned given to him; witness the many Souls who were and are his Epistle, known and read of all Men; witness again, the success God gave to divers of his Encounters with Adversaries to the true Religion.*

9. *Preservation from, or in danger.* His coming out of Ireland into England, upon the invitation of some Eminent Persons, is much to be taken notice of, in the year 1640, being but just before the Rebellion; as if (according to the Angel's Speech to Lot) *nothing could be done till he were gone forth thence.* There is no doubt to be made, but if he had continued there, the bloody Papists would have aimed at, and endeavoured more his destruction than any other Man's in that Kingdom; so that his absence made his preservation great. In the year 1645, he being upon a Journey, was barbarously used by some Soldiers, but yet through the Gracious and Almighty Providences, he escaped their hands without any considerable harm to his Person. Not long after he fell into a painful sickness, wherein he bled four days together, so that he swooned, and all hopes of Life were past: his Death was in most places lamented, and so believed at Court, that a Letter came out for a Successor in his Primacy in Ireland; but he recovered again, and wholly escaped so great a danger, to the admiration of all that saw him in it.

10. And lastly, *Supply in Want.* The Rebellion in Ireland destroyed that which belonged to his Primacy, and also his Personal Estate, so that he was reduced to great straits: Concerning which a Learned Man says, *Quem, Hibernia parens ingrata, tali Filio & Presule indigna, bonis (præterquam Animi) omnibus exutum, in exilium misit.* Yet after this he had some supply in Places where he Preached, as Covent-Garden and *Lincolns-Inn*; some supply from that Eminent Faithful Friend of his the *Coun-62* *tefs of Peterborough*; but the largest supply was that Annual Stipend which the Parliament for some years bountifully gave him: and though this was suspended the two last years of their sitting; yet, when they were dissolved, it was renew'd by Cromwel, \* and so by him he was supplied with a competent Allowance to his dying day; and also had now and then very considerable Sums extraordinary bestowed upon him. You remember I told you before that he had sufficient Supplies offered him both in Holland and France if he would have accepted them; so that God raised him up supplies among Acquaintance and Strangers, Friends and Enemies.

Thus I have set before you some of those Extraordinary Providences that beset him, or refer'd to him. The

\* This is  
testified by a  
Witness now  
living this year  
1701.

*Seventh* and last thing is, *His Death*. That which fore-run it was his loss of *Sight*, which was so great that no *Spectacles* could help him, only when the *Sun* shone he could see at a *Window*, for which reason he used to follow the shining of it from *Room* to *Room*, and in *Winter* the *Window* was often opened for him to write at, so greedy he was of improving every remaining moment of *Life*, and every remaining part of *Sense* to the *Glory of God*, and *Advantage of his Church*: But when he was thus employ'd, his *Strength* was much decay'd, and the *Powers of Nature* began to sink. That day he entred upon his closing *Sickness*, (*viz.* *March 20.*) he had been, as every day, well employ'd, labouring, as long as he had *Light*, in his *Chronologia Sacra*; from which work he went to visit a *Gentlewoman* sick in the *House*, to whom he gave most excellent *Advice* to furnish her for the *dying hour*; in which he was so *Practical* and so *Divine*, that you would have taken him to have spoken forth of *Heaven* before he came there. That night about eight a clock he complained of his *Hip*, the next morning of a great pain in his *Side*, which the *Physicians* could not remove, so that his *Spirits* decaying, he applied himself to *Prayer*, getting others to do the same for him; and upon every little abatement of *Torture*, he was giving most *Heavenly Instruction* to all those that attended him. When the *Morning* was well got on, he had a *Minister* to assist him in *Prayer* for a while, but then desired to be left to his own *private performance*: The last words he was heard to speak, were about one a Clock in the *Afternoon*, presently after which he died, begging forgiveness of *Sin*, with a low *Voice*, but with importunity, he raised it as high as he could, and said, *But, Lord, in special forgive me my Sins of Omission*. In this he had his wish, for he often desired that he might leave the *World* as *Mr. Perkins* did, *crying for Mercy and Forgiveness*. But was it *Omission* he begged the forgiveness of with his most fervent last *Breath of Life*? And that He who was never known to omit an *hour*, but always employed, even the *Shred-ends* of his *Life*, in the *Service* of his *Great Lord and Master*? Oh what shall we do when we come to finish up our *Course*? We who have lost or misemploy'd a great part of our days, however many and many an hour of *Life*? Thus, *March 21, A. D.* 1666 after he had enriched and blessed the *World* by his presence for *seventy five years*, this glorious *Sun* ceased to shine in this lower *World*, but ascended the higher, where it shall send forth most glorious and illustrious *Beams*, without any danger of the least obscurity imaginable. When this was done, he had been *Primate of Ireland* just 31 years, and a most powerful industrious *Preacher* for about 55 years. He had nothing to leave but his *Library*, and divers imperfect *Copies* of his intended *Works*. His *Funeral* was very splendidly performed at the *Publick Charge* in the *Chappel of Henry* the seventh at *Westminster*. His *Death* was lamented by



by all those in the *Christian World* that had any respect to *Sobriety, Learning, or Religion*: The great *Foreign Divines* could not hear his Death mentioned for some years after, without *Tears* in their *Eyes* and *Sobs* in their *Speech*; but much more reason had we of these *Nations* to be of the same *Inclination* and *Practice*, for the loss was more ours than theirs. Thus we saw this *Holy Man* leave the *Protestant World*, attended up to Heaven with the *Tears, Sighs, Praises,* and *Admirations* of all that valued *purer Christianity*, or such *Accomplishments* as contribute to advance the same: For *Learning* and *Piety* He was the *Glory of our Israel*; and for *Strength* and *Support* the *Chariot and Horsemen* thereof.

But I'll close with two *Characters* given Him by two *Great Divines* of our Church; ---The one says, *A Divine and Apostolical Bishop he was, and next the Apostles, Evangelists, and Prophets, as great a Pastor and Teacher, and trusted with as much of God's Mind, as I believe any one since hath been; a Man so famous, as never to be named without some Preface of Honour.*---The other (among the highest Rank for *Learning* and *Dignity*) says,

*Pietatem ejus insignem; perpetuam in Legendo, Scribendo, Concionando industriam; eruditionem in re Antiquaria, Theologia, & omni Humanioris Literatura genere summam, cum aequali Modestia conjunctam; fusiùs Laudare, nec opus nec mihi animus; Virtus enim Ufferiana est sui ipsius Panegyrica, laudis nostrae non indiga. Vivit, eternumque vivit in Scriptis suis cedro dignis, in Ore & corde Doctorem, in memoria Hominum, & Monumentis Temporum; illumque Posteritas sera venerabitur.*

His excellent *Holiness*; continual diligence in *Reading, Writing, and Preaching*; choicest skill in *Antiquity, Theology,* and every kind of more Man-like *Learning*, matcht with equal *Humility*; there is not any need of larger *Praises*, nor have I a mind (or power) thereunto; for his rare *Endowments* are his own chiefest commendation, not wanting our praise. He lives, and shall live for ever in his own *Writings*, deserving an endless preservation in the *Mouth and Heart* of the *Learned*, in the *Memory* of *Men*, and *Monuments of Times*; and *Posterity* at a long distance will (even adore, or at least highly) honour him.

And then closeth with the words of *Horace* concerning a great *Ancient Poet*; but much better belonging to this glorious *Modern Divine*.

*Quo nihil majus meliusve Terris  
Fata donavere, bonique Divi ;  
Nec dabunt, quamvis redeant in Aurum  
Tempora priscaum.*

Than whom a greater thing, or good,  
Heaven hath not lent the Earth, nor shou'd,  
Though it refin'd the Age to th' old  
*Saturnian Gold.*

---

*F I N I S.*

---

*Postscript*

## Postscript to the Reader.

Reader,

**I** Do not pretend to have set down in the foregoing *Life* every thing that might have been written concerning this most *excellent Man*, for that would have filled a large *Volume*, but only to have given thee something of every thing I could find, which was what was expected of me by those that set me at Work. I could have said something more to many Passages of his *Life*, not only the Extraordinary Ones, but also some of a lower Rank; but some things I could not publish, without either displeasing or disgracing the Living or the Dead, it may be deservedly, yet neither of them looked pleasing in my eye; and therefore as much as was possible I endeavoured to pass them by without so much as taking notice of them.

The *Method* I have taken in what I have done, is not that which is *Common* and *Natural*, *viz.* to trace all his *Actions* from one Year to another till the period of his *Life*, blending things of the same kind with variety of other Matter; this would have been only to have performed what hath been done before, which would have been (*crambe-recocta*) insipid and nauseating, so that there would have been nothing *new*, but only the *hints* of additional things: but the *Method* I have here observed is *Artificial*, by which you find all things of the same Nature put together, though at differing Seasons of his *Life*; which the wary and intelligent *Reader* will see hath both its *use* and *pleasure*.

Some may fancy I have said too much in his Praise, but it must be because they are ignorant how near *Perfection* his *Attainments* and *Practice* were, and how extraordinary difficult it is to arrive at such things. You have seen before that he was *loved* and *admired* by all *Sorts* and *Seets* of Men that were industrious *Owners* of *Christianity*; I never heard of any Man that did in the least reflect on Him to his disgrace, but either he was of a selfish, passionate, untoward *Spirit*, or of a corrupt *Life* and *Conversation*; or at best, under a *gross Mistake*, and so foolish as to report *Uncertainties*.

Now seeing that usually *Examples* teach more than *Precepts*, I pray God this noble and exact *One*, may enter into, and influence the *Hearts* and *Lives* of all those that are of his *Function*, *That they may go and do likewise*; for his Holy *Man's Life*, *though he be dead*, yet *speaketh*, and presseth this *Duty* upon them: And where in this later Age of the World can they have a better Example, for unwearied *Industry* about the best *Things*, such as really greaten a Man, and make him most use-

ful to the Church of Christ? For extraordinary Learning, he fully and distinctly comprehending the most things deserving the knowledge of a Linguist, a Philosopher, an Historian, a Chronologer, a Critick, a Divine, &c? A Man whose Worth and Greatness could scarcely be overmatch'd with any thing in these Times. found among Men, unless by his own Humility, Meekness, and Self-denial: But I may say in the words of a Learned Man, (bearing his Testimony to another's Praise of this Glorious Usher) *Omnia quæ meditemur Elogia multis parasangis superavit: Excelsum adeo & Sanctimonie & Doctrinæ apicem attigit, ut non immeritò ad Cælos ipsum laudibus evexit, &c.* that is, He very far exceeds all the Commendations we can contrive to give him; having arrived at such a noble (and lofty) pitch of Holiness and Learning, that he does not undeservedly carry him up as high as the Heavens in his Praises, &c.

Reader; If the perusal of these Things hath but stirr'd up thy more Divine Ambition and Endeavours constantly to do all thou canst **THAT THOU MAY'ST EXCEL**, He that drew them up will rejoice; the Angels will rejoice; and, which is above all other Joy to thee, thou shalt rejoice throughout all the Ages of Eternity; and this I wish thee as a most hearty

Farewel.

## A D D E N D A.

O R,

Some more Memoirs of the Life of Arch-Bishop  
U S H E R.

*His Model of Church-Government: Or, The Reduction of Episcopacy unto the Form of Synodical Government received in the Ancient Church, proposed in the Year 1641. as an Expedient for the prevention of those Troubles which afterwards did arise about the Matter of Church-Government.*

*Episcopal and Presbyterial Government conjoined.*

**B**Y the Order of the Church of England, all Presbyters are charged to <sup>(a)</sup> minister the Doctrine, and Sacraments, and the Discipline of Christ, as the Lord hath commanded, and as this Realm hath received the same. And that we might the better understand what the Lord had commanded therein, the Exhortation of St. Paul to the Elders of <sup>(b)</sup> the Church of Ephesus, is appointed to be read unto them at the time of their Ordination: *Take heed unto your selves, and to all the Flock, among whom the Holy Ghost hath made you Overseers, to\* rule the Congregation of God, which he hath purchased with his Blood.*

<sup>(a)</sup> The Form of ordering of Priests.

<sup>(b)</sup> *Ibidem*, Acts 20. 17, 18.

\* *προμαρτυρῆσαι* taken, Mich. 2. 6. and Rev. 12. 5. and 19.

Of the many Elders who in common thus ruled the Church of Ephesus, there was one President whom our Saviour in his Epistle to the Church, in a peculiar manner stileth the <sup>(c)</sup> Angel of the Church of Ephesus. And Ignatius in another Epistle written about twelve Years after to the same Church, calleth the Bishop thereof. Betwixt which Bishop and the Presbytery of that Church what an harmonious Consent there was in the ordering the Church-Government, the same Ignatius doth fully there declare by the Presbytery (with St. Paul) understanding the Company of the rest of the Presbytery or Elders who then had a Hand, not only in the delivery of the Doctrine and Sacraments, but also in the Administration of the Discipline of Christ. For further Proof whereof we have that known Testimony of Tertul-

<sup>(c)</sup> Rev. 2. 1.



True it is, that in our Church this kind of Presbyterian Government hath been long disused, yet seeing it still professed that every Pastor hath a right to rule the Church (from whence the Name of Rector also was given at first unto him) and to administer the Discipline of Christ, as well as to dispence the Doctrine and Sacraments. And the restraint of the Exercise of that Right proceedeth only from the Custom now received in this Realm: No Man can doubt but by another Law of the Land this Hindrance may be well removed. And how easily this ancient Form of Government, by the united Suffrages of the Clergy, might be revived again, and with what little shew of Alteration the Synodical Conventions of the Pastors of every Parish might be accorded, with the Presidency of the Bishops of each Diocess and Province, the indifferent Reader may quickly perceive by the perusal of the ensuing Propositions.

## I.

In every Parish the Rector or the incumbent Pastor, together with the Church-Wardens and Sidemen, may every Week take notice of such as live scandalously in that Congregation, who are to receive such several Admonitions and Reproofs as the quality of their Offence shall deserve; and if by this means they cannot be reclaimed, they may be presented unto the next Monthly Synod, and in the mean time be debarred by the Pastor from access unto the Lord's Table.

The Parochial Government answerable to the Church-Session in Scotland.

## II.

Whereas by a Statute in the Twenty sixth of King *Henry VIII.* (revived in the first Year of Queen *Elizabeth*) Suffragans are appointed to be erected in twenty six several Places of this Kingdom, the Number of them might very well be conformed unto the Number of the several rural Deaneries into which every Diocess is subdivided, which being done, the Suffragan (supplying the place of those who in the ancient Church were called *Chorepiscopi*) might every Month assemble a Synod of all the Rectors, or incumbent Pastors within the Precinct, and according to the major part of their Voices conclude all Matters that should be brought into Debate before them.

The Presbyterian or Monthly Synods answerable to the Scottish Presbytery or Ecclesiastical Meeting.

To this Synod [the Rector and] Churchwardens might present such impenitent Persons, as by Admonition and Suspension from the Sacrament would not be reformed; who, if they should still remain

contumacious and incorrigible, the Sentence of Excommunication might be decreed against them by the Synod, and accordingly be executed in the Parish where they lived. Hitherto also all things that concerned the Parochial Ministers might be referred whether they did touch their Doctrine or their Conversation: As also the censure of all new Opinions, Heresies and Schisms which did arise within that Circuit, with Liberty of Appeal if need so require unto the Diocesane Synod.

## III.

The Diocesane Synod might be held once or twice in the Year as it should be thought most convenient, therein all the Suffragans and the rest of the Rectors or Incumbent Pastors [*or a certain select Number out of every Deanery within that Diocefs*] might meet; with whose Consent, or the major part of them, all things might be concluded by the Bishop or \* Superintendent (call him whither you will) or in his Absence by one of the Suffragans, whom he should depute in his stead to be Moderator of that Assembly. Here all matters of greater Moment might be taken into Consideration, and the Orders of the Monthly Synods revised and (if need be) reformed. And if here also any matter of Difficulty could not receive a full Determination, it might be referred to the next Provincial or National Synod.

Diocesane Synods answerable to the Provincial Synods in Scotland.  
\* Ἐπισκοπάρχης, i. e. Superintendentes unde nomen Episcopi trallum est. Hieron. Epist. 85. ad Syagrium.

## IV.

The Provincial and National Synod answerable to the general Assembly in Scotland.  
The Provincial Synod might consist of all the Bishops and Suffragans, and such of the Clergy as should be elected out of every Diocefs within the Province. The Primate of either Province might be the Moderator of this Meeting (or in his room some one of the Bishops appointed by him) and all Matters be ordered therein by common Consent as in the former Assemblies. This Synod might be held every third Year, and if the Parliament do then sit (according to the Act for a Triennial Parliament) both the Primates and Provincial Synods of the Land might join together, and make up a National Council; wherein all Appeals from inferior Synods might be received, all their Acts examined, and all Ecclesiastical Constitutions which concern the State of the Church of the whole Nation established.



*Arch-Bishop USHER's Advices to Young Ministers at their Ordination.*

**T**HAT you may see how great a Master he was in the Art of gaining Souls (says Dr. Parr, page 87. in the Life of this great Man) it will not be amiss to insert here some of those Directions he used to give those who were newly entered into holy Orders, since they may not be unprofitable to such as mean seriously to undertake this Sacred Calling.

**I. R**EAD and Study the Scriptures carefully, wherein is the best Learning, and only infallible Truth; they can furnish you with the best materials for your *Sermons*; the only Rules of Faith and Practice; the most powerful motives to persuade and convince the *Conscience*; and the strongest arguments to confute all *Errors, Heresies, and Schisms*: Therefore be sure, let all your *Sermons* be congruous to them; and to this End, it is expedient that you understand them as well in the *Originals*, as in the *Translations*.

II. Take not hastily up other mens *Opinions* without due Trial, nor vent your own Conceits, but compare them first with the Analogy of Faith, and Rules of Holiness, recorded in the *Scriptures*, which are the proper Tests of all *Opinions* and Doctrines.

III. Meddle with *Controversies* and doubtful Points as little as may be in your *popular preaching*, lest you puzzle your hearers, or engage them in wrangling *Disputations*, and so hinder their Conversion, which is the main design of Preaching.

IV. Insist most on those Points that tend to effect sound Belief, sincere Love to God, Repentance for Sin, and that may persuade to *Holiness of Life*: Press these things home to the Conscience of your Hearers, as of absolute necessity, leaving no gap for evasions, but bind them as close as may be to their duty; and as you ought to preach *Sound and Orthodox Doctrine*, so ought you to deliver God's Message as near as may be in God's Words; that is, in such as are plain and intelligible, that the meanest of your *Auditors* may understand: To which end it is necessary to back all practical *Precepts* and *Doctrines*, with apt Proofs from the holy *Scriptures*; avoiding all *Exotick Phrases, Scholastick*

*Scholastick Terms*, unnecessary Quotations of *Authors*, and forced *Rhetorical Figures*, since it is not difficult to make easie things appear hard, but to render hard things easie is the hardest part of a good *Orator*, as well as *Preacher*.

V. Get your Hearts sincerely affected with the things you persuade others to embrace, that so you may preach *Experimentally*, and your Hearers perceive that you are in good earnest, and press nothing upon them but what may tend to their advantage, and which your self would venture your own *Salvation* on.

VI. Study and consider well the Subjects you intend to *Preach* on, before you come into the *Pulpit*, and then words will readily offer themselves; yet think what you are about to say, before you speak, avoiding all uncouth, phantastical words, or phrases, or nauseous, undecent, or ridiculous expressions, which will quickly bring *Preaching* into contempt, and make your *Sermons* and *Persons*, the subjects of *Sport* and *Merriment*.

VII. Dissemble not the Truths of God in any case, nor comply with the Lusts of Men, or give any countenance to Sin by word or deed.

VIII. But above all, you must never forget to order your own *Conversation* as becomes the *Gospel*, that so you may teach by *Example* as well as *Precept*, and that you may appear a good *Divine* every where, as well as in the *Pulpit*; for a Minister's *Life* and *Conversation* is more heeded than his *Doctrine*.

IX. Yet after all this, take heed you be not puffed up with *Spiritual Pride* of your own *Virtues*; nor with a vain conceit of your *Parts* or *Abilities*; nor yet be transported with the *Applause* of men, nor dejected, or discouraged with the *Scoffs* or *Frowns* of the wicked and profane.

To which I shall add one Advice more, which I received from a Person of great Worth, and Dignity in the *Church*, who had it from the Mouth of this great Master of Perswasion; it was concerning *Reproof*, where Men were to be dealt with that lay under great *Perjudices* and *Vices*, either by Education, Interest, Passion, or ill Habits, (Cases of much frequency) and therefore to render Admonitions of greater force upon them, his direction was, To avoid giving the Persons intended

to be wrought upon, any *Alarm* beforehand, that their *Faults* or *Errors* were designed to be attacked; for then the Persons concern'd look upon the *Preacher* as an *Enemy*, and set themselves upon their guard: On such occasions he rather recommended the chusing of a *Text* that stood only upon the borders of the difficult Subject; and if it might be, seem'd more to favour it; that so the obnoxious hearers may be rather surpris'd and undermined, than storm'd and fought with: And so the *Preacher*, as *St. Paul* expresses it, being crafty, may take them with guile.

He would also exhort those who were already engag'd in this *Holy Function*, and advis'd them how they might well discharge their duty in the *Church* of God, answerable to their *Calling*, to this Effect: You are engag'd in an excellent *Employment* in the *Church*, and intrusted with weighty Matters, as *Stewards* of our great Master, *Christ*, the great *Bishop*: Under him, and by his Commission, you are to endeavour to reconcile Men to God; to convert Sinners, and to build them up in the holy Faith of the *Gospel*, that they may be saved, and that *Repentance and Remission of Sins be preached in his Name*. This is of highest importance, and requires faithfulness, diligence, prudence and watchfulness. The Souls of Men are committed to our care and guidance; and the Eyes of *God*, *Angels* and *Men* are upon us, and great is the account we must make to our *Lord Jesus Christ*, who is the Supreme *Head* of his *Church*, and will at length reward or punish his Servants in this Ministry of his *Gospel*, as he shall find them faithful or negligent; therefore it behoves us to exercise our best Talents, labouring in the Lord's *Vineyard* with all diligence, that we may bring forth fruit, and that the fruit may remain. This is the *Work* we are separated for, and ordain'd unto; we must not think to be idle or careless in this *Office*, but must bend our Minds and Studies, and employ all our Gifts and Abilities in this Service: We must *Preach* the Word of Faith, that Men may believe aright; and the *Doctrine* and *Laws* of *Godliness*, that Men may act as becomes *Christians* indeed: For without *Faith*, no Man can please God; and without *Holiness*, no Man can enter into the Kingdom of Heaven.

I think good (under this Head of Ordination) to insert here a *Remarkable Story*, which I had from an ancient Reverend Divine of the *City of London*, who had it from the *Bishop's* own Mouth. A Smith with his Leather Apron came to him, Entreating his Grace to Ordain him; the good *Bishop* look'd on him with a smiling, not disdainful, Countenance, and asked him what he was; a Blacksmith, (said he) hast thou any Learning? (said the *Bishop*) no other but my Mother Tongue, (said the *Smith*) canst thou answer *Gainayers*? (continued the *Bishop*).

Bishop) dost thou not know this Kingdom of Ireland is fill'd with Priests and Jesuits? The Smith replied, that if his Grace would examine him he would answer him according to his ability; whereupon the Bishop tried him as to several Points in Divinity, in which the Smith gave him satisfaction to his admiration; the Bishop asked him what Parish he lived in? He told him the place (which I have forgot) and that the Minister of the place was very Sickly, and seldom preached; well (said the Bishop) I see thou has good Natural Parts, I will Write to the Minister to let thee have his Notes, and thou shalt Preach them, for I see thou hast a good Memory; accordingly the Bishop wrote to the Minister to let the Smith have some of his Notes to preach, which as soon as the Smith received, he got a Crown and mounted the Pulpit; the Bishop sent one of his Chaplains to hear him; the Chaplain acquainted his Grace that he delivered all by Memory, with great Affection and *Pathos*; the Bishop thought with himself that this Man may do some good, so sent for him, and not only Ordained him, but gave him a Living of 80*l. per Annum*; in that Parish there were about 50 Families, whereof 30 of them were Papists, and about 20 Protestants; the Smith by his good Preaching and Living, in a Year or two made strange alterations, so that in so short a time above 30 of the Families were Protestants, and but 20 Popish.

Thus it pleases God many times to effect great Things by unlikely Instruments, therefore we ought not to despise the Day of small Things. We see how this good Bishop respected and preferred this Person, (tho' a Poor Handicrafts-man) for his good Natural Parts; and what a Spirit of Discerning he had, that he would prove useful in the Church of God.

His Love to the Souls of Men was so great, that he contrived, both by Preaching and otherwise, to do good to the several Sorts of Christians, and particularly did desire Mr. Baxter (as Mr. Baxter tells us in his Preface to his *Call to the Unconverted*) 'to write 'a *Directory* for the several Ranks of Professed Christians, 'which might distinctly give each one their Portion, beginning with 'the Unconverted, and then proceeding to the Babes in Christ, and 'then to the Strong, and mixing some Special Helps against the several Sins that they are addicted to. Mr. Baxter excused himself upon account of his own Weakness; but after the Bishop's Death, he tells us 'his Words came often into his Mind, and the great Reverence he 'bore to him, did incline him to think with some Complacency of his 'Motion; and so we know Mr. Baxter has publish'd Books proper for the aforesaid Ranks of Christians.

The Heads of the

# Body of Divinity,

Divided into two and fifty Heads.

1. **O**F Christian Religion, and the Grounds thereof; God's Word contained in the Scriptures. 2 Pet. 1. 19, 21.  
1 Tim. 3. 15, 16, 17.
2. Of God and his Attributes, Perfection, Wisdom, and Omnipotency. 1 Tim. 1. 17.  
Pfal. 147. 5.
3. Of God's Goodness and Justice, and the Persons of the Trinity. Exod. 34. 6, 7.  
1 John 5. 7.
4. Of God's Kingdom, and the Creation of all things. 1 Chron. 29. 11, 12.  
Pfal. 145. 10, 11, 12.  
Acts 17. 24.  
Gen. 1. 26, 27.
5. Of the Creation of Man in particular, and the Image of God according to which he was made.
6. Of God's Providence, and continual Government of his Creatures. Pfal. 66. 7.  
& 103. 19.
7. Of the Good Angels that stood, and the Evil Angels that forsook their first Integrity. Jude verf. 6.  
Rev. 12. 7.
8. Of the Law of Nature, or the Covenant of Works made with Man at his Creation, and the Event thereof in the Fall of our first Parents. Gal. 3. 10.  
Gen. 2. 17.  
Ecclef. 7. 29.
9. Of Original and Actual Sin, whereunto all Mankind by the Fall is become subject. Rom. 5. 12, 14.
10. Of God's Curse, and all the Penalties due unto Sin; whereunto Man is become subject as long as he continueth in his natural Estate. Gal. 3. 10.  
Deut. 28. 45.
11. Of the Covenant of Grace, and the Mediator thereof, Jesus Christ our Lord; his two distinct Natures in one Person, together with his Conception and Nativity. Mat. 1. 21, 22.  
Gal. 4. 4, 5.
12. Of the state of Humiliation and Exaltation of our Saviour, his Office of Mediation, and Calling thereunto. Phil. 2. 7, 8, 9.  
Heb. 5. 4, 5.
13. Of his Priestly Office, and the two parts thereof, Satisfaction, and Intercession. Rom 8. 34.  
Heb. 10. 12.

# The Heads of the Treatise.

- Luk. 4. 18, 19.  
Mat. 9. 6, 7. 14. *Of his Prophetical and Kingly Office.*
- Heb. 3. 1.  
2 Tim. 1. 9.  
Heb. 12. 23. 15. *Of the calling of Men to partake of the Grace of Christ, both outward and inward; and of the Catholick Church thus called out of the World, with the Members and Properties thereof.*
- Gal. 2. 16.  
John 17. 21,  
22, 23, 24. 16. *Of the mutual Donation, whereby the Father giveth Christ to us, and us unto Christ: And the Mystical Union, whereby we are knit together by the Band of God's quickning Spirit; with the Communion of Saints arising from thence, whereby God for his Son's sake, is pleased of Enemies to make us Friends.*
- Rom. 3. 24, 25.  
25. and 4. 6, 7. 17. *Of Justification; and therein of justifying Faith, and forgiveness of Sins.*
- Rom. 8. 15, 16,  
17, 23, 24, 25. 18. *Of Adoption; whereby in Christ we are not only advanced into the state of Friends, but also of Sons and Heirs: And therein of the Spirit of Adoption and Hope.*
- Eph. 1. 4.  
Col. 3. 9, 10,  
12, 14. 19. *Of Sanctification; whereby the power of Sin is mortified in us, and the Image of God renewed: and therein of Love.*
- Mat. 22. 37.  
38, 39, 40. 20. *Of the direction given unto us for our Sanctification, contained in the Ten Commandments; with the Rules of expounding the same, and of the distinction of the Tables thereof.*
- Exod. 20. 2, 3. 21. *The first Commandment, of the choice of the True God; and the entertaining him in all our thoughts.*
- Exod. 20. 4, 5, 6. 22. *The second Commandment; of the solemn Worship that is to be performed unto God: and therein of Images and Ceremonies.*
- Exod. 20. 7. 23. *The third; of the glorifying God aright in the Actions of our common Life: and therein of Swearing and Blaspheming.*
- Exod. 20. 8,  
9, 10, 11. 24. *The fourth; of the certain time set apart for God's Service: and therein of the Sabbath and Lord's Day.*
- Exod. 20. 12. 25. *The fifth; of the Duties we owe one unto another, in regard of our particular relation unto such as are our Superiors, Inferiors, and Equals.*
- Exod. 20. 13. 26. *The sixth; of the preservation of the safety of Mens Persons: and therein of Peace and Meekness.*

# The Heads of the Treatise.

27. *The seventh; of the preservation of Chastity: and there of Temperance and Marriage.* Exod. 20. 14. 7. 14.
28. *The eighth; of the preservation of our own and our Neighbour's Goods: and therein of the maintaining of Justice in our dealing one with another.* Exod. 20. 15.
29. *The ninth; of the preservation of our own and our Neighbour's good Name, and the maintaining of Truth in our Testimony, and Dealings.* Exod. 20. 16.
30. *The tenth; of the contentedness, and the first motions of Concupiscence, which do any way cross that Love we owe to our Neighbour. Whereto for conclusion may be added the use of the Law.* Exod. 20. 17.
31. *Of Repentance.* Acts 26. 20.
32. *Of the Spiritual Warfare, and Christian Armour.* 2 Cor. 7. 10, 11.
33. *Of resistance of the Temptations of the Devil.* Jer. 31. 18, 19.  
Ephel. 6. 10,  
11, 12, 13.  
1 Pet. 5. 8, 19.
34. *Of resisting the Temptations of the World, both in Prosperity and Adversity: and here of patient bearing of the Cross.* Gal. 6. 14.  
Rom. 8. 35,  
36, 37.
35. *Of resisting the Temptations of the Flesh.* Gal. 5. 16.  
Ccl. 3. 5, 6.
36. *Of new Obedience and good Works, and necessity thereof.* Levit. 1. 74, 75.  
Tit. 2. 11, 12,  
13, 14.
37. *Of Prayer in general; and the Lord's Prayer in particular, with the Preamble thereof.* Mat. 6. 6, to 14.
38. *Of the three first Petitions which concern God's Glory.* Mat. 6. 9, 10.
39. *Of the three latter, which concern our Necessities.* Ver. 11, 12, 13.
40. *Of the Conclusion of the Lord's Prayer; wherewith is to be handled the point of Praise and Thanksgiving.* Mat. 6. 13.
41. *Of Fasting.* Mat. 6. 16,  
17, 18.
42. *Of mutual Edifying one another, and Liberality towards the Poor.* Ephel. 4. 23, 25;  
Heb. 13. 16.
43. *Of Ministers, and Ministry of the Gospel; and therein of preaching and hearing the Word.* Rom. 10. 14, 15.  
Ephel. 4. 11,  
12, 13.

# The Heads of the Treatise.

---

- Rom. 4. 11. 44. *Of the Appendants of the Word : Sacraments, which are the Seals of the Promises ; and Ecclesiastical Censures, which are the Seals of the Threatnings of the Gospel.*  
Mat. 18. 15, 16, 17.
- Heb. 9. 1, 9, 10. 45. *Of the Ministry of the Old Testament, before the coming of Christ, with the Word, Types, and Sacraments thereof.*  
1 Cor. 10. 1, 2, 3, 4.
- John 1. 17. 46. *Of the Ministry of the New Testament, and comparing the Word and Sacraments thereof with the Old.*  
Heb. 1. 2, 7, 28.
- Mat. 28. 19. 47. *Of Baptism.*  
1 Pet. 3. 21.
- 1 Cor. 11. 23, 24, 25. 48. *Of the Lord's Supper.*
- 2 Theff. 2. 3, 4. 49. *Of the divers Estates of the Church in Prosperity and under Persecution, Integrity and Corruption, and the rending thereof by Schisms and Heresies.*  
1 Tim. 4. 1, 2, 3.
- Heb. 9. 27. 50. *Of Death, and the particular Judgment following.*
- 2 Theff. 4. 1, 15, 16, 17. 51. *Of the general Judgment : And therein of the Judge Christ Jesus his coming in Glory ; and the Parties to be judged, both Quick and Dead, with the Resurrection of the one, and the Change of the other.*  
1 Cor. 15. 51, 52.
- Mat. 25. 34, 35. 52. *Of the last Sentence and Execution thereof ; of the Torments of the Damned, and Joys of the Blessed.*  
*to the end.*
-



*The Connection of these Points together, and dependence of them one upon another.*

**I**N Christian Religion we are to consider the

{ Ground thereof, contained in the Scripture.  
 { Parts, which treat of God's

*Nature, in his*

{ Essence, considered absolutely in it self; where, the Doctrine of Divine Attributes; which respect either

His { Perfection: In his  
 { Simpleness; whereby he is exempted from composition and division.  
 { Infiniteness; whereby he is exempted from all measure of { Time, by his Eternity.  
 { Life (whence he is called, The Living God) considered in his { Place, by his Immensity.

{ All-sufficiency { All-seeing Wisdom { Fore-knowledge.

{ Holy Will; wherein is seen his { Almighty Power. { Counsel.

{ Goodness; and therein his { Love unto his Creatures.

{ Justice, in his { Word; called his Truth. { Mercy or Grace shewed them in their Misery.

{ Deeds { disposing of all things rightly.  
 { rendering to the Creatures according to their Works.

{ Person; subsisting in one and the same undivided Essence.

*Kingdom, in his*

{ Eternal Decree: Which Men must not curiously pry into, but content themselves with what is made manifest.

{ Execution thereof, in the Works of

{ Invisible, { The highest Heavens.

{ Angels.

{ Unreasonable Creatures.

{ Visible, { Reasonable, Man: Consisting of { Body.  
 { Soul.

Providence.

{ Common, unto all Creatures.

{ Proper, respecting the everlasting condition of the principal Creatures.

{ Good.

{ Angels

{ Bad.

{ Men, who are ordered in

{ This Life by the tenor of a twofold Covenant;

{ Nature or Works: Where we are to consider the

{ Conditions

{ Events { Sin: { Primary; the fall of our first Parents.  
 { Nature; called Original Sin.

{ Secondary; the corruption of { Actions: In { Omission.  
 { actual sins of { Commission.

{ Death; comprehending all the Curses of the Law, whereunto the Nature of Man standeth subject.

A B



A C D

Man respecting,  
 { Such Acts as are joined with advised consent: In Duties which we owe unto  
 { (Special Persons in regard of some particular relation which we bear unto them, prescribed in the 5th Com.  
 { All Men in general, for the preservation of their  
 { Safety, in the 6th Com.  
 { Chastity, in the 7th Com.  
 { Goods, in the 8th Com.  
 { Good Name, in the 9th Com.  
 { The first thoughts and motions of Evil towards our Neighbour, that do arise from the corruption of our Nature, in the 10th Com.

Exercise thereof

{ Repentance.  
 { Fruits thereof, in  
 { Resistance of Sin by Christian Warfare: Where, of the Spiritual  
 { Armour:  
 { Conflict with the { World } { Prosperity }  
 { } { Flesh } in { }  
 { } { Devil } { Adversity. } Here, of bearing the Cross.  
 { Abounding in good Works, especially towards

{ God in  
 { Prayer, the Rule whereof is contained in the Lord's Prayer:  
 { Wherein are to be considered the  
 { 1. Preamble. { 1. Concerning God's Glory:  
 { 2. Petitions { 2. Touching our Necessities.  
 { 3. The Conclusion, and there, of Thanksgiving.  
 { Fasting.  
 { Our Brethren { Edification, in respect of their Souls.  
 { Alms-giving, for the good of their Bodies.

3. Means, whereby they are called: The outward Ministry of the Gospel, where-  
in consider

{ 1. The Ministers.  
 { 2. Parts of the Ministry.  
 { Word.  
 { Seals annexed thereunto, viz.  
 { Sacraments for confirming the Promises to the Obedient, which are  
 { either of:  
 { Initiation or admission into the Church.  
 { Continual nourishment.  
 { Censures for ratifying of Threatnings towards the Disobedient in  
 { Word, by Admonition.  
 { Deed, by { Suspension.  
 { Excommunication.

A

C F

3. The kinds thereof: Namely, the

{ Old Ministry before Christ, called the Old Testament;  
where, of

1. The Word of the Gospel more sparingly; and darkly delivered.

2. Types and Ceremonies.

3. Sacraments { Initiation; Circumcision.

{ Nourishment; Paschal Lamb.

{ New, from the coming of Christ unto the end of the World,  
called, The New Testament; wherein is to be considered,  
the clearness and efficacy of the

{ Word.

{ Sacraments of { Initiation; Baptism.  
Nourishment; The Lord's Supper.

4. Divers states of the Church.

{ The World to come, by the Sentence of a twofold Judgment.

{ Particular, upon every Soul as soon as it departs from the Body.

{ General, upon all Men at once both in Soul and Body. Wherein is  
to be considered the

1. Judge; Christ coming with the Glory of his Father.

2. Parties to be judged { Quick; of whom there shall be a change.

{ Dead; of whom there shall be a Re-  
surrection.

3. Sentence and execution thereof: Where, of

{ The Torments of the Damned.

{ The Joys of the Blessed.

I

A LARGE  
E X P L I C A T I O N  
Of the B O D Y of  
Christian Religion.

---

I T I M. 4. 15.

*Meditate upon these things; give thy self wholly to them,  
that thy profiting may appear to all.*

**W**HAT is that which all Men especially desire?

Eternal Life and Happiness.

*How do Men look to obtain Happiness?*

By Religion: Which is a thing so proper to Man, that it doth distinguish him more from Beasts than very Reason, that is made his form. For very Beasts have some

sparkles or resemblance of Reason, but none of Religion.

*Is Religion so generally to be found in all Men?*

Yes: For the very Heathens condemned them to Death that denied all Religion: And there is no People so barbarous, but they will have some form of Religion to acknowledge a God; as all *India*, East and West, sheweth.

*May a Man be saved by any Religion?*

No; but only by the true, as appeareth by *John* 17. 3. This is Life Eternal to know thee, and, whom thou hast sent, Jesus Christ: And, he that knoweth not the Son, knoweth not the Father.

*Which are the chief false Religions that are now in the World?*

Heathenism, Turcism, Judaism, and Papisim.

*What do you observe out of this diversity of Religions in the World?*

The Misery of Man, when God leaveth him without his Word. An Example whereof may be seen in the Idolaters, *1 Kings* 18. 28. *2 Kings* 17. 25. and *Rom.* 1. 22, 23. and some making a Stick or a Straw, other some a Red Cloth for their God, as the *Lappians*.

*Seeing then there are so many Religions in the World, and every one looketh to obtain Happiness by his own Religion: Of what Religion are you?*

I am a Christian.

*What is Christian Religion?*

All Men desire  
Eternal Happiness.

Religion the  
Means to obtain Happiness.

No Salvation  
but by the true  
Religion.

Divers kinds of  
false Religions.

What Christi-  
an Religion is.

It is the acknowledgment of the only true God, and of Jesus Christ whom he hath sent.

*How prove you that ?*

By that saying of our Saviour Christ, *Job. 17. 3. This is Life Eternal* (which is the Reward of Christian Religion) *that they may know thee to be the only true God. and Jesus Christ whom thou hast sent.* Where he meaneth not a bare contemplative Knowledge, but a thankful acknowledging, which comprehendeth all Christian Duties, consisting in Faith and Obedience. For he that being void of the fear of God, (which is the beginning and chief point of Knowledge, *Prov. 1. 7.*) abideth not in God, but sinneth, hath not seen God, nor known him, *1 John 3. 6.*

*What do you call that Doctrine which sheweth the way unto everlasting Life and Happiness ?*

It is commonly termed *Theology* or *Divinity* : and the familiar declaration of the Principles thereof (for the use especially of the ignorant) is called *Catechising*, *Heb. 5. 12, 13, 14. & 6. 1, 2.*

*What is Catechising ?*

Of Catechi-  
sing, what it is.

A teaching by Voice and Repetition of the Grounds of Christian Religion, *Gal. 6. 6. Acts 18. 25, 26. 1 Cor. 14. 19.*

*Where should it be used, and by whom ?*

Where to be  
used, and by  
whom.

Both at home by the Master of the House, and in the Church likewise by the Minister.

*Why at home ?*

Because Houses are the Nurseries of the Church.

The necessity  
of it.

*Shew some Reasons and Arguments to prove the necessity of Catechising and Instructing in Religion.*

1. First, God accounteth of *Abraham* for his care in this Duty, *Gen. 18. 19.*
2. Secondly, He commandeth all Parents to perform this Duty to their Children, *Deut. 6. 6, 7. Ephes. 6. 4.*
3. Thirdly, All Children are made blind in the knowledge of God and of Religion by *Adam's* fall ; and consequently they must be enlightened and informed by teaching, if they will not die so ; which *Solomon* theretore commandeth, *Prov. 22. 6.* and our Saviour Christ biddeth Children be respected, *Mark 10. 14, 15, 19.*
4. Fourthly, The Examples of the Godly for this Duty, in bringing their Children with themselves to Holy Exercisēs. So *Hannah* brought up *Samuel* to the Tabernacle, *1 Sam. 1. 24.* and *Mary Jesus* to the Temple. when he was twelve years old, *Luke. 2. 42.* by which we perform the effect of Consecrating our Children to God, *Exod. 13. 2.*
5. Fifthly, Common Equity should move Parents to this Duty. For as their Children receive from them Original Sin, by which they are made so blind in God's Matters : It is equity they should labour to remove that blindness, by teaching them after God's Word.
6. Sixthly, God promiseth as the greatest blessing to Men, that their Children should speak of him under the Gospel, *Joel 2. 28. Acts 2. 17.*

*But is it not some disgrace and baseness, that Men of years and place should be catechised ?*

If Men will be Christians, which is their greatest honour, they must hold it no disgrace to learn Christ. Noble *Theophilus* held it none, who was thus catechised, as *Luke* sheweth, *Chap. 1. 4.* likewise *Apollos*, *Acts 18. 26.*

To come then to the Declaration of Christian Religion: Tell me, Wherein doth the Happiness of Man consist?

Not \* in himself, nor in any other Created Thing; but only † in God his Creator, who alone being infinite, is able to fill the Heart of Man.

\* Ecclef. 1. 2, 3.  
† Pfal. 37. 4.  
and 37. 25.

How may we come to enjoy God?

By being joyed unto him, and so partaking of his Goodness. For Happiness is to be found by \* acquaintance and fellowship with him, who is the Fountain of Blessedness: Man † so knowing him, or rather being known of him, that he ‖ may serve him, and be \* accepted of him; † honour him, and be honoured by him.

\* Job 22. 21.  
† John 17. 3.  
Gal. 4. 9.  
‖ Ecclef. 12. 13.  
\* 2 Cor. 5. 9.  
† 1 Sam. 2. 30.

By what Means come we to the Knowledge of God?

By such Means as he hath revealed himself. For God dwelleth in the Light that no Man can come unto; whom no Man hath seen nor can see, (1 Tim. 6. 16.) except he shew himself unto us. Not that he is hidden in the Darkness, (for he dwelleth in the Light) but that the dulness of our Sight, and blindness of our Hearts, cannot reach unto that Light, except he declare himself unto us: Like as the Sun is not seen but by his own Light, so God is not known but by such Means as he hath manifested himself.

Means to know God.

By what Means hath God revealed himself?

By his Divine \* Works, and by his Holy † Word. As the Prophet David plentifully and distinctly expresseth in the Nineteenth Psalm, *The Heavens declare the Glory of God, and the Firmament sheweth his Handy-Work*; and so continueth unto the Seventh Verse, touching his Works: And from thence to the end of the Psalm concerning his VWord. *The Law of the Lord is perfect, converting the Soul; the Testimony of the Lord is sure, making wise the simple.*

By his Divine Works, and Holy Word.  
\* Rom. 1. 20.  
† Job 22. 22.  
John 6. 68.

What gather you of this?

That all curious searching to know of God, more than he hath shewed of himself, is both vain and hurtful to the Searchers; especially seeing by his VWorks and VWord he hath declared as much as is profitable for Men to know for his Glory and their Eternal Felicity. Therefore Moses saith, *Deut. 29. 29. The secret things belong unto the Lord our God; but those things which are revealed, belong unto us, and to our Children for ever.*

What be the Divine Works whereby God hath shewed himself?

The Creation and Preservation of the VWorld and all things therein. So the Apostle to the Romans saith; *That which may be known of God, is made manifest within them; for God hath made it manifest unto them: For the invisible things of God, while they are understood in his Works by the Creation of the World, are seen, even his Eternal Power and Godhead, Rom. 1. 19, 20.* Also Preaching amongst the Gross Idolatrous Lystrians, Acts 14. 17. he saith, *That God hath not left himself without Testimony, bestowing his Benefits, giving Rain and Fruitful Seasons from Heaven, filling our Hearts with Food and Gladness.* And Preaching among the Learned, and yet no less Superstitious Athenians, he citeth and canonizeth the Testimony of the Poets, to shew that God is not far from every one of us: *For in him we live, and move, and have our being, Acts 17. 27, 28.* For whosoever have not been wilfully Blind among the Heathen Poets and Philosophers which professed VWisdom, have learned by Contemplation of the Creatures of the VWorld, that God is the Maker and Preserver of the same.

Of the Divine Works of God.

Plato, Galen, Homer, Virgil, Ovid, &c.

What use is there of the Knowledge obtained by the Works of God?

There is a double use. The one, to make Men void of Excuse; as the Apostle teacheth, *Rom. 1. 20.* and so it is sufficient unto Condemnation. The other,

The uses of knowing God by his Works.

other, is to further unto Salvation; and that by preparing and inducing Men to seek God, *if happily by groping they may find him*, (as the Apostle sheweth, *Acts* 17. 27.) whereby they are made more apt to acknowledge him when he is perfectly revealed in his Word. Or after they have known God out of his Word, by contemplation of his infinite Power, Wisdom, and Goodness, most gloriously shining in his Works, to stir them up continually to reverence his Majesty, to honour and obey him, to repose their trust and confidence in him. And so the Children of God do use this Knowledge of God gathered out of his Divine Works; as appeareth in many places of the Scriptures, and especially of the Psalms, which are appointed for the exercise of the whole Church, *Psal.* 8. *Psal.* 19. *Psal.* 95. *Psal.* 104. *Psal.* 136, &c.

*Are not the Works of God sufficient to give knowledge of the only True God, and the way unto Everlasting Happiness?*

They may leave us without excuse, and so are sufficient unto condemnation; but are not able to make us wise unto Salvation. Because of things which are necessary unto Salvation, some they teach but imperfectly, others not at all; as the distinction of the Persons in the Godhead, the fall of Man from God, and the way to repair the same.

*Where then is the saving Knowledge of God to be had perfectly?*

Of God's Holy Word, the Scriptures.

In his Holy Word. For God, according to the riches of his Grace, hath been abundant towards us in all Wisdom and Understanding, and hath opened unto us the Mystery of his Will, according to his good pleasure, which he hath purposed in himself, as the Apostle teacheth, *Ephes.* 1. 7, 8, 9.

*What course did God hold in the delivery of his Word unto Men?*

How the Scriptures were delivered.

In the beginning of the World he delivered his Word by Revelation, and continued the knowledge thereof by Tradition, while the number of his true Worshipers were small: But after he chose a great and populous Nation, in which he would be honoured and served, he caused the same to be committed to writing for all Ages to the end of the World. For about the space of two thousand five hundred years from the Creation, the People of God had no written Word to direct them. Thence, for the space of three thousand one hundred years, unto this present time, the Word of God was committed unto them in writing: yet so, that in half that time God's Will was also revealed without writing extraordinarily, and the Holy Books indite done after another, according to the necessity of the times; but in this last half, the whole Canon of the Scriptures being fully finished, we and all Men, unto the World's end, are left to have our full instruction from the same, without expecting extraordinary Revelations, as in times past.

*Were these Revelations in times past delivered all in the same manner?*

Revelations.

No. For (as the Apostle noteth, *Heb.* 1. 1.) *in sundry times, and in divers manners, God spake in times past unto the Fathers by the Prophets.* The divers kinds are set down in *Numb.* 12. 6. and *1 Sam.* 28. 6. and may be reduced to these two general heads, *Oracles* and *Visions.*

*What call your Oracles?*

Oracles.

Those Revelations that God as it were by his own Mouth delivered to his Servants: and that ordinarily by *Urim* and *Thummim*, or by *Prophets* extraordinarily called.

*What do you understand by Visions?*

Visions.

Those Revelations whereby God signified his Will by certain Images and Representations of things offered unto Men: as may be seen in the Visions of *Daniel*, *Ezekiel*, *Jeremy*, &c.



*How are these Visions presented unto Men ?*

Sometime to Men *Waking*, sometime to Men *Sleeping*; sometime to the *Mind*, sometime to the *Eyes*. To the imagination of Men *sleeping* were offered *Divine Dreams*: in expounding whereof we read that *Joseph* and *Daniel* excelled. But now they, together with all other extraordinary Revelations, are ceased.

*Where then is the Word of God now certainly to be learned ?*

Only out of the Book of God, contained in the Holy Scriptures; which are the only certain Testimonies unto the Church of the Word of God. *John* 5. 39. 2 *Tim.* 3. 15.

*Why may not Men want the Scriptures now, as they did at the first from the Creation until the time of Moses, for the space of 2513 years ?*

First, Because then God immediately by his Voice and Prophets sent from him, taught the Church his Truth: which now are ceased, *Heb.* 1. 1, 2.

Secondly, Tradition might then be of sufficient certainty by reason of the long life of God's faithful witnesses. For *Methusalem* lived with *Adam*, the first Man, 243 years, and continued unto the Flood. *Sem* lived at once with *Methusalem* 98 years, and flourished above 500 years after the Flood. *Isaac* lived 50 years with *Sem*, and died about 10 years before the descent of *Israel* into *Ægypt*. So that from *Adam's* death unto that time, three Men might by tradition preserve the purity of Religion. But after the coming of *Israel* out of *Ægypt*, Man's Age was so thorned, that in the days of *Moses*, (the first Penman of the Scriptures) it was brought to 70 or 80 years; as appears by *Psal.* 90. 10.

Thirdly, God saw his true Religion greatly forgotten in *Ægypt*, (*Israel* then falling into Idolatry, *Ezek.* 20. 8.) and having brought *Israel* his People from thence did not only restore, but also increased it; adding thereunto many more particulars concerning his Service; which were needful for Mens Memories to be written.

Fourthly, God having gathered his Church to a more solemn Company than before; it was his pleasure then to begin the writing of his Will. And therefore first with his own Finger he wrote the Ten Commandments in two Tables of Stone; and then commanded *Moses* to write the other words which he had heard from him in the Mount, *Exod.* 34. 27, 28.

Fifthly, Thus God provided that the Churches of all Ages and Times might have a certain rule to know whether they embraced sound Doctrine or no; and that none should be so bold as to coin any new Religion to serve him with, but that which he had delivered in writing.

*What is Scripture then ?*

The Word of God written by Men inspired by the Holy Ghost, for the perfect Building and Salvation of the Church: or, Holy Books written by the Inspiration of God to make us wise unto Salvation. 2 *Tim.* 3. 15, 16. 2 *Pet.* 1. 21. *John.* 20. 31.

*If the Scriptures be written by Men which are subject unto Infirmities, How can it be accounted the Word of God ?*

Because it proceeded not from the Will or Mind of Man, but Holy Men set apart by God for that Work, spake and writ as they were moved by the Holy Ghost. Therefore God alone is to be accounted the Author thereof, who inspired the Hearts of those Holy Men, whom he chose to be his Secretaries; who are to be held only the Instrumental Causes thereof.

When Jeremy brought the Word of God to the Jews, they said it was not the Word of the Lord, but he spake as Baruc the Son of Neriah provoked him, Jer. 43. 2. and so some perhaps in these Days are so ungodly as to take the Jews Part against Jeremy and all his Fellows. How may it appear therefore, that this Book which you call the Book of God, and the Holy Scripture, is the Word of God indeed, and not Mens Policies?

By the constant Testimony of Men in all Ages, from them that first knew these Penmen of the Holy Ghost with their Writings, until our Time: And Reasons taken out of the Works themselves, agreeable to the Quality of the Writers. Both which kinds of Arguments the Holy Scriptures have as much, and far more than any other Writings. Wherefore as it were extream Impudency to deny the Works of *Homer, Plato, Virgil, Tully, Livy, Galen*, and such like, which the Consent of all Ages have received and delivered unto us; which also by the Tongue, Phrase, Matter, and all other Circumstances agreeable, are confirmed to be the Works of the same Authors whose they are testified to be: So it were more than Brutish Madnes to doubt of the certain Truth and Authority of the Holy Scriptures, which no less, but much more than any other Writings, for their Authors, are testified and confirmed to be the Sacred Word of the Ever-living God. Not only testified (I say) by the uniform Witness of Men in all Ages, but also confirmed by such Reasons taken out of the Writings themselves, as do sufficiently argue the Spirit of God to be the Author of them. For we may learn out of the Testimonies themselves, (as *David* did, *Psal.* 119. 152.) that God hath established them for ever.

Let me bear some of those Reasons which prove that God is the Author of the Holy Scriptures.

Reasons to prove God to be the Author of the Holy Scriptures.  
1. Efficient, Instrumental.

First, The true Godliness and Holiness, wherewith the Writers of the Scriptures shined as Lamps in their Times, and far surpassed all Men of other Religions: Which sheweth the Work of God's Spirit in them; and how unlike it is that such Men should obtrude into the Church their own Inventions instead of God's Word.

Secondly, The Simplicity, Integrity and Sincerity of these VVriters, in Matters that concern themselves, and those that belong unto them: *Doing nothing by Partiality*, (1 *Tim.* 5: 21.) neither sparing their Friends nor themselves. So *Moses*, for Example, in his VVritings, spareth not to report the Reproach of his own Tribe, *Gen.* 34. 30. and 49. 5, 7. nor the Incest of his Parents, of which he himself was Conceived, *Exod.* 6. 20. nor the Idolatry of his Brother *Aaron*, *Exod.* 32. nor the wicked Murmuring of his Sister *Miriam*, *Numb.* 12. 1. nor his own declining of his VVocation by God to deliver the Children of *Israel* out of *Aegypt*, *Exod.* 4. 13, 14. nor his Murmuring against God, and Impatience, *Numb.* 11. 11, 12, 13, 14. nor his want of Faith, after so many wonderful Confirmations, *Numb.* 20. 15. and 27. 14. *Deut.* 32. 51. And though he were in highest Authority, and had a Promise of the People to believe whatsoever he said, (*Exod.* 19. 8. and 20. 19. and 24. 3.) he assigneth no place for his own Sons to aspire; either to the Kingdom, or to the High Priesthood; but leaveth them in the mean degree of common Levites. All which things declare most manifestly, that he was void of all Earthly and Carnal Affections in his VVritings, as was meet for the Penman and Scribe of God. VVhereunto also may be added, that he writeth of himself, *Numb.* 12. 3. that he was the meekest of all the Men that were upon the face of the Earth: VVhich no wise Man would in such sort report of himself, if he were left to his own Direction.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, The Quality and Condition of the Penmen of these Holy VVritings: some of whom were never trained up in the School of Man, and yet in their Writings shew that depth of VVifdom, that the most Learned Philofophers come not nigh unto; some also were before professed Enemies to that Truth, whereof afterwards they were Writers. *Amos* was no Prophet, but an Herdsman, and a gatherer of VVild Figs, *Amos* 7. 14. *Matthew* a Publican, employed only in the gathering of Toll, *Mat.* 9. 9. *Peter, James,* and *John* Fishermen, whose liberty of Speech, when the Chief Priests and Elders of *Jerusalem* beheld, and understood that they were unlettered and ignorant Men, it is recorded, *Acts* 4. 13. that they marvelled, and took knowledge of them, that they had been with *Jesus*. *Paul* from a bloody Persecutor converted to be a Preacher and VVriter of the Gospel, shewed by that sudden Alteration, that he was moved by a Command from Heaven to defend that Doctrin which before he so earnestly Impugned.

Fourthly, The Matter of the Holy Scripture being altogether of Heavenly Doctrin, and favouring nothing of an Earthly or VVorldly Affection, but every where Renouncing and Condemning the same, declareth the God of Heaven to be the only Inspirer of it. 2. Matter.

Fifthly, The Doctrin of the Scripture is such as could never breed in the Brains of Man; *Three Persons in one God*; *God to become Man*; *the Resurrection*, and such like, Man's VVit could never hatch: Or if it had conceived them, could never hope that any Man could believe them.

Sixthly, The sweet Concord between these VVritings, and the perfect Coherence of all things contained in them; notwithstanding the Diversity of Persons by whom, Places where, Times when, and Matters whereof they have written. For there is a most Holy and Heavenly Consent and Agreement of all Parts thereof together, though written in so sundry Ages, by so sundry Men, in so distant Places. One of them doth not gain say another, as Mens VVritings do: and our Saviour Christ confirmeth them all. *Luke* 24. 44.

Seventhly, A Continuance of wonderful Prophecies, foretelling Things to come so long before, marked with their Circumstances; not doubtful, like the Oracles of the Heathen, or *Merlin's* Prophecies, but such as expressed the Things and Persons by their Names: VVhich had all, just in their Times their certain Performance. And therefore unto what may we attribute them, but to the Inspiration of God? *Vide Calvin's Instit. lib. 1. c. 8.* Thus was the Messias promised to *Adam* 4000 Years before he was Born, *Gen.* 3. 15. and to *Abraham* 1917 Years before the accomplishment, *Gen.* 12. 3. The deliverance of the *Israelites* from *Aegypt*, to the same *Abraham* 400 Years before, *Gen.* 15. 13, 14. The Prophecies of *Jacob*, *Gen.* 49. concerning the twelve Tribes, were not fulfilled till after the Death of *Moses*; and that of the continuance of the Tribe and Kingdom of *Judah* held until the coming of Christ. In the first Book of *Kings*, *Chap.* 13. 2, 3. there is delivered a Prophecy concerning *Jofias* by Name, 331 Years; and in *Esay* 45. 1. concerning *Cyrus*, 100 Years before either of them were Born. *Daniel's* Prophecies, and that especially of the 70 VWeeks, in the Ninth *Chap.* are wonderful. So likewise are those of the Rejection of the Jews, the Calling of the Gentiles, the Kingdom of Antichrist, &c. which now we see fulfilled.

Eighthly, The great Majesty, full of Heavenly VVifdom and Authority, such as is meet to proceed from the Glory of God, shining in all the Holy Scriptures: Yea, oftentimes under great simplicity of VVords, and plainness and easiness of Stile; which nevertheless more affecteth the Hearts of the Hearers, than

3. The form and manner of Writing.

than all the painted eloquence and lofty stile of Rhetoricians and Orators, and argueth the Holy Ghost to be the Author of them, *1 Cor. 1. 17, 21, 24.* and *2. 15.*

Ninthly, In speaking of Matters of the highest nature, they go not about to persuade Men by Reasons, as Philosophers and Orators; but absolutely require credit to be given to them, because the Lord hath spoken it. They promise Eternal Joy to the Obedient, and threaten Eternal Woe to the Disobedient: they prescribe Laws for the Thoughts, to which no Man can pierce: they require Sacrifice, but they prefer Obedience; they enjoyn Fasting, but it is also from sin; they command Circumcision, but 'tis of the Heart; they forbid Lust, Coveting, &c. which is not to be found in any Laws but in his that searcheth the Heart.

4. End. Tenthly, The end and scope of the Scriptures, is for the Advancement of God's Glory, and the Salvation of Man's Soul. For they intreat either of the noble Acts of God and of Christ, or the Salvation of Mankind. And therefore by comparing this with the former Reason, we may frame this Argument: If the Author of the Scriptures were not God, it must be some Creature; If he were a Creature, he was either Good or Bad; If a Bad Creature, why forbids he evil so rigorously, and commands good so expressly, and makes his mark to aim at nothing but God's Glory and our good? If he were a Good Creature, why doth he challenge to himself that which is proper to God only. As to make Laws for the Heart, to punish and reward eternally, &c. If it were no Creature, Good nor Bad, it must needs be God.

5. Effects. Eleventhly, The admirable Power and Force that is in them to convert and alter Mens Minds, and to incline their Hearts from Vice to Vertue, (*Psal. 19. 7, 8. Psal. 119. 111. Heb. 4. 12. Acts 13. 12.*) though they be quite contrary to Mens Affections.

Twelfthly, The Scriptures, as experience sheweth, have the Power of God in them, to humble a Man when they are preached, and to cast him down to Hell, and afterward to restore and raise him up again, *Heb. 4. 12. 1 Cor. 14. 25.*

6. Adjuncts. Thirteenthly, The Writers of the Holy Scriptures are the most ancient of all others. *Moses* is ancientser than the Gods of the Heathen, who lived not long before the Wars of *Troy*, about the time of the Judges: and the Youngest Prophets of the Old Testament match the Ancientest Philosophers and Historians of the Heathen.

Fourteenthly, The deadly hatred that the Devil and all wicked Men carry against the Scriptures, to cast them away and destroy them, and the little love that most Men do bear unto them, prove them to be of God. For if they were of Flesh and Blood, then Flesh and Blood would love them, read them, practice them, and every way regard them more than it doth. For the World loveth his own, as our Saviour Christ saith, *John 15. 19.* but we (being but carnal and earthly) favour not the things that be of God, as the Apostle *Paul* saith, *1 Cor. 2. 14.* And until the Lord open our Hearts, and we be born again of God's Spirit, and become as new born Babes, we have no desire unto them, *1 Pet. 2. 2.*

Fifteenthly, The marvellous preservation of the Scriptures. Though none in time be so ancient, nor none so much oppugned; yet God hath still by his Providence preserved them, and every part of them.

*Shew now how the Holy Scriptures have the consonant testimony of Men of all times since they were written, that they are the most Holy Word of God.*

7. The consonant testimony of Men of all times.

First,

First, *Joshua* the Servant of *Moses*, the first Scribe of God, (to whom God spake in the presence and hearing of Six Hundred Thousand Men, besides Women and Children) who was an Eye Witness of many Wonders by which the Ministry of *Moses* was confirmed, testifieth his Writings to be the undoubted Word of God. The same do the Prophets which continued the History of the Church in the time of the Judges, both of *Moses* and *Joshua*.

Likewise all the Prophets who successively recorded the Holy Story and Prophecy by Divine Revelation, from *Samuel* unto the Captivity; and from the Captivity to the Building again of the Temple and of the City, and sometimes after; receiving the same Books of Heavenly Doctrine from the former Age, delivered them to their Posterity: And *Malachy*, the last of the Prophets, closeth up the Old Testament with a Charge and Exhortation from the Lord, to remember the Law of *Moses* delivered in *Horeb*, and to use the same as a School-Master to direct them unto Christ, until he came in Person himself, *Mal.* 4. 4.

Finally, From that time the Church of the Jews, until the coming of Christ in the Flesh, embraced all the former Writings of the Prophets as the Book of God. Christ himself appealeth unto them as a sufficient Testimony of him, *John* 5. 39. The Apostles and Evangelists prove the Writings of the New Testament by them: And the Catholick Church of Christ, from the Apostles Time unto this Day, hath acknowledged all the said Writings, both of the Old and New Testament, to the undoubted Word of God.

Thus have we the Testimony both of the Old Church of the Jews, God's peculiar People and First-born, to whom the Oracles of God were committed, (*Acts* 7. 38. *Hof.* 8. 12. *Rom.* 3. 2. and 9. 4.) and the New of Christians: Together with the general account which all the Godly at all times have made of the Scriptures, when they have crossed their Natures and Courses, as accounting it in their Souls to be of God; and the special Testimony of Martyrs, who have sealed the certainty of the same, by shedding their Blood for them. Hereunto also may be added the Testimony of those which are out of the Church, Heathens, out of whom many ancient Testimonies are cited to this purpose by *Jesephus contra Apion*. Turks, Jews, (who to this Day acknowledge all the Books of the Old Testament) and Hereticks, who labour to shroud themselves under them, &c.

*Are there not some Divine Testimonies which may likewise be added to these?*

Yes. First, The known Miracles (which the Devil was never able to do) that did so often follow the Writers and Teachers of the Scriptures. Secondly, The manifold Punishments and Destruction of those that have reviled and persecuted the same.

*Are these Motives of themselves sufficient to work saving Faith, and persuade us fully to rest in God's Word?*

No. Besides all these, it is required, that we have the Spirit of God, as well to open our Eyes to see the Light, as to seal up fully unto our Hearts that Truth which we see with our Eyes. For the same Holy Spirit that inspired the Scriptures, inclineth the Hearts of God's Children to believe what is revealed in them, and inwardly assureth them, above all Reasons and Arguments, that these are the Scriptures of God. Therefore the Lord by the Prophet *Isaiab*, promiseth to join his Spirit with his Word, and that it shall remain with his Children for ever, *Esa.* 59. 21. The same promiseth our Saviour Christ unto his Disciples concerning the Comforter, which he would send to lead them into all Truth.

3. Divine Testimonies.

The Testimony of the Spirit in the Hearts of Men.  
1 Cor. 2. 10.  
and 14. 37.  
Ephes. 1. 13.

to teach them all things, and to put them in mind of all things which he had said unto them, *John* 14. 26 and 15. 26. and 16. 23. The Lord, by the Prophet *Jeremiah*, also promiseth to give his Law into their Minds, and to write it in the Hearts of his People, *Jer.* 31. 33. And St. *John* saith to the Faithful, that by the anointing of the Holy Spirit which is on them, they know all things, *1 John* 2. 20.

This Testimony of God's Spirit in the Hearts of his Faithful, as it is proper to the VWord of God, so is it greater than any Humane Perswasions grounded upon Reason or VWitnesses of Men: unto which it is unmeet that the VWord of God should be subject, as Papists hold, when they teach that the Scriptures receive their Authority from the Church. For by thus hanging the Credit and Authority of the Scriptures on the Churches Sentence, they make the Churches Word of greater Credit than the VWord of God. VWhereas the Scriptures of God cannot be judged or sentenced by any: And God only is a worthy VWitness of himself, in his VWord, and by his Spirit; which give mutual Testimony one of the other, and work that assurance of Faith in his Children, that no Humane Demonstrations can make, nor any Perswasions or Inforcements of the VWorld can remove.

That the Authority of the Scriptures doth not depend on the Church.

*Shew some farther Reasons, that the Authority of the Scriptures doth not depend upon the Church.*

First, To believe the Scripture, is a VWork of Faith; but the Church cannot infuse Faith.

Secondly, Any Authority that the Church hath, it must prove it by the Scripture; therefore the Scripture dependeth not upon the Church.

Thirdly, If an Infidel should ask the Church, How they are sure that Christ Died for them? if they should answer, Because themselves say so, it would be ridiculous, &c.

What are the Books of Holy Scriptures.

*What Books are the Holy Scriptures; and by whom were they Written?*

First, The Books of the Old Testament, in number Nine and Thirty, (which the Jews, according to the number of their Letters, brought to Two and Twenty) written by *Moses* and the Prophets, who delivered the same to the Church of the Jews, *Rom.* 3. 2.

Secondly, The Books of the New Testament, in number Seven and Twenty; written by the Apostles and Evangelists, who delivered them to the Church of the Gentiles, *Rom.* 1. 16. *Rev.* 1. 11.

In what Language the Old Testament was written.

*What Language were the Books of the Old Testament written in?*

In Hebrew; which was the first Tongue of the VWorld, and the most orderly Speech; in comparison of which all other Languages may be condemned of barbarous confusion: But chosen specially, because it was the Language at that time best known unto the Church (teaching, that all of them should understand the Scriptures.) Only some few Portions by the later Prophets were left written in the *Chaldean* Tongue, (understood by God's People after their carrying away into *Babylon*;) namely, the 11th verse of the 10th Chapter of *Jeremy*; six Chapters in *Daniel* (from the 4th verse of the 2d Chapter, to the end of the 7th Chapter) and three in *Ezra*, (the fourth, fifth, and sixth.)

That the Scriptures of the Old Testament were first written with Vowels and Pricks.

*Had the Hebrew Text Vowels or Points from the beginning, as now it hath?*

Our Say our faith, *Mar.* 5. 18. that *not one Joy or Prick of the Law shall perish.* Whereby it should appear, that the Law and the Prophets (for of both he speaketh immediately before) had Vowels and Pricks. God also by *Moses* commanded the Law to be written upon two great Stones at the entrance of the People

People into the Land of Promise, that all Strangers might read and know what Religion the Children of *Israel* professed: And he Commanded that it should be written well, and plainly, or clearly, *Deut.* 27. 8. which could not be performed, except it were written with the Vowelling Points. Whereunto also belong all those places of Scripture, which testify of the clearness and certainty of the Scripture, which could not at all be, if it lacked Vowels.

*What are the Books of the Old Testament?*

The Books of *Moses* (otherwise called the Law) and the Prophets. For so are they oftentimes divided in the New Testament; as *Mat.* 5. 17. and 7. 12. and 22. 40. *Luke* 16. 29. and 24. 27. *John* 1. 45. *Acts* 13. 15. and 24. 14. and 26. 22. and 28. 23. Where it is to be understood, that the Law is taken for the whole Doctrine of God delivered by *Moses*, which containeth not only the Law, but also Promises of Mercy in Christ, as he himself testifieth, *John* 5. 46. *If ye did believe Moses, you would also believe me; for Moses wrote of me.* And whereas our Saviour Christ, *Luke* 24. 44. unto the Law and the Prophets addeth the *Psalms*, which are a part of the Prophets, it is because they were most familiar to the Godly, and generally known of the People by the daily Exercise of them, the former Division notwithstanding being perfect.

*Which are the Books of Moses?*

Five in number; which are called *Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy.* The Books of *Moses.*

*How are the Books of the Prophets distinguished?*

Into *Historical* and *Doctrinal*; the former whereof contain the Explication of the Law by Practice principally, the latter by Doctrine chiefly. The Books of the Prophets.

*How many Historical Books be there?*

Twelve in number, *viz.* the Book of *Joshua*, the Book of *Judges*, the Book of *Ruth*, the two Books of *Samuel*, the two Books of *Kings*, the two Books of *Chronicles*, the Book of *Ezra*, the Book of *Nehemiah*, and the Book of *Esther.* The Historical Books.

*How are the Doctrinal Books distinguished?*

Into *Poetical* and *Prosaical*. Which distinction is thought of many to be observed by our Saviour Christ, *Luke* 24. 44. where he under the name of *Psalms* comprehendeth all those Books that are written in the Holy Poetical Style. The Doctrinal Books.

*Which are the Poetical Books?*

Such as are written in Meeter or Poesie; containing principally Sage and Holy Sentences, (whence also they may be called Sentential) and they are five in number, *viz.* the Book of *Job*, the *Psalms*; and *Solomons* three Books, the *Proverbs, Ecclesiastes*, and the *Canticles.* The Poetical Books.

*Which are the Prosaical Books?*

Such as are for the most part written in Prose, and foretel things to come, (whence also more specially they are termed Prophetical or Vaticinal.) Of which kind are sixteen Writers in number; four whereof are called the *Greater Prophets*, *viz.* *Isaiah, Jeremiah*, (to whose Prophecy is annexed his Book of *Lamentations*, though written in Meeter) *Ezekiel* and *Daniel*; and twelve are called *Smaller Prophets*, *viz.* *Hosea, Joel, Amos, Obadiab, Jonab, Micah, Nahum, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechary, Malachy.* Which twelve of old were reckoned for one Book; and therefore *Acts* 7. 42. *Stephen* citing a place out of *Amos* 5. 25. useth this form; *As it is written in the Book of the Prophets.* The Prosaical Books.

*Be there no other Canonical Books of the Scripture of the Old Testament besides these that you have named?* The Apocryphal Books.

No; for those other Books which Papists would obtrude unto us for Canonical, are Apocryphal, that is to say, such as are to lye hid, when there is proof to be made of Religion.

*How prove you that these Apocryphal Books are no part of the Canonical Scriptures?*

1. First, They are not written first in Hebrew, the Language of the Church before Christ, which all the Books of the Old Testament are originally written in.
2. Secondly, They were never received into the Canon of Scripture by the Church of the Jews before Christ, (to whom alone in those times the Oracles of God were committed. *Rom. 3. 2.*) nor read and expounded in their Synagogues. See *Josephus contra Appion. lib. 1. & Eusebius lib. 3. 10.*
3. Thirdly, The Jews were so careful to keep Scriptures intire, as they kept the number of the Verses and Letters; within which is none of the Apocrypha.
4. Fourthly, The Scripture of the Old Testament was written by Prophets, (*Luke 24. 27. 2 Pet. 1. 19.*) But *Malachy* was the last Prophet, after whom all the Apocrypha was written.
5. Fifthly, They are not authorized by Christ and his Apostles, who do give testimony unto the Scriptures.
6. Sixthly, By the most Ancient Fathers and Councils of the Primitive Churches after the Apostles, both Greek and Latin, they have not been admitted for trial of Truth, though they have been read for instruction of Manners. As may appear by *Euseb. lib. 6. cap. 18.* (out of *Origen*) the Council of *Laodicea, Can. 59.* (which is also confirmed by the sixth General Council of *Constantinople, Can. 2.*) and many other Testimonies of the Ancient Fathers.
7. Seventhly, There is no such constant Truth in them, as in the Canonical Scriptures. For every Book of them hath Fallhoods in Doctrine or History.

*Shew some of those Errors in the particular Books.*

The Errors of  
the Apocryphal  
Books.

In the Book of *Tobit*, the Angel maketh a lie, saying, That he is *Azariah* the Son of *Ananias*, *Tob. 5. 12.* which is far from the Spirit of God, and the Nature of Good Angels that cannot Sin. There is also the Unchaste Devil *Asmodeus*; the seven Angels which present the Prayers of the Saints, *Tob. 12. 15.* and the Magical Toys of the Fifth's Heart, Liver, and Gall, for driving away of Devils, and restoring of Sight; not favouring of the Spirit of God.

*Judith* in her Prayer commendeth the Fact of *Simeon*, *Gen. 34.* which the Holy Ghost condemneth, *Gen. 49. 5.* and prayeth God to prosper her feigned Tales and Lies, *Jud. 9. 12.*

*Baruc* saith, He wrote this Book in *Babylon, Chap. 1. v. 1.* whereas it appeareth by *Jeremiah 43. 6.* that he was with *Jeremiah* at *Jerusalem*, and went not from him. Likewise he writeth for Offerings and Vessels, after the Temple was burned. And in the 6th Chapter, v. 3. *Jeremiah* writeth, that the continuance of the Jews in *Babylon* shall be for seven Generations, whereas the Canonical *Jeremiah* prophecieth but of 70 years, *Cap. 29. 10.* For ten years cannot make a Generation, neither is it ever so taken in the Canonical Scriptures.

The Story of *Susanna* maketh *Daniel* a Young Child in the days of *Astyages*, and to become famous among the People by the Judgment of *Susanna*. Whereas *Daniel* himself writeth otherwise of his carriage into *Babylon* in the days of *Jehoiakim* under *Nebuchadnezzar*, and of the means by which he was known first to be a Prophet; *Dan. 1. and 2.*



The Story of *Bell* and the *Dragon* speaketh of *Habakkuk* the Prophet in the days of *Cyrus*; who prophesied before the Captivity of *Babylon*, which was 70 years before *Cyrus*.

The first Book of *Maccabees*, writing an History of things said and done, doth not much intee lace his own Judgment; and therefore doth err the less: yet is his Narration contrary to the second Book of *Maccabees* in many places, and to *Josephus* in some things. For Example; The first Book of *Maccabees* saith, That *Antiochus* died at *Babylon* in his Bed, being grieved in Mind for Tidings brought unto him out of *Persia*, 1 *Mac.* 6. *vers.* 8, and 16. But in the first Chapter of the second Book of *Maccabees*, v. 15, 16. it is said, That he was cut in peices in the Temple of *Nanea*: and in the ninth Chapter of the same Book, That he died of a grievous Disease of his Bowels in a strange Country in the Mountains, 2 *Mac.* 9. 28.

The second Book of *Maccabees* is far worse. For the Abridger of *afon's* Chronicle, who set it forth, doth not only confound and falsifie many Stories, (as it is easie to be proved out of the first Book of *Maccabees*, *Josephus* and others) but also whilst he giveth his Sentence of divers Facts, doth more bewray the weaknes of his judgment. As he commendeth *Razis* for killing himself, 2 *Maccab.* 14. 42. and *Judas* for offering Sacrifice for the Dead, that were polluted with Idolatry, 2 *Mac.* 12. 45. whereas it is to be thought rather, that the Sacrifice was offered to pacifie the Wrath of God for them that were alive, that they should not be wrapped in the Curse of the Wicked, as in the Story of *Achan*, Josh. 7. Yet he is the more to be born withal, because he confesseth his insufficiency: (2 *Matth.* 15. 38.) which agreeth not with the Spirit of God.

The Additions unto *Esther* are fabulous, convinced of many Untruths by the Canonical Book: As namely, 1. In the Apocryphal *Esther*; *Mordecai* is said to dream in the second year of *Abasuerus*, (*chap.* 11. 2.) but in the Canonical, the seventh year, (*Esther* 2. 16.) and *Bellarmino* making the Dream in the seventh year, and the Conspiracy in the second, maketh five years difference, and is contrary to the 11 *chap.* 2. The True saith, that *Mordecai* had no Reward, (*Esther* 6. 3.) the False saith he had, (*chap.* 12. 5.) 3. The True calleth *Haman* an *Agagite*, (*Esther* 3. 1.) that is, an *Amalekite*: the False calleth him a *Macedonian*, (*chap.* 16. 10.) Also the Author of those Additions describeth the countenance of the King to be full of Cruelty and Wrath, (*chap.* 15. 7.) yet he maketh *Esther* to say, it was glorious like an Angel of God, and full of Grace, (*vers.* 13, 14.) either lying himself, or charging *Esther* with impudent Lying and flattering.

The Book of *Wisdom* is so far off from being any Book of the Old Testament, that it is affirmed by divers Ancient Writers, that it was made by *Philo* the Jew, which lived since Christ, as *St. Jerom* witnesseth in his Preface to the *Proverbs*. Howsoever the Author would fain seem to be *Solomon*, (*chap.* 9. 8.) See his cruel Sentence against Bastards in the end of the third Chapter.

*Jesus* the Son of *Sirach* sheweth the frailty of Man in divers places of *Ecclesiasticus*; and namely, *chap.* 46. 20. where he acknowledgeth that *Samuel* indeed, and not a wicked Spirit in the shape of *Samuel*, was raised by the Witch of *Endor*, 1 *Sam.* 28. Also *chap.* 48. 10. he understandeth the Prophecy of *Malachy*, of the Personal coming of *Elias*, which our Saviour Christ doth manifestly refer unto *John* the Baptist, *Mat.* 11. 14.

The

The Third Book of *Esdra*s is full of impudent Lies and Fables, convinced by the Book of *Ezra*, *Nehemiab*, *Haggai*, and *Esther*. For Example; *Ezra* saith, That all the Vessels of Gold and Silver which *Cyrus* delivered *Shefbazzar*, were by *Shefbazzar* carried from *Babylon* to *Jerusalem*. *Ezra* 1. 11. This *Esdra*s saith, they were only numbred by *Cyrus*, not sent, but afterwards *Darius* delivered them to *Zerubbabel*, and by him they were brought to *Jerusalem*, 1 *Esdra*s 4. 44, 55.

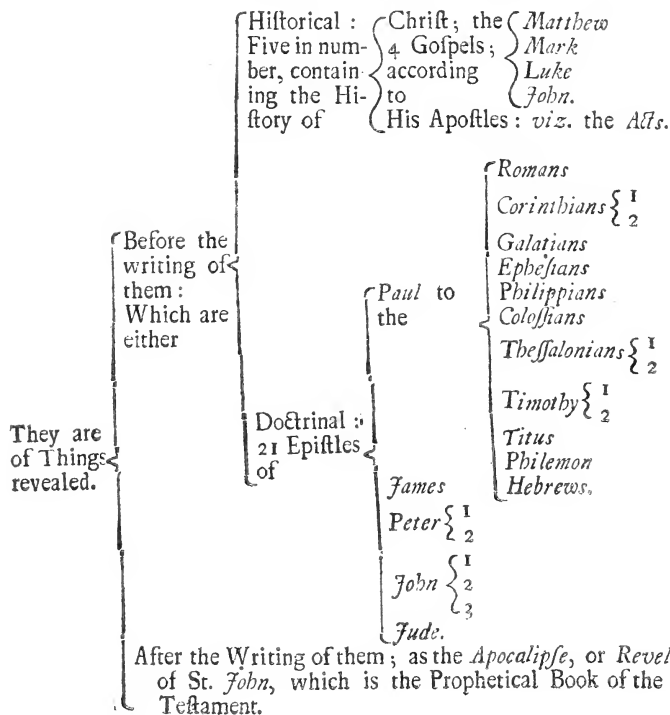
The Fourth Book of *Esdra*s is now rejected of the Papists themselves, as it was of *Hierom*; containing also many Falfities, Dreams and Fables, *Chap.* 6. 49, 50. and 13. 43, 44, &c. and 14. 21, 22, &c.

Of the Books  
of the New  
Testament.

Thus much for the Books of the Old Testament. In what Language were the Books of the New Testament written?

In Greek, because it was the most common Language, best known then to Jews and Gentiles; teaching, that all Kingdoms should have the Scriptures in a Language which they understand.

How are the Books of the New Testament distinguished?



Is it agreed that all these Books, and they alone, are the Holy Scriptures of the New Testament?

Yes: Howsoever in Ancient Time they have not been all received with like consent. Yet they have the Testimony of all Ages; and there is nothing in any of them repugnant to the rest of the Canonical Scriptures. Were

*Were there never any Books of Canonical Scripture lost?*

No, Heaven and Earth shall perish, before one Jot or Tittle of them shall perish.

*What say you to the Books of Gad and Nathan, (2 Chron. 9. 29.) of Ahijah and Iddo, (2 Chron. 9. 29.) and Paul's Epistle to the Laodiceans, Col. 4. 16.*

These Books often mentioned in the Old Testament, were not Canonical Scripture, but Civil Chronicles, wherein the Matters of the Common-Wealth were more largely written; as the Chronicles of the Medes and Persians, *Ester* 10. 2 And the Epistle mentioned *Col. 4.* was rather of the *Laodiceans* to Paul, than of Paul to the *Laodiceans*.

*What are the Properties of the Holy Scriptures?*

First, They are perfectly Holy in themselves, and by themselves: whereas other Writings are prophane, further than they draw some Holiness from them; which is never such but that their Holiness is imperfect.

The Properties of the Holy Scriptures,  
As, 1. Holy.  
2. The highest in Authority.

Secondly, The Authority of these Holy Writings, inspired of God, is highest in the Church, as the Authority of God; whereunto no Learning or Decrees of Angels or Men, under what name or colour soever it be commended, may be accounted equal, (*Gal. 1. 8, 9. 2 Thess. 2. 2.*) neither can they be judged or sentenced by any.

Thirdly, The Books of Holy Scripture are so sufficient for the knowledge of Christian Religion, that they do most plentifully contain all Doctrine necessary to Salvation. They being perfectly profitable to instruct to Salvation in themselves; and all other imperfectly profitable thereunto, further than they draw from them.

3. Sufficient in themselves.

Whence it followeth that we need no unwritten Verities, no Traditions or Inventions of Men, no Canons of Councils, no Sentences of Fathers, much less Decrees of Popes, for to supply any supposed defect of the Written Word, or for to give us a more perfect direction in the Worship of God, and the Way of Life, than is already expressed in the Canonical Scriptures, *Mat. 23. 8. John 5. 39. Mat. 15. 9.* Finally, These Holy Scriptures are the Rule, the Line, the Square, and Light, whereby to examine and try all Judgments and Sayings of Men and Angels, *John 12. 48. Gal. 1. 9.* All Traditions, Revelations, Decrees of Councils, Opinions of Doctors, &c. are to be embraced so far forth as they may be proved out of the Divine Scriptures, and not otherwise. So that from them only all Doctrine concerning our Salvation must be drawn and derived: That only is to be taken for Truth, in Matters appertaining to Christian Religion, which is agreeable unto them; and whatsoever disagreeeth from them is to be refused.

*How do you prove that the Scripture is such a Rule?*

Since God hath appointed the Holy Scriptures, which bear witness of Christ, (*John 5. 39.*) to be written for our Learning: (*Rom. 15. 4.*) He will have no other Doctrine pertaining to Eternal Life to be received, but that which is consonant unto them, and hath the ground thereof in them. Therefore unto them only is the Church directed for the saving Knowledge of God, *Esa. 8. 20. Luke 16. 29, 31.* Inasmuch that all Prophecies, Revelations, and Miracles are to be judged by their consent with the Law of God written by *Moses*; to which nothing is to be added, nor any thing to be taken away from it, (*Deut. 12. 32. and 13. 1, 2.*) Yea, Christ himself appeareth to the trial of those things which *Moses* did write of him, (*John 5. 46.*) being none other in any respect, but even the same whom *Moses* in the Law and the Prophets (which were the Interpreters and Commentators upon the Law written by *Moses*) did write of,

That the Scriptures are a perfect Rule, for Doctrine, Life, and Salvation.

(*John.*)

(*John* 1. 45.) And his Apostles preaching the Gospel among all Nations, taught nothing beside that which *Moses* and the Prophets had spoken to be fulfilled in Christ, as *Paul* testifieth, *Acts* 26. 22. seeing as he taught, all the rest of the Apostles did teach.

*Where do you find that the Scriptures are able to instruct us perfectly unto Salvation?*

The Apostle *Paul*, in 2 *Tim.* 3. 15. doth expressly affirm it; and the Reasons which may be gathered out of the two Verses following do plainly prove it.

*What are these Reasons?*

1. God being Author of these Books, they must needs be perfect, as he himself is. Who being for his Wisdom able, and for his Love to his Church willing to set down such a Rule as may guide them to Eternal Life, hath not failed herein.

2. They are profitable to teach all True Doctrine, and to confute the False; to correct all Disorder private and publick, and to inform Men in the way of Righteousness.

3. The Man of God, that is, the Preacher and Minister of the Word, is thereby made compleat and perfect, sufficiently furnished unto every good Work or Duty of the Ministry.

*How doth this last Reason hold?*

Most strongly. For the People being to learn of the Minister, what to believe and what to do; and more being required of him that must be the Eye and Mouth of all the rest: If he may be perfectly instructed by the Scriptures, they are much more able to give every common Man sufficient instruction. Again, seeing the Minister is bound to disclose the whole Counsel of God to his People, (*Acts* 20. 27. he being thereto fully furnished out of the Treasury of the Word of God; it followeth, that by him out of the Scriptures they may also be abundantly taught to Salvation.

*What further proof have you of the Sufficiency of the Scriptures?*

The five Books of *Moses*, which was the first Holy Scripture delivered to the Church, was sufficient for the instruction of the People of that Time, in all that God required at their hands. As appeareth by that they were forbidden to add any thing unto it, or to take any thing from it, but to do that only which was prescribed by the Law, (*Deut.* 12. 32.) The Prince and the People are commanded to be directed thereby altogether, and not to depart from it, either to the right hand or to the left, (*Deut.* 17.) How much more the Law and the Prophets (which did more at large set forth the Doctrine delivered by *Moses*, both in Precepts and Promises, in Practice and Example, was sufficient for the time that succeeded until *John* the Baptist? *Mat.* 11. 12. *Luke* 16. 16.

1. *What more can you alledge for this purpose?*

*Psal.* 19. 7. *David* saith, *The Law of the Lord is perfect, converting the Soul.* And *Psal.* 119. 96. *I have seen an end of all Perfection: but thy Commandment is exceeding large.*

2. *Luke* 16. 29. *Abraham* in the Parabolical Story testifieth, that *Moses* and the Prophets were sufficient to keep Men from Damnation.

3. *John* 5. 39. Our Saviour Christ affirmeth of the Scriptures of the Old Testament, that they were Witnesses of him, in whom our Salvation is perfect.

4. *Acts* 17. 11. The *Bereans* are commended for examining the Doctrine of the Apostles by the Scriptures of the Old Testament.

*Acts* 26. 22. *Paul* taught nothing but that which *Moses* and the *Prophets* had written of *Christ* to be fulfilled. 5.

*1 John* 1. 1, 2, 3. *John* saith, That what they had heard and seen, that they delivered. 6.

*Gal.* 1. 8, 9. *Paul* wisheth, That if an *Angel* from *Heaven* came and taught any other *Doctrin*e, we should hold him accursed. 7.

*Apoc.* 22. 18, 19. There is a *Curse* pronounced against him that addeth any thing, or taketh away any thing from *Scripture*. 8.

*1 Cor.* 4. 6. *Paul* saith, That no *Man* must presume above that which is written. 9.

*John* 20. 31. *St. John* saith, That these things are written that we might believe that *Jesus* is the *Christ*, the *Son of God*, and that believing we might have life through his *Name*. Where he speaketh not only of his *Gospel*, but being the survivor of the rest of the *Apostles*, of all their *Writings*; Seeing then that Faith by those things that are written, and eternal *Salvation* by Faith, may be attained; it ought to be no *Controversie* amongst *Christians*, that the whole *Scriptures* of the *Old* and *New Testament* doth most richly and abundantly contain all that is necessary for a *Christian Man* to believe and to do for *Eternal Salvation*. 10.

*Object.* 1. Yet our *Adversaries* quarrel against this most rich and plentiful *Treasure of the Holy Scriptures*; alledging that we receive many things by *tradition* which are not in *Scripture*, and yet we believe them: As *Mary's perpetual Virginity*, and the *Baptism of Infants*. Objections against the sufficiency of the Holy Scriptures, answered.

We make not *Mary's perpetual Virginity* any *Matter of Religion*, but a likely *Opinion* so far as it can be maintained, that it were an unseemly and unfitting thing for a *sinful Man* to use to the *Act* of *Generation*, that *Vessel* which was chosen and consecrated by the *Holy Ghost* to so high an use, as was the bringing forth of the *Saviour of the World*: it hath warrant from the *Apostle's Charge*, *Phil.* 4. 8. of doing whatsoever is honest, whatsoever is of good report, whatsoever is praise-worthy, &c. As for *Baptism of Infants*, it is sufficiently warranted by *Reasons of Scripture*, though not by *Example*.

*Object.* 2. They *Object* that it is by *Tradition*, and not by *Scripture*, that we know such and such *Books* to be *Scripture*.

Though new *Beginners* do first learn it from the *Faithful*; yet afterwards they know it upon grounds of *Scripture*. As an *ignorant Man* may be told of the *King's Coin*: but it is not that telling, but the *King's Stamp* that maketh it current and good *Coin*.

*Object.* 3. It is *Objected*, That it was by *Tradition*, and not by *Scripture*, that *Stephen* knew *Moses* to be 40 years old when he left *Pharaoh*, *Acts* 7. 23. That *Luke* knew a great part of the *Genealogy of Christ*, *Luk.* 3. That *Jude* knew *Satan's striving for Moses Body*, *Jude* v. 9. and the *Prophecy of Enoch*, *vers.* 14. That *Paul* knew *Jannes and Jambres*, *2 Tim.* 3. 8. and the saying of *Christ*, That it is more blessed to give than to receive, *Acts* 20. 35.

Such particular *Histories* or *Speeches* might be received from hand to hand: but no different *Doctrin*e from that which was written.

*Object.* 4. The *Apostles testimony* is objected, *1 Cor.* 15. 3. and *2 Thess.* 2. 15. Hold the *Traditions* which you have been taught, whether by *Word* or our *Epistle*.

He meaneth the *Doctrin*e he delivered unto them, which is nothing different from that which is contained in the *Scriptures*.

*The Scriptures you say are a Rule and a Line: But are they not (as the Church of Rome imagineth) like a Rule of Lead which may be bowed every way at Mens pleasures?*

They are as a Rule of Steel, that is firm and changeth not, (*Mat. 5. 18. Psal. 19. 9.*) For seeing they are sufficient to make us wise unto Salvation, (as is before proved); it followeth of necessity, that there is a most certain Rule of Truth for instruction, both of Faith and Works, to be learned out of them, by ordinary means of Reading, Prayer, Study, the Gifts of Tongues, and other Sciences; to which God promiseth the assistance of his Grace, (*John 5. 39. James 1. 5.*) And this Sword of the Spirit, which is the Word of God written, as the Example of Christ our General Captain sheweth, (*Mat. 4.*) is delivered unto us by the Holy Ghost, both to defend our Faith, and to overcome all our Spiritual Enemies, which are the Devil and his Instruments, false Prophets, Hereticks, Schismatics, and such like, (*Ephes. 6. 12.*) Therefore the Holy Scriptures are not as a Nose of wax, or a Leaden Rule, (as some Papists have blasphemed) that they be so writhed every way by impudent Hereticks, but that their folly and madness (as the Apostle saith, *2 Tim. 3. 9.*) may be made manifest to all Men.

*Are the Scriptures then plain and easie to be understood?*

There are some hard things in the Scriptures that have proper relation to the time in which the Scripture was written and uttered, or which are Prophecies of things to be fulfilled hereafter; which if we never understand, we shall be never the worse for the attaining of everlasting Salvation. There are other things in Scripture belonging unto the saving Knowledge of God: All which are dark and difficult unto those whose eyes the God of this World hath blinded, (*2 Cor. 4. 4. 2 Pet. 3. 5. John 8. 43.*) But unto such as are by Grace enlightened, and made willing to understand, (*Psal. 119. 18.*) howsoever some things remain obscure (*2 Pet. 3. 16.*) to exercise their diligence, yet the *fundamental Doctrines* of Faith, and Precepts of Life, are all plain and perspicuous. For all Doctrine necessary to be known unto Eternal Salvation, is set forth in the Scriptures most clearly and plainly, even to the capacity and understanding of the simple and unlearned: so far is it that the Scriptures should be dangerous to be read of the Lay-folks, as Papists hold.

*How prove you this which you have said?*

1. *Deut. 30. 10, 11, &c. Moses taketh Heaven and Earth to witness, that in the Law which he had written, he hath set forth Life and Death, and that they can make no excuse of difficult or obscurity. This Commandment which I command thee this day, is not hid from thee, neither is it far off, &c. which Paul also, Rom. 10. 15. applieth to the Gospel.*
2. *Psal. 19. 8. The Prophet David testifieth, That the Law of the Lord is perfect, converting the Soul; the Testimonies of the Lord are true, giving Wisdom to the Simple: And Psal. 119. 105. Thy Word is a Lamp (or Candle) unto my Feet, and a Light unto my Path.*
3. *Prov. 1. 4. It giveth subtilty to the simple, to the young Man knowledge and discretion: And Prov. 8. 9. All the words of Wisdom are plain to him that will understand.*
4. *Esa. 45. 19. The Lord saith, I have not spoken in secret, in a dark place of the Earth; I have not said in vain to the Seed of Jacob, Seek me.*
5. *2 Cor. 4. 3. Paul saith; If our Gospel be hid, it is hid to them that are lost, &c.*

Of the perspicuity of the Holy Scriptures.

2 Pet. 1. 19. St. Peter commendeth Christians for taking heed to the Word of the Prophets, *as unto a Light that shineth in a dark place, &c.* 6.

The Scripture is our Father's Letter unto us, and his last Will to shew us what Inheritance he leaveth us. But Friends write Letters, and Fathers their Wills, plain. 7.

It were to accuse God of Cruelty, or desire of Man's Destruction, to say that he should make the means of their Salvation hurtful unto them. 8.

Women and Children have read the Scriptures. In 2 Tim. 3. 15. St. Paul affirmeth Timothy was nourished up in the Scriptures from his Infancy: Namely, by his Grandmother Lois, and his Mother Eunice; whom the same Apostle commendeth, chap. 1. 5. If little Children are capable of the Scriptures by the small understanding they have, and leis judgment: there is none so gross (which hath the understanding of a Man) but may profit by it, coming in the fear of God, and invocation of his Name. 9.

*But here the Papists have many things to object against you, to prove that the Scriptures are dark and hard to be understood: And,* The Papists Objections against the perspicuity of the Scriptures answered.

Object. 1. *First, That the Matters contained in them are Divine, High, and beyond man's Reason: as the Trinity, the Creation of nothing, &c.*

These Matters indeed are above Humane Reason: and therefore are we to bring Faith to believe them, not humane Reason to comprehend them. But they are delivered in Scripture in as plain terms as such Matter can be.

Object. 2. *Peter saith, That some things in Paul's Epistles are hard, and wrested by unlearned and unstable Men, (2 Pet. 3. 16.)*

First, He saith not that all Paul's Epistles are hard, but something in them; which we grant. 1.

Secondly, They are the wicked and unfettled in knowledge that wrest them, as Gluttons and Drunkards abuse Meat and Drink. 2.

Object. 3. *If the Scriptures were not dark, what need so many Commentaries upon them? And why are they so full of Parables and Allegories as they are?*

The whole Doctrine of Salvation is to be found so plain, that it needeth no Commentary. And Commentaries are for other Places that are dark; and also to make more large use of Scripture than a new beginner can make of himself; which we see necessary in all Humane Arts and Sciences. Further, though the Speech of Scripture seem hard at first, yet by custom it becometh easie: as Reading doth to Children.

Object. 4. *The Godly Eunuch saith, he could not understand the Scripture without an Interpreter, Acts 8. 31.*

Though he understood not some dark places, yet that hindred him not from reading plainer places.

Object. 5. *The multitude of Learned Men that fall into Heresies, which they labour to confirm by Scripture, proveth that the Scripture is dark.*

It is their naughty hearts that come not with an humble and godly Affection that maketh them do so.

Object. 6. *But we see by experience that there are many that daily read the Scriptures, and yet understand not the thousandth part of them.*

They read them not with Care and Conscience, with Prayer and Study; but like the Women that are always learning, and never come to the knowledge of the Truth, 2 Tim. 3. 7.

Object. 7. *If the Scriptures be so plain and perspicuous; what need is there then of an Interpreter?*

First, To unfold obscure places, (*Acts* 8. 31.) Secondly, To inculcate and apply plain Texts, (*2 Pet.* 1. 12, 13. *1 Cor.* 14. 3.)

Why God hath  
left some place  
of Scripture  
obscure.

*Why did God leave some places obscure in the Scriptures?*

First, That we might know that the understanding of God's Word is the Gift of God; and therefore might beg it of him by continual Prayer.

Secondly, Lest we should flatter our own wits too much, if all things could presently be understood by us.

Thirdly, That the Word, for the high and heavenly Mysteries contained therein, might be accounted of; which for the plainness possibly might be less esteemed.

Fourthly, That profane Dogs might be driven away from these Holy Mysteries; which are Pearls prized highly by the Elect alone, (*Mat.* 13. 45.) but would be trodden under-foot by Swine, (*Mat.* 7. 6.)

Fifthly, That we might be stirred up to a more diligent search of the same.

Sixthly, That we might esteem more of the Ministry, which God hath placed in the Church, that by the means thereof we might profit in the knowledge of these Mysteries.

Of the Transla-  
tion of Holy  
Scriptures.

*What assurance may be had of the right understanding the Holy Scriptures?*

For the words, it is to be had out of the Original Text, or Translations of the same: for the sense or meaning, only out of the Scriptures themselves, (*Nehem.* 8. 8.) which by places plain and evident, do express whatsoever is obscure and hard touching Matters necessary to eternal Salvation.

*Why must the interpretation of words be had out of the original Languages?*

Because in them only the Scriptures are, for the Letter, to be held authentical. And as the Water is most pure in the Fountain or Spring thereof: so the right understanding of the words of the Holy Scriptures is most certain in the Original Tongues of Hebrew and Greek, in which they were first written and delivered to the Church, out of which Languages they must be truly translated for the understanding of them that have not the knowledge of those Tongues.

*What gather you from hence?*

That all Translations are to be judged, examined, and reformed according to the Text of the Ancient Hebrew and Original Chaldee, in which the Old Testament was penned, and the Greek Text, in which the New Testament was written. And consequently that the vulgar Latin Translation, approved by the Tridentine Council for the only Authentical Text, is no further to be received of true Christians, than it agreeth with the Original of the Hebrew and Greek Text.

*But what say you of the Greek Translation of the Old Testament, commonly called the Septuagint, approved by the Apostles themselves?*

The same that we say of other Translations. For although the Apostles used that Translation, which was commonly received and read among the Gentiles and Jews that dwelt amongst them, where it differed not in sense from the true Hebrew: yet where it differed from it, they left it; as by many Examples may be confirmed, (*Vide Hieronym. Prolog. in Mat.*)

An Objection  
grounded on  
various read-  
ings, answered.

*How can the certain understanding of the Scriptures be taken out of the Original Tongues; considering the difference of Reading, which is in divers Copies both of Hebrew and Greek; as also the difficulty of some Words and Phrases upon which the best Translators cannot agree?*

Although in the Hebrew Copies there hath been observed by the *Masorites* some very few differences of Words, by similitude of Letters and Points; and



by the Learned in the Greek Tongue there are like diversities of Reading noted in the Greek Text of the New Testament, which came by fault of Writers: yet in most by circumstance of the place, and conference of other places, the true reading may be discerned. And albeit in all it cannot, nor the Translator in all places determine the true Interpretation; yet this diversity or difficulty can make no difference or uncertainty in the sum and substance of Christian Religion; because the Ten Commandments, and the principal Texts of Scripture on which the Articles of our Faith are grounded, the Sacraments instituted, the Form of Prayer taught, (which contain the sum or substance of Christian Religion) are without all such diversity of Reading, or difficulty of Translating so plainly set down, and so precisely translated by consent of all Learned Men in the Tongues, that no Man can make any doubt of them, or pick any quarrel against them.

*Why must the true sense or meaning of the Scriptures be learned out of the Scriptures themselves?*

Why the Scriptures must be expounded by the Scriptures.

Because the Spirit of God alone is the certain Interpreter of his Word, written by his Spirit. For *no Man knoweth the Things pertaining to God, but the Spirit of God*, 1 Cor. 2. 11. And *no Prophecy of Scripture is of Man's own Interpretation: For Prophecy was not brought by the Will of Man, but the Holy Men of God spake as they were led by the Holy Ghost*, 2 Pet. 1. 20, 21. The Interpretation therefore must be by the same Spirit by which the Scripture was written: of which Spirit we have no certainty upon any Man's Credit, but only so far forth as his Saying may be confirmed by the Holy Scripture.

*What gather you from hence?*

That no Interpretation of Holy Fathers, Popes, Councils, Custom or Practice of the Church, either contrary to the manifest words of the Scripture, or containing Matters which cannot necessarily be proved out of the Scriptures, are to be received as an undoubted Truth.

*How then is Scripture to be interpreted by Scripture?*

According to the *Analogy of Faith*, (Rom. 12. 6.) and the scope and circumstances of the present place; and conference of other plain and evident places, by which all such as are obscure and hard to be understood, ought to be interpreted. For there is no Matter necessary to eternal Life, which is not plainly and sufficiently set forth in many places of Scripture: by which other places that are abused by the Devil or his Ministers, may be interpreted. As our Saviour Christ giveth us Example, *Mat. 4. 6, 7.* when the Devil abused the Text of Scripture, *Psal. 91. 11.* declaring that this place must be so understood as it may agree with that most evident and express Commandment written in *Deut. 6. 16. Thou shalt not tempt the Lord thy God.*

*What are the special Uses of the Scriptures rightly understood?*

The Uses of Holy Scriptures.

Two. First, To teach Doctrine, by laying out the Truth, and confuting Errors.

Secondly, To exhort out of it, by stirring us to good, and turning us back from evil. Whereunto belong those four Uses mentioned by the Apostle in *2 Tim. 3. 16.* two whereof are Theoretical, pertaining to the information of our Judgment in matters of Doctrine; *viz.* First, *Teaching* of Truth: Secondly, *Reproving* or *Convincing* of Errors. Two are practical, pertaining to the direction of our Life and Actions; *viz.* First, *Reformation* or *Correction* of Vice: under which is comprehended *Admonition*. Secondly, *Instruction*, or *Direction* to good Life: under which is comprehended *Exhortation* and *Consolation*, which is a special Instruction to Patience in Adversities; (Rom. 15. 4.)

What

Who muſt  
read the Scrip-  
tures.

*What Perſons are meet to Read or Hear the Scriptures ?*

The Holy Scriptures are reverently and profitably to be read and heard of all ſorts and degrees of Men and Women : and therefore to be truly tranſlated out of the Original Tongues into the Language of every Nation which deſireth to know them. For the Lay-people as well as the Learned muſt read the Scriptures, or hear them read, both privately and openly, ſo aſ they may receive profit by them : and conſequently in a Tongue they underſtand. (1 Cor. 14.)

That all muſt  
read the Scrip-  
tures, proved.

*How do you prove that the Scriptures ought to be read and heard of all ſorts of People ?*

1. *Fiſt, Deut. 31. 11, 12. Moſes* commandeth the Book of the Law to be read unto all the Children of *Iſrael*, Men, Women, Children, and Strangers that dwelt amongſt them ; that they might thereby learn to fear the Lord their God, and diligently to obſerve all the words of the Law.
2. Secondly, *Joſhua 8. 35. There was not a word of all that Moſes commanded which Joſhua read not before all the Congregation of Iſrael, with the Women and the little Ones, and the Strangers that were converſant among them.* So like- wiſe did *Joſiab*, (2 Kings 23. 2 and 2 Chron. 34. 30) and *Ezra*. (Nehem. 8. 2, 3.)
3. Thirdly, *Pſal. 1. 2. David* ſheweth this to be the property of a Godly Man, and pronounceth him to be happy, whoſe delight is in the Law of the Lord, and ſtudieth therein day and night.
4. Fourthly, *Matth. 22. 29.* Our Saviour teacheth, that ignorance of Scrip- tures is the Mother of Error ; not the Mother of Devotion, as Papiſts have affirmed.
5. Fifthly, *John 5. 39.* Chriſt commandeth all Men that ſeek eternal Life in him, to ſearch the Scriptures. *Search the Scriptures, for in them ye think to have eternal Life, &c.*
6. Sixthly, *Acts 17. 11.* The *Bereans* are commended for ſearching the Scrip- tures.
7. Seventhly, *2 Tim. 3. 15.* The Apoſtle *Paul* approved in *Timothy*, that he had learned the Holy Scriptures from a young Child.
8. Eighthly, *2 Pet. 1. 19.* The Apoſtle *Peter* commendeth the Faithful for tak- ing heed to the Scripture of the Prophets.
9. Ninthly, *Rev. 1. 3. Blessed is he that readeth, and they that hear the Word of this Prophecy.*
10. Tenthly, *Col. 3. 16. Let the Word of Chriſt dwell in you richly in all Wiſdom.*
11. Eleventhly, *Rom. 15. 4. Whatſoever things were written aforetime, were written for our Learning, that we through patience and conſort of the Scriptures might have hope.* If the Scriptures be written for our Learning, they are ne- ceſſarily to be read by us.
12. Twelfthly, *Rom. 7. 7. Paul* ſaith, He knew not ſin but by the Law. But the knowledge of ſin is neceſſary for all that will repent and be ſaved ; therefore alſo is the knowledge of the Law neceſſary.
13. Thirteenthly, *Luke* ſaith, That he wrote the Goſpel to *Theophilus*, that he might know the certainty of thoſe things, which before he was catechiſed in, *Luke 1. 4.* But every one ought to labour to be moſt certain of their Salva- tion, &c.

The Papiſts  
Objections a-  
gainſt reading  
the Scriptures,  
answered.

*Divers things are oppoſed by the Adverſaries againſt the neceſſity of the Scriptures, and the reading of them by all ſorts : as fiſt, That there were many Believers among the Gentiles in the time of the Old Teſta- ment, who yet wanted the Scripture, (which was kept in Jury) as Job and his Friends.*

Thoſe,

Those, if any such were after the Law, (for *Job* was before) were bound to have the Scripture when it was delivered by God: And the Eunuch had it and read it, *Acts* 8. 28.

Obj. 2. *The Book of the Law was lost for many years; as appeareth by 2 King. 22. 1. and yet the Church was then: Therefore it may want it.*

The loss of that Book doth argue rather the carelessness of the Priests in not keeping it, and the sins of the People, in that God for a time deprived them of it.

Obj. 3. *The Church of Christians many years after Christ wanted the Scripture of the New Testament, and contented themselves with bare teaching.*

First, Though the Church for certain years then had not the New, yet they had the Old.

Secondly, There passed not many years before the Gospels and the Epistles of the Apostles were written: And in the mean time their Heavenly Doctrine, inspired from God, sufficed till they wrote.

Obj. 4. *There are many poor Country-men, as Plough men and Shepherds, which never learned to read; which yet are saved, though they never read Scripture.*

They ought to have learned to read: And being not able to read, yet they might hear the Scriptures read by others.

Obj. 5. *If all ought to read Scripture, then should they understand Hebrew and Greek, wherein Scripture was written.*

It were happy if they could understand the Hebrew and Greek; but howsoever, they may read Translations.

*Will it not follow hereof, that Preaching and Expounding of the Scriptures may be neglected as unnecessary?*

No. For God hath appointed not only Reading, but also Preaching of his Word; especially to apply it to the use of all sorts of Men to their eternal Salvation, *Rom.* 10. 12. &c. So were the Prophets Interpreters of the Law, (as is before shewed.) The Scribes and Pharisees taught in the Chair of *Moses*, *Mat.* 23. 2. The Eunuch could not understand the Prophecy of *Isaiab* without an Interpreter, *Acts* 8. 31. The Ministry of the Word therefore is necessary, as the ordinary means unto Salvation, *1 Tim.* 4. 16. and the People by reading and hearing of the Scriptures are better prepared to receive profit by Preaching, not discharged from hearing the Preacher.

*What is the sum of all that hath been delivered hitherto?*

That we should labour for a due knowledge of the True God, that we may know what we worship, and worship what we know, (*1 Chron.* 28. 9. *Job.* 4. 22. and 17. 3.) That this knowledge of God is to be had partly by his Works, namely, so much as may serve to convince Man, and make him unexcusable, (*Rom.* 1. 19, 20. *Acts* 14. 15.) but most sufficiently by his Word contained in the Holy Scriptures, which therefore are called his Testimonies, (*Psalms* 119. 14.) because they testify of God (*John* 5. 39.) what he is, and how he will be served of us. Lastly, That forasmuch as all that is written in the Word of God, is written for our instruction and learning, (*Rom.* 15. 4.) therefore we (being prepared by true Prayer, sanctified with Faith, and seasoned with the Spirit of Sobriety and Humility) may safely learn so much as is revealed in the Scriptures for our profiting in the knowledge of God.

*What is the first Point of Religion that we are taught in the Scriptures?*

That there is a God.

That there is a God.

Why

*Why do you make this the first Point ?*

Because the Scripture saith, *He that cometh to God, must believe that he is,* Heb. 11. 6.

*Have any called this into question at any time ?*

Yea, so saith the Prophet *David*: but he sheweth also that it was by wicked, proud, and foolish Men, whose lives were nothing else but abomination and corruption, (*Psal.* 10. 4. and 14. 1.)

*What pretence of Reason might they have for this wicked imagination ?*

Because no Man ever saw God yet: By which foolish Argument they might deny also that there is any Wind, or that Man hath a Soul. For no Man yet ever saw them.

*But how come you to persuade your self that there is such a God ?*

Beside infinite Testimonies of the Scriptures, as *Gen.* 1. 1. *Psal.* 19. 1, &c. the common consent of all Nations approveth this Truth, who rather worship any God or Gods, than none at all. And though Man by Nature doth desire to be exalted, and in respect of himself despiseth all other Creatures, as Wood and Stone: yet when a piece of Wood is framed out like a Man, and set in the Temple, and Man conceiveth an Opinion that it is a God, he falleth down and worshippeth it, (*Esa.* 44. 15, 17.)

*How then cometh it to pass that the Wicked say there is no God ?* (*Psal.* 14. 1.)

First, Though upon a sudden passion they may seem to say so, as the Devil laboureth to tempt them; yet their very Conscience after doth check them.

Secondly, They deny rather God's Providence, than his Being; as appeareth by *Psal.* 10. 4, 11.

*What other Reasons have you to prove that there is a God ?*

1. God's Works of Creation and Providence both ordinary and extraordinary. For first, the glorious frame of the World, the Heavens, and the Earth, and the Sea, and all that is in them, must needs argue that their Maker was God, (*Rom.* 1. 19, 20. *Acts* 14. 17. *Zech.* 12. 1.) it being evident that the World could not be made by the Creatures that are in it, neither could it make it self. As when a Man comes into a strange Country, and sees fair and sumptuous Buildings, and finds no Body there but Birds or Beasts; he will not imagine that either Birds or Beasts reared those Buildings, but he presently conceives that some Man either are or have been there.

2. The Creation of the Soul of Men, indued with Reason and Conscience, doth specially prove the same, *Zech.* 12. 1.

3. The preserving of things created, together with the wonderful and orderly Government of the World, Day and Night, Summer and Winter, &c. manifestly convince the same. For Example: Bread is no better in it self than Earth; yet Man is preserved by Bread, and if he eat Earth, he dieth. The reason whereof must be attributed to the Blessing of God, giving to the one force and power to nourish more than to the other.

4. By the Order of Causes, even the Heathen Men have found out that there must be a God; seeing that of every Effect there must be a Cause, until we come to the first Cause, which is the Universal Cause of the Being of all Things, and is caused of none.

5. If we shall observe in God's Works an infinite Multitude, a wonderful Variety, (*Psal.* 104. 24.) as amongst so many millions of Men, never an one like another in the compass of the Face; a most constant order, a seemly agreement, and an endless continuance or pleasant intercourse of things coming and going, and what exceeding Majesty is in them, we must needs attribute these things to a God.

The Consciences of Wicked Men after sin are perplexed with fear of being punished by some supream Judge, who disliketh and detesteth dishonest things, and exerciseth Judgment upon the Mind: Which maketh the most ungodly Miscreants, will they, nill they, to acknowledge and tremble at him, &c. (*Rom. 2. 15. Esa. 33. 14. and 57. 20, 21. and 66. 24. Psal. 14. 5. and 53. 5.*) For a Man that commits any Sin, as Murder, Fornication, Adultery, Blasphemy, &c. albeit he conceal the Matter never so close that no Man living know of it; yet oftentimes he hath a griping in his Conscience, and feels the very flashing of Hell-fire: Which is a strong reason to shew that there is a God, before whose Judgment-Seat he must answer for this Fact.

6.

There is a Devil that suggesteth Temptations against God into the Minds of Men, and sometimes also really possesseth their Bodies. Which is a sufficient Argument to prove that there is a God.

7.

The death of the Wicked, with God's apparent Judgments upon them, (besides the terror of their Conscience (and the dreadful punishment executed even in this World upon many Atheists that have laboured to deny it, prove that there is a God. This is *David's* Argument, *Psal. 9. 16. and 58. 10, 11.*)

8.

The same appeareth by the rewards of the Godly; and the merciful preservation of those that trust in God, above and against natural means.

9.

By the wonderful Miracles which God hath wrought for his Church.

10.

By the foretelling of things to come so many thousand years before they were accomplished.

11.

By the divers Revelations he hath made of himself to Men: As to *Adam, Noah, Moses, &c.*

12.

*This ground being now laid, that there is a God: What doth Christian Religion teach us concerning him?* Of the Nature of God.

It informeth us, first, Concerning his *Nature*; secondly, Concerning his *Kingdom*. And that respectively, as they have relation one to the other, (*Acts 8. 12. and 28. 23.*)

*What is to be known concerning his Nature?*

First, What his *Essence* is; and secondly, To whom or what *Persons* it doth belong. In the first he is considered in his *Unity*; in the second, in *Trinity*. The former whereof in the Hebrew Tongue is noted by the singular name of *Jehovah*, betokening the simplicity of *Essence*: The latter by the plural term of *Elohim*, importing a distinction of *Persons* in the Godhead.

*Can we understand what the Essence of God is?*

Very imperfectly. For all Nature is not able to teach us what God is in himself, neither can Man in Nature comprehend him, *Job 36. 26. 1 Tim. 6. 16.*

Of God's Essence.

*Why is not all Nature able to teach us what God is?*

Because no Work is able perfectly to express the Worker thereof. But all Nature is a thing wrought by God; therefore it cannot perfectly teach us what God is.

*How prove you that Man cannot comprehend him?*

The less cannot comprehend the greater. But every Man is less than God; therefore no Man can comprehend God.

1.

2. We cannot know the Things created; much less can we know the Creator. As for Example; We know that there are Angels, and that every Man hath a Soul; but what manner of things they are we know not.

2.

The Scripture saith, The Judgments of God are past finding out, *Rom. 11.*

3.

33. therefore much more is God himself past finding out. And the Joys of Hea-

Heaven are unspeakable: Much more therefore is God himself unspeakable.

*How then can he be known of us, being incomprehensible?*

Though his *Substance* be past finding out of Man or Angels, yet may he be known by his Properties and Actions, (*Amos 4. 13.*) and we may conceive of him by his *Name*, (*Exod. 33. 19.* and *34. 5, 6. Psal. 145. 1, 2. &c.*) expressing what an one he is to us; though we are not able to know him according to the excellency of his Glorious Nature, only known unto himself, (*Judg. 13. 18.*) therefore he said to *Moses*, *Exod. 33. 20. My Face*, that is the Glory of my Majesty, (he doth not say, thou may'st not, or thou shalt not, but) *thou canst not see; for there shall no Man see me, and live.* But thou shalt see my *back parts*, (*ver. 23.*) that is, some small measure of my Glory, so far as thou art able to comprehend it. And even as Princes have their Secrets, whereunto all their Subjects are not made privy, neither is it lawful for them to search into them: and yet do they so far forth publish their Commandments as is profitable for them to know: So the Prince of all Princes hath his Secrets, unto which we are not privy, and into which we may not search; yet he hath so far revealed himself unto us (by his Works and Word) as is necessary and profitable for us to know, *Deut. 29. 29.*

The Name of  
God.

*What doth the Scripture teach us concerning the Name of God?*

*Exod. 3. 13. Moses* asketh this question of God: *Behold, when I shall come unto the Children of Israel, and shall say unto them, The God of your Fathers hath sent me unto you: If they say unto me, What is his Name? What shall I say unto them? Whereunto God returneth this Answer in the next verse: I A M T H A T I A M: Thus shalt thou say unto the Children of Israel, I A M hath sent me unto you.*

*What learn you out of Moses his Question?*

First, That we be careful to be instructed in all things concerning our Calling, thereby to be able to answer all Doubts that may be moved. Secondly, That asking any thing concerning God, as of his Name or Nature, we must ask it of himself; who because now he speaketh not but by his Ministers, Interpreters of the Scriptures, (*2 Cor. 5. 20. Hof. 12. 10*) we must have our recourse unto them.

*What learn you out of God's Answer?*

That the proper Name of God is, *I am that I am*; or (as the Hebrew foundeth) *I will be what I will be*; the Hebrews using the future time for the present, as that which noteth a continuance.

*What is meant by these words?*

Hereby is set forth the manner of the Being or Essence of God, far otherwise than the proper Names of Men; which declare either nothing of their Nature and Being, or else not the whole and full thereof.

*Is there nothing of God to be known besides his Name?*

Nothing as touching his Being, falling under our weak and shallow capacity.

*What Names of God in the Scripture are derived from these words?*

Two; the Name of *Jehovah*, and the Name *Jah*: Both which being drawn from this description of God, do set forth his Essence and Being. Teaching us, that his Eternal and Almighty Being (which no Creature is able to conceive) dependeth of no other Cause, but standeth of himself.

*How is God only said to Be, seeing the Creatures have their Being also?*

God is said only to Be, because he only is of himself: All other things have their Being of him, so that in comparison nothing had a Being but God. Therefore

the Prophet saith, *Esa* 40. 17. that all Nations before him are nothing, yea, to him less than nothing : And if Men be nothing, for whom the World was made, how much more are all other Creatures in Heaven and Earth nothing before him, and to him less than nothing ?

*Can you from hence define what God is ?*

He must have the Art and Logick of God himself, that must give a perfect definition of God : But he may in such sort be described, as he may be discerned from all false Gods and all Creatures whatsoever.

*Why can there no perfect definition of God be given ?*

Forasmuch as God is in himself Eternal, Infinite, and Incomprehensible, the first Cause of all Causes and Effects, there can no definition be given of him. Seeing every Definition is an Explication of the Nature of the Thing defined, by words expressing the material and formal cause thereof. But of the first Cause there can be no Causes ; therefore no words to express them. For these over-reaching terms of *Thing, Being, Somewhat, Nature, &c.* which seem to contain the word *God*, as well as all other things created by him, do not express any material cause of God : Neither do they contain these words *God* and *Creature*, as the general doth his Specials or Kinds, but are spoken of them equivocally ; so that the term only, and not the definition of the term, doth agree to them. For in the Kinds or Specials of one general, there is no priority of Nature, as is between the Cause and Effect.

Neither is this word *Cause* affirmed of God, but as a term of the Art of Logick. And if *Substance* be that which upholdeth Accidents, as *Aristotle* teacheth, neither may God be called a *Substance*, for that in him are no Accidents. But if *Substance* be taken generally for a *Being*, it may be said that God is a *Substance* ; yet none otherwise than as he is a *Being, Thing, Nature, &c.* And if there be no material Cause, there can be no formal Cause of God. For although we read in the Scripture *the form of God*, *Phil.* 2. 6. yet the form is not there taken for any Cause of God ; but either for that which God indeed is, or for that Glory which of right belongeth unto him. For in speaking of God, whom no words of Man are able to express, the Holy Ghost oftentimes condescending to the weakness of our Understanding, useth such terms, as being known to Men do signifie something that is like to that, which God indeed is of himself ; that we may understand so much as is expedient for us to know of him.

*Whence may the Description of God be taken ?*

From the things whereby he doth manifest himself (called in Scripture his Name, *Psal.* 145. 1, 2, 3, &c.) among which the chief principal are his Attributes or Properties.

*What are the Properties or Attributes of God ?*

They are essential Faculties of God, according to the diverse manner of his working, *1 Pet.* 3. 12. *1 Job.* 4. 16. *Psal.* 145.

Of the Properties or Attributes of God.

*Are they communicable with the Creatures ?*

No. Yet of some of them there are some shadows and glimpses in Men and Angels, (as Wisdom, Holiness, Justice, Mercy, &c.) other some are so peculiar to the Divine Essence, that the like of them are not to be found in the Creatures, as Simpleness, Infiniteness, Eternity, &c.

*How may these Properties be considered ?*

They may be considered either in themselves as they are Essential, or in their Works or Effects, which are all perfect, either as they be Absolute, or as they be Actual. Absolute in himself, by which he is able to shew them more

more than ever he will, (as he is able to do more than ever he will do, *Mat.* 3. 9. God is able of Stones to raise Children unto *Abraham.*) Actual, is that which he sheweth in the Creation and Government of the World, (as *Psal.* 135. 7. All things that he will. he doth, &c.) Again, something we may conceive of his Essence affirmatively, knowing that all Perfections which we apprehend must be ascribed unto God. and that after a more excellent manner than can be apprehended: As that he is in himself, by himself, and of himself; that he is One, True, Good and Holy. But much more by denial, or by removing all Imperfections whatsoever: As of Composition, by the titles of Simple, Spiritual and Incorporeal; of all circumscription of Time, by the title of Eternal; of all bounds of Place, by that of Infinite: of all possibility of Motion, by those titles of Unchangeable, Incorruptible, and such like.

*What Description can you make of God by these Properties?*

A Description  
of God.

God is a Spirit Eternal. Or more fully: God is a Spiritual Substance, having his Being of himself, infinitely Great and Good, *John* 4. 24. and 8. 58. *Exod.* 2. 14. and 34. 6, 7. *Psal.* 145. 3, 8, 9.

*What learn you hence?*

To acknowledge both my Being and Well-being from him, and from him alone, *Acts* 17. 28. *1 Cor.* 10. 30. *Ephes.* 2. 10.

*What mean you when you say, That God is a Substance?*

God is such a Thing as hath a being in himself, of himself, and which giveth a being to all other things.

*What mean you by that addition of himself?*

It hath a secret opposition to all Creatures which have a Being, but not of themselves: Whereas God alone is he, in whom we live, and move, and have our Being, *Acts* 17. 28. which proveth that he alone hath his Being of himself.

*How many things conceive you of God, when you say that he is a Spirit?*

God a Spirit.

Six things.

1. First, That he is a Living Substance.
2. Secondly, That he is Incorruptible.
3. Thirdly, That he is Incorporeal; without Body, Flesh, Blood, or Bones.
4. For a Spirit hath no such Matter, *Luke* 24. 39.
4. Fourthly, That he is Invisible, *i. e.* he hath not been seen with any mortal eye, neither can any Man possibly see him.
5. Fifthly, That he is Intangible, not felt.
6. Sixthly, That he is Indivisible, *i. e.* he cannot be divided.

*How prove you that God is Invisible, and not to be seen with carnal Eyes?*

That no Man hath seen God, is plainly set down, *1 John* 4. 12. That no Man can see God, is as plainly proved, *Ex.* 33. 20. *1 Tim.* 6. 16. and beside Scripture, the same is also manifest by Reason. For we cannot see our own Souls, which are ten thousand times a more gross substance than God: much less can we see God, which is a most pure and spiritual Substance.

Object. 1. *We read, Gen.* 18. 1. *that God appeared to Abraham: And, Deut.* 5. 24. *that he shewed himself to the Israelites.*

God gave them indeed some outward sights, whereby they might be certain of his Presence; and therefore it is said that the Lord appeared unto them, but his Substance or Essence they saw not. For to know God perfectly, is proper to God only, *John* 6. 46.

Objection 2. *We read, Gen.* 1. 26. *that Man was made according to the Image of God. It would seem therefore that God is Corporeal and Visible, as Man is.*



The Image of God consisteth not in the Shape and Figure of the Body, but in the Mind and Integrity of Nature, or (as the Scripture saith) in Wisdom, Righteousness and Holiness, *Col. 3. 10. Ephes. 4. 24.*

Obj. 3. *Why then doth the Scripture attribute unto him Hands, Feet, &c?*

The Scripture so speaketh of him as we are able to conceive: And therefore in these and such-like Speeches, humbleth it self to our Capacity, attributing Members unto God to signifie the like Actions in him.

*To what use serveth this Doctrine, That God is a Spirit?*

It teacheth us, first, To worship him in Spirit and in Truth, *Job. 4. 23, 24.* Secondly, To drive away all fond Imaginations and gross Concoits of God out of our Hearts, and all Pictures and Similitudes of God out of our Sights: That we frame not any Image of him in our Minds, as ignorant Folks do, who think him to be an Old Man sitting in Heaven, &c. For seeing that God was never seen, whereunto shall he be resembled? *Moses* urged this Point hard and often to the Israelites; saying, *Deut. 4. 12. Ye heard the Voice, but saw no Similitude.* And addeth, *vers 15. Take ye therefore good heed unto your selves:* (He saith not only, Take heed; but, Take good heed: and, Therefore take good heed): *For* (saith he again) *ye saw no manner of Similitude on the day that the Lord spake unto you in Horeb, out of the midst of the Fire.* Then he cometh in the next four Verses to the thing that they must therefore take heed of: That ye corrupt not your selves, and make you a graven Image, the Similitude of any Figure, the Likeness of Male or Female, &c. See also *Rom. 1. 23.*

*How may the Attributes or Properties of God be distinguished?*

Some do concern the Perfection of his Essence, some his Life; which in God be one and the same thing, distinguished only for our Capacity.

The Perfection of God.

*What call you the Perfection of God's Essence?*

His absolute Constitution, by which he is wholly compleat within himself; and consequently needeth nothing without himself, but alone sufficeth himself, having all things from himself and in himself. Or thus: Perfection is an essential property in God, whereby whatsoever is in God is perfect, *Gen. 17. 1. Psal. 16. 2. and 50. 12. Rom. 11. 35, 36.*

*What ariseth from hence?*

All Felicity and Happiness: All endless Bliss and Glory.

The Felicity of God.

*What is the Felicity of God?*

It is the Property of God, whereby he hath all fulness of delight and contentment in himself.

*What learn you from the Perfection of God?*

That he is to seek his own Glory, and not the Glory of any, in all that he willeth or willeth not, doth or leaveth undone.

*What gather you thereof?*

They are confuted that think God is moved to Will or Nill things in respect of the Creatures: as Men that seeing a miserable Man are moved to pity: whereas God of himself, and in himself, is moved to save or reject, (we speak here of Reprobation, not of Condemnation) to receive some, and to cast away others.

*What else?*

That all which he doth is perfect, howsoever he deal with us.

*Wherein doth the Perfection of God's Essence principally consist?*

In Simpleness, (or Singleness) and Infiniteness.

*Why are these two counted the principal Properties of God?*

Because they are not only incommunicable themselves, whereas those which concern the Life of God have some resemblance in the Creature) but also make all other Properties of God incommunicable.

Of the Sim-  
plicity or Sing-  
leness in God.

*What is Simplicities or Singleness in God?*

It is an essential Property in God, whereby every thing that is in God is God himself. Therefore without parts, mixture or composition, Invisible, Impassible, all Essence: Whence he is not called only Holy, but Holiness; not only Just, but Justice, &c. Exod. 33. 19, 20.

*What gather you from hence?*

1. First, That God hath no Qualities nor Adjuncts in him, as the Creatures have: But such as are attributed unto him for our Capacity, when it is his Nature this is such, 1 John 1. 5. John 5. 26. with John 14. 6.

2. Secondly, That God's Essence or Substance cannot be augmented or diminished, that his Nature and Will cannot be changed; but he remaineth constant, without shadow of change, and will be always such as he hath been from all eternity, Numb. 23. 19. James 1. 17. Psal. 33. 11. Esa. 46. 10.

*By what light of Reason may it be proved, that God is thus unchangeable?*

Whatsoever is changed, must needs be changed either to the worse or to the better, or into a state equal with the former. But God cannot be changed from the better to the worse; for so he should become of perfect imperfect, And to exchange from the worse to the better, it is impossible also: For then he should have been imperfect before. Lastly, If he should alter from an equal condition to an equal, so that he should forego some good which before he had, and assume some other which before he had not; both before and after this change he should be imperfect, being destitute of some part of that good which appertained unto him, which to affirm is high blasphemy.

*But divers things are objected against that immutability of God's Nature and Will: As, first, that in the Mystery of the Incarnation, God was made Man, which before he was not.*

That was done, not by any conversion or change of the Divinity, but by the assumption of the Humanity.

Object. 2. *If God cannot change his Mind; why is it said he repented that he made Man?*

The Repentance attributed so often to God in the Scriptures, signifieth no mutation in God's Nature; but in his Actions immutably decreed from all Eternity. And the Scripture in this speaketh after our manner, that we may better understand what is the Nature of God against sin.

*Declare how that is.*

When we are grieved with any thing, we do then repent us that ever we did that thing for which we are grieved: And so is God said to repent him that ever he made Man, with whom he was angry; to shew that he was unfeignedly and highly displeas'd with the evil ways of Mankind.

*Did not God then change his Mind when he drowned the World?*

No. But then he did execute that which from everlasting he had decreed.

Object. 3. *It is said, Exod. 32. 14. The Lord changed his Mind from the evil which he threatened to his People.*

That is still after the manner of Men. For Man, because he is but Man, cannot speak unto God but as a Man. And therefore God speaks again unto Man like a Man, because else Man should not understand what God is, nor what is his Will.

*Shew me one Example hereof in the Scripture.*

When *Moses* prayed for the Israelites, he used many Reasons to persuade the Lord, (but especially to confirm his own hope) : At the last he said thus ; *Turn from thy fierce Wrath, and change thy Mind from this evil towards thy People.* Thus did *Moses* speak to God, and if he had spoken to a mortal Man he could have said no more nor no less ; for Man's Speech is according to his Capacity, and both are limited, and beyond himself he cannot go. Therefore when he sheweth what the Lord did, he saith, he changed his Mind : Which was as much as he could conceive of God concerning that Matter. Thus we speak, as well as we can, yet in a broken and imperfect speech to God ; as little Children speak to their Nurses : And Almighty God speaks in a broken and imperfect Language to us again for our weakness and understandings sake, as the Nurse doth to the Child. For if the Nurse should speak so perfectly to the Child, as she could to one of greater capacity, the Child would not understand her : So if God should speak unto us as he could, and according to his own Nature, we were never able to understand him, nor conceive his meaning.

Object. 4. *The Promises and Threatnings of God are not always fulfilled ; therefore it seemeth that sometimes he changeth his Mind.*

His Promises are made with a condition of Faith and Obedience, *Deut.* 28. 13. and his Threatnings with an exception of Conversion and Repentance, *Psal.* 7. 12.

*What use may we make of this Doctrine of the Simpleness and Unchangeableness of God's Nature ?*

First, It ministrerth comfort unto the Faithful, for strength of their weak Faith : Whilst they consider that the Mercy and Clemency of God is in all perfection, and without change unto them. For this is the Foundation of our Hope and Comfort in this Life, That he doth not now love and now hate ; but whom he loveth, to the end he loveth them, *John* 13. 1.

Secondly, It giveth matter of terror unto the wicked, whilst they consider his Wrath and Severity against them to be in most full measure ; the one and the other being God himself. It may also make us fear to offend him, because all his Threatnings are unchangeable except we repent.

*What is Infiniteness ?*

It is an essential property of God, whereby all things in his Essence are signified to be without Measure and Quantity : And consequently, that the Substance of God, his Power and his Wisdom, and whatsoever is in him, is incomprehensible, *Psal.* 139. 7. *1 Kings* 8. 27. *Rom.* 11. 33. God's Infiniteness.

*Wherein doth the Infiniteness of God's Essence especially consist ?*

In *Immensity* or exceeding Greatness, and *Eternity* or Everlastingness.

*What is his Immensity or exceeding Greatness ?*

It is an essential Property in God, whereby he containeth all things, and is contained of nothing, that either is or may be imagined : And consequently is free from increasing or decreasing, and all comprehension of place ; being present every-where, both within and without the World, and filling all places wholly at all times with his presence. For he is in all places, in Heaven and in Earth, and the Sea and Hell, and all at one time ; neither can he be contained in any compass of place, (as is a Man or Angel, or any other Creature) but he is in all places, and filleth all places at once, and is beyond all compass of place that we can imagine, *1 Kings* 8. 27. *Psal.* 139. 7. and 145. 3. *Esa.* 66. 1. and *40.* 12. *Jer.* 23. 24. God's Immensity or Greatness.

*Is God every-where bodily ?*

No. For he hath no Body.

*Is God every-where in speculation only?*

No. For he worketh in every thing which he beholdeth.

*How then is he every-where?*

He is every-where essentially. For his Essence is not contained in any place, because he is incomprehensible.

*Doth he not remove himself from place to place?*

He filleth Heaven and Earth, and all places; therefore he can neither depart from any Place, nor be absent from any place.

*Is he not half in one half of the World, and half in the other half of the World?*

No. But as the whole Soul is wholly in every part of the Body, so God is whole and wholly in every part of the World.

Object. 1. *If God be every-where essentially, then he is in the most filthy Sink and Puddle.*

1. It is no abasing of the Glory of his Majesty, to say that he is there: No more than it is to the Sun, whose Beams and Light are there; or to a Physician to be amongst those that are sick.

2. All the Creatures of God in themselves are exceeding good: And when he is in the most filthy Sink in the World, he is not in a more filthy place than our selves, whether we be sick or found.

3. They are his Workmanship; and it is no abatement of the Workmaster to be amongst his Works.

Object. 2. *If God be every-where; why is it said he dwelleth in the Heavens?*

Pfal. 2. 4.

Because his Glory and Majesty, which is every-where alike, shineth most perspicuously and visibly in Heaven.

Object. 3. *It is said, Numb. 14. 42. he is not amongst the wicked.*

He is not amongst them with his grace and favour, to protect and defend them: but otherwise by his Power and Providence he is amongst them, to bridle their raging Affections, to plague their furious Obstinacy, and to dispose of their desperate Attempts to his own Glory and the good of his People.

Object. 4. *If God be every-where at the same instant of time, how is he said to be sometimes nearer, further off?* Ecl. 55. 6.

God is said to be near unto us, when by his Word or any other Means he offereth us grace and favour; and when he heareth and granteth our Prayers, as Moses saith, Deut. 4. 7. *What Nation is there so great, who hath God so nigh unto them, as the Lord God is in all things that we call upon him for?*

Object. 5. *If God be in Hell, then all Goodness is there: for he is all Goodness; and so consequently there is no want of joy in the Damned.*

The Damned in Hell feel no part of his Goodness, that is, of his Mercy and loving Favour, but of his Power and Justice. So that God is in Hell, by his Power, and in his Wrath.

*To what purpose and use serveth this Doctrine of Immensity, or infinite Greatness of God?*

The consideration thereof should put us in mind, that nothing which is vile and base should be offered unto God in the worship of him. Secondly, It serveth to drive all gross and idolatrous conceits of God out of our Minds: And to detect and bewray the impiety and blasphemy of those Persons, who either by making of Pictures (as they thought) of God, or by maintaining of them being made, or by suffering them to stand still (especially after it be known)

known) have thereby denied God to be incomprehensible. For these Pictures and Resemblances of God which ignorant Men have forged in their own Brain, do tell us and say, That God may be comprehended and contained within a place, yea, in a small place, or in any place, as a Man or other Creature: which is most high Blasphemy against the Majesty of Almighty God.

*What is his Eternity?*

It is an Essential Property in God, whereby his Essence is exempted from all measure of time, and therefore is the first and the last, without either beginning or end of days, 1 Tim. 1. 17. Esa. 41. 4. and 44. 6. Psal. 90. 2. Rev. 1. 8, 11.

God's Eternity.

*In what respect is God called Eternal in the Scriptures?*

That he hath been from all Eternity without beginning, is now, and shall be for all eternity without end. 1.

That all times are present with him continually; and so nothing former nor latter, nothing past or to come. 2.

That he is the Author of Everlastingness unto others. Because he hath promised to give his Children of his eternal Goodness, and to have a continual care of them through all Eternity: And will have a Kingdom in Angels and Men, whereof shall be no end. 3.

*Is it necessary that we should know this?*

Yea: That we may here stay our selves with the certain hope of eternal life grounded upon his Eternity.

*How may that hope be grounded upon his Eternity?*

Very well. For God being Eternal, he can for ever preserve us: And seeing he hath promised, he will for ever preserve us, Psal. 48. 14. and 103. 17. Hereby likewise are we strengthened, not only in the immortality of our Soul, but also in the immortality of our Bodies after the Resurrection: considering that by his Everlastingness he giveth continual Being to such of his Creatures as he is pleased to give a perpetual continuance unto.

*Why else is God said to be eternal?*

That so he might be discerned from all other things created. For nothing is like unto God; as the Scripture testifies, Esa. 40. 18. Psal. 113. 5.

*How is God said to be alone everlasting; seeing Angels and Souls of Men shall be also everlasting?*

1. In regard of the time to come they are everlasting, but not in regard of the time past. For though they shall continue always, yet they had their beginning, which cannot be said of God; who therefore is called *Alpha* and *Omega*, Rev. 1. 8.

2. Their continuance is, such as it is, not absolute and by it self, but proceeding from the Power of God, who is able (if so he pleased) to give unto them an end as well as a beginning. In which respect God is said *only to have immortality*, 1 Tim. 6. 16.

*Is it necessary we hold God to be Eternal, that so he may be discerned from all things created?*

Yea, and we hold it in that respect for two causes.

First, Because certain Hereticks have thought either all the Creatures, or some of the Creatures at least, to be derived from the very Nature and Essence of God by propagation, as Children from their Mother's Womb. 1.

Secondly, That all Idolatrous Cogitations of God may be excluded out of our Minds. 2.

*What is the Life of God?*

The Life of  
God.

It is an Essential Property of God, whereby the Divine Nature is in perpetual action, living and moving in it self. Hereof is that Speech in the Scripture so often used; *The Lord liveth*. Hereof likewise is that form of Affèveration or Oath, used so often both by God, *Numb. 14. 21. Rom. 14. 11.* and by Man, *1 Sam. 19. 6. Jer. 4. 2. As the Lord liveth*. And hereof it is, that the Lord so ordinarily in the Scriptures hath the Name of the *Living God*, *Psal. 42. 2. Jer. 10. 10. Heb. 3. 12. and 10. 31. 1 Tim. 6. 17.*

*Why is God called a Living God?*

For Four Causes. 1. Because he only hath life in himself, and of himself, and all other Creatures have Life from him, *Psal. 36. 9. 1 Tim. 6. 16, 17. John. 5. 26. with 14. 19.*

2. Because he is the only giver of Life unto Man, *Gen. 2. 7. Acts 17. 28. John 1. 4.*

3. Because he is the God especially, not of the Dead, but of the Living, *Mat. 22. 32.* for all live unto him.

4. To distinguish him thereby from all the false Gods of the Heathen, which have no life in them, *Psal. 115. 5, 6. Esa. 41. 23. Acts 14. 15.*

*What may be known as touching the Life of God?*

As all Life is active in it self, so the chief Life (such as is in the highest degree to be attributed unto God) is operative in three Faculties and Operations, *viz.* in *Understanding, Power, and Will.*

*What then be the Attributes, whereby this Life of God is signified?*

His All-sufficiency, and his Holy Will: The former whereof comprehendeth his Omniscience or All-knowing Wisdom, and his Omnipotence or Almighty Power, *Job 9. 4, 19. and 12. 13. Psal. 147. 5. Esa. 40. 26, 27, 28. Prov. 8. 14. Jer. 10. 12. and 32. 19. Dan. 2. 20.*

*What is the Knowledge or Wisdom of God?*

It is an Essential Property of God, whereby he doth distinctly and perfectly know himself, and of and by himself all other things that are, were, shall be, or can be: understanding all things aright, together with the reason of them, *Matth. 11. 27. Heb. 4. 13. Job 12. 13. Psalm 139. 11. John 21. 17. 1 Tim. 1. 17.*

*How many things do you conceive of God by this Attribute?*

Four things. 1. That he knoweth all things. 2. That he can be deceived in nothing. 3. That he hath most wisely disposed and ordered all things; inso-much that he cannot justly be reprov'd in any of them. 4. That he keepeth not his Wisdom to himself, but bestoweth it upon his Creatures: So that whatsoever Wisdom they have, they have it from God.

*After what sort doth God understand things?*

Not by certain Notions abstracted from the things themselves, but by his own Essence: nor successively, (remembering one thing after another) or by discourse of Reason, but by one and the same eternal and immutable Act of Understanding, he conceiveth at once all things, whether they have been or not.

*How great is this Wisdom of God?*

It is Infinite, even as God is Infinite, *Psal. 147. 5. Esa. 40. 28.*

*What are the Branches thereof, when it is referred to God's Actions?*

Fore knowledge and Counsel, *Acts 2. 23.*

*What is the Fore-knowledge of God?*

That by which he most assuredly fore-seeth all things that are to come, *Acts 2. 23. 1 Pet. 1. 2.* Though this be not properly spoken of God, but by reason of Men to whom things are past or to come.

Of the Know-  
ledge and Wis-  
dom of God.

Fore-know-  
ledge & Coun-  
sel of God.

*Is this Fore-knowledge of God the cause why things are done ?*

No; but his Will.

*What is the Counsel of God ?*

The Counsel of God.

That by which he doth most rightly perceive the best reason of all things that are or can be, *Job* 12. 12, 13. *Prov.* 8. 14. *Ephes.* 1. 9.

*For the clearer knowledge of this Wisdom of God, what is there further to be considered ?*

For the better understanding of this Attribute, we must consider that the Wisdom of God is twofold. First, It is absolute: and we do so term it, because by it God can, and doth simply and absolutely know all things from all Eternity, *Heb.* 4. 13. *Psal.* 94. 11. Secondly, It is special; whereby he doth not only know his Elect Children as he knoweth all things else, but also he doth acknowledge them for his own; and doth discern them from others, and love them before others. *2 Tim.* 2. 19.

God's absolute Wisdom and Knowledge.

*Of which do the Scriptures properly speak, when they attribute Wisdom to God ?*

They speak then of his Absolute Knowledge, whereby he doth not only know always and most perfectly himself, and the whole order of his Mind; but also understandeth and knoweth all his Works, and the works of all his Creatures, past, present, and to come, with all the Causes and Circumstances of all.

*How do the Scriptures speak of this absolute Knowledge ?*

The Scriptures speak of it two ways: Either of the Knowledge it self, or else of the things known. And so they shew first, what and what manner of thing it is; and secondly, what things are known of God.

*Now tell me what Knowledge is in God, and what Wisdom doth best agree to his Divine Nature.*

The best way to find out that, is first to consider what Wisdom and Knowledge doth not agree with his Nature and Essence: For his Knowledge and Wisdom are infinitely greater than any we can affirm to be in God.

*How shall we find what Knowledge is not agreeing with his Divine Nature ?*

This is the best way. We must consider and set before us all the kinds of Knowledge, and all the ways and means whereby any Knowledge is to be attained unto amongst Men and Angels: Then shall we see that the Wisdom and Knowledge of God are far more excellent every way, than the most excellent that can be found or thought upon amongst Men and Angels.

*Declare then by what ways and means we know a thing.*

By two ways or means we do know all that we do know. One way is by our Senses, *viz.* by Hearing, Seeing, Feeling, Smelling and Tasting; another way is by our Understanding.

*Whether doth God know any thing by Senses or no ?*

He cannot. Because he is not as Man, but is a Spirit, and bodiless; and therefore hath no Senses.

*Why then do the Scriptures speak of the Eyes, Ears, &c. of God ?*

Although the Scriptures do attribute Eyes to God, whereby he beholdeth all things, and Ears, whereby he heareth all things, &c. yet indeed he hath none of all these; but these be figurative Speeches used for our capacity and understanding, signifying that nothing is hidden from the Lord.

*Whether then doth God know things by Understanding, or no ?*

Yes; but not as we do.

*Why, what manner of Knowledge is that which we have by our Understanding.*

It is either an Opinion, or a Belief, or a skill and learning.

*What is an Opinion ?*

An Opinion is no certain and evident knowledge of a thing, but is still doubtful what to affirm or deny: And therefore such a Knowledge is not in God, for he knoweth certainly.

*What manner of thing is Belief or Faith ?*

It is a certain, but not an evident Knowledge. For looke what we believe only, that we do not see nor know by the Light of natural Understanding: Therefore it is no evident Knowledge, but it is a certain and true Knowledge, because he is most true which revealed it unto us. For Faith or Belief is a most certain Knowledge grounded upon the report of another.

*Whether doth this kind of knowing things agree with the Nature of God or no ?*

No. For God knoweth all things in himself and of himself; but not by the report of another.

*What say you to Skill and Learning, that is both a certain and evident Knowledge of things: Doth not that agree with the Nature of God ?*

Such Knowledge doth not agree with his Nature.

*Why so ?*

Because it cometh by Knowledge that went before, and is gotten by reasoning and debating of things, by defining and dividing, and by searching out the causes of things: But in God is neither before, nor after, first nor last; and God hath no knowledge after such a sort. Again, our Knowledge which way soever it be considered, whether it be a habit in us, or an action in us, is imperfect: For we know not all things, and these things which we do know we know not all at once, but one thing after another, and yet still but in part.

*Declare then in a word how God doth know all things ?*

God doth most perfectly know and understand all things at one instant, without any concept of Mind altering this way or that way.

*All our Knowledge is a thing distinguished from our Mind and Understanding:*

*Is it so in God ?*

No. For the Knowledge or Wisdom of God is a most simple and perfect Essence, yea, it is his very Essence and Substance; and God is all Knowledge, all Wisdom, and all Understanding, infinitely more than all Men and Angels can conceive.

*Doth God know and understand every thing particularly ?*

Yea: He knoweth the natures and properties of every particular thing.

*How prove you that ?*

By the Scripture, and by Reason. For the Scripture saith, That God saw every thing that he made that it was Good: This is not spoken generally of all, but especially of every one Creature. Again, Reason makes it manifest by three Examples in the Scriptures, *Gen. 1.* First, *Adam* gave to every living thing a proper Name, *Gen. 2. 20.* according to its proper Nature; whereby it appeareth that *Adam* had a distinct and particular knowledge of every thing: how much more then had God this special Knowledge of every particular thing, who gave to *Adam* whatsoever Wisdom and Knowledge he had ?

1 Kings. 4. 33.

Secondly, *Solomon's* Wisdom and Knowledge was so great that he was able to dispute, and did thereby dispute of the nature of all Trees, Plants, Fishes, Fowl, Worms, Beasts, and all natural things, as one that was most skillful in them: How much more then doth God know all things and their natures particularly, who gave such Wisdom to Solomon ?

Thirdly,



Thirdly, Our Saviour Christ saith of the Father, That all our Hairs be numbered by him; and that a Sparrow falleth not to the ground without the Will of our Heavenly Father. If not without his Will, then not without his Knowledge.

Mat. 10. 29, 30.

*Whether doth God know all the motions of our Wills and our Thoughts?*

Yea; God doth certainly know the Motions of the Will, and the Thoughts of the Heart in all Men, and the issue of them all. Which is manifest by these places of Scripture following, *Gen. 6. 5. Psal. 94. 11. Prov. 21. 1. Jer. 17. 9, 10.* Hereof it is that we cite him to be the Witness of our Hearts when we swear by him.

*Whether hath God the knowledge of all Evils or no?*

God knoweth all Evils and Sins, which lye lurking in all Mens Hearts. And this is manifest by these places of Scripture following, *Gen. 6. 5. Job 11. 11. Psal. 90. 8, 9.*

*What if he did not know all these Evils?*

It is impossible but he must know them, for two causes. First, if he did not, his Knowledge would be imperfect. Secondly, if he did not know them, he could not be a Just Judge, neither could he reward every one according to his Works and Thoughts: Which to affirm were Ungodly and Blasphemous.

*Object. That which is nothing cannot be known; but Sin and Evil is nothing, (for it is nothing else but a taking away, and failing of good, and it is a meer corruption) and therefore Sin and Evil cannot be known of God.*

We know what is Evil, and we know Evil Things, and we do discern them from Good Things: But we know Evil only by his contrary, that is Good. As we know Nothing by Something, Darknes by Light, Death by Life, Sicknes by Health, Vice by Vertue. Thus by the knowledge of Good, Evil is known unto us; and therefore seeing God (who is the chief Good) doth by himself know all Good things, he must of necessity also know and understand all the Evil that is contrary thereunto.

*Whether may God know those things which are not?*

God knoweth the things which are not; and he doth also truly know the things which shall never come to pass.

*What Reason can you yield for this?*

The Reason is; because he knoweth all things by his Essence: Therefore he knoweth all things which are subject to his Divine Essence and Power; and therefore also are possible, but shall never come to pass.

*But doth he know them eternally, or in time?*

He knoweth them all eternally: That is, for ever and ever, he knew, and doth know them; as the Scripture doth testify, *Ephes. 1. 4. 2 Tim. 2. 19.*

*Can you make this manifest by an earthly comparison?*

Yea. A Builder by virtue of his Art doth conceive in his Mind the form of a House, which House he will never build: how much more can God do the same? For God can make more Worlds; and he knoweth that he can, and yet he doth it not.

Again; although there were never an Eagle in the City, yet we can conceive in our minds what an Eagle is: much more doth God know all things which are not in act, and which never shall be.

*Object. This is something which you say: But your last similitude of the Eagle doth not hold. For therefore we keep the knowledge of an Eagle in our minds, though all be gone, because the similitude of the Eagle which was sometimes in*

*the City, doth still remain in our minds and understandings. But what similitude can there be in the Mind of God, of those things which are not, which never were, and which never shall be?*

Yes; the very Essence and Similitude of God, is a Similitude of all those things that may be if he will, which he must needs know; for he doth most perfectly know himself. And thus if we consider his Power, or Almighty Essence, all things should be done which he can do and doth know.

*Then whether is his Knowledge and Power the cause of all things, which are, which have been, and which shall be?*

The only foreknowledge of God alone which the Grecians call *Theoretical Knowledge*; that is, a Knowledge beholding all things, is not the cause of things; but his foreknowledge with his Will, which the Grecians call *Practical Knowledge*, that is, a Working Knowledge, that is the cause of things.

*Whether may the Knowledge or Wisdom of God fail or be deceived at any time, or no?*

The knowledge of God is most certain, and cannot any way be deceived. For all things are known of God as they are; and all things are as they are known of God: And therefore his Knowledge cannot any way be deceived, *Heb. 4. 13.*

*Object. But things do often change and alter: And therefore they are not always as they are known.*

Although things be changed, and altered, yet God doth know thereof: and although they change and alter, yet his Knowledge doth never alter nor change, neither is it uncertain.

*Whether may the Knowledge which God hath, be increased, diminished, or altered?*

No; it cannot, it is always the same, firm and constant, and can by no means be increased, diminished, nor altered. For he neither forgetteth any thing, nor is ignorant of any thing, neither is any thing new unto him. For the Scripture saith, all things are always manifest in his sight. *St. James* saith, (*1. 17.*) with God is *no change, nor shadow of change.* Therefore his Knowledge is always one and the same. *Solomon* saith, *Many devices are in a Man's Heart, but the Lord's Counsel shall stand, Prov. 19. 21.*

*But if his Knowledge be always one and the same, why doth the Scripture say, That the Lord will forget our sins, and blot them out of his remembrance, and remember them no more?*

These and such-like phrases of Speech are not to be understood of the simple Knowledge of God, as though he should know them no more; but of his Judicial Knowledge unto Punishment. For although he doth know and remember our sins always most perfectly; yet he will not know them, nor remember them to bring them into Judgment, and so to punish us for them when we do truly repent: That is, they shall be no more judged or punished, or laid to our charge, if we be in Christ, than if he had quite and clean forgotten them, and never did remember them. And these Speeches serve to arm us against the despair and doubting of our Salvation, being truly in Christ.

*Where is the Wisdom of God specially of us to be considered?*

The Wisdom of God shineth unto us most clearly in his Works of Creation and Preservation of the World: and not only in his Works, but also in his Gospel, whereby he calleth and gathereth his Church out of the World, to be saved by his Son our Mediator Jesus Christ, *Eccles. 3. 11. Psal. 104. 24. 1 Cor. 1. 21.*

*Was this Saving Wisdom of God known to the Philosophers and natural wise Men of the World?*

No; it was not, but only to the Children of God, *Mat. 11. 25.*

*Is the Wisdom of God to be perfectly conceived of us?*

No; neither is it communicated to any Creature, neither can be. For it is unconceivable, as the very Essence of God himself is unconceivable and unspeakable as it is: And his Wisdom (as we have heard before) is his very Essence, that is, his very Godhead or God himself; and that it is unconceivable, the Scriptures do testify, *Psal. 147. 5. Rom. 11. 33.*

*What Use may we make of this Doctrine?*

The Uses.

First, By this Doctrine of God's unspeakable Knowledge and Wisdom, the True God is discerned from all False Gods, and from all things made. For that is no God which hath not this Divine Knowledge and Wisdom, which the Scriptures do attribute to God.

1.

Secondly, Seeing our God is such a God as knoweth all things that are done, said, or thought, and seeth into the most hidden corners and thoughts of our Hearts: We must study and learn thereby to drive all hypocrisie and dissembling from us, and learn to open our Hearts to God of our own accord, and to beseech him in his own Son's Name, to cleanse us from our secret Faults.

2.

Thirdly, It must make us to walk always before the Lord according to his Will revealed in his Word, with great fear and reverence, as Men always in his sight and knowledge.

3.

Fourthly, It serveth to confirm our Faith and Trust in the Providence of God: For although we know not what to do, nor how to do, nor what thift to make in dangers and necessities, yet God goeth; and he hath knowledge enough for us, though we be ignorant: and his Wisdom shall succour our foolishness, if we do truly and faithfully serve him. *Psal. 103. 13, 14.*

4.

Fifthly, This should be our Consolation against the fear of Hell and despair, and should uphold in us the certainty of our Salvation: Because this Knowledge and Wisdom of God, joined with his Will to save us, is firm and constant; and he knowing all his Elest, will not lose one of them that are in Christ his Son, *Job. 17. 12. 2 Tim. 2. 19. Job. 10. 27, 28, 29.*

5.

*What is the Omnipotency or the Almighty Power of God?*

It is an Essential Property in God, whereby he is able to effect all things; being of Power sufficient to do whatsoever he willeth or can will, *Gen. 35. 11. Deut. 10. 17. Nehem. 1. 5. Job 8. 3. and 9. 4 and 11. 7. and 42. 2. Psal. 115.*

Of the Omnipotency or Almighty Power of God.

*3. Dan. 4. 35. Mat. 19 26. Luk. 1. 37.*

*Are there any things which God cannot will or do?*

Yea; three kind of things.

1. Such things as are contrary to his Nature: As to destroy himself, and not to beget his Son from Eternity.

2. Those things whose action argueth impotency, and are a sign of weakness, as to lie, *Tit. 1. 2.* to deny himself, *2 Tim. 2. 13.* to allow wickedness, *Hab 1. 13.* to be forgetful, to do the Works of a created Nature, &c. For the disability of such things confirmeth, not weakneth God's Omnipotency.

3. Such things as imply contradiction. For God cannot make a Truth false; or that which is, when it is not to be; or a Man to be a Man and a Stone at one and the same time; or Christ's Body to be a true Body, and yet to be in all places or divers places at once, and to be without circumscription and occupying of a place, which is the Essential Property of a Body. For one of these being true, the other must be false; and God, who is the Truth it self, cannot work that

that

that which is false and untrue. So that God's Omnipotency must always teach us that he is glorious, and true, and perfect, and not the contrary.

*In what respects then is God said to be Almighty ?*

Because, 1. He is able to perform whatsoever he will, or is not contrary to his Nature, *Psal. 135. 6. Esa. 40. 28.*

2. He can do all things without any labour, and most easily, *Psalms 33. 9. and 148. 5.*

3. He can do them either with means, or without means, or contrary to means, as pleaseth him.

4. There is no Power which can resist him.

5. All Power is so in God only, that no Creature is able to do any thing, but as he doth continually receive Power from God to do it, *Acts 17. 28. Esa. 40. 29. and 45. 24. Dan. 2. 20, 23. 1 Chron. 29. 12. John 19. 11. Rom. 16. 25. 2 Tim. 4. 17.* So that there is no Power but what is from God.

*What mean you when you say, All Power is in God? It should seem by that speech, that there are more Powers in God than one?*

That we may rightly understand what Power is in God; it were very requisite that we did first consider how many ways this word Power is taken in the Scriptures.

*Declare then how or in what sense it is taken in the Scriptures.*

In the Scripture this word Power is taken two ways, or in two senses; sometimes for Authority, which is grounded upon Law, by which Authority one may do this or that if he be able to do it; sometimes it is taken for might and strength, or ability to do a thing if one hath Authority to do it. And these are distinguished by two words amongst the Grecians and the Latins. For when the Grecians speak of Power, that signifieth Authority and Right, *Mat. 28. 18.* then it is called *ἐξουσία*: When they take Power for Strength, then it is termed by them *δύναμις*. Amongst the Latins being taken the first way, it is called *Potestas*: being taken the second way, that is, for Might or Strength, it is called *Potentia*; and in English we call them both *Power*.

*It seemeth by your speech, that they are not only distinguished, but that they may also be separated the one from the other.*

It is true, for so they are. As for Example, A King may have great force and strength, and by his great Power he may be able to overthrow and destroy a whole Country or Kingdom over which he hath no Authority. Again, some King hath Power, that is, Authority over his Rebels, and yet hath not Power, that is, strength enough to subdue them: So some perhaps have might and strength enough to govern and rule another Man's Wife, another Man's Children, or another Man's Servant, over which he hath no Power, that is Authority. And again, Fathers have Authority over their own Children; all Husbands over their own Wives; and all Masters over their own Servants: And yet all have not Power, that is, strength and ability to rule them.

*I perceive by this which you have said, that in Creatures these two may be separated one from the other, and many times are: But what are they in God?*

In God they are not divided, but distinguished. For he hath all Power, that is, all Authority over all things; and he hath all Power, that is, all strength, force, might and ability to do all things with all things at his good pleasure: and this Power is not given him, but he hath it in himself, and of himself, most perfectly, absolutely, and eternally.

*But of what Power do we speak when we say, that God is Almighty? Whether do you mean his Right and Authority, or his Strength and Ability, or both?*

Both are in God essentially: But when the Scripture speaketh of God's Omnipotency, it meaneth (and so do we) his Strength and Ability, whereby he is able to do whatsoever he will, not excluding his right.

*If all Power and Might be in God; tell me how manifold is this Power which is attributed to God in the Scriptures?*

To speak simply, the Power of God is but only one, and a must simple and single thing, which is his Essence and Substance: Yet for divers respects it is said to be manifold; and it may be considered two ways.

1. As it worketh always, and can work in God himself: For God in himself doth always understand, will, love, &c.

2. As it worketh out of God himself, in the Creatures: As when he created all things, and doth now work in governing all things, and can work if it please him, infinite things: And of this working of God's power, do the Scriptures properly speak when they call God Almighty.

*How many ways may God's Power be considered, as it worketh in himself?*

Two ways: First, As it is common to all the three Persons in the Trinity, that is, a Power whereby God the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost doth understand himself, love himself, and work in himself: And these Actions do not differ from the Essence of God, for that in God there is nothing which is not his Substance.

Secondly, The other working in God himself, is that by which the Father doth beget eternally a Son of his own Nature and Substance equal to himself: And this Power of begetting the Son of God is proper only to the Father, and not to the Son and Holy Ghost.

*How many ways do you consider the Power of God working out of himself?*

That Power which hath relation or respect to things created is twofold: The first is a Power *absolute*, whereby he is able to do whatsoever he will; the other is a power *actual*, whereby he doth indeed whatsoever he will.

God's Absolute Power.

*Where doth the Scripture speak of the absolute Power of God, by which he can do more than he doth if he would?*

Of such a Power speaketh our Saviour Christ, I could pray to my Father, and he could give me more than twelve Legions of Angels; but he would not ask it, *Mat. 26. 53. Phil. 3. 21.*

*How doth the Scripture speak of God's Actual Power?*

Of this Power the Prophets and Apostles make mention, when they joyn his Power and his Promises together; that is, when they say he is not only able to perform, but doth and will perform indeed whatsoever he hath promised. And of this Power *Paul* doth speak when he saith, that God will have mercy upon whom he will: And everywhere in the Scriptures we read, that God hath done what he would, given to whom he would, *Psal. 135. 6.*

God's Actual Power.

*How great is this working or mighty Power of God?*

It must needs be high and very great; for it is infinite, and hath no end.

*Declare how it is infinite.*

God's Power Infinite.

It is infinite two ways, or in two respects. First, In itself, and of it self it is infinite.

Secondly, As it is extended to the Creatures, which may be called the Object of God's Power, it is also Infinite.

*Why do you say it is infinite of it self, or of its own Nature?*

Because

Because the Power of God is nothing else but his Divine Essence; and the Essence of God is of his own Nature, by it self, and of it self Infinite.

*Show how God's Power is Infinite as it is extended to the Creatures.*

Because the Power of God doth extend it self to Infinite things, therefore we say that it is Infinite.

*Declare how that is.*

I mean the things which God can perform or bring to pass by his Power are Infinite, and therefore his Power is Infinite. For God never made so many, nor so great things, but he could have made more, and greater if he would. As for Example; He adorned the Firmament with an innumerable company of Stars, and yet he could have decked it with more. And to speak in a word, God can always perform infinite things more than he doth, if he will: And therefore both in it self, and out of it self, it is Infinite.

*Whether can this Omnipotency of God be communicated to any Creature?*

No, it cannot. For to be truly and essentially Omnipotent, is proper to God only, and Omnipotency is God's Essence: And therefore whosoever is God is Omnipotent, and whosoever is Omnipotent must needs be God, whose Power is a chief Power Infinite: And the Power of any Creature is not infinite, but finite: And so consequently no Creature can be Omnipotent, except he would say that a Creature, or a thing created, can be both a Creature and a God, or a Creator too; which is both absurd and blasphemous.

*If God can do all things, whether can he Sin or no? As to lie and to be unfaithful in his Promises, &c.*

God cannot Sin, and yet for all that he is still Omnipotent: For to Sin is no part or point of Omnipotency, but of Impotency: To Sin is nothing else but to leave the right and perfect Way, or to fall from a right and perfect Action: Which sheweth want of Power to uphold himself that doth so. Which Power is not wanting in God, for he is Omnipotent; and being Omnipotent, he cannot go from Strength to Weakness, and from Perfection to Imperfection, &c. and therefore he cannot Sin.

*By what Scripture can you prove this that you say?*

The Apostle Paul is of that mind, 2 Tim. 2. 13. *If we believe not, yet abide he faithful, he cannot deny himself.* He doth not say he will not deny himself, but he cannot deny himself; and his reason is, because (as he saith himself) God is faithful, not only in his Will, but also by his Nature: And therefore sith God is faithful by Nature, he cannot but stand to his Promises which he made according to the good pleasure of his Will; and by Nature he is Omnipotent, therefore he cannot be Impotent: By Nature he is Good, and the chief Good, therefore he cannot become Evil, nor do Evil.

*But whether can God be moved, or be subject to Passions or Sufferings, or no?*

He cannot. For the Power whereof we speak, when we say that God is Omnipotent, is altogether Active and not Passive; neither can any Passive Power be in God. And to this effect speaketh St. Augustine, when he saith, *Dicitur Deus Omnipotens faciendo quod vult, non patiendo quod non vult*; that is, *God is called Omnipotent in doing what he will, not in suffering what he will not.*

*Object. Some say that God can sin, but he will not; and that he can be subject to Passions, but he will not; and that he can do whatsoever can be imagined or thought, but he will not; what say you to those?*

Of them I say nothing: but their Opinion is both foolish and ungodly. For God cannot do any thing which disagreeeth from his Nature, and therefore he can-

cannot sin, &c. Rom. 9. 14. Not because his Will is against it, but because it is against his Nature and natural Goodness, 1 John 1. 5. Deut. 32. 4. therefore do the Scriptures deny any iniquity to be in God : And St. Augustine saith to that effect ; *Deus injusta facere non potest, quia ipse est summa justitia ;* that is, *God cannot do unjust things, because he is most just, and Righteousness is self-*

*Object. But yet for all this, God doth in some sort will Sin : For he doth not permit it against his Will : And besides that he commanded some things which were sins ; as Abraham to kill his innocent Son, and Shimei to curse David ; did he not ?*

So far forth as God doth command, or will, or work any thing, that thing is not sin in God : For he both willeth and worketh in great Wisdom, and according to his most holy Will : And therefore no action can be sin in God, but every action in God is most holy and good : And so saith the Scripture, *Psal.*

*145. 17.*

*To what use serveth the Doctrine of God's Omnipotency ?*

It serveth,

1. To sustain and strengthen our Faith, touching the certainty of our Salvation. The Uses. Because God hath promised eternal Life to the Faithful : And he can do and he will do what he hath promised.

2. To teach us that we should not despair of any thing that God doth promise, either in respect of our own weakness, or in respect of the apparent weakness of the things that God hath sanctified for our good. For whatsoever God as a Father hath promised, that same as Almighty, he can and will see performed, *Jos. 23. 14. Numb. 23. 19.* This did strengthen Abraham's Faith greatly, for Paul saith thus of him ; *He did not doubt of the Promise of God through unbelief, but was strengthened in the Faith, and gave glory to God, being fully assured, that he which had promised was also able to do it,* Rom. 4. 20, 21.

3. To stir us up to pray, and to call for those things which God hath promised, without any doubting. For in our Prayers we ought always to have before eyes the Promises of God, and the Almightyness of God. The Leper was persuaded only of Christ's Power, he knew not his Will ; and therefore he said : *Lord, if thou wilt, thou canst make me clean :* And he was made clean, *Matth. 8. 2.* How much more shall we obtain those things which we ask, if we be persuaded of his Power, and doubt not of his Promises.

4. It serveth both for a Spur to do well, considering that God is Able to save ; and a Bridle to refrain from evil, seeing he hath Power to destroy. *Fear not them,* saith our Saviour, *that can kill the Body, &c.*

5. It serveth in prosperity to continue us in our Duties, that we abuse not God's Blessings : Because as he gave them, so he is able to take them away again, as Job acknowledgeth, *Job 1. 21.*

6. To make us undergo the Cross with patience and cheerfulness, and to hope for help in the midst of adversity and death ; because he which hath promised to hear and help us, is able also to deliver us out of all our troubles, *Psal. 50. 15. John 10. 29. Dan. 3. 17, 18. and 4. 32.*

7. To keep us from despairing of any Man's Salvation, although he seem to be rejected of God ; and to make us walk in Faith and Fear : Because God is able to raise him up that is down, and to cast us down that stand. And so Paul doth reason from God's Omnipotency, about the Rejection and Election of the Jews and Gentiles, *Rom. 11. 23, 25.*

8. It serveth to confirm all the Articles of our Christian Faith; the sum whereof is contained in the Creed.

*Thus much concerning the All-sufficiency of God. What is his Will?*

It is an Essential Property of God, whereby of himself, and with one Act, he doth most holily will all things, approving or disapproving whatsoever he knoweth, *Rom. 9. 18. James 4. 15. Ephes. 1. 5.*

*What learn you of this?*

First, That nothing cometh to pass by meer Hap or Chance but as God in his eternal Knowledge and just Will hath decreed before should come to pass.

Secondly, That whatsoever cometh to pass, though we know not the Causes thereof, and that it be contrary to our Wills, yet we should bear it patiently, and therein submit our Wills to the good Will and Pleasure of God.

*How is the Will of God distinguished?*

Into his secret or hidden, and his revealed or manifest Will. The former is known to himself: by which he willet divers things, of which Man neither doth know nor is to ask a reason of. And of this the Scripture speaketh thus; *If the Will of God be so, 1 Pet. 3. 17.* The latter, is the guide of Man in all his Actions: containing God's Commandments, wherein is set down what we ought to do, or leave undone; as also his Promises, which we ought to believe, *Deut. 29. 29.*

*Is not the Secret Will of God contrary to his Revealed Will?*

No, in no wise. It differeth in some respect, but it is not another Will, much less contrary.

*How differeth it?*

The Secret Will of God considereth especially the end; the Revealed Will the things that are referred to the end. And the Secret Will of God is the event of all things: Where the Revealed Will is of those things only which are propounded in the Word; as to believe in Christ, and to be sanctified, *&c. John 14. 1. 1 Thess. 4. 3.*

*It may seem that the Revealed Will of God is sometimes contrary to it self: as when God forbiddeth Murder and Theft; yet God commandeth Abraham to kill his Son, and the Israelites to take the Goods of the Egyptians.*

Here is no contrariety: Because God in giving a Law to Man, giveth none to himself, but that he may command otherwise. Therefore the Law hath this exception; that it is always just, unless God command otherwise.

*But it seemeth that the Secret Will of God is often contrary to the Revealed Will: seeing by the former many evil things are committed, and by the other all evil is forbidden.*

In as much as by the Providence of God evil things come to pass, it is for some good of God's Glory, or good of the Church, or both: in which only respect they by the Providence of God are suffered to be done.

*How then doth God will that which is good, and that which is evil?*

He willet all good so far as it is good; either by his effectual good pleasure, or by his revealed approbation: And that which is evil, in as much as it is evil, by disallowing and forsaking it. And yet he voluntarily doth permit evil, because it is good, that there should be evil, *Acts 14. 16. Psal. 81. 12.*

*Is there any profit of this Knowledge of God's Will?*

Yea; great profit for us to know what God will have us to do; and what he will do with us, and for us, is a thing wherein standeth our Salvation. Therefore



fore we are willed by the Apostle to inquire diligently after the same, *Rom.* 12. 2.

*But the same Apostle, Rom. 11. 34. before saith, Who hath known the Mind of the Lord, or who was his Counsellor? That is to say, none. Therefore it seemeth that the Will of God cannot be known; and consequently, that it may not be sought after.*

Indeed by that we learn not to search into the secret Counsels of God, which he never revealed in his Word, neither hath promised to reveal in this World; but after the revealed Will of God, which he hath vouchsafed to make known in his Word, we may and ought to enquire of God. As for the Will and Counsel which he hath kept to himself, we may admire and adore it with *Paul* and *David*: But that we may not search after it, is manifestly proved by these places following, *Acts* 1. 7. *Exod.* 33. 18, 19, 20. *Job* 21. 22.

*Whether can God's secret Will be known, or no?*

If he doth reveal it, it may.

*How doth God reveal his Secret Will?*

Two ways. Sometimes by his Spirit: As when he shewed his Prophets many of his Judgments that were to come. Sometime by the thing it self which he willeth, or by the effects of his Will: As when a thing doth fall out which was before unknown. As for Example; A Man doth not know before it come, whether he shall be sick or not, or of what Disease, or when, or how long: But when all these things are come to pass, then it is manifest what was God's Will before concerning the Matter.

*Shew we what is our Duty in respect of this Secret Will of God.*

Our Duty is twofold: First, We must not curiously search after the knowledge of it, but worship and reverence it.

Secondly, Before it be made manifest by the Effects, we must generally rest quietly in the same.

*Shew me how by an Example.*

Thus a Christian must resolve with himself; Whatsoever the Lord will do with me, whether I live or die, whether he make me rich or poor, &c. I rest content with his good Will and Pleasure.

*What must we do when his Will is revealed unto us?*

Then much more must we rest in it, and be thankful for it: As *Job* was, who said, The Lord hath given and taken, even as it pleaseth the Lord; &c. *Job* 1. 21.

*What call you the Revealed Will of God?*

The Revealed Will of God is twofold: The one is that which is properly revealed in the Law, that is, what God requireth to be done of us; and therefore it is called the Law: And after this we must enquire. The other is in the Gospel, which sheweth God's Will towards us, and what he hath decreed of us in his eternal Counsel as touching our Salvation.

*God indeed by his Law hath made it known what his Will is, that of us must be done and fulfilled: But hath he revealed in his Word what is his Will and Pleasure towards us?*

Yea, he hath so: And that is proved by these places of Scripture following, *Ephes.* 1. 5. *Mat.* 3. 17. *Job.* 5. 39. and 6. 40. and after this knowledge of this Will of God we must diligently enquire.

*But whether may this Will of God be known of us, or no?*

Yes, it may. For as it is revealed in the Scripture, so it is also confirmed and sealed before our eyes in the Sacraments, and the daily Benefits which we receive from the Lord.

*And is this sufficient to persuade us to believe his Will?*

No. For except the Lord doth persuade us by his Holy Spirit, we shall neither believe it nor know it; as appeareth by these places of Scripture, 1 Cor. 2. 16. Mar. 11. 25. But if we have the Spirit of God, there is no need to go up into Heaven, or to go beyond the Sea to know it, because the Word is near unto us, in our Hearts, as Paul saith, Rom. 10. 6, 7, 8. For touching the Matter of our Salvation, the Will of God is so clearly laid open in the preaching of the Gospel, that it needs not to be more clear.

*If at any time we cannot know nor understand this Will of God, as touching our Salvation, in whom is the fault?*

The fault is in our selves: And the Reason is, because we are carnal and natural, and destitute of the Spirit of Christ. For Paul saith, The carnal and natural Man cannot perceive the things of God. But if the Spirit of Christ doth come and open our Understanding, and correct our Affections, we can no longer doubt of his Will. And therefore the Apostle immediately after addeth, and saith, *But we have the Mind of Christ*, 1 Cor. 2. 16.

*Whether is this Will of God made known to every one of God's Children particularly, or no?*

Yes; it is. For Paul, having the Spirit of Christ, saith, That this Will of God was manifested unto him, Gal. 2. 20. *Christ loved me, and gave himself for me.* And to the Corinthians he saith, *But God hath revealed them (i. e. the Joys of Heaven) to us by his Spirit.* 1 Cor. 2. 10.

*How doth this prove that we can have this Knowledge?*

Very well. For if all the Elect are led by the same Spirit that Paul had, it will also persuade them of this Will of God, as well as Paul.

*But how prove you that they have the same Spirit?*

That the same Spirit is given to all the Elect, I prove it out of the Prophet *Esay*, who saith thus, *My Word and my Spirit shall not depart from thy Mouth, nor from thy Seed for ever*, Esa. 59. 21. Which is such a Blessing, as no Blessing can be desired in this World greater, more excellent, or more heavenly. For when we are once armed with the knowledge of this Will of God, we shall pass through Fire and Water without any danger; (*Esay* 43. 2.) we shall overcome the World and Death, and triumph over our Enemies, as Paul did, Rom. 8. 38, 39.

*Whether are there more Wills in God than one or no?*

The will of God in some respects is but one, and in some respects it is manifold.

*How is it but one?*

For the better determining of this Point, we must first consider how many significations there be of this word, Will, in God.

1. It signifieth the Faculty or Ability of willing in God; and so it is God himself, and the very Essence of God; And so his Will is but one.
2. It signifieth the Act it self of Willing; and if it be so taken, it is all but one: For God doth that in one, and that eternal Act will whatsoever he will.
3. It signifieth the free Decree of his Will, concerning either the doing or the suffering of any thing to be done. If we take it in this sense, the Will of God is still but one, and that eternal and immutable.

*May we call the Decree of God's Will, the Will of God?*

Yea, very well. As the Testament of one that is deceased is called the last Will of the Testator; because it is the firm and last Decree of the Testator's

Will and Mind, concerning the disposing of his Goods. And the Scriptures do make the Will of God, and the Counsel or Decree of his Will, to be all one: As appeareth in these places following, *Esa.* 46. 10. *Acts* 4. 27. *Job.* 6. 40.

*How is the Will of God manifold?*

There be two respects chiefly for which the Will of God is said to be manifold, or more than one.

First, For the divers kinds of things which God doth will: And hercof it is, that it is called sometime the Will of God concerning us, and sometime the Will of God done by us. The first is his favour and love towards us in Christ Jesus, in which he willeth and decreeth that we shall be saved through his Son: Of this Christ speaketh, *John* 6. 40. The other which he will have done of us, is that which is expressed in his Word: And that is to believe in Christ, and to walk in his Laws. Of which *David* saith thus, *Teach me to do thy Will, because thou art my God,* *Psal.* 143. 10. and *Paul* saith, *Rom.* 2. 18. *Thou knowest his Will,* that is, his Law.

*Which is the other respect for which God is said to have many Wills?*

The Will of God is said to be manifold and divers: For that those things which he willeth, he doth seem to will them after divers sorts, and not after one and the same manner. First, After one manner he doth will good things; and after another manner he doth will evil things.

*Shew how that is?*

He willeth good things properly and absolutely by themselves, and for themselves; he willeth evil things for another end, *Rom.* 12. 2. and that is for good too: And the first is called the Good Will of God, and acceptable to himself; the latter is called the Permissive Will of God, or a voluntary permission in God, because he is not compelled or constrained against his Will, to will them. Again, sometime he willeth simply and absolutely, sometimes he seemeth to will conditionally: And some things he revealeth at one time, some at another; and some things he doth for which he giveth a Reason, and the Reasons of some things are secret to himself only and for ever.

*When then belike you grant that in God there be many Wills.*

No, I deny that. For although in those aforesaid respects the Will of God is said to be manifold for our understanding, yet for all that, indeed and in truth the Will of God is but one only, and that most constant, eternal, and perpetual. As for Example; He willed some things in the Old Testament, he hath willed other things in the New Testament, yet one and the same Will in God decreed both. Again, his Will was, that some things in the Old Testament should last for a time, that is, to the coming of Christ: or, as the Apostle saith, to the time of Reformation, *Heb.* 9. 10. but he willeth that the things of the New Testament shall last to the end of the World: And yet one Will in God decreed both these from everlasting. Again, although God seemeth to us to will some things absolutely and simply, and some things conditionally; yet in truth, to speak properly, all things whatsoever God willeth, he willeth absolutely that simply. And whereas he is said to will some things conditionally, that is to be referred to the manifestation of his Will. For there is not in God any Conditional Will, but only that which openeth his Will in this or that, or on this or that Condition: For a Condition in God is against the nature of his eternal Kingdom and Knowledge.

Object. *God commandeth many things to be done which are not done: so that there is a Will declared in his Word, and there is another in him forbidding or hindring that which he commandeth in his Law; and therefore there are in God many Wills.*

The things which God commandeth are of two sorts, some are absolutely commanded without any condition expressed or concealed; as that *Moses* should cause all things about the Tabernacle to be made according to the Pattern given him in the Mount. Other some things are commanded and set down with condition; as when Christ said, *Mark* 10. 17, 19. If thou wilt inherit eternal Life, keep the Commandments. And the Law saith, Do this and this, if thou wilt live. And these are propounded conditionally to all, as well the Elect as the Reprobate. God his absolute Will is always one and the same.

*And are they propounded to both after one sort?*

No, not so. For although they be given to the Elect with Condition, yet the Will of God to them is absolute. For God's Will simply is, that all his Elect shall be saved, if not always, yet at the last; and because of their own strength they cannot do the Commandments of God, therefore God doth give them strength by his Spirit; and because by this strength they cannot do God's Will perfectly, therefore it is fulfilled for them by Christ, which is made theirs by Faith, and in whom God doth accept their broken and imperfect Obedience, as if it were whole and perfect. But as for the Wicked and Reprobates it is not so with them. For although God doth give them a Law to obey, and doth promise them Life if they do obey it: Yet his Will to them is not so absolute, that they shall keep it; neither shall they obtain the Promises either in themselves or in Christ.

*Doth not God mock and delude the Reprobate, when he willeth them in his Law to do this and that, which yet is not his Will to be done?*

No, he doth not delude them. For although he doth not shew what he will absolutely have done of them, which is properly his Will indeed; yet by his Law he doth teach what is their Duty, and the Duty of all Men: Adding moreover, that whosoever shall neglect and fail in this their Duty, he sinneth grievously against God, and is guilty of Death.

*Can you make this plain by some Instance or Example, or any Parable in the Scripture?*

Yea, it is manifest in the Parable of the King's Supper, and the bidden Guests. They which were first bidden and came not, were not deluded by the King; because he signified unto them what he liked, and what was their Duty; but yet he did not command that they should be compelled to come in, as the two sorts which were bidden afterwards. Where we see that the King's Will was not alike in bidding the first, as it was in the second: For in calling the latter sort, his Will was absolute that they should come indeed, and so caused, that they did come; but to the first he only signified what he liked if they had done it.

*How do you apply this to the Matter in Question?*

I apply it thus. As it cannot be said that the first bidden Guests were mocked by the King, although his Will was not so absolute for their coming, as it was in calling and commanding the second sort of Guests: So it cannot be said that God doth delude and mock the Reprobate in giving them a Law to obey, although it be not his absolute Will that they should come and obey the Law. For it is sufficient to leave them without excuse, that they know what is acceptable to God, and what is their Duty to God; who hath absolute Authority and Power over them, and over all.

Object. *God commandeth Pharaoh to let Israel go, and yet his Will was to the contrary: Therefore there were two contrary Wills in God, one revealed, the other concealed.*

It followeth not. For the Will of God was one only, and most constant, and that was that *Israel* should not be sent away by *Pharaoh*, and so that was fulfilled. As for the Commandment given to *Pharaoh*, it was a Doctrine to reach *Pharaoh* what he must have done if he would avoid so many Plagues, and shewed him his Duty, and what was just and right to be done: but it was no testimony of the absolute Will of God.

*Whether doth God will Evil or Sin, or no ?*

Whether God doth will.

Before we answer to this Question, we must consider of three things.

How many ways Sin may be considered.

1.

How many things are to be considered in Sin.

2.

How many ways one may be said to will a thing.

3.

*Go to then; shew first how many ways Sin is to be considered.*

Sin is to be considered three ways.

As it is of it self Sin, and striving against the Law of God.

1.

As it is a punishment of Sin that went before: For God doth oftentimes punish one Sin with another.

2.

As it is the cause of more Sin following, *Rom. 1. 26.* for one Sin doth beget another, as one Devil calleth seven Devils, *2 Thess. 2. 11.*

3.

*Now declare how many things you do consider in Sin.*

In every Sin there are three things.

The Action: And that is either Inward or Outward. The Action which we call Inward is threefold: Either of the Mind, as evil Thoughts; or of the Heart, as evil Affections and Desires; or of the will, as an evil choice, or consent to Sin.

1.

The Actions which we call Outward, are the Actions or Work of the Senses fighting against the Law of God.

The second thing in every Sin, is the deformity or corruption of the Action; that is, when the Action doth decline from the Rule of God's Law: And this properly is Sin, or the form of Sin.

2.

The third thing in every Sin, is the Offence or Guiltiness thereof, whereby the Party offending is bound to undergo Punishment. This Guiltiness and Obligation whereby we are bound to undergo the Penalty of Sin, hath its Foundation in Sin it self; but it ariseth from the Justice of God, *Rom. 6. 23.* who in his Justice rewardeth Sin with Death, as Justice indeed giveth to every one his due.

3.

*Now come you to your third Point, and shew how many ways one is said to will a thing.*

We are said to will a thing two ways; either properly, for it self; or improperly, for another end.

*What mean you by a proper willing of a thing ?*

We do will a thing properly for it self, or for its own sake, when the thing which we will or desire is of its own nature to be wished and desired: As for the Body, Health, Food, Apparel, and such like; or for the Soul, Faith, Repentance, Patience, &c. We do will a thing improperly, when the thing which we will is not of it self to be wished, but yet we will have it for some good that may come thereof: As for Example, We will the cutting off some Member of the Body, not because of it self it is to be wished, but for the health of the Body which doth follow that cutting.

*What difference is there between these two Wills ?*

There is great difference. For those things which we will properly, we love and approve them, we incline unto them, and we delight in them, but that

which

which is known of it self to be evil, our VWill is not carried unto that with love and liking, but doth decline from it. And whereas a Man willet a Member of his Body to be cut off, we may rather call it a Permission than a VWillig, and yet a willing Permission.

*You have shewed how many ways Sin is to be considered, how many things are to be considered in every Sin, and how we are said to will a thing.*

*Now let me hear what you say to the Matter in Question; that is, VWhether God doth will Sin, or no?*

Before I answer directly to your Question, I think it is not amiss to shew what every one must carefully take heed of in answering to this Question: For in answering there is danger.

*Let me hear what Dangers must be avoided in answering.*

There are two: And every one must avoid them, and fall between them as between two dangerous Rocks.

The first is this; VVe must take heed lest we make God the Author of Sin by affirming that he willet Sin, as the *Libertines* do, and as *Adam* did, *Gen. 3. 12.* for that were the next way, not only to put off our Sins from our selves, and lay them upon God, but also to cast off all Conscience of Sin, and all Fear of God; than which nothing can be more blasphemous against God, and pernicious to our selves.

*VVhat is the second thing to be avoided?*

The other is this: VVe must take heed that we affirm not any evil to be in the VVorld which God knoweth not of, or whether God will or no: For that were to deny God's Omnipotency, and All-knowledge.

*These are two dangerous Rocks and Heresies indeed: But now I expect a direct Answer to the Question.*

That cannot be at once, but by going from Point to Point according to our former distinction of Sin, and Willing.

*Very well then; declare first of all, what things God doth properly Will, which of themselves are to be willed.*

1. God doth first and chiefly will himself; that is, his own Glory and Majesty, as the end for which all things are: And this he is said to will properly; that is, he loveth it, advanceth it, and delighteth in it. And to this purpose serve all those Scriptures which commanded us to sanctifie his Name, and to adore his Glory, as in *Esa. 48. 11. Prov. 16. 4 Rom. 11. 36.*

2. Besides himself, he doth properly will all other things which he made, and which he doth himself, insomuch as he doth approve them, and love them, as appeareth by these places following; *God saw all that he made, and it was good; (Gen. 1. 31.)* and therefore gave a Commandment, that one should preferve another, by multiplying and increasing. Again, it is said, *Whatsoever the Lord will, that he doth,* (*Psal 135. 6.*) therefore whatsoever he doth, that he wills: And although he hateth Evil, yet he doth properly will and love that Good which cometh of Evil; that is, his own Glory, and the Salvation of his People.

*Whether doth God will Punishments or no?*

Yea, his Will is the first and efficient cause of all Punishment: Which is proved by this Reason and Argument. Every good thing is of God; every Punishment being a Work of Justice is a good thing; therefore every Punishment is of God, and he doth will it.

*What say you to the words in Ezekiel 18. 23, 32. I will not the death of a Sinner?*

That

That place is to be understood only of the Elect. For properly indeed God doth not will their Death, and therefore to keep them from Death, meaning eternal Death, he giveth them Repentance.

*Whether doth God will Sin as it is a punishment of Sin that went before?*

Yes, he doth: And it is usual with God to punish one Sin with another. As for Example; The hardning of Pharaoh's Heart was a sin in Pharaoh, and God brought it upon him, not as sin, but as a punishment of his former sins.

*You say that in every Sin is an Action or Deed, which is either Inward, or Outward, whether doth God will that or no?*

So far forth as it is an Action only, God doth will it: But not the corruption and deformity of the Action. For in him we live, move, and have our being, Acts 17. 28.

*But whether doth God will Sin properly, as it is a transgression of the Law, and a corruption in the Action, or no?*

No, he doth not, neither can he; for it is against his Nature. And to this effect serve these places of Scripture following, Psal. 5. 5. Heb. 1. 9. 1 Job. 1. 5. and Reason doth confirm it many ways. For look what God doth will properly, he loveth and alloweth it: But God hateth and damneth Sin, as the Scriptures witness; and therefore he doth not will it properly, Zach. 8. 17. Again, he hath sent his Son to take away the sins of the World, and to destroy the Works of the Devil; therefore he doth not will them. Lastly, If God should properly will Sin, then he must be the Author of Sin: But he is not the Author of Sin: For the Scriptures do never attribute sin unto God, but unto the Devil and unto Men, Rom. 9. 14. 1 John 2. 16.

*But although God doth not properly will Sin, yet he doth willingly permit Sin; doth he not?*

Yes. But for the better understanding how God doth permit Sin, we must consider how many ways, or in how many senses one is said to permit a thing: and that is three ways.

To permit, is sometime of two good things to grant that which is less good, although it were against our will. As for Example; A Man would bring up his Son in Learning, rather than in Warfare, or in any other Occupation; but because his Son hath more mind to an Occupation than to Learning, and doth crave of his Father to go to some Occupation, or to be a Soldier rather than a Doctor, his Father doth grant him his desire, but he had rather have him to be a Scholar; and this is a kind of a Permission and Suffering: But this Permission ought rather to be called a Will indeed; for that which is less good (yet because it is good) he doth will it, and approve it, and it is a true Object of his Will: And it may be called a Permission in respect of that Will which had rather have had the greater good.

*And is thus God said to permit Sin in this sense?*

No, by no means. For Sin (as it is Sin) hath no shew of good in it, which may be compared with a greater good.

*Which is your second way of permitting?*

Sometimes to permit, is to grant one Evil to go unpunished, that many and more grievous Evils thereby may be prevented; as many times Princes and Magistrates are wont to do: And so some do think that God hath granted some Sin to be done without danger or threatening of punishment, lest more and more heinous mischief should ensue.

*And are not you of this mind?*

No, God forbid I should. For the Apostle's Rule is both general and true, We must not do Evil that Good may come thereof, lest we be damned justly : therefore no Man may by the Law of God admit any sin to avoid another, Rom. 7. 8.

*What is your third way of permitting ?*

To permit, doth sometime signifie not to hinder and stop Evil when he may : and so God is said to permit Sin, because he could by his Grace hinder and prevent sins that none should be committed ; and yet he doth willingly permit us in our Nature to Sin. That God doth thus permit Sin it is evident by these places of Scripture, *Psal.* 81. 11, 12. *Acts* 14. 16. That he doth permit them willingly, and not constrained thereunto, these places do shew, *Rom.* 9. 19. *Esa.* 46. 10.

*For what cause doth not God hinder Sin, but permit it ?*

Not without cause ; but that he may use our Sins (which is his infinite Goodness and Wisdom) to his own Glory : For hereby his Justice in punishing of Sin, and his Mercy in pardoning of Sin, is made manifest and known, to the great Glory of God, and Praise of his Name.

*Whether doth God alter his Will at any time, or no ?*

For the better understanding of this Question, we must consider two things. First, How many ways our Will is changeable. Secondly, The Causes that move us to change our Wills.

*Very well : Declare the first, How many ways our Wills are changeable ?*

The Will of Man is changeable two ways : First, When we begin to will a thing which we did not will before. Secondly, When we leave to will that which we willed before.

*Now shew what are the causes thereof : And first, Why a Man doth will that which he willed not before.*

The causes of these are two. First, Our Ignorance : Because we know that to be good afterward which we knew not before to be good, and then we will that which we could not before ; for *ignoti nulla cupido*, of that which is unknown there is no desire. The second cause ariseth from the alteration of Nature : As if that which was hurtful to us at one time, became profitable to us at another time ; then we will have that at one time, which we would not at another : As for Example, In Summer our Will is inclined to cold places, but in Winter our Will is altered, and doth affect and desire the warm.

*Whether is there any such cause in God to make him change his Will, or not ?*

No ; neither of these Causes can be in God. Not the first, for he doth most perfectly know all things from all eternity : Not the second, for there is nothing in God for which any thing may be found to be profitable or hurtful, he is always the same, having need of nothing ; and therefore he cannot will any thing that is new to him, and consequently his Will is not changeable.

*But what say you to the second way of changing our Will ; that is, of leaving to will that which before we had determined : whereof cometh that ?*

For this there may be yielded two Reasons. 1. We do change our Wills of our own accord ; because the latter thing doth seem to us to be better than the former. 2. Being constrained, or against our minds, we do oftentimes change our Wills ; because our first Counsel was hindered by some cross event, that it could not have its due effect.

*Whether are any of these two Causes in God, that for those he should change his Will ?*



No; God doth neither of his own accord, nor yet by constraint, change his Will: but his Decrees are, and ever have been, and always shall be fulfilled, and none shall hinder the Will of God; for it doth always remain one and the same. And this Doctrine is most strongly guarded and fenced with these Places of Scripture; *Numb.* 23. 19. *Mal.* 3. 6. *Esa.* 45. 10. *Rom.* 11. 29.

*Paul saith, 1 Tim.* 2. 4. *It is the Will of God that all Men should be saved, and come to the Knowledge of the Truth; and yet all are not saved: therefore God's Will is mutable?*

If this Place be understood of God's Revealed Will, then the Sense is this: that God doth call all Men by the preaching of his Word, to the Knowledge of his Truth, and to Eternal Salvation, if they will believe in Christ. But if it be understood of the Secret Will of God, the Sense may be threefold. First, All Men, that is, of all sorts and degrees, he will have some. Secondly, So many as are saved, all are saved by the Will of God. Thirdly, Therefore, God willeth that all shall be saved; that is, all the Elect. For in the Scriptures this Word *All* is put sometimes for the Elect, without the Reprobate, as *Rom.* 5. 18. *1 Cor.* 15. 22.

*What is there comprehended under the Holiness of God's Will?*

Holiness is a general Attribute of God, in regard of all the special Properties of his Nature, in respect whereof he most justly loveth, liketh, and preferreth himself above all. Unto which most Holy Will must be referred both Affections, (to speak according unto Man) as Love and Hatred; with their Attendants, (Goodness, Bounty, Grace and Mercy, on the one side; Displeasure, Anger, Grief, and Fury, on the other): and also the ordering of those Affections, by Justice, Patience, Long-suffering, Equity, Gentleness, and readiness to Forgive.

The Holiness of God's Will. *Esa.* 6. 3. *Psal.* 145. 17.

*What Instructions do you draw from the Holiness of God?*

1. That as every one cometh nearer unto him in Holiness, so they are best liked and loved of him: and consequently it should breed a Love in our Hearts of Holiness, and Hatred of the contrary.
2. That this ought to kill in us all evil Thoughts and Opinions which can rise of God in our Hearts; seeing that in him, that is Holiness it self, there can be no Iniquity.

*Wherein doth the Holiness of God specially appear?*

In his Goodness and Justice; *Exod.* 20. 5, 6. and 34. 6, 7. *Nabum* 1. 2, 3. *Jer.* 22. 18, 19.

*What is God's Goodness?*

It is an Essential Property in God, whereby he is infinitely Good, and of himself; and likewise beneficial to all his Creatures, *Psal.* 145. 7. *Mark* 10. 18. *James* 1. 17. *Matth.* 5. 45. *Psal.* 34. 8, 9, 10.

Of God's Goodness.

*How many ways then is the goodness of God to be considered?*

Two ways. Either as he is in his own Nature, of himself simply Good, and Goodness it self; (i. so Perfect, and every way so absolute, as nothing can be added unto him): or else as he is good to others. Both ways God is in himself a Good God: but especially for his Goodness towards us, he is called a Good God, as a Prince is called a Good Prince.

*Shew how that is.*

A Prince may be a good Man, if he hurt no Man, and liveth Honestly, &c. But he is not called a Good Prince, except he be good to his Subjects; that is, if he be not mild, gentle, liberal, just, a defender of the Godly, a punisher of the

the Wicked ; so that the Good may lead a quiet and peaceable Life in all Honesty and Goodness, (1 Tim. 2. 2.) So the Scriptures call God a Good God, because he is not only Good in himself, yea, and Goodness it self, but also because he is Good to others ; that is, Mild, Gracious, Merciful ; his Nature is not cruel, savage, nor bloody towards, but most mild, pleasant, sweet, and such as may allure all Men to trust in him, to love him, to call upon him, and to worship him, *Psal. 16. 11.* and *34. 8, 9.*

*Is nothing Good but God ?*

Nothing of it self, and perfectly, (*Matth. 19. 17.*) howbeit by him, and from him, do come good things, (*Gen. 1. ult.*) which have not their goodness of themselves. For whatsoever goodness is in the Creatures, it is of God the Creator : and they are so far forth good, as they are made good by God, and are made partakers of his goodness, *1 Cor. 4. 7.* *James 1. 17.* Again, that goodness which is in the things created, whether it be natural or supernatural, is imperfect and finite, but the goodness of God is most perfect and infinite ; and therefore only God is truly good, and goodness it self ; yea, he is *Summum Bonum*, that chief Good of all to be desired.

*Is the Goodness of God extended unto all Creatures ?*

Yea, it is so : and as this is known by daily Experience, so it is witnessed by these Scriptures following, *Psal. 119. 64.* and *145. 15.* *Matth. 5. 45.*

*Hath God shewed his Goodness to all alike ?*

No : for the things created are of two sorts ; either Invisible, or Visible. Invisible, as Angels ; unto whom the Lord hath given more excellent Gifts than to the other.

*And was his Goodness parted equally amongst them ?*

No : for some he suffered to fall into Sin, for which they were thrust down from Heaven to Hell, *2 Pet. 2. 4.* others he hath preserved by his Grace, that they should not fall away from him.

*Is his Goodness alike to his Visible Creatures ?*

No : for of them some are indued with Reason, as Mankind, some are void of Reason ; and therefore is Man called a Lord over the rest of the Creatures.

*Is the Goodness of God alike to Reasonable Creatures ?*

No : for of them God in his Mercy hath chosen some to eternal Life, whom he hath purposed to call effectually in his time, that they may be justified and glorified by Christ : others he hath in his justice left to their sins without any effectual calling, to perish for ever.

*What testimony of Scripture have you, that God's Goodness is far greater to the Elect, than to the Reprobate ?*

It appeareth by the words of our Saviour Christ, *Matth. 13. 11.* and of the Prophet *Asaph*, *Psal. 73. 1.* *yet God is good*, that is, singularly good, *to Israel, even to the pure in heart* : but God makes his Elect only to be pure in heart, *Psal. 51. 10.*

*Doth the Goodness of God towards all Men turn to the good of all Men ?*

No : for in the Reprobate God's Goodness is turned into Evil, and serveth to their Destruction, *2 Cor. 2. 15, 16.* and that is through their own fault : for they do contemn and altogether abuse the Goodness of God ; and for all his Goodness bestowed upon them continually, they never trust him, nor trust in him, *Rom. 2. 4.* *Psal. 106. 13.*

*How may we use the Goodness of God to our Good, and to our Salvation ?*

If we have the Goodness of God in a true and worthy estimation; if we use it with fear and reverence, and thereby learn to repent us of our sins; and to repose all our trust and confidence in the Lord for his goodness; then shall all things, yea, even our sins, work for our good, *Rom. 8. 28.*

*What Use must we make of God's Goodness?*

The Uses of  
God's Good-  
ness.

1. It teacheth us that we have and do serve a true God: for he is no true God, that is not so good as our God is.

2. We learn hereby, that by this Goodness of his, he useth all things well.

3. If our God be so good, we should be ashamed to offend him. As it is intolerable to hurt an Infant, that is innocent and harmless; so it is most intolerable to requite the Lord's Goodness with Evil.

4. If God be so good, and Goodness it self; we must trust him, and trust in him. For we will repose trust in a good Man: and shall we not much more in our good God?

5. It teacheth us never to lay the Fault upon God for any thing, nor to complain of God's dealing. For he is always perfectly good; and all that he doth is perfectly good, whatsoever Men judge of it.

6. Seeing God is good to us, we ought to be good one towards another.

*To what end is it, that the Goodness of God is not to all alike?*

1. It serveth to the adorning and beautifying of God's Church, *1 Tim. 2. 9. 2 Tim. 2. 20.*

2. It serveth to the maintenance of mutual Love and Society amongst Men. For if the Goodness of God were to all alike, then one could not help another: and to this end serves the variety of Gifts, *1 Cor. 12. 20. Ephes. 4. 7, 12.*

3. It maketh to the greater manifesting of the Glory of the Goodness of God. For if all had alike, we would contemn his Goodness, thinking that he were bound to be good to us of Necessity.

4. From the Consideration of God's special Goodness towards us his Elect by Christ to Salvation, we must arise to the study of Good Works, whereby God's Goodness may be glorified, *Tit. 3. 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8.*

*What are the special Branches of the Goodness of God?*

His Graciousness, his Love, and Mercy, *Tit. 3. 3, 4, 5.*

*What is the Graciousness of God?*

The Gracious-  
ness of God.

It is an Essential Property, whereby he is of himself most gracious and amiable, and freely declareth his Favour unto his Creatures above their desert, *Psal. 145. 8, 15, 16. Rom. 11. 6. Tit. 2. 11.*

*Is he only gracious?*

Only in and of himself: for that whatsoever is gracious and amiable, it is from him.

*What learn you from this?*

That we ought to love and reverence God above all. For seeing gracious and amiable Men do win love and reverence from others, in whose Eyes they appear gracious and amiable; who is able more to win this at our Hands than God, who is the Fountain of all Graciousness and Amiability?

*For the better understanding of this Attribute, shew how this Word Grace is used in the Scriptures.*

It is used in three special Significations: Sometimes it is put for Comeliness, Sincere, Meekness, or Modesty, (*Luke 2. 52.*) Sometimes for free Favour, whereby one embraaseth another, pardoning former Injuries, and receiving the Penitent into favour again, (*Gen. 6. 8.*) Sometimes it is taken for all kind

kind of Gifts and Graces, which of his free Favour are bestowed, whether temporal or eternal, *Ephes.* 4. 7.

*Whether is there Grace in God, according to the first Signification of Grace, or no ?*

Yea: for God is of his own Nature most gracious, and Grace it self. Which Grace was in Christ Jesus from his Infancy, (as he was Man) and did every Day more and more Increase, *Luke* 2. 52. *Psalm* 45. 2. And amongst all things that were created, there was nothing inducd with such Grace as was the Humane Nature of Christ; and that was by the fulness of the Godhead, which dwelt bodily in him, *Colos.* 2. 9.

*Whether is Grace properly attributed to God in the second Sense, or no ?*

Yea, most properly. For God doth justifie us, that is, he doth account us for just, through his Son Jesus Christ; and that of his free Grace and Favour, without any desert of our parts, or any thing in us, *Rom.* 3. 20, 24. and 4. 16.

*What be the Causes of this Grace or Favour of God ?*

The Efficient Cause is his Goodness and Free Will: The Final Cause thereof, is the Salvation of his chosen Children, and the Glory of himself, and of his Son Christ Jesus.

*What are the Effects of God's Grace to us-ward ?*

In general; the Grace of God (whereof there is no Cause in us, but only his own Goodness and Will) is the first Cause, the middle Cause, and the last Cause, and the only Cause of all that belongs to our Salvation, *Rom.* 9. 11. And particularly, it is the Cause of our Election, of our Redemption, of the sending of Christ into the World, of our Calling, of the preaching of the Gospel, *Ephes.* 1. 4. *John* 3. 16. *Rom.* 5. 8. It was the Cause why the Apostles were called to the preaching of the Gospel, *Gal.* 1. 15, 16. *Ephes.* 3. 8, 9. It is the Cause of our Faith, of Forgiveness of our Sins, of our whole Justification, of our Regeneration, of our Renovation, of our Love to God and our Neighbour, of the Holy Ghost in us; of our good Works, of our Obedience, of our Perseverance, of the Fear of God, of Eternal Life, of Life it self, *2 Tim.* 1. 9. *Phil.* 2. 13. *Rom.* 12. 6. *1 Cor.* 12. 9. *Rom.* 3. 24. *Tit.* 3. 5. *1 Job.* 4. 9. *Ezek.* 36. 27. *Jer.* 32. 40. And in a word, the beginning, the continuance, and the accomplishment of our whole Salvation doth depend wholly upon the Grace and Favour of God: and what good thing soever we have, or have had, or may have, belonging either to this Life or the Life to come, is to be attributed wholly to the Grace and Favour of God.

*What is the Love of God ?*

Of the Love  
of God.

It is an Essential Property in God, whereby he loveth himself above all, and others for himself, *1 John* 4. 16. *Rom.* 5. 8. *John* 3. 16. *Tit.* 3. 4. *Mal.* 1. 2, 3.

*What learn you from hence ?*

That we should love him dearly, and other things for him.

*That we may the better know what the Love of God is, declare first, What Love is in our selves.*

*Ans.* It is a Passion of the Mind, whereby we are so affected towards the Party whom we Love; that we are rather his than our own, forgetting our selves to do him good whom we so Love.

*And is Love such a thing in God ?*

No: the true Love of God is not such as our Love is.

*What difference is there ?*

There

There is great difference two ways. First, In time: for Love was in God before it was in us, or in any thing created; for he loved himself, and us also, before the World was, *Job. 17. 23.* Secondly, They differ in Nature and Quality: for that Love which is in God is most perfect and pure, without Passion; but in us it is imperfect, and matched with Passions, with impure Affections and Grief of the Mind.

*After what manner doth the Scripture express the Love of God?*

In the Scriptures God doth compare himself to a Father and to a Mother loving their Children; to a Hen gathering her Chickens together under her Wings; to a good Shepherd seeking up his Sheep, and to divers other things.

*And wherefore serve these Comparisons?*

They are for our Profit two ways. First, To shew us that God's Love towards us is most vehement and sincere. Secondly, To make us bold in coming to him, and calling upon him. So for this Love Christ Jesus calleth us by all the Names of Love: as his Servants, his Kinsmen, his Friends, his Spouse, his Brethren, and by many Names more: to shew, that he loveth us with all Loves, the Father's Love, the Mother's Love, the Master's Love, the Husband's Love, the Brother's Love, &c. and if all Loves were put together, yet his Love exceedeth them all: for all could not do so much for us as he alone hath done.

*If Love doth not signifie any Affection or Passion in God, as it doth in us: What then doth it signifie?*

In God it signifieth three things most perfect. First, The eternal good Will of God towards some Body: for the Love of God (suppose towards the Elect) is his everlasting good Will, or his Purpose and Determination to shew them Mercy, to do them Good, and to Save them, as in *Rom. 9. 11, 13.* Secondly, The Effects themselves of this Love or good Will; whether they be temporal concerning this Life, or eternal concerning the Life to come, as in *1 John 3. 1.* Thirdly, The Pleasure and Delight which he taketh in that which he loveth: and so it is taken in *Psal. 45. 7.*

*What things doth God love besides himself?*

Besides himself, God loveth all things else whatsoever he made: But he loveth not Sin and Iniquity; for he never made it, as *Sr. John* saith, *1 John. 2. 16.* Again, he loveth his Sor, being manifested in the Fleish; and he loveth his chosen Children for his Son's Sake, with whom he is well pleased, *Matth. 3. 17.*

*Object. 1. The Scripture saith, That God doth hate all that work Iniquity:*

*How then can God both hate and love one and the same Man?*

In every wicked Man we must consider two things. First, His Nature. Secondly, His Sin. His Nature is the Work of God, and that he loveth: But his Iniquity is not of God, and that he hateth.

*Object. God doth afflict his Children; therefore he doth not love them.*

Whom he loveth he correcteth, (*Prov. 3. 12.*) and therefore he correcteth them because he loveth them; even as a Goldsmith trieth his Gold in the Fire, because he loveth it.

*Whether doth God love all alike, or no?*

No: He preferreth Mankind before all his other Creatures; for which cause God is called *Philanthropos*, that is, a Lover of Men. And this appeareth by three Effects of his Love.

First, He made him according to his own Image; that is, in Righteousness and true Holiness, *Gen. 1. 26. Ephes. 4. 24.*

Secondly, He made him Lord over all his Creatures, *Psal. 8. 5, 6.*

Q

Thirdly,

Thirdly, He gave his own Son to Death for his Ransom.

*Doth God love all Men alike?*

No: For he loveth his Elect better than the Reprobate. For the Elect he calleth effectually by his Spirit in their Hearts; when he calleth others but by the outward Voice of the Gospel, &c.

Again, amongst the Elect themselves, some are actually Wicked, and not yet reconciled nor called, as was *Paul* before his Conversion. But the rest are called and already made Holy by Faith in Christ, as *Paul* was after his Conversion. And of these, he loveth the latter sort with a greater measure of Love than the former, as the Scripture testifieth in *Prov. 8. 17.*

*What manner of Love doth God bear to his Elect?*

It hath three adjuncts or properties. First, It is free without desert.

Secondly, It is great without comparision.

Thirdly, It is constant without any end.

*How is the Love of God said to be free?*

It is free two ways. First, because nothing caused God to love us, but his own Goodness and Grace: And therefore *St. John* saith, that his Love was before ours, *1 John 4. 10.*

Secondly, It is free, because God in loving us, did not regard any thing that belonged to his own Commodity: For, as *David* saith, *Psal. 16. 2.* he hath no need of our Goods; but only to our own Salvation he loved us.

*Wherein doth the Greatness of God's Love appear to his Elect?*

It appeareth two ways. 1. By the means which God used to save us by, that is, the Death of his Son: And so *St. John* setteth forth his Love, *John 3. 16. 1 John 3. 16.* when he saith *For*, that is, *So*, (as if he should say, so vehemently, so ardently, so earnestly, so wonderfully) did he love us, that for our Salvation he spared not his own only Begotten Son, but gave him to the Death of the Cross for our Salvation.

*What else doth set forth the greatness of God's Love unto us?*

The consideration of our own selves. For he did not only give his only Son to Death for us, but it was for us being his Enemies. And this Circumstance is used by the Apostle to express the same, *Rom. 5. 7, 8.*

*Where find you it written, that God's Love is constant and perpetual?*

That is manifestly shewed in these Scriptures following, *Hos. 11. 9. Job. 13. 1. Rom. 11. 29.* For as God is unchangeable in his Essence and Nature; so is he unchangeable in his Love, which is his Essence and Nature: And therefore is God called Love in the Scriptures, *1 John 4. 8.*

*What use must we make of God's Love?*

Uses of God's  
Love.

First, It filleth our Hearts with Gladness, when we understand that our God is so loving, and Love it self: And what is this but the beginning of eternal Life? If eternal Life consist in the true Knowledge of God, as our Saviour Christ saith, *John 17. 3.*

Secondly, Out of the Knowledge of this Love, as out of a Fountain, springeth the Love of God and our Neighbour. For *St. John* saith, *He that loveth not, knoweth not God, for God is Love, 1 John 4. 8.*

Thirdly, When we consider that God loveth all his Creatures which he made, it should teach us not to abuse any of the Creatures, to serve our Lust and beastly Affections. For God will punish them which abuse his Beloved; as he punished the rich Glutton which abused the Creatures of God, *Luke 16.*

Fourthly,

Fourthly, We are taught to love all the Creatures, even the basest of all, seeing that God loveth them, and for the Love he beareth to us he made them: and we must (if we love them for God's Sake) use them sparingly, moderately, and equally or justly. To this end we are commanded to let our Cattel rest upon the Sabbath Day, as well as our selves: to this end we are forbidden to kill the Dam upon her Nest; and to this end we are forbidden to muzzle the Mouth of the Ox which treadeth out the Corn, *Deut. 25. 4* *1 Cor. 9. 9.*

Fifthly, We are taught from hence to love Mankind better than all other Creatures, because God doth so: and therefore we must not spare any thing that we have, that may make for the safety of his Body, and the Salvation of his Soul. And for this Cause, we are commanded to love our Enemies, and to do them good; because our good God doth so.

Sixthly, From God's Love, we learn to prefer the Godly Brethren, and those that Profess sincerely the same Religion that we Profess, before other Men; because God's Love is greater to the Elect, than to the Reprobate: and this doth the Apostle teach us, *Gal. 6. 10.*

Seventhly, Whereas God's Love is freely bestowed upon us, this teacheth us to be humble, and to attribute no part of our Salvation to our selves, but only to the free Love of God.

Eighthly, From hence ariseth the certainty of our Salvation. For if God's Love was so free and great when we were his Enemies; much more will it be so, and constant also to us, being reconciled to God by Jesus Christ, *Rom. 5. 10.*

*What is the Mercy of God?*

Of the Mercy  
of God.

It is his Mind and Will, always most ready to Succour him that is in Misery. Or, an Essential Property in God, whereby he is meerly ready of himself to help his Creatures in their Miseries, *Esa. 30. 18. Lam. 3. 22. Exod. 33. 19.*

*Why add you this Word meerly?*

To put a difference between the Mercy of God, and the Mercy that is in Men: for their Mercy is not without some Passion, Compassion, or Fellow-feeling of the Miseries of others: but the Mercy of God is most Perfect and Effectual, ready to help at all Needs of himself.

*But, seeing Mercy is a Grief and Sorrow of the Mind, conceived at another's Miseries; how can it be properly attributed to God, in whom are no Passions nor Grievings?*

Indeed in us Mercy may be such a thing; but not in God. Mercy was first in God, and from him was derived to us: (and therefore God is called *the Father of Mercies*, (*2 Cor. 1. 3.*) and when it came to us, it was matched with many Infirmities and Passions. But it is improperly attributed to God from our selves; as though it were first in us.

*Declare then briefly what things of Perfection are signified by this Word [Mercy] in God.*

By the Name of [Mercy] two things are signified in God Properly. First, the Mind and Will ready to help and succour. Secondly, The help itself, and succour or pity that is then shewed.

*Where in the Scripture is Mercy the first way?*

Those Places of Scripture are so to be understood, where'n God doth call himself Merciful, and saith, that he is of much Mercy; that is, he is of such a Nature as is most ready to free us from our Evils.

*Where is it taken in the other Sense for the Effects of Mercy?*

In *Rom. 9. 15.* where it is said, *God will have mercy on whom he will have mercy; that is, he will call whom he will call, he will justify whom he will, he will pardon whom he will, and will deliver and save from all their Miseries and Evils whom he will: and these be the Effects of God's Mercies.* Again, in *Exod. 20. 6.* it is so taken.

*From whence springeth this Mercy of God?*

The Essence and Being of God is most simple without any mixture or composition; and therefore in him there are not divers Qualities and Vertues as there be in us, whereof one dependeth upon another, or one differs from another; but for our capacity and understanding, the Scripture speaketh of God as though it were so, that so we may the better perceive what manner of God, and how good our God is.

*Well then; seeing the Scriptures do speak so for our Understanding, let us bear whereof this Mercy cometh.*

The Cause is not in us, but only in God himself; and Mercy in God doth spring out of his free Love towards us.

*Why do you say out of the free Love of God? Are there more Loves in God than one?*

There are two kinds of Love in God: one is wherewith the Father loveth the Son, and the Son the Father, and which the Holy Ghost beareth towards both the Father and the Son: and this Love I call the Natural Love of God, so that the one cannot but love the other. But the Love wherewith he loveth us is voluntary, not being constrained thereunto, and therefore is called the free Love of God: and thereof it cometh to pass, that Mercy is also wholly free, that is, without Reward or Hope of Recompence, and excludeth all Merit.

*How prove you that the Mercy of God ariseth out of his Love?*

That the Love of God is the cause of his Mercy, it is manifest in the Scriptures, *1 Tim. 1. 2.* *Paul saluteth Timothy in this order, Grace, Mercy and Peace from God the Father, and from the Lord Jesus Christ:* to shew that that Peace which the World cannot give, the Mercy of God is the cause of it; and the cause of his Mercy is his Grace, and his Grace is nothing else but his free Favour and Love towards us. The same order doth *Paul* observe in *Titus 3. 4, 5.* where he saith; *When the goodness and love of God our Saviour appeared; not by the Works of Righteousness, which he had done, but according to his Mercy he saved me.* First, He sets down the Goodness of God as the cause of his Love. Secondly, His Love as the cause of his Mercy. And thirdly, His Mercy as the cause of our Salvation; and our Salvation as the effect of all. And therefore there is nothing in us, which may move the Lord to shew Mercy upon us, but only because he is Goodness it self by Nature. And to this doth the Psalmist bear Witness, *Psal. 100. 5.* saying, *that the Lord is good, his Mercy is everlasting, and his Truth is from Generation to Generation.*

*Towards whom is the Mercy of God extended or shewed?*

For the opening of this Point, we are to consider that the Mercy of God is twofold. First, General. Secondly, Special. God as a God doth shew Mercy generally upon all his Creatures being in Misery; and chiefly to Men, whether they be Just or Unjust: and so doth Succour them, either immediately by himself, or else mediately by Creatures, as by Angels or Men, by the Heavens, by the Elements, and by other living Creatures. And this general Mercy of God is not extended to the Eternal Salvation of all, but is only temporary, and for a while. Of this read *Luke 6. 36.*

*What say you of the Special Mercy of God?*



That I call the Special Mercy of God, which God as a most free God hath shewed to whom he would, and denied to whom he would. And this pertaineth only to the Elect, and those which fear him, *Psal.* 103. 11. for he sheweth mercy upon them to their eternal Salvation, and that most constantly, while he doth effectually call them unto himself, while he doth freely and truly pardon their sins, and justifie them in the Blood of the Lamb Jesus Christ; while he doth sanctifie them with his Grace, and doth glorifie them in eternal Life: And of this Special Mercy we may read in *Ephes.* 2. 4, 5, 6.

*How great is the Mercy of God?*

It is so great that it cannot be expressed, nor conceived of us: And that is proved by *Psal.* 57. 10. and 108. 4.

*How long doth the Mercy of God continue towards us?*

Although the Mercy of God be great and infinite in Christ, yet for that Mercy which pardoneth our sins, and calleth us to Faith and Repentance by the Gospel, there is no place after death, but only while we live in this World: which is warranted by these places ensuing, *Gal.* 6. 10. *Let us do good whilst we have time*: To shew that a time will come when we shall not be able to do good.

*Apoc.* 2. 10. *Be faithful unto Death, and I will give thee a Crown of Life*: to shew, that the time which is given unto Death, is a time of Repentance, and of exercising of Faith, and of Works: But after Death there is no time, but to receive either an immortal Crown, if we have been faithful; or everlasting Shame, if we have been unfaithful. Besides these, see *Apoc.* 14. 13. *Mark* 9. 44, 45. *Esa. ult.* 24. *Luk.* 16. 24, 25, 26. *Mat.* 25. 11, 12. *Job.* 9. 4.

*What Uses may we make of God's Mercy?*

First, It serveth to humble us: For the greater Mercy is in God, the greater Misery is in us. The Uses of God's Mercy.

Secondly, We must attribute our whole Salvation unto his Mercy.

Thirdly, We must flee to God in all our troubles, with most sure confidence.

Fourthly, We must not abuse it to the liberty of the flesh in sin, although we might find Mercy with God after Death: For the Mercy of God pertaineth especially to those that fear him, *Psal.* 103. 11.

Fifthly, The meditation of God's Mercy towards us, should make us to

}	Love God, <i>Psal.</i> 116. 1. <i>Luke.</i> 7. 47.
	Fear God, <i>Psal.</i> 130. 4.
	Praise God, <i>Psal.</i> 86. 12, 13. and 103. 2,
	3, 4.

Sixthly, It must make us merciful one to another, *Luke* 6. 36. *Matth.* 18. 32, 33.

*What is the Justice of God?*

It is an Essential Property in God, whereby he is infinitely just in himself, of himself. for, from, by himself alone, and none other, *Psal.* 11. 7. Of the Justice of God.

*What is the Rule of this Justice?*

His own free Will, and nothing else. For whatsoever he willeth is just: And because he willeth it, therefore it is just; not because it is just, therefore he willeth it, *Ephes.* 1. 11. *Psal.* 115. 3. *Mat.* 20. 15. which also may be applied to other Properties of God.

*Explain this more particularly.*

I say, that God doth not always a thing because it is just, but therefore any thing is just that is just, because God will have it so: And yet his Will is joined with high Wisdom. As for Example; *Abraham* did judge it a most just and

and righteous thing to kill his Innocent Son ; not by the Law, for that did forbid him, but only because he did understand it was the special Will of God : and he knew that the Will of God was not only just, but also the Rule of all Righteousness.

*That we may the better understand this Attribute, declare unto me how many manner of ways one may be Just or Righteous.*

Three manner of ways : Either by Nature, or by Grace, or by perfect Obedience.

*How many ways may one be Just by Nature ?*

Two ways. First, By himself, and of himself, in his own Essence and Being. Thus we say, that in respect of this *Essential Righteousness*, there is none just but God only ; as Christ said, *None is good but God only*, Luk. 18. 19.

Secondly, By the benefit of another, to be either made Righteous, or born Just. And in respect of this *natural gift of Righteousness* we say, that in the beginning *Adam* was made just ; because he was created just and in his whole Nature was righteous and good. But this Righteousness was derived from God.

*Whom do you call Just by Grace ?*

All the Elect, which are redeemed by the death of Christ ; and that in two respects.

First, Because the Righteousness of Christ is imputed unto them, and so by grace and favour in Christ their Head, they are just before God.

Secondly, Because of grace and favour they are regenerated by the Holy Ghost ; by the virtue of whose inherent Righteousness and Holiness, they are made Holy and Just ; and whatsoever they do by it, is accepted for just for Christ's sake.

*Whom do you call Just and Righteous, by yielding perfect obedience to God and his Law ?*

No Man in this World after the fall of *Adam* (Christ only excepted) ever was or can be just after that manner.

*What say you of Christ, how was he Just ?*

Our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ is most perfectly Just and Righteous every manner of way.

First, As he is God, he is in his own Essence, of himself, and by himself, most just, even as the Father is ; and eternal Righteousness it self.

Secondly, As he was Man, he was just by Nature, because he was conceived without Sin, and so was born Just and Righteous.

Thirdly, By virtue of his Union with his Divine Nature, which is eternal Righteousness it self, he is most just.

Fourthly, By receiving the Gifts of the Holy Ghost without measure, he is most just, *Psal. 45. 7. John 3. 24.*

Fifthly, He did most perfectly obey the Law of God, and kept it most absolutely : Therefore that way also he is most Righteous and Just.

*What conclude you upon all this ?*

That forasmuch as God only is in his own Essence and Nature, by himself and of himself, eternal Justice and Righteousness ; therefore this Attribute of Justice or Righteousness doth most properly agree to God.

*In how many things is God just ?*

In three, First, In his Will. Secondly, In his Word. Thirdly, In his Works.

*What mean you when you say, that God is just in his Will ?*

That whatsoever he willeth is just, his Will (as hath been declared) being the Rule of Justice.

*What mean you, when you say, that God is just in his Word?*

That whatsoever he speaketh, is just.

*What are the parts of God's Word?*

Four. First, The History: Which is all true.

Secondly, The Precepts and the Laws: Which are perfect

Thirdly, Promises and Threatnings: Which are accomplished.

Fourthly, Hymns and Songs: Which are pure, holy, and undefiled.

*In what respect is God just in his Word?*

First, He speaketh as he thinketh.

Secondly, He doth both as he speaketh and thinketh.

Thirdly, There is no part of his Word contrary to another.

Fourthly, He loveth those that speak the Truth, and hateth those that are Liars.

*What are the Works of God?*

1. His eternal Decree; whereby he hath most justly decreed all things, and the Circumstances of all things, from all Eternity. 2. The just execution thereof in time.

*What Justice doth God shew herein?*

Both his *Disposing* and *Rewarding* Justice.

*What is God's Disposing Justice?*

That by which he, as a most free Lord, ordereth all things in his Actions rightly, *Psal.* 145. 17.

*In what Actions doth that appear?*

First, He hath most justly and perfectly created all things of nothing.

Secondly, He hath most wisely, justly, and righteously disposed all things being created.

*What is God's Rewarding Justice?*

That whereby he rendereth to his Creatures according to their Works.

*Wherein doth that appear?*

First, He doth behold, approve, and reward all good in whomsoever.

Secondly, He doth behold, detest, and punish all evil in whomsoever. To which Justice both his *Anger* and his *Hatred* are to be referred.

*What must we understand by Anger in God?*

Not any Passion, Perturbation, or Trouble of the Mind, as it is in us: But this word *Anger*, when it is attributed to God in the Scripture, signifieth three things.

First, A most certain and just Decree in God, to punish and avenge such Injuries as are offered to himself, and to his Church: And so it is understood, *John* 3. 36. *Rom.* 1. 18.

Secondly, The threatening of these Punishments and Revenges: As in *Psal.* 6. 1. *Hof.* 11. 9.

Thirdly, The Punishments themselves, which God doth execute upon ungodly Men: And these are the Effects of God's Anger, or of his Decree to punish them. So it is taken in *Rom.* 2. 5. *Mat.* 3. 7. *Ephes.* 5. 6.

*What Use may we make of this Attribute?*

First, It teacheth us that Anger of it self is not simply Evil: But then it is Good, when it is such as the Scripture attributeth to God, and commendeth to Men; when it saith, *Be angry and sin not*, *Ephes.* 4. 26.

Secondly, God's Anger serveth to raise us up from security.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, We must not be slothful when we see the signs of God's Wrath coming, but use ordinary means to prevent it.

*What is that Hatred that is attributed to God ?*

Not any passion or grief of the Mind as it is in us: But in the Scriptures these three things are signified thereby.

First, His denial of Good Will, and Mercy, to eternal Salvation: As *Rom. 9. 13. I have hated Esau*; that is, I have rejected him, and have not vouchsafed him that favour and grace which I have shewed upon *Jacob*. And we also are said to hate those things which we neglect, and upon which we will bestow no benefit nor credit, but do put them behind other things: And therefore it is said, *If any Man come unto me, and hate not his Father and Mother, and Wife and Children, &c. he cannot be my Disciple*. That is, he that doth not put all these things behind me, and neglect them for me: So that the love which he beareth to them, must seem to be hatred, in comparison of that love which he must shew to me, (*Luke 14. 26. with Mat. 10. 37.*) And in this sense it is properly attributed to God.

Secondly, The Decree of God's Will to punish Sin, and the just punishment it self; which he hath decreed, as in *Psal. 5. 6. and Job 30. 21. Thou turnest thyself cruelly against me, and art an enemy unto me with the strength of thine hand*: that is, thou dost so fore chastise me, as if thou didst hate me. And in this sense also it is properly attributed to God: For it is a part of his Justice to take punishment of Sinners.

Thirdly, God's Displeasure: For those things which we hate do displease us. And in this sense also it is properly attributed to God: For it is the property of a most just Judge to disallow and detest Evil, as well as to allow and like that which is Good.

*By what Reasons may this be confirmed ?*

1. It is the property of him that loveth, to hate and detest that which is contrary to himself, and that which he loveth. For love cannot be without its contrary of hatred: And therefore as the love of good things doth properly agree to God; so doth also the hatred of evil things as they are evil things.

2. It is manifest by *David*, that it is no less virtue to hate the Evil, than it is to love the Good. And this hatred of sin (as it is a virtue and perfect hatred) cannot be in us but by the Grace of God: For *every good Gift is from above, &c. (Jam. 1. 17.)* and there can be no good thing in us, but it is first in God after a more perfect manner than it is in us.

*What are we to learn thereby ?*

First, That it is a great virtue, and acceptable to God, to hate Wickedness, and wicked Men themselves; not as they are Men, but as they are wicked; and as *David* did, *Psal. 139. 21, 22.* And we are no less bound to hate the Enemies of God, as they are his Enemies, than to love God, and those that love him. And if we do so, then we must also flee their company, and have no friendship or fellowship with them.

Secondly, That we must distinguish betwixt Mens Persons and their Sins, and not to hate the Persons of Men, because they are the good Creatures of God: But their sins we must hate every day more and more, 2 *Thess. 3. 6, 14, 15.*

*Having spoken of the Essence and the Essential Properties of God; tell me now whether there be many Gods, or one only ?*

There is only one God, and no more.

*How may this Unity of the Godhead be proved ?*

By exprefs Testimonies of God's Word ; by Reasons grounded thereon, and by Nature it ſelf, guiding all things to one Principle.

*What exprefs Testimonies of God's Word have you for this ?*

Deut. 6. 4. *Hear, O Israel, the Lord our God is one Lord.* So in 1 Sam. 2. 2. Pſal. 18. 31. Eſa. 44. 6 and 46. 9. Mark 12. 29, 32. 1 Cor. 8. 4, 6.

*What Reasons have you to prove that there is but one God ?*

Fiſt, We are charged to give unto God all our Heart, all our Strength, and all our Soul, Deut. 6. 4, 5. Mark 12. 29, 30. If one muſt have all, there is none left for any other.

Secondly, God is the chiefſt Good, Pſal. 144. 15. the fiſt Cauſe, and the high Governour of all things, Acts 17. 28. Pſal. 19. 1. but there can be but one ſuch.

Thirdly, The Light of Reason ſheweth that there can be no more but one that is Infinite, Independent, and Almighty : If God be Infinite and Omnipotent that doth all things, there can be but one ; for all the reſt muſt be idle.

*How doth Nature guide all things to one Principle ?*

The whole courſe of the World tendeth to one end, and to one unity, which is God.

*How can that be, when there be ſo many ſundry things of divers kinds and conditions, and one contrary to another ?*

That is true indeed, but yet they all together ſerve one God.

*Is that poſſible ? Can you give an Inſtance hereof in ſome familiar Reſemblance ?*

Yea, very well. In a Field there are many Battels, divers Standards, ſundry Liveries, and yet all turn Head with one ſway at once : By which we know that there is one General of the Field which commands them all.

*What makes this to confirm your Aſſertion, that there is but one God over ſo many divers and contrary things in the World ?*

Yes ; for even ſo in the World we ſee divers things, not one like another : for ſome are noble, ſome baſe ; ſome hot, ſome cold ; ſome wild, ſome tame ; yet all ſerve to the Glory of God their Maker, and the benefit of Man, and the accompliſhment of the whole World.

*And what gather you by all this ?*

That there is but one God, which commandeth them all, like the General of a Field.

*If one God be the Author of all ; why are there ſo many Poiſons, and noyſome Beaſts ?*

Fiſt. They were not created noyſome and hurtful at the fiſt : But the ſin of Adam brought the Curſe upon the Creatures, Gen. 3. 17, 18.

Secondly, Although God hath curſed the Creatures for Man's ſin ; yet in his Mercy he doth ſo diſpoſe and order them, that they are profitable for us : For Poiſons, we uſe them for Phyſick ; and the Skins of wild Beaſts ſerve againſt the Cold, &c.

Thirdly, The moſt hurtful things that are, might benefit us, if we knew how to uſe them : And whereas they annoy us, it is not of their own Nature ſo much as of our Ignorance.

*And what do you conclude by all this ?*

That they have not two beginnings, one good and another bad, as ſome would imagine : But one Author thereof, which is God himſelf, always moſt good and gracious.

*If there be but one only God, how is it that many in Scripture are called Gods? (1 Cor. 8. 5.) as Moses is called Pharaoh's God, Exod. 7. 1. and Magistrates are called Gods, Psal. 82. 6. as Idols, and the Belly, Phil. 3. 19. yea, and the Devil himself is called the God of this World, 2 Cor. 4. 4.*

The name *Elohim* or *God* is sometimes *improperly* given to other things, either as they participate of God his communicable Attributes, (as in the two first Instances) or as they are abusively set up by Man in the place of God, (as in the other). But *properly* it signifieth him, who is by Nature God, and hath his Being not from any thing but himself; and all other things are from him. And in this sense *unto us there is but one God* and Lord, 1 Cor. 8. 6. unto whom therefore the Name *Jehovah* is in Scripture incommunicably appropriated.

*Why then are Magistrates called Gods?*

For Four Causes. First, To teach us that such must be chosen to bear rule which excel others in Godliness, like Gods among Men.

Secondly, To encourage them in their Offices, and to teach them that they should not fear the Faces of Men; like Gods, which fear nothing.

Thirdly, To shew how God doth honour them, and how they must honour God again. For when they remember how God hath invested them with his own Name, it should make them ashamed to serve the Devil, or the World, or their own Affections; and move them to execute judgment justly, as if God himself were there.

Fourthly, To teach us to obey them, as we would obey God himself; for he which contemneth them, contemneth God himself, Rom. 13. 2. and we must not dishonour those whom God doth honour.

*Why are Idols called Gods?*

Not because they are so indeed, but because Idolaters have such an opinion of them.

*Why is the Belly called a God?*

Because some make more thereof than of God and his Worship. For all that they can do and get, is little enough for their Bellies; and when they should serve God, they serve their Bellies and beastly Appetites.

*And why is the Devil called the God of this World?*

Because of the great Power and Sovereignty which is given him over the Wicked, whom God hath not chosen out of this World.

*There being but one simple and individed Godhead; to whom doth this Divine Nature belong? Is it to be attributed to one, or to many Persons?*

Of the Trinity. We must acknowledge and adore three distinct Persons, subsisting in the Unity of the Godhead.

*But do you not believe the Godhead to be divided, whilst you believe that in one God there are three Persons?*

No: Not divided into divers Essences, but distinguished into divers Persons. For God cannot be divided into several Natures, nor into several Parts: And therefore must the Persons, which subsist in that one Essence, be only distinct, and not separate one from another: As in the Example of the Sun, the Beams and the Light.

*What be those Resemblances that are commonly brought, to shadow out unto us the Mystery of the Trinity?*

1. First, The Sun beggetteth his own Beams, and from thence proceedeth Light: and yet is none of them before another, otherwise than in consideration of Order and Relation; that is to say, that the Beams are begotten of the Body of the Sun, and the Light proceedeth from both.

Secondly,

Secondly, From one flame of Fire proceed both Light and Heat, and yet but one Fire. 2.

Thirdly, In Waters there is the Well-head, the Spring boiling out of it, and the Stream flowing from them both ; and all these are but one Water : And so there are three Persons in one Godhead, yet but one God. 3.

Fourthly, In Man, the Understanding cometh from the Soul, and the Will from both. 4.

*May it be collected by natural Reason, that there is a Trinity of Persons in the Unity of the Godhead?*

No : For it is the highest Mystery of Divinity ; and the knowledge thereof is more proper to Christians. For the Turks and Jews do confess one Godhead ; but no distinction of Persons in the same.

*How come we then by the Knowledge of this Mystery ?*

God hath revealed it in the Holy Scripture unto the Faithful.

*What have we to learn of this ?*

1. That they are deceived who think this Mystery is not sufficiently delivered in the Scripture, but dependeth upon the Tradition of the Church.

2. That sith this is a wonderful Mystery which the Angels do adore ; we should not dare to speak any thing in it farther than we have warrant out of God's Word : yea, we must tye our selves almost to the very words of the Scripture, lest in searching we exceed and go too far, and so be overwhelmed with the Glory.

*How doth it appear in Holy Scripture, that the three Persons are of that Divine Nature ?*

1. By the Divine Names that it giveth to them ; as *Jehovah*, &c.

2. By ascribing Divine Attributes unto them : As Eternity, Almightyness, &c.

3. By attributing Divine Works unto them : As Creation, Sustainment, and Governing of all things.

4. By appointing Divine Worship to be given unto them.

*What special proofs of the Trinity have you out of the Old Testament ?*

First, The Father is said by his Word to have made the Worlds, the Holy Ghost working and maintaining them, and as it were sitting upon them, as the Henth on the Eggs she hatcheth, *Gen. 1. 2, 3.* 1.

*Gen. 1. 26.* The Trinity speaketh in the Plural Number : *Let us make Man in our Image after our Likeness.* 2.

*Gen. 19. 24.* *Jehovah* is said to rain upon Sodom from *Jehovah* out of Heaven ; that is, the Son from the Father, or to the Holy Ghost from both. 3.

2 *Sam. 23. 2.* The Spirit of *Jehovah* (or the Lord spake by me, and his Word by my tongue : Here is *Jehovah* (the Father, with his Word (or Son) and Spirit. 4.

*Prov. 30. 4.* What is his Name, and what is his Son's Name, if thou canst tell ? 5.

*Isa. 6. 3.* The Angels in respect of the three Persons do cry three times, *Holy, Holy, Holy.* 6.

*Isa. 42. 1.* Behold my Servant whom I uphold, mine Elect in whom my Soul delighteth : I have put my Spirit upon him. 7.

*Hag. 2. 5.* The Father with the Word and his Spirit make a Covenant. 8.

*What are the Proofs out of the New Testament ?*

As all other Doctrines, so this is there more clear ; as first, *Matth. 3. 16, 17.* 1.

at the Baptism of Christ, the Father from Heaven witnesseth of the Son; the Holy Ghost appearing in the likeness of a Dove. *John Baptist* saw the Son in his assumed Nature going out of the Water: There is one Person. He saw the Holy Ghost descending like a Dove upon him: There is another Person. And he heard a Voice from Heaven saying, This is my beloved Son: There is a third Person.

2. *Mat.* 17. 5. At the Transfiguration, the Father in like manner speaketh of his Son.

3. *Mat.* 28. 19. We are baptized into the Name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost.

4. *John* 14. 16, 26. and 15. 26. and 16. 13, 14, 15. The Father and Son promise to send the Holy Ghost.

5. *Luke* 1. 35. The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the Power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: Therefore that Holy Thing which shall be born of thee, shall be called the Son of God.

6. *Acts* 2. 33. Therefore being by the right Hand of God exalted, and having received of the Father the promise of the Holy Ghost; He hath shed forth this which you now see and hear.

7. *2 Cor.* 13. 14. The Grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Love of God; and the Communion of the Holy Ghost be with you all.

8. *Gal.* 4. 6. God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts.

9. *Tit.* 3. 4, 5, 6. God saved us by the washing of the New Birth, and renewing of the Holy Ghost, which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Saviour.

*What clear Proof have you that these three are but one God; and so that there is a Trinity in Unity?*

1 *John* 5. 7. It is expressly said, *there are three that bear record in Heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost; and these three are one.*

*What learn you of that the Apostle saith they are three?*

We learn that the word Trinity, although it be not expressly set down in the Word, yet it hath certain ground from thence.

*What learn you of that, that they are said to be three Witnesses?*

The singular Fruit that is in the Trinity of the Persons, in one Unity of the Godhead: Whereby great assurance is brought unto us of all things that God speaketh in promise or threat; seeing it is all confirmed by three Witnesses, against whom no exception lieth.

*What are they said here to witness?*

That God hath given eternal Life unto us, and that this Life is in that his Son, *1 John* 5. 11.

*How are these, being three, said to be but one?*

They are one in Substance, Being, or Essence: But three Persons distinct in Substance, *Acts* 20. 28. *1 Cor.* 12. 4, 5. *Deur.* 6. 4. *Mar.* 12. 32. *1 Cor.* 8. 4, 5, 6. *John* 14. 16. and 15. 26. and 17. 1.

*If three Persons among Men be propounded, whereof every one is a Man; can it be said these three are but one Man?*

No: But we must not measure God's Matters by the measure of Reason; much less this which of all others is a Mystery of Mysteries.

*For the better understanding of this Mystery, declare unto me what a Person is in general, and then what a Person in the Trinity is.*

In general; a Person is one particular Thing, Indivisible, Incommunicable, Living, Reasonable, subsisting in it self, not having part of another.

What a Person  
in the Trinity  
is.

Vid. Melanob-  
shon. loc. com-  
muni.



*Shew me the reason of the particular Branches of this Definition.*

I say that a Person is, first, *one particular Thing* : Because no general Notion is a Person. 1.

*Indivisible* : Because a Person may not be divided into many Persons ; although he may be divided into many parts. 2.

*Incommunicable* : Because, though one may communicate his Nature with one, he cannot communicate his Person-ship with another. 3.

*Living and Reasonable* : Because no dead or unreasonable thing can be a Person. 4.

*Subsisting in it self* : To exclude the humanity of Christ from being a Person. 5.

*Not having part of another* : To exclude the Soul of Man separated from the Body, from being a Person. 6.

*What is a Person in the Trinity ?*

It is whole God, not simply or absolutely considered, but by way of some personal Properties. It is a manner of being in the Godhead, or a distinct Subsistence (not a Quality, as some have wickedly imagined : For no Quality can cleave to the Godhead) having the whole Godhead in it, *John* 11. 22. and 14. 9, 16. and 15. 1. and 17. 21. *Col.* 2. 3, 9.

*In what respect are they called Persons ?*

Because they have proper things to distinguish them.

*How is this distinction made ?*

It is not in nature, but in relation and order.

*Declare then the order of the Persons of the blessed Trinity ?*

The first in order is the *Father* : Then those that come from the Father ; the *Son* who is the second, and the *Holy Ghost* who is the third Person in the Trinity.

*How are these three distinguished by Order and Relation ?*

The Father is of himself alone, and of no other : The Son is of the Father alone begotten : The Holy Ghost is of the Father and the Son proceeding. And the Father is called the Father in respect of the Son, the Son in respect of the Father, the Holy Ghost in respect that he proceedeth from the Father and the Son : But the one is not the other ; as the Fountain is not the Stream, nor the Stream the Fountain, but are so called one in respect of another, and yet all but one Water.

*What then is the Father ?*

The first Person in the Trinity, who hath his Being and Foundation of Personal Subsistence from none other ; and hath by Communication of his Essence eternally begotten his only Son of himself, *John* 5. 27. and 14. 11. and 20. 17. *Psal.* 2. 7. *Heb.* 1. 3. Of the Father, the first Person of the Trinity.

*How is it proved that the Father is God ?*

By express Testimonies of the Scriptures, and by reason drawn from the same.

*What are those express Testimonies ?*

*John* 17. 3. This is Life Everlasting to know thee to be the only God, *Rom.* 1. 7. Grace and Peace from God the Father, *Ephes.* 1. 3. Blessed be God the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, &c.

*What are the Reasons drawn from the Word of God ?*

That we are bidden to Pray to him, *Matth.* 6. 6, 9. that he revealeth the Mysteries, *Matth.* 11. 25, 27. suffereth his Sun to shine, &c. *Matth.* 5. 45.

*How is it shewed that he begat his Son of himself ?*

In that he is called the Brightness of his Glory, and the engraven Form of his Person, *Heb. 1. 3.* And in that this Generation being from Eternity, there was no Creature of whom he might beget him.

*In what respects is he called the Father ?*

First, in respect of his natural Son Jesus Christ, begotten of his own Nature and Substance, *Matth. 11. 27. John 1. 14. 1 John 4. 14.* whence he is called the *Father of our Lord Jesus Christ*, *Ephes. 1. 3.* Secondly, In respect of his Adopted Sons, whom he hath chosen to be the Heirs of Heaven, through the Mediation of his Natural Son Jesus Christ, *Ephes. 3. 14. John 1. 12. Rom. 8. 14, 15. Matth. 6. 9.* For as he is by Nature the Father of Christ, so is he by Grace to us that believe our Father also.

*What learn you hence ?*

To honour and obey him as a Father ; and to be followers of God as dear Children, *Mal. 1. 6. 1 Pet. 1. 14. Ephes. 5. 1.*

*What other Names are given in the Scripture to the first Person ?*

The Father spake most commonly in the Old Testament, (for in these last times he hath spoken by his Son), and he is called by these Names.

1. *Jehovah* ; that is, I am that I am, without beginning or ending, *Esa. 42. 8. Exod. 3. 14. Rev. 1. 4, 8.*
2. *Elohim* ; that is, Mighty and Strong.
3. *Adonah* ; that is, Judge, or in whose Judgment we rest.
4. *Lord of Hosts* ; because he hath Angels, and Men, and all Creatures at Command to fight for him, *1 Kings 19. 14.*
5. The God of *Jacob* or of *Israel* ; because he made a Promise to *Abraham*, that he would be his God, and the God of his Seed, and the Israelites were the Seed of *Abraham*, *Acts 3. 13.*

*Hitherto of the Father: Do the other Persons that are of the Father, receive their Essence or Godhead from him ?*

Of the other Persons of the Trinity in general. *Essentia Filii est à seipsa ; & hac ratione dici potest autò Deos. Essentia tamen Filii non est à seipso ; ideòq; non potest hac ratione dici autò Deos. Persona enim ejus genita est à Patre accipiendo ab eo essentiam ingentiam.*

They do. For howsoever in this they agree with the Father, that the Essence which is in them, is of it self uncreated and unbegotten : Yet herein lyeth the distinction, that the Father hath his Essence in himself originally, and from none other ; the Son and the Holy Ghost have the self-same uncreated and unbegotten Essence in themselves, as well as the Father, (otherwise they should have had no true Godhead) but not from themselves.

*If these Persons that come from the Father have a beginning ; how can they be eternal ?*

They have no beginning of time or continuance ; but of order of subsistence and off-spring, and that from all Eternity.

*Are you able to set down the manner of this Eternal Off-spring ?*

We find it not revealed touching the manner : And therefore our Ignorance herein is better than all their Curiosity, that have enterprized arrogantly the search hereof. For if our own Generation and Frame in our Mother's Womb be above our capacity, *Psal. 139. 14, 15.* it is no marvel if the Mystery of the eternal Generation of the Son of God cannot be comprehended. And if the Wind, which is but a Creature, be so hard to know, that Man knoweth not from whence it cometh and whither it goeth, *John 3. 8.* it is no marvel if the proceeding of the Holy Ghost be unsearchable.

*Thus much in general touching the Persons which come from the Father.*

*Now in special, What is the Son ?*

The second Person of the Trinity, having the Foundation of personal Subsistence from the Father alone ; of whom by Communication of his Essence, he

Of the second Person in the Trinity.

he is begotten from all Eternity, *John* 5. 26. *Pfal.* 2. 7. *Prov.* 8. 22, &c. *Prov.* 30. 4.

*What Names are given unto him in this respect ?*

First, *The only Begotten Son of God*, *John* 1. 14. and 3. 18. because he is only begotten of the Nature and Substance of the Father.

Secondly, *First Begotten*, *Heb.* 1. 6. *Rom.* 8. 29. not as though the Father begat any after ; but because he begat none before.

Thirdly, *The Image and Brightness of the Father's Glory*, *Heb.* 1. 3. because the Glory of the Father is expressed in his Son.

*But why is he called the Word ?* 1 *John* 5. 7. and *John* 1. 1.

He is called a *Word*, or *Speech*, (for so doth *Logos* more properly signifie) : Because,

First, As *Speech* is the birth of the *Mind* ; so is the *Son* of the *Father*.

Secondly, As a *Man* revealeth the meaning of the *Heart* by the *Word* of his *Mouth* ; so *God* revealeth his *Will* by his *Son*, *John* 1. 18. *Heb.* 1. 2.

Thirdly, He is so often spoken of and promised in the *Scriptures* ; and is in a manner the whole Subject of the *Scriptures*, *John* 1. 45.

*How prove you that the Son is God ?*

He is in the *Scriptures* expressly called *God*, and *Jehovah* : And likewise the Essential Properties, the Works and Actions of *God* are given to him, *Esa.* 9. 6. and 25. 9. *Zach.* 2. 10, 11. *Prov.* 8. 22. *John* 1. 1. and 20. 28. *Rom.* 9. 5. *Phil.* 1. 6. *Heb.* 1. 8, 10. 1. *John* 5. 20.

*How do you prove it by his Works ?*

His Works were such as none could do but *God* : For,

1. He made the *World* : which none could do but *God*, *Heb.* 1. 2.

2. He forgave *Sins* : which none can do but *God*, *Matth.* 9. 2.

3. He giveth the *Holy Ghost* : which none can do but *God*, *John* 15. 16.

4. He maintaineth his *Church* : which he could not do if he were not *God*, *Ephes.* 4. 11, 12.

*Can you prove the Son to be God, by comparing the Old Testament and the New together ?*

Yes. For what the *Old Testament* speaks of *Jehovah*, which is *God*, that the *New Testament* applieth to *Christ*. As,

First, *David* saith, *Jehovah* went up on high, and led *Captivity captive*, *Psal.* 68. 18. *Paul* applieth it to *Christ*, *Ephes.* 4. 8.

Secondly, The *Psalmist* saith, *Jehovah* was tempted, *Psal.* 95. 9. which *Paul* applieth to *Christ*, *1 Cor.* 10. 9.

Thirdly, *Esa.* saith, *Jehovah* is the first and the last, *Esa.* 41. 4. that is also applied to *Christ*, *Apoc.* 1. 8. and 21. 6. and 22. 13.

Fourthly, *Esa.* saith, *Jehovah* will not give his *Glory* to any other than to himself, *Esa.* 42. 8. But it is given to *Christ*, *Heb.* 1. 6. Therefore *Christ* is *Jehovah*.

*For the better understanding of the generation of the Son ; shew me the divers manners of begetting.*

There be two manners of begetting : The one is carnal and outward, and this is subject to corruption, alteration, and time. The other is spiritual and inward : as was the begetting of the *Son of God* ; in whose Generation there is neither corruption, alteration, nor time.

*Declare then after what manner this Spiritual Generation of the Son of God was : and yet in sobriety, according to the Scriptures.*

For the better finding out of this Mystery, we must consider in God two things. First, That in God there is an understanding, *Psal.* 139. 2. Secondly, We must consider how this Understanding is occupied in God.

*Declare after what manner it is in God.*

This Understanding is his very Being, and is everlastingly, and most perfectly occupied in God.

*Whereupon doth God's Understanding Work ?*

Upon nothing but it self; and that I prove by Reason. For God being Infinite and all in all, it cannot meet with any thing but himself.

*What Work doth this Understanding in God effect ?*

It doth understand and conceive it self. For as in a Glass a Man doth conceive and beget a perfect Image of his own Face: So God in beholding and minding of himself, doth in himself beget a most perfect and most lively Image of himself; which is that in the Trinity which we call the Son of God.

*Where do you find that the Son is called the Perfect Image of God ?*

*Heb.* 1. 3. He is called the Brightness of his Glory, and the Engraven Form of his Person, which is all one.

*What mean you by Engraven Image ?*

That as Wax upon a Seal hath the Engraven Form of the Seal: So the Son of God, which his Father had begotten of his own Understanding, is the very Form of his Father's Understanding; so that when the one is seen, the other is seen also.

*When then he is Understanding it self, for so is his Father.*

Yea, he is so; and he saith so of himself, *I have Counsel and Wisdom, I am Understanding,* *Prov.* 8. 14.

*But where find you that he was begotten ?*

He saith so himself, in the Name of Wisdom, in these Words; *When there was no depths, then was I begotten; before the Mountains and Hills were settled was I begotten,* *Prov.* 8. 24, 25.

*Yea, he was made the Son of God when he was born of the Virgin Mary; was he not ?*

He was indeed then the Son of God, but he was not then made the Son of God.

*When then was he made the Son of God ?*

He was never made in time; for he was begotten of the substance of his Father from all Eternity, without beginning or ending.

*How prove you that the Son of God was not made, but begotten eternally of the substance of his Father ?*

I prove it, first, by Scripture: For he saith no less himself; *I was set up from everlasting, from the beginning, and before the Earth,* *Prov.* 8. 23. and therefore he prayed that he might be glorified of his Father *with the Glory which he had with him before the World was,* *John* 17. 5.

Secondly, I prove it by Reason. For God's Understanding is everlasting: therefore the second Person which it begetteth, is so too. For the Father in his Understanding did not conceive any thing less than himself, nor greater than himself, but equal to himself.

*Although the Son of God be from everlasting, yet he is not all one with the Father; is he ?*

Yes, that he is: And yet not joined with his Father in Heaven as two Judges that sit together on a Bench; or as the Seal and the Wax, as some do grossly imagine; but they are both one without parting (*John* 10. 30.) or mingling: Where-

Whereupon I conclude, that whatsoever the Father is, the Son is the same: And so consequently that they be Co-eternal, Co-equal, and Co-essential.

*Men by reason do conceive and beget Reason: What difference is there between the conceiving of Understanding in Men, and the conceiving of Understanding in God?*

There is great difference For, first, this conceiving in Men proceedeth of Sense or outward Imagination, which is an outward thing for Reason to work upon, as Wood is to Fire: But God the Father of himself begetteth and conceiveth himself, and still in himself; as *John* saith, *The only begotten Son which is in the Bosom of the Father*, *John* 1. 18.

Secondly, In Men, the thing which is understood, and the Understanding it self is not all one: But in God it is all one.

*What reason have you for this?*

The reason is, because only God is altogether Life, and his Life is altogether Understanding, and his Understanding is the highest degree of Life: And therefore he hath his conceiving and begetting most inward of all.

*What mean you when you say most inward of all?*

I mean that the Father conceiveth of himself, and in himself; and his conceiving is a begetting, and his begetting abideth still in himself; because his Understanding can no where meet with any thing, but that which he himself is: and that is the second Subsistence in the Trinity, which we call the Everlasting Son of God.

*Now let me hear what the Holy Ghost is, and how he proceedeth from the Father and the Son.*

Of the third Person in the Trinity.

For the understanding of this Matter, we must consider two things.

First, That in the Essence of God, besides his Understanding, there is a Will, *Esa.* 46. 10.

Secondly, What be the Properties of his Will in God.

*What are the Properties of God's Word?*

First, It applieth his Power when, where, and how he thinks good; according to his own Mind.

Secondly, It worketh everlastingly upon it self, as his understanding doth.

*What gather you by this?*

That because it hath no other thing to work upon but it self; it doth delight it self in the infinite good which it knoweth in it self; for the action of the Will is delight and liking.

*And what of that?*

That delight which God or his Will hath in his own Infinite Goodness, doth bring forth a third Person or Subsistence in God; which we call the Holy Ghost.

*What is that same third Subsistence in God?*

The mutual kindness and lovingness of the Father and the Son.

*What mean you by this mutual lovingness and kindness?*

The Father taketh joy and delight in the Son, or his own Image conceived by his Understanding; and the Son likewise rejoiceth in his Father, as he saith himself, *Prov.* 8. 30. and the reason thereof is this: The Action of the Will, when it is fulfilled, is love and liking.

*What resemblance can you shew thereof in something that is commonly used amongst us?*

When a Man looketh in a Glass, if he smile, his Image smileth too; and if he taketh delight in it, he taketh the same delight in him: for they are both one.

*If they be all one, how can they then be three?*

The Face is one, the Image of the Face in a Glass is another, and the smiling of them both together is a third; and yet all are in one Face, and all are of one Face, and all are but one Face.

*And is it so in God?*

Yea, for even so the Understanding, which is in God, is one; the Reflection or Image of his Understanding which he beholdeth in himself as in a Glass, is a second; and the love and liking of them both together, by reason of the Will fulfilled, is a third: And yet all are but of one God, all are in one God, and all are but one God.

*Which of these three is first?*

There is neither first nor last, going afore or coming after, in the Essence of God: But all these as they are everlasting, so they are all at once and at one instant: Even as in a Glass the Face and the Image of the Face, when they smile, they smile together, and not one before nor after another.

*What is the conclusion of all?*

As we have the Son of the Father by his everlasting Will in working by his Understanding; so also we have the Holy Ghost of the love of them both by the joint working of the Understanding and Will together. Whereupon we conclude three distinct Persons Subsistences (which we call the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost) in one Spiritual, yet unspeakable Substance, which is very God himself.

*But what if some will be yet more curious to know how the Son of God should be begotten, and how the Holy Ghost should proceed from the Father and the Son: How may we satisfy them?*

Well enough. For if any will be too curious about this Point, we may answer them thus. Let them shew us how themselves are bred and begotten, and then let them ask us how the Son of God is begotten: And let them tell us the Nature of the Spirit that beateth in their Pulses, and then let them be inquisitive at our Hands for the proceeding of the Holy Ghost.

*And what if they cannot give us a reason for the manner of their own Being, may they not be inquisitive for the manner of God's Being?*

No. For if they must be constrained to be ignorant in so common matters which they daily see and feel in themselves; let them give us leave to be ignorant, not only in this, but in many things more, which are such as no Eye hath seen, nor Ear hath heard, nor Wit of Man can conceive.

*Let us now hear out of the Scriptures what the Holy Ghost is?*

He is the third Person of the Trinity by Communication of Essence, eternally proceeding from the Father and from the Son.

*Are you able to prove out of the Scriptures that the Holy Ghost is God?*

Yes. Because the Name, Properties and Actions of God are therein given to him, as to the Father and to the Son.

*Let us hear some of those Proofs.*

1. First, *Gen. 1. 2.* the Work of the Creation is attributed to the Spirit of God.
2. Secondly, *Esa. 61. 1.* the Spirit of the Lord God is said to be upon Christ, because the Lord anointed him, &c.
3. Thirdly, *1 Cor. 3. 16.* and *2 Cor. 6. 16.* Paul calleth us *God's Temples*; because *the Holy Ghost dwelleth in us.* St. Augustine in his 66 Epistle to *Maximus*, saith it is a clear Argument of his Godhead, if we were commanded to make him a Temple but of Timber and Stone, because that *Worship* is due to God only: Therefore now we must much more think that he is God, because we are

not

not commanded to make him a Temple, but to be a Temple for him our selves.

*What other Reason have you out of the Scriptures?*

Peter reproving *Ananias* for lying to the *Holy Ghost*, said, that he lied not to Men, but to God, *Acts* 5. 3. 4.

*Have you any more Reasons from the Scripture*

Yea, two more: One from *St. Paul*, and another from *St. Paul* and *Esay* together.

*What is your Reason from St. Paul?*

When he sheweth how many sundry Gifts are given to Men, he saith, that one and the self-same Spirit is the distributor of them all: Therefore he is God; for none can distribute those Gifts which *Paul* here speaketh of, but God, *1 Cor.* 12. 6, 11.

*What is your Reason from Esay and St. Paul together?*

*Esay* saith in Chap. 6. 8, 9. I heard the *Lord* speaking: Which place *Paul* expounded of the *Holy Ghost*, *Acts* 28. 25.

*But how can you prove out of the Scriptures, that the Holy Ghost is God, proceeding from the Father and the Son?*

First, *John* 15. 26. *When the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of Truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me.* That he proceedeth from the Father, is here expressly affirmed: That he proceedeth from the Son, is by necessary consequence implied, because the Son is said to send him; at *John* 14. 26. the Father is said to send him in the Son's Name. By which sending, the Order of the Persons of the Trinity is evidently designed. Because the Son is of the Father, and the Father is not of the Son; therefore we find in Scripture that the Father sendeth his Son, but never that the Son sendeth his Father. In like manner because the *Holy Ghost* proceedeth from the Father, and from the Son; we find that both the Father and the Son do send the *Holy Ghost*, but never that the *Holy Ghost* doth send either the Father or Son.

Secondly, *John* 16. 15. The Son saith of the *Holy Ghost*; *All things that the Father hath are mine; therefore, said I, that he shall take of mine, and shall shew it unto you.* All things that the Father hath, the Son receiveth from him, as coming from him; and so whatsoever the *Holy Ghost* hath, he hath it not of himself, *vers.* 13. but from the Son, and so from the Father; as a Person proceeding as well from the one as from the other.

Thirdly, *Gal.* 4. 6. *God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your Hearts.* As the *Holy Ghost* is called the Spirit of the Father, (*Esa.* 48. 16. *The Lord and his Spirit hath sent me*); so is he here also called the Spirit of the Son; and *Rom.* 8. 9. *the Spirit of God, and the Spirit of Christ.* Now, if the Spirit of Man, in whom there is no perfection, be all one with Man, much more the Spirit of the Father is all one with the Father, and the Spirit of the Son is all one with the Son; and so the *Holy Ghost* with the Father and the Son, is the same in Deity, Dignity, Eternity, Operation, and Will.

*Why is the third Person called the Spirit?*

Not only because he is a Spiritual, (that is) an immaterial and pure Essence, (for so likewise is the Father a Spirit, and the Son as well as he): But first, In regard of his Person; because he is spired, and, as it were, breathed both from the Father and the Son, proceeding from them both. Secondly, In regard of the Creatures; because the Father and the Son do work by the Spirit: Who is as it were the Breath of Grace, which the Father and the Son breatheth out up-

on the Saints, blowing freely where it listeth, and working Spiritually for *manner, means, and matter*, where it pleaseth, *John* 20. 22. *Psal.* 33. 6. *John.* 3. 8. *Acts* 2. 2, 3, 4. *1 Cor.* 2. 12, 13.

*Why is he called the Holy Spirit?*

Not only because of his *Essential* Holiness as God; for so the Father and the Son are also infinitely Holy as he: But because he is the Author and Worker of all Holiness in Men, and the Sanctifier of God's Children.

*Why, doth not the Father and the Son sanctifie also?*

Yes verily: But they do it by him: and because he doth immediately sanctifie, therefore he hath the Title of Holy.

*What other Titles are given unto him in the Word of God?*

First, The *Good Spirit*: Because he is the Fountain of Goodness, *Psalms* 143. 10.

Secondly, The *Spirit of God*: Because he is God, *1 Sam.* 11. 6.

Thirdly, The *Finger of God*: Because God worketh by him as a Man by his Hand, *Luke* 11. 20.

Fourthly, The *Spirit of Adoption*: Because he assureth our Hearts that we be the Adopted Sons of God, *Rom.* 8. 15. *Gal.* 4. 6.

Fifthly, The *Spirit of Love, Power, Sobriety, Wisdom, &c.* because it worketh all these things in us, *2 Tim.* 1. 6, 7. *Esa.* 11. 2.

Sixthly, The *Comforter*: Because he strenghtneth the weak Hearts of his Saints, *John* 14. 1, 16, 26.

*What are the Special Comforts which the Children of God receive from the Holy Ghost?*

He is in their Hearts the *Pledge* of Christ's Presence, *John* 14. 16, 17, 18, 26. the *Witness* of their Adoption, *Rom.* 8. 15, 16. the *Guide* of their Life, *Joh.* 16. 13. the *Comforter* of their Soul, *John* 14. 26. and 15. 26. the *Seal* of their Redemption, *Ephes.* 1. 13. and 4. 30. and the *first Fruits* of their Salvation, *Rom.* 8. 23.

*But how are you assured that you have the Spirit?*

How to know that we have the Spirit.

Because it hath *convinced* my Judgment, *John* 16. 8. *converted* my Soul, *Acts* 26. 18. *Esa.* 61. 1. and having mixed the Word with my Faith, *Heb.* 4. 2. it is become as *Life* to quicken me, *John* 6. 63. as *Water* to cleanse me, *Ezek.* 36. 25. as *Oyl* to cheer me, *Heb.* 1. 9. as *Fire* to melt and refine me, *Matth.* 3. 11.

How to keep the Spirit.

*And how may you keep the Spirit now you have it?*

By nourishing the good *motions and means* of it, *1 Thess.* 5. 17, 18, 19. being *fearful* to grieve, quench, resist, or molest it, *Ephes.* 4. 30. *1 Thess.* 5. 19. *Acts* 7. 51. and *careful* to be led by it, and shew forth the Fruits of it, *Rom.* 8. 1, 14. *Gal.* 5. 18, 22.

*Thus much of the three Persons severally. What now remaineth more to be spoken of the Mystery of the Trinity?*

To set down briefly, what be the things *common* wherein the three Persons agree: and what be the things *proper* to each of them, whereby they are distinguished one from another.

Things common to the three Persons.

*What are the things wherein the three Persons do communicate?*

They are considered in regard of themselves or of the Creatures.

*What are they in regard of themselves?*

In what they all agree.

They agree one with another in Nature, Being, Life, Time, Dignity, Glory, or any thing pertaining to the Divine Essence: For in all these they are one and the same; and consequently, Co-essential, Co-equal, and Co-eternal.



*What mean you, when you say they be Co-essential ?*

That they be all the self-same Substance or Being; having one individual Essence or Deity common to them all, and the self-same in them all. 1. Co-essential

*What mean you, when you say they be Co-equal ?*

That as they agree in Deity, so they agree in Dignity: Being of one State, Condition, and Degree, and the one having as great excellency and majesty every way as the other. Therefore their Honour and Worship is equal and alike; and one of them is not greater nor more glorious than another, *John 5. 18. Apoc. 5. 12, 13.* 2. Co-equal.

*What mean you, when you say that they be Co-eternal ?*

That one was not before another in time; but that one hath been of as long continuance as another, and all of them have been and shall be for ever, (as being all of one self-same everlasting continuance.) 3. Co-eternal.

*How prove you this ?*

*John 1. 1.* In the beginning was the Word, &c. and at that time the three Persons speak, *Gen. 1. 26.* Let us make Man, &c. *Heb. 13. 8.* Jesus Christ yesterday, to day, and the same for ever.

*How can there be this equality betwixt the three Persons of the Trinity, seeing the Father is the first, the Son the second, the Holy Ghost the third ?*

Because every one of them is perfect God; who is Infinite, Eternal, and Incomprehensible.

*Have they all three one Will likewise ?*

They have: And therefore they will all one and the same thing without any crossing, contradiction, or varying in themselves; as the Son himself saith, *John 8. 29.* I do always those things that please him, viz. the Father.

*Is there nothing else to be said of the Communion of the three Persons betwixt themselves ?*

Yes. That first one is in another, and possesseth one another: the Father remaining with the Son, the Son with the Father, the Holy Ghost in and with them both, *Prov. 8. 22. John 1. 1. and 14. 10, 20.*

2. They have glory one of another, from all eternity, *John 17. 5.*

3. They delight one in another, and infinitely rejoice in one another's fellowship: The Son being the delight of the Father, the Father of the Son, and the Holy Ghost of both, *Prov. 8. 30.*

*What things have they common in regard of the Creatures ?*

All outward Actions; as to decree, to create, to order, govern, and direct, to redeem, to sanctifie; are equally common to the three Persons of the Trinity. For as they are all one in Nature and Will, so must they be also one in Operation, all of them working one and the same thing together, *Gen. 1. 26. John 5. 17, 19.*

*What are the things proper to each of them ?*

They likewise are partly in regard of themselves, and partly of the Creatures, whereby the distinction of them is conceived; partly in relation and order of subsistence betwixt themselves, and partly in order and manner of working in the Creatures.

This proper to each of the Persons.

*What things are proper to each of them in regard of themselves ?*

First, In manner and order of Being: the Father is the first Person, having his Being from himself alone, and is the Fountain of Being to the other Persons; the Son is the second, having his Being from the Father alone, (and in that respect is called the Light, the Wisdom, the Word, and the Image of the Father); the Holy Ghost is the third, having his Being from them both; and  
in

in that respect is called the Spirit of God, of the *Father*, and of *Christ*.

Secondly, In their Inward Actions and Properties : The Father alone begetteth, (and so in relation to the second Person is called the Father ; the Son is of the Father alone begotten ; the Holy Ghost doth proceed both from the Father and the Son.

*What is proper to each of them in regard of the Creatures ?*

First, The *Original* of the Action is ascribed to the Father, *John* 5. 17, 19. the *Wisdom*, and manner of working, to the Son, *John* 1. 3. *Heb.* 1. 2. the *Efficacy* of Operation to the Holy Ghost, *Gen.* 1. 2. *1 Cor.* 12. 11.

Secondly, The Father worketh all things of himself, in the Son, by the Holy Ghost : The Son worketh from the Father, by the Holy Ghost ; the Holy Ghost worketh from the Father and the Son.

*Having spoken of the first part of Divinity, which is the Nature of God ; it followeth that we speak of his Kingdom, which is the second.*

*What is the Kingdom of God ?*

His Universal Dominion over all Creatures, whereby he dispenseth all things externally according to his own Wisdom, Will and Power. Or, an everlasting Kingdom, appointed and ruled by the Counsell of his own Will, *Luke* 1. 33. *Esa.* 9. 7. *Dan.* 2. 44. *Esa.* 40. 13, 14. *Psal.* 99. 1. and 115. 3. *Rom.* 11. 34. 35, 36. *Ephes.* 1. 11. *Esa.* 44. 24.

*Wherewith doth he Reign and Rule ?*

Principally by his own powerful Spirit, which none can resist.

*What end doth he propound to himself in his Kingdom ?*

His own Glory, *Rom.* 11. 36. *Psal.* 97. 6. *Esa.* 48. 11. *Ephes.* 1. 12, 14.

*What is that about which his Kingdom is occupied ?*

All things, Visible and Invisible.

*When shall it end ?*

Never ; either in this World, or in the World to come, *Psal.* 145. 13.

*What manner of Kingdom is it ?*

A Righteous Kingdom, *Psal* 45. 6, 7. and 97. 2.

*What Instructions are you to gather out of the Doctrine of the Kingdom of God ?*

They are expressed in *Psal.* 99. in the beginning whereof the Prophet speaketh in this manner

1. *The Lord reigneth* : Which teacheth us that God alone hath, and exerciseth sovereign and absolute Empire over all ; and that he admitteth no Fellow-Governor with him.

2. *Let the People tremble* : Shewing that all Nations and sorts of People should tremble ; forasmuch as he alone is able to save and to destroy. For if Men tremble under the Regiment and Kingly Rule of Men : How much more ought they to tremble under the powerful Kingdom of God, which hath more power over them than they have over their Subjects.

*This trembling, doth it stand only in fear ?*

No : But in reverence also ; that that which we comprehend not in this Kingdom with our Reason, we reverence and adore.

*What learn you thereby ?*

1. That we submit our selves to his Kingdom erected amongst us.

2. That we presume to know nothing but that he teacheth us ; to will nothing but what he biddeth us ; to love, hate, fear, and affect nothing but what he requireth.

*What doth follow in this 99 Psalm ?*

Verf. 1, 2. *He sitteth between the Cherubims, let the Earth be moved: The Lord is great in Sion, and he is high above all the People.* Whence we learn, that although all the World roar and fret, yet we should not fear, because the Lord is greater, *Pfal. 97. 1, 3. They shall praise thy great and fearful Name, for it is Holy: Which sheweth that God ought to be magnified, because he is great and fearful, and yet holy, and Holiness it self. Psal. 99. 4. The King's strength also loveth Judgment? Thou dost establish Equity; Thou executest Judgment and Righteousness in Jacob.* Whereby we learn this comfort from God's reigning, that when we are wronged and oppressed by tyranny of Men, we may have our recourse to the just and righteous Judgment of God, which is the Righteous Judge of the World, (*Ecc. 5. 7, 8.*) *Pfal. 99. 5. Exalt ye the Lord our God, &c. out of the Might, and Majesty, and Holiness of the Lord, we should learn to extol him with praise. Psal. 145. 11, 12.*

*Seeing God is without beginning: What did he in that infinite space which was ere the World was made; it being unbecoming the Majesty of God to be idle and unoccupied all that time?*

It Behoveth us to think that he did things agreeable to his Divine Nature: But we should be evil occupied in the search of them further than himself hath made them known. Which made an ancient Father to give this Answer to a curious Inquirer of God's doings before he made the World: That he was making Hell for those that should trouble themselves with such vain and idle questions, *August. lib. 1. Confess. Chap. 12.*

*What is that he hath revealed unto us concerning what he did before the beginning of the World?*

Besides the inward Works of the three Persons of the Blessed Trinity, (whereof we have spoken) and the mutual delight which they took one in another, (*Prov. 8. 30.*) and Glory which they gave one to another, (*John 17. 5.*) this external Act of his is revealed unto us in the Scriptures, that he hath in himself decreed all things, together with all the Circumstances of all things which have or shall be done from the beginning of the World unto the end thereof.

*What then be the Parts of God's Kingdom?*

The parts of God's Kingdom.

The Decree, determining all things from all eternity; and the execution thereof, fulfilling the same in time. For as from eternity he decreed, so in time and everlastingly he accomplisheth all things unto the full execution of that his Decree, *1 Cor. 2. 16. Ephes. 1. 11. Acts 4. 28. Psal. 99. 4. and 135. 6.* So that the first is an eternal, the second a temporal Work of God.

*What is the Decree?*

Of God's Decree.

It is that Act, whereby God from all eternity, according to his free Will, did by his unchangeable Counsel and Purpose, fore appoint and certainly determine of all things; together with their Causes, their Effects, their Circumstances and Manner of Being, to the Manifestation of his own Glory, *Pfal. 99. 4. Mat. 10. 29. Rom. 9. 20, 21. and 11. 36. Prov. 16. 4. Ephes. 1. 4, 11. Acts 2. 23. Jer. 1. 5, 15.*

*What gather you of this; that God's Decree is defined by his most perfect Will?*

First, That the things which he decreeth are most perfectly good. Secondly, That we must not subject his Decree to our shallow and base capacity, or measure it by our Reason: considering that the Will of God, from whence the Decree cometh, is unsearchable.

*What are the Parts or Kinds of God's Decree?*

That

That which God hath decreed concerning all his Creatures *generally*, for the declaration of his Power, Wisdom, and Goodness in their creation and preservation: And that which he hath decreed *pecially*, touching the Good or Evil of the chief or reasonable Creatures, Angels and Men, to declare the Glory of his Grace and Justice.

*What note you in the former?*

That God, according to his good pleasure, hath most certainly decreed every (both) Thing and Action, whether past, present, or to come; and not only the Things and Actions themselves, but also all their Circumstances of Place and Time, Means, Manner, and End; so that they shall not come to pass in any other place or time than he hath ordained; and then and there they shall come to pass necessarily, *Psal.* 99. 4. *Acts* 27. 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 31, 32, 33, 34.

*Doth this necessity take away freedom of Will in Election, or the nature and property of second Causes?*

No: But only brings them into a certain order, that is, directeth them to the determined end. Whereupon the Effects and Events of things are contingent or necessary, as the nature of the second Cause is. So Christ according to his Father's Decree died necessarily, *Acts* 17. 3. but yet willingly; and if we respect the temperature of Christ's Body, he might have prolonged his life; and therefore in this respect may be said to have died contingently.

*What consider you in the special Decree, which concerneth the Good or Evil of the principal Creatures?*

The fore-appointment of their everlasting Estate, and of the means tending thereunto; called *Predetermination*.

Of Predetermination.

*What is Predetermination?*

It is the Special Decree of God, whereby he hath from everlasting freely, and for his own Glory, fore-ordained all reasonable Creatures to a certain and everlasting state of Glory in Heaven, or Shame in Hell.

*What Creatures come within this Decree?*

Both Angels, *1 Tim.* 5. 21. *Mat.* 25. 41. and Men, *1 Thess.* 5. 9. *Rom.* 9. 13, 22, 23. *1 Pet.* 2. 8. *Ephes.* 1. 5. *John* 17. 12, 22. *Exod.* 33. 14.

*What is the cause of this Decree?*

Only the meer will and free pleasure of God to dispose of his own Work as he will, *Rom.* 9. 21. *Esa.* 64. 8.

*What manner of Decree is this?*

It is a deep and unsearchable, an eternal and immutable Decree, *Rom.* 11. 33. *Ephes.* 1. 4.

*Is this Decree certain and unchangeable?*

Yea, it must needs be so: Because it is grounded on the eternal and unchangeable Will of God: And therefore there is a certain number of the Elect and Reprobate known only to God, which cannot possibly be increased or diminished, *John* 13. 18. *2 Tim.* 2. 19.

*How then doth Moses wish himself to be blotted out of the Book of Life?*

*Exod.* 32. 32.

He speaketh conditionally, if it were possible; to declare his Love to God's Glory, and his People, as Paul doth, *Rom.* 9. 3.

*But if God's Decree cannot be altered; then we may be secure, and not care how we live.*

No more than we may neglect and forsake our Meat and Drink, because the term of our Life is fore-appointed: The end and the means are joined together of God, and cannot be separated by any Man.

*What*

*What are the Parts of Predestination ?*

Election and Reprobation, 1 *Theff.* 5. 9. *Rom.* 9. 13, 22, 23.

*What is Election ?*

It is the everlasting Predestination or Fore-appointing of certain Angels and Men unto everlasting Life and Blessedness, for the praise of his glorious Grace and Goodness, 1 *Tim.* 5. 21. *John* 15. 16. *Rom.* 9. 22, 23. *Ephes.* 1. 4, 5, 6, 9.

*Is there no Cause, Reason, or Inducement of Election, in the Elected them selves ?*

None at all. It is wholly of free Grace, without respect of any goodness that God foresaw in us, 2 *Tim.* 1. 9. *Rom.* 9. 16. *Phil.* 2. 13. *Ephes.* 1. 9. For otherwise Man should have whereof he might glory in and of himself, as having discerned himself from others: And God should not be the cause of all Good, nor should his Counsel be incomprehensible.

*Is not Christ the Cause of our Election ?*

No; not of God's decreeing of it, (for that he did of his own free Will): but of the execution of it; that is, our Salvation is for and through Christ.

*What Tokens have we of our Election ?*

A true Faith, and a godly Life.

*What Use are we to make of our Election ?*

First, It is our great comfort, that our Salvation standeth by God's eternal Decree, that cannot be changed; and not in our Selves, that daily might lose it.

Secondly, It sheweth God's infinite Mercy, that before we were, or had done Good or Evil, he elected us, rather than others as good as we.

Thirdly, It should make us love God all our life to our utmost, for his Love to us.

Fourthly, It is a help against all Temptations of Satan, or our doubting Nature; and also against all Afflictions and Contempt of the World, *Rom.* 8. 38, 39.

Fifthly; It serveth to humble us, that we had nothing of our selves for our Salvation, but it freely came from God.

*What is Reprobation ?*

It is the eternal Predestination or Fore-appointment of certain Angels and Men unto everlasting dishonour and destruction: God of his own Free-will determining to pass them by, refuse, or cast them off, and for sin to condemn and punish them with eternal Death, *Prov.* 16. 4. *Exod.* 9. 16. *Rom.* 9. 17, 22. 2 *Tim.* 2. 20. *Mat.* 25. 41. Reprobation.

*Is not Sin the cause of Reprobation ?*

No: For then all Men should be reprobate, when God foresaw that all would be Sinners. But Sin is the cause of the execution of Reprobation; the damnation whereunto the Wicked are adjudged, being for their own sin.

*Is there no cause then of Reprobation in the Reprobate ?*

None at all, in that they rather than others are passed by of God; that is, wholly from the unsearchable depth of God's own free-will and good pleasure.

*But is not God unjust, in reprobating some Men, and electing others, when all were alike ?*

No; for he was bound to none: And to shew his freedom and power over his Creatures, he disposed of them as he will for his Glory: As the Potter is not unjust in making of the same Clay sundry Vessels, some to honour, and some to dishonour.

*Doth Predestination only come within the compass of God's Decree; and not the Means also of accomplishing the same ?*

Yes: The Means also comes within this Decree: As the Creation, and the fall of the reasonable Creatures.

*If God hath decreed the Works of the Wicked: Must not he of force be the Author of Sin and Evil?*

God is not the Cause of Sin and Evil, which he forbiddeth and condemneth; but Satan and Man: Yet God in his secret Will hath justly decreed the Evil Works of the Wicked (for if it had not so pleased him, they had never been at all) for most Holy Ends, both of his Glory and their Punishment: As may be seen in the Jews crucifying of Christ, *Acts* 2. 23; and *Joseph's* selling into Egypt, *Gen.* 45. 7. and 50. 20. For the thing that in it self, by reason of God's prohibiting of it, is sin; in respect of God's decreeing of it for a holy end, comes in the place of a good thing: As being some occasion and way to manifest the Glory of God in his Justice and Mercy. For there is nothing sin as God decreeth it, or commandeth it: Neither is there any thing of it self absolutely evil; (*1 Pet.* 3. 17.) but because God hath forbidden it, therefore it is evil, and only to them unto whom God hath forbidden it: As *Abraham's* killing of *Isaac*, being commanded of God, was to be obeyed, and sin it were to have disobeyed it: Which otherwise, by reason of God's Commandment forbidding to kill, was a sin. For God forbiddeth not things because they are of themselves, and first Evil; but therefore are they to Man Evil, because God hath forbidden them. For all sin is a transgression of a Law; and God doth in Heaven and in Earth whatsoever pleaseth him; neither is there any greater than he to command him.

*So much of the Decree or Purpose of God; What is the execution of it?*

It is an Action of God, effectually working all things in their time according to his Decree, *Ephes.* 1. 11. *Acts* 4. 28.

*What are the Parts of the Execution?*

Creation and Providence, *Psal.* 33. 6, 7, 9, 10, 11. and *146.* 6, 7. *Jer.* 10. 12.

*What is Creation?*

It is the execution of God's Decree, whereby of nothing he made all things very good, *Gen.* 1. 1, 7. *Heb.* 11. 3.

*How many things in general are you to know concerning the Creation?*

The Causes and the Adjuncts. In the former whereof we are to consider the Author or efficient Cause, the Matter, the Form or Manner, and the End. In the latter, the Goodness of the Creatures, and the Time of the Creation.

*Who is the Author of this wonderful Work?*

God alone.

*How doth that appear?*

Not only by the plain and manifold Testimonies of Holy Scripture, but also by Light of Reason well directed. For Reason teacheth, That there must needs be a first Cause of all things, from whence they proceed, not only as they are this or that, but simply as they are: That all Perfections which are in other things by participation, should be in it essentially, and that the same must be of infinite Wisdom, in that all things are made and ordered unto so good purposes as they are: None of which things can agree to any but to God alone. Whence it is that the Apostle *Paul*, *Acts* 14. 15. and 17. 24. doth point out God to the Heathen by his Work above other.

*Is not Creation then an Article of Faith above Reason?*

Yes; in regard of the time and manner of it: As likewise in respect of a full and saving assent unto it with comfort.

*Is the Father alone to be held the Creator of all things?*

Execution of  
God's Decree.  
Creation.  
Providence.

Creation in  
general.

No: But together with him the Son also and the Holy Ghost. For so St. *John* testifieth, that by Christ the eternal Word and Wisdom of God, all things were made, and without him was made nothing, *John* 1. 3. In like manner St. *Paul* teacheth that by him all things were created in Heaven and Earth, both things Visible and Invisible, whether they be Thrones, or Dominions, or Principalities, or Powers, by him and for him they were all created, *Col.* 1. 16. *Moses* also declareth, that the Spirit of the Lord moved upon the Waters; sustaining and holding up, and as it were brooding (for that Metaphor he useth) the unformed Matter, to bring forth the most comely and beautiful forms of all things, *Gen.* 1. 2.

*Did not the Angels create some Creatures at the beginning? Or cannot Man or the Devils now create Creatures?*

No; Creation is a Work which God only is able to do: And therefore whatsoever the Devil or Jugglers, like the Sorcerers of *Egypt*, seem to do, it is nothing but a delusion of the Senses: As the Devil himself confesseth, *Mat.* 4. and the Sorcerers, *Exod.* 8.

*But was there not something before the Creation, as the first Matter of all things, or Time, or the space in which this World was made?*

No: For then there should be something eternal as well as God.

*Whereof then were all things made?*

Of nothing, that is, of no-Matter which was before the Creation.

*How doth that appear?*

Because they are said to have been made *in the beginning*, *Gen.* 1. 1. that is, when before there was not any thing but God the Creator; and before which there was no measure of Time by Men or Angels.

*How and in what manner did God create all things?*

By no Means or Instruments, (which he needeth not, as Man doth) but by his powerful Word, that is, by his only Will; calling those things that are not, as though they were, *Heb.* 11. 3. *Rom.* 4. 17. *Psal.* 148. 5.

*Was that Word by which he made all things, Christ his Son?*

All things indeed that were made, were made by the Son, the second Person of the Trinity, *John* 1. 3. *Col.* 1. 16. *Heb.* 1. 2. yet that Word mentioned in the first of *Genesis*, (when it is written, that the Lord said, Let there be Light, &c.) was God's Command, which then had beginning: Whereas the Son was from all eternity.

*To what end were all things created?*

For God's Glory, *Prov.* 16. 4.

*How doth the Glory of God appear in them?*

First, His eternal Power and Godhead is seen, in raising all things out of nothing by his Word alone, *Esa.* 40. 11. *Rom.* 1. 20. *Jer.* 10. 12. and 51. 15.

Secondly, His infinite Wisdom is made known by them, *Psal.* 104. 24. *Jer.* 10. 12. and 51. 15.

Thirdly, His Goodness unto all his Creatures is hereby manifested, which is very excellently set out by the Prophet in *Psal.* 104.

Fourthly, His infinite Authority doth appear by them.

*What Uses then are we to make of the Creation?*

First, We are thereby taught to discern the True God, from all Heathen and Idol-Gods in the World, *Esa.* 45. 7. *Jer.* 10. 11, 12. For nothing in Heaven and Earth can give a Being unto a Creature but God.

Secondly, We are to weigh them and learn their Properties, *Eccles.* 7. 25.

Thirdly, We should learn to give God glory for them, *Rev.* 4. 11. *Pfal* 92. 5. (where it is made one end of the Sabbath) *Pfal* 104. throughout.

Fourthly, We are to gather comfort to our selves from hence: That resting upon this Faithful *Creator*, our hope needs not fail us, so long as either Heaven or Earth have any help for us, *1 Pet.* 4. 19. *Ejā.* 37. 16, 17. and 40. 28, 31.

*What doth the Scriptures teach us concerning the Goodness of the Creatures?*

That God made them all in such excellency of Perfection, for their Being, Working, Order and Use, that himself did fully approve of them, and to establish them, *Gen.* 1. 31. which established Order is that which is called *Nature*.

*In how many things doth the Goodness of the Creatures consist?*

In three. First, In the perfection of their Nature.

Secondly, In their Properties and Qualities, whereby they are able to do those things for which they were created.

Thirdly, In their Uses unto Man.

*How manifold is that Good which Men receive by them?*

Threefold. First, Profitable Good. Secondly, Pleasant Good. Thirdly, Honest and Christian Good.

*How were all things made Good; when we see there be divers kinds of Serpents and noysom or hurtful Beasts?*

That they are hurtful, it cometh not by the Nature of their Creation; in regard whereof they at the first should only have served for the good of Man.

*What do you note in the Time of their Creation?*

The beginning and the continuance thereof.

*Might not the World have been before all Time, even from Eternity?*

No. For Absolute Eternity belongeth only to God: Neither could any thing that is subject to Time be after an infinite succession of other things.

*What say you then to Aristotle, accounted of so many the Prince of Philosophers; who laboureth to prove that the World is eternal?*

Where he seemeth to have found out a point of Wisdom which he had learned of none other that was before him, he therein bewrayeth his greatest folly. For his chiefest Reason, being grounded upon the eternity of the first Mover, is of no force to prove his most absurd Position: Seeing God as he is Almighty, and always able to do what he will; so he is most free, and not bound to do all that he can, but what, when, and how it pleased him. But seeing *Aristotle* was enforced by Reason to acknowledge God to be the first Mover, even against his Will, (for it seemeth that he endeavoured as much as he could to quench the Light of Divine Knowledge shining in his face; or obstinately to close his eyes against the same); and yet not only spoileth God of the glory of his Creation, but also assigneth him to no higher Office than is the moving of the Spheres, whereunto he bindeth him more like to a Servant than a Lord: The Judgment of God uttered by *St. Paul*, *Rom.* 1. 21. is most notoriously shewed upon him; in that he knowing God did not glorifie him, nor give him thanks; but became vain in his Disputations, and his foolish Heart was darkned: While he professed Wisdom he was made a Fool, approving Idolatry, and that wickedness which the *Apostle* there sheweth to be a just punishment of Idolatry, and Nature it self abhorreth, (*Arist. Polit.* 1. 7. c. 16. & 1. 2. c. 8.)

*How long is it since God did create the World?*



Four thousand Years before the Birth of our Saviour Christ: And so about 5614 years before this time.

*Why is the Order of the Years of the World so carefully set down in the Scripture?*

1. To convince all Heathen, that either thought the World was without beginning, or that it began millions of Years before it did.
2. To give light to all Sacred Histories of the Bible.
3. To shew the Time of the fulfilling of the Prophecies which God foretold.

*But why was not the World made sooner?*

Saving the hidden Wisdom, and free Pleasure of the Maker: Therein appeareth the free Power of God, to make or not to make; and his absolute sufficiency within himself, as having no need of any external Being, only creating that he might communicate and manifest his Goodness.

*How long was God creating the World?*

Six Days and six Nights.

*Why was he Creating so long, seeing he could have perfected all the Creatures at once and in a moment?*

First, To shew the variety, distinction, and excellency of his several Creatures.

Secondly, To teach us the better to understand their Workmanship; even as a Man which will teach a Child in the frame of a Letter, will first teach him one Line of the Letter, and not the whole Letter together.

Thirdly, To admonish us, that we are bound to bestow more time in discerning and knowing them than we do.

Fourthly, That we might also by his Example finish our Work in six days.

Fifthly, That we might observe, that many of the Creatures were made before those which are ordinarily their Causes; and thereby learn that the Lord is not bound to any Creature, or to any Means. Thus the Sun was not Created before the fourth day: And yet days (which now are caused by the rising of the Sun) were before that. So Trees and Plants were created the third day: But the Sun, Moon, and Stars (by which they are now nourished and made to grow) were not created till after the third day.

*Hitherto of the Creation in general: What are the particular Creatures?* The Creation of the particular Creatures.

The World, and all things therein, *Acts* 17. 24. or, the Heavens, and the Earth, and all the Host of them, *Gen.* 2. 1.

*How many Heavens are mentioned in the Scriptures?*

Of the Heavens.

Three. The first is the Air wherein we breathe, the Birds do fly, and the Snow, Rain, Frost, Hail, and Thunder are begotten, *Mat.* 6. 26. *Gen.* 7. 11.

The second is the Sky, wherein the Sun, the Moon, and the Stars are placed, *Gen.* 1. 14, 15. *Deut.* 17. 3.

The third, that wherein the Angels, and the Souls of the Saints from hence departed are now, *2 Cor.* 12. 2. *Mat.* 18. 10. *Mark.* 12. 25.

*What understand you by the Earth?*

The lowest part of the World; containing the Globe of the Land and the Waters. Of the Earth.

*What mean you by the Host of them?*

All the Creatures which the Lord made to have their beginning and being in them, *Psal.* 103. 20, 21. and 148. 2, &c. *Deut.* 17. 3. *Joel.* 2. 10, 11.

*How are the Creatures distinguished?*

Into Visible and Invisible, *Col.* 1. 16.

*What*

Of the Invisible  
Creatures.  
The third Hea-  
ven and An-  
gels.

*What are the things Invisible ?*

The third Heaven, and the Angels placed therein.

*Why is there no more expresse mention in the first of Genesis of the Creation of these, especially being Creatures in Glory so far passing others ?*

1. They are not exprelly mentioned, because *Moses* setteth forth the things that are Visible, and therefore doth not only pass them by, but also Minerals, and other things inclosed within the Bowels of the Earth.

2. Some respect also might be had of the weaknes and infancy of the Church at that time. God did first teach them more plain and sensible things, and as they grew in Knowledge, he afterwards revealed other things unto them. But that they were (in one of the six days) created, it is most evident by *Psal.* 103. 20. and 148. 2, 5. *Col.* 1. 16.

*In which of the six days were they created ?*

Though it be not so plainly revealed in Scripture, yet it may be gathered by *Gen.* 1. 1. (where under the term of Heavens those glorious Creatures may be also comprehended) and *Job* 38. 6, 7. that they were created the first day.

*Of what Nature are the Angels ?*

They are Substances wholly Spiritual, (not in parts, as Man is) ; and in respect of this simple Essence, in the Scripture they are called Spirits:

*How many things conceive you of the Angels, when you say that they are Spirits ?*

Six. 1. That they are living Substances. 2. That they are Incorruptible. 3. That they are Incorporeal. 4. That they are Indivisible. 5. That they are Intangible. 6. That they are Invisible.

*Have they any Matter ?*

They have their Spiritual Matter, (as Man's Soul hath) ; but not any Earthly or Corporeal Matter.

*They are not then Fantasies, as some do wickedly imagine.*

No: But they are Substance and Being. For some are said to have fallen; others to appear unto Men.

*How many of them were created at the beginning ?*

They were all created at once; and that in an innumerable multitude.

*How did God create them ?*

He made them all at the first very good and glorious Spirits, yet mutable, *Gen.* 1. 31. *Job* 4. 18.

*With what other Properties are the Angels especially indued ?*

With greater Wisdom, Power, Swiftness, and Industry than any Man.

*Where is the Creation of things Visible especially taught ?*

In the first and second Chapters of *Genesis*, where *Moses* declarerh at large, how God in the beginning created the World, and all things therein contained, every one in their several nature and kinds.

*What doth *Moses* note of these Creatures generally ?*

Three things. First, That they are all said to be good: Which stoppeth the mouths of all those that speak against them.

Secondly, That their Names are given them.

Thirdly, That their Uses and Ends are noted.

*In what order did God create them ?*

First, The dwelling Places were first framed, then the Creatures to dwell in them. And provision was made for the Inhabitants of the Earth before they were made: As Grass for the Beasts, and Light for all living and moving Creatures,

Of Angels.

Of the creation  
of Visible  
things.

tures, and all for Man. Secondly, God proceedeth from the things that be more imperfect, to those that are perfecter, until he come to the perfectest. As from the Trees, Corn, Herbs, &c. which have but one Life, that is, whereby they increase and are vegetative, unto the Beasts which have both an increasing and feeling, or sensitive Life; as Fishes, Fowls, Beasts, &c. and from them to Man, which hath besides them a reasonable Soul.

*What learn you from the first?*

Not to be carking for the things of this Life; not to surfeit with the cares thereof: Seeing God provided for the necessity and comfort of the very Beasts, ere he would bring them into the World.

*What from the second?*

That we should therein follow the example of the Lord, to go from good to better, until we come to be perfect.

*What are the visible Creatures in particular?*

Two. First, The rude Mass or Matter of the World made the first Night; Of the Chaos wherein all things were confounded and mingled one in another. Secondly, The or rude Mass. beautiful Frame thereof, which were made the rest of the six Days and Nights.

*What are the parts of that rude Mass?*

Heaven and Earth (for so the Matter whereof all the bodily Creatures were Of the parts of the rude Mass made, seemeth by a Trope, Gen. 1. 1. to be signified) as it were the Center and Circumference. For as the Arch-builders first shadow out in a Plot the Building they intend; and as the Painters draw certain gross Lineaments of that Picture, which they will after set forth and fill up with Orient Colours: So the Lord our God in this stately Building, and cunning Painting of the Frame of the World, hath before the most beautiful Frame set out as it were a Shadow and a common Draught thereof.

*It seems the rudeness was in the Earth only, containing the Water and the dry Land; because the Prophet saith, that the Earth was void, and without Shape.*

It is true that Moses giveth this to the Earth, rather than the Mass of the Heavens; because the confusion and rudeness was greater there than in the Mass of the Heavens; for the Water and dry Land being mingled together, there was no Form or Figure of them.

*It being without Form and Void, how was it kept?*

By the Holy Ghost, which (as a Bird sitting over her Eggs) kept and preserved it, Gen 1. 2.

*What are the things which were made of this rude Mass?*

The beautiful Frame and Fashion of the World, with the Furniture thereof.

*What do you consider in the Frame and Fashion of the World?*

Two things. First, The Elements, which are the most simple Bodies, by the uneven mixture whereof all Bodies are compounded. Of the Frame of the World.

Secondly, The Bodies themselves that are compounded of them.

*How many Elements are there?*

There are commonly counted four. Of the Elements.

First, The Fire: Which some think to be comprehended under the term of The four Elements. Light, Gen. 1. 3; 4. because that is a quality of the Fire.

The second is the Air: Which some would have signified by the Spirit or Wind of God moving upon the Waters, *vers.* 2. Others, by the Firmament, *vers.* 6, 7. set between the Clouds and Earth to distinguish between Water and Water; and to give Breath of Life to all things that breathe.

Thirdly, The Waters, (*vers.* 2.) severed from the Mass called the Earth, (*vers.* 9, 10.)

Fourthly,

4- Fourthly, The Earth, (*verf.* 2.) called the dry Land, (*verf.* 9, 10.) which remaineth, all other being sent of God to their proper places.

Of the mixt or compounded Bodies.

*What are the mixt or compounded Bodies?*

Such as are made of the four Elements unequally mingled together.

*How many kinds be there of them?*

Four, *V i* Things that have,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ A Being without Life.} \\ 2. \text{ A Being and Life, without Sense.} \\ 3. \text{ A Being, Life and Sense, without Reason.} \\ 4. \text{ A Being, Life, Sense, and Reason; (as, Man.)} \end{array} \right.$

*What is common to the three last kinds?*

That together with Life, there is power and virtue given unto them to bring forth the like unto themselves for the continuance of their Kind. Which Blessing of Multiplication is principally in the two last sorts of Creatures, (that have the Life of Sense, beside the Life of Increase): And therefore the Lord is brought in to speak to them in the second Person, *Gen.* 1. 22, 28. which he did not to the Grasse, Corn, and Trees, which are Creatures of the second Kind.

*What learn you from hence?*

That the chief and special cause of the continuance of every kind of Creatures to the Worlds end, is this Will and Word of God, without the which, they, or sundry of them, would have perished ere this, by so many means as are to consume them.

The several Works of the six days.

The first day, Heaven, and Earth, and the Light.

*Declare now in order the several Works of the six days: And shew first, what was done the first day.*

The rude Mass or Matter of Heaven and Earth, being made of nothing the first night of the World, (as hath been declared); God did afterward create the Light, and called it Day, *Gen.* 1. 3, 4, 5.

*What note you hereof?*

The wonderful Work of God, not only in making something of nothing, but bringing Light out of Darkness, *2 Cor.* 4. 6. which is contrary: And distinguishing betwixt Day and Night, before either Sun or Moon were created.

The second day, the Firmament.

The third day, Grasse, Corn, and Trees.

Of the Water and Earth.

*What was the Work of the Second Day?*

The Firmament was created, to divide the waters above from the Waters below.

*What was done the third Day?*

The third Night (as it seemeth) God caused the Waters to retire into their Vessels, and severed them from the dry Land; calling the one Seas, the other Earth. Then in the third Day, which followed that Night, he clad the Earth with Grasse for the use of Beasts only, Corn and Trees for the use of Man.

*What shape is the Water and the Earth of?*

They both together make a round Globe.

*Whether is the Water or the Earth bigger?*

The Waters.

*Why then do they not overwhelm the Earth?*

They are restrained and kept in by the mighty Power of God.

*How many sorts of Waters be there?*

Two: Salt Waters, as the Sea; and fresh Waters, as Floods, Springs, Lakes, &c.

*What be the Parts of the Earth?*

First, Hills. Secondly, Valleys and Plains.

*How many benefits do you receive by the Earth in general?*

Four.

Four. First, We are made of the Earth. Secondly, We dwell on the Earth. Thirdly, It giveth Fruits and Nourishment to all living Creatures. Fourthly, It is our Bed after Death.

*What benefit receive you by the Hills ?*

They are a shadow against Storms and Heat : They be fit for graſing of Cattel ; they are fit places to ſet Beacons on, to ſhew that the Enemy is at hand, &c.

*What benefits receive you by the Valleys and Plains ?*

1. They receive Water, to water the Earth. 2. They are moſt fit places bringing forth all kind of Fruit, and Herbs, and Graſs.

*How cometh it to paſs that God firſt maketh the Graſs, Corn, and Trees ; e're he made the heavenly Bodies of the Sun, Moon, and Stars, from whoſe influence the growth of theſe proceedeth ?*

To conſtantly our error, which tyeth the increaſe of theſe ſo to the influence of the Heavenly Bodies, even to the worſhipping of them ; therein forgetting the Lord, who thereby ſheweth, that all hangeſh upon him, and not on them ; forasmuch as he made them when the Heavenly Bodies were not.

*What do you gather from hence ?*

That the Fruitfulneſs of the Earth ſtandeth not ſo much in the labour of the Husbandman, as in the power which God hath given to the Earth to bring forth Fruit.

*Thus much of the Works of the third Day ; what was made the fourth Day ?*

**Lights :** Which are as it were certain Veſſels wherein the Lord did gather the Light, which before was ſcattered in the whole Body of the Heavens.

The 4th Day.  
The Creation  
of the Lights.

*How are theſe Lights diſtinguiſhed ?*

Although they be all great in themſelves, to the end they might give Light to the Dark Earth, that is far removed from them :

Great, { Sun.  
          { Moon.  
Small : The Stars.

*Why doth Moſes call the Sun and Moon the greateſt Lights ; when there are Stars that exceed the Moon by many degrees ?*

First, Because they are greateſt in their uſe and vertue that they exerciſe upon the Terreſtrial Bodies. Secondly, Because they ſeem ſo to us : It being the purpoſe of the Holy Ghoſt by Moſes to apply himſelf to the capacity of the unlearned.

*What is the uſe of them ?*

First, To ſeparate the Day from the Night. Secondly, To be Signs of Seaſons, and Days and Years. Thirdly, To ſend forth their Influences upon the whole Earth, and to give Light to the Inhabitants thereof.

*How are the Signs of Times and Seaſons ?*

First, By diſtinguiſhing the Times ; Spring, Summer, Autumn, Winter ; by their work and natural effect upon the earthly Creatures.

Secondly, By diſtinguiſhing the Night from the Day, the Day from the Month, the Month from the Year.

*Have they not Operation alſo in the extraordinary Events of ſingular Things and Perſons, for their Good and Evil eſtate ?*

No verily : There is no ſuch uſe taught of them in the Scriptures. ✕

*What Creatures were made the fifth Day ?*

Fiſhes and Birds.

*What were the Fiſhes made of ?*

Of all four Elements : But more (it ſeemeth) of the Water than other living things, Gen. 1. 20.

The fifth Day.  
The Creation  
of Fiſhes and  
Birds.

What

*What were the Birds made of ?*

Of all four Elements : Ye have more of the Air, (*Gen. 2. 19.*) and therefore that they are so light, and that their delight is in the Air, it is so much the more marvellous.

*What did God make in the sixth and last Day of Creation ?*

The sixth Day.  
Of the Creation  
of Man and  
Woman.

It is probable that  
he made in the

{	Night thereof, the Beasts	{	going	{	Tame, or home
	of the Earth.		creeping		Beasts.
{	Day, Man in both Sexes; that is, both Man and Woman. The History of whose Creation is set down, <i>Gen. 1. 26, 27.</i> in the discourse of the Six-days Work; and repeated in <i>c. 5. v. 7.</i> and more at large, after the Narration of the Lord's Rest in the seventh Day, <i>vers. 18, 19, 20, &amp;c.</i>	{		{	Wild, or Field-
					Beasts.

*Why was Man made last of all the Creatures ?*

1. Because he was the most excellent of all the Works of God in this inferior World. 2. Because he was the end of all unreasonable Creatures : And therefore that he might glorifie God for all the Creatures that he saw the World was furnished with for his sake. 3. Because God would have him first provided for, e're he brought him into the World ; that so he might have this World, of which God had made him Prince, as it were, his Palace, furnished with all things convenient. And if he had care of him before he was ; how much more now he is ?

*What note you thereof ?*

That Man hath not to boast of his Antiquity ; all the Creatures being made before him, even to the vilest Worm.

*What is to be observed in his Creation ?*

That here, for the excellency of the Work, God is brought in as it were deliberating with himself, the Father with the Son and the Holy Ghost, and they with him : The whole Trinity entering into a solemn Counsel to make Man after their Image, (*Gen. 1. 26.*) which is not said of any other Creature. For whereas the other Creatures were made suddenly ; Man was (as we shall see) not so, but with some space of time. Hitherto also belongeth, that the Holy Ghost standeth longer upon his Creation than upon the rest.

*What learn you from thence ?*

That we should mark so much the more the Wisdom and Power of God in the Creation of him : And likewise imitate God, in using most diligence about those things which are most excellent.

*What Parts doth he consist ?*

Of two Parts : Of a Body and a Soul, *Gen. 2. 7. Job 10. 11, 12.*

Of the parts of  
Man : And first  
of the Body.

*Whereof was his Body made ?*

Of the very Dust of the Earth, *Gen. 2. 7.* In which respect the work of God, in making him, is set forth by a Similitude of the Potter, which of the Clay maketh his Pots. And the name of *Adam* is from hence in the Hebrew given unto Man, to put him in mind not to be proud, nor to desire to be like God : which God foresaw he would do, through Satan's Temptation.

*What learn you from hence ?*

That seeing it pleased God to make Man's Body more principally of the basest Element ; thereby he may take occasion of being lowly and humble in his

now fight: According as the Scripture it self directeth us to this Instruction, *Gen. 18. 27.*

*What else learn you ?*

The absolute Authority that God hath over Man; as the Potter hath over his Pots, and much more, *Rom. 9. 21.*

*How was the Soul made ?*

His Soul was made a Spiritual Substance, which God breathed into that frame of the Earth to give it a Life; whereby *Man became a living Soul*, (*Gen. 2. 7.* Of the Soul of Man.) *Mal. 2. 15.*

*Why is it called the Breath of God ?*

Because God made it immediately: Not of any earthly Matter (as he did the Body) nor of any of the Elements, (as he did the other Creatures) but of a Spiritual Matter. Whereby it signified the difference of the Soul of Man, which was made a Spiritual and Divine, or everlasting Substance, from the Soul or Life of Beasts, which cometh of the same Matter whereof their Bodies are made, and therefore dieth with them. Whereas the Soul of Man cometh by God's Creation from without, (in which respect God is said to be the Father of our Spirits, *Heb. 12. 9.*) and doth not rise as the Souls of Beasts do, of the temper of the Elements, but is created of God, free from composition, that it might be immortal, and free from the corruption, decay, and death that all other Creatures are subject unto. And therefore as it had Life in it self when it was joined to the Body, so it retaineth Life when it is separated from the Body, and liveth for ever.

*What other Proofs have you of the Immortality of the Soul, besides the Divine Nature thereof ?* The Immortality of the Soul.

*Eccles. 12. 7.* It is said that at death, *The Dust shall return to the Earth, as it was, and the Spirit unto God who gave it.*

Our Saviour Christ, *Luke 23. 46.* and his Servant *Stephen*, *Acts 7. 59.* at their death commend their Souls unto God.

*Luke 23. 43.* The Thieve's Soul after separation from the Body is received into Paradise.

*Matth. 10. 28.* The Soul cannot be killed by them that kill the Body.

*Pfal. 49. 14, 15. Matth. 22. 32. Rev. 6. 9. and 7. 9.*

The guiltiness of the Conscience, and fear of Punishment for Sin, proveth the same.

Otherwise all the comfort of God's Children were utterly dashed. For *if in this Life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all Men most miserable*, *1 Cor. 15. 19.*

*Why is it said, that God breathed in his Face or Nostrils, (Gen. 2. 7.) more than in any other part ?*

1. To put Man in Mind of his frailty; whose Breath is in his Nostrils, *Esa. 2. 22.*

2. Because the Soul sheweth her Faculties most plainly in the Countenance, both for outward Senses and inward Affections.

*But is the Head the Seat of the Soul ?*

It is thought that in regard of the Essence of it, all of it is over all and every part of the Body, as Fire is in hot Iron. But howsoever the Faculties thereof appear in the several parts of the Body; yet the Heart is to be accounted the special Seat of the Soul: Not only in regard of Life, being the first part of Man that liveth, and the last that dieth; but for Affections also and Knowledge. As appeareth by *1 Kings 3. 9, 12. Matth. 15. 18, 19. Rom. 2. 15. and 10. 10. 1 Pet. 3. 4.* Of the Seat of the Soul.

*Is there many, or one Soul in Man?*

There is but one: Having those Faculties in it of Vegetation and Sense, that are called Souls in Plants and Beasts.

*What reason have you for this saying?*

1. Otherwise there should be divers essential forms in Man.
2. God breathed but one breathing: Though it be called the breathing of Lives, *Gen. 2. 7.* for the divers Lives and Faculties.
3. In all Scripture there is mention but of one Soul in Man, *Matth. 26. 38. Acts 7. 59.*

*When may the Soul be truly said to come, or be in the Body of a Child?*

When in all essential Parts it is a perfect Body; as *Adam's* was, when God gave him his Soul.

*What be the Faculties of the Soul?*

1. The *Understanding*, under which is the Memory (though it be rather one of the inward Senses, than one of the principal Faculties of the Soul) and the Conscience.

2. The *Will*, under which are the Affections. So there be five special Faculties.

*What is meant by the Image of God, after which Man was made?* *Gen. 1. 26, 27.*

Not any bodily shape, (as though God had a Body like Man) but the divine state wherein his Soul was created.

*How many ways is the Image of God taken in Scripture?*

Either for Christ; as *Col. 1. 15. Heb. 1. 3. John 12. 45. and 14. 9.* or for the Glory of Man's lively Personage, as *Gen. 9. 6.* or for his Authority over the Woman, as *1 Cor. 11. 7.* or for the Perfection of his Nature, indued with Reason and Will, rightly disposed in Holiness and Righteousness, Wisdom and Truth; and accordingly framing all Motions and Actions, both inward and outward, *Col. 3. 9, 10. Ephes. 4. 24.*

*How is it then bere to be taken?*

It may be taken either strictly and properly, or more largely and generally.

*What is the strictest and most proper Acceptation of it?*

When it is taken for that integrity of Nature, which was lost by *Adam's* Fall, and is contrary to Original Sin.

*Wherein standeth that integrity of Nature?*

In the Holy Perfection of Virtues, appearing in the five Faculties: As

1. In the *Understanding*; true Wisdom, and heavenly Knowledge of God's Will and Works.
2. In Memory; all holy remembrance of things we ought.
3. In Will; all cheerfulness to obey God's Command.
4. All moderation and sanctity of Affections.
5. All integrity of Conscience.

*Is any part of God's Image in the Body?*

No: But as Original Sin in our corrupt estate, so in the state of integrity these Virtues shine and are executed by the Body.

*But is not Man the Image of God, in respect of the essential Faculties of his Soul, his Mind and Will, and in the Immortality thereof?*

Not in this strict and proper Acceptation of God's Image, whereof now we speak. For the Essential Faculties of the Soul are not lost by *Adam's* Fall: And the Immortality remaineth still.

*What is the larger Acceptation of God's Image?*



When it is taken for that dignity and excellency, given unto Man in his Creation; which is partly inward, and partly outward.

*Wherein do his inward Excellencies consist?*

Both in his Substance, and in his Qualities.

*Wherein standeth the excellency of his Substance?*

In that he only, of all the Creatures of the visible World, hath a reasonable and immortal Soul given unto him, (as hath been declared); and in respect of this Spiritual Nature, resembleth God, who is a Spirit.

*What is the excellency of Man consisting in Qualities?*

Knowledge and Wisdom in the Understanding, (*Psal.* 51. 6. *Col.* 3. 10.) Righteousness and Holiness in the free Will, (*Ephes.* 4. 24. *1 Pet.* 1. 15, 16.) and herein, as hath been shewed, did Man especially resemble his Maker.

*Wherein standeth the excellency of the Understanding?*

In knowledge of all Duties, either concerning God, his Neighbour, or himself. Unto which Knowledge may be referred Wisdom, to use Knowledge to discern when, where, and how every thing should be done: Conscience to accuse or excuse, as his doings should be good or evil: Memory to retain; Providence to foresee what is good, to do it; what is evil, to avoid it: Reason, to discuss of the lawfulness or unlawfulness of every particular Action of a Man's own self.

*Wherein standeth the excellency of Man's Will?*

In Holiness (as hath been said) and Righteousness, or Uprightness of Desires and Actions. Holiness comprehending all the Vertues of the first; and Justice of Righteousness containing all the Vertues of the second Table; imprinted in the Soul of Man at his Creation.

*What were the outward Gifts wherein Man's excellency did consist?*

1. God gave him a Body answerable to his Soul; endued with Beauty, Strength, Immortality, and all Gifts serving to Happiness, *1 Cor.* 11. 7.

2. God set such a Grace and Majesty in the Person, specially in the Face of Man, as all the Creatures could not look upon without fear and trembling: As appeareth when they all came before Man to receive their Names.

3. God gave him dominion and rule over all Creatures of the World, which were made to serve him; being by this excellent Creation made and adopted to be as it were the Son and Heir of God, who is the absolute Lord over all, *Psal.* 8. 6, 7. *Gen.* 1. 26, 28. of which Dominion the Authority to name them was a sign, *Gen.* 2. 19, 20.

*What are the Ends and Uses of the making of Man according to God's Image?*

1. That God, who is in himself invisible and incomprehensible, might in some measure be known of Man: As a Picture or Image sheweth the Person whom it representeth.

2. To move Man to love God, that hath so gloriously made him like himself.

3. That Men between themselves might love one another, as like doth like.

*How many of Mankind did God create at first?*

1. Only one Man, Adam, *Gen.* 2. 7.

2. Out of him, and for him, one Woman, *Eva*, *Gen.* 2. 21, 22. *Mal.* 2. 15. so made he them Male and Female, *Gen.* 1. 27. and 5. 2.

*How doth God say, Gen. 2. 18. It is not good for Man to be alone? Did he make any thing that was not good?*

God forbid. By Good is not meant that which is set against Sin or Vice: But in saying, *It is not good for Man to be alone*, he meaneth that it is not so convenient and comfortable.

*What*

*What learn you from hence ?*

1. How foully they have been deceived, that upon the words of the Apostle, *1 Cor. 7. 1. It is not good for Man to touch a Woman*, have gathered, that Marriage is little better than Whoredom : Considering, that as here, so there, by *good* is meant only that which is convenient and commodious.

2. That Man is naturally desirous of the society of Women : And therefore that Monkeries, Nunneries, and Hermitages are unnatural, and consequently ungodly.

*What is meant by these words in the same place, Gen. 2. 18. [as before him ?]*

That she should be like unto him, and of the same form for the perfection of Nature, and Gifts inward and outward.

*What is the end why she was made ?*

To be a help unto Man.

*Wherein ?*

*Answer.* First, In the things of this Life : By continual society, (*1 Pet. 3. 7.*) And for Generation, *Gen. 1. 28.* Secondly, In the things of the Life to come ; as they which are Heirs together of the Grace of Life, (*1 Pet. 3. 7.*) And now a fourth use is added, to be a Remedy against Sin, which was not from the beginning, *1 Cor. 7. 2, 9.*

*What reason is brought to prove that God was to make a Woman an help unto Man ?*

Either he must have a Help or Companion from some of these Creatures that are already made ; or else I must make him a Helper and Companion. But amongst all the Creatures there is none fit ; therefore I must create one. The first Proposition being evident ; the second is proved by God's own Testimony, and Adam's experience ; who having given Names to all the Creatures, truly, and according to their Natures, found none fit for his company, *Gen. 2. 20.*

*What learn you from thence, that the Lord would have Adam see whether there were an Helper amongst the other Creatures, which he knew well to be unfit ?*

*Note Re well worth observing and remember* To teach us, that e're we enter into Marriage, we should have a feeling of our own Infirmary, and need of a Wife ; whereby that benefit may become more sweet, and we more thankful unto God. Which if it be true in a Man, it ought to be much more in a Woman, which is weaker, and much more insufficient than he.

*What else ?*

*This is a sharp reproof for men and their wives* That it is a perverse thing to love any Creature so well as Mankind : against those Men that make more of their Horses and Hounds than of their Wives ; and against those Women which make more of a Monkey, or of a Parrot, or of a Spaniel, than of their Husbands.

*What note you of that, that when Adam was asleep, his Wife was made ?*

That the Lord is the Giver of the Wife without our care : And that besides our Prayers to God for one, the care is to be laid upon the Lord, and upon our Parents, which are to us as God was to Adam, to direct us therein, *Prov. 19. 14.*

*Why was not Evah made of the Earth, as Adam was ; but of a Rib of her Husband ?*

1. To admonish her of her subjection and humility. As the Apostle teacheth ; *The Man was not of the Woman, but the Woman of the Man, 1 Cor. 11. 8.* Which subjection also appeareth in this, that Adam gave her the Name.

2. To put them in mind of the near conjunction that should be between the Man and his Wife, in love and affection.

*Wherefore doth God bring the Woman to Adam ?*

To note, that how fit soever a Woman be, yet she should not be received to Wife until God giveth her: And when he giveth her by the Ordinance he hath appointed, that then he should receive her.

*Whereof dependeth this ; That a Man shall leave Father and Mother, and cleave to his Wife ?* Gen. 2. 24.

Of this, that she was Flesh of his Flesh, and Bone of his Bone; and that God did give her unto Man, and he accepted her.

*The Creation, which is the former part of the execution of God's Decree, being ended; what is the other ?*

Providence.

Of God's Providence.

*How may it appear that there is a Providence ?*

Partly by the Word of God, *Mat. 10. 30. Prov. 16. 33.* and partly by Reason.

*What Reasons have you to prove that there is a Providence ?*

1. The agreement of things which are most contrary in the World, and which would consume one another if they were not hindered by the Providence of God.

2. The subjection of many Men and Women unto one Person, both in Commonwealths and Families.

3. The means of our preservation and nourishment. For Meat, Drink, and Cloathing, being void of Heat and Life, could not preserve the Life of Man, and continue heat in him, unless there were a special Providence of God to give virtue unto them.

4. Those Beasts that are hurtful unto Man, though they increase more, and no Man kill them, yet are fewer than those that are profitable unto Man.

5. The feeding of the young Ravens in the Nest, when the Dam forsaketh them.

6. The hatching of the Ostriches Egg.

7. The Lord hath disposed of the wild Beasts, that they go abroad in the night time to seek their Prey; and lye in their dens in the day time, that Men may go abroad to their work, *Psal. 104. 22, 23.*

8. God doth preserve his Church from the Devil and the Wicked; so that though they be stronger than it, yet they cannot hurt it.

*Object. 1. But it seemeth that the inequality holden in the government of Mexico should prove, that all things are not governed by the Lord, for the worst are richest oftentimes, and the best poor.*

His Government in all things whatsoever is good: For he is no less good in his Government than his Creation.

*Object. 2. If God do guide all things, we should have no Serpents and other noisome and hurtful things; no war, no sickness.*

They are the instruments and means of the execution of God's Justice and Vengeance upon Men that offend against him: in which respect the Prophet saith, *There is no evil in the City, which the Lord hath not done, Amos 3. 6.*

*Object. 3. How cometh it to pass then, if these be Instruments of Vengeance for sin, that they fall upon the Good, and rather upon them than upon the Wicked ?*

The most godly having the remnant of sin that dwelleth in their mortal Bodies, deserve everlasting condemnation; and therefore in this Life are subject to any of the plagues of God. As for that they are sharper handled oftentimes than the Wicked, it is to make trial of their patience, and to make shew

of the Graces he hath bestowed upon them, which he will have known: And that it may be assured that there is a judgment of the World to come, *2 Theff. 1.* wherein every one shall receive according to his doing in this Life, either Good or Evil.

Definition of  
God's Provi-  
dence.

*Having shewed that there is a Providence; declare now what it is?*

It is a temporary Action of God, whereby he moveth and directeth all things after the counsel of his own Will to their proper ends. Or thus; It is the second part of the execution of God's Decree, whereby he hath a continual care over all his Creatures, once made; *sustaining* and *governing* them, with all that belongeth unto them, and effectually disposing of them all to good ends, *Ephes. 1. 11. Rom. 11. 36. Zach. 4. 10. Prov. 15. 3. Jer. 23. 23. Psal. 139. 2.* and 119. 91.

*Why say you it is an Action?*

To distinguish it from the Attributes of God.

*Why say you that it is Temporary?*

To distinguish it from the eternal Decree of God.

*Why say you [whereby he moveth and directeth all things?]*

To shew first, that God is not idle in Heaven, as *Epicures* do dream.

2. That nothing can come to pass without the Providence of God.

*Why say you [after the Counsel?]*

To shew that God doth nothing unadvisedly and rashly: But useth, first, His Knowledge, whereby he perfectly understandeth all things. Secondly, His Wisdom, whereby he doth dispose all things being known.

*Why say you [of his own Will?]*

To shew, first, that God is not compelled to do any thing, but whatsoever he doth, he doth it voluntarily, without compulsion. Secondly, That the Lord in the dispensation and government of all things doth not follow the advice and counsel of any other; neither regardeth anything without himself.

*Why say you [to their proper ends?]*

To shew that the Lord doth not only govern things generally, but every thing particularly, together with their Properties, Qualities, Actions, Motions, and Inclinations.

*Is God's Providence then extended unto all his Creatures?*

Yea; unto all Persons, Things, Actions, Qualities, and Circumstances, how usual soever they seem to be: God exercising his Providence about all things in general, and every thing in particular; for not one Sparrow (whereof two are fold for a Farthing) falleth without the Providence of our Heavenly Father; not so much as a Hair off our Head, *Matth. 10. 29, 30.* no, (it may truly be said) not the Bristle of a Swine falleth without the Providence of God.

*But it seemeth a thing unworthy of God's great and infinite Majesty to deal and have a hand in small Matters; as for a King to look to the small Matters of his Household.*

No more than it is a disgrace to the Sun that shineth in the foulest places.

*How is that then to be understood that the Apostle saith, 1 Cor. 9. 9. [Hath God care for Oxen?]*

It is spoken only by way of comparison, having regard to the great care he hath of Men. For in respect he commanded that they should not muzzle the Mouth of the Ox that did tread out the Corn; by the care he hath of Oxen, he would shew that his care is much more for Men, especially for the Ministers of his Gospel.

*What other things be there, from which some do exclude the Providence of God?*

Things

- Things done by {
1. Necessity.
  2. Art.
  3. Nature.
  4. Fortune and Luck.
  5. Casualty and Chance.
  6. Destiny.
  7. Free Will.

*How manifold is necessity?*

Twofold. 1. Absolute Necessity, the contrary whereof cannot be.  
 2. Necessity with condition; which is such, as put down the Cause, the Effect followeth; but take away the Cause, the Effect ceaseth.

*How prove you that God hath a Government in things that come by Chance and Casualty?*

Prov. 16. 33. The Lots are cast in the Bosom; yet the issue of them and their event hang upon the Lord.

*Is there not then any Fortune or Chance of things in the World?*

Not in respect of God, (by whose appointment the very Hairs of our Heads are governed and numbred) but in respect of Man, that knoweth not future things, the Scripture useth such words to shew the suddenness and uncertainty of a thing, *Exod. 21. 13.* with *Deut. 19. 4, 5.* *Eccles. 9. 11.* *Luke 10. 31.*

*Do the Creatures, ever since the first six days, continue of themselves; being only governed of God?*

No. The Creation is after a manner still continued, in that all things are sustained by the same Power, whereby they were made. For God is not like a Builder, that is the cause only of the Making, and not of the Being of his Building: But he is such a Cause of Being to all Creatures, as the Sun is of Light unto the Day; so that without his continual working, all would return to nothing.

*What Proof have you of this continual working of God?*

Our Saviour saith, *John 5. 17.* *My Father worketh until this time, and I also work:* Meaning in continuance and preservation of all Creatures. *For in him we live, and move, and have our Being,* Acts 17. 28. And the Apostle testifieth, *Heb. 1. 2, 3.* That our Saviour Christ, by whom the World was made, beareth up all things, and upholdeth them in their Being, with the Word of his Power, or his mighty Word. Thus *Moses* teacheth how the Lord establisheth the continuance and preservation of all the Creatures in the World, both living, and void of Life, *Gen. 1.* So doth the Prophet also in *Psal. 104.* and *119. 91.*

*How doth God sustain all Creatures?*

Partly, *by the continuation of particulars:* Either for the whole time of this World, as Heaven and Heavenly Bodies, Earth and other Elements, &c. *2 Pet. 3. 4.* or for the time of Life allotted, as all Living Creatures, *Psal. 36. 6.* *Psal. 104. 27,* &c. Partly, *by propagation of Kind:* Whereby Creatures, even of shortest continuance, do successively abide unto the end of the World, *Gen. 7. 3.* and *8. 21, 22.*

*Thus God sustaineth and preserveth all that he hath made: How doth he govern them, and dispose of them?*

God ordereth all his Creatures according to his pleasure, *Dan. 4. 34, 35.* guiding and employing them, and their Natures, to those several ends and uses,

uses, whereby they may best serve unto his Glory, (*Psal.* 119. 91.) and the good of themselves and their fellow Creatures, especially of Man, (*Psal.* 8.) But he hath one general manner of Government belonging to all; and another special, which is proper to the principal Creatures.

*How doth God work in all Creatures generally?*

First, He doth move and stir up that Power which he hath given the Creature unto working.

Secondly, He doth assist, direct, and help it in working of that which is good.

Thirdly, He doth work together, and give Being unto that which is wrought.

*What are the principal Creatures you speak of?*

The reasonable Creatures, Angels and Men: Which were created like unto God, in a high estate of *Holiness* and *Happiness*, *Psal.* 8. 4, 5. and 103. 20. and 104. 4. *Luke* 2. 13. *Matth.* 25. 31.

*How cometh it to pass, that there is a particular kind of Government for the reasonable Creatures, above others?*

Because that they are Creatures of another Nature than the rest: Being not only acted and moved in one course, as the other are, but having a Power of understanding what doth concern them, and of moving themselves accordingly.

*What Government doth follow hereupon?*

That which is by teaching, and answerable fulfilling of that which is taught.

*How by teaching?*

By instructing, commanding, praising, forbidding, promising, threatening, and permitting.

*How by fulfilling?*

Especially by Blessing and Cursing.

*What is the manner of God's Providence?*

It is sometimes Ordinary, other times Extraordinary.

*What is the Ordinary course of God's working in his Providence?*

When he bringeth things to pass by usual means, and that course which he hath settled in Nature, *Esa.* 55. 10.

*What is Extraordinary?*

When he bringeth things to pass, either without means, or by means of themselves too weak; or beside the course of such Means, and course of Nature, which Works are usually called Miracles.

*May we indifferently expect God's extraordinary working, as we may his ordinary?*

No: Where ordinary Means may be had, we cannot look for an extraordinary Work.

*What do they that run unto the immediate and extraordinary Providence of God, without necessary occasion?*

They do tempt God.

*How many ways is God tempted?*

Two. First, By Distrust. Secondly, By Presumption.

*When is God tempted by Distrust?*

When Men think that God either cannot, or will not fulfil his Promises.

*When is God tempted with Presumption?*

When Men depend upon the immediate Providence of God, without any Warrant of the Word so to do.

*How many sorts of Men do thus tempt God?*

First,

First, They that do wastefully mis-spēnd their Goods.

Secondly, They that having received Gifts of Mind, and Strength of Body, do not use them in some lawful Calling for the maintenance of them, but do live idly.

Thirdly, They that make an Occupation of Dicing and Carding, and such like.

Fourthly, They that thrust themselves upon unnecessary Dangers.

Fifthly, They which take pains for the maintenance of their Bodies in this Life, but have no care of those things which belong to the Salvation of their Souls in the Life to come.

*What are the means by which God doth use to exercise his Providence ?*

Two : The first Passive ; the second Active.

*What call you passive Means ?*

Those, which, although the Lord doth use them, yet have no knowledge nor understanding to move or direct themselves, but are wholly moved and directed by God.

*What call you Active Means ?*

Those which although God useth, yet have Reason, Knowledge, and Understanding in themselves how to move or direct themselves: Such as are Men and Angels, whether they be good or Evil.

*Doth God work after the same manner by the Wicked, that he doth by the Godly ?*

No. For God worketh by the Wicked, but not in them: As for the Godly, he worketh not only by them, but also in them. Whereby it cometh to pass, that the Work of the Godly is acceptable unto God: But the Work of the Wicked is not acceptable, although they do the same thing which God doth.

*How can it be shewed out of the Scriptures, that God hath a Hand whereby he governeth even the Transgressor against his Holy Will ?*

Gen. 45. 8. It is expressly said, that God did send *Joseph* before into *Egypt*, and that his Brethren did not send him. Wherein God is said to have had a further and a stronger hand in his sending into *Egypt*, than his Brethren: And therefore it is manifest, that God did that well which the Patriarchs did sinfully,  
Gen. 50. 20.

Exod. 7. 3. God hardened *Pharaoh's* Heart.

2 Sam. 16. 10. It is said, that God had commanded *Shimei* to curse *David*.

2 Sam. 24. 1. God moved *David* to number the People.

2 Chron. 10. 15. It is said, that it was of God, that *Rehoboam* harkened not to the People.

1 Kings 22. 19, 20, 23. It is said, that the Devil was bidden of God, sitting in the Seat of his Righteous Judgment, to be a lying Spirit in the Mouths of the false Prophets.

Esa. 49. 14. *God mingled among them the Spirit of Error?*

Esa. 42. 24. *Who gave Jacob for a spoil? And Israel to the Robbers? Did not the Lord.*

Esa. 63. 17. *Why hast thou made us to err out of thy way, and hardened our Heart from thy fear?*

Rom. 1. 26. *God gave them up to vile Affections?*

2 Thess. 2. 11. *God sent them strong Delusions, &c.*

And to be content with one more testimony among many: Let us consider how the most vile and horrible Act that ever was done upon the Face of the Earth, the Lord God is said to have wrought most holily. For as *Judas*, the

Jews, and *Pilate*, are all said to have given Christ to Death: So the Father and Christ are said to have done the same, and that in the same words; though the manner and purpose are diverse, *Acts* 2. 23. and 4. 28. *Rom.* 8. 32.

*Did not God then suffer such things to be done?*

He suffereth indeed. Yet this is not an idle permission, as some imagine; but joined with a very Doing or Work of God; as in the crucifying of Christ; it is said that they did nothing, but that which the Hand of God had determined before, *Acts* 2. 23. and 3. 18. and 4. 28. For God is not only a bare Permitter of the evil Work, but a powerful Governor of it to his Glory, and an Affecter also of it, so far as it hath any good in it.

*But doth not this draw God to some strain of Sin, from which he is most free, as being that which he punisheth?*

In no wise. For that which is Evil hath some respect of Goodness with God. First, As it were a meer Action; God being the Author of every Action, *Acts* 17. 28. But the Devil and our Concupiscence, of the Evil in it. As he that rideth upon a lame Horse, causeth him to stir, but is not the cause of his halting.

Secondly, As it is the Punishment of Sin. For Punishment is accounted a moral Good, in that it is the part of a Just Judge to punish Sin. And thus God willeth the sin of the Wicked for their Punishment; without sin in himself, *Rom.* 1. 26.

Thirdly, As it is a Chastisement, a Trial of one's Faith, as Martyrdom; or Propitiation for Sin; as the Death and Passion of Christ, *Acts* 2. 23. and 4. 27, 28. where although the giving of Christ to the Death of the Cross be attributed in the same words to God and Christ, to *Judas*, *Pilate*, and the Jews: Yet diversly, and in several respects, they are declared to meet in one and the same Action; whereby there appeareth no less difference between God and Christ's Purpose, and theirs, than between Light and Darkness.

*Declare how God can have a hand in these things, and yet be free from Sin.*

He is a cunning Workman, which with an ill Tool will work cunningly. And as a most excellent Apothecary maketh a Medicine of the mixture of Poyson in it, which is not yet Poysonous, but rather Medicinal; so the Lord in guiding and managing the Poyson of Sin, draweth Treacle from the sins of Men, as it were Poyson, in such sort as they turn to his Glory and Good of his Church: And cannot be charged with Sin, no more than the Apothecary with Poysoning, in so ordering the Poyson, as it doth the contrary, by his skill, unto that which by nature it would do. And as in Painting, the black Colour giveth grace to other beautiful Colours, in making them shew better: So it is in this Work of God, in which the sin and untruth of Men, (as by a black and dark Colour) causeth the Truth and Righteousness of God (as the white) to be more commended, and to appear better.

*But how are these Actions of the Wicked discerned from the Work of God in them?*

First, By the Cause from whence the Action cometh. For *Joseph's* Brethren of Envy sent him into *Egypt*, but God in Mercy. *Shimei* cursed *David* of Malice; but God of Justice against *David's* Murder and Adultery. *Reboboam* out of the unadvisedness of his Heart refused the request of his People; but God by his wife *Counsel* did so dispose of it. The Devil from Hate to *Abab* was a lying Spirit in the Mouth of all his Prophets; but God in Justice against his Idolatry. *Pilate* of Ambition and Fear, the Jews of malicious



Envy and Ignorance, *Judas* of Covetousness; but God of Love gave Christ, and Christ himself in Obedience to his Father: And therefore that Action, as it was from God and Christ, was most Just and Righteous; as from the other, most Wretched and Abominable.

Secondly, By the End whither they tend. For *Joseph's* Brethren sent him, to the end he should not come to the honour he foretold out of his Dream: But God sent him to provide for his Church, and to fulfil that which was foretold. *Shimei* cursed, to drive *David* to despair: But God directed him for exercise of *David's* Patience. The Devil lied in the false Prophets, to ruin *Abab*: But God justly to punish him for his Idolatry. *Rehoboam*, to satisfy the desire of his young beardless Counsellors: But God to perform the Word that he had spoken by his Prophet. *Pilate* to please the People, and to keep his credit with *Cesar*: *Judas* for obtaining of the Money he desired; and the Jews, that our Saviour Christ should not reign over them: But God and Christ to save his People.

*But were it not better to say, That these things were done by God's Permission, rather than by his Providence and Government; thereby to avoid an absurdity in Divinity, that God is the Author of Evil?*

It is most truly said, that God is not the Author of Sin, whereof he is the Revenger; and also that it is done by God's Permission: But it is not an idle Permission, separated from the Providence and Government of God; and therefore a distinction of God's Permission, separated from his Government of Sin, is not good: Especially considering, that the distinction of such a Permission doth not defend the Justice of God, for the which it was devised.

*How may that appear?*

If he permit sin, he doth it against or with his Will. If he do it against his Will, then is he not Almighty; as one that cannot let that he would not have done. If with his Will; how can his Justice be defended, if there were not some good thing, for which he doth willingly permit it? For if a Captain should willingly suffer his Soldiers to be murdered when he might hinder the slaughter of them; although he put no hand to the Murder, he is not therefore excusable and free from the Blood of his Soldiers.

*What else can be alledged against the Permission, that is separated from the Government of the Providence?*

For that by this means God should be spoiled of the greatest part of the Government of the World: Seeing the greatest part and most of the World are wicked, all whose Actions are (as they themselves are) wicked.

*Is there yet any other matter against this distinction?*

If in that God doth permit sin, he should have no hand in guiding and governing it; then he should have no hand in guiding and governing of good things: For as it is said, that he permitteth sin, so it is also said, that he permitteth the good, *Heb. 6. 2.*

*What Use is to be made of the Doctrine of God's Providence?*

First, As in the Creation, so in the Continuation, Preservation, and Government of all things, the Power, Wisdom, and Goodness of the only True God is set forth. And therefore in all things he is to be glorified, (*Rom. 11. 36.*) yea, even in the sins of Men, for the Good things he draweth forth from their Evil.

Secondly, The consideration of this, that nothing can come to pass without the Providence of God, should move us to fear God, and make us afraid to commit any sin; far otherwise than the Wicked conclude: Who upon that,

The Uses of the Doctrine of God's Providence.

I.

2.

that

that it is taught that all things come to pass by the Providence of God, according to that he hath decreed, (*Eccles. 3. 11, 14.*) would conclude, that then a Man may give himself liberty to do any thing, considering that it must needs be executed that God hath decreed.

3. Thirdly, We must banish all slavish fear out of our hearts; knowing that nothing can come to pass without the Providence of God.

4. Fourthly, This should breed thankfulness to God in prosperity, and in all things that come unto us according to our desire. Whatsoever Blessing we receive, we must acknowledge it to come from God, and give him the praise and glory, (*Rom. 11. 36.*) not sacrifice to our own Nets, (*Hab. 1. 16.*) or stay our minds in the Instruments thereof, without looking up to him by whose special Providence and Government we obtain our desires.

5. Fifthly, This should cause humility under the Hand of God, when things come otherwise than we desire.

6. Sixthly, In Adversity we should patiently suffer whatsoever affliction the Lord layeth upon us. For this consideration hath wrought patience in God's Servants; *It is the Lord, let him do what pleaseth him,* 1 Sam. 3. 18.

7. Seventhly, We must mark and observe the Providence of God in former times; that thereby we may gather Arguments of his Goodness unto us in the time to come.

*Having thus spoken generally of the Providence of God: We are now to descend unto the special consideration of that which doth concern the principal Creatures; upon whom God hath declared the glory of his Mercy and Justice. And first to begin with Angels: Shew how they are upheld in their Being.*

Of God's special Providence concerning Angels.

They are all sustained by the Power of God, so that they shall never die, or return to nothing, *Luke 20. 36.*

*How doth God dispose of them?*

First, Concerning their *everlasting Condition*: They had a Law given them in their Creation, which the Elect observe, and are established in their Perfection; but the Reprobate sinning against it, have lost their first Estate, and are reserved unto further Judgment. For all being by God created good at the first, (*Gen. 1. 31.*) some continued in humility and obedience, according to that dignity in which they were created: Others continued not in the truth, (*Job. 8. 44.*) and so kept not their beginning or excellency, (*Jude, v. 6.*) in which they were created of God, (by whom nothing could be made but Good) but transgressed and fell from it, by their sin and wickedness becoming Devils.

Secondly, For their *Employment*: God useth them all, both Good and Evil Angels, as his Servants and Ministers, for the accomplishment of his Will and Work, *Job 1. 6.*

*How are the Good Angels called in Scripture?*

Of the Good Angels.

1. *Elohim*, or Gods; for their Excellency and Power, *Psal. 8. 5.* compared with *Heb. 2. 7. Psal. 97. 7.* with *Heb. 1. 6.*

2. Sons of God, *Job 1. 6.*

3. Angels of Light, *2. Cor. 11. 14.*

4. Elect Angels, *1 Tim. 5. 21.*

5. Heavenly Soldiers, *Luke 2. 13.*

6. Men of God; for their Office.

7. Principalities, and Powers, and Dominions.

8. Seraphims, and a flame of Fire; for their swift Zeal to do God's Will.

9. *Cherubims*, from the form of young Men, wherein they appeared.

*Have they any proper Names ?*

Some, for our capacity have Names given unto them ; as *Gabriel*, &c.

*How many are there of them ?*

They be innumerable, *Heb.* 12. 22. *Dan.* 7. 10. *Pfal.* 68. 17.

*Are there divers degrees of Angels ?*

Yes ; for some are Principalities, and Powers, and Dominions, and Thrones, *Col.* 1. 16. Which sheweth not so much a difference in Nature, as a diverse employment in Office. But what those degrees are, it is not observed out of Scripture, and therefore to us is unknown.

*With what Properties are these Angels especially endued ?*

They are endued with Wisdom, Holiness, Willingness to put in execution the Will of God, Power, Swiftnes, Industry, Glory, &c. far above any Man.

*What measure of Knowledge have they ?*

Very great, in comparison of Man ; both by creation, and otherwise.

*How many sorts be there of their Knowledge ?*

Three. First, Natural, which God endued them with at their creation, far above any Man, as their Nature is more Heavenly.

Secondly, Experimental, which they do mark and observe far more carefully than Man, in God's Government of the World, and out of all Creatures, *Ephes.* 3. 10. *Luke* 15. 10.

Thirdly, Divine, of which God informeth them, according to the several Matters that he sendeth them about : And hereby they know things to come, as *Dan.* 9. the Angel telleth before to *Daniel* the time of Christ's death : and *Mat.* 1. God telleth the Angel *Joseph's* thoughts.

*Do not Angels of themselves know the thoughts of Men ?*

No : For that is God's Property only, *1 Kings* 8. 39. *2 Chron.* 6. 30. But in some Messages, (as that in the first of *Matthew*) God is pleased to manifest it unto them.

*Have they not knowledge then of all things done here upon Earth ?*

No : For all things are only known to God alone, *Heb.* 4. 13. yet they know the Matters of those Men and Places where God appointeth them a Message : As *Cornelius* his Alms, *Acts* 10. 4. and the uncomeliness of Women in the Congregation where they are, *1 Cor.* 11. 10.

*Can the Good Angels fall at any time ?*

No : God hath confirmed them in their well-being, that they might never fall by sin from their first blessed Estate, *Mat.* 18. 10.

*Whence cometh this ?*

Not from their own Nature, (which was subject to mutability) but from God's Mercy. For seeing those Angels are Elect of God, *1 Tim.* 5. 21. it followeth of necessity that they are kept and upholden only by his Grace and Mercy, whereupon his Election is grounded.

*Now for the employment of these Angels ; what are you to note therein ?*

Their Apparitions, and the Offices which they perform.

*In how many sorts have Angels appeared ?*

In as divers as it pleased God to send them ; but especially in two ; namely, in Visions or true Bodies.

*What mean you by Visions ?*

Their appearing in some extraordinary sort to the Mind and inward Senses : either in the Night by Dreams, as to *Joseph*, *Mat.* 2. 13. or in the Day by some strange Shews, as they did to the Prophets, *Zach.* 2. 3.

*How manifold was their Apparition in Body ?*

In the true Bodies, either of Men or of other Creatures.

*What Examples have you of their Apparition in the Bodies of Men?*

*Gen. 19. 1.* Two Angels (beside Christ) appeared to *Abraham*. So did two likewise to the Apostles, *Acts 1. 10.* and *Gabriel* to the Virgin *Mary*, *Luke 1. 26.*

*Were these the Bodies of living Men, who had Souls; or Bodies created upon occasion?*

They were Bodies extraordinarily created upon that occasion by God, having no Souls but the Angels to give them motion; and after were dissolved by God to nothing, having neither Birth nor Burial.

*Did they move from place to place in these Bodies?*

Yes: And did many other Actions proper to Man. The Angels appearing to *Abraham* did truly eat and drink, though without need: The Angels did truly speak, and touch *Lot*, pulling him. But these Actions were done by them in an extraordinary speediness and manner; more than any Man can do.

*Have Angels ever appeared in the Bodies of other Creatures?*

Yes: For therefore they are called Cherubims; of Creatures that have Wings; Satan spoke in the Body of a Serpent to *Evab*: And so to the Heathen in sundry other Creatures.

*With what feeling did the Godly find the Apparition of Angels?*

Many times with great fear and terror, (as may be seen in *Dan. 7. 28.* and *10. 7, 8, 9, 16, 17.*) which was caused by the small glimpse of Glory that God vouchsafed to them, which Man for his sin could not bear.

*What learn you by that?*

To know our misery and corruption; and that in comparison of God's appearing, we should be ready to turn to Dust.

*How many are the Offices the Good Angels perform?*

Twofold: First, In respect of God. Secondly, In respect of the Creatures.

*How many are their Duties concerning God?*

- Three: 1. They do continually praise and glorify God in Heaven.  
2. They do always wait upon the Lord their God in Heaven, to expect what he would have them do.  
3. They knowing his Will, do put it in execution.

*How manifold are their Duties concerning the Creatures?*

Twofold: either general, in respect of all the Creatures; or special, in respect of Man.

*What is the general Duty?*

That they are the Instruments and Ministers of God for the Administration and Government of the whole World.

*What are the Offices which they perform towards Man?*

They are either in this Life, or in the Life to come.

*How manifold are the Offices which they perform towards Man in this Life?*

Twofold: Either such as respect the Godly, the procuring of whose Good is their special Calling, (*Heb. 1. 14. Mat. 4. 11. Psal. 104. 4.*) or such as respect the Wicked.

*How many Good Angels hath every one attending upon him in this Life? hath he one only, or hath he many?*

That is as the Glory of God and the necessity of the Saints requireth, sometimes there do many attend upon one, and sometimes one upon many.

*What are the good Offices which the Angels perform towards the Godly in this Life?*

They are used as Instruments; 1. To bestow good things upon them.  
2. To keep them from Evil.

*How manifold are those good things, which by the Ministry of the Angels are bestowed upon the Godly?*

They are partly concerning the Body, partly the Soul.

*What are the Good things that concern the Body?*

1. They are used as Instruments to bestow things needful for the Preservation of it: And to bring necessary Helps to Men in their Distress; as to *Elias* and *Hagar*.

2. They are appointed of God to be as a Guard and Garrison unto his Children, to comfort and defend them walking in their lawful Callings, *Psal.* 34. 7. & 91. 11.

3. They give an happy Success to them in the good things they go about, *Gen.* 24. 7, 40.

4. They are appointed as Watchmen over the Saints; that by their Presence they might keep their Bodies in Shamefastness, Holiness and Purity, *1 Cor.* 11. 10.

*What are the good things of the Soul, which the Lord doth bestow upon the Saints by the Ministry of the Good Angels?*

1. To reveal the Will of God to them; and to inform them in things which he would have done, *Acts* 10. 5.

2. To stir up good Motions in their Hearts.

3. To comfort them in Sorrow: As *Christ* was comforted being distressed in Soul, *Luke* 22. 43. and *Paul*, *Acts* 27. 23, 24.

4. To rejoice at the Conversion of the Saints, *Luke* 15. 10.

*How manifold are the Evil things from which the Good Angels do keep the Godly?*

They likewise do partly concern the Body, partly the Soul.

*What are the Evils of the Body?*

They are either without, or within us.

*From what Evils without us are we preserved by the Ministry of the Angels?*

1. From those Dangers that one Man bringeth upon another.

2. From those that they are subject unto, by reason of wild Beasts.

3. From those Evils whereunto we are subject by reason of other Creatures without Life.

4. They do not only preserve the Bodies of the Saints; but also all things that are theirs; as their Goods, Wife, Children, and Families.

*What are the Evils within us, from which the Angels do keep us?*

First, Sickness. Secondly, Famine. Thirdly, Death.

*What are the Evils of the Soul, from which the Angels do keep us?*

From Sins, and that two ways. 1. By their continual Presence.

2. By their Power.

*What are the Actions which the Good Angels perform towards Wicked Men in this Life?*

1. They restrain and hinder them from many wicked things which they would bring to pass.

2. They execute Judgments upon the Wicked, and punish them for their sins committed, *2 Kings* 19. 35. *Gen.* 19. 11.

*What are the Offices which the Good Angels are to perform towards Man after this Life?*

First, They carry the Souls of the Godly, being separated from the Body, with comfort into Heaven, (as *Lazarus*, Luke 16. 22.) and thrust the Wicked into Hell.

Secondly, They wait upon Christ at the Day of Judgment, to gather all the Faithful unto him, and to separate the Wicked from among them, (*Mat.* 13. 41. & 24. 31.) and to rejoice at the Sentence which he shall give.

*Are we not to worship the Blessed Angels for the good Offices which they perform towards Man, and to pray unto them?*

Not in any Case: For,

1. They themselves refuse it, *Rev.* 19. 10. & 22. 9.
2. They are but God's Messengers, and our fellow Brethren.
3. God is only to be worshipped, *Judges* 13. 16. *Mat.* 4. 10. *Col.* 2. 18.

Of the Evil  
Angels.

*Thus much concerning the Good Angels: What are you to know concerning the Evil Ones?*

First, Their Sin or Fall. Secondly, The evil Offices they perform.

*How many things are we to consider in their Fall?*

Two: 1. The Manner. 2. The Backsliding it self.

*What must be considered in the manner?*

Four things.

1. They were created, though Good, yet mutable; so as they might fall.
2. Being created mutable, they were tryed, whether they would fall or not.
3. Being tryed, they were forsaken of God, and left to themselves.
4. Being left to themselves, they committed all Sin even with Greediness.

*How many things must be considered in the Fall it self?*

Three. 1. From whence they fell. 2. Whereinto they fell. 3. The Punishment God laid upon them for their Fall.

*From whence fell they?*

First, From their Innocency, and Estate which God had set them in, *Job* 4. 18. *John* 8. 44. 2 *Pet.* 2. 4. *Jude* v. 6.

Secondly, From God; and thereby from Fulness of Joy, and Perfection of Happiness.

*Whereinto fell they?*

God suffered them voluntarily and maliciously, without any outward Temptation, to fall into that unpardonable Sin of Apostasie; and into the most grievous Sins that could be committed.

*What was the principal Sin that the Angels committed?*

Howsoever some think it was Pride, abusing the place of *Isa.* 14. 13, 14. which is meant of the King of *Babylon*; others Envy towards Man, out of *Wisdom* 2. 24. others Lying, out of *John* 8. 44. yet it comprehended all these and more too; being an utter falling away from God, and that holy standing God placed them in, especially to minister for Man's good.

*How cometh it to pass that the Fall of Angels is without hope of Restitution; since Man is recovered after his Fall?*

The Devil committed the Sin against the Holy Ghost, (*Mat.* 12. 31. 1 *John* 5. 16.) sinning wilfully and maliciously; which is proved by his continual dealing against God: And therefore he shall never be restored.

*Were there many Angels that did thus fall?*

Yes: As appeareth by *Rev.* 12. 7. & *Luke* 8. 30. where a Legion possessed one Man.

What.

*What Punishments were laid upon the Angels for their fall?*

First, The fearful Corruption of their Nature from their first Integrity, and loss of God's Image; so that they can never repent.

Secondly, The casting of them out from the Glory of Heaven; and the want of the comfortable Presence of God for evermore, 2 *Pct.* 2. 4.

Thirdly, A Grief and Vexation at the Prosperity of the Saints.

Fourthly, A Limitation of their Power, that they cannot do what hurt they would.

Fifthly, Horror and Fear of the Judgment of the Great Day; whereunto they are reserved in everlasting Chains under Darknefs, 2 *Pct.* 2. 4. *Jude* v. 6.

Sixthly, A more heavy Torment after the Day of Judgment in Hell Fire; where they are to feel the infinite Wrath of God, World without end, *Mat.* 8. 29. *Luke* 8. 31. *Mat.* 25. 41. *Apoc.* 20. 10.

*Can the Devil work Miracles, and tell things to come?*

No: But God only, *Mat.* 4. 3. *Esa.* 41. 23.

*What Power have they to hurt Man?*

They have no more Power than is under Nature, (for above Nature they cannot work); and yet they can do nothing by that Power, but what GOD appointeth; not so much as the entering into Hogs, *Mat.* 8. 31.

*How are they effected towards Man?*

Very maliciously: As their several Names given them do declare.

*What be those Names?*

First, Satan, because they mortally hate Men.

Secondly, Devil: Because they slanderously accuse them to God and Man, *Job* 1. 11. & 2. 5. *Rev.* 12. 10.

Thirdly, The Old Serpent: For their subtile Temptation.

Fourthly, The Great Dragon: For their destroying of Man, *Rev.* 12. 9.

*How many of them do attend upon every Man?*

Sometimes many upon one, and one upon many.

*What be the Evil Offices they perform against Man?*

Some are common to the Godly with the Wicked; others are proper to the Wicked alone.

*Have they a like Power over the Godly and the Wicked?*

No. For though God permitteth them often to try and exercise the Godly, (2 *Sam.* 24. 1. compared with 1 *Chron.* 21. 1. *Ephes.* 6. 12.) both in Body and Mind, (as Satan afflicted *Job* both outwardly with grievous Sores, and inwardly with Dreams and Visions; and sometimes buffeted *Paul*, 2 *Cor.* 12. 7. sometimes hindred him from his Journies, 1 *Thess.* 2. 18.) yet he limiteth them, and turneth their malice to the good of his Children, *Luke* 22. 31.

*How manifold are the evil Offices which they perform in common against the Godly and the Wicked?*

Two-fold: Either such as respect the Body, and the things belonging thereunto; or such as respect the Soul.

*How do they hurt the Body, or the things belonging to the Body?*

They are permitted by God for Man's Sin; *First*, To hurt the Creatures that should serve for our Comfort; as the Air, Seas, Trees, &c. *Rev.* 7. 2, 3. *Secondly*, To abuse the Bodies both of Men and Beasts, for the effecting of their wicked Purposes. *Thirdly*, To delude the Senses; making Men to believe things to be such as they are not. As the Devil did by *Jannes* and *Jambres* in *Egypt*, and by the Witch of *Endor*. *Fourthly*, To inflict Sicknefs and Evils upon the Bodies of Men, and to torment and pain them; as in *Job*

*The Names in respect of malice to*

and the *Egyptians*. *Fifthly*, To strike some dumb. *Sixthly*, To enter into, and really to possess the Bodies of Men, using them in most fearful sort, as *Matth.* 8. 16. & 12. 28. *Seventhly*, To inflict Death upon the Bodies both of Men and Beasts.

*How do they hurt the Soul?*

*First*, By depriving some of the use of their Reason; by Frenzy and Madness. *Secondly*, By troubling and tormenting some with Grief and Vexation of Soul. *Thirdly*, By abusing some with Passions and Melancholy Fits, as *Saul*, 1 *Sam.* 16. 14. *Fourthly*, By seducing others, 1 *Kings* 22. 21, 22. 2 *Cor.* 4. 4. *Fifthly*, By manifold and fearful Temptations to Sin and Wickedness. *Sixthly*, By prevailing in some Temptations. *Seventhly*, By accusing before God those with whom they have so prevailed. *Eighthly*, By hindring Men from doing good things.

*What are the Offices of Evil Angels, that respect the Wicked alone?*

*First*, To Rule and Reign in them without Controulment, and to finish his Work in them. *Secondly*, To murder and destroy them in this World, and in the World to come, to torment Soul and Body in Hell for ever.

*What Use are we to make of this Doctrine concerning the Evil Angels?*

Uses of the  
Doctrine con-  
cerning Evil  
Angels.

*First*, To tremble at the Lord's Severity towards them, 2 *Pet.* 2. 4. and to be thankful for his Bounty and Mercies towards our selves, *Psal.* 8. 1, 4, 5. *Ephes.* 1. 3, 4.

*Secondly*, To remember that if God spared not those Spiritual Creatures sinning against him; neither will he spare us rebelling against his Majesty, 2 *Pet.* 2. 4.

*Thirdly*, To fear to offend God, that hath such Messengers to send at his Command.

*Fourthly*, To learn to arm our selves with the Shield of Faith and Fear of God; since we have such great Enemies to fight against, *Ephes.* 6. 11. 1 *Pet.* 5. 9.

*Fifthly*, To be comforted, that though the Devil be powerful and most malicious against us, yet Christ hath broken his Head, *Gen.* 3. 15. and at last will tread Satan under our feet, *Rom.* 16. 20.

*Thus much of the Providence that concerneth Angels:*

*Shew now how God doth deal with Man.*

Of God's par-  
ticular Provi-  
dence over  
Man.

As with that Creature in whom, above all other, he intendeth to set forth the Glory of his Wisdom, Power, Justice, and Mercy, *Prov.* 8. 31. *Psal.* 8. 3, &c. and therefore the Scriptures do most plentifully declare the dealing of God with Man, both in the time of this World, and for ever hereafter.

*How is Man upheld in his Being?*

Two Ways.

*First*, As all other bodily Creatures: *Partly* by Maintenance of every Man's Life here on Earth, for the time allotted by God himself, *Acts* 17. 28. *Psal.* 36. 6. *Partly*, by Propagation of Kind, unto the end of the World, through the Blessing of Procreation, *Gen.* 1. 28. *Eccles.* 1. 4.

*Secondly*, As Angels after a sort; God so providing, that though the Body of Man returneth to the Earth from whence it was taken, yet the Soul perisheth not, but returneth to God that gave it, (*Eccles.* 12. 7.) yea, that the same Body also, and every part thereof, is preserved in the Grave, and shall be joined intire to the Soul at the last Day, so to continue for ever, *Job* 16. 26, 27.

*How manifold is the State wherein Man is to be considered?*



Three-fold. First, The State of Innocency; commonly had and lost of all Mankind, both Elect and Reprobate, without difference, *Ecclesl. 7. 29.*

Secondly, The State of Corruption and Misery; seizing on all Men naturally, but abiding without Recovery only on the Reprobate, *Rom. 3. 23.*

Thirdly, The State of Redemption; proper to the Elect, *1 Pet. 2. 9. Psal. 130. 8.* All which do make way unto that final and everlasting Estate of Honour or Dishonour, fore-appointed unto all Men; beginning at the end of this Life, perfected at the Day of Judgment, and continuing for ever in the World to come. And thus touching this part of God's Providence, the Scriptures do reach us, both the Benefits of God bestowed upon Man before his Fall; and likewise his Justice and Mercy towards him after his Fall. His Justice upon the Reprobate, who are left without hope of Restitution, and reserved together with the Devils unto everlasting Punishment, *Mat. 25. 41. Rev. 20. 10, 15.* His Mercy upon the Elect, who notwithstanding their Fall are restored again by Grace, *Gen. 3. 15.*

*Is it not likely, that all the visible World, together with Men, is fallen with hope of Restitution by Mercy?*

Yes. For it standeth well with the Justice of God, that seeing the Visible World was made for the use of Man, (*Gen. 2.*) that with the Fall of Man it should be punished, (*Gen. 3. 17, 18.*) and with his raising up again be restored, *Rom. 8. 20, 21, 22.*

*What is that special Order of Government which God useth towards Mankind in this World, and in the World to come?*

In this World he ordereth them according to the Tenor of a Two-fold Covenant; in the World to come, according to the Sentence of a Two-fold Judgment.

*What understand you by a Covenant?*

An Agreement which it pleaseth Almighty God to enter into with Man, concerning his everlasting Condition.

*What be the Parts of this Agreement?*

Two: The one is the Covenant that God maketh with us; the other is the Covenant that we make with God. The Sum of the former is, that he will be our God: Of the latter, that we will be his People, *Jer. 31. 33.*

*What gather you from the former?*

The Sir name of God, as it is in divers Places of Scripture, and namely, *Exod. 3. 15.* where it is said, *The Lord God of your Fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, hath sent me unto you; this is my Name for ever, and this is my Memorial unto all Generations.* From whence we may observe the singular Glory and Privilege of God's People, in that God is content to take his Sir name of them, *Heb. 11. 16.*

*Why is this Sir name added?*

For that it is a fearful thing, to think of the proper Name of God alone, unless this be added to it; whereby he declareth his Love and Kindness to us.

*What gather you from the latter?*

That Man standeth bound by these Covenants of Agreement, to perform that Duty which God requireth at his hands.

*How many such Covenants be there?*

Two. First, The Law, or Covenant of Works. Secondly, The Free Promise, or Covenant of Grace; which from the coming of Christ is called the Gospel, *Rom. 10. 5, 6. Gal. 3. 11, 12.*

Of the Covenant between God and Man.

1. Covenant  
of Works.

*Which of them was first?*

The Law. For it was given to *Adam* in his Integrity; when the Promise of Grace was hidden in God.

*How so, since it is said that the Law was not before Moses?*

That is to be understood of the Law, as it was written by *Moses*, and ingraven in Tables of Stone by the Finger of God: Otherwise the same Law (for the substance thereof) was imprinted in the beginning in the Hearts of our first Parents; and therefore it is called the Law of Nature, *Rom. 2. 14.*

*How was this Law given unto Adam in the beginning?*

It was chiefly written in his *Heart* at his Creation, and partly also uttered to his *Ear* in Paradise. For unto him was given both to know Good, and also to be inclined thereunto, with Ability to perform it. There was something likewise outwardly revealed, as his Duty to God, in the Sanctification of the Sabbath; to his Neighbour, in Institution of the Marriage; and to himself, in his daily working about the Garden.

*How doth it appear that the Substance of the Moral Law was written in the Hearts of Adam and Eve?*

First, By the effect of it in them both; who immediately after their Fall, were forced by the only Guilt of Conscience (not yet otherwise charged) to hide themselves from God's Presence, *Gen. 3. 8.*

Secondly, By the remainders thereof in all Mankind; who even without the Law, are by the Light of Nature a Law unto themselves, *Gen. 4. 6. Rom. 2. 14, 15.*

*How hath the Moral Law been delivered since the Fall?*

The Sum thereof was comprised in ten Words, (*Exod. 34. 28. Deut. 4. 13.*) commonly called the Decalogue or Ten Commandments; solemnly published and engraven in Table of Stone by God himself, (*Deut. 4. 14. & 10. 4.*) Afterwards the same was more fully delivered in the Books of Holy Scripture, and so committed to the Church for all Ages, as the Royal Law for Direction of our Obedience to God our King, (*James 1. 8.*) and for the Discovery of Sin, and the Punishment due thereto, *Deut. 27. 26. Rom. 1. 31. & 3. 20.*

*What then doth the Law now require of us?*

All such Duties as were required of *Adam* in his Innocency, (*Levit. 18. 5.*) and all such as are required since by reason of his Fall, (*Deut. 17. 26.*) binding us to eternal Death for our least defect therein.

*Declare now out of that which hath been said, what the Covenant of Works is?*

It is a Conditional Covenant between God and Man, whereby on the one side God commandeth the Perfection of Godliness and Righteousness, and promiseth that he will be our God, if we keep all his Commandments; and on the other side, Man bindeth himself to perform intire and perfect Obedience to God's Law, by that Strength wherewith God hath indued him by the Nature of his first Creation.

*What was done in this Covenant on God's part?*

There was his Law, backed with Promises and Threatnings; and unto them were added outward Seals.

*What was the Sum of this Law?*

Do this, and thou shalt live: If thou dost it not, thou shalt die the Death.

*What is meant by, Do this?*

Keep all my Commandments in Thought, Word, and Deed.

*What*

*What is meant by Life, promised to those that should keep all the Commandments?*

The Reward of Blessedness and Everlasting Life, *Levit. 18. 5. Luk. 10. 28.*

*What is meant by Death threatened to those that should transgress?*

In this World the Curse of God, and Death, with manifold Miseries both of Body and Soul: And (where this Curse is not taken away) Everlasting Death both of Body and Soul in the World to come, *Deut. 27. 26. & 29. 19, 20. & 32. 22. Levit. 26. Deut. 28.*

*What were the outward Seals added hereunto?*

The two Trees, planted by God for that purpose in the midst of the Garden, *Gen. 2. 9. & 3. 3.* that *Adam* before and in the sight of them might resort to some special place to serve God in, and might by the Sight of them be put in mind of those things whereof they were Signs and Seals.

*What did the Tree of Life serve for?*

It sealed up Happiness, Life, and Glory unto Man, upon condition of Obedience: That by tasting thereof (which no doubt, according to the manner of Sacramental Signs, was a Tree of marvellous Comfort and Restoring) he might be assured he should live in Paradise for ever, if he stood obedient unto God's Commandments, *Gen. 2. 9. Prov. 3. 18. Rev. 2. 7.*

*Was this Tree able to give Everlasting Life to Man? Or otherwise, why did God after the Fall shut Man from it?*

It was no more able to give Everlasting Life, than the bodily eating of any other Sacrament: But *Adam* having by Sin lost that which was signified hereby, God would have him debarred from the use of the Sacrament.

*What did the Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil serve for?*

Both for Tryal of Obedience, and also for a warning of their Mutability, and of what would follow upon Sin; so sealing Death and Damnation in case of Disobedience. Not as though the Tree was able to give any Knowledge: But that by tasting of it contrary to God's Command, they should have experimental Knowledge of *Evil* in themselves, which before they had of *Good* only; and by woful Experience should learn, what difference there was between knowing and serving God in their Integrity, and being ignorant of him by their Sin, *Gen. 2. 17.*

*What was done in this Covenant on Man's part?*

Man did promise by that Power which he had received, to keep the whole Law; binding himself over to Punishment in case he did not obey.

*In what State is Man to be considered, under this Covenant?*

In a Two-fold State. 1. Of Innocency. 2. Of Corruption and Misery.

*What things are you to note in the Innocent Estate of Man?*

First, The Place where he was seated. Secondly, The happy and glorious Estate he there enjoyed both in Soul and Body.

*Where did God place Man when he created him?*

In a most glorious, pleasant and comfortable Garden; which is called Paradise, or the Garden of *Eden* from the Pleasantness, *Gen. 2. 8.*

*What doth the Scripture teach concerning it?*

The Place where it was, and the Commodities thereof.

*Where, and in what part of the World was it?*

In *Asia* near the meeting of *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, those two famous Rivers.

*What Commodities had it?*

All the principal Creatures of God did adorn it: And therefore it is said to be more extraordinary than the rest of the World, planted by God. There are:

The State of Man in the time of his Innocency.

are fet down alfo the precious Stones thereof, under the Sardonyx; pure Metals, under the Gold; precious Woods under the Bdellium; and fo all other living Things and growing Creatures; that it might be, as it were, a Shop furnished for Man; to see in, and learn by it God's Wifdom, Power and Majefty.

*Doth this place now continue?*

The Place remaineth; but the Beauty and Commodities be partly by the Flood, partly by Man's Sin (for which the whole Earth is curfed) almoft abolifhed; though (as may be obferved out of good Authors) it is a very fruitful Place ftill.

*What Happinefs did Man enjoy thus placed in Paradiſe?*

It was partly Inward, partly Outward.

*Wherein did the Inward appear?*

Firft, In his wonderful Knowledge, whereby he made ufe of all the Creatures of God, as the greateft Philoſopher that ever was.

Secondly, In that Holy and Heavenly Image of God, of which *Adam* had the Uſe and Comfort before his Fall: It ſhining in him without Tainture or Blemifh, and he thereby being without all Sin, or Punifhment of Sin.

Thirdly, In the full Fruition and Affurance of the favourable and blifsful Prefence of his Creator, [*Mat. 5. 8. Pſal. 17. 15.*] and his Heavenly Company and Conference with God, without all Fear, as a Subject with his Prince, (*Gen. 3. 8.*)

Fourthly, In his joyful ſerving God; together with abſolute Contentment in himſelf, (*Gen. 2. 25.*)

*Wherein did the Outward appear?*

Firft, In having ſo comely, perfect and glorious a Body, in which there was no Infirmity, Pain, nor Shame, though naked, (*Gen. 2. 25.*)

Secondly, In his Dominion over all the Creatures, that ſubmitted themſelves, and did Service unto him: To whom alfo as their Lord, he gave their Original Names, *Gen. 2. 19, 20.*

Thirdly, In the comfortable State and Senſe, not of Paradiſe alone, but of all the World round about him; having neither Storm, Winter, nor Extremity in any Creature.

*What Employment had Man in this Eſtate?*

A Two fold Employment: The firft Outward, to till and drefs the Garden, *Gen. 2. 15.* the other Spiritual, to worſhip and ſerve God his Creator, and to procure his own Everlaſting Bleſſednefs; whereto he was fitted with Freedom of Will and Ability for perfect Obedience unto God, according to the Tenor of the Covenant of Works.

*What uſe are we to make of the knowledge of Man's Happinefs before his Fall?*

Firft, To admire and praiſe the great Goodnefs and Favour of God in ſo dealing with Man, a Clod of the Earth.

Secondly, To bewail the Loſs of that happy Eſtate, with blaming ourſelves for our Sin in *Adam*.

Thirdly, To learn how grievous a thing Sin is in God's Sight, that procured Man this doleful Change.

Fourthly, To labour and grieve to be Heirs of the Heavenly Paradiſe purchaſed for the Elect by Chriſt; by which we ſhall eat of the Tree of Life, *Rev. 2. 7.*

*Thus far of the State of Innocency: What is the State of Corruption and Miſery?*

The fearful Condition whereinto in *Adam* all Mankind fell, (*Eccleſ. 7. 29.*)

Of Man in the State of Corruption; and his Fall.

by

by transgressing and violating that Covenant of Works which God made with him at the beginning. For Man continued not in his Integrity, but presently transgressed that Holy Law which was given unto him; willingly revolting from God's Command, through Satan's Temptation, into many sins by eating the forbidden Fruit: *And so by the Disobedience of one, sin reigned unto Death, and Death went over all,* Rom. 5. 12, 18.

*What are we then to consider herein?*

First, Adam's Fall. Secondly, The wretched Estate he threw all his Posterity into.

*In what place of Scripture is the History of Adam's Fall handled?*

In the third Chapter of *Genesis*: The six former Verses whereof, setteth out the Transgression of our first Parents, (which was the Original of all other Transgressions) the rest of the Chapter declareth at large the things that following immediately upon this Transgression.

*How was the way made unto this Fall of Man?*

By God's Permission, Satan's Temptation, Man's Carelessness and Infirmity in yielding thereunto.

*What Action had God in this Business?*

He permitted the Fall of Man; not by instilling into him any Evil, (*James 1. 13. 1 John 2. 16.*) or taking from him any Ability unto Good; but, first, suffering Satan to assail him, (*2 Sam. 24. 1. with 1 Chron. 21. 1.*) Secondly, Leaving Man to the Liberty and Mutability of his own Will; and not hindring his Fall by supply of further Grace, (*2 Chron. 32. 31.*)

*Was God then no cause of the Fall of our first Parents?*

None at all: But as hath been said, having created them Holy he left them to themselves to fall if they would, or stand if they would, in respect of their Ability: As a Staff put on an end right, doth fall without the furtherance of the Man that setteth it right. Yet came it not to pass by the bare Permission of God alone, but also by his Permissive Decree; thereby to make way for the Manifestation of his Power, Justice and Mercy. For being able to bring Good out of Evil, as Light out of Darknes; he ordereth, in his great Wisdom, the Fall of Man to the setting out of the Glory, both of his Mercy in those that shall be saved in Christ, and of his Justice in those that shall perish for their Sins, (*Rom. 11. 32.*) yet without wrong to any; being not bound to his Creature, to uphold by his Grace from falling, *Rom. 11. 35.*

*What hand had Satan in procuring the Fall of Man?*

Being himself fallen, upon a proud, envious, and murderous Mind, he deceived our first Parents by tempting them to sin; to the end he might bring them into the like estate with himself. And as in this respect he is said to have been a Murderer from the beginning, *John 8. 44.* so doth he ever since seek to do what hurt he can to Mankind; moving them still to sin against God, and labouring to bring them to Damnation.

*What do you observe herein?*

His Envy of God's Glory and Man's Happiness; together with his Hatred and Malice against Mankind, whom (as a Murderer doth his Enemy) he hateth and laboureth to destroy.

*What gather you from this Attempt of his against our first Parents in the State of Innocency?*

That Satan is most busie to assail them in whom the Image of God in Knowledge and Holiness doth appear; not labouring much about those  
Z which

which either lie in Ignorance, or have no Conscience of walking according to Knowledge, as those that are his already.

*What Instrument did Satan use in tempting Man?*

He used the Serpent as an Instrument to deceive the Woman, and the Woman for an Instrument to tempt the Man, *Gen. 3. 1. 2 Cor. 11. 3. 1 Tim. 2. 14.*

*Why did he use those outward Instruments, and not rather tempt their Fancy and Affection inwardly?*

It seemeth that in their Integrity he could not have that advantage against them, in those things whereunto they were made subject by their Fall.

*Why did he chuse rather to speak by a Serpent, than by any other Beast?*

Because it was the fittest that God permitted him, and wisest of all the Beasts of the Earth; especially possessed by him to deceive Man, (*Gen. 3. 1.*) It was of all other Beasts the subtillest and fittest to creep into the Garden unseen of Adam, (who was to keep the Beasts out of it) and to remain there without being espied of him, and creep out again when he had done his Feat.

*If there were Craft before the Fall; then it seemeth there was Sin?*

Craft in Beasts is not Sin: Although the Word here used signifieth a nimbleness and Slinefs to turn and wind it self any way; in which respect it seemeth the Devil chose this Beast before any other.

*What learn you from hence?*

That the Devil, to work his Mischief, is exceeding cunning to make his Choice of his Instruments, according to the kind of Evil he wil sollicite unto, *Mat. 7. 15. 2 Cor. 11. 13, 14. 1 Tim. 2. 14.*

*But we do not see that he cometh any more in the Body of Serpents?*

He may; and in the Body of any other Beast which the Lord will permit him to come in. Howbeit our case in this is more dangerous than that of our first Parents. For now he useth commonly for Instruments Men like unto us, and familiar with us: Which he could not do before the Fall, *Ephes. 6. 12. Rev. 2. 10.*

*Why did Satan assail the Woman rather than Man?*

Because she was the weaker Vessel; which is his continual Practice, where the Hedge is low there to go over, (*Luke 5. 30. Mark 2. 16. Mat. 9. 11. 2 Tim. 3. 6.*) and might afterwards be a fitter means to deceive and draw on her Husband.

*What are we to consider in his tempting of the Woman?*

First, The time which he chose to set upon her. Secondly, The manner of the Temptation.

*What note you of the Time?*

First, That it was immediately, or not long after the placing of them in that happy Estate: Which reacheth how malicious the Wicked One is, who if he could let, would not suffer us to enjoy any Comfort, either of this Life, or of that to come, so much as one poor Day.

Secondly, That he came unto her when she was some space removed from her Husband: That he that should have helped her from and against his Wiles, might not be present to hear their Conference. Whence we learn, that the Absence of Wives from their Husbands, who should be a Strength unto them, is dangerous: Especially that we absent not our selves from the means of Spiritual Strength, the hearing of the Word, the receiving of the Sacraments, and Prayer.

Thirdly, That she was near to the Tree of Knowledge at the time he set on

on her: Which sheweth his Watchfulness in taking Advantage of all Opportunities that might further his Temptations.

*What was the manner of the Temptation?*

First, He subtilly address'd himself to the Woman; and entred into Conference with her. Secondly, He made her doubt whether the Word of God was true or not. Thirdly he offer'd her an Object. Fourthly, He us'd all the means he could to make her forsake God and yield unto him: pretending greater Love and Care of Man's well-doing than was in God, and bearing them in hand that they should be like unto God himself if they did eat of the forbidden Fruit, *Gen. 3. 5.*

*What was the Devil's Speech to the Woman?*

It was even so, that God hath said, Ye shall not eat of all the Fruit in the Garden, *Gen. 3. 1.*

*What do you note in this?*

That it is likely, there had been some Communication before between the Serpent and the Woman, that Satan had asked why they did not eat of the forbidden Fruit, seeing it was so goodly and pleasant to behold; and that the Woman had answered that they were forbidden: Whereupon he inferreth this, that *Moses* setteth down; wherein we may observe,

First, The Devil's Sophistry, who at the first doth not flatly contrary God's Command; but to bring her to doubting and Conference with him, asketh this Question, Whether God had forbidden to eat of all the Trees in the Garden?

Secondly, The wicked Spirits malicious, and subtle Suggestion: In that passing by the great Bountifulness of the Lord in the grant of the free Use of all the Fruits in the Garden, he seeks to quarrel with the Lord's Liberality.

Thirdly, We learn from hence to take heed lest for want of some one thing which God withholdeth from us, which we gladly would have, we be not unthankful to the Lord for his great Kindness and Liberality; and enter further into a Mislike of him for that one Want, than into the Love and liking of him for his innumerable Benefits we enjoy: Especially it being for our good that he withholdeth it, and that being not good which we desire.

*What did follow upon this Question of Satan?*

The Woman answering thereunto, not as God had spoken, that surely they should die if they did eat of the forbidden Fruit, but by a Term of doubting, *lest ye die*; Satan by this Conference and Doubting taketh advantage, and assureth them that they should not die, but have their Eyes open and receive Knowledge.

*What observe you in this Reply of the Devil?*

First, His Craft, in applying himself to the Woman: Whom he seeing to be in doubt of the Punishment, contents himself with it, and abstaineth from a precise Denial, whither he would willingly draw her: Because he deemed that the Woman would not come so far, and that in a flat Denial he should have been bewrayed; which notwithstanding in the latter end of this Sentence doth by Implication flatly do. Whence we learn, that the Devil proceedeth by degrees, and will not at the first move to the grossest: As in Idolatry he labourerth to draw Man first to be present, after to kneel only with the Knee, keeping his Conscience to himself; lastly, to the greatest Worship. In Whoredom, first to look, then to dally, &c. and therefore we must resist the Evil in the beginning.

Secondly, That he is a Calumniator or Caviller; whereof he hath his Name *Diabolus*, Devil, and an Interpreter of all things to the worst. And it is no marvel, though he deprave the best Actions of good Men, seeing he dealeth so with God; furnishing that GOD had forbidden to eat of the Fruit, left they should know as much as he.

Thirdly, That knowing how desirous the Nature of Man (especially they of best Spirits) is of Knowledge, he promiseth unto them a great Increase thereof: Whereas we ought to remember that which *Moses* saith, That the Secrets of the Lord are to himself, and that the things that he hath revealed are to us and to our Children, *Deut. 29. 29.*

*Hitherto of Satan's Temptation, the cause of the Fall without Man. What were the Causes arising from our first Parents themselves?*

Not any of God's Creation, but their Carelessness to keep themselves intire to God's Command. For though they were created Good, yet being left by God to the Mutability of their own Will, they voluntarily inclined and yielded unto that Evil, whereunto they were tempted: And so from one degree unto another were brought unto plain Rebellion, *Gen. 3. 6. Eccles. 7. 29.*

*What was their first and main Sin?*

In general it was Disobedience: The Degrees whereof were, first Infidelity, then Pride, and lastly the disavowing of Subjection by eating the forbidden Fruit; which they imagined to be the means whereby they should attain to a higher degree of Blessedness, but proved to be the Sin that procured their Fall, *Gen. 2. 16, 17. & 3. 6, 7.*

*Did not Adam confer with Satan, and take the Fruit from the Tree?*

No: He received it from his Wife, and by her was deceived, and she by Satan, *Gen. 3. 4, 17. 1 Tim. 2. 14.*

*Satan indeed was the outward Cause of Eve's Fall: But what are the Causes arising from her self?*

They are either outward things of the Body, or the inward Affections of the Mind moved by them.

*What are the Outward things of the Body?*

They are the Abuse of the Tongue, of the Ears, of the Eyes, and of the Taste. For in that she entertained Conference with the Devil, the Tongue and Ears; in that it is said that the Fruit was delectable to look on, the Eyes; and in that it was said it was good to eat, the Taste is made to be an Instrument of this Sin.

*What learn you from hence?*

That which the Apostle warneth, *Rom. 6. 13.* that we beware, that we make not the Parts of our Bodies Weapons of Iniquity. For if without a circumspect use of them they were Instruments of Evil before there was any Corruption, or any Inclination at all to sin; how much more dangerous will they be now after the Corruption, unless they be well looked unto?

*What do you observe in Eve's Conference with the Devil?*

First, Her folly to enter into any Conference with Satan. For she might have been amazed that a Beast should speak unto her in a Man's Voice: But her Carelessness and Curiosity moved her to it.

Secondly, Her Boldness in daring to venture on such an Adversary without her Husband's Help or Advice.

Thirdly, Her Wretchedness in daring once to call in Question the Truth of God's Command, or to Dispute thereof, and then to doubt of it.



*What Instructions gather you from her entertaining Conference with Satan?*

That it is dangerous to talk with the Devil, so much as to bid him to depart. If the Lord, to try us, should suffer him to tempt us visibly as he did *Eve*, unless we have a special calling of God thereunto. 1. Because he is too subtil for us, we being simple in regard of him. 2. Because he is so desperately malicious, that he will give place to no good thing we can alledge to make him leave off his malicious purpose.

*What shall we then do?*

We must turn our selves unto God, and desire him to command him away, at whose only Commandment he must depart.

*Is there any thing blame-worthy in Eve's Answer to the Question of the Serpent?*

Notwithstanding that so far she answered truly, that God had forbidden them to eat of the Fruit of that Tree, and telleth also the Punishment truly that would follow thereof: Yet began she to slip in the Delivery, both of the Charge and of the Punishment. For where she saith they were forbidden to touch it, it is more than the Lord did make mention of: And she thereby seemeth to insinuate some Rigour of the Lord, forbidding even the touch of the Fruit. And where the Lord had most certainly pronounced, that they should die if they did eat of the forbidden Fruit; she speaketh doubtfully of it, as if they should not certainly die.

*What learn you from this latter Observation?*

That albeit Men are oft perswaded they sin, yet that they are not perswaded of the Justice of God against it; whereby the door is opened to sin. Which is to make God an Idol, in spoiling him of his Justice; as if he were for all Mercy, as he had forgotten to be just, when as he is as well Justice as Mercy, as infinite in the one as in the other; which correcteth sharply the sins of such as he will save.

*What learn you of the Abuse of the Tongue in this Conference?*

That as the Tongue is a singular Blessing of God, whereby Man excelleth all the Creatures upon Earth: So the abuse of it is most dangerous, because it setteth on fire the whole course of Nature, and it is set on fire of Hell, Jam. 3.6.

*What observe you of that it is said, That Eve saw the Fruit was delectable to look on?*

Her lustful and wicked Eye; in suffering her Mind to be allured to look on the Beauty of the Fruit, with a purpose to affect the eating of it.

*How is it said, that she saw it was good to eat, when she had never tasted of it?*

She knew by the beautiful Colour it was so. For if we are able, in this Darknes we are fallen into, to discern commonly by the sight of the Fruit, whether it be good; and the skilful in Physick by the Colour only of the Herb, to tell whether it be hot or cold, sweet or sour: How much more were *Adam* and *Eve*, who had the Perfection of the Knowledge of those things, more than ever *Solomon* himself?

*What learn you by the Abuse of these Outward Senses?*

That they are, as it were, Windows whereby Sin entred into the Heart, when there was no sin; and therefore will much more now, the Heart being corrupted.

*What Instructions gather you from thence?*

First, That we must shut them against all Evil, and unlawful Use of their Objects, and open them to the Use of good things: Make a Covenant with them,

them, as *Job* did with his Eyes, *Job* 31. 1. by a strong and painful Resistance of the Evil that cometh by the Abuse of them, as it were cut them off, and throw them away, as our Saviour giveth Counsel, *Mat.* 5. 29, 30.

Secondly, That as the Senses are more noble, as the Hearing and Sight, called the Senses of Learning; so there should be a stronger watch set upon them: those being the Senses that *Adam* and *Eve* were especially deceived by.

*What observe you of that it is said, She saw that it was desirable for Knowledge?*

That was only her Error, which she having begun to sip of by Communication with the Devil, did after drink a full draught of, by beholding the Beauty of the Fruit, and receiving the delicate Taste thereof. And withal, observe how we can heare Reason true and false to move us to follow our Pleasure.

*What learn you from thence?*

That the Heart inclining to Error, doth draw the Senses to an unlawful Use of them: And that the Abuse of the Senses doth strengthen the Heart in Error.

*What gather you hereof?*

That before the Heart was corrupted, there was no abuse of these outward Senses: But that being corrupt, the Abuse of them doth fettle the Heart deeper in Error:

*What was the Effect of all these Outward and Inward Means?*

First, *Eve* yielded to Satan, and put his Will in Execution, in eating of the Fruit that was forbidden. Secondly, She gave it also to *Adam* to eat.

*What force hath the Word [also] here used by the Holy Ghost?*

Thereby, as a special Word of Amplification, the Sin is aggravated against her: To shew her Naughtiness, not only in committing the sin her self, but also in alluring her Husband to do as she done.

*What learn you from thence?*

1. The Nature of Sinners to draw others to the Condemnation they are in (as Satan *Eve*, and *Eve* her Husband) even those that are nearest them; whose Good they should procure.

2. That we should take heed of that the Apostle warneth us, *not to be partakers of other Mens sins*; as if we had not enough of our own to answer for: Which especially belongeth unto those in Charge, *1 Tim.* 5. 22.

3. How dangerous an Instrument is an evil and deceived Wife; which the Lord commandeth Men should beware to make Choice of: And if the Man which is strong, much more the Woman.

*What learn you of that, Adam eat forthwith?*

First, That which hath been before noted, that the Devil by one of us tempteth more dangerously than in his own Person: So that Satan knew he could not so easily have deceived *Adam* by himself, as by *Eve*.

Secondly, For that in excess of Love he yielded; it teacheth Husbands to love their Wives, but it must be in the Lord, as the Wives must do their Husbands.

*How doth it agree with the Goodness, or with the very Justice of God, to punish Mankind so fearfully for eating of a little Fruit?*

Very well. For first, the Heinousness of an Offence is not to be measured by the thing that is done, but by the worthiness of the Person against whom it is committed. Secondly, How much more the Commandment our first Parents brake was easie to be kept, (as to abstain from one only Fruit in so great Variety and Plenty) so much more grievous was their Sin in breaking it.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, Though God tried their Obedience in that Fruit especially, yet were there many other most grievous sins, which in desiring and doing of this they did commit: Inſomuch that we may obſerve therein the grounds of the Breach in a manner of every one of the Ten Commandments. For the Tranſgreſſion was horrible, and the Breach of the whole Law of God; yea, an Apoſtacy, whereby they withdrew themſelves from under the Power of God, nay rejected and denied him: And not ſo little an Offence as moſt Men think it to be.

*What Breaches of the firſt Commandment may be obſerved in this Tranſgreſſion?*

First, Infidelity: Whereby they doubted of God's Love towards them, and of the Truth of his Word.

Secondly, Contempt of God: In diſregarding his Threatnings, and crediting the Word of Satan, God's Enemy and theirs.

Thirdly, Heinous Ingratitude and Unthankfulneſs againſt God for all his Benefits? In that they would not be beholding unto him for that excellent Condition of their Creation (in reſpect whereof they ought unto him all Fealty) but would needs be his equal.

Fourthly, Curioſity in affecting greater Wiſdom than GOD had endued them withal by Virtue of their Creation, and a greater meaſure of Knowledge than he thought fit to reveal unto them.

Fifthly, Intolerable Pride and Ambition: In deſiring not only to be better than GOD made them, but alſo to be equal in Knowledge to God himſelf: And aſpiring to the higheſt Eſtate due to their Creator.

*How did our firſt Parents break the ſecond Commandment?*

*Eve*, by embracing the Word of the Devil, and preferring it before the Word of GOD: *Adam*, by hearkning to the Voice of his Wife, rather than to the Voice of the Almighty, *Gen. 3. 17.*

*What were the Breach of the third?*

First, Preſumption in venturing to diſpute of God's Truth, and to enter into Communication with God's Enemy, or a Beaſt who appeared unto them, touching the Word of God; with whom no ſuch Conference ought to have been entertain'd.

Secondly, Reproachful Blaſphemy: By ſubſcribing to the Sayings of the Devil, in which he charged God with lying, and envying their good eſtate.

Thirdly, Superſtitious Conceit of the Fruit of the Tree; imagining it to have that Virtue which God never put into it: As if by the eating thereof, ſuch Knowledge might be gotten as Satan perſwaded.

Fourthly, Want of that Zeal in *Adam* for the Glory of God, which he ought to have ſhewed againſt his Wife, when he underſtood ſhe had tranſgreſſed God's Commandment.

*How was the fourth Commandment broken?*

In that the Sabbath was made a Time to confer with Satan in Matters tending to the high Diſhonour of God: If it be true that on that Day Man fell into this Tranſgreſſion, as ſome not improbably have conjectured. For at the Concluſion of the Sixth Day, all things remained yet very good, *Gen. 1. 31.* and God bleſſed the ſeventh Day, *Gen. 2. 3.* Now it is very likely that Satan would take the firſt advantage that poſſibly he could entrap them, before they were ſtrengthened by longer Experience, and by partaking of the Sacrament of the Tree of Life, (whereof it appeareth, by *Gen. 3. 22.* that they had not yet eaten): And ſo from the very beginning of Man, became a Man-ſlayer.

*John 8. 44.*

*Shew.*

That the Breach of all the Commandments concur'd in *Adam* and *Eve's* ſin.

*Shew briefly the grounds of the Breach of the Commandments of the second Table, in the Transgression of our first Parents.*

The *fifth* was broken, *Eve* giving too little to her Husband, in attempting a Matter of so great Weight without his Privity: And *Adam* giving too much to his Wife, in obeying her Voice rather than the Commandment of God, and for pleasing of her, not caring to displease God, *Gen. 3. 17.*

The *sixth*. By this Act they threw themselves and all their Posterity into Condemnation and Death, both of Body and Soul.

The *seventh*. Though nothing direct against this Commandment: Yet herein appeared the Root of those evil Affections which are here condemned; as not bridling the Lust and wandering Desire of the Eye; as also the inordinate appetite of the Tasse, (*Gen. 3. 6.*) in lusting for and eating that only Fruit which God forbad, not being satisfied with all the other Fruits in the Garden.

The *eighth*. First, Laying hands upon that which was none of their own, but by a special Reservation kept from them. Secondly, Discontent with their present Estate, and covetous Desire of that which they had not.

The *ninth*. Judging otherwise than the Truth was of the Virtue of the Tree, (*Gen. 3. 6.*) and receiving a false Accusation against God himself.

The *tenth*. By entertaining in their Minds Satan's Suggestions, and evil Concupiscence appearing in the first Motions leading to the forenamed sins.

*This much of our first Parents sin, and the Causes thereof; now let us come to the Effects of the same. Shew therefore what followed in them immediately upon this Transgression.*

The Effects of  
the Fall.

Three Fruits were most manifest: Namely, Guiltiness of Conscience, Shame of Face, and Fear of God's Presence.

*Did any Punishment follow upon this Sin?*

Sin, Guiltiness, and Punishment, do naturally follow one upon another: otherwise the Threatning, that at what time soever they did transgress God's Commandment they should certainly die, should not have taken effect.

*Declare how that Threatning took effect.*

They were dead in sin, which is more fearful than the Death of the Body, as that which is a Separation from the Favour of God. For there came upon them the Decay of God's glorious Image in all the Faculties of their Soul, and also a Corruption of the Powers of their Body from being so fit Instruments to serve the Soul as God made them: And this in them is signified by *Nakedness*, *Gen. 3. 7.* and in their Children called Original Sin. Then there issued from thence a stream of Actual Sins in the whole Course of their Life: Which appeared in *Adam* even upon his Fall, by his flying from God's Presence, and affirming that it was his Nakedness that made him fly, his excusing of his Sin, and laying it on the Woman, &c. By Sin an entry being made for Death. *Rom. 5. 12.* they became subject to the separating of the Soul from the Body, which is Bodily Death; and of both from God, which is Spiritual Death: Signified by *expelling* them out of *Paradise*, and *debarring* them of the Sacramental Tree of Life. *Gen. 3. 22. &c.* And thus, by the just Sentence of God, being for their sin delivered into the Power both of Corporal and of Eternal Death, they were already entred upon Death and Hell: To which they should have proceeded, until it had been accomplished both in Body and Soul in Hell with the Devil and his Angels for ever, if the Lord had not looked upon them in the Blessed Seed.

*For the fuller understanding of the things that immediately followed the Transgression of our first Parents: Let us consider more particularly what*

what is recorded in the third Chapter of Genesis. And first shew what is meant by that in the seventh Verse, that their Eyes were opened, and that they saw themselves naked.

Were they not naked before? And having the Eye sharper than after the Fall, must they not needs see they were naked?

It is true, howbeit their Nakedness before the Fall was comely, yea more comely than the comeliest Apparel we can put on: Being clad with the Robe of Innocency, from the top of the Head unto the sole of the Foot; wherefore by Nakedness he meaneth a shameful Nakedness both of Soul and Body; as the Scripture speaketh of elsewhere, Rev. 3. 17, 18. Exod. 32. 25.

What gather you from hence?

That the Loathsomeness of Sin is hidden from our Eyes, until it be committed, and then it flusheth in the faces of our Consciences, and appeareth in its proper Colours.

Was that well done that they sewed Fig-tree Leaves to hide their Nakedness?

In some respect: Forasmuch as they sought not remedy for their Nakedness inward, it was not well: But that they were ashamed to behold their own Nakedness of the Body, it was well. For in this corrupt and sinful estate there is left this Honesty and Shamefastness, that neither we can abide to look on our own Nakedness and shameful Parts, much less upon the shameful parts of others; although it be of those that are nearest joined unto us.

What gather you from thence?

First, That those that can delight in the beholding, either of their own Nakedness, or the Nakedness of any other, have lost even that Honesty, that the sinful Nature of Man naturally retaineth.

Secondly, That such as for Customs sake have covered their Nakedness with Clothes, and do notwithstanding with filthy Words, as it were, lay themselves naked, are yet more wretched, and deeper poisoned with the Poyson of the unclean Spirit, and have drunk more deeply of his Cup.

Seeing our Nakedness cometh by sin, and is a Fruit thereof; it may seem that little Infants have no sin, because they are not ashamed?

So indeed do the Pelagian Hereticks reason: But they consider not, that the want of that feeling is for the want of the Use of Reason, and because they do not discern between being naked and clothed.

What followeth?

That at the noise of the Lord in a Wind, they fled from the Presence of God, and hid themselves where the Trees were most thick.

What gather you from hence?

First, That the Guilt of an evil Conscience striketh horror into a Man, and therefore it is said, that Terrors terrifie him round about and cast him down, following him at the heels; and leave him not till they have brought him before the terrible King, Job 18. 11, 14. Thereof it is, that the Feast of a good Conscience is so extolled, as to be a continual Feast, Prov. 15. 15.

Secondly, The Fruit of Sin coming from the Fear, which is to fly from God as from an Enemy. Whereof it is that the Apostle affirmeth, that having Peace of Conscience, we have access and approach to God, Rom. 5. 2.

Thirdly, Their Blindness, which esteemed that the Shadow or Thickness of Trees would hide them from the Face of God: Whereas if we go up into Heaven, he is there; if into the Deep, he is there also, (Psal. 139. 7. to 13.) he being not so hidden in the Trees, but that a Man might find him out.

*What followeth?*

That God asketh *where he is*, which knew well where he was.

*What learn you from thence?*

First, That we would never leave off running from God, until we come to the Depth of Hell, if God did not seek us and follow us, to fetch us as the good Shepherd the lost Sheep, *Esa. 65. 1. Luke 15. 4.*

Secondly, That the means of calling us home, is by the Word of his Mouth.

*What followeth?*

That *Adam* being asked, assigneth for Causes, things that were not the Causes, as namely, *the Voice of the Lord, his Fear, and his Nakedness*: Which were not the true Causes, considering that he had heard the Voice of God and was naked when he fled not; dissembling that which his Heart knew to be the true Cause, *viz.* his sin.

*What learn you from thence?*

That it is the property of a Man unregenerate to hide and cloak sin: And therefore, that the more we hide and cloak our sins when we are dealt with for them, the more we approve our selves the Children of the Old Man, the cursed *Adam*, *Job 31. 33.*

*What followeth?*

The Lord asketh how it should come, that he felt his Nakedness as a Punishment; and whether he had eaten of the forbidden Fruit.

*What note you from thence?*

That before that our sins be known in such sort, as the Denial of them is in vain and without Colour, we will not confess our sins.

*What learn you out of Adam's second Answer unto God?*

That the Man unregenerate dealt with for his sins, goeth from Evil to worse. For the sin that he hid before, now he cannot hide it, he excuseth, and for excusing it he accuseth the Lord: As those do, which when they hear the Doctrine of Predestination and Providence, thereupon would make God party in their sins.

*What learn you further?*

That howsoever *Adam* alledged it for an Excuse, because he did it by persuasion of another, yet God holdeth him guilty, yea dealeth with him as with the Principal, because his Gifts were greater than his Wife's.

*What learn you from the Answer of Eve to the Lord's Question; why she did so?*

The same which before; that the unregenerate Man doth go about to excuse the sin he cannot deny. For she casteth her sin upon the Serpent, and said that which was true; but kept back the Confession of her Concupiscence, without which the Serpent could not have hurt her.

*How cometh it to pass that the Old Serpent, the Author of all, is not called to be examined?*

Because that the Lord would shew no Mercy unto him: wherefore he only pronounceth Judgment against him.

*What learn you from thence?*

That it is a Mercy of God, when we have sinned, to be called to account; and to be examined, either by the Father of the Household, or by the Magistrate, or by the Governor of the Church; and a Token of God's fearful judgment, when we are suffered to rest in our Sins, without being drawn to question for them.

*What*

*What observe you in the Sentence against the Serpent ?*

That the first part contained in the 14 *vers.* is against the Instrument of the Devil; and that the other part, contained in the 15 *vers.* is against the Devil.

*What learn you of this proceeding to Sentence ?*

That after the Cause well known, Judgment should not be slack'd.

*Why doth God use a Speech to the Serpent that understandeth it not ?*

It is for Man's sake, and not for the Beasts sake.

*Why for Man's sake ?*

To shew his Love to Mankind, by his displeasure against any thing that shall give any help to do hurt unto him. In which respect, he commandeth that the Ox that killeth a Man should be slain, and that the flesh thereof should not be eaten, (*Exod.* 21. 28.) like a \* kind Father that cannot abide the Sight of the Knife that hath maimed or killed his Child, but breaketh it in pieces.

\* Chrysofom  
Homil. 17. in  
Gen.

*What manner of Curse is this, when there is nothing laid upon the Serpent, but that he was appointed at the beginning, before he became the Devil's Instrument to tempt Eve ?*

It is true, that he crept upon his Belly before, and eat Dust before, as appeareth in the Prophet, *Esa.* 65. 25. But his meaning is, that he shall creep with more Pain, and lurk in his hole for fear, and eat the Dust with less Delight and more Necessity.

*What learn you from thence ?*

Not to suffer our selves to be Instruments of Evil to any in the least sort, if we will escape the Curse of God. For if God did punish a poor Worm, which had no Reason or Will to chuse or refuse Sin; how much less will he spare us which have both ?

*What is the Sentence against the Devil ?*

The Ordinance of God, that there shall be always Enmity between the Devil and his Seed on the one side, and the Woman and her Seed on the other; together with the effect of this Enmity.

*What do you understand by the Seed of the Devil, seeing there is no Generation of the Devils, for that there is no Male nor Female among them, neither have they Bodies to engender ?*

The Seed of the Devil are all both wicked Men and Angels, which are corrupt as he is, and carry his Image. In which respect the Wicked are called the Children of the Devil, and every where the Sons of *Belial*, (*Job* 8. 44. *1 John.* 3. 8. *Acts* 13. 10.)

*What learn you from thence ?*

That the War of Mankind with the Devil is a lawful War proclaimed of God, which is also perpetual and without any Truce: And therefore that here it is wherein we must shew our Choler, our Hate, our Valour, our Strength; not faintly and in shew only, but in Truth. Whereas we being continually assaulted with our Enemy, leave our Fight with him to fight against our Brethren, yea against our own Souls; he continually, and without ceasing, fighting with us, and not against his own, as the blasphemous Pharisees said, *Mat.* 12. 24.

*What is the Sentence against the Woman ?*

First, In the Pain of Conception and bearing Child.

Secondly, In the Pain of bringing forth: Wherein is contained the Pain of nursing and bringing them up.

Thirdly, In a desire to her Husband.

Fourthly,

Fourthly, In her Subjection to her Husband.

*Was she not before desirous and subject to her Husband?*

Yes, but her desire was not so great through Conscience of her Infirmitie; nor her Subjection so painful, and the Yoak thereof so heavy.

*What is the Sentence against Adam?*

First, His Sin is put in the Sentence, and then his Punishment.

*What was his Sin?*

One, that he obeyed his Wife, whom he should have commanded; then, that he disobeyed God, whom he ought to have obeyed: The first being proper to him, the other common to his Wife with him.

*What was the Punishment?*

A Punishment, which although it be more heavy upon *Adam*, yet it is also common to the Woman: Namely, the Curse of the Earth for his sake; from whence came Barrenness by Thistles and Thorns, &c. whereof, first, the Effect should be Sorrow and Grief of Mind. Secondly, Labour to the sweat of his Brows, to draw necessary Food from it, and that as long as he lived. Lastly, The Expulsion out of Paradise, to live with the Beasts of the Earth, and to eat of the Herb which they did eat of.

*What learn you from thence?*

That all Men, from him that sitteth on the Throne, to him that draweth Water, are bound to painful Labour, either of the Body or of the Mind; what Wealth or Patrimony soever is left them, although they had wherewith otherwise plentifully to live.

*What observe you else?*

Hab. 3. 2.

I observe further out of this Verse, and out of the two next, that in the midst of God's Anger he remembreth Mercy. For it is a Benefit to *Adam* that he may live of the sweat of his Brows; to *Eve*, that she should bring forth, and not be in continual Travel: Unto them both, that he taught them Wisdom to make Leather Coats.

*What learn you from that it was said, God made them Coats?*

That in every profitable Invention for the Life of Man, God is to be acknowledged the Author of it, and have the Honour of it, and not the Wit of Man that invented it: As is the manner of Men in such Cafes to sacrifice to their own Nets, *Hab. 1. 16.*

*When there were better means of Cloathing, why did they wear Leather?*

It seemeth that thereby they should draw themselves the rather to Repentance and Humiliation by that course clothing.

*What learn you from hence?*

That howsoever our Condition and State of Calling affords us better Array; yet we learn even in the best of our Clothes to be humbled by them, as those which are given us to cover our shame, and carry always the Mark and Badge of our Sins: Especially when these, which were even after the Fall the goodliest Creatures that ever lived, learned that Lesson by them.

*What followeth?*

A sharp Taunt that the Lord giveth *Adam*, vers. 22. further to humble him; as if he should say, Now *Adam* dost thou not see and feel how greatly thou art deceiv'd in thinking to be like God in eating of the forbidden Fruit?

*What learn you from it?*

That by the things we think to be most esteemed, contrary to the Will of God, we are most subject to Derision: And that it must not be a plain and common Speech, but a laboured Speech that must bring us to Repentance.

Why



*Why doth God banish him out of Paradise, lest he should live if he should eat of the Tree of Life; seeing there is no corporal thing able to give Life to any that sin hath killed?*

It is true, that the eating of the Fruit of the Tree of Life would not have recovered him: But the Lord therefore would have him banished from it, lest he should fall into a vain Confidence thereof, to the end to make him seek for Grace.

*Wherefore are the Angels set with a glittering Sword to keep them from the Tree of Life?*

To increase their Care to seek unto Christ, being banished from it, without hope of coming so much as to the sign of Life.

*What learn you from hence?*

The necessary Use of keeping obstinate Sinners from the Sacraments, and other holy things in the Church.

*Thus much of the miserable and unhappy Condition which our first Parents brought upon themselves.*

*Did this Estate determine in their Persons, or was it derived from them to all their Posterity?*

It was. For their Sin in eating the forbidden Fruit, was the Sin of all Men; and we therein became Sinners, and guilty of eternal Condemnation. So that they, by this first Transgression, did not only lose for themselves the Image and Favour of God, but withal *deprived* their Posterity of that blessed Estate, (*Rom. 3. 23.*) and *plunged* them into the contrary, (*Rom. 5. 12.*) bringing Damnation upon themselves and us all. Wherefore this cursed Estate of Mankind is called in the Scriptures the *Image of Adam*, Gen. 5. 3. the *Old Man*, Eph. 4. 22. the *Flesh*, Gen. 6. 3. John 3. 6. &c. And the Apostle teacheth expressly, *Rom. 5. 12. that by one Man Sin entered into the World, and Death by Sin; and so Death went over all Men, forasmuch as all Men have sinned.*

*How doth the Apostle here call this the sin of one Man; seeing both Adam and Eve sinned, which are two, and that Eve sinned before Adam?*

In the Name of *Adam* was comprehended the Man and the Woman; for by Marriage two are made one; and *Moses* calleth both the Man and the Woman *Adam*, Gen. 5. 2. and last of all, the Apostle useth a Word here signifying both Man and Woman.

*What reason is there that all their Posterity should take part with them in their Fall, and in the woful effect thereof? It seemeth not to stand with the Justice of God to punish us for the sin that we never did.*

Our first Parents were by God's Appointment to *stand* or *fall* in that Trial; not as singular Persons only, but also as the *Head and Root* of all Mankind; representing the Persons of all that should descend from them by Natural Generation. And therefore for the understanding of the ground of our Participation with *Adam's* Fall, two things must be considered.

First, That *Adam* was not a private Man in this Butiness, but sustained the Person of all Mankind, as he who had received Strength for himself and all his Posterity, and so lost the same for all. For *Adam* received the Promise of Life for himself and us, with this condition, if he had stood: But seeing he stood not, he lost the Promise of Life both from himself and from us. And as his Felicity should have been ours, if he had stood in it; so was his Transgression and Misery ours. So that as in the second Covenant, the Righteousness of the second *Adam* (*CHRIST JESUS* the Mediator) is reckoned to those that are begotten of him by spiritual Regeneration, (even those that believe

why all *Adam's* Posterity are Partakers of his sin and misery.

believe in his Name) although they never did it : So in the Covenant, the sin of the first *Adam* (who herein sustained a common Person) is reckoned to all the Posterity that descend from him by Carnal Generation, because they were in him, and of him, and one with him, *Rom. 5. 15, 16, 17, 18, 19.*

Secondly, That we all who are descended from *Adam* by Natural Generation, were in his Loins, and a part of him when he fell ; and so by the Law of Propagation and Generation sinned in him, and in him deserved eternal Condemnation therefore. Even as two Nations are said to be in the Womb of *Rebekah*, *Gen. 25. 23.* and *Levi* to have paid Tithes to *Melchisedec* in the Loins of *Abraham*, *Heb. 7. 9, 10.* who was not born some hundred Years after. Thus we see that by the Act of Generation in Leprous Parents, the Parents Leprosie is made the Childrens : And the slavish and villanous Estate of the Parents is communicated unto all their Offspring. For a Man being a Slave, his Progeny unto the hundred Generation, unless they be manumitted, shall be Slaves : And even so the natural Man, howsoever he thinketh himself free, yet in Truth he is sold under sin, and is the very Servant of Corruption, and in that State shall for ever remain, unless the Son make him free, *John 8. 33, 34, 36. Rom. 6. 17, 19, 20. & 7. 14. 2 Pet. 2. 19.* We see also that great Personages rebelling against the King, do not only thereby hurt and disgrace themselves, but also stain their whole Blood, and lose their Honour and Inheritance from themselves and from their Children. For by our Law, a Man being attainted of High Treason, the attaint of Blood reacheth to his Posterity, and his Children, as well as he, lose the Benefit of his Lands and Living for ever : Unless the King in favour restore them again, as God in Mercy hath done unto us.

*Then it appeareth, that by Propagation from our last Parents we are become Partakers of the Transgression of our first Parents.*

Even so : And for the same Transgression of our first Parents, by the most Righteous Judgment of God, we are conceived in Sin, and born in Iniquity, and unto Misery, *Psal. 51. 5.* For Men are not born as *Adam* was created : But *Death doth reign over them also that sinned not after the like manner of the Transgression of Adam,* (*Rom. 5. 14.*) that is, over Infants, who are born in sin, and sin not by Imitation, but by an inherent Corruption of Sin. Even as we see the young Serpents and Wolves that never stung Men, or devoured Sheep, are notwithstanding worthy to die ; because there are Principles of Hurtfulness and Poysonfulness in them.

*How is it shewed, that Babes new born into the World have sin ?*

In that they are afflicted sundrily, which they bewray by their bitter Cries, and in that they come out of the Mother's Womb go straight into the Grave.

*What is then the Natural Estate of Man ?*

Every Man is by Nature dead in Sin as a loathsome Carrion, or as a dead Corps, and lyeth rotting and stinking in the Grave, having in him the Seed of all sins, *Ephes. 2. 1. 1 Tim. 5. 6.*

*For the fuller understanding of the State of Sin, and the Consequents thereof, declare first what Sin is ?*

What Sin is. It is defined in one word, *1 John 3. 4.* to be *ἀνομία*, the Transgression of the Law : Namely, a swerving from the Law of God, making the Sinner guilty before God, and liable to the Curse of the Law, *Gen. 4. 7.*

*Seeing by the Law Sin is, and the Law was not before Moses : (Rom. 5. 13.) it seemeth there is no Sin until Moses ?*

When

When it is said, the Law was not before *Moses*, it is to be understood of the Law written in the Tables of Stone by the Finger of God, and other Laws Ceremonial and Political written by *Moses* at the Commandment of God. For otherwise the Law (the Ceremonial excepted) was written in the Heart of Man; and for the Decay thereof through sin, taught by those to whom that belonged, from the Fall unto *Moses*.

*Is every Breach of the Law of God Sin?*

Yea: If it be no more but the least want of that which the Lord requireth, *Rom. 7. 7. Gal. 3. 10.*

*And doth every Sin, the very least, deserve the Curse of God, and everlasting Death?*

Yes verily: Because God is of infinite Majesty and Dignity, and therefore what so toucheth him, deserveth endless Wrath. Wherefore Purgatory and our own Satisfaction for small sins is vain.

*How many sorts of Sins are there?*

Sin is either *Imputed*, or *Inherent*: The one without us, the other with in us.

*What is the Sin Imputed?*

Our Sin in *Adam*; in whom as we lived, so also we sinned. For in our first Parents (as hath been shewed) every one of us did commit that first sin, which was the Cause of all other: And so we all are become subject to the Imputation of *Adam's* Fall, both for the Transgression and Guiltiness, *Rom. 5. 12, 18, 19. 1 Cor. 15. 22.*

*What Sins are Inherent in us?*

They do either defile our *Nature*, or our *Actions*: The one called *Original Sin*, the other *Actual*, (*Col. 3. 5, 8.*) For every one naturally descending from *Adam*, beside the Guilt of that first Sin committed in *Paradise*; first, is conceived and born in *Original Corruption*, *Psal. 51. 5.* Secondly, Living in this World, sinneth also actually, *Gen. 6. 5. Esa. 48. 8.* yea, of himself he can do nothing but sin, *Jer. 13. 23. Mat. 7. 18.* neither is there any thing pure unto him, *Tit. 1. 15.*

*What is Original Sin?*

It is a Sin, wherewith all that naturally descend from *Adam* are defiled, even from their first Conception: Infecting all the Powers of their Souls and Bodies, and thereby making them Drudges and Slaves of Sin. For it is the immediate Effect of *Adam's* first Sin; and the principal Cause of all other Sins.

*How is this Sin noted out unto us?*

In that other Sins have their special Names, where this is properly called Sin; because it is the Puddle and Sink of other Sins: And for that also the more it is pressed, the more it bursteth forth, (as mighty Streams are, that cannot be stopped) till God by his Holy Spirit restrain it.

*Wherein doth it specially consist?*

Not only in the Deprivation of Justice, and absence of Good; but also in a continual Presence of an evil Principle and wicked Property, whereby we are naturally inclined to Unrighteousness, and made prone unto all Evil, *Jam. 1. 14. Rom. 7. 21, 23.* For it is the *defacing of God's Image*, consisting chiefly in Wisdom and Holiness, whereof we are now deprived: And the *Impression of the contrary Image of Satan*, (*John 8. 41, &c.*) called *Concupiscence*, (*Rom. 7. 7. Jam. 1. 14.*) consisting, first, in an utter *Disability* and *Enmity* unto that which is Good, (*Rom. 7. 18. & 8. 7.*) Secondly, In *Prone-ness*

ness unto all manner of Evil, (*Rom.* 7. 14.) which also every Man hath at the first Minute and Moment of his Conception: Contrary to the Opinion of the *Pelagians*, who teach that Sin cometh by Imitation.

*Is the Image of God wholly defaced in Man?*

No: If we take it in a large Acceptation. For Man remaineth still a reasonable Creature, and capable of Grace, having the same Parts and Faculties he had before; and in them some Reliques of God's Image, *Gen.* 9. 6. *James* 3. 9. As in the Understanding some Light, *John* 1. 9. in the Conscience sometimes right Judgment, *Rom.* 2. 15. in the Will, some liberty to Good and Evil, in natural and civil Actions, *Rom.* 2. 14. and freedom in all things from Compulsion, &c.

*Is there not a Power left in Man, whereby he may recover his former Happiness?*

Man hath still Power to perform all outward Actions; but not to change himself until he be changed by the Grace of God.

*Is Man then able to perform the Law of God perfectly?*

\* *Gal.* 3. 22. They that are not born again of God, \* cannot keep it all, † nor in any one point, as pleasing God thereby in respect of themselves. For except a Man be born again of God, he cannot see the Kingdom of Heaven, nor enter therein; neither can he keep the Commandments of God. Moreover, all Men by Nature being conceived and born in Sin, are not only insufficient to any good thing, but also disposed to all Vice and Wickedness.

*Can Man in this Estate do no good thing to please God, to deserve at least something of his Favour?*

We have lost by this Sin all the Righteousness we had in our Creation: So as now if God should say to us, Think but a good thought of thy self, and thou shalt be saved; we cannot: But our Nature is as a stinking Puddle, which in it self is loathsome, and being moved is worse.

*But doth not God wrong to Man, to require of him that he is not able to perform?*

No: For God made Man so that he might have performed it: But he by his Sin spoiled himself and his Posterity of those good Gifts.

*Is this Corruption of Nature in all the Children of Adam?*

Yea, in all and every one that are meer Men, none excepted, (*Rom.* 3. 10, 23.) all Children, since *Adam's* Fall, being begotten in it, *Psal.* 51. 5.

*How then doth the Apostle say, That Holy Parents beget Holy Children?*

*1 Cor.* 7. 14.

Parents beget Children as they are by Nature, not as they are by Grace.

*How is Original Sin propagated and derived from the Father to the Son?*

We are not to be so curious in seeking the manner how, as to mark the matter to be in us: Even as when a Houle is on fire, Men should not be so busie to enquire how it came, and seeing it there, to quench it. But this we may safely say, that what effect the committing of the first Sin wrought in the Soul of *Adam*, the same doth the Imputation of it work in the Souls of his Posterity. As therefore the Committal of that Sin left a Stain behind it in his Nature: Being like a drop of Poyson that once taken in, presently infecteth the soundest Parts; or like the dead Fly that marreth the most precious Ointment of the Apothecary: So in the Creation and Infusion of our Souls into our Bodies, God justly imputing the same Transgression unto us; the same Corruption of Nature (as the just Punishment of that Sin) must ensue in like manner.

*Hath this inbred Sin, wherein every one is conceived, equally polluted all Men?*

Yes: Though not altogether alike for Disposition and Motion to Evil. For Experience teacheth us, that some are by Nature more mild, courteous and gentle than others: Which difference notwithstanding is not so much in the Natures of Men, as in the Lord who represseth those Sins in some which he suffereth to rise up in others.

*In what part of our Nature do this our Corruption abide?*

In the whole Man (from the top to the toe) and every part both of Body and Soul, (*Gen. 6. 5. 1 Thess. 5. 23.*) like unto a Leprosie that runneth from the Crown of the Head to the Sole of the Foot. But chiefly it is the Corruption of the five Faculties of the Soul; which are thereby deprived of that Holiness wherein God created them in Adam.

*Is not the Substance of the Soul corrupted by this Sin?*

No: But the Faculties only depraved, and deprived of Original Holiness. For first, the Soul should otherwise be mortal and corruptible. Secondly, Our Saviour took our Nature on him without this Corruption.

*To come then to the special Corruptions of the five Faculties of the Soul: Shew first, how this Sin is discerned in the Understanding.*

The Mind of Man is become subject to, First, Darknes, Blindnes in Heavenly Matters, and Ignorance of God, and of his Will, and of his Creatures, The Understanding corrupted.

*1 Cor. 2. 14. Ephes. 4. 17, 18, 19.*

Secondly, Uncapability, Unability, and Unwillingness to learn, though a Man be taught, *Rom. 8. 7. Luke 24. 45.*

Thirdly, Unbelief, and doubting of the Truth of God, taught and conceived by us.

Fourthly, Vanity, Falshood and Error; to the embracing whereof Man's Nature hath great Proneness, *Isa. 44. 20. Jer. 4. 22. Prov. 14. 12. & 16. 25.*

*What use make you of this Corruption of the Understanding?*

That the Original and Seeds of all Heresies and Errors are in Man's Heart naturally without a Teacher: And therefore we should distrust our own Knowledge, to lead us in the Matters of God and Religion; and only be directed by God's Holy Word.

*How is the Memory corrupted?*

First, With Dulness, and Forgetfulness of all good things that we should remember; notwithstanding we have learned them often. The corruption of the Memory.

Secondly, With readiness to remember that we should not; and to retain Errors and Vanities (as Tales and Plays) much more than Godly Matters.

*What use make you bereof?*

First, As to bewail the Defects of our Understanding, so to lament our Forgetfulness of good things.

Secondly, To distrust the Faithfulness or Strength of our Memories in hearing and learning good things: And to use all good helps we can, as often repeating them, writing and meditating on them.

Thirdly, Not to clog our Memories with Vanities; for which we should rather desire the Art of Forgetfulness.

*How is the Will corrupted?*

First, With a Disability and Impotency to will any thing that is good in it self, *Rom. 5. 6. Phil. 2. 13.* The corruption of the Will.

Secondly, With Slavery to Sin and Satan: The Will being so enthralled,

(Rom. 6. 20. & 7. 23.) and *bardned*, (*Ephes.* 4. 18.) that it only desireth and lusteth after that which is Evil, *Gen.* 6. 5. *Job* 15. 16.

Thirdly, With Rebellion against God, and any thing that is Good, *Rom.* 8. 7.

*What use are we to make hereof?*

First, That we have no free Will left in us, since *Adam's* Fall, for Heavenly Matters. Secondly, That for the Conversion either of our selves or any other, we must not look for it from Man, but pray to God to convert Man, who worketh in us both the Will and the Deed, (*Phil.* 2. 13.) as the Prophet saith, *Convert thou me, and I shall be converted*, *Jer.* 31. 18. *Lam.* 5. 21.

*How are the Affections corrupted?*

The corruption of the Affections.

The Affections of the Heart, which are many, (as Love and Hatred, Joy and Sorrow, Hope and Fear, Anger, Desire, &c.) are subject to Corruption and Disturbance, *Gal.* 5. 24. *Jam.* 4. 1. *Job* 15. 16.

First, By being set upon unmeet Objects: In affecting and being inclined to the things they should not be, and not to those they should. Thus we hate Good and love Evil, (*1 Kings* 22. 8.) and in a word, our Affections naturally are moved and stirred to that which is Evil to embrace, and are never stirred up to that which is Good, unless it be to eschew it.

Secondly, By Disorder and Excess; even when we do affect good things: As for our own Injuries we are more angry, than for God's Dishonour: When we are merry, we are too merry; when sad, too sad, &c.

*What use make you of the Disorder of the Affections?*

First, To keep our selves from all Occasions to incense them to sin, whereunto they are as prone as Tinder to the Fire. Secondly, To labour to mortifie them in our selves; that we may be in regard thereof, as pure Nazarites before God, *Gal.* 5. 24. *Col.* 3. 5.

*How is the Conscience corrupted?*

The corruption of the Conscience.

It is distempered and defiled, (*Tit.* 1. 15.) both in giving Direction in things to be done, and in giving Judgment upon things done.

*How in the former?*

It sometime giveth no Direction at all; and thereupon maketh a Man to sin in doing of an Action otherwise good and lawful, (*Rom.* 14. 23.) sometime it giveth Direction, but a wrong one; and so becometh a blind Guide, forbidding to do things which God alloweth, and commanding to do things which God hateth, *1 Cor.* 8. 7. *Col.* 2. 21. *John* 16. 2.

*How in the latter?*

When it either giveth no Judgment at all, being left without feeling; or when it hath an evil Feeling and Sense.

*How is it left without Feeling?*

When it is so senseless, and benumbed with Sin, that it never checketh a Man for any Sin, (*Ephes.* 4. 18, 19.) called a Cauterised Conscience, *1 Tim.* 4. 2. which riseth from the Custom of sinning, *Heb.* 3. 13.

*How doth it fail, when it hath a Feeling, but a naughty one?*

Sometimes in Excusing, sometimes in Accusing.

*How in Excusing?*

First, When it excuseth for things sinful, making them no Sins, or small Sins; and so feeding the Mind with vain Comforts, *Mark* 10. 20. *Gen.* 3. 10. 12. Secondly, When it excuseth us for having a good Intent, without any Warrant of God's Word, *1 Chron.* 13. 9.

*How in Accusing?*

First, When for want of true Direction and Lightning, it condemneth for doing Good, (as a Papist for going to Sermons) condemning where it should excuse, and so filling the Minds with false Fears.

Secondly, When accusing for Sin, it doth it excessively; turmoiling a Man with inward Acculations and Terrors, (*Esa.* 57. 20.) and drawing him to despair by such excessive Terror; as may be seen in *Cain* and *Judas*.

*What use are we to make of this Confusion of the Conscience?*

First, Seeing it doth thus abuse us, we are never to make it a warrant of our Actions, unless it be directed by God's Word.

Secondly, We are to fear the Terror of the great Judge of Heaven and Earth; when we are so often, and so grievously terrified with our little Judge that is in our Soul.

*What Corruption hath the Body received by Original Sin?*

It is become a ready Instrument to serve the sinful Soul: Having both a Proneness to any Sin the Soul affecteth; and likewise an eagerness to commit it, and continue in it, *Rom.* 6. 12, 19. Whereby it is come to pass, hat the Bodily Senses and Members are, 1. Porters to let in Sin, *Job* 31. 1. *Psal.* 119. 37. *Mat.* 5. 29, 30. 2. The Instruments and Tools of the Mind for the Execution of Sin, *Rom.* 2. 13, 14, 15. & 6. 13.

Of the corruption of the Body.

*What use are we to make of this Doctrine of Original Sin?*

First, The due Knowledge thereof serveth to humble the Pride of Man; remembering that he is conceived in so sinful a sort, that howsoever that Branches of his Actions may seem green, yet is he rotten at the Root.

Secondly, It should move him with all speed to seek for Regeneration by *Christ*; seeing he hath so corrupt a Generation by *Adam*.

*What is Actual Sin?*

It is a Violation of God's Commandments, done by us *after the manner of Adam's Transgression*, *Rom.* 5. 14. to wit, a particular Breach of God's Law in the Course of our Life; which proceedeth as an evil Fruit from our natural Corruption, and leaveth a Stain in the Soul behind it, (*Fer.* 13. 23.) which polluteth the Sinner, and disposeth him to further Evil.

Actual Sin.

*How is such Sin committed?*

Either Inwardly, or Outwardly.

*How Inwardly?*

First, By evil Thoughts in the Mind; which come either by a Man's own conceiving, *Gen.* 6. 5. *Mat.* 15. 19. or by the Suggestion of the Devil, *John* 13. 2. *Acts* 5. 3. 1 *Chron.* 21. 1.

Secondly, By evil Motions and Lufts stirring in the Heart; against the Righteousness of the Law, which condemneth the very first Motions of Evil that ariseth from our corrupt Nature.

*How Outwardly?*

By evil Words and Deeds, (*Esa.* 3. 8.) which arise from the corrupt thoughts and motions of the Heart, when any occasion is given, *Mat.* 15. 19. So that the Imagination of Man's Heart, the Words of his Mouth, and the Works of his Hands, are all stained with Sin.

*Be not Outward Sins more grievous than Inward?*

Some be, and some be not. For if they be against the same Commandment, and the same Branch thereof, they are much more wicked and evil: Because, first, God is more dishonoured outwardly. Secondly, Other Men are offended, if Godly; or inticed by their Example, if wicked. Thirdly, A Mandorh

more ingross himself in sin outward, than in a bare thought that he restrain from outward Action.

*But how may some Thoughts be more evil than Actions ?*

If they be of more wicked Matters: As the denying of God in heart, is worse than an idle Word.

*What use are we to make hereof ?*

It serveth, first, to condemn the common sort, that say and hold that Thoughts are free, which are oft so sinful. Secondly, To assure us that many, though they lead an outward civil Life in Actions, yet if their Hearts be not cleansed by Faith, may be more odious in God's Sight that knoweth their Thoughts, than a godly Person that may be left to some outward Weakness in this Life.

*What be the Degrees by which Men do proceed in the committing of Actual Sin ?*

Out of *Jam. 1. 14, 15.* these four Degrees may be observed :

First, *Temptation to Sin, Jam. 1. 14. 2 Sam. 11. 2.* which then only is Sin to us, when it either ariseth from our own Corruption, or from outward Occasions to which we have offered our selves carelessly. For if every Temptation to Sin offered unto us should be sin simply, then our Saviour that was tempted, should have sinned. Therefore the outward or inward Temptations that Satan may offer, be not Sins to us, till they get some hold in us: Which is, when we are the occasion of them our selves, by inward Corruption or outward Carelessness in venturing upon Temptations.

Secondly, *Concupiscence*, bringing Sin to *Conception*, *James 1. 15.* which is done by these Degrees. 1. Entertaining the Sin whereunto we are tempted, and suffering it to have abode in the Mind or Thought. 2. Withdrawing the Heart from God (whom we ought to fear with all our hearts) and his Commandment, (*Jam. 1. 14.*) 3. Consulting whether that Sin (which we ought to hate) may be done or no. 4. Taking liking of it, and coveting it, and so being ensnared by it, *Psal. 7. 14. Jam. 1. 14.*

Thirdly, *Consent of the Mind to commit Sin*: Whereupon ensueth the Birth of Sin, *James 1. 15.* by which it is brought forth into Act against God or Man.

Fourthly, *Often Repetition of Sin*: by *Custom* and Continuance, wherein the Heart finally is hardened, (*Heb. 3. 13.*) and Sin is come to a *Perfection* or Ripeness, (*Jam. 1. 15.*) which is the Strength that Sin getteth over Man, whom it ruleth as a Master doth a Slave: In which Estate who so continueth, must look for eternal Death, *Jam. 1. 15.* for Sin then reigneth; which it never doth in the Godly.

*Are these Actual Transgressions all of one sort ?*

No: For they are diversly considered, in respect of the *Commandment* broken, the *Object* offended, the *Disposition* followed, and the *Degrees* attained.

*How for the Commandment ?*

The Breach of a Commandment that biddeth, is a Sin of *Omission*; but of one that forbiddeth, is a Sin of *Commission*. The one is an Omission of Duty required; the other a Commission of Evil forbidden: By the one, we offend in omitting those things which we should do; by the other, in committing those things which we should not do.

*Which be the Inward Sins of Omission ?*

The not thinking so often or religiously of Heavenly Things, (respecting the first Table) or of good Duties to Man, as we should; but suffering our Minds

Of the divers differences of Actual Sins.



Minds to be a thorough-fare for vain or wicked Thoughts to pass through, more than Good. Which Sin if it were thought of well, would make Men more humble before God, and to make more Conscience of their Hours Day and Night, to mark how their Mind is occupied.

*What be Inward Sins of Commission ?*

All Actual Sins of the Mind and Thoughts, whether we be *awake* dealing with God or Man, or *asleep* dreaming. Examples of the first are against God; to think there is no God, (*Psal.* 10. 4.) or to have vile and base Conceits of Him or his Government, (*Psal.* 10. 11. *1 Cor.* 2. 14.) and towards Man, every Inward Breach of the second Table.

*But doth Man commit Sin in the Night when he dreameth ?*

Yes surely : The Soul is never idle, but when it thinketh not of Good, it thinketh of Evil. And the Godly may mark, that after they have had many Dreams of things unlawful, their Heart is in a measure wounded, till they obtain Peace and Pardon from God.

*What use are we to make thereof ?*

To pray earnestly that God would sanctifie our corrupt heart; that it may be a Fountain of holy and not sinful Thoughts: And in the Night, 1. To commit our selves specially to God, that because we having our Senses and Judgment bound and silent, are less able to resist and judge our sinful Thoughts, God would preserve us from them by his Grace. And, 2. That we avoid all Occasions thereof in the Day.

*What be the Outward Sins of Commission ?*

Such as to the committing of them, beside the thought of our Mind, any part of our Body doth concur; as our Tongue to Words, and other parts to Deeds.

*How are Sins distinguished in regard of the Object offended ?*

Some Sins are more directly against God, some against Men, either publick or private, and others against a Man's self.

*How in regard of the Disposition followed ?*

Either as we partake with others Sins, (*Esa.* 6. 5.) or as we commit the Sin in our own Person.

*What be the differences of partaking with other Sins ?*

First, When we conceal and wink at other Mens Sins, which we ought to reveal or rebuke: As Magistrates and Ministers oft do, *1 Sam.* 3. 13. Secondly, When we further it by our Consent, Presence, or Counsel, *Acts* 7. 58. & 8. 1. & 22. 20. & 23. 14, 15. *Rom.* 1. 32. Thirdly, When we provoke others to sin, *Mark* 6. 25.

*What difference of Disposition is there in those Sins which a Man doth commit in his own Person ?*

Some Sins are committed of Ignorance, (*1 Tim.* 1. 13. *Psal.* 19. 12.) or of an erring Conscience, (*1 Cor.* 8. 7.) which a Man doth either not know, or not mark : Others are done of Knowledge.

*Doth not Ignorance excuse ?*

Affected Ignorance doth rather increase, than diminish a Fault.

*What be the differences of Sins of Knowledge ?*

1. Some are of *Infirmity* and Temptation, for fear of Evil, or hope of Good, *Rom.* 7. 19. *Mat.* 26. 69, 70. 2. Some of *Presumption*, Obstinacy, and stubbornness in finning: Against which *David* earnestly prayed, (*Psal.* 19. 13. & 50. 21. *Eccles.* 8. 11.) And this may proceed (if Men have not the Grace of God) to obstinate and wilful Malice against God and his Truth, and to the

the unpardonable Sin *against the Holy Ghost*, Heb. 6. 4, 5, 6. & 10. 20, 29. *Mark* 3. 29, 30.

*What, is the Sin against the Holy Ghost the highest of all Sins?*

Of the Sin  
against the  
Holy Ghost.

It is a wilful and malicious falling from, and resisting of the Gospel, after a Man hath been enlightened with it, and felt a Taste thereof? manifested in outward Action by some blasphemous oppugning the Truth of Set-Hatred, because it is the Truth.

*What are you to consider in this Sin?*

The Nature thereof, and the Deadlines of the same.

*What note you in the Nature?*

The Reason why it is so called, and the Quality thereof.

*Why is it called the Sin against the Holy Ghost?*

Not because it is committed against the third Person only, (for it is committed against all three) but because it is committed against that Light of Knowledge, with which the Holy Ghost hath enlightened the Heart of him that committeth it, and that of set Malice. For every one that sinneth against his Knowledge, may be said to sin against the Holy Ghost, as *Ananias* and *Sapphira* were said to do, *Acts* 5. 3. but that is not this great Sin of set Malice, resisting the Truth because it is the Truth, but of Infirmity.

*What Qualities and Properties hath this great Sin.*

First, It must be in him that hath known the Truth, and after falleth away, *Heb.* 6. 5. Therefore Infidels and Heathens do not sin this Sin; neither any that are ignorant, though maliciously they blaspheme the Truth. Secondly, It must be done of set Malice, because it is the Truth; as the Pharisees did, (*Mat.* 12, 31. *Heb.* 6. 6.) Therefore *Peter* that cursed himself, and denied that he knew Christ, to save his Life, did not sin this Sin: Nor *Paul* that did persecute him, doing it of Ignorance. Thirdly, It must be against God himself directly, and his Son Christ Jesus, *Mat.* 12. 31. *Heb.* 6. 6. Therefore it is not any particular Breach of the second Table, nor a slip against any special Sin of the first.

*Can these Qualities at any time befall the Elect, or Children of God?*

No: And therefore they that feel in themselves the Testimony of their Election, need not fear their falling into this Sin, nor despair.

*What is the deadliness of this Sin above other Sins?*

First, God hath pronounced it shall never be pardoned: Not because God is not able to pardon it, but because he hath said he will not forgive it. Secondly, This Sin is commanded not to be prayed for; when Persons are known to be guilty of it, *1 John* 5. 16. whereas we are bound to pray for all other Persons. Thirdly, This is the ordinary and first Sin of the Devil: And therefore is he never received into Mercy, no more than those than are guilty of it.

*Thus much of the Sin against the Holy Ghost; shew now the differences of Actual Sins in regard of the Degrees attained.*

Some are only Sins, but others are Wickednesses, and some Beastlineses, or Devilishnesses. For though Original Sin be equal in all *Adam's* Children, yet Actual Sins be not equal, but one much greater than another.

*Are not Sins well divided into Venial and Mortal?*

None are venial of their own Nature; but only to the Faithful they are so made, by the Mercy of God in Christ.

*Do all natural Men alike commit all these kinds of Sins?*

No: For though all are alike disposed unto all manner of evil, (*Rom.* 7. 14.) having

having in their corrupt Nature the *Seeds* of every Sin; yet doth God, for the good of humane Society, *restrain* many from notorious Crimes, by fear of Shame and Punishment, desire of Honour and Reward, &c. Rom. 13. 3, 4, 5.

*How doth God employ Men in this State of Sin?*

First, He *guideth* them, partly by the *Light of Nature*, Rom. 2. 14, 15. John 1. 9. and partly by *common Graces* of the Spirit, *Esa.* 44. 28. unto many Actions, profitable for human Society, and for the outward Service of God.

Secondly, He *over-ruleth* their evil and sinful Actions; so that thereby they bring to pass nothing, but what his hand and counsel had before determined for his own Glory, *Acts* 3. 18. & 4. 27, 28.

*What are the things that generally follow Sin?*

They are two: Guilt and Punishment. Both which do most duly wait upon Sin, to enter with it; and cannot by any force or cunning of Man or Angel, be holden from entering upon the Person that sin hath already entred upon, both likewise do increase, as the sin increaseth.

*What is the Guilt of Sin?*

It is the merit and desert of Sin, (which is as it were an Obligation to the Punishment and Wrath of God) whereby we become subject to God's Debt or Danger; that is, to Condemnation, *Rom.* 2. 15. & 3. 9. For every Man by reason of his sin is continually subject to the Curse of God, *Gal.* 3. 10. and is in as great danger of everlasting Damnation, as the Traitor apprehended, is in danger of Hanging, Drawing, and Quartering.

Guilt of Sin.

*Is there any evil in the Guilt before the Punishment be executed?*

Very much; for it worketh Unquietness in the Mind: As when a Man is bound in an Obligation upon a great Forfeiture, that very Obligation it self disquieteth him; especially if he be not able to pay it, (as we are not): And yet more, because where other Debts have a day set for Payment, we know not whether the Lord will demand by Punishment his Debt this day before to Morrow.

*What learn you from this?*

That sith Men do shun by all means to be in other Mens Debt or Danger, (as also the Apostle exhorteth, *Rom.* 13. 8. *Owe nothing to any Man*; and *Solomon* also counselleth in the matter of suretiship, *Prov.* 6. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5.) we should more warily take heed, that we plunge not our selves over head and ears in the Lord's Day; for if it be a terrible thing to be bound to any Man in Statute Staple, or Merchant, or Recognizance; much more to be bound to God, who will be paid to the utmost Farthing.

*How else may the hurt and evil of the Guilt of Sin be set forth unto us?*

It is compared to a stroak that lighteth upon the Heart and Soul of a Man; where the Wound is more dangerous than when it is in the Body, *Gen.* 44. 16. *1 Sam.* 24. 4, 5, 6. And so it is also a sting or a bite worse than of a Viper; as that which bringeth Death.

*Have you yet wherewith to set forth the evil of the Guilt?*

It seemeth when the Lord said to *Cain*, if he sin against his Brother, his sin lieth at the door, (*Gen.* 4. 7.) that he compareth the Guilt to a Dog that is always snarling and barking against us: Which is confirmed by the Apostle, who attributeth a Mouth to this desert of sin to accuse us, *Rom.* 2. 15.

*What is the Effect of this Guilt of Conscience?*

It causeth a Man to fly when none pursueth; and to be afraid at the fall of a Leaf, *Prov.* 28. 1. *Lev.* 26. 36.

*When a Man doth not know whether he doth sin or no, how can he be smitten or bitten, or barked at, or fly for fear? therefore against all this Evil, Ignorance seemeth to be a safe Remedy.*

No verily; for whether we know it or no, his Guilt remaineth: As a Debt is Debt, though a Man knoweth it not; and it is by so much the more dangerous, as not knowing it, he will never be careful to discharge it, till the Lord's Arrest be upon his Back, when his Knowledge will do him no good.

*We may see many which heap sin upon sin, and know also that they sin, and yet for all that cease not to make good cheer, and make their hearts merry.*

The Countenance doth not always speak Truth; so that sometimes under a Countenance in shew merry, there are stings and pricks in the Conscience, (Rom. 2. 15.) which yet is oftentimes benumbed, and sometimes through Hypocrisy it is feared as it were with a hot Iron, (1 Tim. 4. 2.) but the Lord will find a time to awaken and revive it, by laying all his sins before his face, Psal. 50. 21.

*When it is known, what is the Remedy of it?*

It were Wisdom not to suffer our Guilt to run long on the Score, but reckon with our selves every Night e'er we lie down to sleep, and look back to the doing of the Day: That in those things which are well done, we may be thankful, and comfort our own hearts; and in that which hath passed otherwife from us, we may call for Mercy, and have the sweeter sleep. For if Solomon willeth us in that case of Debt by Suretyship, to humble our selves to our Creditor, and not to take rest until we have freed our selves, (Prov. 6. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.) much more ought we to haste the humbling our selves unto God; sith the Blood of Christ is the only Sacrifice for sin.

*Is the Guilt of Sin in all Men alike?*

No: For as the Sin increaseth, so doth the Guilt, both in regard of the Greatness, and of the number of our Sins: As appeareth out of Ezra 9. 6. whereas Sin is said to be gone above their Heads, so the Guilt to reach up to the Heavens.

*When the Sin is gone past, is not the Guilt also gone and past?*

Christ taketh away both the Guilt and the Sin of the Godly, (except Original Sin, which contiueth during Life) but in the Wicked, when the Act of Sin is gone, the Guilt remaineth always; as the strong favour of Garlick when the Garlick is eaten; or as the Scar of a Wound, or the mark of a Burning, when the Wound or Burning is past.

*What is contrary to the Guilt of Sin?*

The Testimony of a good Conscience, which is a perpetual Joy and Comfort, yea and a Heaven to him that hath walked carefully in God's Obedience, as the other is a Torment of Hell.

*So much of the Guilt: What is the Punishment?*

Punishment of Sin.

It is the Wages of Sin sent for the Guilt, Rom. 6. 23. namely, the Wrath and Curse of God, by whose just Sentence Man for his Sin is delivered into the Power both of Bodily and Spiritual Death, begun here, and to be accomplished in the Life to come, Gen. 2. 17. John 3. 18, 19. & 5. 24, 28, 29. Lam. 3. 39. Eisa. 64. 5, 6. Rom. 5. 12. Gal. 3. 10.

*What do you understand by Bodily and Spiritual Death?*

By the one I understand the Separation of the Soul from the Body; with all personal Miseries and Evils that attend thereon, or make way thereto: By the other, the final Separation of both from God; together with present Spiritual Bondage, and all fore-runners of Damnation.

Are

*Are all the particular Punishments expressed in the Word, which shall come for Sin ?*

They cannot wholly be laid down, they be so manifold and so divers: And therefore it is said they shall come, written and unwritten, *Deut. 29. 20. & 28. 61.*

*Against what are these Punishments addressed ?*

Against the whole Estate of him that sinneth. For whereas Executions upon Obligations unto Men are so directed as they can charge either the Person alone, or his Goods and Lands alone; so as if the Creditor fall upon the one, he freeth the other; as if he fall upon the Person he cannot proceed further than unto his Body: The Execution which goeth out from God for the Obligation of Sin, is extended to the whole Estate of the Sinner; both to the things belonging unto him, and likewise to his own Person.

*What be the Punishments that extend to the things belonging to him ?*

Calamities upon his Family, Wife, Children, Servants, Friends, Goods, and good Name; the Loss and Curse of all these: An unhappy and miserable Posterity, (*Mat. 15. 22. Psal. 109. 12.*) hindrances in Goods, (*Deut 28.*) in Name, Ignominy and Reproach: (*Job 18. 17. Prov. 10. 7.*) loss of Friends and Acquaintance, &c.

*What be the Judgments that are executed upon his Person ?*

They are executed either in this Life, or after this Life.

*What Punishments are inflicted in this Life ?*

They be partly Outward, partly Inward.

*What be the Outward Punishments ?*

1. His want of Dominion over the Creatures: And the Enmity of the Creatures against him. Calamities by Fire, Water, Beasts, or other means. Disorder in the World, in Summer, Winter, Heaven, Earth, and all Creatures.

2. Shame for the Nakedness of Body.

3. All Hunger in Extremity, Thirst, Nakedness, Penury, Poverty of Estate, and want of bodily Necessaries.

4. Weariness; following his Calling in sweat of his Brows, with Trouble and Irksomeness, *Gen. 3. 19.*

5. Outward Shame and Infamy.

6. Servitude.

7. Loss of Limbs, or the use of his Senses: Deformities in Body.

8. Weakness of Being, want of Sleep, Pains of Body, Aches, Sores, Sicknesses and Diseases of all sorts, (*Deut. 21. 27.*) even to the Itch, which few make account of, thereby to feel the Anger of God and Punishment of Sin. Hither is to be referred Pain in Child-bearing, *Gen. 3. 16.*

*What be the Inward Punishments of this Life ?*

1. Sorrow and Anguish of Soul for these Plagues, and the like.

2. Madness. Frenzy, and Foolishness.

3. Blindness and Distemper of the Soul; when God striketh it with an ignorant Spirit, with want of Judgment to discern between Good and Bad, with Forgetfulness of Holy Things, or Hardness of Heart, (*Ephes. 4. 17, 18, 19.*) which although for the time they be least felt, yet are they more fearful and dangerous, than those where the Sense is presently sharp.

4. Terror and Vexation of Spirit, driving into Hell: Guiltiness and Horror of Conscience; the Fury of a despairing Soul, beginning even in this Life to feel Hell Torments, *Deut. 28. 28. Heb. 10. 27. Esai. 33. 14.*

5. Strangeness and Alienation from God.

6. Spiritual

6. **Spiritual Bondage:** Whereby sinful Man is become subject to the Lust of the Flesh, the Curse of the Law, the Rule of Satan, and the Custom of the World; yea, even Blessings are cursed, (*Mal. 2. 2.*) and Prosperity causeth Ruin, (*Psal. 69. 22.*)

*In what sort is Man in Bondage unto Satan?*

Both Soul and Body is under the Power of the Prince of Darknes: Whereby Man becometh the Slave of the Devil, and hath him to reign in his heart as his God, till Christ deliver him, *Col. 1. 13. Ephes. 2. 2. 2 Tim. 2. 26. 2 Cor. 4. 4. Heb. 2. 14. Luke 11. 21, 22.*

*How may a Man know whether Satan be his God or not?*

He may know it by this, if he give Obedience to him in his Heart, and express it in his Conversation.

*And how shall a Man perceive this Obedience?*

If he take Delight in the evil Motions that Satan puts into his Heart, and doth fulfil the Lusts of the Devil, *John 8. 44. 1 John 3. 8.*

*What is that slavery whereby a Man is in Bondage to the Flesh?*

A Necessity of sinning (but without constraint) until he be born again by the Grace of God, *Mat. 12. 33, 34, 35.*

*If we sin necessarily, and cannot but sin; then it seemeth we are not to be blamed.*

Yes: The Necessity of sin doth not exempt us from sin, but only Constraint?

*What Punishments are inflicted upon sinful Man after this Life?*

A Two-fold Death.

*Which is the first Death?*

Bodily Death, in the several kinds: Namely, the Separation of the Soul from the Body, *Gen. 3. 19. Eccles. 12. 7. Rom. 5. 12.*

*Wherein consisteth the second Death?*

1. In an everlasting Separation of the whole Man from the favourable Presence and comfortable Fellowship of God's most glorious Majesty, in whose Countenance is Fulness of Joy.

2. Perpetual Imprisonment in the Company of the Devil and Reprobates damned in Hell.

3. The most heavy Wrath of God, and unspeakable Torments to be endured in Hell Fire, World without end, *2 Theff. 1. 9.*

*How doth this Death seize upon Man?*

1. After this Life is ended, the Soul of the Wicked immediately is sent unto Hell, there to be tormented unto the Day of Judgment, *Luke 16. 22, 23.*

2. At the Day of Judgment, the Body being joined to the Soul again, both shall be tormented in Hell everlastingly, (*Mat. 10. 28.*) so much also the more as they have had more freedom Pain of Body, and Anguish of Soul, and loss of outward things in this Life.

*Is the Punishment of all Sins alike?*

No; For as the Guilt increaseth, so doth the Punishment: And as the smallest Sin cannot escape God's hand; so, as we heap Sins, he will heap his Judgment, *Joh. 19. 11. Mat. 11. 20, 21, 22, 23, 24.*

*But God is merciful.*

He is indeed full of Mercy; but he is also full of Righteousness, which must fully be discharged, or else we cannot be Partakers of his Mercy.

*Cannot we by our own Power make satisfaction for our Sins; and deliver our selves from the Wrath of God?*

We cannot by any means; but rather from day to day increase our Debt: for we are all by Nature the Sons of Wrath, and not able so much as to think one good thought; therefore unable to appease the infinite Wrath of God conceived against our sins.

*Could any other Creature in Heaven or Earth (which is only a Creature) perform this for us?*

No, none at all. For, first, God will not punish that in another Creature, which is due to be paid by Man.

Secondly, None that is only a Creature can abide the Wrath of God against Sin, and deliver others from the same.

Thirdly, None can be our Saviour but God.

*Could Man by his own Wisdom devise any thing whereby he might be saved?*

No: For the Wisdom of Man can devise nothing but that which may make a further Separation betwixt God and him.

*What then shall become of Mankind? Is there no hope of Salvation? Shall all perish? Then surely is a Man of all Creatures most miserable. When a Dog or a Toad die, all their Misery is ended: But when a Man dieth, there is the beginning of his woe.*

It were so indeed, if there were no means of Deliverance: But God in his infinite Wisdom and Mercy hath found out that which the Wisdom of Man could not, and provided a Saviour for Mankind.

*How then is Man delivered from this sinful miserable Estate?*

Sin is repressed, and Misery asswaged, by many means natural and civil: Of God's Covenant with Man. But they are not removed, nor Man restored, but only by a New Covenant; the Old being not now able to give Life unto any, by reason of the Infirmity of our Flesh, Rom. 8. 3.

*Why is the former Covenant (of Works) called the Old?*

Because we not only cannot do it; but through the Perverseness of our Nature (and not by the fault of the Law) it maketh our Old Man of Sin elder, and more hasting to Destruction.

*How are they convinced that seek Righteousness by this Covenant?*

Because thereby they make God unjust: In that he should thus give the Kingdom of Heaven to Wicked Men, as those that cannot fulfil the Law.

*Seeing the nature of a Covenant is to reconcile and join those together that are at variance, (as we see in the Example of Abraham and Abimelech, Gen. 21. 27. Laban and Jacob, Gen. 31. 44.) why is this called a Covenant, that can make no Reconciliation betwixt God and us?*

Although it be not able to reconcile us, yet doth it make way for Reconciliation by another Covenant: Neither is it meet strictly to bind God's Covenant with Men, to the same Laws that the Covenant of one Man with another are bound unto. For amongst Men, the weaker seeketh Reconciliation at the hand of the Mightier, (Luke 14. 31, 32.) but God (who neither can be hurt or benefitted by us) seeketh unto us for Peace, 2 Cor. 5. 20.

*Which of these two Covenants must be first in use?*

The Law: To shew us, first, our Duty, what we should do. Secondly, Our Sin, and the Punishment due thereunto.

*How is that other Covenant called, whereby we are reconciled unto God, and recovered out of the State of Sin and Death?*

The New Covenant, (so called, because by it we are renewed): Of the Covenant of Grace. The Covenant of Grace, of Promise, of Life and Salvation; the New Testament, the Gospel, &c. Jer. 31. 31, 32.

*What is the Covenant of Grace?*

God's *second Contract* with Mankind, after the Fall, for the restoring of him into his Favour, and to the State of Happiness, by the means of a Mediator, *Gal. 3. 21, 22.* and it containeth the free Promises of God made unto us in Jesus Christ, without any respect of our deservings.

*Who made this Covenant?*

God alone: For properly Man hath no more Power to make a Spiritual Covenant in his Natural Estate, than before his Creation he had to promise Obedience.

*How are they convinced by the giving of this second Covenant, which seeks Righteousness in the Law, or old Covenant?*

Because thereby they make God unwise, that would enter into a new and second Covenant, if the former had been sufficient, *Heb. 8. 7.*

*When was this Covenant of Grace first plighted between God and Man?*

Immediately after the Fall in Paradise, in that Promise given concerning the Woman's Seed, (*Gen. 3. 15.*) God in unspeakable Mercy propounding the Remedy, before he pronounced Sentence of Judgment.

*Was it once only published?*

It was sundry ways declared in all Ages: Partly by ordinary means, and partly by Prophets extraordinarily sent and directed by God.

*What is the Foundation of this Covenant?*

The meer Mercy of God in Christ: Whereby Grace reigneth unto Life, through the Obedience of one, which is Jesus Christ, *Rom. 5. 21.* For there being three Persons of the Trinity, the Father sent his Son to accomplish the Work of our Redemption, and both of them send the Holy Ghost to work saving Grace in our Hearts, and apply unto our Souls the Holiness purchased by the Son of God.

*What is promised therein?*

The Favour of God and everlasting Salvation, with the means thereof; as Christ, and in him Conversion, Justification, and Sanctification.

*What is the Condition on Man's part?*

The Gift being most free on God's part, nothing is required on Man's part, but the receiving of Grace offered; which is done in those that are of Capacity by Faith in Christ, *John 1. 12. & 14. 1. Acts 16. 31.* whence followeth new Obedience, whereby the Faithful walk worthy of the Grace received; and this also is by God's Grace.

*What then is the sum of the Covenant of Grace?*

That God will be our God, and give us Life everlasting in Christ, if we receive him, being freely by his Father offered unto us, *Jer. 31. 33. Acts 16. 30, 31. John 1. 12.*

*How doth this Covenant differ from that of Works?*

The Differences between the Covenant of Works, and the Covenant of Grace.

Much every way. For first, in many Points the Law may be conceived by Reason: But the Gospel in all Points is far above the reach of Man's Reason. Secondly, The Law commandeth to do Good, and giveth no strength: But the Gospel enableth us to do Good, the Holy Ghost writing the Law in our Hearts, (*Jer. 31. 33.*) and assuring us of the Promise that revealeth this Gift. Thirdly, The Law promised Life only; the Gospel Righteousness also. Fourthly, The Law required perfect Obedience, the Gospel the Righteousness of Faith, *Rom. 3. 31.* Fifthly, The Law revealeth Sin, rebuketh us for it, and leaveth us in it: But the Gospel doth reveal unto us the Remission of sins, and freeth us from the Punishment belonging thereunto. Sixthly, The Law



Law is the Ministry of Wrath, Condemnation and Death: The Gospel is the Ministry of Grace, Justification and Life. Seventhly, The Law was grounded on Man's own Righteousness; requiring of every Man in his *own Person* perfect Obedience, (*Deut.* 27. 26.) and in default, for Satisfaction, everlasting Punishment, (*Ezek.* 18 21, 22. *Gal.* 3. 10, 12.) but the Gospel is grounded on the Righteousness of Christ; admitting Payment and Performance by *another*, in behalf of so many as receive it, (*Gal.* 3. 13, 14.) And thus this Covenant abolisheth not, but is the Accomplishment and Establishment of the former, *Rom.* 3. 31. & 10. 4.

*Wherein do they agree?*

They agree in this, that they be both of God, and declare one kind of Righteousness, though they differ in offering it unto us. Wherein they agree.

*What is that one kind of Righteousness?*

It is the perfect Love of God and of our Neighbour.

*What thing doth follow upon this?*

That the severe Law pronounceth all the Faithful Righteous: Forasmuch as they have in Christ all that the Law doth ask.

*But yet they remain Transgressors of the Law.*

They are Transgressors in themselves, and yet Righteous in Christ; and in their inward Man they love Righteousness, and hate Sin.

*What are we to consider in the Covenant of Grace?*

The Condition, first of the *Mediator*; and then of the rest of *Mankind*. In the former consisteth the *Foundation* of this Covenant; the Performance whereof dependeth upon Christ Jesus, (*Acts* 10. 43. *Rom.* 1. 3, 4.) to the latter belongeth the *Application* thereof for Salvation unto all that will receive it, *2 Cor.* 5. 20. *Mat.* 6. 33. Of Jesus the Mediator of this Covenant.

*When was the Mediator given?*

1. If we regard God's *Decree*; from all Eternity, *Ephes.* 1. 4.
2. If the *Virtue* and Efficacy of his Mediation; as soon as need was, even from the beginning of the World, *Rev.* 13. 8.
3. If his *Manifestation* in the Flesh, in the fulness of Time, (*Gal.* 4. 4. *1 Tim.* 2. 6.) from whence we reckon now 1677 Years.

*Who is this Mediator between God and Man?*

Jesus (*Luke* 2. 11. *Mat.* 1. 21. *1 Tim.* 2. 5.) the Son of the Virgin *Mary*, the promised *Messias* or *Christ*; whom the Fathers expected, the Prophets foretold, (*John* 1. 45. & 8. 56.) whose Life, Death, Resurrection, and Ascension, the Evangelists describe, (*1 John* 1. 1. *Acts* 1. 1.) whose Word preached unto this day, subdueth the World, (*1 Tim.* 3. 16. *2 Cor.* 10. 4, 5.) finally, whom we look for from Heaven to be the Judge of the Quick and Dead, *Acts* 10. 42.

*What do the Scriptures teach us touching Christ our Mediator?*

Two things: First his Person, (*John* 1. 14. & 3. 33.) Secondly, His Office, (*Esa.* 61. 1, 2. *Luke* 4. 18)

*What is his Person?*

The second Person in the God-head, made Man, *John* 1. 14.

*What have we to consider therein?*

First, The distinction of the two Natures. Secondly, The Hypostatical or Personal Union of both, into one *Immanuel*. The Natures of Christ. Divine. Humane.

*What be those two Natures thus wonderfully united in one Person?*

First, His Divine Nature or Godhead, which maketh the Person.

Secondly,

Secondly, His Humane Nature or Manhood; which subsisteth and hath his Existence in the Person of the Godhead. And so we believe our Saviour to be both the *Son of God*, and the *Son of Man*, *Gal. 4. 4. Luke 1. 31, 32. Rom. 1. 3, 4. & 9. 5. 1 Tim. 3. 16. Mat. 26. 24.*

*What say you of him touching his Godhead?*

Of the Divine  
Nature of  
Christ.

I believe that he is the only begotten Son of the most High and Eternal God his Father: His Word, Wisdom, Character, and Image; begotten of his Substance before all Worlds, God of God, Light of Light, very God of very God, begotten, not made; finally God Coessential, Coeternal, and Coequal with the Father and the Holy Ghost.

*Why call you him the only begotten Son of God?*

Because he is the alone Son of God by Nature, even the only begotten of the Father full of Grace and Truth, *John 1. 14. & 3. 18.* For though others be the Sons of God by Creation, as *Adam* was, and the Angels, (*Job 1. 6.*) others by Adoption and Regeneration, as the Saints; and the Man Christ Jesus in another respect, namely, by hypostatical Union: Yet none is his Son by natural Generation, but the same Christ Jesus; and that in regard of his Godhead, not of his Manhood: According to the Apostle, who saith, that he is *without Father* according to his Manhood, and *without Mother* according to his Godhead, *Heb. 7. 3.*

*But it seemeth that he is called the Son of God in respect of the Generation of his Human Nature; wherein it is said that the Holy Ghost did that which Fathers do in the natural Generation: Especially seeing he is therefore said to be the Son of the Highest, Luke 1. 35.*

He is the natural Son of God only in regard of the eternal Generation; otherwise there should be two Sons, one of the Father, and another of the Holy Ghost: But he is therefore called the Son of the Highest, for that none could be so conceived by the Holy Ghost, but he that is the natural Son of God.

*How is he said to be conceived by the Holy Ghost?*

Because the Holy Ghost by his incomprehensible Power, wrought his Conception supernaturally, which Fathers do naturally in the begetting of their Children: Not that any of the substance of the Holy Ghost, which is indivisible, came to his Generation in the Womb of the Virgin.

*Why is he called the Word? John 1. 1.*

As for other Reasons, declared in the Doctrine of the Trinity, so also because he is he whom the Father promised to *Adam*, *Abraham*, and all the Holy Patriarchs; to make his Promises of Salvation sure unto them: As a Man that hath one word, thinketh himself sure of the Matter that is promised.

*Why is the Word said to have been in the beginning? John 1. 1.*

Not because he began then to be: But that then he was, and therefore is from all Eternity.

*What gather you out of this that he is the Wisdom of God?*

That our Saviour is from Everlasting, as well as his Father: For it were an horrible thing to think that there were a time when God wanted Wisdom.

*Why is he called the Character or Image of his Father? Heb. 1. 3.*

Because God by him hath made himself manifest to the World in the Creation, and especially in the Redemption of it.

*What learn you from hence?*

That whosoever seeketh to come to the Knowledge of God, must come to it by Christ.

*How*

*How is the Godhead of Christ proved?*

Nor only by abundant Testimonies of *Scripture*, (*Esa.* 7. 14. & 9. 6. & 25. 9. *John* 1. 1. & 20. 28. *Rom.* 9. 5. 1 *John* 5. 20.) but also by his *Miracles*, especially in the raising of himself from death, *Rom.* 1. 4. together with the Continuance and Conquest of the Gospel, *Acts* 5. 39. and that not by carnal Power or Policy, but only by the Power of his Spirit, *Zach.* 4. 6. and patient suffering of his Saints, *Rev.* 12. 11.

*Why was it requisite that our Saviour should be God?*

Because, first, none can satisfy for Sin, nor be a Saviour of Souls, but God alone, *Psal.* 49. 7. 1 *Thess.* 1. 10. For no Creature, though never so good, is worthy to redeem another Man's Sin; which deserveth everlasting Punishment. Why it was requisite that Christ should be God.

Secondly, The Satisfaction for our sins must be infinitely meritorious: otherwise it cannot satisfy the infinite Wrath of God that was offended: Therefore, that the Work of our Redemption might be such, it was necessary our Saviour should be God; to the end his Obedience and Sufferings might be of an infinite Price and Worth, *Acts* 20. 28. *Heb.* 9. 14.

Thirdly, No finite Creature was able to abide and overcome the infinite Wrath of God, and the Sufferings due unto us for our sins. Therefore must our Saviour be God, that he might abide the Burthen of God's Wrath in his flesh, sustaining and upholding the Manhood by his Divine Power; and so might get again and restore to us the Righteousness and Life which we have lost.

Fourthly, Our Saviour must vanquish all the Enemies of our Salvation, and overcome Satan, Hell, Death, and Damnation: Which no Creature could ever do. *Rom.* 1. 4. *Heb.* 2. 14.

Fifthly, He must also give Efficacy to his Satisfaction; raising us up from the Death of Sin, and putting us in Possession of eternal Life.

Sixthly, He must give us his Spirit; and by it seal these Graces to our Souls, and renew our corrupt Nature: Which only God can do.

*What Comfort have we then by this, that Christ is God?*

Hereby we are sure that he is able to save, by reconciling us to the Father.

*And what by this that he is the Son?*

That uniting us unto himself, he may make us Children unto his Heavenly Father, *Heb.* 2. 10.

*Being God before all Worlds, how became he Man?*

He took to himself a true Body and a reasonable Soul; being conceived in time by the Holy Ghost, and born of the Virgin MARY, *Heb.* 1. 6. *Job.* 1. 14. *Mat.* 1. 18, 20. *Luk.* 1. 31, 32. & 2. 7. and so became very Man, like unto us in all things, even in our Infirmities, sin only excepted, *Heb.* 2. 7. In which respect he hath the Name of the *Son of Man* given unto him, *Mat.* 26. 24. because he was of the nature of Man according to the Flesh: And the *Son of David*, *Mat.* 9. 27. because he sprang of the Lineage and Stock of David. Of the human Nature of Christ.

*How doth it appear that he was true Man?*

Besides manifold Predictions and clear Testimonies of *Scripture*, *Gen.* 3. 15. *Heb.* 2. 17. 1 *Tim.* 2. 5. &c. it is abundantly proved by plentiful Experiments; especially by his partaking of humane Infirmities, his Conception, Birth, Life, and Death, 1 *Pet.* 3. 18. *John* 4. 6, 7. *Luke* 1. 31. & 2. 7. *Heb.* 2. 9,

*How by his Conception ?*

Because according to the Flesh he was made of a Woman, and formed of her only Substance (she continuing still a pure Virgin) by the Power of the most High, *Rom. 1. 3. Gal. 4. 4. Luke 1. 34, 35.*

*Why is he said to be born ?* *Mat. 2. 1.*

To assure us of his true Humanity, even by his Infancy and Infirmity, *Luke 2. 7.*

*Why was he born of a Virgin ?* *Luke 1. 27.*

That he might be Holy and without Sin: The natural course of Original Corruption being prevented, because he came not by natural Propagation.

*What learn you from hence ?*

That God is faithful as well as merciful; ever making good his Word by his Work in due season, *Luke 1. 20, 45. Acts 3. 18, 24.*

*Why is there mention of the Virgin by her Name Mary ?* *Luke 1. 27.*

For more Certainty of his Birth and Lineage, *Mat. 1. 16. Heb. 7. 14. 2 Tim. 2. 8.* as also to acquaint us with his great Humility in so great Poverty, *Luke 2. 24.* compared with *Levit. 12. 8.*

*What gather you from hence ?*

The marvellous Grace of Christ, who being rich, for our sakes became poor; that we through his Poverty might be made rich, *2 Cor. 8. 9.*

*Did he not pass through the Virgin Mary (as some say) like as Saffron passeth through a Bag, and Water through a Pipe or Conduit ?*

God forbid: He was made of the Seed of David, and was a Plant of the Root of Jesse: For he took humane Nature of the Virgin; and so the Word was made Flesh.

*If he was only made Flesh, it would seem that the Godhead served instead of a Soul unto him ?*

Flesh is here taken according to the use of Scripture for the whole Man, both Body and Soul: Otherwise our Saviour should not have been a perfect Man; and our Souls must have perished everlastingly, except his Soul had satisfied for them.

*Was not the Godhead turned into Flesh, seeing it is said he was made Flesh ?*

In no wise: No more than he was turned into Sin, or into a Curse, because it is said, He was made Sin, and made a Curse for us, *2 Cor. 5. 21. Gal. 3. 13.*

*If the Godhead be not changed into the Manhood, is it not at least mingled with it ?*

Nothing less: For then he should be neither God nor Man; for things mingled together cannot retain the Name of one of the Simples; as Honey and Oyl being mingled together, cannot be called Honey, or Oyl. 2. The Properties of the Godhead cannot agree to the Properties of the Manhood, nor the Properties of the Manhood to the Godhead. For, as the Godhead cannot thirst, no more can the Mankind be in all or many Places at once. Therefore the Godhead was neither turned nor transfused into the Manhood, but both the Divine Nature keepeth entire all his Essential Properties to it self; so that the Humanity is neither Omnipotent, Omniscient, Omnipresent, &c. and the humane keepeth also his Properties and Actions: Though oft that which is proper to the one Nature, is spoken of the Person denominated from the other: Which is by reason of the Union of both Natures into one Person.

*The Glory of the Godhead being more plentifully communicated with the Manhood after his Resurrection; did it not then swallow up the Truth thereof, as the whole Sea one drop of Oyl?*

No: For these two Natures continued still distinct, in Substance, Properties and Actions, and still remained one and the same Christ.

*Why did he not take the Nature of Angels upon him?* Heb. 2. 16.

Because he had no meaning to save Angels; for that they had committed the Sin against the Holy Ghost, falling maliciously into Rebellion against God without Temptation.

*Are not the Elect Angels any way benefited by the human Nature of Christ?*

No: His Humanity only reacheth to sinful Mankind: For if he had meant to have benefited Angels by taking another Nature, he would have taken their Nature upon him.

*How is it then said, Ephes. 1. 10. & Col. 1. 20. that he reconciled things in Heaven?*

This is to be understood of the Saints then in Heaven, and not any way of the Angels: Although by the second Person of the Trinity the Angels were elected, and are by him confirmed, so that they shall stand for evermore.

*Why was it requisite that our Mediator should be Man? Was it not sufficient that he was God?*

Why it was requisite that Christ should be Man.

No: It was further requisite that he should be Man also; because

1. Our Saviour must suffer and die for our Sins: Which the Godhead could not do.

2. Our Saviour also must perform Obedience to the Law: Which in his Godhead he could not do.

3. He must be Man of Kin to our Nature offending; that he might satisfy the Justice of God in the same Nature wherein it was offended, *Rom. 8. 3. 1 Cor. 15. 21. Heb. 2. 14, 15, 16.* For the Righteousness of God did require, that the same Nature which had committed the sin, should also pay and make amends for Sin; and consequently that only Nature should be punished which did offend in Adam. Man therefore having sinned, it was requisite for the appeasing of God's Wrath, that Man himself should die for sin: The Man Christ Jesus offering up himself a Sacrifice of a sweet-smelling Saviour unto God for us; *1 Tim. 2. 5. Heb. 2. 9, 10. & 14, 15. Rom. 5. 12, 15. Ephes. 5. 2.*

4. It is for our Comfort, that thereby we might have free access to the Throne of Grace, and might find help in our Necessities; having such an High Priest as was in all things tempted like unto our selves, and was acquainted with our Infirmities in his own Person, *Heb. 4. 15, 16. & 5. 2.*

5. As we must be saved, so likewise must we be sanctified by one of our own Nature: That as in the first Adam there was a Spring of Human Nature corrupted, derived unto us by natural Generation; so in the second Adam there might be a Fountain of the same Nature restored, which might be derived unto us by Spiritual Regeneration.

*What comfort then have you by this, that Christ is Man?*

Hereby I am assured that Christ is fit to suffer the Punishment of my sin; and being Man himself, is also meet to be more pitiful and merciful unto Men.

*What by this, that he is both God and Man?*

By this I am most certainly assured that he is able most fully to finish the

Work of my Salvation : Seeing that he is Man, he is meet to suffer for sin; as he is God, he is able to bear the Punishment of Sin, and to overcome the suffering : Being by the one fit, and by the other able to discharge the Office of a Mediator. Man's Nature can suffer Death, but not overcome it; the Divine Nature cannot suffer, but can overcome all things: Our Mediator therefore being Partaker of both Natures, is by the one made fit to suffer, by the other able to overcome whatsoever was to be laid upon him for making of our Peace.

*Are these his Natures separated?*

Of the Union  
of the two Na-  
tures of Christ.

No verily : For though they be still distinguished (as hath been said) in Substance, Properties and Actions: Yet were they inseparably joined together in the first moment: the Holy Virgin conceived, and made not two, but one Person of a Mediator, 2 Cor. 13. 4. 1 Pet. 3. 18. 1 Cor. 15. 27, 28. the Holy Ghost sanctifying the Seed of the Woman (which otherwise could not be joynd to the Godhead) and uniting two Natures in one Person; God and Man in one Christ, Luke 1. 35, 42. Rom. 9. 5. 1 Tim. 2. 5. John 1. 14. a Mytther in that no Angel, much less Man, is able to comprehend.

*Why so?*

For that the Manhood of our Saviour Christ is personally united unto the Godhead : Whereas the Angels, of much greater Glory than Men, are not able to abide the Prefence of God, Eisa. 6. 2.

*Was this Union of the Body and Soul with the Godhead, by taking of the Manhood to the Godhead, or by infusing the Godhead into the Manhood?*

By a Divine and Miraculous assuming of the Human Nature (which before had no Subsistence in it self) to have his Being and Subsistence in the Divine; leaving of its own natural Personship, which in ordinary Men maketh a perfect Person. For otherwise there should be two Persons and two Sons, one of the Holy Virgin Mary, and another of God : Which were most prejudicial to Salvation.

*What then is the Personal Union of the two Natures in Christ?*

The assuming of the Human Nature (having no Subsistency in it self) into the Person of the Son of God, (John 1. 14. Heb. 2. 16.) and in that Person uniting it to the Godhead; so making one Christ, God and Man, Mat. 1. 23.

*Can you shadow out this Conjunction of two Natures into one Person by some earthly Resistance?*

We see one Tree may be set into another, and it groweth in the Stock thereof, and becometh one and the same Tree, though there be two Natures or Kinds of Fruit still remaining. So in the Son of God made Man, though there be two Natures; yet both being united into one Person, there is but one Son of God, and one Christ.

*What was the Cause that the Person of the Son of God did not joyne it self to a perfect Person of Man?*

1. Because that then there could not be a Personal Union of both to make but one perfect Mediator.

2. Then there should be four Persons in the Trinity.

3. The Works of each of the Natures could not be counted the Works of the whole Person: Whereas now by this Union of both Natures in one Person, the Obedience of Christ performed in the Manhood is become of infinite Merit, as being the Obedience of God: And thereupon, Acts 20. 28. God is said to have purchased his Church with his own Blood.

*What*

*What gather you hence ?*

That his Name is *Wonderful*, Efa. 9. 6. and his Sacrifice most effectual, offering himself without spot unto God for us, Heb. 9. 14, 26.

*What further Fruit have we by this Conjunction ?*

That whereas God hath no Shape comprehensible, either to the Eye of the Body or of the Soul, and the Mind of Man cannot rest but in a Representation of something, that his Mind and Understanding can in some sort reach unto : Considering God in the second Person in the Trinity, which hath taken our Nature, whereby God is revealed in the Flesh, he hath whereupon to stay his Mind.

*How did the Jews then before his coming, which could not do so ?*

They might propose to themselves the second Person that should take our Nature, and the same also that had appeared sundry times in the shape of a Man, Gen. 18. 1, 2. & 19. 1, 2. Albeit our Privilege is greater than theirs ; as they that behold him as he is, where they did behold him as he should be.

This is Master Cartwright's Judgment : Which would be further considered of.

*Hitherto of the Person of Christ. What is his Office ?*

To be a Mediator betwixt God and Man : And so to discharge all that is requisite for the reconciling of us unto God, and the working of our Salvation, 1 Tim. 2. 5. Heb. 9. 15. John 14. 6. whence also he is called an Intercessor and an Advocate : Because he prayeth for us to the Father, and pleadeth our Cause before his Judgment Seat.

Of Christ's Office of Mediatorship.

*What one must he be that should undertake this Mediation ?*

One which is indeed a Man, (Heb. 2. 14, 15, 16.) and perfectly Righteous without Exception, (1 John 3. 5.) and more mighty than all Creatures, that is, he which also is very true God, Acts 20. 28.

*Can no bare Man be Mediator betwixt God and Man ?*

No verily : For Eli saith, 1 Sam. 2. 25. that a Man offending a Man, it may be accorded by the Judges ; but if he offend against God, there is no Man can make his Peace.

*Is there then any other Mediator to be acknowledged besides our Lord Jesus Christ ?*

That there is but one Mediator.

None but he : Because, 1. There is but *one God*, and therefore but *one Mediator between God and Man*, 1 Tim. 2. 5.

2. He only is fit, as he only that partaketh both the Natures of God and Man ; which is necessary for him that should come between both.

3. That is declared by the Types of *Moses*, who alone was in the Mountain : Of *Aaron*, or the High Priest, who only might enter into the *Sanctum Sanctorum*, or the Holy Place of Holy Places.

4. The same appeareth by the Similitudes wherewith he is set forth, Job. 10. 9. *I am the door ; by me if any Man enter in, he shall be saved, &c.* and Job. 14. 6. *I am the way : No Man cometh to the Father but by me.*

5. He alone hath found sufficient Salvation, for all those that come unto him, Heb. 7. 25. John 10.

*How cometh it then to pass, that this Office is given unto Moses, and unto others ? Gal. 4. 19. Deut. 5. 31.*

They are only *Ministers of the Word* ; not *Authors of the Work of Reconciliation*, 2 Cor. 5. 19. Job 33. 23.

*But is there no need of any other Mediator for us unto Christ ?*

No : For he is the next of Kin, (Job 19. 25.) most merciful, most faithful, (Heb. 2. 17.) and able perfectly to save all those that come to God through him, Heb. 7. 25.

*How is our Saviour graced by God, and commended unto us in his Office of Mediation?*

First, In that he came not to it, but being called of God his Father in a special sort, *Esa. 42. 1. Heb. 5. 4, 5.*

Secondly, In that being called, he discharged it most faithfully: In which respect he is compared to *Moses, faithful in all the House of God*; and preferred before him, as the Master before the Servant, *Heb. 3. 2, 3, 5, 6.*

*What use are we to make of his Calling by God?*

1. Hereby we learn, that none should presume to take a charge in God's Church, without calling; since he did not, *Heb. 5. 4, 5.*

2. There ariseth hereby great Comfort unto us, in that he thrust not himself in, but came by the Will of God and his Appointment. For hereby we are more assured of the good Will of God to save us, seeing he hath called his Son unto it; and that he will accept of all that he shall do for us, as that which himself hath ordained.

*What learn you from his Faithfulness?*

That he hath left nothing undone, of things that belong to our Reconciliation.

*What Names are given him in regard of this Office of Mediation?*

The Name of *Jesus* and of *Christ*, *Luke 2. 21, 26. Mat. 16. 16.*

*Why is he called Jesus?*

He is called *Jesus*, that is, a *Saviour*: Because he came to save his People from their sins, (*Mat. 1. 21.*) and there is no other means whereby we may in part or in whole be delivered from them.

*What Comfort have you by this?*

1. My Comfort is even the same which I have said, and the rather, because God from Heaven gave him his Name, and the Church on Earth hath subscribed thereunto.

2. That nothing can hurt me, so long as my Faith doth not fail me, *Mark 9. 23.*

*Why is he called Christ?*

He is called *Christ*, that is, *Anointed*: Because he was anointed of God to be a *Prophet, Priest, and King*, for all his People, and for me, *Esa. 61. 1, 2, 3, 4. Acts 4. 26, 27. Luke 4. 18. Psal. 45. 7. & 110. 1, 2, 3, 4. Heb. 1. 9. & 7. 1, &c.*

*Who was he that was thus Anointed.*

Christ God and Man: Though the outward anointing, together with the Name of Christ, appertained to all those that represented any part of the Office of his Mediatorship; namely, to *Prophets, Priests, and Kings*, which were figures of him.

*Was Christ anointed with material Oyl, as they were?*

No: But he was anointed with all Gifts and Graces of the Spirit of God needful for a Mediator, and that without measure, *Esa. 61. 1. Luke 4. 18. John 3. 34.*

*What learn you from hence?*

That all fulness of Grace dwelling in Christ, all true Christians shall receive of his Fulness, Grace for Grace, *John 1. 14, 16.*

*Whereunto was Christ anointed?*

Unto the Offices of his Mediation; by discharging whereof, he might be made an All-sufficient Saviour.



*Wherein standeth his Mediation? And what are the parts thereof?*

Being to be a *Mediator* between *God* and *Man*, (1 *Tim.* 2. 5.) the first part of his *Mediation* must be exercised in things concerning *God*, wherein consisteth his *Priestly Office*, (*Heb.* 2. 17. & 5. 1. & 7. 24.) the second in things concerning *Man*, wherein he exerciseth his *Prophetical* and *Kingly Function*.

*Why must he be a Priest?*

To offer *Sacrifice* for his Church, and to reconcile us unto *God*, *Psal.* 110. 4. *Heb.* 3. 1. & 4. 14. & 5. 5, 6. & 7. 3, 17. & 8. 2, 3. & 9. 11, 14. otherwise we should never have been justified, nor sanctified, and so not have been at peace with *God*.

*Why must he be a Prophet, Doctor or Apostle?*

To teach his Church, *Deut.* 18. 15, 18. *Acts* 3. 22. & 7. 37. *Luke* 4. 18. otherwise we should never have known *God*, nor the things that belong unto him, *John* 1. 18.

*Why must he be a King or Prince?*

To rule and govern his Church, *Psal.* 110. 1, 2, 3. *Luke* 1. 33. otherwise we should never have been delivered from the Captivity of *Sin* and *Satan*, nor be put in Possession of eternal Life.

*What is his Priesthood?*

It is the first part of his *Mediation*, whereby he worketh the means of *Sal-* Of Christ's  
*vation* in the behalf of *Mankind*; and so appeaseth and reconcileth *God* to Priesthood.  
his *Elect*, *Heb.* 5. 1, 5. & 7. 1, 3, 13, 17. & 13. 11, 12.

*Where is the Doctrine of Christ's Priesthood especially handled?*

In the *Epistle* to the *Hebrews*: And namely, in the seventh Chapter, from the 13th *vers.* to the end, wherein is contained a Declaration of his *Office* of *Priesthood*, being compared with the *Priesthood* of *Aaron*: The *Apostle* shewing, 1. What manner of one he ought to be that hath this *Office*. 2. How he executeth it.

*Wherein standeth the manner of him that shall have this Office?*

Partly without him, and partly within himself. Without him: As first, that he has chosen of the *Tribe* of *Judah*, and not of *Levi*: To shew that he was no *Successor* of *Aaron*, but rather was to abolish all that *Ceremonial Service* and *Offices*.

Secondly, That the *Priests* of *Levi* were appointed by the *Law* of the *fleshy Commandment*; whereas *Christ* was appointed by the *Law* of the *Power of Life*.

Thirdly, That he was installed in it by his *Father*, and appointed by an *Oath* for ever to be a *Priest*, after a new *Order* of *Melchisedec*.

*What Benefit ariseth to us in that this was confirmed by an Oath?*

It giveth unto us comfortable Assurance, that all the parts of his *Priest-*  
*hood* be performed unto us, and that he paid the ransom for our sins.

*Was not the Word of God sufficient for the Performance of this Promise, without the binding of it with an Oath?*

Yes, doubtless: But the *Lord* in this *Promise* having to deal with weak *Man*, and willing more abundantly to shew unto the *Heirs* of the *Promise* the *Stableness* of his *Counsel*, bound himself by an *Oath*, *Heb.* 6. 17.

*Whereby is the Perpetuity thereof confirmed?*

In that it did not proceed by *Succession*, as from *Aaron* to *Eleazer*, from *Eleazar* to *Phinebas*, and so by descent; but is everlasting, always abiding in him: Which is another difference of their *Priestly Office*.

*What Profit cometh to us by the Perpetuity of his Priesthood?*

That he continually maketh Intercession for us to God, and of himself alone is able to save us, coming to the Father through him.

*So much of the Quality of him that is to be Priest, which is without him.*

*What is that part which is within him?*

1. That in himself he is Holy.
2. To others harmless and innocent.
3. Undeified of others, or of any thing. And to speak in a word, he is separated from Sinners, (*Heb. 7. 26.*) In all which, he differeth from that of Aaron. For they are neither Holy in themselves, nor Innocent; neither undeified; but polluted by others.

*What is the Fruit we gather of this his Holiness, Innocency, and Undeifiedness?*

That he being Holy, Innocent, Undeified, and so consequently separated from Sinners; the same is attributed to the Faithful, and these his Properties imputed for theirs: And therefore he freeth them both from Original and Actual Sin: Contrary to their Doctrine who say, that he delivereth us from Original Sin only, and that we must make Satisfaction for Actual.

*What is the difference touching the Execution of this Office?*

1. That they offered first for themselves: He for the People only; for himself he needeth not.
2. He but once; they many times.
3. He offered himself: They something else than themselves.

*What is the use of this?*

To prove the Absoluteness, Perfection, and Excellency of this his Priesthood.

*May not the Priesthood of the Papists be overthrown by all these Arguments, and proved to be a false Priesthood?*

The Popish  
Priesthood  
overthrown.

Yes verily. For, 1. they are not of the Tribe of Judah: And so cannot succeed our Saviour. 2. They are not confirmed by an Oath from God: And therefore not perpetual. 3. They are not (as he was) Holy in themselves, but Unholy; neither Innocent, nor Undeified, but defiling others, and being defiled of them; and so not separated from sinners, but altogether sinful and set in sin. 4. They offer first for themselves, than for the People likewise many times. 5. They offer Sacrifices, which are not themselves. 6. They bring a great disgrace to the Priesthood of Christ; by preferring themselves to him, as the Sacrificer to the Sacrifice, whom they say they offer. 7. Christ hath a Priesthood that passeth not away.

*What comfort have we by the Priesthood of Christ?*

Hereby we are assured that he is our Mediator; and that we also are made Priests.

*What need was there of such a Mediator?*

Between Parties so disagreeing, the one of finite Nature offending; the other of infinite Nature offended; the one utterly disabled to do any the least good, (*2 Cor. 3. 5.*) or satisfy for the least sin, (*Job 9. 3.*) the other requiring perfect Obedience, (*Deut. 27. 26.*) and satisfaction, (*Mat. 18. 34.*) what Agreement could there be without a Mediator? *1 Sam. 2. 25.*

*In this case what was the Mediator to do?*

He was to work the means of our Salvation and Reconciliation to God.  
1. By making satisfaction for the sin of Man. 2. By making Intercession, *John 17. 19, 20. Heb. 7. 24, 25, 26, 27.* Therefore Jesus Christ our High Priest, became obedient even unto the Death, offering up himself a Sacrifice once for

for all, to make a full Satisfaction for all our sins, and maketh continual Intercession to the Father in our Name: Whereby the Wrath of God is appeased; his Justice is satisfied, and we are reconciled.

*Wherein then standeth his Satisfaction to God's Justice, which is the first part of his Priesthood?* Of Christ's Satisfaction.

In yielding that perfect Obedience, whereupon dependeth the whole merit of our Salvation, *Dan. 9. 24. Ephes. 2. 14, 15, 16.*

*What is the effect thereof towards us?*

*Redemption*, (*Luke 1. 68, 69. Heb. 9. 24, 25, 26.*) which is a Deliverance of us from Sin and the Punishment thereof, and a restoring of us to a better Life than ever Adam had, *Rom. 5. 15, 16, 17. 1 Cor. 15. 45.* For our Saviour Christ hath, *First*, redeemed us from the Power of Darknes, (*Col. 3. 13.*) namely, that woful and cursed Estate which we had justly brought upon our selves by reason of our Sins. *Secondly*, Translated us into his own Kingdom and Glory, (*Col. 1. 12, 13. 1 Cor. 2. 9.*) a far more glorious and excellent Estate than ever our first Parents had in Paradise.

*How hath Christ wrought this Redemption?*

Having taken our Nature upon him, he hath in the same as a Surety in our stead made full Satisfaction to God his Father by paying all our Debts, and so hath set us free, *Heb. 7. 22, 25.*

*What is this Debt which we owe unto God, which he hath paid for us?*

This Debt is two-fold. One is that perfect Obedience which we owe unto God in regard of that excellent Estate in which we were created, *Deut. 12. 32. Mar. 5. 17, 18.* The other is the Punishment due unto us for our Sins, in transgressing and breaking God's Covenant; which is the Curse of God, and everlasting Death, *Deut. 27. 26. Rom. 6. 23. Gal. 3. 13. & 4. 4, 5. 2 Cor. 5. 21.* All which is contained in the Law of God, which is the hand-writing between God and us concerning the Old Covenant, *Col. 2. 14.*

*How was our Saviour to make Satisfaction for this our Debt?*

1. By performing that perfect Obedience which we did owe. 2. By suffering that Punishment due unto us for our sins: That so he might put out the hand-writing betwixt God and us, and set us free.

*What then are the parts of Christ's Obedience and Satisfaction?*

His *Sufferings* and his *Righteousness*, *Phil. 2. 5, 6, 7, 8. 1 Pet. 2. 24.* For it was requisite, that he should first pay all our Debt, and satisfy God's Justice, (*Esa. 53. 5, 6. Job 33. 24.*) by a price of infinite Value, (*1 Tim. 2. 6.*) Secondly, Purchase and merit for us God's Favour, (*Ephes. 1. 6.*) and Kingdom, by a most absolute and perfect Obedience, (*Rom. 5. 19.*) By his suffering he was to merit unto us the Forgiveness of our sins; and by his fulfilling the Law he was to merit unto us Righteousness: Both which are necessarily required for our Justification.

*But how can one Man save so many?*

Because the Manhood being joyned to the Godhead, it maketh the Passion and Righteousness of Christ of infinite merit, and so we are justified by a Man that is God.

*How hath Christ made Satisfaction for our Sins by his Sufferings?*

Of Christ's Sufferings.

He endured most grievous Torments both of Body and Soul; offering up himself unto God his Father, as a Sacrifice propitiatory for all our sins, *2 Cor. 5. 21.*

*In this Oblation who was the Priest or Sacrificer?*

None

None but Christ, (*Heb.* 5. 5, 6.) and that as he was both God and Man.

*Who was the Sacrifice?*

Christ himself as he was Man consisting of Body and Soul, (*Esa.* 53. 10.)

*What was the Altar upon which he was offered?*

Christ as he was God, was the Altar on which he sacrificed himself, (*Heb.* 9. 14. & 13. 10. *Rev.* 8. 3.)

*How often was he offered?*

Never but once, (*Heb.* 9. 28.)

*Whereunto was he offered?*

Unto the Shame, Pain, Torment, and all the Miseries which are due unto us for sins. He suffering whatsoever we should have suffered, and by those grievous Sufferings making Payment for our sins, (*Esa.* 53. *Mat.* 26. 28.)

*What Profit cometh by his Sacrifice?*

By his most painful Sufferings he hath satisfied for the Sins of the whole World of his Elect, (*Esa.* 53. 5. *1 Pet.* 2. 24. *1 John* 2. 2.) and appeased the Wrath of his Father. So that hereby we receive Atonement and Reconciliation with God, our sins are taken away, and we are freed from all those Punishments of Body and Soul which our sins have deserved, (*Heb.* 9. 26.)

*How cometh it then that Christ having born the Punishment of our sins, the Godly are yet in this World so often afflicted for them with grievous Torments both of Body and Soul; and that for the most part more than the Ungodly?*

*Jer.* 12. 3.

The Sufferings of the Godly are not by desert any Satisfaction for their sins in any part; but being sanctified in the most holy Sufferings of Christ, they are Medicines against Sin: Neither is their Affliction properly a Punishment, but a fatherly Correction and Chastisement in the World, that they should not perish with the World, (*1 Cor.* 11. 32.) whereas the Wicked the longer they are spared, and the less they are punished in this Life, their danger is the greater: For God reserveth their Punishment for the Life to come.

*What gather you of this?*

That we should not grudge at the Prosperity of the Wicked, when we are in trouble. For as the Sheep and Kine are put in fat Pastures, to be prepared to the Shambles: So they, the more they receive in this Life, the nearer and the heavier is their Destruction in the Life which is to come. (*Jer.* 12. 3.)

*What are the more general things which Christ suffered in this Life?*

Infirmities in his Flesh, Indignities from the World, and Temptations from the Devil, (*Mat.* 4. 2. *Job.* 4. 6, 7. & 8. 48, 52. *Luke* 4. 2.) Hitherto belong those manifold Calamities which he did undergo, Poverty, Hunger, Thirst, Weariness, Reproach, &c.

*What Benefit doth the Godly reap hereby?*

All the Calamities and Crosses that befall them in this Life are sanctified and sweetened to them: So that now they are not Punishments of Sin, but Chastisement of a merciful Father.

*What are the more special things which he suffered at or upon his Death?*

The Weight of God's Wrath, the Terrors of Death, Sorrows of his Soul, and Torments of his Body, (*Esa.* 53. 4, 10. *Mat.* 26. 37, 38. *Luke* 22. 44. *Mat.* 26. 67.)

*What learn you from hence?*

To admire and imitate the Love of Christ, who being the Son of God, became a Man of Sorrows, even for the good of his utter Enemies, (*Ephes.* 5. 2. *1 John* 3. 16. *Rom.* 5. 7, 8.)

*What*

*What did our Saviour Christ suffer in his Soul?*

He drank the full Cup of God's Wrath filled unto him for our sakes; the whole Wrath of God due to the Sin of Man, being poured forth upon him, Christ's sufferings in his Soul. (Mat. 26. 27, 28. Luke 22. 44. Rev. 19. 15. John 11. 33, 38. Isa. 53. 5. 11.) And therefore in Soul he did abide most unspeakable Vexations, horrible Grievs, painful Troubles, fear of Mind, feeling as it were the very Pangs of Hell; into which both before, and most of all when he hanged upon the Cross, when he was cast; which caused him before his bodily Passion to grievously to complain.

*What Benefit and Comfort receive you by this?*

Hereby we have our Souls everlastingly freed from God's eternal Wrath: Christ's sufferings in his Body. And herein are comforted, because in all our grievous Temptations and Assaults, we may stay and make sure our selves by this, that Christ hath delivered us from the sorrowful Grievs and Pains of Hell.

*Now for our Saviour's bodily Sufferings: Why is it said that he suffered under Pontius Pilate? 1 Tim. 6. 13.*

For the Truth of this Story, and fulfilling of his own Prophecy, foretelling his Suffering under a foreign Jurisdiction and Authority, Mat. 20. 19. John 18. 31, 32. as likewise to teach us that he appeared willingly and of his own accord before a Moral Judge, of whom he was pronounced innocent, and yet by the same he was condemned.

*What Comfort have you hereof?*

That my Saviour thus suffering, not any whit for his own sins, but wholly for mine and for other Mens sins, before an Earthly Judge; I shall be discharged before the Heavenly Judgment Seat.

*What did he chiefly suffer under Pontius Pilate?*

He was Apprehended, Accused, Arraigned, Mocked, Scourged, Condemned and Crucified, (Mat. 26. and 27 Chapters.)

*What learn you hence?*

That he that knew no sin was made *sin* for us, that we might be made the Righteousness of God in him, 2 Cor. 5. 21. 1 Pet. 2. 24.

*Did Christ suffer these things willingly, as he suffered them innocently?*

Yes: He laid down his Life meekly, as the Sheep doth his Fleece before the Shearer, being obedient even unto the Death, Esa. 53. 7. Phil. 2. 8. Heb. 5. 8. 1 Pet. 2. 2. 22, 23.

*Unto what Death was he so obedient?*

Even unto the most reproachful, painful and dreadful Death, the Death of the Cross, Mat. 27. 30, 35, 38. Phil. 2. 8.

*Why was Christ put unto this Death of the Cross?*

Because it was not a common Death, but such a Death as was *accursed* both of God and Man: That so he being made a *Curse* for us, he might redeem us from a *Curse* due unto us, Deut. 21. 23. Gal. 3. 13.

*What Comfort have you by this?*

I am comforted in this, because I am delivered from the *Curse* which I have deserved by the Breach of the Law, and shall obtain the Blessing due unto him for keeping of the same.

*Why was it requisite that our Saviour's Soul should be separated from his Body?*

Because we were all *dead*; that so he might be the *Death of Death* for us, 2 Cor. 5. 14, 15. Heb. 2. 14. 1 Cor. 15. 54, 55. For by Sin Death came into

the World : And therefore the Justice of God could not have been satisfied for our Sins, unless Death had been joyned with his Sufferings.

*How could the Death and Suffering of Christ, which were but for a short time, be a full Satisfaction for us which have deserved eternal Death ?*

Although they were not everlasting, yet in regard of the Worthiness of the Person who suffered them, they were equivalent to everlasting Torments. Forasmuch as not a bare Man, nor an Angel did suffer them, but the eternal Son of God, (though not in his Godhead, but in our Nature which he assumed); his Person, Majesty, Deity, Goodness, Justice, Righteousness, being every way infinite and eternal, made that which he suffered, of no less force and value than eternal Torments upon others; yea, even upon all the World besides. For even as the Death of a Prince (being but a Man, and a sinful Man) is of more reckoning than the Death of an Army of other Men, because he is the Prince: Much more shall the Death and Sufferings of the Son of God, the Prince of all Princes, not finite, but every way infinite and without sin; much more, I say, shall that be of more reckoning with his Father, than the Sufferings of all the World; and the time of his Sufferings of more value (for the Worthiness of his Person) than if all the Men in the World had suffered for ever and ever.

*What use are we to make of Christ's Death and Passion ?*

1. The Consideration hereof may bring us to a sound Perswasion and feeling of our Sins: Because they have deserved so grievous a Punishment, as either the Death of the Son of God, or Hell Fire.

2. Hereby we reap unspeakeable Comfort: Forasmuch as by his Stripes we are healed, by his Blood washed; by his Sacrifice God is satisfied, and by his Death we are saved and redeemed, *1 Pet. 2. 24. Rev. 1. 5. Heb. 10. 10, 12. Rom. 5. 8, 9, 10.*

3. We learn from hence to die to our sins, and to live henceforth unto him that hath died for us, *Rom. 6. 2, 6. 2 Cor. 5. 15.*

*What befel our Saviour after his Soul was separated from his Body ?*

He was buried, *Acts 13. 29, 30.* and went to *Hades*, or (as we commonly speak) descended into Hell, *Acts 2. 31.*

*Why was it needful that Christ should be buried ?*

1. To assure us more fully that he was truly dead, *Mat. 27. 59, 60, 64, 65, 66. Acts 2. 29.*

2. That even in the Grave, the very Fortresses of Death, he might loose the Sorrows and Bands of Death, *Acts 2. 24. 1 Cor. 15. 55.*

*What is meant by his descending into Hell ?*

Not that he went unto the place of the damned; but that he went absolutely unto the Estate of the dead, *Rom. 10. 7. Ephes. 4. 9.*

*What do you call the Estate of the Dead ?*

That departing this Life, he went in his Soul into Heaven, (*Luke 23. 43.*) and was in his Body under the very Power and Dominion of Death for a season, *Acts 2. 24. Heb. 2. 14. Rom. 6. 9.*

*What Comfort have you by Christ's Death, Burial, and lying under the Power of Death ?*

1. I am comforted, because my sins are fully discharged in his Death, and so buried, that they shall never come into Remembrance.

2. My Comfort is the more, because by the Vertue of his Death and Burial Sin shall be killed in me, and buried, so that henceforth it shall have no Power to reign over me.

1 Cor. 2. 8.  
Acts 20. 28.  
2 Cor. 5. 16.

Uses of  
Christ's  
Passion.

Christ's Burial.

His descend-  
ing into Hell.

3. I need not to fear Death, seeing that Sin which is the sting of Death is taken away by the Death of Christ, and that now Death is made unto me an entrance into Life.

*Hitherto of his Sufferings: What is the other part of his Satisfaction?*

His perfect *Righteousness*: Whereby he did that which we were not able to do, and absolutely fulfilled the whole Law of God for us, *Psal.* 40. 7, 8. *Rom.* 3. 19. & 5. 19. Christ's Righteousness in fulfilling the Law.

*Why was it necessary, that Christ should as well fulfil the Law, as suffer for us?*

Because as by his Sufferings he took away our Unrighteousness, and freed us from the Punishment due to us for our sins; so by performing for us absolute Obedience to the whole Law of God, he hath merited our Righteousness (making us just and holy in the sight of God) and purchased eternal Happiness for us in the Life to come, *2 Cor.* 5. 21. *Gal.* 4. 4, 5. *1 Cor.* 1. 30. *Rom.* 8. 3, 4. For as we are made Unrighteous by Adam's sin; so are we made fully and wholly Righteous, being justified by a Man that is God.

*How manifold is the Righteousness of our Saviour?*

Two-fold: { Original, and Actual.

*What is his Original Righteousness?*

The perfect Integrity and Pureness of his human Nature; which in him was without all Guile, and the least stain of Corruption, *Heb.* 7. 26. Christ's Original Righteousness.

*Being very Man, how could he be without sin?*

The Course of natural Corruption was prevented, because he was not gotten, after the ordinary Course, by Man; but was conceived in the Womb of a Virgin, without the help of Man, by the immediate Power and Operation of the Holy Ghost, forming him of the only Substance of the Woman, and perfectly sanctifying that Substance in the Conception, *Luke* 1. 34, 35, 41. So was he born Holy, and without Sin, whereunto all other Men by Nature are subject.

*Why was it necessary that Christ should be conceived without sin?*

First, Because otherwise the Godhead and Manhood could not be joyned together. For God can have no Communion with Sin, much less be united unto it in a Personal Union.

Secondly, Being our Priest, he must be holy, harmless, undefiled, and perfectly just without exception, *Heb.* 7. 26. *1 Joh.* 3. 5. For if he had been a Sinner himself, he could not have satisfied for the sins of other Men: Neither could it be, that an unholy thing should make us holy.

*What Fruit then and Benefit have we by his Original Righteousness?*

First, His pure Conception is imputed unto us, and the Corruption of our Nature covered from God's Eyes, whilst his Righteousness as a Garment is put upon us.

Secondly, Our Original Sin is hereby daily diminished and fretted away, and the contrary Holiness increased in us.

*What is his Actual Holiness?*

That absolute Obedience whereby he fulfilled in Act every Branch of the Law of God; walking in all the Commandments, perfectly performing both in Thought, Word, and Deed, whatsoever the Law of God did command, and falling in no Duties, either in the Worship and Service of God, or Duties towards Men, *Mat.* 3. 15. *Rom.* 5. 18. & 4. 8. Christ's Actual Holiness.

*What Benefit have we thereby?*

1. All our Actual Sins are covered, while we are clothed by Faith with his Actual Holiness.

2. We are enabled by him daily to die unto Sin, and more and more to live unto Righteousness of Life.

*But receive we no more by Christ, than those Blessings which we lost in Adam?*

Yes. We receive an high Degree of Felicity by the second *Adam*, more than we lost by the first, *Rom. 5. 1.* For being by Faith incorporated into him, and by Communion of his Spirit unseparably knit unto him: We become the Children and Heirs of God, and Fellow-heirs with Christ Jesus, (*Gal. 4. 6, 7. 1 Cor. 12. 12, 13. Rom. 8. 9, 10.*) who carrieth us as our Head unto the highest Degree of Happiness in the Kingdom of Heaven, where we shall lead, not a natural Life, as *Adam* did in Paradise, with Meat, Drink, and Sleep; but a Spiritual Life in an unspeakable manner and Glory.

Of the Intercession of Christ.

*There remaineth yet the second part of Christ's Priesthood: Namely, his Intercession. What is that?*

It is that Work, whereby he alone doth continually appear before his Father in Heaven to make request for his Elect in his own Worthiness: Making the Faithful and all their Prayers acceptable unto him, by applying the Merits of his own perfect Satisfaction unto them; and taking away all the Pollution that cleaveth to their good Works, by the merits of his Passion, *Rom. 8. 34. Heb. 9. 24. & 12. 24. 1 John 2. 1, 2. 1 Pet. 2. 5. Exod. 28. 36, 37, 38.*

*In how many things doth this Intercession consist?*

In five. First, In making continual request in our Name unto God the Father, by the vertue of his own Merits. -

Secondly, In freeing us from the Accusations of our Adversaries. -

Thirdly, In teaching us by his Spirit, to pray and send up Supplications for our selves and others. -

Fourthly, In presenting our Prayers unto God, and making them acceptable in his sight. -

Fifthly, In covering our sins from the sight of God, by applying unto us the Vertue of his Mediation. -

*What Fruit then have we by his Intercession?*

1. It doth reconcile us to the Father for those sins which we do daily commit. -

2. Being reconciled in him, we can pray to God with Boldness, and call him Father. -

3. Through the Intercession of our Saviour Christ, our good Works are of accept before God. -

*How are we made Priests unto God, by our Communion with Christ?*

Being sanctified by him, and our Persons received into favour, (*Ephes. 1. 6.*) we have Freedom and Boldness to draw near and offer our selves, Souls, and Bodies, and all that we have, as a reasonable Sacrifice to God the Father. And so we are admitted, as a Spiritual Priesthood, (*1 Pet. 2. 5.*) to offer up the Sacrifices of our Obedience, Prayers and Thanksgiving: Which howsoever imperfect in themselves, (*Esa. 64. 6.*) and deserving rather Punishment than Reward, (*Psal. 143. 2. Tit. 3. 5.*) are yet, and our Persons, made acceptable unto GOD, and have Promise of Reward, (*Mat. 10. 41, 42.*) by the only Merit and Intercession of the same our High Priest.



*So much of our Saviour's Priestly Office, which is exercised in things concerning God. How doth he exercise his Office in things concerning Man?*

By communicating unto Man that Grace and Redemption which he hath purchased from his Father, *Rom. 5. 15, 17, 19. John 5. 21. & 17. 2, 6. Luke 4. 18, 19.*

*What parts of his Office doth he exercise herein?*

His Prophetical and Kingly Office, *Acts 3. 22, 23. Psal. 2. 6, 7, 8.*

*What is this Prophetical Office?*

The Office of instructing his Church, by revealing unto it the way and means of Salvation, and declaring the whole Will of his Father unto us. In which respect he was, he is, and ever shall be our Prophet, Doctor, or Apostle, *Esa. 61. 1, 2, 3, 4. Psal. 2. 6, 7. Luke 4. 18. Mat. 17. 5. & 23. 8, 9, 10. Heb. 3. 1, 2. Acts 7. 37, 38.*

The Prophetical Office of Christ.

*For what Reasons must Christ be a Prophet?*

First, To reveal and to deliver unto his People so much of the Will of God as is needful for their Salvation.

Secondly, To open and expound the same, being delivered.

Thirdly, To make them understand and believe the same.

Fourthly, To purge his Church from Errors.

Fifthly, To place Ministers in his Church to teach his People.

*In what respect do you say that he is the only Teacher of his Church?*

1. That he only knowing the Father as his Son, hath the Prerogative to reveal him of himself, and others by him to us. For no Man knoweth the Father but the Son, and he to whom the Son will reveal him, *Mat. 11. 27.*

2. In that he is only able to cause our Hearts to believe and understand the Matter he doth teach and reveal.

*What were then the Prophets and Apostles?*

They were his Disciples and Servants, and spake by his Spirit, *1 Pet. 1. 10, 11. & 3. 19. Nehem. 9. 30. Ephes. 2. 17.*

*What difference is there between the teaching of Christ, and of the Prophets and Ministers sent of him?*

1. Christ taught with another Authority than ever did any other Minister before, or after him, *Mat. 5. 22, 23, 32, 34, 44. & 7. 28, 29. Mark 1. 22.*

2. By vertue of his Prophetical Office, he did not only bring an outward sound unto the Ear, but wrought (as he did before his coming, and as he doth now by the Ministry of his Word) an Alteration of the Mind, so far as to the clearing of the Understanding.

*How then doth our Saviour perform his Prophetical Office?*

Two ways: Inwardly, and Outwardly.

*How Inwardly?*

By the teaching and Operation of the Holy Spirit, *John 6. 45. Acts 16. 14.*

*How Outwardly?*

By opening the whole Will of his Father; and confirming the same with so many Signs and Wonders.

*How did he this?*

Both in his own Person, when he was upon the Earth, (*Heb. 2. 3.*) as a Minister of the Circumcision, (*Rom. 15. 8.*) but with the Authority of the Law-giver, (*Mat. 7. 29.*) and by his Servants the Ministers, (*Mat. 10. 40. Luke 10. 16.*) from the beginning of the World to the end thereof. Before his Incarnation, by the Prophets, Priests, and Scribes of the Old Testament, (*Heb. 1. 1. 1 Pet.*

1 *Pet.* 1. 11, 12. & 3. 18, 19. 2 *Pet.* 1. 19, 20, 21. *Hof.* 4. 6, 7. *Matth.* 2. 5, 6, 17. & 23. 37.) and *since* to the World's end by his Apostles and Ministers, called and fitted by him for that purpose, (2 *Cor.* 4. 6. & 5. 19, 20. *Ephes.* 4. 8, 11, 12, 13.)

*How doth it appear that he hath opened the whole Will of his Father unto us?*

Both by his own Testimony, *John* 15. 15. *I call you no more Servants, because the Servant knoweth not what his Master doth: But I call you Friends, because all which I have heard of my Father, I have made known unto you.* And by the Apostles Comparison, *Heb.* 3. preferring him before *Moses*, though faithful in God's House.

*In what respect is our Saviour preferred before Moses?*

1. As the Builder to the House, or to one Stone of the House.
2. *Moses* was only Servant in the House; our Saviour Master over the House.
3. *Moses* was a Witness only, and Writer of things to be revealed; but our Saviour was the end and finisher of things.

*What learn you from hence?*

1. That it is a foul Error in them, who think that our Saviour Christ (so faithful) hath not delivered all things pertaining to the necessary Instruction and Government of the Church; but left them to the Traditions and Inventions of Men.
2. That fith our Saviour was so faithful in his Office, that he hath concealed nothing that was committed to him to be declared: The Ministers of the Word should not suppress in silence, for Fear or Flattery, the things that are necessarily to be delivered, and that are in their times to be revealed.
3. That we should rest abundantly contented with that CHRIST hath taught, rejecting whatsoever else the boldness of Men would put upon us.

*Did he first begin to be the Prophet, Doctor, or Apostle of his Church when he came into the World?*

No, But when he opened first his Fathers Will unto us, by the Ministry of his Servants the Prophets, 1 *Pet.* 1. 10, 11. & 3. 19. *Heb.* 3. 7.

*Is his Prophetical Office the same now in the time of the Gospel, that it was before and under the Law?*

It is in substance one and the same: But it differeth in the manner and measure of Revelation. For the same Doctrine was revealed by the Ministry of the Prophets before the Law, by Word alone: After by Word written: And in the time of the Gospel more plainly and fully by the Apostles and Evangelists.

*What have we to gather hence, that Christ taught and teacheth by the Prophets, Apostles, and Evangelists?*

1. In what Estimation we ought to have the Books of the Old Testament; fith the same Spirit spake then that speaketh now, and the same Christ.
2. We must carry our selves in the hearing of the Word of God not to harden our hearts, *Heb.* 3. 8, 15. forasmuch as the careless and fruitless hearing thereof, hardneth Men to further Judgment. For it is a two edged Sword, to strike to Life, or to strike to Death: It is either the favour of Life to Life, or the favour of Death to Death, 2 *Cor.* 2. 16.

*How doth the Apostle press this?* *Heb.* 3. 8, 9, 10, &c.

First, He aggravateth the refusal of this Office of our Saviour against the *Israelites*: By the Time, forty Years; by the Place, the Wilderness; and by the

the multitude of his Benefits. Then he maketh an Application thereof, *verf.* 12, 13. confifting of two parts: 1. A removing from Evil. 2. A moving to Good.

*What comfort have we by the Prophetical Office of our Saviour?*

1. Hereby we are fure, that he will lead us into all Truth, revealed in his Word, needful for God's Glory, and our Salvation.

2. We are in fome fort Partakers of the Office of his Prophecy, by the Knowledge of his Will. For he maketh all his to prophesie in their measure, enabling them to teach themselves and their Brethren, by comforting, counselling, and exhorting one another privately to Good things, and withdrawing one another from Evil, as occasion serveth, *Acts* 2. 17, 18.

*So much of the Prophetical Office of our Saviour Christ. What is his Kingly Office?* Of the Kingly Office of Christ.

It is the Exercise of that Power given him by God over all, (*Pfalms* 110. 1. *Ezek.* 34. 24. *John* 17. 2.) and the Possession of all, (*Mat.* 28. 18. *Pfal.* 2. 8, &c.) for the Spiritual Government and Salvation of his Elect, (*Esa.* 9. 7. *Luke* 1. 32, 33.) and for the Destruction of his and their Enemies, (*Pfal.* 45. 5.)

*For what Reasons must Christ be a King?*

1. That he might gather together all his Subjects into one one Body of the Church out of the World.

2. That he might bountifully bestow upon them, and convey unto them all the aforesaid means of Salvation: Guiding them unto everlasting Life by his Word and Spirit.

3. That he might appoint Laws and Statutes, which should direct his People, and bind their Consciences to the Obedience of the same.

4. That he might rule and govern them, and keep them in Obedience to his Laws.

5. That he might appoint Officers and a settled Government in his Church, whereby it might be ordered.

6. That he might defend them from the Violence and Outrage of all their Enemies both Corporal and Spiritual.

7. That he might bestow many notable Privileges and Rewards upon them.

8. That he might execute his Judgments upon the Enemies of his Subjects.

*How doth he shew himself to be a King?*

By all that Power which he did manifest, as well in vanquishing Death and Hell, as in gathering the People unto himself which he had formerly ransomed, and in ruling them being gathered; as also in defending of them, and applying of those Blessings unto them which he hath purchased for them.

*How did he manifest that Power?*

First, In that being dead and buried, he rose from the Grave, quickned his dead Body, ascended into Heaven, and now sitteth at the right Hand of his Father, with full Power and Glory in Heaven, *Ephes.* 4. 8. *Acts* 2. 9.

Secondly, In governing of his Church in this World, (*1 Cor.* 15. 25, 26, 27, 28.) continually inspiring and directing his Servants by the Divine Power of his Holy Spirit, according to his Holy Word, (*Esa.* 9. 7. & 30. 21.)

Thirdly, By his last Judgment in the World to come, *Mat.* 25. 24, 31, 33, 34.

*Why is Christ Jesus also called our Lord?* *1 Cor.* 1. 2.

Because he is the Lord of Glory and Life that hath bought us, our Head that must govern us, and our Sovereign that subdues all our Enemies unto

us, *Acts* 3. 15. *1 Cor.* 2. 8. *1 Pet.* 1. 19. *Ephes.* 1. 22. *Joshua* 5. 14, 15. *Heb.* 2. 10, 14, 15.

*How hath he bought us?*

Not with Gold or Silver, but with his precious Blood he hath purchased us to be a peculiar People to himself, *1 Pet.* 1. 18, 19.

*What comfort have you by this?*

Seeing he hath paid such a Price for us, he will not suffer us to perish.

*What learn you from hence, that Christ is our Head to govern us?*

To obey his Commandments, and bear his Rebukes and Chastisements, *Luke* 6. 46. *John* 14. 15. *Col.* 3. 23, 24.

*In what place of Scripture is the Doctrine of Christ's Kingdom specially laid down?*

In *Esa.* 9. vers. 6, 7. *For unto us a Child is born, and unto us a Son is given: and the Government is upon his Shoulder, and he shall call his Name, Wonderful Counsellor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, the Prince of Peace. The Increase of his Government and Peace shall have none end: And he shall sit upon the Throne of David, and upon his Kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with Judgment, and with Justice, from henceforth even for ever: The Zeal of the Lord of Hosts will perform this.*

*What are we here taught concerning Christ's Kingdom?*

The Benefits that we receive by it, and the Cause of it.

*How is the former set forth?*

By Declaration, First, of his Person, that he is a Child born, namely, God made Man: Whereof hath been spoken.

Secondly, Of his Properties; with the Effects of the same.

*How are his Properties here expressed?*

They are, first, generally set forth by Comparison of the Unlikelihood of his Kingdom with the Regiments of Worldly Potentates.

*What difference or Inequality is there?*

That whereas other Kings execute Matters by their Lieutenants and Deputies, armed with their Authority: In our Saviour's Kingdoms, although there be used Instruments; yet do they accomplish his Will and Purpose, not only by his Authority, but also by his Strength and Vertue.

*What further Doctrine do you note hence?*

That the Man of Sin, or Pope of Rome, is not the Ministerial Head of the Church, which is Christ's Kingdom: Sith he is himself present, yea, and that most notably by his Spirit; and more to the Advantage of his Church, than when he was bodily present, *John* 16. 7.

*How are his Properties set forth more particularly?*

First, That he should be called *Wonderful*: Not that it should be his proper Name, which was only *Jesus*; but that he should be as renownedly known to be *Wonderful*, as Men are known by their Names.

*How is he Wonderful?*

Partly in his Person, as is before-said: And partly in his Works; namely, First, In the Creation of the World.

Secondly, In the Preservation, and especially in the Redemption of it.

*What is the next that followeth?*

It is shewed more particularly wherein he is Wonderful; and first, That he is Wonderful in Counsel, and *The Counsellor*.

*What is here to be observed?*

First, In the Government of a Kingdom, Counsel and Wisdom are the chief

chief; as that which is preferred to Strength, (*Esa. 9. 15. 2 Sam. 20. 16. Ecclef. 7. 19. & 9. 16. Prov. 21. 22. & 24. 5.*) and therefore that we may assure our selves, that in the Kingdom of Christ all things are done wisely, nothing rashly; in which respect he is said to have a long Stool, and a white Head, *Rev. 1. 13, 14.*

Secondly, A great Comfort for the Children of God, that our Saviour Christ is our Counsellor, who giveth all sound Advice.

Thirdly, That when we are in any perplexity, and know not which way to turn; yet we may come to our Saviour Christ, who is given unto us for a Counsellor.

*By what means may we come to him for Advice?*

By our humble Supplication and Prayer unto him.

*How may we receive Advice from him?*

By the Doctrine of God, drawn out of his Holy Word, which is therefore termed *the Men of our Counsel*, *Psal. 119. 24.*

*What is the next Property?*

That he is wonderful in might, and *the strong God*; having all sound strength.

*What have we here to learn?*

1. That as he is wise, and doth all things pertaining to the good of his Church; so he is of power to execute all that he adviseth wisely.

2. That as there is in us no advice of our selves, so there is in us no sound strength to keep us from any Evil; but that as he giveth good advice to his, so doth he with his own Power perform and effect it, *Phil. 2. 13.* And therefore although we be as the Vine, of all other Trees the weakest; or as the Sheep, of all other Beasts the simplest; yet we have for our Vine a Gardner, and for our Shepherd *Christ Jesus* the mighty strong God.

3. That we should take heed how we depart from his obedience; for he will do what he listeth. For if to obey be a good means to help us into the favour of our Earthly Princes; it will much more help us in the favour of the King of Kings.

*What other Properties follow?*

Two other, which are, as it were, the Branches and Effects of the former.

1. That he is the *Father of Eternities.* 2. The *Prince of Peace.*

*Sith he is called the Father of Eternities; is there not a confusion of Persons?*

In no wise. For it is a borrowed speech, signifying that he is the Author of Eternity.

*What do you here gather?*

That where other Kingdoms alter, his is everlasting, *Dan. 2. 44.*

*What Doctrine is thereof to be gathered?*

First, That the Kingdom of our Saviour Christ being perpetual, he dasheth and crusheth in pieces all other mighty Monarchies and Regiments that shall rise up against him: And therefore, that his Church and Subjects generally, and every particular Member, need not to fear any Power whatsoever.

Secondly, That whatsoever we have by Nature or Industry, is momentary, like unto the Grass that fadeth away; and whatsoever durable thing we have, we have it from Christ.

*What is the second Property, arising out of the former?*

That he is the *Prince of Peace*; that is, the Procurer, Cause and Ground of Peace; that causeth his Subjects to continue in peace and quietness.

*Of what Nature is this Peace ?*

Is it Spiritual, *Rom. 5. 1. Ephes. 2. 14, 15, 16, 17.*

1. When we have Peace with God.
2. When we have Peace in our Consciences.
3. When there is Peace between Men and Men : Which ariseth out of both the former.

*Where should this Peace be established ?*

*Upon the Throne of David, that is, in the Church of God.*

*What is the cause of all this ?*

The Love and Zeal of God, breaking through all Lets ; either inward from our selves and our own Sins, or outward from the enmity of the Devil and the World, *Esa. 9. 7.*

*What Fruit receive we by the Kingly Office of our Saviour Christ ?*

By it all the Treasures brought in by his Priestly and Prophetical Office, are dealt to us continually. For from it all the means of applying and making effectual unto us Christ and all his Benefits do come : Yea, without it all the Actions of his other Offices are to us void, fruitless and without effect.

*What Comfort have we by this ?*

Hereby we are assured, that by this Kingly Power we shall finally overcome the Flesh, the World, the Devil, Death and Hell.

*To whom will this Blessed King communicate the Means of Salvation ?*

He offereth them to many, and they are sufficient to save all Mankind : all shall not be saved thereby, because by Faith they will not receive them, *Mat. 20. 16. John 1. 11. 1 John 2. 2.*

*Are not the Faithful in some sort also made Partakers of this Honour of his Kingdom ?*

Yes verily. For they are made Kings to rule and subdue their stirring and rebellious Affections, and to tread Satan under their feet, *Rom. 6. 12. & 16. 20. Rev. 1. 6. & 5. 10.*

*You have spoken of the two Natures, and three Offices of our Saviour ; shew now, in what state did Christ God and Man perform this three-fold Office ?*

In a two-fold estate : 1. Of Abasement and Humiliation, *Phil. 2. 7, 8.*

2. Of Advancement and Exaltation, *Phil. 2. 9. Col. 2. 15. Eph. 1. 20, 21.*

In the former he abased himself by his Sufferings for Sin : whereof we have heard largely in the declaration of his Priesthood.

In the latter he obtained a most glorious Victory, and triumphed over Sin : thereby fulfilling his Priesthood, and making way to his Kingdom.

*What was his Estate of Humiliation ?*

It was the base Condition of a Servant, whereto he humbled himself from his Conception to the Cross, and so until the time of his Resurrection, *Phil. 2. 7, 8.*

*Wherein did this base Estate of the Son of God consist ?*

In his Conception, Gestation and Birth ; and in his Life diversly : As in his Poverty, Hunger, Thirst, Weariness, and other Humiliations even unto Death. Of which heretofore hath been spoken.

*What learn you from this, that Christ first suffered many things, before he could enter into his Glory ?* *Luke 24. 26, 46.*

That the way to reign with Christ, is first to suffer with him ; and such as bear the Cross constantly, shall wear the Crown eternally, *Rom. 8. 17, 18. 2 Tim. 2. 12. & 4. 8. Jam. 1. 12.*

*What is the State of Exaltation ?*

His glorious condition, (*Phil. 2. 9. Heb. 2. 9.*) beginning at the instant of his

Christ's Hu-  
miliation.

Christ's Exal-  
tation.

his *Resurrection*, (*Acts* 2. 24, 31, 36.) and comprehending his *Ascension* (*Ephes.* 4. 8. *Acts* 2. 34. *Heb.* 9. 24, 25.) *sitting at the right hand* of God his Father, (*Psal.* 110. 1, 2, 5, 6. *Mark* 16. 19. *1 Pet.* 3. 22.) and *second coming* in Glory to judge the World, *Mat.* 25. 31.

*What is the first Degree of this Estate ?*

His glorious *Resurrection*. For after he had in his Manhood suffered for us, he did in the third day rise again by his own Power from the dead, *Eph.* 1. 19. *Luke* 24. 7, 46. *1 Cor.* 15. 4. *Mat.* 16. 21. & 17. 23. Of the Resurrection of Christ.

*Was it needful that Christ being dead should rise again ?*

Yes it was : for his own Glory and our Good, *Acts* 2. 24. *1 Cor.* 15. 21, 22.

*How for his Glory ?*

That being formerly abased as a Servant, and crucified as a Sinner, he might thus be declared to be the Son of God, and exalted to be a Prince and a Saviour, *Phil.* 2. 7, 8. *Luke* 23, 33. *Esa.* 53. 12. *Rom.* 1. 4. *Acts* 5. 30, 31.

*How for our Good ?*

That having paid the Price of our Redemption by his Death, we might have good assurance of our full Justification by his Life, *1 Pet.* 1. 19. *Acts* 20. 28. *Rom.* 4. 25. *1 Cor.* 15. 17.

*What special Comfort ariseth from this, that the Lord of Life is risen from Death ?*

1. It assureth me that his Righteousness shall be imputed unto me for my perfect Justification ; that he that had the Power of Death is destroyed, (*Heb.* 2. 14.) his Works dissolved, (*1 John* 3. 8.) and that all our Misery is swallowed up in Christ's Victory, *1 Cor.* 15. 54.

2. It comforteth me, because it doth from day to day raise me up to Righteousness and Newness of Life in this present World.

3. It ministreth unto me a comfortable hope, that I shall rise again in the last day from bodily death.

*What Fruits then are we to shew from the Virtue of his Resurrection ?*

*Phil.* 3. 10.

We are to stand up from the dead, to awake to Righteousness, to live unto God ; and dying in him or for him, to look for Life again from him, *Eph.* 5. 14. *1 Cor.* 15. 34. *Rom.* 6. 4, 11. *Phil.* 3. 20. *1 Thess.* 4. 14. *1 Cor.* 15. 22. *Col.* 3. 4.

*Why is Christ said to raise himself ?*

To let us know, that as he had power to lay down his Life, so he had also to take it up again, *John* 10. 18.

*What gather you hence ?*

That being Lord both of Quick and Dead, he can and will both quicken our Souls here to the Life of Grace, and raise our Bodies hereafter to the Life of Glory, *Rom.* 14. 9. *John* 5. 21. *Phil.* 3. 21.

*Why did he rise the third Day ?*

Because the Bands of Death could no longer hold him ; this being the time that he had appointed, and the day that best served for his glorious Resurrection, *Acts* 2. 24. *Mat.* 20. 17, 18, 19. & 12. 40.

*Why did he not rise before the third Day ?*

Left rising so presently upon his Death, his Enemies might take occasion of cavil, that he was not dead, *Mat.* 27. 63, 64. & 28. 13, 14.

*And why could he not put it off till the fourth Day ?*

Left the Faith of his Disciples should have been weakened, and their Hearts too much cast down and discouraged, *Mat.* 28. 1. *Luke* 24. 21.

*What gather you hence ?*

That as the Lord setteth down the term of our durance, so doth he chuse the fittest time of our deliverance, *Rev. 2. 10. Mat. 12. 40. Dan. 11. 35. Hof. 6. 2.*

*What is the second Degree of his Exaltation ?*

Of Christ's  
Ascension.

His Ascension, *Mar. 16. 19. Eph. 4. 8, 9.* For we believe that Christ in his humane Nature (the Apostles looking on) ascended into Heaven.

*What Assurance have you of Christ's Ascension ?*

The Evidence of the *Word*, the Testimony of Heavenly *Angels* and Holy Men, *Luke 24. 51. Acts 1. 9, 10, 11.*

*Wherefore did Christ ascend into Heaven ?*

Because he had finished his Father's Work on Earth, (*John 17. 3, 4, 5.*) and that being exalted in our Nature, he might consecrate a way, (*Heb. 10. 20.*) prepare a place, (*John 14. 2, 3.*) and appear in the Presence of God to make Intercession for us, *Heb. 9. 24.*

*What Benefits did he bestow upon his Church at his Ascension ?*

He triumphed over his Enemies, gave Gifts to his Friends ; and taking with him a *Pledge* of our Flesh, he sent and left with us the *Earnest* of his Spirit, *Ephes. 4. 8. Heb. 10. 12, 20. 2 Cor. 5. 5. Acts 2. 33.*

*What Comfort doth hence arise to God's Children ?*

1. That our Head being gone before, we his Members shall follow after : Christ having prepared for us a place in Heaven ; which now we feel by Faith, and hereafter shall fully enjoy, *Eph. 1. 22, 23. 1 Cor. 15. 49. John 14. 3. & 17. 24.*

2. That having such a Friend in Heaven, we need not fear any Foes on Earth, nor Fiends in Hell. *Heb. 7. 25. Phil. 1. 28. Rom. 16. 20. Acts 20. 24. Rev. 2. 10.*

*What Fruits are we to shew in our Lives, from the Virtue of his Ascension in our Hearts ?*

1. To have our Conversation in Heaven, whilst we be on Earth ; placing our Hearts where our Head is, *Col. 3. 1, 2. Phil. 1. 23. & 3. 20.*

2. To look for the presence of Christ by Faith, not by Sight ; in Spiritual, not in Carnal Things, *Mat. 28. 20. 2 Cor. 5. 7. John 6. 63.*

*What is the third Degree of his Exaltation ?*

Of Christ's  
sitting at the  
right hand of  
God.

That he sitteth at the right hand of God the Father Almighty, *Mar. 16. 19. Eph. 1. 20, 21, 22.*

*What is meant by this ?*

That Christ in Man's Nature is worthily advanced by the Father to the height of all Majesty, Dominion, and Glory ; having authority to rule all things in Heaven and in Earth, *Eph. 4. 10. Heb. 13. 8, 13. Mat. 28. 18.*

*How may this appear ?*

Because he is hereby exalted to be the King of Saints, (*Rom. 15. 3.*) the Judge of Sinners, (*Acts 17. 31.*) the Prince of our Salvation, (*Acts 5. 31.*) and the High-Priest of our Profession, *Heb. 8. 1.*

*What Comfort ariseth hence to all true Believers ?*

That 1. As our *King*, he will govern us, (*Heb. 1. 8, 9. Luke 1. 33.*) and that from him we shall receive all things needful for us under his gracious Government.

2. As our *Judge*, he will avenge us, (*Rev. 6. 10. & 16. 5, 6.*) and as our *Prince*, defend us, subduing all our Enemies by his Power, and treading them under our feet.

3. As



3. As our Priest, he will plead our Cause and pray for us, *Heb. 7. 25. Rom. 8. 34.*

*Why is he said in the Creed, to sit at the right hand of God the Father Almighty?*

That we may know he enjoyeth both the *Favour* and *Power* of God in full measure; the Father having committed all Judgment to the Son, *Heb. 1. 13. Mat. 28. 18. John 5. 22.*

*What Duties are here required?*

To honour the Son, as we do the Father: To cast our Crowns at his Feet, stoop to his Scepter, live by his Laws; so to follow him here, that we may fit with him in his Throne hereafter, *John 5. 23. Rev. 4. 10, 11. Psal. 2. 10. James 4. 12. Rev. 3. 21.*

*Doth he not now thus reign for the raising of his Friends, and ruine of his Enemies?*

Yes; he doth *graciously* by his Word and Works, (*Heb. 1. 8: Rom. 10. 15, 16.*) but he shall more *gloriously* when he cometh again to judge the Quick and the Dead, *2 Thess. 1. 10. Rom. 14. 9.*

*Having thus declared that which concerneth the Mediator of the New Testament; what are you now to consider in the Condition of the rest of Mankind which hold by him?*

The state of mankind under the Gospel

Two things: 1. The Participation of the Grace of Christ, and the Benefits of the Gospel. 2. The Means which God hath ordained for the offering and effecting of the same.

*To whom doth God reveal and apply his Covenant of Grace?*

Not to the World, but to his Church called out of the World, (*Job. 14. 22. & 17. 9. Mat. 11. 25. 1 Cor. 2. 8, &c.*) that is, not to the Reprobate, appointed from everlasting to be Vessels of Wrath, but to the Elect and Chosen, upon whom he intended to shew the Riches of his Mercy, (*Rom. 9. 22, 23.*) For howsoever the Light is come into the World, yet most Men rather love Darknes than Light, (*John 3. 19.*) and though the Proclamation of Grace be general, (*1 Tim. 2. 4.*) yet most Men refuse or neglect God's Goodness, by reason of the naughtiness of their Hearts. Neither are any saved, but such as God draweth to embrace his Mercy, and casteth as it were into a new Mould, *John 6. 44.*

*It would seem by this, that the most part of the World be in no better estate than the Devil himself.*

Most Men questionless abide without recovery in the State of Sin and Death, (*1 John 5. 19.*) because the Lord doth not grant unto them the Benefit of Redemption, and Grace of Faith and Repentance unto Life, but suffereth them to run on in Sin deservedly unto Condemnation, *Mat. 13. 15. Acts 14. 18. & 17. 30.*

*How doth God suffer them to run into Condemnation?*

In a divers manner: Some Reprobates dying Infants, other of riper Years; of which latter sort, some are not called, others called.

*How doth God deal with Reprobates dying Infants?*

Being once conceived, they are in the state of Death, (*Rom. 5. 14.*) by reason of the Sin of Adam imputed, and of Original Corruption cleaving to their Nature, wherein also dying they perish: As (for instance) the Children of Heathen Parents. For touching the Children of Christians, we are taught to account them Holy, *1 Cor. 7. 14.*

*How doth God deal with those of riper years uncalled?*

Being naturally possessed with Ignorance and Vanity, (*Ephes. 4. 18, 19.*) he giveth them up to their own Lusts to commit Sin without Remorse, with Greediness, in a reprobate Mind, (*Rom. 1. 26, 28.*) until the measure of sin being fulfilled, they are cut off, *Gen. 15. 16. Psal. 69. 27.*

*How doth God deal with such Reprobates as are called?*

He vouchsafeth them the outward means of Salvation, (*Heb. 4. 1, 2. 1 Cor. 10. 1, 2, &c.*) giving farther to some of them some Illumination, (*Heb. 6. 4, 5.*) A temporary Faith, (*Acts 8. 13.*) some outward Holiness and taste of Heaven: Whom yet he suffereth to fall away, and the means of Grace to become a favour of Death unto them, (*2 Cor. 2. 16.*) yea some of these do fall, even to the Sin unpardonable, *Heb. 6. 6.*

*So much of the Company of the Reprobate, which are not made Partakers of the benefit of Redemption: What is the Church of Christ, which enjoyeth this great benefit?*

Of the Church  
of Christ.

A Company of Men and Women, called out of the World to believe, and live in Christ; and indued accordingly with Spiritual Graces for the Service of God, (*Gal. 3. 26, 27, 28. John 1. 12. & 17. 14, 16. Ephes. 2. 10. 1 Tim. 3. 15. Tit. 2. 14.*) or rather, the whole number of God's Elect, which are admitted into Fellowship with Christ Jesus, (*Ephes. 1. 1. & 5. 23. Col. 1. 2, 27.*) For all these being taken together are called the Church, that is, God's Assembly or Congregation: Which in the Scripture is likened to the Spouse of Christ, (*Cant. 4. 9, 10. Ephes. 5. 23, 25.*) which in the Creed we profess to believe, under the Title of *The Holy Catholick Church*, (*Heb. 12. 22, 23. Ephes. 5. 27.*)

*Do you believe in the Catholick Church?*

The Catholick  
Church.

No. I believe that God hath a certain number of his chosen Children, which he doth call and gather to himself: That Christ hath such a Flock selected out of all Nations, Ages and Conditions of Men, (*Ephes. 5. 23. John 10. 16. Gal. 3. 28. Rev. 7. 9.*) and that my self am one of that Company, and a Sheep of that Fold.

*Why say you, that you believe that there is a Catholick Church?*

Because that the Church of God cannot be always seen with the eyes of Man.

*Why is this Church called Holy?*

Because she hath washed her Robes in the Blood of the Lamb; and being sanctified and cleansed with the washing of Water by the Word, is presented and accepted as Holy before God, (*Rev. 7. 14. Ephes. 5. 26, 27. Col. 1. 21, 22.*) For though the Church on Earth be in it self sinful, yet in Christ the Head it is Holy, and in the Life to come shall be brought to Perfection of Holiness.

*What learn you hence?*

That if ever we will have the Church for our Mother, or God for our Father; we must labour to be Holy, as he is Holy, *Gal. 4. 26. 1 Pet. 1. 13, 14, 15, 16, 17. Lev. 20. 7.*

*What is meant here by Catholick Church?*

That whole universal Company of the Elect that ever were, are, or shall be gathered together in one Body, knit together in one Faith, under one Head Christ Jesus, *Ephes. 4. 4, 5, 6, 12, 13. Col. 2. 19. Ephes. 1. 22, 23.* For God in all Places, and of all sorts of Men, had from the beginning, hath now, and ever will have an Holy Church. Which is therefore called the *Catholick Church*, that is, God's whole or Universal Assembly; because it comprehendeth the Multitude of all those that have, do, or shall believe unto the World's end.

*Do all these make one Body?*

The whole number of Believers and Saints by calling make one Body, the Head whereof is Christ Jesus, (*Ephes. 1. 10, 22, 23. Col. 1. 18, 24.*) having under him no other Vicar. And so the Pope is no Head of the Church: For neither Property nor Office of the Head can agree unto him.

The Property and Office of the Head of the Church.

*What is the Property of the Head?*

To be highest: And therefore there can be but one, even Christ.

*What is the Office of the Head?*

First, To prescribe Laws to his Church, which should bind Mens Consciences to the Obedience of the same: And of such Law-givers there is but one, *Jam. 4. 12.*

Secondly, To convey the Powers of Life and Motion into all the Members, by bestowing Spiritual Life and Grace upon them. For as the natural Members take Spirit and Sense from the Head; so the Church hath all her Spiritual Life and Feeling from Christ, who is only able (and no Creature beside) to quicken and give Life.

Thirdly, To be the Saviour of the Body. *Ephes. 5. 23.* But Christ Jesus is only the Saviour of the Church: Whom by this Title of the Head of the Church, *Paul* lifteth up above all Angels, Archangels, Principalities, and Powers. And therefore if the Pope were the Successor of *Peter*; yet should he not be the Head of the Church: Which agreeth to no simple Creature in Heaven, or under Heaven.

*So much of the Head. Where be the Members of this Holy Catholick Church?*

Part are already in Heaven *Triumphant*, part as yet *Militant* here upon Earth.

*What call you the Church Triumphant?*

The blessed Company of those that have entred into their Master's Joy, *The Triumphant Church.* (*Heb. 12. 23. Rev. 7, 14, 16.*) waiting for the fulfilling of the number of their Fellow members, and their own Consummation in perfect Bliss, *Rev. 6. 9.*

*Why is it called Triumphant?*

Because the Saints deceased have made an end of their Pilgrimage and Labours here on Earth, and triumph over their Enemies, the World, Death and Damnation.

*Are the Angels of the Church Triumphant?*

No. First, Because they were never of the Church *Militant*. Secondly, Because they were not redeemed, nor received Benefit by the Death of Christ. And therefore it is said, that *he took not on him the Nature of Angels, but the Seed of Abraham, Heb. 2. 16.*

*What is the Special Duty which the Church Triumphant in Heaven doth perform?*

Praise and Thanksgiving to God.

*What is the Church Militant?*

It is the Society of those, that being scattered through all the Corners of the World, are by one Faith in Christ conjoynd to him, and fight under his Banner against their Enemies, the World, the Flesh, and the Devil: Continuing in the Service and Warfare of their Lord, and expecting in due time also to be crowned with Victory, and triumph in Glory with him, *Rev. 1. 9. & 12. 11. 2 Tim. 4. 7, 8.*

The Church Militant.

*Who are the true Members of the Church Militant on Earth?*

Those alone who as living Members of the Mystical Body, (*Ephes. 1. 22, 23. Col. 1.*)

Col. 1. 18.) are by the Spirit and Faith secretly and unseparably conjoynd unto Christ their Head, Col. 3. 3. Psal. 83. 3. In which respect the true Militant Church is both invincible, Mat. 16. 18. and invifible, (Rom, 2. 29. 1 Pet. 3. 4.) the Ele& not being to be difcerned from the Reprobate till the laft Day.

*But are none to be accounted Members of this Church, but fuch as are fo inseparably united unto Christ? Doubtlefs many live in the Church, who are not thus united unto him, and fhall never come to Salvation by him?*

Truly and properly none are of the Church, faving only they which truly believe and yield Obedience, (1 John 2. 19.) all which are alfo faved. Howbeit God ufeth outward means with the inward for the gathering of his Saints; and calleth them as well to outward Profefion among themfelves, as to inward Fellowship with his Son, (A&s 2. 42. Cant. 1. 7.) whereby the Church becometh vifible. Hence it cometh, that fo many as partaking the outward means do join with thefe in League of vifible Profefion, (A&s 8. 13.) are therefore in human Judgment accounted Members of the true Church, and Saints by calling, (1 Cor. 1. 2.) until the Lord, who only knoweth who are his, do make known the contrary: As we are taught in the Parable of the Tares, the Draw-Net, &c. Mat. 13. 24, 47. Thus many live in the Church, as it is vifible and outward, which are Partakers only outwardly of Grace: And fuch are not fully of the Church, that have entred in but one ftep, Cant. 4. 7. Ephef. 5. 27. 1 John 2. 19. That a Man may be fully of the Church, it is not fufficient that he profefs Christ with his Mouth; but it is further required, that he believe in him in heart. Thefe do the one, but not the other; or if they believe in heart, they believe not fully. For they may generally believe indeed that Christ is the Saviour of Mankind: But they know not whether themfelves have part in him; yea, by the Works they difclaim any Interelt in him.

*What fay you then of fuch?*

They are Partakers of all good of the outward or imperfect Church; and therefore their Children alfo are baptized and admitted as Members of Christ's Church. Thefe are like evil Citizens (as indeed the Church is God's City) who are in truth but Citizens in Profefion and Name only. For they as yet want the chiefelt Point, which only maketh a Man to deserve the true Name of a Citizen; which is to ufe the Place aright: And therefore have no part in thofe Rewards that are purpofed for good and perfect Citizens; though they enjoy what outwardly belongeth to the City.

*Are we then to acknowledge one Church or many?*

One alone; as there is but one Lord, one Spirit, one Baptifm, one Faith, Ephef. 4. 4. Cant. 6. 8. Gal. 3. 28. Howfoever (as hath been faid) there is a begun, and a perfect Church. For the Church of God is one in respect of the Inward Nature of it; having one Head, one Spirit, and one final State: But Outwardly, there be as many Churches as there be Congregations of Believers knit together by fpecial Bond of Order for the religious expreffing of that Inward Nature, Rev. 1. 11. Yet, though there be many Vifible Churches, there is but one Catholick and Univerfal Church; of which not one fhall be loft, and out of which not one fhall be faved, A&s 2. 47. Ephef. 5. 23. Jobn 17. 12, 20.

*What gather you hence?*

That the Church of Rome is not the Catholick Church: Befauce it is Particular, not Univerfal; and becaufe out of it many have been faved, and fhall

shall be saved, and in it some shall be damned, *Rev.* 18. 4 & 19. 20. 2 *Theff.*

2. 11, 12.

*What are the Special Prerogatives, whereof all God's Children, the true Members of the Catholick Church, are made Partakers?* John 1. 12. Prerogatives of the Members of the Catholick Church.

In the Creed there are some principal Notes rehearsed.

1. The Communion of Saints, *Heb.* 12. 22, 23. *Eph.* 2. 19.
2. The Forgiveness of Sins, *Rom.* 8. 1, 33.
3. The Resurrection of the Body, *1 Cor.* 15. 52. *Acts* 24. 15.
4. Life Everlasting, *Rom.* 6. 23.

There are four also recorded by the Apostle *Paul* in that Golden Sentence, *1 Cor.* 1. 30. *Ye are of him in Christ Jesus, who of God is made unto us Wisdom, and Righteousness, and Sanctification, and Redemption.*

*Why is Wisdom here set down by the Apostle as necessary to our Salvation?*

Because it was necessary, that having absolutely lost all godly and saving Wisdom wherein we were first created, that it should be again repaired ere we could be Partakers of Life Eternal.

*Why? have we no true Wisdom naturally able to bring us unto it?*

No verily. For although we have Wisdom naturally ingrafted in us to provide for this present Life, and sufficient to bring us to Condemnation in the Life to come: Yet we have not one Grain of saving Wisdom able to save us, or to make us step one foot forward unto Eternal Life.

*Where is this Wisdom to be found?*

In the Word of God, *Psal.* 19. 7. *2 Tim.* 3. 15.

*How come we to it?*

By Christ. For God dwelleth in Light which no Man hath approached unto, (*1 Tim.* 6. 16.) only the Son, which was in the Bosom of his Father, he hath revealed him, *John* 1. 18.

*What doth the Apostle mean by Righteousness?*

As by the chief part thereof, our whole Justification: Which consisteth in the Remission of our Sins, and the Imputation of Christ's Righteousness.

*How do you prove this Righteousness here to be meant of the Righteousness that is in Christ?*

Because he speaketh afterward of Sanctification, which is the Righteousness within us.

*What is Sanctification?*

It is a freedom from the Tyranny of Sin into the Liberty of Righteousness; begun here, and increased daily, until it be fully perfected in the Life to come, *Rom.* 6. 14. *Psal.* 19. 13.

*What is Redemption?*

It is the happy Estate that the Children of God shall have in the Last Day, *Eph.* 4. 30. *Rom.* 8. 23. *Luke* 21. 28.

*What is the Ground of all these Spiritual Blessings?*

The whole Work of our Salvation must be ascribed to the Grace of God alone.

*What is meant by the Grace of God?*

1. And principally, that free favour which God doth bear towards us.
2. Those Gifts and Helps that are in us, arising from that Fountain.

*Is Man idle in this Work of Grace?*

Man also worketh with God's Grace; but first he receiveth from God not only the Power to work, but also the Will and the Deed it self, *Phil.* 2. 13.

*Is this Work of God only an offering of good things unto us ?*

God doth not only offer Grace unto us, but causeth us effectually to receive it; and therefore is said not only to draw us, (*Cant. 1. 4. John 6. 44.*) but also to create a new heart in us, whereby we follow him, *Psal. 51. 10.*

Of our Union  
and Commu-  
nion with  
Christ.

*What profit hath every one of God's Elect in Christ the Mediator, by the application of the Covenant of Grace ?*

*Union and Communion*, both with Christ himself and his whole Church: Whence ariseth the *Communion of Saints*; whereby nothing else is understood, but that Heavenly Fellowship which all the Faithful have with Christ their Head, and with the Members of his Body, all true Christians: The whole Church thus communicating with Christ, and every Member one with another, *Heb. 3. 14. & 12. 22, 23. Eph. 2. 19, 20. & 4. 12. 1 John 1. 3.*

*What are the Bands of this Fellowship, and who is the Author of it ?*

The Spirit knits the Body to the Head by Faith, and the Members one unto another by Love, *1 Cor. 12. 11, 12, 27. Col. 3. 14. 1 Cor. 6. 17.*

*What Comfort have we by this ?*

1. That we are justified by that Faith, whereby Adam and Abraham were justified, which is tied to no time or place, and excludeth no Person.

2. That we are made Partakers of Christ and all his Merits by Faith, and of all the Blessings of the Church by Love.

*What are the special Comforts of this Communion with Christ ?*

That we are sure to have all Graces and all good things from him: And that both our Persons are beloved, and our Services accepted in him, and for him, *John 1. 16, 17. 1 Cor. 1. 30. Eph. 2. 4, 5, 13. 1 Pet. 2. 5.*

Communion  
of Saints.

*And what special Comforts do arise out of our Communion with Christians ?*

That we have a Portion in their Prayers, (*Acts 12. 5.*) a share in their Comforts, (*Rom. 12. 13.*) a room in their Hearts, (*2 Cor. 7. 3. 2 Theff. 1. 3.*) mutual bearing Infirmities, (*Gal. 6. 1, 2.*) furthering Duties, (*Heb. 10. 24.*) and relieving Necessities, (*Rom. 12. 13. 1 John 3. 17.*)

*What Duty doth this Communion of Saints require of us ?* (*Eph. 4. 7, 12.*)

To renounce all Fellowship with Sin and Sinners, (*2 Cor. 6. 17.*) to edifie one another in Faith and Love, (*Jude ver. 20.*) to delight in the Society of Saints, (*Psal. 16. 3.*) and to keep the Unity of the Spirit in the Bond of Peace, (*Eph. 4. 3.*)

*Why are all Believers called Saints ?*

Because they are Partakers of Christ's Holiness, daily growing and increasing in the same: And to let us know, that none shall ever be Saints in Heaven, but such as are first Saints in Earth, *Heb. 12. 10. 2 Pet. 1. 4. 2 Cor. 7. 1. 2 Theff. 1. 10.*

*Forasmuch as the Point of our Union and Communion with Christ is of great Importance, and the very Foundation of all our Comfort; it is more largely to be stood upon. First therefore shew how the Elect are united to Christ his Person.*

They are incorporated, and made Members of the Mystical Body, whereof Christ is Head, *Eph. 5. 30.* which the Scripture figureth, as by other resemblances, so especially under the Similitude of Marriage, *Eph. 5. 2.* and the whole Book of the *Canticles.*

*How may we conceive of this our Marriage with Christ ?*

We are to conceive therein as in outward Marriage: First, The Consent of Parents and Parties. Secondly, The Manner of Conjunction.

*What*

*What Consent of Parents is there in this Marriage?*

Only God's Donation, who being the alone Parent of both Parties, (as in the Marriage of the first *Adam*, Gen. 2. 22.) giveth, first, *Christ to us*, (as a Saviour, (*John* 3. 16. & 17. 6.) Secondly, *Us to Christ*, as a People to be loved by him, *Heb.* 2. 13.

*What Consent of Parties is there?*

First, *Christ* consenteth to take us for his own Spouse: Which he witnesseth especially by taking our *Flesh* upon him, (*Heb.* 2. 14.) that he might be our *Emmanuel*, or God with us, *Mat.* 1. 23.

Secondly, We being drawn of God, (*Job.* 6. 44.) and prepared by the Friends of the Bridegroom, (*2 Cor.* 11. 2.) do consent to take *Christ* as our Lord and Husband, (*Cant.* 7. 10.) as we profess by taking his Name, (*Eisa.* 44. 5.) and *Yōak*, (*Mat.* 11. 29.) upon us.

*What is the Manner of this our Conjunction?*

Mystical; that is to say, *Real*, in respect of the things conjoined: Our very Nature, Body, and Soul being coupled to the Body and Soul of *Christ*, (so that we are Members of his Body, of his *Flesh*, and of his Bones, *Eph.* 5. 30.) and thereby also to the Divine Nature, (*2 Pet.* 1. 4.) Yet not Corporal, but *Spiritual*, in regard of the Means whereby this Conjunction is wrought.

*What are the means of this Spiritual Conjunction?*

On *Christ's* part, his only Spirit, (*1 Joh.* 3. 24. & 4. 13. *1 Cor.* 2. 12. *Rom.* 8. 9.) given by him unto every Member of his Body, in the very moment of Regeneration, (*Gal.* 4. 6. *1 Joh.* 3. 24. & 4. 13.) as the Soul of Spiritual Life, and Fountain of Supernatural Grace, *Gal.* 5. 25. *1 Cor.* 15. 45. in which respect, *He that is joined to the Lord*, is said to be *one Spirit*, *1 Cor.* 6. 17.

*What is the Spirit of Christ?*

The *Holy Ghost*, truly residing, (*1 Cor.* 3. 16.) and powerfully working in all those that are *Christ's*, (*Rom.* 5. 5.) derived unto them from him (*Rom.* 8. 2.) and knitting them inseparably unto him, *1 Cor.* 12. 13. *Eph.* 2. 18. & 4. 4.

*Is the Holy Ghost given to none but such as are thus joined to Christ?*

*note*

The *Holy Ghost* is considered three ways: *First*, As the Author of all *Excellency*, even in common Gifts of Nature and Reason; as Strength and Courage, (*Judg.* 14. 6.) Arts and Sciences, (*Exod.* 31. 3.) Policy and Government, (*1 Sam.* 11. 6.) &c. In which sense he is given to many which never heard of *Christ*. *Secondly*, As the Author of *Spiritual Gifts*, (*1 Cor.* 12. 1, 4.) so called, because being sanctified, they are Means of Edification: As the Power of working Miracles, Healing, Languages, &c. yea a taste of the Heavenly Gift, and of the good Word of God, and of the Powers of the World to come, (*Heb.* 6. 4, 5.) In which sense he is given to sundry Reprobates; that are called, as hath been shewed. *Thirdly*, As the Author of the *perpetual, effectual, and vital Influence of saving Grace* from *Christ* the Head, to every true Member of his Body, *John* 6. 51, 57, 63. In which sense, *the World cannot receive or know him*, (*Joh.* 14. 17.) but he is bestowed on the *Elect only*, (*1 Pet.* 1. 2.) and those truly regenerated, and converted to the Lord.

*But on our part, what Means is there of this Conjunction?*

Only Faith: Which yet is not of our selves, but the Gift of God, (*Eph.* 2. 8.) and of all other the first and most general Effect and Instrument of the *Holy Spirit* of *Christ*, (*2 Cor.* 4. 13. *Gal.* 5. 5.) disposing and enabling us so to embrace and cleave unto him, (*Eph.* 3. 16, 17.) as first to receive from God by him, whatsoever Benefits and Graces, (*Rom.* 5. 2.) Secondly, To return to God in him all holy and thankful Obedience, *Col.* 2. 7. *Gal.* 5. 6.

*Is Faith absolutely required in every one that is united unto Christ ?*

It is absolutely required of all those, that are of Discretion and Capacity. But in those that are not capable of Knowledge (without which there can be no Faith) as some natural Fools and Infants, which are within the Covenant ; we are not to proceed further than God's Election, and the secret Operation of his Spirit, *Acts 2. 39. 1 Cor. 7. 14. & 12. 13.*

*So much of our Union with Christ's Person : What is our Communion with him ?*

It is our Participation with him in the *Benefits*, flowing from his several *Offices*. Whereby, as he is made to us of God, *Wisdom, Righteousness, Sanctification, and Redemption*, (*1 Cor. 1. 30.*) so we also by him, after a sort become *Prophets*, (*Acts 2. 17, 18.*) *Priests*, and *Kings*, (*1 Pet. 2. 9. Rev. 5. 10.*) as in the unfolding of the several Functions of our Saviour Christ, hath more fully been declared. For being made *one* with him, we are thereby *possessed* of all things that are his : (*Rev. 2. 28. Col. 2. 10.*) As the Wife of the Wealth of her Husband, the Branch of the Sap of the Root, (*John 15. 5.*) and the Members of Sense and Motion from the Head, (*Eph. 4. 15, 16.*) In which regard, the whole Church is also called Christ, (*1 Cor. 12. 12. Gal. 3. 16.*) and the several Members Christians, *Acts 11. 26.*

*What are the main Benefits which Christians receive by their Communion with Christ.*

*Justification and Glorification*, *Rom. 8. 30.* By the one whereof we have our Persons accepted, and new Relations between God and us established ; by the other, our Nature reformed, and new Obedience wrought in us. Whereof this latter is but begun in this Life, and is called *Sanctification* ; and perfected in the Life to come ; which most usually hath the term of *Glorification* : Of which in its proper place.

*What is Justification ?*

Justification is that Sentence of God, whereby he of his Grace, for the Righteousness of his own Son, by him *imputed* unto us, and through Faith *apprehended* by us, doth free us from Sin and Death, and accept us as righteous unto Life, *Rom. 8. 30, 33, 34. 1 Cor. 1. 30. Phil. 3. 9.* For hereby we both have a Deliverance from the Guilt and Punishment of all our Sins ; and being accounted righteous in the sight of God, by the Righteousness of our Saviour Christ imputed unto us, are restored to a better Righteousness than ever we had in *Adam*.

*I perceive your Answer needs further explaining. First, Why call you Justification a Sentence ?*

That thereby we may be informed, that the word [*to justify*] doth not in this place signifie to make Just, by infusing a perfect Righteousness into our Natures ; (that comes under the Head of Sanctification begun here in this Life, which being finished, is Glorification in Heaven) : But here the word signifieth to pronounce Just, to quit and discharge from Guilt and Punishment : And so it is a Judicial Sentence opposed to Condemnation. *Rom. 8. 34, 35. Who shall lay any thing (saith Paul) to the charge of God's Elect ? It is God that justifieth ; who shall condemn ?* Now as to condemn, is not the putting any evil into the nature of the Party condemned, but the pronouncing of his Person guilty, and the binding him over unto Punishment : So Justifying is the Judges pronouncing the Law to be satisfied, and the Man discharged and quitted from Guilt and Judgment. Thus God imputing the Righteousness of Christ to a Sinner, doth not account his Sins unto him ; but interests him in a state of as  
full

The Benefits  
of our Com-  
munion with  
Christ.

Of Justifica-  
tion.



full and perfect Freedom and Acceptance; as if he had never sinned, or had himself fully satisfied. For though there is a Power purging the Corruption of Sin, which followeth upon Justification; yet it is carefully to be distinguished from it: As we shall further shew hereafter.

*This for the Name of Justification: But now for the thing it self; what is the matter first of our Justification?*

The matter of that Justification, or that Righteousness whereby a Sinner stands justified in God's sight, is not any Righteousness inherent in his own Person, and performed by him, but a perfect Righteousness inherent in Christ, and performed for him.

*What Righteousness of Christ is it, whereby a Sinner is justified?*

Not the essential Righteousness of his Divine Nature: But,

First, The absolute Integrity of our human Nature, which in him our Head, was without all guile, *Heb. 7. 26.*

Secondly, The perfect Obedience which in that human Nature of ours, he performed unto the whole Law of God; but by *doing* whatsoever was required of us, (*Mat. 3. 15.*) and by *suffering* whatsoever was deserved by our sins, (*1 Pet. 2. 24.*) For he was made Sin, and a Curse for us, that we might be made the Righteousness of God in him, *2 Cor. 5. 21.*

*What is the Form, or Being, Cause of our Justification, and that which makes this Righteousness so really ours, that it doth justify us?*

The gracious Imputation of God the Father, accounting his Sons Righteousness unto the Sinner, and by that accounting, making it his to all effects, as if he himself had performed it.

*But how can Christ's Righteousness be accounted ours? Is it not as absurd to say that we are justified by Christ's Righteousness, as that a Man should be fed with that Meat another eats? Or be warmed with the Clothes another weareth? Or be in Life and Health with the Life and Health of another?*

No doubtless: Because this Righteousness is in Christ, not as in a Person severed from us, but as in the Head of our common Nature, the second *Adam*: From whom therefore it is communicated unto all, who being united as Members unto him, do lay claim thereunto, and apply it unto themselves, *Rom. 5. 19. & 10. 4.* For if the sin of *Adam*, being a Man, was of force to condemn us all, because we were in his Loins, he being the Head of our common Nature: Why then should it seem strange, that the Righteousness of our Saviour Christ, both God and Man, should be available to justify those that are interested in him? Especially considering that we have a more strict Conjunction in the Spirit with him, than ever we had in Nature with *Adam*. And although it be not fit to measure Heavenly Things by the Yard of Reason; yet it is not unreasonable, that a Man owing a Thousand Pounds, and not being able of himself to discharge it, his Creditor may be satisfied by one of his Friends.

*If Christ have paid our Debt, how then are we freely justified by Grace?*

It is both of Grace that Christ is given unto us, and also that his Righteousness apprehended by Faith is accounted ours. It is true that the Justification of a sinner, considering the case as it is between the Father and Christ, no Man dare call it free; (no, the Price of our Redemption was the deepest purchase that the World ever heard of) but whatever it cost Christ, it cost us nothing: And so to us it is freely of Grace from Christ. Yea, and to us, it is freely Grace from God the Father too. Not because he acquits us with-

out

out a full Satisfaction to his Justice, or accepts that for perfect Righteousness, which is not perfect Righteousness: But because he receives full Satisfaction from the hands of a Surety, and that Surety being his own Son; when as he might have challenged the uttermost Farthing at our hands, which were the Principals; and then there had been no Possibility for us to have been delivered.

Uses arising from the Doctrine of Justification.

*What gather you from this Doctrine of Justification by CHRIST'S Righteousness?*

1. To condemn the proud Opinion of Papists, who seek Justification by their own Works and Righteousness, inherent in themselves: Whereas though being accepted, we must in Thankfulness do all we can for God; yet when all is done, we must acknowledge our selves unprofitable Servants: The only matter of our Joy and Triumph both in Life and Death, must be the Imputation of Christ's Righteousness. Not our Persons, nor the best Actions of the Holiest Men, dare appear in God's Presence, but in his Name and Merit who consecrates all, the Lord Jesus.

2. We may here take notice, that there is no comfort to a Christian Soul, like that which floweth from this Well of Salvation, this sweet Doctrine of Justification. 1. Here we have Assurance of the Sufficiency of our Redemption. That Soul must be thoroughly acquitted, that is stated in such a Righteousness; that Debt must be fully discharged, that hath such a Price laid down for it: Our sins, though never so great, cannot weigh down his Righteousness and Merit, *Rom. 8. 33.* and God having accepted his Son's Righteousness for us; will not hold us any longer Trespassers, but he disables his own Justice from making any further demand. 2. Hence there is nothing comes upon the Saints from God's Revenging Justice, but all our Corrections are Medicinal from God's Fatherly Love; to purge that sin out of our Nature, which he hath already pardoned to our Persons. 3. Lastly, This Doctrine may be great Comfort to weak Christians in the midst of their troublesome Imperfections, and Sense of their weak measures of Sanctification: To consider that the Righteousness that is inherent in themselves, is not the matter of their Justification, or that which must appear before God's Presence to be pleaded. The Righteousness of Christ is complete and perfect; that is our main Joy and Crown of rejoicing to be found in Christ, not having our own Righteousness, but that which is in him, and made ours by God's gracious Account.

*But how is this great Benefit of Justification applied unto us, and apprehended by us?*

Of Faith.

This is done on our part by Faith alone: And that not considered as a Virtue inherent in us, working by Love; but only as an Instrument or Hand of the Soul stretched forth, to lay hold on the Lord our Righteousness, *Rom. 5. 1. & 10. 10. Jer. 23. 6.* So that Faith justifieth only Relatively, in respect of the Object which it fasteneth on; to wit, the Righteousness of Christ, by which we are justified: Faith being only the Instrument to convey so great a Benefit unto the Soul, as the hand of the Beggar receives the Alms.

The various acceptions of Faith.

*Forasmuch as it standeth us much in hand, to know what this Faith is, whereby we have profit by Christ's Redemption: Declare how many ways the Word Faith, is taken in the Scriptures?*

Sometimes it is taken for true and faithful dealing between Man and Man, both in Word and Deed; called Fidelity or Faithfulness: (as *Mat. 23. 23. Acts 2. 10. & Tim. 5. 12. 1 Pet. 5. 12.*) But of that Faith we are not here to speak.

ſpeak. Sometimes it is taken for the Faith (or Fidelity) of God towards Man: But that alſo is beſides our purpoſe. Here we are to intreat of Man's Faith toward God: And that word Faith is alſo taken two ways.

1. For the Object to be apprehended, or things to be believed; even the whole Doctrine of Faith, or Points of Religion to be believed: As *Acts* 9. 7. & 13. 8. *Rom.* 1. 5. & 3. 31. & 12. 3, 6. & 16. 26. *Gal.* 3. 2, 5, 23. *1 Tim.* 1. 2. & 4. 1. *Jude* verſ. 3.

2. For the Action apprehending, or believing the ſame, *viz.* That Work of God in Man, whereby he giveth Aſſent or Credence to God in his Word; yea, and applieth that which any way concerneth him in particular, how otherwiſe general ſoever it be: (as *Rom.* 10. 17, &c.) And this Faith is ſet out by two Names, *Heb.* 11. 1. *The Subſtance of things hoped for, and the evidence of things not ſeen*: By the firſt meaning, That whereas God in his Word, hath made Promiſe of things which are not preſently enjoyed, but only hoped for; they being not in *Elſe*, but in *Poſſe*: Yet Faith doth after a ſort, give them a preſent ſubſiſting or being, as if they were in *Elſe*; by the ſecond meaning, that whereas many of the Promiſes are of things ſo far out of the reach of Man, that they are both inviſible to the Eye, and unreaſonable, or impoſſible to the Senſe or Underſtanding of Man: Yet Faith is the very Evidence of them, and that which doth ſo demonſtrate them unto us, that by it (as through a Proſpective Glaſs) we as clearly diſcern them, as if they were even at hand.

*How many kinds of Faith be there?*

Although there be but one true ſaving Faith, (*Eph.* 4. 5.) yet of Faith there are two ſorts. The divers kinds of Faith.

1. Such as is common to all; which all Men have, or may have.

2. That which no Man hath, or can have, but the Eleſt: It being proper to them, *2 Theſ.* 3. 2. *Rom.* 11. 32. *Tit.* 1. 1. *2 Cor.* 13. 5.

*How many ſorts be there of the common Faith?*

Two: Ordinary, and Extraordinary. And of the Ordinary, two alſo: That which we call Hiſtorical, and that we call Temporary Faith.

*What is an Hiſtorical Faith?*

It is a Knowledge and Perſwaſion of the Truth of God's Word, concerning the Letter and Story of it: As that there is one only God, and in the Godhead a Trinity in Unity; that Jeſus Chriſt is the Saviour of the World, &c. Hiſtorical Faith.

*What is a Temporary Faith?*

It is a joyful entertaining of the Promiſes of the Goſpel, with ſome ſeeming Confidence: Which yet is but vaniſhing, uncertain, and not rooted; laſteth but for a time, and then comes to nothing, *Mat.* 13. 20, 21. *Luke* 18. 3, 14. Temporary Faith.

*What is that common Faith which you call Extraordinary?*

It is the Faith of Miracles: Which is the cleaving to ſome ſpecial and ſingular Promiſe; either for the doing of ſome extraordinary Effect, or for the receiving of ſome outward Good, after an extraordinary manner, *1 Cor.* 13. 2. *Mat.* 21. 2. & 7. 22. *Mark* 9. 3. *Acts* 14. 9. *Luke* 17. 19. Miraculous Faith.

By this kind of Faith, *Judas* might work Miracles as well as the other Diſciples; and by this Faith many might be healed by our Saviour in their Bodies, who were not healed in their Souls.

*What now is true ſaving Faith, which none have but the Eleſt; it being proper to them?* Juſtifying Faith.

It is such a firm Assent of the Mind to the Truth of the Word, as flows into the Heart, and causeth the Soul to embrace it as Good, and to build its Eternal Happiness on it.

*What is that which you make the Object of saving Faith?*

The general Object of true saving Faith, is the whole Truth of God revealed: But the special Object of Faith as it justifieth, is the Promise of Remission of sins by the Lord Jesus. For as the *Israelites*, by the same Eyes by which they looked upon the Brazen Serpent, they saw other things; but they were not healed by looking upon any thing else, but only the Brazen Serpent: So, though by the same Faith whereby I cleave to Christ for Remission of Sins, I believe every Truth revealed; yet I am not justified by believing any Truth but the Promise of Grace in the Gospel.

*Open the Nature of this saving and justifying Faith somewhat more fully.*

Justifying Faith may be considered two ways; either as God works it in Man's Heart, or else as Man's Heart works by it towards God again. For first God enables Man to believe; and then he believes by God's enabling.

In the first respect, Faith is said to be God's Gift, *Ephes. 2. 8. Phil. 1. 29.* And it is the Greatness of God's Power, that raiseth Man's Heart unto it, *Ephes. 1. 19.*

In the second respect, Man is said to believe, *Rom. 10. 10.* and to come to Christ. But he believes by God's enabling him to believe; and he comes by God's causing him to come, *John 6. 44. No Man can come unto me except the Father draw him,* saith our Saviour.

*What doth God work in Man when he gives him Faith?*

First, He enlighteneth the Understanding, to see the Truth and Preciousness of the rich Offers of Grace in the *Lord Jesus*, *1 Cor. 2. 11, 12, 14. John 1. 5. & 12. 40. & 6. 45. Mat. 16. 17. Acts 26. 18.*

Secondly, He enables the Will to embrace them, and inclines all the desires of the Soul after them, and rests and builds eternal Comfort on them. The things of God, as they are Foolishness to Man's Natural Judgment; so they are Enmity to his Natural Will. And therefore when God gives Faith, he gives a new Light to the Understanding, and new Motions and Inclinations to the Heart. As the Covenant of Grace is; *I will give them a new Heart, Ezek. 36. 26.* It must be a mighty Power to turn the Heart of Man upside down, and cause him to pitch all the desires of the Soul upon a supernatural Object, *John 6. 44.*

*What gather we from hence?*

The Popish  
Implicit Faith  
confuted.

First, The Folly and Wickedness of the Popish Doctors, who persuade the Multitude to rest in a blind Faith, which they call implicate and folded up; telling them, that it is enough for them to believe as the Church believes, though they know not what the Church believes, nor who the Church is: Whereas the Scripture teacheth us, that Faith comes by hearing; that is, by hearing the blessed Promises of Grace offered to the People, *Rom. 10. 14, 17.* Faith doth not consist in Darkness and Ignorance; but Knowledge of the In-gredience of it, *John 12. 39.* and therefore sometimes put for it, *John 17. 3. Eisa. 53. 11.* Where God doth work Faith, there he gives a saving Light to the Understanding, though in divers measures and degrees. As there are weak measures of Faith, so weak measures of Knowledge and Apprehensions in saving Mysteries: But no Man can build upon God's gracious  
Word

Word and Promise, for the truth and reality of what he speaks, without he know what he speaks.

Secondly, We may here learn that Faith doth not consist only in the Understanding, or only in the Will, but in the whole Soul: The whole intelligent Nature is the Seat of Faith. And therefore either Faith is not a supernatural Gift of God, or else they speak ungraciously of God's Grace in the Work of Faith, who attribute no more to God than the Renovation of Man's Understanding, and revealing those things to him, which by Nature he could not see; leaving the Action of consenting and embracing by Faith the things revealed to Man's Free will: So sharing the Business of Believing between God and Man; the enlightning of the Understanding shall be Gods, but the inclining of the Will must be a Man's own, any further than it may be invited by Moral Perswasion. But the Scripture every where shews Faith to be such a transcendent and supernatural Gift, as far exceeds all natural Power to produce to reach unto. God doth all in this high Business by his powerful Spirit and supernatural Grace.

That the whole Soul is the Seat of Faith.

*But how then is it said, That Man believeth, Man receiveth Christ, Man comes unto him?*

These Phrases, and the like, shew what Man doth when Faith is wrought in him, how his Soul acts by it, and exerciseth this excellent Habit received. And it is thus: 1. By God's teaching him, he understands, by God's enlightning his Mind he sees the excellency of the Lord Jesus, and firmly assents unto the Word of Grace as true; that indeed Christ is the only Blessed Saviour; and that all the Promises of God in him are *Yea and Amen*. 2. By God's changing and enabling his Will he wills; by God's sanctifying his Affections he loves and embraceth; by God's printing and sealing them on his Heart, he possesseth and closeth with Christ, and the precious Promises of Mercy in him, and embraceth the Tenure of the Gospel as the sweetest and happiest Tidings that ever sounded in his Ears, and entertains it with the best Welcomes of his dear Heart, and placeth his Eternal Happiness on this Rock of Salvation.

*Put now all these together.*

They all shew that Faith is nothing else but a supernatural Action and Work of GOD in Man, whereby Man's Heart, that is, all the Powers of Man's Soul move as they are first moved by GOD. So that the Action of Man in believing, is nothing but his knowing of Heavenly Things by God's revealing them, and causing him to know them; his willing them, and embracing them by God's enabling him to will and embrace them. Thus the motion of Man's Heart to Christ, being moved by God, is called Man's believing with the Heart: Even as a Wheel which of it self cannot move, yet being moved by a higher Wheel doth move; which motion, though it be but one, yet is said to be the motion of two; that is, of the Mover, and of the thing moved.

*It seems then that justifying Faith consists in these two things, viz. in having a mind to know Christ, and a will to rest upon him.*

Yes: Whosoever sees so much Excellency in Christ, that thereby he is drawn to embrace him as the only Rock of Salvation, that Man truly believes to Justification.

*But is it not necessary to Justification, to be assured that my Sins are pardoned, and that I am justified?*

No: That is no Act of Faith as it justifieth, but an effect and fruit that followeth

loweth after Justification. For no Man is justified by believing that he is justified; for he must be justified before he can believe it: And no Man is pardoned by believing that he is pardoned; for he must be pardoned before he can believe it. But Faith as it justifieth, is a resting upon Christ to obtain pardon, the acknowledging him to be the only Saviour, and the hanging upon him for Salvation, *Mat. 16. 16. John 20. 31. Acts 8. 37. Rom. 10. 9. 1 John 4. 15. & 5. 1, 5.*

It is the direct Act of Faith that justifieth; that whereby I do believe: It is the reflex Act of Faith that assures; that whereby I know I do believe, and it comes by way of Argumentation thus.

Maj. *Whoever relieth upon Christ the Saviour of the World for Justification and Pardon; the Word of God saith, that he by so doing is actually justified and pardoned.*

Min. *But I do truly rely upon Christ for Justification and Pardon.*

Concl. *Therefore I undoubtedly believe that I am justified and pardoned.*

But many times both the former Propositions may be granted to be true, and yet a weak Christian want strength to draw the Conclusion. For it is one thing to believe, and another thing to believe that I do believe: It is one thing for a Man to have his Salvation certain, and another thing to be certain that it is certain.

*How then doth the Soul reach after Christ in the Act of Justifying?*

Even as a Man fallen into a River, and like to be drowned, as he is carried down with the Flood, espies the Bough of a Tree hanging over the River, which he catches at, and clings unto with all his might to save him; and seeing no other way of succour but that, ventures his Life upon it: This Man so soon as he had fastned upon this Bough is in a safe Condition, though all Troubles, Fears, and Terrors, are not presently out of his Mind, until he comes to himself, and sees himself quite out of Danger; then he is sure he is safe, but he was safe before he was sure. Even so it is with a Believer; Faith is but the espying of Christ as the only means to save, and the reaching out of the Heart to lay hold upon him. God hath spoke the Word, and made the Promise in his Son: I believe him to be the only Saviour, and remit my Soul to him to be saved by his Mediation. So soon as the Soul can do this, God imputeth the Righteousness of his Son unto it, and it is actually justified in the Court of Heaven, though it is not presently quieted and pacified in the Court of Conscience: That is done afterwards, in some sooner, in some later, by the Fruits and Effects of Justification.

*What are the Concomitants of Justification?*

*Reconciliation, and Adoption, Rom. 5. 1. John 1. 12.*

*What is Reconciliation?*

What Reconciliation is.

It is that Grace, whereby we that were Enemies to God are made Friends, (*Rom. 5. 10.*) we that were Rebels are received into Favour; we that were far off, and Aliens from God, are now brought near through CHRIST, *Eph. 2. 12, 13. & 18. 19. 1 John 13. Heb. 12. 22. 23.*

*What is Adoption?*

What Adoption is.

Adoption is the Power and Priviledge to be the Sons of God, (*John 1. 12. Eph. 1. 5*) derived unto us from Christ, who being the Eternal Son of God, became by Incarnation our Brother, that by him GOD might bring many Sons and Daughters unto Glory, *Heb. 2. 10.*

The benefit of Adoption.

*What are the Benefits that flow to us from our Adoption?*

Some are privative Immunities, and freedom from many Grievances. As,  
1. We

1. We are freed from the Slavery of Sin, *Rom. 6. 14.* 2. From Condemnation, *Rom. 8. 1.* 3. From all slavish Fears and Terrors, *Rom. 8. 15.* *We have not received the Spirit of Bondage to fear again, but the Spirit of Adoption.* 4. From the Law, not Ceremonial only, (*Gal. 5. 1.*) but Moral: Freed, I mean, from the Curse of it, freed from the Condemning Power of it, freed from the Coaction and Compulsion of it, freed from the rigorous Exaction and inexorable Demands of it, as it is a Covenant of Works: But not freed from the Doctrine of Holiness contained in it. The Justified and Adopted are every way freed from the Law, as it was an Enemy and against us, *Luke 1.* but not freed as it is our Guide and Director, containing the Rule of God's Holy Will. Our Sonship doth not free us from Service, but from Slavery; not from Holiness, but to Holiness. There is a free Service, which benefits the Condition of a Son: God's Service is perfect Freedom.

Some are positive Dignities. As, 1. Free Access to the Throne of Grace, that we may come to God in Prayer as to a Father, *Gal. 4. 6. Rom. 8. 15.* 2. We have an Interest in God's particular and special Providence, *2 Cor. 6. ult. Rom. 8. 28.* 3. We by our Adoption have a free and sanctified use of all God's Creatures restored; the right unto which we forfeited in *Adam.* For no Man hath any spiritual right to any thing, or a sanctified use of God's Creatures until he be in Covenant with God in Christ, and made a Son and Heir with him, and then all things are his, *1 Cor. 3. 21. Rom. 8. 32.* 4. From Adoption flows all Christian Joy; which is called the Joy in the Holy Ghost, *Rom. 14. 17.* unspeakable and glorious, *1 Pet. 1. 8, 9. Rom. 5. 2.* For the Spirit of Adoption is, first, a Witness, *Rom. 8. 16.* Secondly, A Seal, *Eph. 4. 30.* Thirdly, The Pledge and Earnest of our Inheritance, *Eph. 1. 14.* fertling a holy Security in the Soul, whereby it rejoiceth even in Affliction in hope of Glory.

*Do the justified Children of God always then rejoice?*

Joy considered as a delightful apprehension of the Favour of God gladding the Heart, though it ought continually to be laboured for, (*Phil. 4. 4.*) and preserved; yet it may be at times not only darkned and daunted, but for a time even lost, and to be restored, *Psal. 51. 12.* Yet it is, as all Spiritual Gifts of God, perpetual and without repentance: If we regard,

1. The Matter of Rejoicing; which is God's unchangeable Love and Grace, *Mal. 3. 6.*

2. The Causes and Fountains of Joy in the Regenerate; which are the never-failing Graces of Faith, (*Luke 22. 32.*) Hope, (*Rom. 5. 5.*) and Love towards God in Christ, *1 Cor. 8.*

3. The Valuation (even in the deepest dismay) of our part and hope in Christ above the Pleasures of Ten thousand Worlds.

4. The pretence and claim of a faithful Heart, promising and challenging unto it self a comfortable Harvest of Joy for the present Seed time of Sorrow, *Psal. 42. 5. & 57. 11. & 126. 5.*

*So much of the first main Benefit which Christians receive by their Communion with Christ, viz. Justification. Now what is the second Benefit which is called Glorification and Sanctification?*

It is the renewing of our Nature according to the Image of God, in Righteousness and true Holiness: Which is but begun in this Life, and is called Sanctification; and perfected in the Life to come, which therefore is most strictly called Glorification.

*How far forth is our Nature renewed in this Life by Sanctification ?*

This renewing is of our whole Nature, 1 *Theff.* 5. 23. *Rom.* 12. 2. the Understanding being enlightned, the Will rectified, the Affections regulated, the outward Man reformed; but not wholly in this Life. And this is done by the powerful Operation of the Spirit of God; who having begun a good Work in us, will perfect it unto the Day of the Lord, *Psal.* 51. 10. *Ezek.* 36. 26.

*What be the Parts of our Sanctification ?*

Two: Answerable to the two powerful Means whereby they are wrought. First, Mortification, or dying unto Sin, and thereby freedom from the Dominion thereof by the Death of Christ, *Rom.* 6. 6, 7.

Secondly, Vivification, or quickning unto the newness of Life, by the Power of the Resurrection of Christ; in regard whereof it is also called our first Resurrection, *Rev.* 20. 6.

*How doth Sanctification differ from the former Grace of Justification ?*

In many main and material Differences: As,

The Differences between Justification and Sanctification.

1. In the Order; not of time, wherein they go together, (*Rom.* 8. 30.) nor of Knowledge and Apprehension, wherein this latter hath precedency, (1 *Cor.* 6. 11.) but of Nature, wherein the former is the ground of this latter, 2 *Cor.* 7. 1.

Secondly, In the Subject: The Righteousness whereby we are justified being inherent in Christ for us; but this of Sanctification in our selves from him, *Rom.* 8. 10.

Thirdly, In the Cause: Our Justification following from the Merit; our Sanctification from the Efficacy of the Death and Life of Christ, *Eph.* 1. 19. & 2. 5.

Fourthly, In the Instrument. Faith, which in Justification is only as an Hand receiving, in Sanctification is a co working Vertue, *Acts* 15. 19. *Gal.* 5. 6.

Fifthly, In the Measure: Justification being in all Believers, and at all times alike; but Sanctification wrought differently and by degrees, 2 *Cor.* 3. 18. 2 *Pet.* 3. 18.

Sixthly, In the end: Which being in both Eternal Life, (*Rom.* 6. 23.) yet the one is among the Causes of Reigning, the other only as the High-way unto the Kingdom.

*What is the Rule and Square of our Sanctification ?*

The whole Word of God, (*John* 17. 17.) *Psal.* 119. 9.) as containing that Will of his, (*Rom.* 12. 2.) which is *even our Sanctification*, 1 *Theff.* 4. 3. &c.

*How do you prove, that God's Word is such a Rule ?*

1. By express warrant of Scripture. 2 *Tim.* 3. 14, 17.

2. By the resemblances or things whereunto it is compared: As to the *Way* we are to walk in, (*Fer.* 6. 16. *Mark* 12. 14. *Acts* 18. 24, 25.) to a *Light* and a *Lantern* in a dark place, to guide our feet into the way of Peace, *Psal.* 119. 105. *Prov.* 6. 23. 2 *Pet.* 1. 19, 20. *Luke* 1. 77, 79.) to a *Glass*, (*Jam.* 1. 25.) to a *Rule*, *Line*, *Square*, *Measure*, and *Ballance*, whereby must be framed, ordered, measured, and pondered, *Isa.* 28. 17. *Gal.* 6. 16. *Phil.* 3. 16.

3. Because they only are commended for a holy and righteous Life, who have framed it according to the Word, *Luke* 1. 6. and all others fecluded, *Isa.* 8. 19, 20. *Mat.* 22. 29.

4. Because nothing can be counted holy and righteous, which God doth not so account, and that in his Word. For as he only is righteous, and maketh this



this or that to be holy and righteous : So is Word only sheweth us what that is which he so accounteth. And therefore it is called his Holy Word, Holy Scriptures, Righteous Laws, &c. Deut. 4. 8. 2 Tim. 3. 15, 16.

*What mean you here by the whole Word of God ?*

Both the *Law* and the *Gospel*, the Old Testament and the New, Job 22.22. John 17. 17.

*How is the Gospel a Rule of Obedience, being the Rule of Faith ?*

As the Law requireth Obedience, (Jam. 2. 8.) so the Gospel directeth the Faithful how to perform it, (1 Tim. 1. 9, 10, 11. Eph. 4. 20, 21.) only with difference.

1. Of the *Manner* : The Law propounding God to be worshipped of us in himself, as our Creator ; the Gospel in Christ, as our Saviour, John. 5. 23. & 14. 1.

The difference between the Law and the Gospel.

2. Of the *End* : The Law requiring all Duties, as for the procurement of our own Salvation ; the Gospel in way of thankfulness for Salvation in Christ already bestowed, 1 Thess. 5. 18.

3. Of the *Effect* : The Law, (like Pharaoh, that required Brick, but allowed no Straw) demanding Obedience, but vouchsafing no Assistance ; (supposing Man as in the state of Creation :) the Gospel both offering, and conferring to the Regenerate, that which it requireth, Rom. 10. 5, 6, 8. for it both requireth and conferreth Faith unto the Elect, and that not only as a *Hand* to lay hold on Christ, but also as a chief *Vertue*, working by Love in all parts of Obedience. Without which even the *Gospel* is *Law*, that is, a killing Letter (2 Cor. 3. 6.) to the Unregenerate ; and with which the *Law* becometh as it were the *Gospel* to the Regenerate ; even a *Law of Liberty*, Jam. 1. 25. & 2. 12. For as the Law saveth us not without the Gospel, so the Gospel saveth us not without the Law.

*Doth not the Gospel add other Precepts or Counsels to those of the Law ?*

Not any other, in substance of Action, but only reneweth and enforceeth those of the Law, (1 John 2. 7, 8.) and specifieth some Duties, as of Faith in the Messias, of the Sacraments, &c. which have their general ground from the Law. As for those that are propounded in form of Counsel, and do concern things indifferent, they are not therefore *arbitrary* Courses (Rev. 3. 18.) of higher perfection, much less *meritorious* of greater Glory : But as they are applied with due Circumstances, necessary *Precepts*, referred to some one or other Commandment of the Law ; the rejecting whereof excludeth from the Kingdom of God, Mat. 19. 23.

*What is that Law, which with the Direction of the Gospel, is the Rule of Sanctification ?*

The Moral Law the Rule of Sanctification

The *Moral Law*, or *Law of Nature*, engraven by God himself first in the Heart of Man in his Creation, after in Tables of Stone (Deut. 10. 4.) in the days of *Moses* ; and so published and committed unto the Church for all Ages, as the *Royal Law* for Obedience to God our King, Jam. 2. 8.

*Why did God write that Law in Tables of Stone ?*

Partly to signify the perpetual use and continuance of them to the end of the World ; partly to shew the stony hardness of our Hearts, in which this Law was to be written, and to declare how hard it is to bring us to Obedience of them.

*Why did none but God write this Law in Tables of Stone ?*

Because none but God can write his Law in our Hearts.

*How was this Law delivered?*

To shew the Gloriousness of it, God delivered it in Fire. For the Mountain burned, the Trumpet sounded, the People fled, and *Moses* himself trembled.

*What did this signify to them, and teach us?*

1. That without Christ the Law is but Death.
2. That we should be very careful to perform Obedience to the same.

*Did God give no other Law but the Moral Law only?*

Yes, he added also the *Ceremonial* and *Judicial* Laws, as special Explications and Applications of the Law Moral, unto that present Church and People the Israelites, *Rom.* 9. 4.

Ceremonial  
Law.

*What was the Ceremonial Law?*

That Law which did set down Orders for Direction in Rites of outward Worship, shadowing the Grace of the Gospel, *Heb.* 10. 1. &c.

*Are we bound to keep and observe those Laws?*

No. For the *Substance* being now exhibited, those *Shadows* are utterly abolished by the Death of Christ; and therefore the use of them now would be a kind of Denial of his Death.

Judicial Law.

*What call you the Judicial Law?*

That wherein God appointed a Form of Politick and Civil Government of the Common-wealth of the Jews: Which therefore is ceased with the Dissolution of that State, for which it was ordained; saving only in the common Equity.

*Is this Law utterly revoked and abolished by Christ?*

No. For he came not to overturn any good Government of the Common-wealth; much less that which was appointed by God himself.

*May not Christian Magistrates then swerve any thing from those Laws of Government, which were set down by Moses?*

In some Circumstances they may: But in the general Equity and Substance they may not.

*What Judicial Laws are immutably to be observed now of Christian Magistrates?*

Those which have Reasons annexed unto them, and especially those wherein God hath appointed Death for the Punishment of heinous Offences.

The Moral  
Law.

*What is the Moral Law?*

That which commandeth the Perfection of *Godliness* and *Righteousness*; and directeth us in our Duties to God and Man, *Deut.* 5. 32. & 12. 32.

*Are we not delivered from this Law by the means of Christ?*

From the *Burthen* of the Law exacting in our own Persons perfect Obedience, and from the *Curse* of that Law due unto Disobedience, we are delivered by Christ, *Gal.* 3. 10, 11, 12, 13. But from the Commandment as a *Rule* of Life, we are not freed, (*James* 2. 8.) but contrariwise are inclined and disposed by his free Spirit, to the willing *Obedience* thereof, *Psal.* 51. 12. & 119. 32, 45. 1 *John* 5. 3.

The end and  
use of the  
Law.

*To what end serveth the Law?*

First, It is a Glass, to discover our Filthiness, and to shew us our Sins, and the Punishment thereof: That thereby we may be driven unto Christ, to be purged by him, (*Gal.* 3. 24. *Rom.* 3. 20, 27.) For it layeth open all the Parts of our Misery, both Sinfulness, Accursedness, and Impotency or Unableness to relieve our selves: So whipping and chafing us to Christ, that in him we may find Deliverance.

Secondly,

Secondly, When we are come to Christ, and feel our selves saved by him, it is a Guide to direct us in the way he have to walk in all our Life after, *Mat. 5. 17. Luke 1. 6. Deut. 6. 6.* For after the Law hath brought us to Christ, the feeling of the Love of God in him, maketh us to strive towards the Obedience of it: And then it is a Rule to direct us how to behave our selves in all things that we do; teaching us how we are to live, in such sort, as whosoever walketh not accordingly cannot be saved.

*What further use hath the Law in the Regenerate?*

First, As a Light it directeth us. For the World being a dark Wilderness, and we naturally blind; we are in continual danger of falling, unless our steps be guided by the Lamp of the Law, *Psal. 119. 105.*

Secondly, As a prick it inciteth us to Obedience; because God commandeth them.

Thirdly, It frameth us to Humility; whilst by it we understand that we are far from fulfilling it.

*What gather you of this?*

First, What great reason there is why we should be well acquainted with the Law of God, seeing it is of so great use.

Secondly, That every one should have a Warrant of all his doings out of this Law of God; whereby all the Creatures are sanctified for Man's use.

*What is the contrary Vice?*

Ignorance, whereof Christ saith, that the *Blind fall into the Ditch*, *Matth. 15. 14.*

*So much of the use of Law: What is required for our profiting therein?*

In the first place it is required, that we have the right Understanding of the Law: Without which it is impossible to reap any of the former Fruits; how can a Man acknowledge the Breach of that Law which he knoweth not? Or how can he serve God in the endeavour of the Performance of it, unless he understand his Master's Will?

*What Rules are principally to be observed for the understanding and right interpreting of the Law?*

Three especially.

*What is the first?*

That the Law is *Spiritual*, reaching to the Soul and all the Powers thereof: And charging as well the Heart and Thoughts, as the outward Man, *Rom. 7. 14. Deut. 6. 5. Mat. 22. 37. Mark 12. 30. Luk. 10. 27.*

*How doth the Law charge all the Powers of the Soul?*

It chargeth the Understanding to know every Duty, even all the Will of God. It chargeth the Judgment to discern between Good and Evil; and between two good things, which is the better. It chargeth the Memory to retain. It charges the Will to chuse the better, and leave the worse. It charges the Affections to love things to be loved, and to hate things to be hated.

*Doth the Law require these alike of all?*

No; but according to the Sex, growth in Age, and difference of Calling: as more of a Man than of a Woman, of a young Man than of a Child, of a publick Person than of a private Man.

*What is the second Rule?*

That the Law is *perfect*, *Psal. 19. 7.* not only binding the Soul, but also the whole Soul, to discharge all the several Functions of her Faculties, perfectly. As the Understanding, to know the Will of God perfectly; the Judgment,

Rules to be observed for the interpretation of the Law.

1. Rule: The Law is Spiritual.

2. Rule: That the Law is perfect.

to discern perfectly betwixt Good and Evil; the Memory, to retain and remember all perfectly; the Will, to chuse the Good and leave the Evil perfectly; the Affections, to love the one, and hate the other perfectly. So in condemning Evil, it condemneth all Evil; and in commanding Good, it commandeth all Good; charging Man to practise the Good, and refuse the Evil perfectly: And that not only as it was commanded *Adam* before his Fall, but also according to the several times before, in, and after the Law.

*What is the third?*

That in every Commandment there is a borrowed Speech, whereby more is commanded or forbidden than is named.

*What special Rules are comprehended under the third?*

These three following.

3. Rule: In every Commandment there is a Synecdoche.

1. Branch of the third Rule.

1. Whatsoever the Law commandeth, it forbiddeth the contrary; and whatsoever it forbiddeth, it commandeth the contrary, *Mat. 5. 21. 23, 24, 25.* So where any Duty is enjoined, as in the affirmative Commandments, there we must understand the contrary Sin to be forbidden, (*Mat. 4. 10. 1 Cor. 15. 34.*) and where any Sin is forbidden, as in the Negative, there must we know the contrary Duty is required, *Ephes. 4. 18.*

2. Branch.

2. Whatsoever the Law commandeth or forbiddeth in one kind, it commandeth or forbiddeth all the same kind, and all the degrees thereof. For under one kind manifest and plain are understood all things of like sort: And under one main Duty or Crime expressed, all degrees of Good or Evil in the same kind, are either commanded, or forbidden, *Mat. 5. 21, 22. &c. 1 John 3. 15.*

3. Branch.

3. Whatsoever the Law commandeth or forbiddeth, it commandeth or forbiddeth the Causes thereof, and all the Means whereby that thing is done or brought to pass: So that with the thing forbidden, or the Duty enjoined, all Occasions and Provocations or Furtherances thereto, are consequently condemned or required, *1 Thess. 5. 22. Heb. 10. 24, 25. Mat. 5. 27, 30.*

*Besides the true Knowledge, what is further required for a profitable Course in the Law?*

First, Remembrance: Without which our Knowledge is nothing, as that which is poured into a riven Vessel. And therefore in the fourth Commandment God using this word *Remember*, (to teach us how deeply Negligence and Forgetfulness of that Commandment is rooted in our Nature) doth in one Commandment shew what Remembrance we should have of all, and what Forgetfulness is (though not alike) in all.

Secondly, Judgment to take heed that we do nothing rashly, and suddenly, but ever to examine our ways.

Thirdly, The Will and Affections must be formed to an Obedience of the Commandments. Whereto also it may help to consider that God propoundeth the Ten Commandments in the second Person of the singular Number; saying, *Thou shalt not, &c.*

Why the Commandments are propounded in the second Person.

*Why are the Commandments uttered in this sort; rather than by You, or No Man, or Every Man, &c.*

First, Because God being without Partiality, speaketh to all Men alike; as well the Rich as Poor, High as Low.

Secondly, Because no Man should put the Commandments of God from himself, as though they did not concern him: But every particular Man should apply them to himself, as well as if God had spoken to him by Name.

*What*

*What gather you of this ?*

That God wisely preventeth a common abuse amongst Men, which is to esteem that which is spoken unto all Men, to be (as it were) spoken to none. As you shall have it common amongst Men to say and confess, that God is just and merciful, and that he commandeth this, and forbiddeth that: And yet they usually so behave themselves, that they shift the matter to the general, as if it did nothing belong unto them in particular; and as if they notwithstanding might live as they list. And therefore every Man is to judge and esteem that God speaketh in the Law to him in particular; and is accordingly to be affected therewith.

*That this Obedience may be more willing and chearful; what is further to be thought upon ?*

We must set before our Eyes God's Benefits bestowed upon us; as the Lord did before the *Israelites*, in the Preface to the Ten Commandments.

*What Benefits ought we chiefly to call to Mind ?*

First, Those which God doth generally bestow upon all his Children; as our Election, Creation, Redemption, Vocation, Justification, Sanctification, continual Preservation: And then particularly such Blessings as God hath severally bestowed upon every one of us.

*Are not the Judgments of God also to be thought upon for furtherance to this Obedience ?*

Yes verily; to make us fear to offend in our ways, *Exod. 20. 5, 7. Psalm 119. 120.*

*Remaineth there yet any more ?*

Good Company; which with *David* we must cleave unto, (*Psal. 119. 63. Prov. 13. 20.*) not the noblest or of greatest account, but the godliest. For if we will avoid such a Sin, we must avoid all Company that doth delight therein; which is no less dangerous than good Company is profitable.

*What gather you of this ?*

That whosoever maketh no choice of Company, maketh no Conscience of Sin: As those that dare keep Company familiarly with Papists, and profane Persons, thinking that they may keep their Conscience to themselves.

*Hitherto of the helps both of the Knowledge and Practice. In what part of the Scripture is the Moral Law of God contained ?*

It is handled at large throughout the whole Scripture: But is summarily contrived first into Ten Words or Ten Commandments, *Exod. 20. (Deut. 4. 13. & 10. 4.)* and then into Two, (*Mat. 22. 37, 40. Luke 10. 27.*) comprehending the Sum of the whole Law. Which are now to be spoken of.

*Why hath God given Ten Commandments and no more ? Deut. 5. 22.*

First, That no Man should either add any thing to, or take any thing from the Laws of God.

Secondly, That we might be left without excuse, if we learned them not; seeing they be but Ten, and no more.

*How are these Ten Commandments propounded ?*

Sometime *Affirmatively*, as the fourth and fifth; others *Negatively*, as all the rest: Some with Reasons annexed, as the five first; some without, as the five last; and all of them in the time to come, and in the second Person singular.

*Why they are laid down in the second Person singular, you have shewed before: And why some have Reasons added unto them, we shall bear a little after. Declare now, why God hath propounded all the Commandments in the time to come; saying, Thou shalt not, &c.*

Because it is not enough for us, that we have kept the Commandments of God heretofore, except we continue in keeping of them to the end of our Lives.

*Why are there more of the Commandments Negative, telling us what we should not do; then Affirmative, telling us what we should do? All of them, except two, being set down negatively.*

Why the Commandments are propounded Negatively.

1. To put us in mind of our Corruption; which needeth greatly to be restrained. Whereas if *Adam* had continued in Integrity, Sin had not been known; and then Vertue only had been propounded to us to follow.

2. Because our Souls being full of Sins must have them plucked forth, before we can do any thing that is good.

3. Because the Negative bindeth more strongly. For the Negative Precept bindeth always. and to all moments of time; the Affirmative bindeth always, but not to all moments of time.

The division of the Decalogue.

*How are the Ten Commandments divided?*

Into *Two Tables*, (*Deut.* 4. 13. & 10. 1, 4.) which Christ calleth the *Two Great Commandments*, *Mat.* 22.

*What doth the first contain?*

Our Duty to God; in the four first Commandments.

*What doth the second?*

Our Duty to Man; in the six last.

*What is the Sum of the first?*

The Sum of the first Table.

*Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy Heart, and with all thy Soul, and with all thy Strength, and with all thy Mind, Deut.* 6. 5. *Mat.* 22. 37, 38. *Luke* 10. 27.

*What is the Sum of the second?*

The sum of the second Table.

*Thou shalt love thy Neighbour as thy self, Levit.* 19. 18. *Mat.* 22. 30. *Luke* 10. 27.

*What is the Sum of this Sum?*

*Love*; which consisteth in two Heads (as we have heard); to wit, the Love of God, and our Neighbour, *Luke* 10. 27. *1 John* 5. 2. *1 Tim.* 1. 4, 5.

*What use is there of this short Sum?*

Very great: Both to shew the marvellous Wisdom of God, and also for singular Profit that redoundeth to us thereof.

*Wherein appeareth this Wisdom of God?*

That fith it was great Cunning to contrive the whole Will of God into Ten Words; it must needs be more wonderful to bring all into Two.

*What is the Profit that redoundeth unto us?*

It furthereth us in the two-fold use of the Law before spoken of. For, first, it is a means the more to humble us, and so the more effectually to drive us unto Christ. Secondly, It helpeth us much in our Obedience to Christ and his Commandments.

*What profit ariseth of the first use concerning Humiliation?*

That Men being brought to a nearer sight of their Sins, might be the more earnest to come unto Christ.

*How shall that be?*

That when all our Sins are gathered into one heap, and mustered into one Troop, they may appear the greater, and cast us down the more. As a Man owing sundry Debts unto divers or unto one Man, in the particulars, is confident of his ability to pay all, as long as he heareth they are but small Sums:

But

But hearing the whole Sum, he despaireth of the Payment of it. Or when as there be many Soldiers coming against their Enemy, but yet here and there fcattered, they do not affect us with so great fear, as when they be gathered and ranged in order, and are all under one fight or view.

*How is this shewed in our Love towards God ?*

In that it should be done in simple Obedience of the whole Man, that is, of all the Powers both of Soul and Body ; which is impossible for any Man to do.

*What are they of the Soul ?*

Two, of the Mind, and of the Will.

*What are they of the Mind ?*

The Understanding and Judgment ; unto both which Memory is annexed.

*How are these charged ?*

Our Understanding should perfectly comprehend all things that God would have us to know: In Judgment we should think aright of them ; and the Memory accordingly should retain them. But we are ignorant of many things ; and those which we know, we know but in part ; and that which we know, we judge not aright of, nor remember as we ought.

*How stand the Will and Affections charged ?*

Hereby must we love perfectly all known Good, and perfectly hate all known Evil ; of which we come a great deal shorter than of the other.

*What are they of the Body ?*

All the Members, Parts, and Graces of the Body, (as Beauty, Strength, &c.) should be wholly employed in the Service of God, and in the doing of his Will. But the wandring of our Eyes in the hearing of the Word, and other parts of God's Service, doth easily bewray our great negligence, and the small obedience and conformity of the rest of the Members and Parts of the Body.

*Shew the same in our Love towards our Neighbour.*

In that we must love him as our self : Which as it is so much the less than the former, as Man is inferiour to God ; so we being not able to accomplish it, are much less able to fulfil the other.

*How shall that be tried ?*

By Examination of our selves in some particulars. As for example, Whether we love a Stranger, or our utter and most deadly Enemy, as our selves ; which no Man ever did ; nay, a common Man, or to be plainer, even our dearest Friend, as we do our selves ; which cannot be found, *Deut.* 28. 53, 56, &c. And therefore the Righteousness of the Papist is a rotten Righteousness, and such as will never stand before the Judgment Seat of God.

*What profit ariseth of the second use ?*

That by it, as by a Glass, we may the easier see, and being shortly contrived, we may the better remember our whole Duty both to God and Man ; it being as a Card, or Map of a Country, easily carried about with us.

*Seeing then that the whole Sum and main End of the Law is Love, what gather you thereof ?*

That which the Apostle exhorteth unto, *viz.* To leave all idle Questions as unprofitable, and to deal in those Matters only which further the Practice of Love, *1 Tim.* 1. 4, 5.

*Why is the Love of God called the first and greatest Commandment ?*

*Mat.* 22. 38.

Because we should chiefly, and in the first place, regard our Duties to God, and be most careful to understand his Will, and to worship him, 1 *Job*. 4. 20. In which respect the first Table is put before the second; as being the principal.

*How may it appear that our Duties to God are to be preferred before the other towards our Neighbour?*

First, By the inequality of the Persons offended: Because it is worse to offend God than Man, *Acts* 4. 19.

Secondly, By the Punishments assigned in the Scripture. For the breaches of the first Table are to be more severely punished, than the Breaches of the second. As he that revileth the Magistrate, shall bear his Sin; but he that blasphemeth God shall be stoned to death, 1 *Sam.* 2. 25.

*What gather you of this?*

The crafty Practices of Papists, who would make Men believe, that the chiefest Godliness, and most meritorious Good Works of all, required in the Law of God, are the Works of the second Table, as Charity, Alms-deeds, &c. thereby deceiving the People to enrich themselves.

*Are all the Duties of the first Table greater than all the Duties of the second?*

No, unless the Comparison be equally made. For the Moral Duties of the second Table being perpetual, are greater than the Ceremonial Duties of the first being temporal: Whereunto agreeth, that God *will rather have Mercy than Sacrifice*, *Hos.* 6. 6. *Mat.* 9. 13.

*When do you count the Comparison equal?*

When they are compared in like degrees; as the chief Commandment of the first Table with the chief of the second; the middle Duties of the one with the middle Duties of the other; and the last and least of the former, with the last and least of the latter. Thus if we compare the greatest with the greatest, and the meanest with the meanest; the Duties and Breaches of the first Table, are greater than the Duties and Breaches of the second. But tho' the principal Service of the one, be greater than the principal Service of the other; if the Comparison be not made in the same degrees, as if (for example) the Murder of a Man be compared with the least abuse of the Name of God; or Adultery with the least breach of the Sabbath; these of the second Table are greater.

*Why is the second Table said to be like unto the first? Mat. 22. 39.*

For that they go so hand in hand together, that no Man can perform the one, unless he accomplish the other: As *St. John* plainly teacheth in his first Epistle, the fourth and fifth Chapter. For whosoever keepeth the first Table well, cannot but keep the second; and whosoever keepeth the second, must needs keep the first.

*What is to be said then of those that seem to keep the one, and care not for the other?*

If they will seem to serve God, and are not in Charity, they are meer Hypocrites: And if they will seem to deal uprightly with their Neighbours, and have not the Love of God in them, they are profane Politicks, and very Atheists.

*Wherein else do the Tables agree?*

First, In that they are both perpetual.

Secondly, In that they are both perfect.

*Wherein do the Commandments of the first Table agree?*

In this principally; that they concern the Worship of God, and contain our whole Duties towards him.



*How are they divided?*

They either respect the *Root* of this Worship, as the first; or the *Branches* thereof, as the three following. For the Fountain Worship of God is prescribed in the first Commandment: The means of his Service, in the other three.

The division of the first Table.

*Why did God enjoyn his Worship in four Commandments?*

That we might the better know and retain them in mind: Or otherwise might be left the more without excuse.

*What is common to these four Commandments of the first Table?*

That every one hath his several Reason annexed: Yet with this difference, that the first hath his Reason going before the Commandment, and the other three have it following.

*Have not the Commandments of the second Table their Reasons also?*

Yes verily in the Scripture; but for Brevity they are omitted in the Decalogue.

*Why are the Reasons of the Commandments of the first Table rather set down than of the second?*

First, That we might know, that there is less Light left in us of the Worship of God, than of the Duties we owe to our Neighbour.

Secondly, To teach us, that as all Obedience should be grounded upon Reason and Knowledge; so especially that which concerneth God's Worship.

*What gather you of this?*

That those are greatly deceived, who think it sufficient, if they have the Commandments by heart, or can say them by rote.

*Why is the reason of the first Commandment set before, which in all the other cometh after?*

Because it serveth not only for a Reason of this Commandment, but also for a Preface to all the Ten. For it hath a reference to them all, and is a reason to urge the Obedervance of every one of them.

*In what Words is it expressed?*

In these Words of God, *Exod. 20. 2. I am the Lord thy God, which brought thee out of the Land of Egypt, out of the House of Bondage.*

The Preface of the Commandment.

*How prove you this to be a Reason, and not a Commandment? As some do think?*

First, Because it is commonly used for a Reason of other Commandments, *Ezek. 20. 5. 7. Lev. 19. 36, 37.*

Secondly, Because it hath not the *form* of a Commandment.

Thirdly, Sith the other three Commandments have their Reason added, it is unlikely that the first and chiefest should have none.

*How is this Preface set as a Reason to enforce the Observation, both of the first Commandment, and of all the rest?*

Thus: If I be the Lord thy God which brought thee out of the Land of Egypt, thou must take me for the Lord thy God alone, and keep all my Commandments. But I am the Lord thy God which brought thee out of the Land of Egypt. Therefore thou must take me for thy God alone, and keep all my Commandments.

*What ground of Obedience is there laid in this Reason?*

That this Law is to be obeyed; because it proceedeth from him, who is not only *the Lord* our Maker, (*Psal. 100. 3.*) but also *our God* and Saviour, (*1 Tim. 4. 10.*) *Psal. 36. 6.*

*Whence is the latter?*

From the *Covenant of Grace*, whereby he is *our God*, the *Saviour of them that believe*, (1 Tim. 4. 10.) affuring them of all gracious *deliverances*, by virtue of that his *Covenant*, from all Evils and Enemies, both Bodily, and especially Spiritual: A Proof whereof is laid down in that famous deliverance of the People of Israel out of the Slavery of Egypt; which was so exceeding great, that by reason thereof they were said to be in an Iron Furnace, Deut. 4. 20.

*How can this belong to us which are no Israelites?*

Though we be not *Israel* in Name, or according to the flesh; yet we are the true *Israel* of God, according to the Spirit and Promise.

*Why doth the Lord make choice of that benefit, which seemeth nothing at all to belong unto us; rather than of any other, wherein we communicate with them?*

1. Because it is the manner of God, to allure the Israelites, to whom the Law was given at first, as Children, with temporal Benefits, (Levit. 26. 4, 10. Deut. 28. 13.) having respect to their Infirmary and Childhood: Whereas we are blessed of God with greater Knowledge, and therefore, in respect of them, are (as it were) at Man's Estate.

2. Because it was fittest to express the Spiritual Deliverance from Satan by Christ, which was thereby figured and represented; and so it belongeth no less (if not more) to us than to them.

3. Because we having been freed from the slavery of our Bloody Enemies, whereunto we were so near more than once, and unto whom we justly have deserved to have been enthralled; and it being the common case of all God's Children, to be in continual danger of the like, and to feel the like Goodness of God towards them; we may also make use of this Title, and esteem it a great Bond also for us unto God.

4. Because it was the latest Benefit, the Sweetness whereof was yet (as it were) in their Mouth. And herein the Lord had respect unto our corrupt Nature, who are ready to forget old Benefits, how great soever.

*What is there in this Reason, to set forth the true God whom we worship; and to distinguish him from all Idols whatsoever?*

1. The Name *Jehovah*; which betokeneth that he only is of himself, and all other things have their being of him. Whereby we are taught, that there is but one true God, whose Being no Creature is able to conceive: And that he giveth Being to all other things, both by creating them at first, and by preserving and directing of them continually.

2. The Name *Elohim*, or God; which in the Hebrew is of the plural number, to signify the Trinity of the Persons in Unity of the Godhead.

3. That he is both Omnipotent, that is, able to do all things; and also willing to employ his Power to the Preservation of his People: Proved from an Argument of the Effects, in the Deliverance of the Israelites out of Egypt.

*So much of the Preface. What are the Words of the first Commandment?*

The first Commandment.

**Thou shalt have no other Gods before Me. Or, Thou shalt not have any strange God before My Face.** Exodus 20. 3.

*What is the Scope and Meaning of this Commandment?*

The scope and meaning of this Commandment.

1. That this *Jehovah*, one in Substance and three in Persons, the Creator and Governour of all things, and the Redeemer of his People, is to be entertained for the only true God, in all the Powers of our Soul, Mat. 22. 37.

2. That

2. That the inward and spiritual Worship of the Heart, (*Prov. 23. 26.*) wherein God especially delighteth, (*Deut. 5. 29.*) and which is the ground of the outward, (*Prov. 4. 23. Mat. 12. 35.*) is to be given to him, and to none other: And that *sincerely*, without Hypocrisie, as in his *sight*, who searcheth and knoweth the Heart, (*Fer. 7. 10*) For this word, *Before me*, or *Before my Face*, noeth that inward Entertainment and Worship whereof God alone doth take notice. And thereby God sheweth, that he condemneth as well the corrupt thoughts of Man's Heart concerning his Majesty, as the wicked Practice of the Body. For our Thoughts are before his Face.

*What is forbidden in this Commandment?*

*Original Corruption*, so far forth as it is the Fountain of Impiety against God, (*Rom. 8. 7.*) with all the Streams thereof.

*What is required in this Commandment?*

That we set up, imbrace, and sanctifie the Lord God *in our Hearts*, (*Isa. 8. 13.*) yielding unto him in Christ, that inward and spiritual Worship, which is due unto his Majesty.

*Wherein doth this consist?*

1. In knowing of God, in Himself, in his Properties, and in his Works. For it should be the Joy of every Christian Soul, to know the true God, and whom he hath sent, Christ Jesus, *John 17. 3.*

2. In cleaving unto him, *Deut. 11. 22. Josh. 23. 8. Acts 11. 23.*

*How is that to be done?*

1. We must be perfwaded of God's Love to us, and so rest upon him for all we want; being assured that he both can and will abundantly provide for us, here and for ever.

2. We are to love him so heartily, as to be loth to offend him, and delight to please him in all things.

*So much of this Commandment in general: What are we to consider of it in particular?*

First, The several Branches of it.

Secondly, The Helps and Hindrances of the Obedience thereof.

*What be the several Branches of this Precept?*

There is here commanded;

1. The having of a God: And herein *Religion*.

2. The having of one only God, and no more: And herein *Unity*.

3. The having of the true God, and none other, for our God; and herein

*Truth.*

*To what end doth God command us to have a God; seeing we cannot chuse but have him for our God, whether we will or not?*

Because, albeit all Men of necessity must have a God above them: Yet many either know him not, or care not for him; and so make him no God, as much as in them lieth.

*What is it then to have a God?*

To know and worship such an infinite Nature as hath his being in himself, and giveth being to all other things; wholly to depend upon him, and to yield absolute Obedience unto his Will.

*What is it to have no God?*

In heart to deny either God himself or any of his Properties; or so to live, as if there were no God at all.

*What things are to be considered in this first Branch of the Commandment?*

Such as do concern the Faculties of the Soul, and the several Powers of the inward

What is forbidden and required in this first Commandment.

The several Branches of the first Commandment.

What it is to have a God.

inward Man: Namely, the *Understanding, Memory, Will, Affections, and Conscience?*

*What is the Understanding charged with, in being commanded to have a God?*

1. To know God, as he hath revealed himself in his Word and in his Works, *1 Chron. 28. 9. John 17. 3.*
2. To acknowledge him to be such an one as we know him to be.
3. To have Faith, both in believing the things that are written of him, and applying to our selves his good Promises.

Of the Knowledge of God.

*What are we to consider in the Knowledge of God?*

First, The Knowledge of God himself: And secondly, of the things belonging unto him.

*Wherein is God himself to be considered?*

In the Unity of his Essence, and Trinity of his Persons.

*What are the Things belonging unto God?*

His Properties, and his Actions: Whereby only we can know him, his Substance being past finding out of Man or Angel.

*What are his Properties?*

His Wisdom, Omnipotence, Justice, Goodness, &c. which are in him all essential.

*What are his Actions?*

His determining, and executing of all things.

*What are the things forbidden in this Commandment, as repugnant to this Knowledge of God?*

Opposites to the Knowledge of God.

They either fail in defect or in excess.

*What are those that fail in defect?*

Ignorance of God.

1. Ignorance of God and of his Will: which being a breach of God's Commandment, doth therefore deserve Damnation, *2 Thess. 1. 8. Hof. 4. 1, 6.*

2. Uncapability of Knowledge.

3. Atheism: Which is a Denial of God.

*How many sorts of Ignorance are there?*

Three:

1. Simple Ignorance; such as Children and Fools have.

2. Wretchless Ignorance; when a Man may learn, and will not.

3. Wilful Ignorance; when a Man would fain be ignorant of that he knows.

*What is that which soileth in excess?*

Curious searching into the secrets of God, *Deut. 29. 29.*

*What Vice is contrary to that Faith which is here commanded?*

Infidelity and Doubtfulness, *Psal. 116. 11.*

*Hitherto of the Understanding: What is required in the Memory?*

The Remembrance of God and good things; especially of those which most concern us, and chiefly at that Instant when we should make use of them.

*What is the contrary Vice?*

Forgetfulness.

*What is required in the Will?*

That we serve God with a perfect Heart, and with a willing Mind, *1 Chron. 28. 9.*

*What is the contrary to this?*

Unwillingness to good things, principally to the best.

*What Affections be there here ordered?*

1. Affiance. 2. Love and Hatred. 3. Fear. 4. Joy and Sorrow.

*What*

*What are we commanded in regard of the first of these ?*

To put our whole trust and confidence in God ; and continually to depend upon him, *Pfal.* 22. 4, 5, 8, 9. & 73. 25. *Esther* 4. 14. Affiance in God.

*What Vices are condemned repugnant to this ?*

1. In defect: Want of dependence upon God ; and distrust of his Power, Mercy, Promises and Providences.

2. In excess: Presuming of God's Mercies, though we live as we list ; and tempting him when we so depend upon him, that we neglect the use of the means which he hath appointed, *Mat.* 4. 6, 7.

*What Vertues do arise of this affiance and trust in God ?*

Patience and Hope.

*What is Patience ?*

That Vertue, whereby we willingly submit our selves to the pleasure of God in all things ; and with alacrity go through those Troubles which he sendeth upon us, like obedient Children meekly enduring the Correction of our Heavenly Father, *1 Sam.* 30. 6. *Heb.* 12. 7, 8, 9, &c.

Patience.

*What Vices are condemned as repugnant to Patience ?*

1. In defect: Murmuring and Impatience, in grudging to bear whatsoever Cross the Lord shall lay upon us.

2. In excess: Stupidity, in not being touched with, nor profiting by the Hand of God, when it is upon us.

*What is Hope ?*

That Vertue, whereby we expect all good things from God, and patiently attend for all things that we need at his hands, (*Psal.* 22. 4, 5. & 37. 7.) not only when we have the means, but also when we want all apparent means, (as the *Israelites* did in the Desert) ; yea, when the means seem contrary, (as the three Companions of *Daniel*, and *Daniel* himself did, (*Dan.* 3. 17, 18.) and *Job* profess he would do, saying, I will trust in God although he kill me, *Job* 13. 15.

Hope.

*What is contrary to this ?*

Despair of God's Mercies, *Gen.* 4. 13.

*What is required in the Affections of Love and Hatred ?*

First, That we love God above all, and all things that are pleasing unto him. Love of God.

Secondly, That we hate Ungodliness, and every thing that God hateth.

*Upon what is our Love of God grounded ?*

Because we know and believe that he is Good, yea, the chiefest Good ; we love him above all things, *Deut.* 6. 5. which is so excellent a Vertue, that it is accounted the end of the Law.

*What contrary Vices are here condemned ?*

1. Coldness of Affection towards God ; and little Love of Goodness, of God's Servants and Service.

2. Want of hatred of our own and others Sins.

3. Hatred of God and Godliness, *Psal.* 20. 3, 4. *Rom.* 1. 30.

*Is it possible that any Man should be a Hater of God ?*

None indeed will confess this: Yet by this mark he may be known; when he is a Despiser of the Worship and Service of God.

*And how may one that loveth God be discerned ?*

When a Child doth love his Father, his only desire will be to do such things as please his Father, and to abstain from those things which might displease him: Yea, his chiefest felicity will be, to be always in his favour, and in his presence ;

presence; and in his absence he will be always thinking and speaking of him. Such then as be the Children of God by Grace, as long as they are absent from their Father, will talk, and muse, and meditate upon him; in all things they do, they will desire to be well thought of by him; they will be always careful to please him, and by their honest Callings to glorifie him.

*What Duties then do arise from the Love of God?*

1. To love his Word and Commandments, (*John* 14. 15, 21, 23. *Psalms* 119. 97.)

2. To yield absolute Obedience to his whole Will.

3. To bestow all our care, pains, and diligence in pleasing him; and so to consecrate our selves unto him, never being weary of his Service.

*What Vices are repugnant to this?*

1. In defect, *Profaneness*: When a Man is without all Care and Conscience of glorifying God.

2. In excess, *Superstition*: When a Man would give more Worship unto God than he requireth.

*What other Duties appertain to the Love of God?*

Thankfulness. 1. To esteem of his Favour above all things.

2. To give him the praise of all his Benefits bestowed upon our selves and others; and to be thankful unto him for the same, *1 Thess.* 5. 18.

*What is contrary to this?*

Ingratitude, and Unthankfulness unto God for all his Benefits, *Rom.* 1. 21.

*Upon what is our fear of God grounded?*

Fear of God.

Because we know and believe that he is most powerful and just above all; we stand in such a godly fear, as not to do any thing, but which makes for his Glory, (*Mat.* 10. 28. *1 Pet.* 1. 17. & 3. 2, 6. *Heb.* 12. 28. *Psal.* 103. 13. *Isa.* 66. 2.) For this is not a *servile* Fear, whereby one is afraid to be damned; but an *awful* Fear, whereby we are afraid to offend our Maker.

*What then is required in this Fear?*

That we do not the good we do only or principally for fear of danger from Men, but for fear of God.

*What is the Vice contrary to this?*

The want of the Fear of God, and Contempt of his Majesty.

*What Sin is joynd with the want of the Fear of God?*

Carnal Security, whereby a Man doth flatter himself in his own Estate, be it never so bad.

*What Vertues arise from the Fear of God?*

Reverence and Humility.

*What is the former?*

Reverence.

The Reverence of the Majesty of God, in regard whereof we should carry such a holy shamefacedness in all our Actions, that no unseemly Behaviour proceed from us, that may any ways be offensive unto him, *Heb.* 12. 28. Of which if Men be so careful in the presence of Princes, who are but mortal Men; how much more careful ought we to be thereof, in the presence of the Almighty, and most glorious God?

*How was this prefigured in the Ceremonial Law?*

That when Men would ease themselves, (according to the Course of Nature) they should go without the Hoast, and carry a Paddle with them to cover their Filth; because, saith the Lord, *I am in the midst of you*: Whereby the Filthiness and Impurity of the Mind was forbidden, more than of the Body: and the Equity hereof reacheth also unto us, *Deut.* 23. 12, 13, 14.

*What*

*What is contrary to this Reverence of the Majesty of God ?*

Irreverence and Profaneness of Men to God-ward.

*What is Humility ?*

That Vertue whereby we account our selves vile and unworthy of the least of God's Mercies; and casting our selves down before his Majesty, do acknowledge our own emptiness of Good, and insufficiency in our selves. For so all our Behaviour should be seasoned with humility. Humility.

*What Sins are repugnant to this Vertue ?*

1. Counterfeit Humility; when a Man would seem more lowly than he is
2. Pride, Vain-glory, and Presumption; whereby we boast and glory of our selves, and our own strength and goodness. Pride.

*Who are to be accounted proud ?*

1. They that would be thought to have those good things in them which they want.
2. They that having a little goodness in them, would have it seem greater than it is.
3. They that having any goodness in them, do think that it cometh from themselves.

4. They that think they can merit from God, and deserve his Favour.

*What is that Godly Sorrow which is required in this Commandment ?*

Spiritual Grief and Indignation against our own and others Transgressions: As also lamenting for the Calamities of God's People, private and publick. The want of both which, here is condemned. Sorrow.

*What Spiritual Joy is here enjoyed ?*

Joying in God, and rejoicing in all our Afflictions, with Consideration of the Joy prepared for us before the beginning of the World, *Luke 1. 47. Rom. 5. 3. Jam. 1. 2.* the defect of which Spiritual Joy is here condemned.

*So much of the Afflictions. What is required of us in respect of our Conscience ?*

That we live in all good Conscience before God, *Acts 23. 1. Heb. 13. 8.*

*What Sins are here condemned ?*

1. Hardness of Heart, and Benumbedness of Conscience.
2. Hellish Terrors and Accusations, proceeding from doing things either without or against the Rule of the Word.

*So much of the first Branch of this Commandment : What is required in the second Branch thereof ?*

Unity in Religion; because we are commanded to have but one God, and no more. Unity in Religion.

*What things are required of us, that we may come to this Unity ?*

Four principally :

1. An upright and single Heart, ready to embrace the true Religion, and no other.
2. Constancy and Continuance in the Truth.
3. A Godly Courage to stand to the Truth, and withstand the Enemy.
4. An Holy Zeal of the Glory of God.

*What contrary Vices are forbidden ?*

1. Indifferency in Religion; when a Man is as ready to embrace one Religion as another.
2. Inconstancy and wavering in Religion.
3. Obstinate and wilful Continuance in any Religion without good ground.

4. Rash and blind Zeal; when a Man, without Knowledge or Judgment, will earnestly maintain either Falshood or Truth by wicked Means.

*To what end doth God will us to have no other God but himself, seeing no Man can have any other God, though he never so much desire it?*

Because, howsoever there be but one God, yet many do devise unto themselves divers things which they place in God's stead, and to which they give that Honour which is proper unto God, 1 *Cov.* 8. 4, 5. & 10. 20.

*What Sin then doth God condemn, by forbidding us to have many Gods?*

What it is to have other Gods.

All inward Idolatry, whereby Men set up an Idol in their Heart instead of God, (*Ezek.* 14. 3.) ascribing thereunto that which is proper to him, or giving unto it any part of spiritual adoration.

*Shew how this is done in the Understanding?*

When Men do think that other things have that which is proper unto God: As Papiſts, when they believe that the Sacrament is their Maker; that the Saints know their Hearts; that the Pope can forgive Sins; which none can do but God.

*How doth the Memory fail here?*

In remembering of evil things, especially of those which most corrupt us; and chiefly then, when we should be most free from the thought of them.

*What is the fault of the Will?*

Readiness unto, and wilfulness in Evil, especially the worst.

*Shew the like in the Affections: And first in sinful Confidence.*

Sinful Confidence.

There is here condemned, Trust in the Creatures more than in God, and all fleshly Confidence in our selves, or in our Friends, Honour, Credit, Wit, Learning, Wisdom, Wealth, &c. thinking our selves the better or more safe, simple for them, *Prov.* 18. 11. *Psal.* 62. 10. *Jer.* 17. 5. 2 *Chron.* 16. 12. whence ariseth Pride, (*Acts* 12. 23.) and Security.

*What is our Duty concerning these things?*

1. To esteem of them only as good means given us of God, whereby to glorifie him the better.

2. To trust in God no less when we have them, than when we want them, *Job* 13. 15.

*What is further here condemned?*

1. To ascribe the Glory of any good thing, either to our selves, or any other than the Lord.

2. To seek for help of the Devil by Witches or Wise Men.

*Wherein standeth inordinate Love?*

Inordinate Love.

In loving of Evil, or in loving of our selves or any other thing more than God, of whose favour we ought more to esteem, than of all the World besides. Here therefore is condemned all carnal Love of our Selves, our Friends, our Pleasure, Profit, Credit, or any worldly thing else, for whose sake we leave those Duties undone, which God requireth of us, (2 *Tim.* 3. 4. 1 *John* 2. 15. 1 *Sam.* 2. 29.) whereas the true Love of God will move us, with *Moses* and *Paul*, to wish our selves accursed, rather than that the Glory of God should any thing at all be stained by us, *Exod.* 32. 32. *Rom.* 9. 3.

Sinful Fear.

*What Fear is here condemned?*

All carnal Fear, and especially the fearing of any thing more than God, *Isa.* 7. 2. & 8. 12, 13 & 5. 12, 13. *Mat.* 10. 28.

*How may a Man know that he is more afraid of God than of any other thing?*

If he be more afraid to displeaſe God than any other, and this fear of God be stronger to move us to good, than the fear of Men to move us to evil.

*What*



*What disorder in Joy and Sorrow is here condemned ?*

1. Immoderate carnal Mirth.
2. Abundance of worldly Sorrow, Shame and Discontentments.

Sinful Joy  
and Sorrow.

*What is required in the third and last Branch of this Commandment ?*

True Religion ; because we are commanded to have the true God, and none other for our God.

The third  
branch of the  
first Com-  
mandment ;  
true Religion.

*What is contrary to this ?*

The having of a false God, and a false Religion.

*How many things are required of us that we may come to true Religion ?*

Three.

1. We must labour earnestly to find out the Truth.
2. We must examine by the Word whether it be the Truth which we have found.

3. When by Tryal we have found out the Truth, we must rest in it.

*What is here forbidden ?*

1. All Errors and Heresies, especially concerning God and his Properties, and the three Persons in the Trinity. Where we must take heed, we imagine no likeness of God : For as much as we set up an Idol in our Hearts, if we liken him to any thing whatsoever, subject to the sense or Imagination of Man. For the better Avoidance whereof, we must settle our Minds upon Christ, in whom only God is comprehensible.

2. To believe any Doctrine concerning God without Tryal.
3. Not to believe that which God hath revealed concerning himself in his Word.

*We have spoken hitherto of the several Branches of the first Commandment.*

*What are the Helps of the Obedience ?*

The only means to settle and uphold us in this Spiritual Worship of God, is to endeavour to attain and increase in the Knowledge of him in Jesus Christ, (2 Pet. 3. 18.) to consider what great things he hath done for us, (Psal. 116. 1, 12. 1 Sam. 12. 24. 1 John 3. 1.) yea, in all our ways to take Knowledge of his Presence, Promises, and Providence, Prov. 3. 6.

Helps inabling  
us to obey  
this Com-  
mandment.

*What are the means whereby we may attain to this Knowledge ?*

Principally Twelve.

1. Prayer.
2. A simple Heart, desirous of Knowledge.
3. Hearing of the Word.
4. Reading of the Word and Holy Writings.
5. Meditation in the Word.
6. Conference.
7. Diligence in Learning.
8. Remembrance of that we learn.
9. Practise of what we learn.
10. Delight in Learning.
11. Attentive marking of that which is taught.
12. Meditation on the Creatures of God.

Means of the  
Knowledge of  
God.

*What are the hindrances of the Obedience of this Commandment ?*

The neglect of the Knowledge of God, (Hos. 4. 1. & 8. 12.) and not considering his Word and Works, (Esa. 5. 12. & 26. 10, 11.) are the ground of all Impiety, and Spiritual Idolatry here torbidden, Esa. 1. 3, 4.

Hindrances.

*What things are forbidden as means of this Ignorance ?*

Five :

First,

Means of Ignorance.

First, Curiosity: When a Man would know more than God would have him know.

Secondly, Vanity of Mind: When the Mind is drawn away and occupied upon vain and unprofitable things.

Thirdly, Pride of our own Knowledge: When we think we know enough already.

Fourthly, Forgetfulness of God and his Will.

Fifthly, Weariness in learning, and talking of God and his Will.

*Hitherto of the first Commandment, concerning the entertaining God in our Hearts. What is enjoyed in the other three?*

What is enjoyed in the 3 following Commandments.

The means of his Service. For as in the first Commandment we are required to *have*, so in the other we are required to *serve* the Lord our God.

*What be the Branches of this Service?*

Either they are such as are to be performed at all times, as occasion shall require: Or such as concern a certain Day, wholly set a-part for his Worship. The Duties of the former kind are prescribed in the second and third; of the latter in the fourth and last Commandment of the first Table.

*How are the Duties of the former kind distinguished?*

They do either concern the *solemn Worship* of Religion, prescribed in the second Commandment: Or the Respect we should carry to God in the *common course* of our lives, laid down in the third.

*What do you consider in the second Commandment?*

The second-Commandment.

Two things:

1. The *Injunction*.

2. The *Reasons* brought to strengthen the same.

*What are the Words of the Injunction?*

**Thou shalt not make to thy self any Graven Image; nor any likeness of things that are in Heaven above, nor in the Earth beneath, nor in the Waters under the Earth: thou shalt not bow down to them, nor worship them.** Exod. 20. 4, 5.

*What is the scope and meaning of this Commandment?*

To bind all Men to that solemn Form of Religious Worship which God himself in his Word prescribeth: That we serve him not according to our Fancies, but according to his own Will, *Deut.* 12. 32.

What is here forbidden.

*What is generally forbidden herein?*

Every Form of Worship, though of the true God (*Deut.* 12. 31.) contrary to, or diverse from the Prescript of God's Word, (*Mat.* 15. 9.) called by the Apostle *Will-worship*, (*Col.* 2. 23.) together with all Corruption in the true Worship of God, (*2 Kings* 16. 10.) and all lust and Inclination of Heart unto superstitious Pumps and Rites in the Service of God.

*What are the parts of that Will-worship?*

Either the Worship of any besides God; or of God himself, any otherwise than he hath commanded. For both Vices are here forbidden; either to worship the true God falsely, or to worship those things that are not God at all.

*Who do chiefly offend in this kind?*

The Papists: Which give Religious Worship unto Creatures; and serve God, not according to his Will prescribed in the Word, but according to the Pope's Decrees, and the Traditions of Men.

*Why doth the Lord forbid all these Corruptions under one instance of Images?*  
 Because therein he foresaw there would be greatest abuse.

*What doth he expressly forbid concerning them?*

1. That we make no Image to worship it.
2. That we worship it not when it is made.

*What is meant by making of Images?*

All new Devices and Inventions of Men in the Service of God: Whereby we are forbidden to make any new Word, new Sacraments, new Censures, new Ministries, new Prayers, new Fastings, or new Vows, to serve him withal. Also all Representations of any Grace of God, otherwise than God hath appointed, or may be allowed by his Word. As Christ condemned the Pharisees washing.

What is meant by making Images.

*What by worshipping of them?*

All use in God's Service of any new devised Inventions, (or practising of them) and all abuse of things commanded.

*What is generally required in this Commandment?*

That we worship and serve God in that holy manner which he in his Word requireth.

*How is that to be done?*

First, We must use all those Holy Exercises of Religion, publick and private, which he commandeth.

Secondly, We must perform all the parts of God's Worship prescribed with Reverence, and Diligence; using them so carefully as may be, to God's Glory and our Good, *Eccles. 5. 1.*

*What observe you by comparing the second Commandment with the first?*

That the inward and outward Worship of God ought to go together. For as in the first Commandment the Lord requireth, that we should have no other Gods *before him*, that is, in the secret of our Heart, whereof he alone taketh notice: So in the second, by the words, *Make, Bow, Worship*, he forbiddeth any outward Service of Religion, to be given unto any other.

*Wherefore must God be worshipped both by our Bodies and our Souls?*

Because he is the Lord and Maker of them both, *1 Cor. 6. 20.*

*What gather you from hence?*

That such as dare to present their Bodies to a Mass, or to any other gross Idolatry, and say that they keep their Hearts to God, are here convicted of Falshood and Hypocrisie.

The special branches of the second Commandment.

*So much of the second Commandment in general. What are the particular Branches of it?*

There is here first required, that all solemn Religious Worship should be given to the true God: And secondly, that it be given to him alone, and not communicated unto any thing which is not God. So that the sum of the first part is, *Thou shalt worship the Lord thy God: Of the second, Him only shalt thou serve, Mat. 4. 10.*

*How are we to worship the Lord our God?*

By those means only which himself approveth in his Word: According to the saying of *Moses*; Do that which I command thee, and do no more, *Deut. 4. 2. & 12. 32.*

*What is here required?*

First, That we give unto God that Worship, which he himself hath prescribed in his Word.

Secondly, That we give him that alone, without Addition or Alteration.

*What*

*What is forbidden?*

First, The neglect of God's Worship, or any of his Ordinances: When we contemn, or despise, or leave undone that Service which he hath commanded us to perform unto him.

Secondly, The adding any thing unto, or taking any thing from the pure Worship of God: When we serve him by any other means than that which he himself hath commanded.

*What are we to consider in the pure Worship of God, which he hath prescribed in his Word?*

1. The parts of it.
2. The right manner of using of it.

*What be the parts of it?*

They are partly such as we give unto God; and partly such as God giveth unto us.

*What is required of us touching these kinds?*

1. That we use those things that God hath given us, to that end that God hath given them for.

2. That neither in giving to God, nor taking from him, we devise any thing of our own to serve him withal.

*What are the things God giveth us to serve him by?*

His Creatures in the first place; also his Word, Sacraments, Ministry, Discipline and Censures of the Church: Which we must use according as they are instituted of God.

*What Duties are here required?*

Our presence at these Exercises of Religion. The Preaching, Hearing, and Reading of the Word of God: Together with Meditation, Conference and all other means of increasing our Knowledge therein. The administering and receiving of the Sacraments, &c. Acts 2. 42.

*How do we worship God in these?*

In the Creatures, by beholding his Glory in them: In his Word, by diligent hearing of it, and careful believing and practising of it; in his Sacraments, by receiving them duly; in the Ministry and Censures, by submitting our selves unto them.

*What are the things that we give unto God?*

They are either more or less Ordinary.

*What are the more Ordinary?*

Prayer.

1. To pray to God, publickly and privately.
2. To praise God, both alone and with others.

*Are these Duties required of all Christians?*

Yea: Every true Christian must offer this Sacrifice to the Lord every day. For in all Ages, and at all times, it hath been the practice of God's Saints, to offer unto God the Sacrifice of Prayer and Praise: As we may see by the practice of David, Daniel, Peter, (who went up at noon to pray, Acts 10. 9.) and Isaac, who went out at Eventide to pray in the Fields, Gen. 24. 63.

*What are the Parts of Prayer?*

Three:

1. Confession: Which is the Sacrifice of a broken Heart and wounded Soul, Psa. 51. 17.
2. Petition, for such things as we lack.
3. Thanksgiving for such things as we have received.

*What are the things less Ordinary?*

Fasts.

1. Fasts, publick or private, Joel 2. 12, 15.

2. Solemn

2. Solemn Thanksgiving for special Blessings, (*Psal.* 50. 14.) whereunto Feasting also is joyned, when special occasion of Joy is given us.
3. Making and performing Holy Vows unto God.

*What is Fasting ?*

An Abstinence for a time from all the Commodities and Pleasures of this Life; so far as comeliness and necessity will suffer, to make us more apt to Prayer, and more able to serve God.

*What is a Vow ?*

A solemn Promise made unto God of some things that are in our Power to perform: Which we do, to declare our Thankfulness, to strengthen our Faith, and to further us in doing our good Duties, wherein we are backward; or abstaining from some Evil whereunto we find our selves specially inclined.

*So much of the Parts of God's Solemn Worship. What is required to the right manner of using the same.*

Our careful, sincere, and diligent Behaviour in all his Service: That every thing there may be done as he hath appointed, and no otherwise. The manner of God's Worship.

*What are the things required hereunto ?*

They are partly *Inward*, partly *Outward*: The former whereof concerneth the *Substance*, the latter the *Circumstance* of God's Worship.

*What are the Inward ?*

All the Powers of the Soul are charged to joyn together, as (by the first and great Commandment) in the entertaining and loving, so (by this) in performing all Aets of Solemn Worship to the true God. Therefore herein there must be a concurrence, as well of the Understanding, that we have knowledge of the particular Service which we do, (*Rom.* 14. 5. *1 Cor.* 14. 14, 15.) as of the Will and Affection, that we may worship God in Spirit and in Truth, *John* 4. 22.

*What things are requisite in the performance of this ?*

Three :

1. A diligent Preparation and Advisedness, before we come to any Holy Exercise.

2. A right disposition of the Mind in the Action it self.

3. A comfortable departure, upon the sensible feeling of the Fruit thereof.

*What is required in the Preparation before the Action ?*

That we bethink our selves before-hand, about what things we come: And dispatch our selves of all the things that hinder us in the Service of God. Which fith we must do in things otherwise lawful, much more in things unlawful. And Of Preparation.

*What is further to be observed herein ?*

That every Preparation be answerable to the Exercise whereunto we are called: As in the parts of Prayer; for Example:

1. In Confession, we must have a true feeling of our former Sins.

2. In Petition, we must have the like Sense of our Wants; and bethink our selves what need we have of the things we ask, and strive against our staggering and doubting of God's Promises.

3. In Thanksgiving, we must call to mind at least the Kinds of God's Benefits bestowed upon us, and consider the Greatness of them. And so in all other Services of God.

*What Disposition of the Mind is required in the Action ?*

1. A reverent, diligent, and earnest Attention to the Thing, with all the Powers of our Souls; thereby to fasten our Minds, and so to hold them during the Action.

during the Exercise, that no idle or vain Thoughts withdraw us from the same.

2. Zeal in the Action: With such Affections as are answerable to the Matter in hand. As in Prayer, we must have a sure Confidence in God, that we shall obtain the Things we ask agreeable to his Will: In Thanksgiving we must have a sweet feeling of the Benefit that God hath given us: In the Word and Sacraments, we must come with Affection to them, &c.

*What is required of us after the Action?*

What is required after the Action.

That we feel the Fruit of it; that is, some increase either of knowledge of true fear, or comfort, for strengthening of us in the Duties we perform. So every one must examine himself herein, and all those that belong unto him: Else they are like unto them, that having eaten a good Meal, by warm Water do give it up again.

*What be the Outward Things that do accompany God's Worship?*

Ecclesiastical Ceremonies.

1. Ecclesiastical Ceremonies, making for Order and Decency, 1 Cor. 14. 40. which are left to the appointment of the Church; being of that nature, that they are varied by Times, Places, Persons, and other Circumstances.

Bodily Gestures.

2. All comely and reverent Gestures of the Body: As Kneeling, lifting up the Hands and Eyes to Heaven, Silence in the Service of God, and such-like. For the Gestures of Religious Adorations being here forbidden to be given unto Images, are therein commanded to be given unto the God of Heaven.

*Is there any use of our Bodily Behaviour before God, sith he is a Spirit, and looketh to the Heart?*

Yes verily. For,

1. The whole Man, and consequently the Body it self, oweth Duty unto God.

2. It is a Glass, wherein the Affections of the Mind are beheld.

3. The Mind is the better holden in the thing affected, and the better holpen and furthered in the Inward Worship, when both Body and Mind are joyned together. Notwithstanding the Mind must always precede in Affection: Else it is shameful Hypocrisie.

*What Gestures are most convenient for the Body?*

Divers, according to the divers Exercises of Religion: As at the reading of the Word, standing; at Prayer, kneeling, and therein to witness our Humility, by casting down our Eyes, our Confidence by lifting them up; or with the Publican, to knock our Breasts, &c. except our Infirmities, or the like Lets, hinder us therein.

*So much of the right use of God's Ordinances. Wherein standeth the abuse of them?*

Of the abuse of God's Ordinances.

1. In all rash, negligent, and careless dealing in any particular Point of the Worship of God.

2. In using any thing that God hath commanded for his Worship, otherwise than he himself hath appointed, 1 Chron. 15. 13. For the Brazen Serpent abused, was worthily broken in pieces, (2 Kings 18. 4.) and the Israelites for Carting the Ark, were worthily punished, 2 Sam. 6. 3, 7, 8.

*What special Abuses of the Word are here condemned?*

To hang pieces of St. John's Gospel about Mens Necks, or to use any other Gospel to heal Diseases, or for any Man to charge a Devil to go out of one, as the Apostles did.

*What may be lawfully done in this Case?*

We may and must pray only unto God, that he would command the Devil to depart: For he is the Master that authorized him to go thither.

*What*

*What special Abuses of the Sacraments are condemned?*

The receiving them unworthily, (1 Cor. 11. 27, 29.) and making them to be Sacrifices, as is done in Popery.

*What of the Ministry?*

The turning of that which is given to edifie in Christ, to other ends than those for which it was ordained: As when Ministers exercise tyrannical Lordship over their Flock, or their Fellow-Servants; as the Bishops of the Church of Rome use to do, (Luke 22. 25. 1 Pet. 5. 2, 3.) Or when in the execution of their Function, they seek themselves, and not the Edification of God's People, &c.

*What of the Discipline and Censures?*

When they are used in another Manner, and for other Causes than God hath ordained, *Esa. 66. 5.*

*What of Prayer?*

To ask evil things, or to pray for such things as God hath made no Promise of, or for such Persons as he hath made no Promise unto: As when Men pray for Souls departed; or for those that sin to death, (1 John 5. 16.) to pray in a strange Tongue which we do not understand; to pray on Beads, and use much Babbling, &c. as also to aim more in our Requests at the relieving our Necessity, than at the advancement of God's Glory.

*What of Thanksgiving?*

To thank God for Things unlawfully gotten or come unto us.

*What of Fasting?*

To make it a matter of Merit, or to use superstitious choice of Meats, as is done in Popery.

*What of Vows?*

To undertake rash Vows: To break, or else to delay and defer the paying of our lawful Vows; as also to perform Vows that are unlawful, *Psal. 66. 13. & 76. 11. Eccles. 5. 1, 5. Gen. 35. 1.*

*What defects are condemned, that concern the inward things required in the performance of all these parts of God's Worship?*

1. Want of Understanding, when we do good Duties ignorantly, or think that we can please God by meaning well, when that which we do is evil.
2. Want of Zeal and Affection in performing God's Service.
3. Hypocrisie, when Men make greater shew of the Service of God outwardly, than they have a desire to serve him inwardly.
4. Hearing, Reading, Meditating, Conferring, singing of Psalms, and receiving the Sacrament without Preparation, Attention, Reverence, Delight, and Profit.
5. Praying without Faith, Feeling, Reverence, Fervency, not waiting for Answer, &c.

Defects respecting the inward Worship

*What defects that concern the outward Worship?*

1. All unreverent and unbecoming Gestures.
2. All Ecclesiastical Ceremonies and Rites of Religion, which are repugnant to God's Word, or not warrantable by the general Grounds thereof: Such as are not for Order, and Comeliness, and Edification.

Defects in outward Worship

*So much of the Parts of God's Worship prescribed, together with the right use and abuse thereof. What say you of such Forms of Worship as are not prescribed by God in his Word?*

We are commanded to serve God, not according to the Traditions of Men, but according to his Will revealed in the Scripture, *Col. 2. 18, Mat. 15. 9.*

*What followeth hereupon ?*

That no Power must be admitted in the Church to prescribe other Forms of Worship, not appointed by God himself in his Word.

*What is then to be observed herein ?*

We must observe the Apostle's Rule and Practice, *1 Cor. 11. 23.* where he saith, *That which I have received, I delivered unto you.* For if he might add nothing to God's Ordinance, much less may we.

*What is here forbidden ?*

*In general,* all Will Worship; whereby we make any thing a part of God's Service, which he hath not commanded. For how great a shew soever it have, yet in that it leaneth to Man's Wisdom, it is unlawful, *Col. 2. 23.* *In particular,* to ordain any other Word or Sacraments, than those which God hath appointed; to devise any other Ministry than that which God hath ordained; to place any Religion in Meat, Drink, Apparel, Time, Place, or any other indifferent thing.

*What caution must we keep in the use of things indifferent ?*

1. We are to maintain that Christian Liberty which Christ hath purchased for us.

2. We must yet be careful not to abuse the same to the hardning, insinuating, or preventing, or just grieving of any.

*Remaineth there any thing else to be spoken of the first main Branch of this Commandment ?*

Yes: The Helps that may further us in performing this pure Worship of God.

*What be they ?*

Helps in performing God's pure Worship.

1. That all Men labour for *Knowledge* of the expresse Will of God touching all parts of his Worship, (*Mich. 6. 6, 7, 8.*) and that they increase therein every day more and more, by reading the Scriptures; using also for that end Meditation, Conference, good Books, and good Company.

2. That they Marry, and make Leagues of Friendship only with such as profess the true God, and therefore no Professor of the true Worship of God may joyn himself in Marriage with one of another Religion, or an apparent prophane and irreligious Person; but with such only as are Godly, at least in shew.

3. That we give no Toleration to Superstition, (*2 Chron. 15. 13.*) but shew our Hatred and Detestation of all false Worship, so far as we may within our Calling.

4. That we joyn together, with order and decency, in the Performance of God's Worship, *1 Cor. 14. 40.*

5. That such whom it concerneth, take care that faithful and able Ministers be ordained in every Congregation, (*Tit. 1. 5.*) and that sufficient maintenance, for Encouragement be allotted, *1 Tim. 5. 17, 18. 2 Chron. 31. 4.*

6. That places for publick Assemblies be erected and preserved, *Luke 7. 5, 6.*

7. That Schools and Universities be founded and maintained, *2 Kings 6. 1, &c.*

8. That Books of necessary Use and Edification, (especially, the Holy Book of God) be set forth and divulged, *Rev. 1. 3.*

9. That, as occasion requireth, Synods and Councils be called and assembled, *Acts 15. 6.*

10. That such whose Calling and Ability reacheth no further, do yet afford the help of their Prayers unto all these, *Mat. 9. 38.*

*What*



*What is required in the second main Branch of this Commandment ?*

That all Religious Worship and Reverence be given unto God alone, and not imparted to those things which are not God's at all.

The 2d main Branch of the second Commandment.

*What sins are here condemned ?*

Magick and Idolatry : Both which are condemned by the Name of Spiritual Adultery, *Lev. 20. 5, 6.*

*Who are guilty of the first of these sins ?*

1. The Practisers of all Diabolical Arts, *Levit. 20. 27. Deut. 18. 10, 11.*
2. Such as seek after them, (*Lev. 20. 6. Isa. 8. 19, 20. 1 Sam. 28. 7. 1 Chron. 10. 13, 14.*) by going to Witches, or consulting with Star-gazers, or the like: To whom *Moses* opposeth a Prophet, as the only lawful Minister of God, and warrantable means to know his Will by, signifying thereby, that to seek secret things or strange Ministries is abominable.

*Who are guilty of the latter of these sins ?*

1. Such as worship those things that are not God.
2. Such as countenance them, or do any thing that may tend to the furtherance of Idolatry.

*What Worship is here forbidden to be given unto those that are not God ?*

All Religious Service : As,

1. Praying, *Isa. 44. 17.*
2. Thanksgiving, *Judges 16. 23, 24. Dan. 5. 4.*
3. Offering of Sacrifice, *2 Kings 17. 35.*
4. Burning of Incense, *Jer. 18. 15. & 44. 17.*
5. Vowing.
6. Fasting.
7. Building of Temples, Altars, or other Monuments unto them, *Hof. 8. 14. & 12. 11.*
8. Erecting of Ministries, (*1 Kings 12. 31, 32.*) or doing any Ministerial Work for their honour, *Amos 5. 26.* with *Numb. 4. 24, 25.*
9. Preaching for them, *Jer. 2. 8.*
10. Asking Counsel of them, *Hof. 4. 12.*
11. Outward Religious Adoration of them, *Acts 10. 25, 26. Rev. 22. 8, 9.*

*To whom must this Worship be denied ?*

To every thing that is not God: As the Sun and Moon, &c. Angels, Saints, Reliques, Images, and such trash as *Rome* alloweth, *Deut. 4. 17, 19. Col. 2. 18. Rev. 19. 10. & 22. 8, 9. Acts 10. 25, 26.*

*What is there in this Commandment expressly forbidden concerning Images ?*

First, The making of them.

Secondly, The bowing unto them, or worshipping them.

*Why is the first of these so largely set forth ?*

To meet with the Corruption of Men, that by Nature are exceeding prone unto Idolatry.

*What Men are forbidden to make Images ?*

All Men, which have not some special warrant from God to make them.

*But though I do not make Images my self ; may I worship them that another Man makes ?*

No. For that is likewise forbidden. *Exod. 32. 1. &c.*

*Is it not lawful to put them in Churches, or in publick Places, if they be not worshipped ?*

No.

What forbidden concerning Images.

*Why then did Moses make the Cherubims, and the Brazen Serpent ?*

For so doing he had a special Commandment from God ; who may dispense with his own Laws when he will.

*To what end did God command them to be made ?*

The one, to signify the crucifying of Christ, (*John* 3. 14.) the other, to signify the Angels readines to help God's Children in all distresses.

*Is all manner of making Images forbidden ?*

No : But only in matters of Religion, and God's Service. For in Civil Matters they may have a lawful and commendable use, (*Matth.* 22. 20.) but to make them for Religious Ends and Uses, is altogether unlawful, *Amos* 5. 26. with *Acts* 7. 43.

*What gather you of this ?*

That the Popish Doctrine of Images, that they are all Lay-mens Books, is directly contrary to the Word of God ; and therefore as false and erroneous, to be detested of all God's Children, *Hab.* 2. 18. *Jer.* 10. 8, 14. *Esa.* 44. 10.

*What kind of Images are we forbidden to make ?*

All kinds : Whether hewen, engraved, cut or carved, (which in the Commandment is expressed) : molten, embroidered, painted, printed, or imagined, *Hof.* 13. 2. *Ezek.* 8. 10. *Acts* 17. 25, 29.

*Of what things are we forbidden to make Images ?*

*Of things which are in the Heavens above, or in the Earth beneath, or in the Waters beneath the Earth.*

*What is meant by things which are in the Heavens ?*

GOD, CHRIST, the Angels, and the Saints, which are in the highest : The Sun, Moon, and Stars, which are in the middle ; and the Fowls which are in the lowest Heaven, *Deut.* 4. 17, 19.

*Is it not lawful to make the Image of God ?*

That it is unlawful to make the Image of God.

To represent him by any shape, is most of all forbidden and condemned. For it is a great sin to conceive or imagine in our hearts, that he is like any thing, how excellent soever we think it, (*Acts* 17. 29.) but it is much worse so to set him out to the view of others, considering that the Mind can conceive a further Beauty than the hand of the Artificer can express. And therefore the Children of *Israel* did sin grievously, and were worthily condemned, for making God like a Calf, *Exod.* 32. 4, 9, 10, 27, 28.

*How may it further appear that it is unlawful to make the Image of God ?*

First, Because God being Infinite and Invisible, cannot without a Lye be resembled to any finite or visible thing, *Acts* 17. 20.

Secondly, God by such Images is, as it were mocked, *Rom.* 1. 23.

Thirdly, When the Law was delivered by God himself unto the *Israelites*, he appeared in no shape unto them, lest they should make a likeness of him, and fall to Idolatry. And therefore *Deut.* 4. 10, 12. he forwarned them, that as they saw no Image of him, when he gave the Law, but only heard a Voice ; they should learn that the Knowledge of God cometh by hearing, and not by seeing, *Esa.* 40. 17, 18.

*But what moved the Papists to paint God like an Old Man ?*

The false expounding of that place in *Daniel*, where God is described to be the *Ancient of days*, (*Dan.* 7. 9, 13) whereby is made manifest, that he was before all times, *Deut.* 27. 15. but whatsoever Property of God he be, that they set forth by an Image, it is execrable so to do.

*May we then paint Christ, for remembrance of his Death ?*

No verily. For,

1. It is a part of the Worship here forbidden: Because his Body is a Creature in Heaven; therefore not to be represented by an Image in the Service of God.

That it is unlawful to make the Image of Christ.

2. An Image can only represent the Man-hood of Christ, and not his God-head, which is the chiefest part in him. Both which Natures being in him unseparable; it were dangerous by painting the one a-part from the other, to give occasion of *Arrianism*, *Apollinarism*, or other Heresies.

3. Sith that in all the Scriptures, which speak so much of him, there is no shew of any Portraiture or Lineament of his Body; it is plain that the Wisdom of God would not have him painted.

4. Sith by preaching of the Gospel, and Administration of the Sacraments, Christ is as lively painted out, as if he were crucified again amongst us, (*Gal. 3. 1.*) it were to no purpose to paint him to that end.

*What lastly may be added to these former Reasons ?*

That although the painting of Christ were both lawful to do, and profitable for remembrance; yet because it hath been so much abused, and no where in the Scripture commanded, it is now not to be used. As *Ezechias* worthily brake the Brazen Serpent being abused; although *Moses* had set it up at the Commandment of the Lord; and might have served for a singular Monument of God's Mercy, after the proper use thereof, had not the superstitious Opinion thereof been.

*What is meant in this Commandment by things in the Earth ?*

The likeness of Man or Woman, or of Beasts, or creeping things, *Ezek. 23. 14. Deut. 4. 16, 17, 18. Isa. 44. 13. Rom. 1. 23.*

*What by things in the Waters, under the Earth ?*

The resemblance of any Fish, or the like, *Deut. 4. 18.*

*So much for the making of Images. What is meant by the bowing unto them, and worshipping them ?*

What is meant by worshipping Images.

That we must not give the least token of Reverence, either in Body or in Soul, unto any Religious Images, *Psal. 97. 7. Hab. 2. 18. Isa. 44. 15. Exod. 32. 4.* For that is a further degree of Idolatry; as to shrine, clothe, and cover them with precious things; to light Candles before them; to kneel and creep to them, or to use any Gestures of Religious Adoration unto them, *1 Kings 19. 18.* Wherein, although the gross Idolatry of Popery may be taken away from amongst us, yet the Corruption cleaveth still to the Hearts of many: As may be seen in them that make curtesie to the Chancel where the high Altar stood, and give the right hand unto standing Crosses and Crucifixes, &c.

*But though we do not reverence the Images themselves; may we not worship God in or by the Images ?*

No. For the Israelites are condemned, not for worshipping the Golden Calf as a God, but for worshipping God in the Calf.

*How doth that appear ?*

In that they said, Let us make a Feast to morrow to *Jehovah*, *Exod. 32. 5.* And that *Moses* otherwise might seem not to have done well in making them to drink that against their Conscience, which they judged to be God, *vers. 20.*

*Wherein did they sin so grievously ?*

In tying the presence of God to the work of their own hands, and coupling him

him with their Idols; which he cannot endure. For God saith by his Prophet *Hosea*, *You shall no more call me Baal*, Hof. 2. 16. So impossible it is truly to serve God by an Idol, as the Papiſts do.

*What kind of Images are here forbidden to be worshipped?*

All kinds: Whether such as are made with Man's hands, (of which *Eſay* speaketh, saying, *One piece of Wood is cast into the Fire, and another of the same Tree is made an Idol*, Isa. 44. 15, 17.) or such as in themselves are the good Creatures of God, as those which *Hosea* speaketh of, saying, *They worship their Gold and Silver*, Hof. 8. 4. Yea, of whatsoever things it may be said, *That they have Eyes and see not, Mouths and speak not, Ears and hear not, Noses and smell not, Feet and go not*, (Pſal. 115.) unto them is this Worship forbidden to be performed.

*What gather you of this?*

That the Popish Idolatry is here flatly condemned. For although they worship not *Jupiter*, *Mars*, and such-like Heathen Idols, but the Holy Saints (as they say) in and by their Images; yet that worship of theirs is alike with the other; because these Places of Scripture do agree as well to the one as to the other: And therefore it is impious and abominable Idolatry.

*So much for the praifing of Idolatry. What is forbidden for the countenancing of it?*

Of countenancing Idolatry.

All the means and occasions of and to Idolatry; and giving the least allowance or liking that can be thereunto. As,

1. Urging by Authority, or Toleration of Idolatry, *2 Chron. 15. 16.*
2. Approbation thereof by Speech, (praising and extolling these Inventions of Men) by silence, or any Gesture.
3. Prefence at Idolatrous Worship: As going to Mass, and communicating with false Service, *1 Cor. 10. 18, 20, 21. & 2 Cor. 6. 16, 17.*
4. Contributing towards the Maintenance thereof, *Numb. 7. 3, 5. Nehem. 10. 32, 39.*
5. Making a gain thereby: As those Merchants do, which sell Beads and Crosses; and those Painters, which take Money for Religious Images, *Acts 19. 24, 25.*
6. Retaining and preserving any superstitious Reliques or Monuments of Idolatry; as Images, (*2 Kings 18. 4.*) Books, (*Acts 19. 19.*) Names, (*Pſal. 16. 4.*) and such-like.
7. Keeping Company with Teachers of Idolatry, *2 Epistle of John*, vers. 10, 11.
8. Making Leagues of Familiarity, Society, and Friendship with Idolaters, *2 Chron. 19. 2.*
9. Joyning in Marriage and Affinity with them, *2 Cor. 6. 14. Nehem. 13. 25, 26, 27. Deut. 7. 3, 4.*

*What Reasons doth God use to strengthen this Commandment withal?*

They are taken partly from his *Titles*, and partly from his *Works*.

*What are we to learn from hence?*

That if we consider aright of the *Titles* and *Works* of God; it will be a notable means to keep us from sin.

*How is the Reason drawn from God's Titles laid down?*

In these words: *For I the Lord thy God am a jealous God.*

*Which is the first Title that is here mentioned?*

*Jehovah*: Which noteth the Essence of God, and the Perfection thereof.

Reasons to back this Commandment, taken from God's Titles.

*What*

*What have we to learn from hence?*

That Idolaters are so far from worshipping the true God, that they deny his Being and Perfection.

*What is the second Title?*

*Thy God*: Whereby the Covenant of Grace is signified; which on our part is by no Sin so directly violated, as by Idolatry, called therefore in Scripture *Spiritual Adultery*, Jer. 3. 8.

*What doth this teach us?*

That Idolaters are most miserable, in forsaking the true God, who is all Happiness to his People.

*What is the third Title?*

*El*: That is, a mighty or strong God; and therefore perfectly able to save and destroy.

*What doth this teach us?*

That there is no Power so great, which can deliver Idolaters or Sinners from the Wrath of God.

*What is the fourth Title?*

*Jealous*: Whereby the Nature of God is signified, loving Chastity in his Spouse, with a most fervent Love; and abhorring spiritual Whoredom with most extream hatred. Jealous God.

*What are we to learn from hence?*

That the Lord can no more abide Idolatry, than a married Man can brook it, that his Wife should commit Adultery. For his Wrath is compared to the Rage of a jealous Husband, upon the unchast Behaviour of his Wife, Prov. 6. 34, 35.

*Declare this Comparison more at large.*

The jealous Man finding the Adulterer with his Wife, spareth neither the one nor the other. So if any that by profession hath been espoused to Christ, and joyed unto God in him, and hath promised in Baptism to serve him alone; yet notwithstanding shall forsake him, and worship others, how good soever they be (whether Saints or Angels) they shall not escape God's Wrath. For if Corporal Adultery be so severely punished, much more shall Spiritual.

*What do the Reasons drawn from the Works of God contain?*

A just Recompence to the Breakers of this Law; and a gracious Reward to them that keep it: God shewing himself in this Case to be *jealous*.

Reasons drawn from the Works of God.

1. By punishing Sin in many Generations.
2. By extending his Mercy in a far more abundant manner to them that keep his Law.

So the former Reason containeth a Threatning, to restrain from Disobedience; the latter, a Promise to allure to Obedience.

*How is the former of these Reasons laid down?*

In these words: *Visiting the Iniquities of the Fathers upon the Children, unto the third and fourth Generation of them that hate me.* The 1. Reason

*What is the Sum of this Reason?*

That he will visit such as (howsoever pretending Love) do thus declare their hatred of him; and punish them, both in themselves, and their Children, to many Generations.

*What doth God mean when he saith, That he will visit the Sins of the Fathers upon the Children?*

Two things: 1. That he will enquire and search whether he can find any of the Parents Sins, and especially their Idolatry, in their Children.

2. That having found Children continuing in their Father's Sins, he will remember the same in the punishment of them.

*What are we to learn from hence ?*

1. That howsoever God for a time doth seem not to regard our sins, yet he doth both see them, and in his due time will punish them, if we do not repent.

2. That neither the Example of our Parents, nor any other that do amiss, can be a sufficient warrant to us to commit any Sin.

3. That all Parents are carefully to take heed how they commit any sin ; because in so doing, they bring God's Judgments not only upon themselves, but also upon their Children.

4. That Children are to sorrow for being born of Idolatrous Forefathers.

*But how doth that agree with the Righteousness of God, to punish the Children for the Sins of their Fathers ?*

Very well. For if Princes (whose Judgments are shallow in Comparison of Gods, the Depths whereof are past finding out) do with Equity disinherite and put to shame the Posterity of Traytors : The Lord may much more justly do the like with the wicked Child which followeth his Father's steps, and is a Traytor himself ; having both his Father's Sin and his own upon his Head. For God here only threatneth to punish those Children, which continue in their Father's Sins : And therefore as they have part in their Father's Sins, so it is reason they should have part in their Parents Punishments.

*What doth God mean by the third and fourth Generation ?*

He meaneth that not only the next Children, but the Children of divers and many Generations shall smart for their Father's Sins. As in *Amos* : For three transgressions and for four ; that is, for many.

*Why then doth he specially name three or four Generations ?*

Because Parents live so long oft-times, that they see their Posterity for four Generations following punished for their Sins.

*Why doth God say of them that hate me ?*

To shew, that not all the Sons of the Wicked, but only such as continue in their Father's Wickedness, shall be punished for their Sins, *Ezek.* 18. 4, 10, 13, 14, 17.

*But is there any that hate God ?*

Yes verily, (*John* 15. 18. *Rom.* 1. 29, 30. & 5. 10. & 8. 7. *Col.* 1. 21.) so many as worship him otherwise than himself hath commanded, do hate him. For altho' every Idolater will say, that he loveth God ; yet here God witnesseth of him that he is a Lyer, and that he hateth God, in that he hateth the Worship that he commandeth ; in the love whereof, God will have the experience of his love, 2 *Chron.* 19. 2. *Mich.* 2 8.

The 2. Reason.

*In what Words is the second Reason laid down, which is drawn from the Clemency of God ?*

Where it is said, that he sheweth Mercy unto thousands of them that love him and keep his Commandments.

*What is the Sum of this Reason ?*

That God will bless the Obedient unto many Generations, both in themselves, their Children and Posterity, and in whatsoever belongeth unto them :

Thus

thus extending his Mercy unto thousands of such, as shew their Love of him by Obedience to this his Law.

*Why doth the Lord say, That he will shew mercy to them that love him, and keep his Commandments?*

To teach us that the best Deeds of the best Men cannot merit or deserve any thing at God's hands; but had need to be received of him in mercy.

*Wherefore doth he say, That he will shew mercy to thousands; seeing he said, that he would visit only the third and fourth Generation of them that hate him?*

Because he is more willing and ready to exercise his Mercy than his Anger.

*But will God be merciful to all the Children of the Godly?*

No: But only such as love him, and keep his Commandments.

*Is this Blessing proper to the Godly?*

Not altogether neither. For God rewardeth the Prosperity of the Wicked with outward Benefits oftentimes, according to their outward Service: As appeareth by the Succession of *Jehu*.

*So much of the second Commandment. What is the third?*

**Thou shalt not take the Name of the Lord thy God in vain: For the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his Name in vain.** Exod. 20. 7. The third Commandment.

*What is contained in these words?*

1. The Commandment.
2. The Reason.

*What is the sum of this Commandment?*

That we impeach not, but by all means advance the Glorious Name of God, in all things whereby he maketh himself known to Men, (*Psal. 29. 2.*) and carefully endeavour in our whole Life to bring some honour to God, *Mat. 5. 16.* The sum of the third Commandment.

*What do you observe herein?*

The high honour that God sheweth unto us, who being able without us to maintain his own Name and Glory; either by him, or by his Angels; hath notwithstanding committed the maintenance thereof unto us: Which should teach us to be very chary of it, and careful to discharge our Duty faithfully, in walking worthy of this honour and defence of his Name which he vouchsafeth us.

*What is the meaning of those words; Thou shalt not take?*

Thou shalt not take up, upon thy Lips or Mouth, (as this Phrase is opened in *Psal. 16. 4. & 50. 16.*) that is, not speak, use, or mention. For the Tongue is here specially bound to the good abearing.

*Why was it needful to have a special Commandment for the Direction of the Tongue in God's Service?*

Because it is an untamed Evil and unbridled, (*James 3. 8.*) and therefore a whole Commandment cannot be employed amiss for the Direction of it, in the use of the Name of God. And seeing, in the second Table, there is a Commandment tending almost wholly to restrain the abuse of our Tongues towards our Neighbour, there is much more need of a Precept, both for direction and restraint of it, in the matters concerning God and his most Glorious Name.

*What are we to understand by the Name of God?*

What is meant by the Name of God.

The Speech is taken from the manner of Men, who are known by their Names; to signifie God himself, both in his Essence and Majesty, (*Isa.* 26. 8. *Exod.* 3. 13, 14. & 34. 5, 6, 7.) and in all things, whereby he hath made himself known unto us: As is holy.

1. Titles and proper Names: As *Jehovah, Elohim, Jesus, &c.* *Exod.* 3. 14. & 6. 2, 3. *Psal.* 68. 4.

2. Properties and Attributes: As *Love, Wisdom, Power, Justice, &c.* *Exod.* 33. 18, 19. & 34. 5, 6, 7, 14.

3. Works and Actions, *Psal.* 8. 1, 9. & 145. 10.

4. Word: Both Law and Gospel, *Psal.* 138. 2. *Deut.* 18. 19, 22. & 32. 2. *Acts* 9 15: Whence, the Law of Christ, *Esa.* 42. 4. is expounded to be his Name, *Mat.* 12. 21.

5. Sacraments, *Mat.* 28. 18, 19. *Acts* 2. 38.

6. Censure, *1 Cor.* 5. 4, 5. *Mat.* 18. 20.

7. Prayer, *Gen.* 4. 26.

8. The whole Worship of God, with all the Ordinances pertaining thereto; and whatsoever he is honoured, revered, and glorified by, *Deut.* 12.

5. *Mal.* 1. 11, 12. *Mich.* 4. 5. *Acts* 21. 13.

*What is meant by this word, in vain?*

What is meant by the word, in vain.

All abuse of them, and all rash, negligent, and careless dealing therein: where mentioning the smaller Fault, he declareth the hainousness of the greater. For if the taking of his Name in vain only be a sin; how hainous a sin is it, when it is blasphemed, or used for Confirmation of a Lye?

*What is then forbidden in this Commandment?*

What is forbidden in the third Commandment.

Every wrong offered to the Glory of God; and doing of ought that may any way reproach the Lord, to cause him to be less esteemed, *Mal.* 1. 6, 12. All unreverent and unholy use of his Name: And profaning of his Titles, Properties, Actions and Ordinances, either by Mouth or by Action, *Levit.* 21. 23.

*What are the parts of the prohibition?*

Two: 1. The mentioning or using God's Name, in Word, or Deed, when it should not be used, and when there is no just cause so to do.

2. The using of it amiss, and abusing it; when Duty bindeth us to use it with Fear and Holiness.

*What is required in this Commandment?*

What is required in the third Commandment.

That we sanctifie God's Name as it is holy and reverend; (*Mat.* 6. 9. *Psal.* 111. 9.) and labour by all we can to lift it up, that others may be moved by us more to love, serve and honour him. That we use the things aforesaid with all Reverence and Circumspection, to such uses as they are appointed to by God. In a word, that we have a careful and a heedy watch to all things that may advance God's Glory: And use all sincere and diligent Behaviour therein.

*What is that wherein this our Carefulness is required?*

1. A diligent Preparation and Advisedness before we meddle with any of these Holy things: That we bethink our selves before-hand what we are to do; and consider both of the cause that should move us to speak of them, and of the reverent manner of using them.

2. A reverent disposition in the Action it self: That we use earnest attentiveness therein: And seriously think how powerful God is, to punish the taking of his Name amiss; as also how able and ready to bless them, who shall reverently



reverently and holily behave themselves in the right use thereof. For which cause we are to remember, that *the Name of God is Fearful*; as it is written, *Pfal. 99. 3. Deut. 28. 58.*

*Declare now what particular Duties are contained in this Commandment?*

1. The honouring of God, and his Religion, by our Holy Conversation, *Matth. 5. 16. Tit. 2. 10.* The contrary whereof, is, Profession joyned with Hypocrisie, (*Tit. 1. 16. Matth. 15. 7, 8, 9.*) Prophaneness and an evil Life, whereby the Name of God and the Profession of Religion is dishonoured, *Rom. 2. 24.* The particular Duties required in the third Commandment.

2. Confession of Christ unto Suffering, yea Martyrdom, if cause be, *Rev. 2. 13.* the contrary whereof, is, shrinking in case of Peril, and denying God the honour of our suffering for him, *Mat. 10. 33.*

3. Honourable and reverent mention of God and his Titles, Properties, Attributes, Works, Word and Ordinances, *Pfal. 19. 1, 2. & 71. 15.*

*What Vices are repugnant to this?*

All unreverent mention, or an unadvised, sudden, and causeless speaking of any of these; and all abusing of the Names and Titles of God. The Vices repugnant.

*How is that done?*

1. By saying in our common talk; *O Lord, O God, O Jesu, &c.* or in wondering wise; *Good God! Good Lord!* &c. in matters light and of no moment. For such Foolish Admirations, and taking of God's Name lightly upon every occasion, is here condemned.

2. By idle Wishes.

3. By Imprecations and Cursings, *Gen. 16. 5. 2 Sam. 16. 8, 9.*

4. By Blaspheming.

5. By the abuse of Oaths, *Fam. 5. 12.*

*Is there any true use of Oaths?*

Yes. In matters of Importance, that cannot be decided but by an Oath; it is good and lawful to swear by the Name of God, and a Duty specially commanded, *Deut. 6. 13. & 10. 20.* so that it be done, *truly, advisedly, and rightly.* For so is the Commandment, *Jer. 4. 2. Thou shalt swear, The Lord liveth, in Truth, in Judgment, and in Righteousness?* The right use of Oaths.

*How are we to swear in Truth?*

*Affirming* what we know to be true: And *verifying* by Deed what we undertake, *Pfal. 15. 4. & 24. 4.*

*What is here meant by Judgment?*

A due Consideration, both of the Nature and Greatness of an Oath; wherein God is taken to witness against the Soul of the Swearer, if he deceive; and of the due calling and warrant of an Oath, whether *publick*, being demanded by the Magistrate, without Peril to the Swearer, (*Gen. 43. 3.*) or *private*, in case of great Importance, when the Truth cannot otherwise be cleared, *Exod. 22. 11. 1 Sam. 20. 17. 2 Cor. 1. 23.*

*What Considerations are then to be had in taking of an Oath?*

1. Whether the Party we deal with, doubt of the thing we speak of, or not?

2. If the Party doubt; whether the Matter whereof we speak, be weighty and worthy of an Oath?

3. If it be weighty, whether the Question or Doubt may be ended with *Truly* and *Verily*, or such-like naked Affeuerations? Or by doubling our Affeueration, as our Saviour Christ did: For then, by his Example, we ought to forbear an Oath, *Mat. 5. 37.*

4. Whether

4. Whether there be not yet any other fit means to try out the Matter before we come to an Oath.

5. Whether he for whose cause we give the Oath, will rest in it, and give credit unto it: For otherwise the Name of God is taken in vain, *Heb. 6. 16.*

6. When the Matter is of Importance, and there is no other Tryal but an Oath: And we must have our Minds wholly bent to sanctifie the Name of God by the Oath we take; and think upon the Greatness of God's Power to punish Oaths taken amiss, and to bless the true use of them.

*How are we to swear in Righteousness?*

1. In a due form: Which must be no other than God's Word alloweth, viz. by God alone, not by any Creature or Idol, *Deut. 6. 13. Isa. 65. 16. Zeph. 1. 5. Jer. 12. 16. Mat. 5. 34, &c.* Although in lawful Contracts with an Infidel or Idolater, we may admit of such Oaths, whereby he sweareth by his false Gods.

2. To a right end; which is the Glory of God, (*Isa. 45. 23.* with *Phil. 2. 11.*) the good of his Church, and Peace amongst Men, *Heb. 6. 16.*

*What Persons may lawfully take an Oath?*

What Persons may lawfully take an Oath.

Such only as have weighty Matter to deal in: And therefore it is altogether unlawful for Children to swear; as also, because they cannot think sufficiently of the Dignity of an Oath. No Atheist or profane Man should swear; because they either believe not, or they serve not God, *Rom. 1. 9.* In Women Oaths should be more seldom than in Men; in Servants than in Masters; in poor Men than in Rich, because they deal not in so weighty Matters.

*What are the special abuses of an Oath?*

The special abuses of an Oath.

1. The refusing of all Oaths, as unlawful: Which is the error of the Anabaptists.

2. A rash and vain Oath, where there is no cause of swearing; when upon every light occasion we take up the Name of God, and call him for a Witness of frivolous things, by usual swearing, *Matth. 5. 34. James 5. 12. Jer. 23. 10.*

3. A Superstitious or Idolatrous Oath: When we swear by an Idol, or by God's Creatures, *Zeph. 1. 5. Amos 8. 14.* as by the Mass, our Lady, &c. Bread, Salt, Fire, and many fond trashes. Whereas God never appointed the Creatures for such uses.

4. A counterfeit and mocking Oath.

5. Passionate swearing, whereby we call God for a Witness of our furious anger, *1 Sam. 14. 39. 2 Kings 6. 31.*

6. Outragious and blasphemous swearing.

7. Perjury; when God is called for a Witness of an Untruth, by forswearing, *Isa. 48. 1. Zech. 5. 4.* which is, 1. when one sweareth that which he himself thinketh to be false, *Levit. 19. 12.* Secondly, When he sweareth, and doth not perform his Oath, *2 Chron. 36. 13.*

8. Taking a lawful Oath without due Reverence and Consideration.

*So much for the right use and abuse of an Oath. Declare now further, how the Name of God is taken in vain, in regard of his Properties and Attributes.*

How God's Name is taken in vain in regard of his Properties.

1. By seldom or never breaking forth into such Confession and Declaration of God's Power, Wisdom, Justice, Mercy, &c. as our selves and others might thereby be stirred up the more to be thankful unto him, and to stay upon him, *Psal. 40. 9.*

2. By

2. By abusing his Properties; and by carnal, careleſs, or contemptuous ſpeaking of them, *2 Kings 7. 2.*

*How is God's Wiſdom touched here?*

By calling it into queſtion; and prying into the hidden Counſels of God. As when a Man undertaketh to foretel future things and events, &c.

*How is his Juſtice?*

1. By paſſing over his Judgments without notice.
2. By Curſings and Imprecations; whereby we make our ſelves Judges, and attribute that to our ſelves which is due to God.
3. By miſconſtruing and perverting his Judgments.

*How is his Mercy?*

1. By paſſing over of his Benefits, without due notice taken; and not obſerving and recounting, what ſpecial Mercies he hath vouchſafed us in particular, *Pſal. 66. 16. & 103. 2, 3, &c.*

2. By preſuming upon his Mercy, to harden our Hearts in finning, *Deut. 29. 19.*

*How is the Name of God taken in vain, in reſpect of his Works and Actions?*

How in reſpect of his Works.

By, 1. not ſeeing God in his Works, *Aſts 17. 27.*

2. Lightly paſſing over of God's great Works, of Creation, Preſervation, Redemption; as alſo other his Mercies and Judgments, and not glorifying God for that which may be ſeen in them.

3. Vain and fooliſh Thoughts concerning the Creatures: Whereby a vertue is attributed unto them, which God never gave unto them. As all gueſſing of future things by the Stars, or a Man's Face and Hands: The counting it a prodigious Token, that a Hare ſhould croſs our way, &c.

4. Not uſing the Creatures as we ought; not receiving them to God's Glory, with Thankgiving. As when a Man giveth not thanks to God for his Meat and Drink, but doth think them to come without God's Providence: Which is a fearful taking of God's Name in vain.

5. Cavelling at the Doctrine of Predeſtination, (*Rom. 9. 19, 20.*) and not admiring the depth of his Counſels, *Rom. 11. 33, 34.*

6. Murmuring at God's Providence, under the names of Fortune, Chance, and Fate, &c. *Job 3. 2, 3, &c.*

7. Evil thoughts towards our Brethren, which are afflicted. As when we ſee one viſited by God, either in Body, Goods, or both; we are always ready to think the worſe of him; *viz.* that God executeth theſe Punishments on him for his fin. When as God may do it either to exerciſe the Faith and Patience of the Party afflicted, as in *Job*; or to ſtir others to Compaſſion and Pity; or elſe to ſet forth his own Glory, as we may ſee verified in the Example of the blind Man in the Goſpel, *John 9. 2, 3.*

8. Abuse of Lots, *Eſther 3. 7. Prov. 16. 33.*

*How is God's Name taken in vain, in regard of his Word?*

How in reſpect of his Word.

1. By not ſpeaking of it at all, *Deut. 6. 7. Pſal. 37. 30.*
2. By fooliſh and fruitleſs ſpeaking of it; or abuſing any part thereof unto idle and curious queſtions, *2 Pet. 3. 16.*
3. By abuſing it to prophane Mirth, by framing Jeſts out of it, or againſt it, (*Pſal. 22. 13.*) alſo by making Plays and Entreludes thereof.
4. By maintaining Error, Sin and Prophaneneſs by it, *Matth. 4. 6. Iſa. 66. 5.*
5. By applying it to Superſtition, and unlawful Arts: To Magical Spells, Sorceries, and Charms, for the healing of Diſeaſes, finding out Theft, &c. *Deut. 18. 11. Acts 19. 23,*

*How*

*How is God's Name taken in vain, in regard of the Sacraments and other Holy Mysteries and Ordinances of God?*

When they are unworthily received, and prophanelly used, *Mal. 1. 11, 12. 1 Cor. 11. 27, 29. Jer. 7. 4, 10.*

*So much of the chief particulars forbidden in this Commandment. What are the helps or hindrances of the Obedience thereof?*

Of the helps and hindrances.

1. That we both inure our *Hearts* to fear and reverence the *great and dreadful Name of the Lord our God*, (*Deut. 28. 58. Eccles. 9. 2.*) and keep a careful watch over our *Lips* and *Lives*, lest by any means we dishonour him, *Psal. 39. 1.*

2. That we avoid, both the Company of prophane Persons, who *set their Mouth against Heaven*, (*Psal. 73. 9.*) and all unnecessary dangers, whereby divers have been occasioned to deny the Lord, *Mat. 26. 69. &c.*

*What is contained in the Reason annexed to the Commandment?*

The reason annexed to the third Commandment.

A dreadful Penalty: That *the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his Name in vain.*

*What is the sum of this Threat?*

That God will not leave this sin unpunished, (*1 Kings 2. 9.*) but will grievously punish the Breach of this Commandment: Whereby he threatneth extream Miseries and Judgments to the Transgressors. For it being our Happiness to have our sins covered, and not imputed, (*Psal. 32. 2.*) it must needs be extream Unhappiness, to have them reckoned and imputed unto us.

*What is implied herein?*

A fit Opposition: That howsoever Man's Laws take not hold of offending in this kind; yet God will not acquit them, (*Psal. 1. 5.*) nor suffer them to escape his righteous and fearful Judgments, (*Zech. 5. 3. Jer. 5. 12.*) Neither shall the Transgressor escape unpunished, although the Magistrate and Minister also would pronounce him innocent. And although the Malefactor flatter himself, as if all dangers were past; nay, the more free, that (usually) he escapes the Judgments and Punishments of Men: The more heavy Plagues and Vengeance will surely light upon him from God, except he repent.

*Hitherto of the Commandments concerning that Service which is to be performed to God at all times, as occasion shall require. What is that which concerneth the special time, wholly to be bestowed in his Worship?*

The fourth Commandment.

The fourth and last Commandment of the first Table; which setteth forth a certain Day, especially appointed by the Lord himself, to the practice of the Worship prescribed in the three former Commandments: For therein consisteth the chief Point of the sanctifying of that Day.

*What are the Words of this Commandment?*

Remember that thou keep Holy the Sabbath-Day, &c. *Exod. 20. 8, 9, 10, 11.*

*What are we to observe in these Words?*

First, The Commandment; and then the Reasons annexed thereunto.

*What is the meaning of the Commandment?*

The meaning of the fourth Commandment.

It challengeth at the hand of every Man, one day of seven in every Week, to be *set apart* unto a holy Rest, and requireth all Persons to *separate* themselves

selves from their ordinary Labour, and all other Exercifes, to his Service on the fame: That fo being fevered from their worldly Buſineſſes, and all the Works of their Labour and Callings concerning this Life, they may wholly attend to the Worſhip of God alone, *Nehem.* 13. 15, 22. *Eſa.* 58.

13, 14.

*Why do you add theſe Words [apart] and [ſeparate?]*

To make a difference between the Sabbath Days, wherein we muſt wholly and only ſerve God; and the Exercifes of the other Six Days, wherein every Man muſt ſerve him in his lawful Calling.

*What need is there of one whole Day in every Week to ſerve God; ſeeing we may ſerve him every Day?*

That is not enough. For,

1. To the end that we ſhould not plunge our ſelves ſo deeply into the Affairs of the World, as that we ſhould not recover our ſelves; the Wiſdom of God hath thought it fit, that one Day in Seven there ſhould be an intermiſſion from them: That we might wholly ſeparate our ſelves to the Service of God, and with more freedom of Spirit perform the ſame.

*What need is there of one day in ſeven to ſerve God?*

2. A whole Day is needful for the performance of all the parts of God's Service and Worſhip: As hearing of Publick Prayer, and the Word preached, Catechiſing, Adminiſtration of the Sacraments, Exercife of Holy Diſcipline, and Conſideration of the Glory of God in the Creatures.

3. If *Adam* in his Perfection had need of this Doly-Day; much more have we, who are ſo grievouſly corrupted.

4. If the Lord in Love and Wiſdom, conſidering our Neceſſities both of Soul and Body, hath ſet out a Week's-time for both of Proviſion: That as every Day we ſet apart ſome time for Food, and ſpend the reſt in Labour, ſo we ſet one Day in the Week aſide for our Spiritual Food, and beſtow the other Days on our Earthly Affairs. So that this day may in compariſon be accounted the *Soul's Day*: Wherein yet we muſt have ſome care of our Bodies; as on the Six Days we muſt have ſome care of our Souls.

*What is forbidden in this Commandment?*

The unhallowing or profaning of the Sabbath, either by doing the Works of our Calling, and of the Fleſh, or by leaving undone the Works of the Spirit.

*But is not this Commandment Ceremonial, and ſo taken away by the Death of Chriſt?*

No: But is conſtantly and perpetually to be obſerved, and never to ceaſe 'till it be perfectly *conſummed* in the Heavenly Sabbath, *Heb.* 4. 9, 10.

*That the Sabbath-day is not Ceremonial.*

*How perceive you that?*

1. Becauſe it is placed in the number of the perpetual Commandments. Otherwiſe the Moral Law ſhould conſiſt but of Nine Words or Commandments; which is contrary to God's Word, *Deut.* 4. 13.

2. Becauſe this Commandment (among the reſt) was written by the Finger of God, (*Exod.* 31. 18.) whereas no part of the Ceremonial Law was.

3. For that it was written in Tables of Stone, as well as the other, (*Deut.* 5. 22.) as to ſignifie the hardneſs of our Hearts, ſo to ſignifie the continuance and perpetuity of this Commandment, as well as the reſt.

4. Becauſe it was before any Shadow or Ceremony of the Law; yea, before Chriſt was promiſed, whom all Ceremonies of the Law have reſpect unto.

For the Sabbath was first instituted in Paradise, before there was any use of Sacrifices and Ceremonies, *Gen. 2. 1, 2, 3.*

5. The Ceremonies were as a Partition-Wall betwixt the Jews, and the Gentiles: But God doth here extend his Commandment, not only to the Jews themselves, but also to the Strangers, *Exodus 20. 10. Nehem. 13. 15, 16, &c.*

6. Our Saviour Christ willing his Followers, which should live about forty Years after his Ascension, to pray that their Flight might not be on the Sabbath Day, to the end that they might not be hindred in the Service of God; doth thereby sufficiently declare, that he held not this Commandment in the account of a Ceremony, *Mat. 24. 20.*

*But it sometimes shadoweth our Sanctification, and our eternal Rest, (Col. 2. 16, 17. Exod. 31. 13.) and is therefore Ceremonial.*

That followeth not. For,

1. There is no Commandment which hath not some Ceremonies tied unto it: As in the Commandment touching Murther, to abstain from strangled Things and Blood. And the whole Law had the Ceremony of the *Parchment Law*. So by that reason the whole Law should be Ceremonial: Which is absurd.

2. The Ceremonial Representation of our Eternal Rest, came after the Commandment of the Rest, and therefore is accessary and accidental. For which cause, the time of Correction and Abolishment of Ceremonies being come, (*Dan. 9. 7. Mat. 11. 13. Acts 15. 6. Col. 2. 13, 14. Heb. 10. 14. Gal. 5. 2.*) that use may well fall away, and yet the Commandment remain; it being not of the substance of the Commandment.

*What is the special Day of the Week, which God hath set apart for his Solemn Worship?*

The first Day of the Week, called the Lord's Day, *1 Cor. 16. 2. Rev. 1. 10. Acts 20. 7.*

*Was this Day set apart thereunto from the beginning?*

Of the change of the seventh day to the first and the Reasons of it.

No. For from the first Creation 'till the Resurrection of Christ, the last Day of the Week, commonly called *Saturday*, was the Day that was appointed thereunto, and that which the People of God constantly observed.

*And why so?*

Because upon that God ceased from the Work of Creation, *Gen. 2. 2. Exod.*

31. 17.

*How came this Day to be changed?*

By Divine Authority.

*How doth that appear?*

1. By the Practice of our Saviour Christ, and his Apostles, *John 20. 19, 26. Acts 2. 1. and 20. 7.* which should be a sufficient Rule unto us; especially the Apostle's having added a Commandment thereunto, *1 Cor. 16. 1, 2:*

2. There is no reason why it should be called the Lord's Day, *Rev. 1. 10.* But in regard of the Special Dedication thereof to the Lord's Service: For otherwise all the Days of the Week are the Lord's Days, and he is to be served and worshipped in them.

*What was the cause why the Day was changed?*

Because it might serve for a thankful Memorial of Christ's Resurrection. For as God rested from his Labour on the last Day of the Week: So Christ ceased from his Labour and Afflictions on this Day, *Mat. 28. 1. Gen. 2. 1, 2.* As the

the one therefore was specially sanctified in regard of the Creation of the World : So was the other, in respect of the Restauration and Redemption of the World ; which is a greater Work than the Creation.

*Can this Day then be altered ?*

No Power of any Creature in Heaven or Earth can alter it, or place another Seventh Day in the place and stead thereof.

*Doth not this Commandment directly require the Seventh Day from the Creation ?*

No ; but the Seventh Day in general.

*Doth not the Reason annexed, where the Lord in six Days is said to make Heaven and Earth, and to rest the Seventh Day, and therefore to hallow it, confirm so much ?*

No, not necessarily. For it doth not hence follow, that we should rest the same Day the Lord rested ; but that we should rest from our Work the Seventh Day, as he rested from his : Which Seventh Day, under the Law, he appointed to be *Saturday*. So nothing hindreth, but by his special appointment under the Gospel it may be *Sunday*, and yet the substance of the Commandment nothing altered.

*Why doth not the New Testament mention this change ?*

Because there was no Question moved about the same in the Apostles time.

*When then doth this our Sabbath begin, and how long doth it continue ?*

This Day, as all the fix, is the space of Twenty-four Hours, and beginneth at the Dawning ; though we ought in the Evening before to prepare for the Day following.

The time of the Sabbath, and when it beginneth.

*Why doth our Sabbath begin at the Dawning of the Day ?*

Because Christ rose in the Dawning, and to put a difference between the Jewish, and the true Christian Sabbath. For as the Jews begun their Sabbath in that part of the Day, in which the Creation of the World was ended, and consequently in the Evening : So the Celebration of the Memory of Christ's Resurrection, and therein of his Rest from his special Labours, and the renewing of the World, being the ground of the change of that Day into this ; it is also, by the same proportion of Reason, to begin when the Resurrection began, which was in the Morning.

*Can you see this by Example ?*

Yea. Paul being at Troas, after he had preached a whole Day, until Midnight, celebrated the *Supper of the Lord* the same Night, which was a Sabbath-Days Exercise : And therefore that Night following the Day, was a part of the Sabbath. For in the Morning he departed, having staid there Seven Days : By which it is evident, that that which was done, was done upon the Lord's Day, *Acts* 20. 7, 10.

*Is the Lord's Day only to be separated to God's Service ?*

No. For of this manner also are all Holy Fasts observed for the avoiding of some great Evil, present or imminent, (*Lev.* 23. 27. *Joel* 2. 12. ) and Holy Feasts, for the thankful remembrance of some special memorable Mercies obtained, *Zech.* 8. 19. *Esther* 9. 17, 18, 19.

*To what Commandment do you refer the Churches meeting on the Working-days ?*

That is also, by a manner of Speech of one part for the whole, contained in this Commandment : Yea, it reacheth to the times which the Family appointeth, or that every one for his private good proposeth ; although the

Bond to that time is not so strict, as is the Bond to observe the Days of Rest.

*So much of this Commandment in general. What do you note therein in particular?*

1. The Entrance, in the word Remember.
2. The Parts of the Commandment.

*What is to be observed in the Word Remember?*

What is meant by the word, Remember. That although all the Commandments are needful diligently to be remembered; yet this more specially.

*Why so?*

1. Because this Commandment hath least Light of Nature to direct us to the Observation of it.

2. For that naturally we are most negligent in it, suffering our selves to be withdrawn by our worldly Business from the Lord's Service, upon the Lord's Day, and therefore such a special Warning is needful to be added.

*What things are we hence to remember?*

1. To look back unto the first Institution of the Sabbath-Day in Paradise, Gen. 2. 2, 3. before all Sacrifices and Ceremonies.

2. So to bear it in mind, as to live in continual Practice of the Duties we learned the Sabbath-Day last past.

3. To bethink our selves before of the Works of the Sabbath; and so to prepare our selves and our Affairs, (Luke 23. 54.) that we may freely and duly attend on the Lord in the Sabbath approaching.

*What should be done in this Preparation of the Sabbath?*

Of the Preparation of the Sabbath.

1. We should so compass all our Businesses within the six working Days, that our Worldly Affairs enter not, or inroach into the possession of the Lord's Day: Not only willingly, but not so much as by any Forgetfulness. As when through want of Fore-sight, or Fore-casting, the Payment of Money due by Obligation, or any such Businesses that might be prevented, shall fall out on that Day.

2. We should sanctifie our selves; and those that are under us, to keep that Day.

*What is contrary to this?*

The neglect of Preparation for the Sabbath before it come, and of fitting our Hearts for Holy Services when it is come.

*What are the Parts of this Commandment?*

They are two.

First, To keep the LORD's Rest.

Secondly, To sanctifie this Rest.

For it is not sufficient that we rest from Worldly Businesses; but it is further required, that it be a Holy Rest. The first sheweth, what Works we are to decline upon this Day; the other, what Duties we are to perform.

*What are the Works we are to decline, and leave undone on the Lord's Day?*

What Works ought to be declined.

Not only the Works of Sin, which we ought to leave undone every Day: But also Works of our ordinary Callings concerning this Life, and bodily Exercise and Labours; which upon other Days are lawful and necessary to be done, Mark 3 4. Ezek. 23. 37, 38. Numb. 15. 32, 33. Exod. 31. 10, 11, 12, 13, 14. & 34. 21. Nehem. 13. 15, &c. Eisa. 58. 13.

*What Instances have you in Scripture of the Performance hereof?*

The Israelites ceased both from those Works which were of the least importance, as gathering of Sticks, (Numb. 15. 32.) and from such also as were of greatest



greatest Weight, as working of the Tabernacle, and building the Temple on the Sabbath Day: And consequently all other Works, betwixt these extremes, as buying and selling, working in Seed-time or Harvest, were forbidden unto them, *Exod. 31. 14, 15, 16. & 34. 21.*

*Are we strictly bound to rest from all outward Businesses, and to forbear all worldly Labour upon this day, as the Israelites?*

Yea, so far forth as the Morality of the Commandment reacheth. But by the Ceremonial Law, there was enjoyed unto the Jews a more exact observation of outward Rest, which to them was a part of that Ceremonial Worship; whereas unto us the outward Rest is not properly any part of the Sanctification of the Day, or the Service of God; but only a means tending to the furtherance of the same. Even as in Fasting and Prayer, Fasting of it self is no part of God's Service, but a thing adjoynd therunto, and so far forth only acceptable in the Worship of God, as it maketh a way and readier passage for the other, *1 Cor. 8. 8.*

*What did that most strict Observance of outward Rest signifie unto the Jews?*

Their continual Sanctification in this World, (*Exod. 31. 13. Ezek. 20. 12.*) and their endless Rest in the World to come; whereof this was a Type no less than the Land of Promise, *Heb. 4. 4, 5, 10.*

*How was the latter of these specially typified?*

In this World God's Children are subject unto the fiery Tryal, (*1 Pet. 4. Remon. 12.*) but after these Troubles, Rest is provided for them, (*2 Thess. 1. 7.*) and no Fire to be feared in that after-world. For a more lively Representation, there was a charge laid upon the Children of Israel, that no Fire might be kindled throughout all their Habitations upon the Sabbath Day, (*Exod. 35. 3.*) though it were for the very preparing of the Meat which they should eat, (*Exod. 16. 23.*) which was allowed unto them even in the two great solemn Days of the Passover, *Exod. 12. 16.*

*Is it then lawful for us to make a Fire and dress Meat upon the Lord's Day?*

Yea certainly. Because these were proper unto the Pedagogy or manner of Government of the Children of Israel under the Law: As may appear by this, that there was no such thing commanded before the Law was given by Moses; and consequently being not perpetual, must necessarily follow to be Ceremonial. Now after the Sabbath that Christ our Lord rested in the Grave, this Ceremonial Sabbath lieth buried in that Grave, together with those other Rites which were shadows of things to come, the Body being in Christ, (*Col. 2. 16, 17.*) Therefore we being dead with Christ from these Ceremonies, are no more to be burthened with such Traditions, (*ibid. v. 20.*) nor to be brought under the Bondage of any outward thing. It is a Liberty purchased unto us by Christ, and we must stand fast unto it: That Blessed Hour being come, wherein the true Worshipers are to worship the Father in Spirit and Truth, *John 4. 23.*

*To leave then the Ceremonial Sabbath, and to come to the Moral: How is the Rest required therein laid down in the fourth Commandment?*

By a Declaration. First, Of the Works from which there must be a Cessation?

Secondly, Of the Persons that must observe this Rest.

*How is the former of these expressed?*

In these words: *In it thou shalt not do any work, Exod. 20. 10.*

What Rest required in the fourth Commandment.

What

*What is required of us hereby?*

That for the Space of that whole Day, we cease in Mind and Body from all Worldly Labours; yea, from the Works of our lawful Calling, and all other earthly Businesse whatsoever, more than needs must be done, either for God's Glory or Man's Good.

*What gather you of this?*

That all Exercises that serve not in some degree to make us fit to the Lord's Work, are unlawful upon the Lord's Day.

*Why do you say that we must rest in Mind and Body?*

Because this Rest must be of the whole Man, in Thoughts, Words, and Deeds, *Esa.* 58. 13.

*Is it merely unlawful to do any bodily or outward Business on the Lord's Day?*

No. For first such Works are accepted as are presently necessary, either for common Honesty or Comeliness.

Secondly, The Actions of Piety, requisite for the Performance of God's Service on that Day, *Mat.* 12. 5. *Acts* 1. 12.

Thirdly, Extraordinary Exigents of Charity, for the Preservation of the Common-Wealth, *2 Kings* 11. 9.

Fourthly, The Preservation of our own or others Life, Health, and Goods, in case of present necessity, or great danger of their perishing if they were not saved on that day, *Mat.* 12. 1, 10, 11. *Mark* 3. 4. *Luke* 13. 15, 16.

*What be the special breaches of this part of the Commandment?*

The special breaches opposite to an Holy Rest.

1. The making of the Sabbath a common Day through common Labour in our ordinary Callings, (*Nehem.* 13. 15, &c.) vain Speech and talking of our worldly Affairs, (*Esa.* 58. 13.) thinking our own thoughts, or other, but a common use of the Creatures.

2. The making it a Day of carnal Rest unto Idleness, Feasting, Pastimes, &c. which draw our Minds further from God, than our ordinary Labours, *Exod.* 32. 6. Whither are referred all Recreations which distract us; as also excessive eating and drinking, which causeth drowsiness and unaptness unto God's Worship and Service.

3. The making it a Day of Sin, or the Devil's holy Day; by doing that on the Lord's Day which is no Day lawful, (*Mark* 3. 4.) but then most abominable, *Ezek.* 23. 37, 38.

4. The keeping a piece of the Day, not the whole; or giving liberty to our selves in the Night, before the whole Sabbath be ended.

5. The forbearing our selves, but employing others in Worldly Business; for preventing of which sin, God is so large in naming of the Persons which in this Commandment are forbidden to work.

*Why is there a particular Rehearsal of these Persons in this Commandment?*

To take away all Excuses from all Persons. For the Lord did see, that such was the Corruption of Men, that if they themselves did rest upon this Day from Labours, they would think it sufficient; not caring how they toiled out and wearied their Servants at home with continual Labour, as many do: So that it were better to be such Mens Oxen than their Servants; so small Care they have of their Souls.

*What is the special use of this Rehearsal?*

To teach us that all sorts and degrees of Persons are bound to yield this Duty unto God: And that the Sabbath is to be kept both by our selves and those that do belong unto us.

*Was it not ordained also for the rest and refreshing of Men and Beasts ; especially Servants, which could not otherwise continue without it ?*

That also was partly intended, (as may appear by *Deut. 5. 14.*) but not principally. For the things here contained do concern the Worship of God ; but that wearing and toying out of Servants and Beasts is against the Sixth Commandment : And working is here forbidden, that Men might be the more free for the Worship of God ; and therefore though Servants had never so much Rest and Recreation upon other Days, yet they ought to Rest upon this Day in that regard.

*Why is there mention made of allowing Rests to the Beasts ?*

First, That we may shew Mercy even to the Beast, *Prov. 12. 10.*

Secondly, To represent after a sort the everlasting Sabbath, wherein all Creatures shall be delivered from the Bondage of Corruption, *Rom. 8. 20, 21.*

Thirdly, Because of the whole Employment of Men in the Lord's Service: For Beasts cannot be travelled or used in any Work upon that Day, unless Man be withdrawn from God's Service : Yea, though the Beast could labour without Man's attendance, yet his Mind would sometime or other be carried away and distracted thereby, that it would not be so fit as it ought to be for God's Service.

*To whom especially is the Charge of this Commandment directed ?*

To Householders and Magistrates ; who stand charged in the behalf, both of themselves, and of all that are under their Roof and Government, *Jos. 24. 15.* To whom this Commandment is chiefly directed.

*Neh. 13. 15, &c.*

*What is the Charge of the Householder ?*

That not only himself keep the Lord's Day, but also his Wife, Children, and Servants, as much as may be. For as they serve him in the Week-Days ; so he must see that they serve God on the Lord's Day.

*What gather you of this ?*

That a Householder should at least be as careful of the Lord's Business, as of his own. And if he will not keep such a Servant as is not careful in his ordinary Work, much less should he keep any that will not be careful in the Lord's Work, how skilful soever he be in his own.

*What is the Magistrate's part ?*

To see that all within his Gates keep the Lord's Day, (*Jos. 24. 15.*) even Strangers, though Turks and Infidels, (*Nehem. 13. 15.*) causing them to cease from Labour, and restraining them from all open and publick Idolatry, or false Worship of God ; much more all his own Subjects, whom he ought to force to hear the Word, *2 Chron. 34. 33.*

*So much of the first part of this Commandment, touching our rest from all worldly Businesses. What followeth in the next place ?*

The second and greater part of this Commandment : Which is the sanctifying of this Rest, and keep it holy unto the Lord ; by exercising our selves wholly in the Service of God, and performing the Duties of the Day. The second part of this Commandment, which is the sanctifying of the Rest.

*Are we as strictly bound to these Duties as the Jews ?*

Yes verily, and more than they : Because of the greater measures of God's Graces upon us, above that which was upon them.

*What is required of us herein ?*

To make the Sabbath our delight ; to consecrate it as glorious unto the Lord, (*Isa. 58. 13.*) and that with joy and without weariness, (*Amos 8. 5. Mal. 1. 13.*) and that also with care and desire of profit we bestow the whole Day (as Nature will bear) in holy Exercises.

*What*

*What are these Exercises?*

The Exercises  
and Duties re-  
quired on the  
Sabbath.

They are partly Duties of *Piety*, (*Acts* 13. 13, 15. & 20. 7. *Pfal.* 92. 1.) as hearing and reading the Word, Prayer, finging of *Pfalms*, and feeding our selves with the Contemplation of the Heavenly Sabbath: Partly of *Mercy*, (*1 Cor.* 16. 2. *Nehem.* 8. 12.) as visiting and relieving the Sick and Needy, comforting the Sad, and such like.

*How are these Duties to be performed?*

Partly *publickly* in the Church; where the Solemn Worshipping of God is the special Work and proper Use of the Sabbath: Partly *privately* out of the Church; and that either secretly by our selves alone, or joyntly with others.

*What if we cannot be suffered to use the Publick Means?*

Such as are necessarily debarred from the Publick Duties, must humble themselves before God, mourning and sorrowing for this restraint, (*Mat.* 24. 20. *Pfal.* 42. 6. & 84. 1, 2, 3.) and with so much more care and earnestness use the private means, *Pfal.* 63. 1, 2.

*What is the first Duty we are to perform in the Publick Assembly?*

Prayer with  
the Congre-  
gation.

To joyn in Prayer with the Congregation: Which is an excellent Duty. For if, as Christ saith, *When two or three are gathered together in his Name, he will grant their Requests*: How much more will he hear his Servants, when two or three hundred are gathered in his Name?

*What is the second?*

Hearing the  
Word.

To hear the Word of God read, *Luke* 4. 16. *Acts* 3. 16. & 15. 20. for blessed is he that readeth, and they that hear the Word, *Rev.* 1. 3.

*What is the third?*

To hear the Word preached, *Luke* 4. 16, 22. *Acts* 13. 14, 15. & 15. 21. & 20. 7.

*What is the fourth?*

Receiving the  
Sacrament.

To communicate in the Sacraments: By being present when the Sacrament of Baptism is administered unto others; and by receiving the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper our selves (after a decent order) in the appointed time, *Act.* 20. 7. *1 Cor.* 11. 20.

*Why should a Man be present at Baptism?*

First, That he may give Thanks to God for adding a Member to his Church.

Secondly, That he might be put in mind of his own Vow made to God in Baptism, by seeing the Child baptized.

*What is the fifth Duty to be performed in the Congregation?*

Singing of *Pfalms*.

*What is the sixth?*

Exercise of the Discipline of the Church against Offenders, *1 Cor.* 5. 4.

*What is the seventh?*

Collection for the Poor, and Contribution for Relieving the Necessities of the Saints of God, *1 Cor.* 16. 1, 2. where we are to give according to our Wealths, and the Blessing of God upon the Week going before.

*What are the private Duties that are to be performed out of the Church?*

Private Duties  
of the Sabbath

Such as we perform either in secret by our selves alone, or in common with our Families at home, or others abroad: Both before the Publick Exercises in the Church, the better to perform them; and after, the more to profit by them.

*What be they in particular?*

First, Private Prayer.

Secondly,

Secondly, reading of the Word.

Thirdly, Holy Conference touching the Word of God, and familiar talk of things that belong to the Kingdom of Heaven, *Luke 14. 7, 19.*

Fourthly, Examination of our selves, and those that belong unto us, what we have profited by the hearing of the Word, and other Exercifes of Religion.

Fifthly, Catechifing of our Families.

Sixthly, Meditation upon God's Word, Properties, and Works, as well of Creation as of Providence; especially that which he exercifeth in the Government of the Church, *Pfal. 80. and 92.*

Seventhly, Reconciling fuch as are at variance.

Eighthly, Vifiting the Sick, relieving the Poor, &c. *1. Cor. 16. 2. Neh. 8. 12.* For thefe alfo are Works of the Sabbath.

*What proof have you of this continual Exercise and Employment of the whole Day in Holy Services?*

1. In the Law, every Evening and every Morning were Sacrifices; which on the Sabbath where multiplied, *Numb. 28. 9.*

2. The 92 *Pfalms* (entituled, *A Psalm for the Sabbath*) appointed to be fung that Day, declareth, that it is a good thing to begin the praifes of God early, in the morning, and continue the fame until it be night.

*That we may know then how to spend a Sabbath well: declare more particularly how we may bestow the whole time in exercifes of Holinefs, and first begin with the evening Preparation.*

Our care must be over-night, that having laid aside all our earthly Affairs, we begin to fit our selves for the Lord's Service: that fo we may fall afleep, as it were, in the Lord's Bosom, and awake with him in the morning.

*What must be done in the Morning when we awake?*

We are to put away all earthly Thoughts, and to take up fuch Meditations as may most fir up our Hearts with reverence and chearfulnefs to ferve the Lord the whole Day after. Wherein, first, we are to confider the great benefit of the Lord's Sabbath, and fo chear up our Hearts in the expectation to enjoy the fame. Secondly, To covenant with the Lord, more religiously to sanctifie the whole Day after.

Of the Evening preparation.

The first Duties of the Morning.

*In making of our selves ready, what are we to do?*

Rifing as early for the Lord's Service, as we do for our own Businesfes, and bestowing no more time nor care about our Apparel, and fuch like, than needs must: we may then occupy our Mind about fuch matters as be most fit for that time; which ordinarily may be thefe two.

1. To think upon God's goodnefs in giving us fuch Apparel, and other necessaries, which many others want: fo that we may judg all things we have rather too good for us, than be difcontented with any thing we enjoy.

2. Considering how well our Bodies be apparelled, and provided for, to feek more to have our Souls better apparelled with Chrift Jesus.

*Being up and ready, what are we to fet our selves to?*

We must fet our selves to morning Sacrifice, either alone, or with others, if it may be: fome fhort Prayer for our preparation being ufed.

*What Meditations must we here enter into?*

Two especially: the one, for that which is past; the other, for that which is to come.

*What for that which is past?*

To caft our weeks account at leaft, how God hath dealt with us in Benefits and Chastifements; and how we have dealt with him in keeping or breaking

his Commandments: that by both we may find matter to comfort and humble us, to move us to thankfulness for Mercies received, and to earnest suit and labour for pardon of our trespasses, and supply of all necessities.

*What for that which followeth?*

To prepare our selves for the publick Ministry, and as it were to apparel our selves, and make our selves fit to go to the Court of the Lord of Hosts, with his Children, and before his Angels:

*What things are necessary hereunto?*

1. A due regard whither we go, before whom, what to do, and to what ends, wherewith to honour God, and to receive Grace from him.
2. An earnest hunger so to use the means to God's honour and our good.
3. True Faith, that she shall enjoy our desire.
4. Joy and thankfulness in the hope of such blessings.
5. Humility, in regard of our unworthiness.
6. Unfained purpose of amendment of life.

*What must be added unto these?*

To the Meditations, fervent Prayer must be joyned, and Reasting, for our furtherance in God's Service: and such as conveniently can, are to joyn together in a Christian Family, to read, pray and confer; and Governors to instruct their Families in such matters as are then besitting.

*Having thus spent the time privately, what is to be done in publick?*

Of the publick  
Duties of the  
Sabbath.

We are to go to Church in all comely sort, before the publick Ministry is begun, and then with all diligence to attend, and to give consent thereunto; and so to take to heart whatsoever shall be brought unto us, that by all the holy Exercises, we may be edified in all needful Graces.

*The publick Ministry ended, what are we to do?*

What is to be  
done after the  
publick Ministry.

We are to occupy our Minds on that we have heard, and when we come to place and time convenient, to set our selves more especially to make use of it to our selves and others pertaining to us; and to water it with our Prayers; that it may grow and bring forth Fruit:

*What say you to our Diet, and refreshing of our Nature on this Day?*

Care would be had, that it be such as every way may make us fitter for Holy Duties. And to this end, we are to season it with Meditation and Speeches of Holy Things:

*How is the Afternoon to be spent?*

1. The time before the Evening Sacrifice we are to bestow, either alone or with others, in such Exercises as may best quicken in us God's Spirit.
2. For the Evening Sacrifice, in all respects, to behave our selves as in the Morning, and to continue to the end.
3. The publick Ministry fully ended, to keep our Minds (in like sort as before) on that we have heard; and so being come home, either alone or with others, to enter into examination of our selves for the whole Day.

*How are we to end the Day?*

1. With thanks for God's Blessings on our Labours.
2. Humble suit for pardon of all our Faults escaped.
3. Earnest desire of Grace, to profit by all; that we may persevere unto the end; and be saved.

*Do you make any difference between the Sabbath Nights and other Nights?*

Yes: we should lay our selves down to rest in great quietness that Night, upon the sense and feeling of the former Exercises: so that our sleep should be the more quiet; by how much the former Exercises of that Day have been

more:

more holy: otherwise we should declare, that we have not kept the whole Day so holy to the Lord as we ought.

*What be the sins condemned in the second part of this Commandment?*

Generally, the omission of any of the former Duties: and in particular,

1. Idleness: which is a sin every Day, but much more on the Lord's Day.
  2. Prophane absence from, or unfaithful presence at, God's Ordinances.
  3. Neglect of calling our selves to a reckoning after holy Exercises.
  4. Being weary of the Duties of the Sabbath; thinking long till they be ended.
- Amos 8. 5. *Mal.* 1. 13.

Sins to be condemned in respect of the second part of this Commandment.

*What are the helps or hindrances to the keeping of this Commandment?*

1. We must add to the forementioned Duty of Remembrance, an ardent endeavour to taste the sweetness of Holy Exercises, (*Psal.* 24. 3. and 84. 1, &c.) that so we may come to make the Sabbath our delight.

Helps and hindrances to the keeping of this Commandment.

2. We must avoid and abhor all prophane Opinions, either disannulling the necessity of the Sabbath, or equalling any other Day to it; together with such Meetings and Companies, Exercises and Occasions, whereby we shall be in danger to be drawn to the unhallowing of the Sabbath Day, *Ezek.* 22. 26.

*So much of the Commandment. What Reasons are used to enforce the same?* Four.

*Whence is the first taken?*

From Equity; by a secret reason of comparison of the less. That forasmuch as God hath allowed us six Days of seven for our Affairs (to do our own Business in; whether it be Labour, or honest Recreation) and reserved but one for himself; when as he might most justly have given us but one of seven, and have taken six to himself: we ought not to think it much, to spend the whole seventh Day in his Service.

Of the reasons enforcing obedience to this Commandment.

1. Reason.

*What learn you from hence?*

The unequal and wretched dealing of most Men with God, who by the grant of this Commandment urge usually at their Servants hands the Work of a whole Day in every of the six days; yet upon the Lord's Day think it enough, both for themselves and those under them, to measure out unto the Lord three or four hours only for his Service: using one measure to mete the Service due unto themselves, and another to mete the Service due unto God: which is a thing abominable before God, (*Prov.* 11. 1.) and so much the more as the things are greater and of more value, which they mete with lesser measure.

*Whence is the second Reason taken?*

From God's own right; who made the Sabbath; and is Lord of it. *For the Seventh Day is the Sabbath of the Lord thy God.* This Day is his, and not ours.

2. Reason.

*Whence is the third?*

From the example of God. That as God, having made all things in the six days, rested the seventh Day from creating any more; so should we rest from all our Works. God himself ceasing from his Work of Creation on that Day, and sanctifying it; with what joy ought we to imitate our God herein? *Gen.* 2. 2, 3. *Exod.* 31. 17.

3. Reason.

*Did God cease from all Works on the Seventh Day?*

No verily: he did then, and still continueth to do a great Work, in preserving the things created, *John* 5. 17.

*What learn you from this?*

1. That we be not idle on the Lord's Day, seeing God's Example is to the contrary; but attend upon the Lord's Service.

2. That

2. That as the Lord preserved on the Sabbath Day things created in the six days before, but created none other new, so by his example, we may save things on that Day, which otherwise would be lost; but we may not get or gain more.

*Whence is the fourth and last Reason drawn?*

4. Reason.

From hope of blessing. Because God ordained not the Sabbath for any good it can do to him, but for the good of unthankful Man: and therefore he blessed and Sanctified it; not only as a Day of Service to himself, but also as a time and means to bestow encrease of Grace upon such as do continually observe the same, *Exod* 31. 13. *Esa.* 56. 6, 7.

*What is meant by sanctifying it?*

The setting it apart from worldly Businesses to the Service of God.

*What by blessing?*

Not that this day in it self is more blessed than other days: but as the acceptable time of the Gospel is put for the Persons that receive the Gospel in that time: so by blessing this Day, he meaneth that those that keep it shall be blessed; and that in setting it apart, and separating it by this Commandment from other days, to be kept holy by publick Exercises of his Holy Worship and Service, God hath made it an essential means of blessing to them that shall sanctifie it as they ought.

*Wherein shall they be blessed that keep the Sabbath Day?*

1. In all the Holy Exercises of the Sabbath: which shall serve for their further encrease, both of the knowledg and fear of God, and all other Spiritual and Heavenly Graces accompanying Salvation.

2. In matters of this Life, we shall not only not be hindred by keeping the Sabbath, but more blessed than if we did work that Day: as on the other side, the gain on the Lord's Day shall (by the curse of God) melt and vanish away, what shew of profit soever it have; and bring some curse or other upon our labours in the week days, which in themselves are lawful and honest.

*So much of the first Table, concerning our Duties to God, the due performance whereof is called Piety: wherein God (as a King or as a Father of an Household) doth teach his Subjects or Family their Duties towards himself.*

*What is taught in the second Table?*

The second Table.

Our Duties to our selves and our Neighbours: the performance whereof is commonly called *justice* or *Righteousness*; wherein God teacheth his Subjects and Family their Duties one towards another.

*What is the sum of the Commandments of the second Table?*

*Thou shalt love thy Neighbour as thy self, Levit. 19. 18. Mat. 22. 39. Or, As you would that Men should do unto you, do you unto them likewise, Matth. 7. 12. Luke 6. 31.*

*What general things do you observe belonging to this Table?*

The generals to be observed in this Table.

1. That it is like unto the first, *Mat. 22. 39.* and therefore that according to the measure of our profiting in the first Table, we profit also in this. In which respect the Prophets and Apostles do commonly try the sincerity and uprightnes of profiting under the first Table, by the forwardnes in the second.

2. That the Works thereof are in higher or lower degree of Good or Evil; as they are kept or broken towards one of the Household of Faith, rather than towards a Neighbour simply, *1 Cor. 6. 8. & 10. 32. Gal. 6. 10. Deut. 22. 2, 3.*

3. That out of our Bond to our Neighbour, we draw all our Duties to all Men, (*1 Theff 3. 12. & 5. 15.*) reaching them even to the Wicked, so far forth as we hinder not God's Glory, nor some great Duty to others, especially the Household



Houſhold of Faith. For ſometime it may ſo fall out, that that which Men require (and that which otherwiſe is right) may not be given? As *Rahab*, though ſubject to the King of *Jericho*, might not reveal the Spies, but ſhould have failed in her Duty, if ſhe had betrayed them at the King's Commandment: and therefore in this caſe ſhe did well, in preferring the Obedience ſhe owed to God, before the Duty ſhe owed to Man, *Jof. 2. 3.* In like caſe alſo *Jonathan*, revealing his Father's Counſel unto *David*, and preferring the greater Duty before the leſſer, did well, *1 Sam. 19. 3.* So we owing a greater Duty to our Country, than to our natural Kindred, muſt rather reſuſe to relieve them, if they be Traitors, than ſuffer any hurt to come to our Country.

*But what if two have need of that which I can give but to one only?*

I muſt then prefer thoſe that be of the Houſhold of Faith before others, (*Gal. 6. 10.*) and my Kinſmen, and thoſe that I am tyed unto by a ſpecial Bond, before Strangers. *Joh. 1. 41. Act. 10. 24.*

*What are we ſpecially forbidden to do by the Commandments of the ſecond Table?*

To do any thing that may hinder our Neighbours *Dignity*, in the fifth; *Life*, in the ſixth; *Chafteity*, in the ſeventh; *Wealth*, in the eighth; or *good Name*, in the ninth; though it be but in the ſecret motions and thoughts of the Heart, unto which we give no liking nor conſent: for unto that alſo the laſt Commandment doth reach.

*How are theſe ſix Commandments of the ſecond Table divided?*

Into ſuch as forbid all practice or adviſed conſent to any hurt of our Neighbours; and ſuch as forbid all thoughts and motions of evil towards our Neighbour, though they never come to adviſed conſent of the Will. The firſt five Commandments do concern ſuch things as come unto conſent, and further; the laſt, ſuch as come not unto conſent at all.

Division of the ſecond Table.

*How are thoſe five Commandments of the firſt ſort divided?*

Into thoſe that concern ſpecial Duties to ſpecial Perſons; and thoſe that concern general Duties to all. Thoſe Duties which concern ſpecial Perſons, are commanded in the firſt: thoſe that generally concern all Men, either in their *Life*, *Chafteity*, *Goods*, or *good Name*, are enjoined in the four Commandments following.

*What gather you hence?*

That we are to diſtinguiſh between Duties and Duties, and Sin and Sin, done towards Men; and that to offend principal Perſons, and ſuch unto whom we are in ſpecial manner obliged, is a greater ſin; becauſe God hath ſingled out this one Commandment for theſe Perſons.

*What are the words of this Commandment, which is the fifth in order?*

**Honour thy Father and thy Mother, that thy days may be long upon the Land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.** The fifth Commandment.  
Exod. 20. 12.

*What is to be conſidered in theſe words?*

1. The Commandment.
2. The Reason.

*What is the meaning and ſcope of the Commandment?*

That the quality of Mens Perſons and Places, in whatſoever eſtate, Natural, Civil,

The meaning and scope of the fifth Commandment.

Civil, or Ecclesiastical, and with whatsoever relation to us, be duly acknowledged and respected. For it requireth the performance of all such Duties as one Man oweth unto another, by some particular bond; in regard of special callings and differences, which God hath made between special Persons.

*What be these special Persons?*

Either *Inequals*, as *Superiors and Inferiors*; or *Equals*: For this Commandment enjoyneth all due carriage of *Inferiors* to their *Superiors*; and by consequent also of *Superiors* to their *Inferiors*; and likewise by analogy of *Equals* among themselves; under the sweet relation betwixt Parents and Children, or betwixt Brethren of the same Family, and the general duty of Honour.

*Who are Equals?*

They that be equal in Gifts, either of Nature or Industry; as Brethren in a Family, Citizens in a Common-Wealth, Pastors in a Church, &c.

*What is required of Equals?*

The Duty of Equals.

That they live equall amongst themselves; loving one another and affording due respect to each other, *Rom. 12. 10.* That they live together sociably, and comfortably; preferring each other before themselves; and striving to go one before another in giving honour, *1 Pet. 2. 17.* and *5. 5. Ephes. 5. 21. Phil. 2. 3.* That they be faithful one to another: and Friends, be secret.

*What is here forbidden?*

Want of love; incivility, strife, and vain-glory; whereby they seek to advance themselves one above another, and to exalt themselves above their Fellows, *Phil. 2. 3. Mat. 23. 6.*

*Who are Superiors?*

Who are Superiors.

They be such as by God's Ordinance have any preeminence, preferment or excellency above others: and are here termed by the Name of Parents, (*2 Kings 2. 12. & 5. 13. & 6. 21. & 13. 14. 1 Cor. 4. 15. Col. 3. 22.*) to whom the first and principal Duties required in this Commandment do appertain, *Ephes. 6. 1, 2.*

*Why are all Superiors called here by the name of Parents?*

1. For that the Name of Parents being a most sweet and loving Name, Men might thereby be allured the rather to the Duties they owe; whether they be Duties that are to be performed to them, or which they should perform to their Inferiors.

2. For that at the first, and in the beginning of the World, Parents were also Magistrates, Pastors, School-Masters, &c.

*How doth this agree with the Commandment of Christ, (Matth. 23. 8, 9. 10.) that we should call no Man Father or A'fter upon Earth?*

Very well. For these our Saviour meaneth only, to refrain the ambitious Titles of the Pharisees in those days, who desired not only so to be called, but that Men should rest in their Authority alone, for matters concerning the Soul.

*Who are Inferiors, comprehended here under the Name of Children?*

Who are Inferiors.

Such as (by the Ordinance of God) are any way under Superiors; and who are principally and in the first place, to perform the Duties required in this Commandment.

*What is the Commandment conceived in the Name of Inferiors?*

Because the Duties are hardest obeyed in all estates.

*What is here contained under the Name of Honour?*

Not only Cap and Knee, but every particular Duty, according to their particular Estates, *Mal. 1. 6.*

*Why are these Duties comprehended under the word Honour?*

Because it adds an Ornament and Dignity unto them.

*What is the Honour that all Inferiors owe to all Superiors in general?*

First, Reverence in Heart, Word, and Behaviour, *Levit. 19. 3. Ephes. 6.* What it is to our, or outward submission; as of rising before them, and of giving them the honour of speaking first, &c. *Levit. 19. 32. Job. 29. 8. & 32. 6, 7.*

2. Obedience to their Counsels:

3. Prayer to God for them, with giving of thanks, *1 Tim. 2. 1, 2.*

4. Imitation of their Virtues and Graces, *2 Tim. 1. 5. Phil. 4. 9.*

*What contrary sins are here forbidden?*

1. Want of reverence, inward or outward.

2. Despising of Superiors, *Jude v. 8, 9, 10. Prov. 30. 11.*

3. Neglect of Prayer, and other Duties.

*What is the Duty of all Superiors toward their Inferiors?*

That they answerably afford unto them love, blessing according to the power they receive from God, (*Heb. 7. 7. & 11. 20. Gen. 9. 25, 26, 27.*) good example for their Imitation, (*Tit. 2. 7.*) and that they so carry themselves, as that they may be worthy the honour that is given them, *Ephes. 6. 4, 9. &c.*

*What are the contrary Vices?*

Want of Love, failing in Prayer, and in giving good example; dishonouring their places, by unseemly and indiscreet carriage, *Tit. 2. 15. 1 Sam. 2. 23.*

*How many sorts of Superiors are there?*

Two: without Authority, and with Authority.

*Who are Superiors without Authority?*

Such as God hath by Age only, or by some super eminent Gifts, lifted above others: whether they be of the Body, as Strength and Beauty; or of the Mind, as Wit and Learning, (which are most to be honoured;) or of outward State, as Wealth, (*1 Sam. 25. 8.*) and Nobility in which respect, although Brethren be equal, yet by Age the elder is Superior to the younger: and the Man in regard of his Sex is above the Woman: and he that is skilful, before him that hath no skill.

*Who are Inferiors to such?*

They who are younger, and of meaner Gifts, whether of Nature or of Grace, or of such as are gotten by Exercise.

*What is our Duty towards such Superiors?*

To acknowledg the things wherein God hath preferred them before us, and to respect and regard them according to their Graces and Gifts.

*What is the Duty of them that are Superiors in years?*

They are by grave, wise, and godly carriage of themselves, to procure reverence unto themselves: on one side avoiding lightness and variableness, on Aged Persons, the other, too much feverishness and austerity.

*What are the Duties to be performed towards Aged Persons?*

To rise up before the Hoary Head, and honour the Person of the Aged, (*Levit. 19. 32.*) to give them the way, &c. in regard their Age is honourable. Yet Men that have a place of preeminency given them of the Lord, may keep their places.

*What is the contrary sin forbidden?*

Despising or disregarding of the Aged.

*What is the Duty of such as are our Superiors in Knowledge and other Graces?*

To use their skill and other Graces so, as others may be benefited by them.

*What is our Duty towards them?*

To give them the due approbation; to wait for their words, and give ear unto their Speeches, (*Job* 32. 11, 16.) as being wiser than our selves: to profit by their Gifts, and to make our benefit of their good Graces, so far as our Calling will suffer.

*What is the contrary sin?*

Not acknowledging, nor reverencing, nor imitating the Graces of their Superiors.

*Who are the Superiors with Authority?*

Such as by special Office and Calling have charge over others.

*What are the Inferiors?*

Such as be committed unto their charge.

*What general duty is there between the Superiors and Inferiors of this sort?*

To pray more especially one for another. *1 Tim.* 2. 1. *Psal.* 20, and 21. *Gen.* 24. 12. *Psal.* 3. 8. and 25. 22. & 28. 9.

*What is required of the Inferiors?*

Besides thankfulness and fidelity, (*Tit.* 2. 10.) there is specially required *Subjection* and *Obedience*, *Rom.* 13. 1.

*What is Subjection?*

An humble and a ready mind to submit our selves to their Government who are set over us; in acknowledging the necessity of their power in governing us, *Rom.* 13. 1. *Tit.* 3. 1. *1 Tim.* 6. 1.

*What is Obedience?*

A voluntary and hearty doing of that which the Superiors command, (*Eph.* 6. 1, 5, 6, 7. *Col.* 3. 20. *Heb.* 13. 7.) or patient suffering of that they shall inflict upon them; albeit it should be either without just cause, or somewhat more excessively than the cause requireth. *Heb.* 12. 9, 10. *1 Pet.* 2. 19, 20.

*Is there no restraint of this Obedience?*

None, saving that which we owe unto God; in regard whereof, our Obedience to them must be *in the Lord*, that is, only in lawful things: otherwise we are with reverence to refuse and alledg our duty unto God for our Warrant, *Ephes.* 5. 24. and 6. 1. *1 Sam.* 22. 17.

*What contrary sins are here condemned?*

Disobedience: and neglect of humble submission to our Superiors Commandments, and Corrections, *Rom.* 1. 30. *Judg.* 8. 6, 8, 9.

*What is the duty of Superiors in Authority towards their Inferiors;*

To protect and support such as are committed unto them, (*Eph.* 5. 23. *Rom.* 13. 4.) to provide good things for the Body and the Soul, (*Mat.* 7. 9, 10.) to command things that are good and profitable for the Inferiors; governing them prudently, and after an holy manner. Not as Tyrants, but as those which have a Governour above them, to whom they shall give an account, (*Ephes.* 6. 9.) and as those who rule over such as have a Title unto, and shall be partakers of, the same Glory, which themselves look for, *1 Pet.* 3. 7.

*In what things doth this Government consist?*

In two: Direction, and Recompence or Reward.

*Wherein consisteth Direction?*

In Word, and in Deed.

*What must be done by Word?*

They must instruct and command them in the things which pertain to God, and to their special Callings, *Ephes.* 6. 4. *Gen.* 18. 19.

*Must every Superior in Authority, be careful for the instruction of those that be under him, in the things of God?*

Yes

Yes verily: and herein God hath declared his singular care of the everlasting good of Men, who hath therefore commended the care of Religion to so many, to the end they might be so much the more assuredly kept in the fear of God.

*What is Direction by Deed?*

Good example; whereby in their Life, Conversation, and Experience, they are to go before their Inferiors, that thereby they may be provoked to follow them.

*What is Recompence?*

It is either a cheerful reward for Well-doing, or a just chastisement for Evil, both which should be answerable in proportion to the deed done.

*What is the sin contrary hereunto?*

Abuse of this Authority, through too much lenity, (1 Sam. 2. 23, &c.) or severity, (Ephes. 6. 4, 9.)

*How many kinds of Superiors are there with Authority?*

Two: Private and Publick; and consequently so many Inferiors.

*Who are private Superiors, and Inferiors?*

They are either in the Family, or in the Schools.

*What is the duty of Superiors in a Family?*

1. To provide for the Household the things belonging to their Soul, by a familiar catechising and examination; and to go before them in Prayer accordingly; the Householder being therein to be the Mouth of his Family.

2. To provide the Necessaries belonging to this present Life; as Food and Rayment, both sufficient and agreeable to every ones place and estate, (Gen. 18. 6, 7, 8. Prov. 27. 23, 24, 25. & 31. 15. 1 Tim. 5. 8.) with convenient Government.

*What is the duty of Inferiors in a Family?*

To submit themselves to the Order of the House: and according to their Places and Gifts, to perform that which is commanded by the Governors thereof, for the good of the Household, Gen. 39. 2, 3, 4.

*What are the differences of Superiors and Inferiors in a Family?*

They are either natural, as Husband and Wife, Parents and Children: or otherwise, as Masters and Servants, Ephes. 5. & 6. Col. 3. & 4.

*What are the common duties of the Husband and Wife each to other?*

Mutual and conjugal love one towards another: yet so, as the Word presseth love at the Husband's Hands more than at the Wives; because Men are commonly more thort of that Duty, Ephes. 5. 25.

*Wherein must this Conjugal Love be declared?*

1. By mutual help, Gen. 2. 18.  
2. By due benevolence, (1 Cor. 7. 3.) except by consent for a time, that they may give themselves to Fasting and Prayer, 1 Cor. 7. 5. 2 Sam. 11. 11.

*What are the sins common to the Husband and the Wife?*

1. Want of Love.
2. Bewraying one anothers Infirmities.
3. Discovering each others Secrets.
4. Jealousie.
5. Contention.

*What is the duty of the Husband towards his Wife?*

1. An entire love unto her, to cherish her, as he would cherish his own Flesh, and as Christ doth his Church, Ephes. 5.  
2. To provide for her that which is meet and comely during his Life: and then also that she may be provided for after his Death, if it so fall out.  
3. To protect her, and defend her from all Evil.

·Kinds of Superiors in Authority.

Superiors in the Family, and their Duties.

Inferiors to the Family, and their Duties

Duties of Husbands and Wives.

Duties of the Husband.

4. To

4. To dwell with her, as one of Knowledge, 1 *Pet.* 3. 7.
5. To give honour to her, as the weaker Vessel, (*Ibid.*) that is, to bear with her infirmities.

6. To govern and direct her.

*What be the special sins of the Husband?*

1. Not dwelling with his Wife.
2. Neglect of edifying her by Instruction and Example.
3. Denying her comfortable Maintenance, and Employment.

*What is the Duty of the Wife to the Husband?*

1. Subjection, in a gentle and moderate kind and manner, *Eph.* 5. 22. For albeit it be made heavier than it was from the beginning, through the transgressions: yet that Yoak is easier than any other domestical subjection.

2. Obedience: wherein Wives are oft short, as Husbands in Love, *Ephes.* 5.

33. 1 *Pet.* 3. 1 — 6.

3. She must represent (in all Godly and commendable Matters) his Image in her behaviour, that in her a Man may see the wisdom and uprightness of her Husband, 1 *Cor.* 11. 7.

4. She must be an helper unto him, (*Gen.* 2. 18.) as otherwise, so by saving that which he bringeth in, *Prov.* 31. 11, 12. 1 *Tim.* 3. 11.

Finally, She must recompence her Husbands care over her, in providing things necessary for her Household; and do good for her Husband all the days of her Life, (*Prov.* 31. 12.) that so he may be unto her, as it were, a veil and covering before her eyes, *Gen.* 20. 16.

*What be the sins of the Wife, in respect of her Husband?*

1. Failing in reverence: which appeareth in froward looks, speeches, or behaviour.

2. Disobedience in the smallest Matters.

3. Disregarded of her Husband's Profit.

*What Duties come in the next place to be considered?*

Those of Natural Parents, who are specially mentioned in this Commandment: whereunto also are to be reduced all in the right Line ascending, and their Collaterals; as also Fathers in Law, and Mothers in Law.

*What are the Duties of Natural Parents towards their Children?*

They are either common to both Parents, or in particular to either of them.

*What are the common Duties of both of Parents?*

They do either respect the things of this Life, or of that which is to come.

*What care are they to have of the Souls of their Children, to fit them for the Life to come?*

1. To make them Members of the Visible Church by Baptism.
2. They are to catechise and instruct them in Religion, as they are able to receive it: and to bring them up in *nurture and the fear of God*, *Ephes.* 6. 4.
3. They are to pray to God to bless them, and guide them in his Fear.

*What is required of them for the things of this Life?*

1. To mark the wits and inclinations of their Children; and as far as their own ability will reach to apply them accordingly, in due time, to some good, honest, and godly Calling: that so being trained up in such a Trade as they are fittest for, they may not afterwards live idly without any Calling, *Gen.* 4.

2. *Prov.* 20. 11. & 22. 6.

2. To provide for them a Godly Marriage (if it please God) in time convenient, 1 *Cor.* 7. 36.

3. Not only to maintain them, during their abiding in their House, but also

Duties of the Wife.

Duties of Parents.

also to lay up and provide somewhat for them, that they may live honestly afterward. And therefore are they to distribute their Goods among their Children: and what they have received from their Ancestors, to leave the same (whereit may be done lawfully) to their Posterity, 2 Cor. 12. 24. 2 Chron. 21. 3. Prov. 19. 14.

*What special regard is here to be had by Parents to the Eldest Son?*

That since God hath honoured him with that dignity, as to be their strength, (Gen. 49. 3.) he should also be honoured by them (at the least) with a double portion, (Deut. 21. 17.) as by the rest of the Brethren, with honour: yet so, as he fall not from his honour by some horrible sin, Gen. 49. 4.

*What be the common sins of Parents?*

1. Negligence in not instructing their Children betime.
2. Not correcting them till it be too late: or doing it with bitterness, without Compassion, Instruction, and Prayer.
3. Giving them ill example.
4. Neglect of bringing them up in some lawful Calling.
5. Not bestowing them timely, and religiously in Marriage.
6. Light behaviour before them, and too much familiarity with them; whereby they become vile in their eyes.
7. Loving beauty, or any outward parts, more than God's Image in them.

*What is required of the Father in particular;*

To give the name unto the Child, Gen. 35. 18. Luke 1. 62, 63. For notwithstanding the Mothers having sometimes given the Name, yet that hath been by the Father's permission.

*What special Duty is laid upon the Mother?*

To nurse the Child if she be able, Gen. 21. 7. 1 Sam. 1. 23. Lam. 4. 3, 4. 1 Theff. 2. 7, 8. 1 Tim. 2. 15. & 5. 10.

*So much of the Duty of Parents to their Children. What is the Duty of Children to their Parents?*

It is either general or special, viz. in the case of Marriage.

*What are the general Duties?*

1. To reverence them: and to perform careful obedience to them in all things that they command: by the example of our Saviour, who was subject to his Parents, Luke. 2. 51.
2. To pray for them.
3. So to carry themselves, while they are under their Parents tuition, and after they are departed from them, as they may cause their Parents (in their good bringing up) to be commended, Prov. 10. 1. & 17. 25. & 31. 28.
4. To be an aid unto them, as well as they be able, and to help them with their Bodies, when they are in distress, Ruth. 1. 16. & 2. 17, 18.
5. To repay their Parents care over them, by being ready to relieve them, if they stand in need of relief, and want any thing wherewith God hath blessed them, 1 Tim. 5. 4. Gen. 45. 11. & 47. 12.

*What be the contrary sins of Children, in respect of their Parents?*

1. Disobedience.
2. Murmuring at their Parents Chastisements.
3. Contemning them for any default of Body or Mind.
4. Unthankfulness, in not relieving them, not standing for their deserved credit, &c.

*What is the special Duty of Children to their Parents, in case of Marriage?*

That they ought not so much as or attempt to bestow themselves in Marriage, without

Duties of Children towards their Parents.

without their Parents direction and consent; especially Daughters, *Gen. 24* & *21. 21. & 27. 46. & 28. 9. Judg. 14. 2. 1 Cor. 7. 36, 37, 38.*

*What Reason have you to persuade Children to this Duty?*

That seeing their Parents have taken such great pains and travel in bringing them up, they should reap some Fruits of their Labours in bestowing of them. Besides, they should give them this honour, to esteem them better able, and more wise to provide for their comfortable Marriage, than themselves are.

*Is this Duty required only of Children to their Natural Parents that begat them?*

No: It is also in some degree required of Children to their Uncles and Aunts; or to any other under whom they are, and that be instead of Parents unto them, when their Parents are dead, *Esther 2. 10, 20. Ruth. 2. 18, 23.*

*What is the Duty of Masters towards their Servants?*

Duties of Masters towards their Servants.

1. To deal honestly and justly with them, leaving off threatening; remembering they have a Master in Heaven, *Col. 4. 1. Ephes. 6. 9.*
2. To have a care to instruct and catechise them, and to teach them the Fear of the Lord.
3. To teach them their Trades and Occupations; that they may be bettered for being in their Family.
4. To allow them that fit Wages which they have covenanted with them for; that they may live honestly: for the Labourer must have his Hire.
5. To reward them plentifully, and to recompence their Service when they part from them; according as the Lord hath blessed them by their Labour, *Deut. 15. 13, 14. & 24. 14, 15.*

*What are the sins of Masters?*

1. Unadvised entertainment of sinful Servants.
2. Negligence in not instructing them, (in the Fear of God, and in some lawful Calling) and not using Religious Exercises with them.
3. Not admonishing nor correcting them, or doing it in an ill manner: grieving more when they fail in their Business, than when they are slack in God's Service.
4. Giving them ill example, and using light behaviour before them.
5. Detaining their Wages from them; and not recompencing their Labours, by giving them a due reward, when they are with them, and when they part from them.
6. Neglect of them in Sicknes: unjust stopping of their Wages for that time.
7. Not relieving them (if they be able) in their Age, who have spent their youth in their Service.

*What is the Duty of Servants to their Masters?*

Duties of Servants towards their Masters.

1. To reverence and obey them in all things agreeable to the Word.
2. To pray for them, that God would guide their Hearts.
3. To learn all good things from them.
4. To be faithful, and not prodigal in spending their Goods.
5. With care and faithfulness (as in the presence of God) to bestow themselves wholly (at the times appointed) in their Master's business; doing their Work, not only faithfully and with a single eye, but also diligently, *Gen. 24. 10, 11, &c. Ephes. 6. 5, 6, 7.*

*What are the sins of Servants, in respect of their Governors?*

1. Contempt and Disobedience.
2. Murmuring at their Corrections, though justly deserved.
3. Idleness in their Calling.
4. Unchristianity and unfaithfulness in dealing with their Master's Goods and Affairs.

5. Stealing.



5. Stealing, and privy defrauding of them.

6. Eye-service, *Ephes. 6. 6.*

*Who are Superiors and Inferiors in the Schools?*

Tutors and School Masters are the Superiors; Pupils and Scholars the Inferiors. Whose Duties are to be gathered by proportion out of those of Fathers and Children, Masters and Servants, in the Family.

*Hitherto of Superiors and Inferiors, which are more Private. Who are the Publick?*

Such as Govern and are governed in Church and Common-Wealth.

*What is the Duty of Superiors?*

To procure the common good of those of whom they have received the charge; forgetting (to that end) themselves, and their own private good, so oft as need shall require, *Exod. 18. 13. 2 Sam. 24. 17. Mar. 1. 2. 1 Thess. 2. 7, 8, 11.* Publick Superiors, and their Duties.

*What is the Duty of Inferiors to their publick Superiors?*

To minister Charges, and other things necessary for the execution of their Offices; and to their Power to defend them in the same, *Rom. 13. 6, 7. Gal. 6. 6.*

*1 Tim. 5. 17, 18. 1 Cor. 9. 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 13.*

*How many sorts be there of Publick Superiors?*

Two: Ecclesiastical, and Civil. The former whereof are (as it were) Divine, the other are called Humane Creatures, *2 Kings 2. 3. 1 Tim. 2. 2. 1 Pet. 2. 13, 14.* The sorts of publick Superiors.

*Why do you call the Ministers of the Church Divine Creatures?*

Because they are precisely in their Kinds, Number, and Order, set down in the Word of God.

*Why call you the other Humane Creatures?*

Because, notwithstanding they are appointed of God, and such as without them, neither Church nor Common-Wealth can stand; yet are not their Kinds, and Number, and Order so appointed of God, but that Men may make more or fewer, of greater authority or less; according as the occasion of Places, Times, or the dispositions of People do require.

*Who are the Superiors in the Church?*

All Ecclesiastical Governours, and Ministers of the Word—especially. *1 Tim. 5. 17.* Superiors in the Church their duties.

*Who are under their Government?*

All Christians, and professors of Religion.

*What is the Ministers duty to the People?*

1. To be faithful and painful in dispensing to them the will of God (and not their own fancies; or the inventions of men:) instructing them sincerely in the way of Salvation, and breaking unto them the daily bread of life.

*2 Tim. 4. 1, 2. Act. 20. 26.*

2. To comfort and strengthen the weak.

3. To be an example unto all in life and conversation. *1 Tim. 4. 12.*

*What be the sins of Ministers?*

1. Slackness in preaching.

2. Unprofitable or hurtful teaching.

3. Giving ill Example.

*What is the duty of the people to their Ministers?*

1. To hear them willingly. *Mat. 10. 14.*

2. To Submit themselves to all that they shall plainly and directly teach them out of the Word of God, *Heb. 13. 7, 17.* The peoples duty to their Ministers.

3. Frankly and freely to make provision for them, that there be no want.

*Gal. 6. 6. 1 Tim. 5. 17, 18. 1 Cor. 9. 4, 5, &c.*

*What*

*What be the sins of the people in regard of their Ministers?*

1. Disobeying and opposing against their Doctrine.
2. Denying them competent maintenance.
3. Not standing for them when they are wronged.

*Who are Superiors in the common-wealth?*

Superiors in  
the Common-  
wealth.

All civil Magistrates: Whether they be *Supream*, as Emperors and Kings, or *Inferiour* Governours under them. *1 Pet. 2. 13, 14.* Whereunto are to be referred, the General in the Field, and Captains in War: As also in Courts, Advocates are Fathers to their Clients.

*Who are under the Government of the Civil Magistrates?*

All persons and subjects in the Realm, City or State, where they are Governours, *Rom. 13. 1.*

*What are the duties of Kings and inferiour Magistrates in the Common-wealth?*

They are two-fold. First in respect of God's matters. Secondly in regard of civil affairs. *1 Tim. 2. 1, 2.* The former whereof regardeth the good of the souls, the latter of the bodies of their subjects.

*What is the civil Magistrate to do in God's matters, and for the souls of the subjects?*

1. He should pray for them, that God would make their hearts obedient unto him.
2. He should see that God be honoured in his dominions: That abuses in Religion be reformed, and the truth promoted and maintained, After the example of *David, Solomon, Hezekiah, Josias,* and other good Kings. *2 Chron. 14. 3, 4. & 15. 12, 15. & 17. 6, 9.*
3. He should plant the sincere preaching of the word among his subjects; that so they may be more obedient unto him: and take care that the good things already taught and established may be done as *God* hath appointed. He is not to make new Laws of his own for Religion; but to see those ordinances of Religion which are grounded upon the word of God, duly established and practised: That so *God* may be truly served and glorified, and the Churches within his Realms, and under his government, may under him lead a quiet and peaceable Life, in all godliness and honesty, *2 Tim. 2. 2.* For he who neglecteth this duty to God, shall never perform his duty to men; how politick soever he seem to be.

*What is the Magistrate specially to perform, in respect of civil affairs?*

The Magi-  
strates duty in  
civil affairs.

1. He must look to the peace of the Common-Wealth, over which he is set: (*1 Tim. 2. 2.*) defending his subjects from their Enemies, and preferring their lives in War and Peace; by suppressing Murderers, Robbers, and all outrageous persons.
2. He must not only maintain *Peace*, but also *Honesty*. That by him we may not only lead a *peaceable* life, but also an *honest*. *1 Tim. 2. 2.* Where specially he is to provide; that all uncleanness be removed.
3. He must see that Justice be duly executed: (*Psal. 72. 24.*) and that the Ministers thereof give judgment speedily in matters belonging to their judgment.
4. He must take order, that every man may enjoy his own. *Psal. 72. 4.*
5. He must cherish the good, and discountenance the bad: and take order that malefactors may be punished, and well-doers may be encouraged. *Psal. 72. 4, 7. Rom. 13. 3, 4.*

*What*

*What is the sin of Magistrates?*

Carelessness in performing those former duties.

*What is the duty of Subjects to their Magistrates?*

1. To pray for them, that God would rule their hearts by his holy Spirit, that under them we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty. The duties of Subjects towards their Magistrates.

1 Tim. 2. 1, 2.

2. To help them with our goods: Paying willingly all customs, Taxes, and Tribute due to them. *Mat.* 22. 17, 21. *Rom.* 13. 6, 7. which condemneth the Popish Clergy, that detract this Tribute.

3. To Adventure our lives for them, in War and Peace. *2 Sam.* 21. 16, 17. & 23, 15. 16.

4. When they do us wrong, not to rebel, but endure it patiently. For it is better to suffer for well-doing, than for evil.

5. To be obedient and dutiful unto them, and to obey their Laws in the Lord.

*Do their Laws bind the Conscience?*

As far as they are agreeable with the laws of God, they do: But otherwise they do not. For there is but *one Lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy.* *Jam.* 4. 12.

*What learn you out of the former?*

That Drunkards, Thieves, Murderers, &c. break both this Commandment, and that other under which those sins are principally contained.

*What out of the Latter?*

That the Papists are to be condemned, who hold that the Popes Laws do bind the conscience.

*What be the sins of subjects?*

1. Disobedience, and Rebellion.

2. Refusing and repining to pay dues.

*Hitherto of the duties of Superiours, Inferiours, and Equals. Shew now what are the helps of the obedience of this Commandment?*

They are either common to all; or proper to Inferiours and Superiours.

Of the help and means enabling us to keep this fifth Commandment.

*What is common to all?*

There must be endeavour to nourish and increase natural affection, (*Rom.* 12. 10.) Humility, (*Rom.* 12. 16.) and Wisdom to discern what is fitting for our own and other places. *Rom.* 13. 7.

*What is proper to the Inferiour?*

He must see God in the place and authority of his Superiours: (*Rom.* 13. 1, 2.) setting before his eyes the dreadful threatenings, and examples of God's vengeance on the seditious and disobedient. *Ecc.* 10. 8, 20. *Prov.* 24. 21, 22.

*What is proper to the Superiour?*

He must be the same to his Inferiour, that he would have Christ to be unto himself: (*Eph.* 6. 9.) remembering the Tragical ends of Tyrants and Usurpers.

*What hindrances of these duties are to be avoided?*

1. Self-Love: Which maketh men unfit, either to rule or to obey. *1 Tim.* Hindrances to these duties here commanded.
2. Partial inquiry into the duties of others towards us; joyned for the most part, with the neglect of our own. *Ecc.* 7. 23, 24.
3. The fury of the Anabaptists.
4. The company of seditious persons, and despisers of government, *Prov.* 24. 25, 22.

*What:*

*What is the reason annexed to this Commandment?*

Of the reason annexed to the fifth Commandment.

**That thy days may be prolonged, and that it may go well with thee, in the Land which the Lord thy God giveth thee. D. 5. 16.**

*What is taught in this reason?*

That God moveth the hearts of Superiours to promote the good estate of Inferiours: (for so also do the words sound, *Exod. 20. 12. that they may prolong thy days:*) besides the providence of God to the obedient, which is far above all experience of mens provision.

*What is the sum of this promise?*

The blessing of *long life and prosperity*, to such as, by keeping this Commandment, shall shew that they regard the Image and Ordinance of God. (*Ephes. 6. 1, 2, 3. Rom 13. 1, 2.*)

*Have not the other Commandments this promise?*

No, not expressly: Which sheweth, that a more plentiful blessing in this kind followeth from the obedience of this Commandment, than of the other that follow. Hence it is called by the Apostle, *the first Commandment with promise: Ephes. 6. 2.* it being the first in order of the second Table, and the only Commandment of that Table that hath an express promise; and the only Commandment of the ten, that hath a particular promise.

*But how is this promise truly performed; seeing some wicked men live long, and the godly are taken away in the midst of their time?*

Of the promise of long life, and how performed.

The Lord performeth all temporal promises, so far forth as it is good for us: and therefore, the godly are sure to live so long as it shall serve for God's glory, and for their own good; but the wicked, live to their further condemnation. *Isa. 65. 20.*

2. It is enough that the promises of this life be performed for the most part.

3. What loseth the obedient Child, and what injury is done unto him who being taken out of this Life, is recompensed with a better? Or what breach of promise is in him, that promiseth Silver and payeth with Gold, and that in greater weight and quantity? As for the wicked, they gain nothing by their long life, receiving (by means thereof) greater judgment in Hell.

*Doth not the Lord oftentimes revenge the breach of this Commandment, even in this life?*

Yes: 1. Upon the Parents, who having been ungracious themselves, in giving unto them ungracious and disobedient Children.

2. Upon the Children themselves; who are sometimes immediately stricken from Heaven, and sometimes punished by the hand of the Magistrate.

*So much of the fifth Commandment concerning all special duties, to special persons. What are the general duties, in the Commandments following, which come at least to consent;*

They are either such as concern the person it self of our Neighbour in the sixth: or such as concern the things that belong to his person; as his *Chastity* in the seventh, his *goods* in the eighth, and his *good name* in the ninth Commandment.

*What are the words of the sixth Commandment?*

The sixth Commandment.

**Thou shalt not murder. Exod. 20. 13.**

*What*

*What is the sum and meaning of this Commandment?*

That the life and person of man (as bearing the Image of God) be by man not impeached but preserved. (*Gen. 9. 5.*) and therefore that we are not to hurt our own persons, or the person of our Neighbour, but to procure the safety thereof; and to do those things that lye in us, for the preservation of his and our life and health. *1 Tim. 5. 23.*

The sum and meaning of the sixth commandment.

*What is forbidden in this Commandment?*

All kind of evil tending to the impeachment of the safety and health of mans person: with every hurt done, threatned, or intended, to the soul or body, either of our selves or of our neighbours.

The negative part.

*What is required in this Commandment?*

All kind of good tending to the preservation of the welfare of mans person: that we love and cherish both the soul and body of our Neighbour; as we would and ought to do our own. *Heb. 3. 13. Jam. 1. 27. Phil. 2. 12. Eph. 5. 29.* For some of the duties here enjoyned concern our own persons, some the person of our neighbour.

The affirmative part.

*What be those duties that do concern our own persons?*

They are either such as ought to be performed by us in our own life time, or when we are ready to depart out of this World.

The duties respecting our own persons.

*What are the duties we are to perform towards our own persons in our lifetime?*

They respect either the welfare of our Souls or of our bodies.

*What are the duties that respect the welfare of our Souls?*

1. To use the means of Grace. *1 Per. 2. 2.*
  2. With diligence to finish our salvation (*Phil. 2. 12.*) and to make our election sure by the fruits of faith. *2 Per. 1. 10.*
  3. To reject evil counsel and approve that which is good. *Psal. 1. 1. Prov. 1. 10. 15.*
  4. To imitate the example of good men, and not to take scandals given by others.
  5. To follow our Vocation dliigently.
- Duties respecting our souls.

*What be the contrary vices forbidden?*

1. Cruelty to our own souls: by  
 1. Rejecting the food of spiritual life; by not hearing, (*Prov. 28. 9.*) or not obeying the word. *Jam. 1. 22.*
  2. Corrupting or perverting it, by itching ears. *2 Tim. 4. 3.* or unstable minds. *2 Per. 3. 16.*
  3. Want of knowledge: (*Prov. 4. 13. & 8. 35, 36. Hof. 4. 6.*) especially when people have had the ordinary means appointed of God for obtaining the same, either of their own, or of others, which they might have been partakers of.
  4. Sin, especially gross sins. (*Prov. 6. 32. & 8. 36*) and obstinacy in sinning. *Rom. 2. 5. Tit. 3. 11.*
  5. Following of evil counsel, and evil examples, and taking of scandals.
  6. Neglecting of our Vocation.
- The contrary vices forbidden.

*What be the things that respect the welfare of our Bodies?*

1. Sober and wholesom dyet. *1 Tim. 5. 23.*
  2. Help of Physick when need is: so that it be after we have first sought unto God. *2 Chron. 16. 12.*
  3. Using honest recreation, whereby health may be maintained. *Judg.*
- Duties respecting our bodies.

4. Preventing unnecessary dangers.
5. Giving place to the fury of another : as *Jacob* did to *Esau*, by his Mothers counsel. *Gen.* 27. 43, 44.

*What be the contrary sins forbidden?*

The contrary  
vices forbid-  
den.

1. Immoderate worldly sorrow: which (as the Apostle saith) *worketh death.* *2 Cor.* 7. 10.
2. Malice and envy, which maketh a man a murderer of himself, as well as of his Neighbours. For (as the Wife man noteth) *Envy is the rottedness of the bones.* *Prov.* 14. 30.
3. Neglect either of wholesom dyet, or of exercise and honest recreation, or of Physick to preserve or recover health: For we must not think that there are no more ways to kill a mans self, but with a knife, &c.
4. Drunkenness and surfeiting, eating and drinking out of time: (*Prov.* 25. 16 *Eccl.* 10. 16, 17.) or spending ones self by unchast behaviour. (*Prov.* 5. 11. and 6. 26. and 7. 22, 23.) All which are enemies to the health and life of man.
5. Lancing or whipping our own flesh; (*1 King.* 18. 28. *Col.* 2. 23. *Eph.* 5. 29.) as Idolaters use to do : or otherwise wounding our selves.
6. Capital crimes, *1 Kings* 2. 23.
7. Unnecessary dangers.
8. Not giving place to the fury of another.
9. Refusing the means of life.
10. Self murder. *1 Sam.* 31. 4. *2 Sam.* 17: 23. *Mat.* 27. 5. *Act.* 16. 27, 28.

*What are we to do at the time of our departure out of this life?*

Duties respect-  
ing the time  
of our depart-  
ure.

1. With willingness we must receive *the sentence of death*, when God shall utter it. *2 Cor.* 1. 9.
2. We must then resign our *charge* in Church, Common-wealth, or Family, into the hands of faithfulmen. *Nam.* 27. 16. *1 Chron.* 28. from 1 to 9.
3. We must resign our *soul* to God in Christ: (*Psal.* 31. 5.) with confidence of his *love*, though he kill us; (*Job.* 13. 15.) of the *remission* of our sins, and our *resurrection* unto immortality. *Job.* 19. 25, &c.
4. We must leave our body to the earth as a pledge, in time to be resumed: giving order for the comely and Christian burial thereof. *Gen.* 49. 29. *1 King* 13. 31.

*Hitherto of the duties that concern our own persons. What are they that do respect our neighbour?*

They likewise are to be performed unto him, either while he is alive, or after his death.

*What are the duties belonging to our Neighbour while he liveth?*

Duties respect-  
ing our  
neighbour  
while he liveth.  
Inward  
duties respect-  
ing our af-  
fections.

They are partly inward, partly outward.

*What are the inward?*

To love our neighbour as our selves, to think well of him, to be charitably affected towards him, and to study to do him good: In respect that we are all the creatures of one God, and the natural children of *Adam*. For which end we are to cherish all good affections in our hearts.

*What be those good affections here required?*

1. Humility and kindness, proceeding from a loving heart to man, as he is man. *Rom.* 12. 10. *Eph.* 4. 32.
2. A contentment to see our brother pass and exceed us in any outward or inward gifts or graces: with giving of thanks to God for endowing him with such gifts.

3. Compassion.

3. Compassion and fellow-feeling of his good and evil. *Rom.* 12. 15, 16. *Heb.* 13. 3. *2 Cor.* 11. 29.
4. Humility.
5. Meekness.
6. Patience, long-suffering and slowness to anger. *Ephesians* 4. 26. *1 Thes.*

7. Easiness to be reconciled, and to forgive the wrong done unto us. *Eph.* 4. 32.

8. A peaceable mind; careful to preserve and make peace. *Rom.* 12. 18. *1 Thes.* 5. 13. *Mat.* 5. 9.

*What is required for preservation of peace?*

1. Care of avoiding offences.
2. Construing things in the best sense. *1 Cor.* 13. 7.
3. Parting sometime with our own right. *Gen.* 13. 8, 9.
4. Passing by offences: and patiently suffering of injuries, lest they break out into greater mischiefs.

Duties respecting the preservation of peace.

*What are the inward vices here condemned?*

The consenting in heart to do our neighbour harm, with all passions of the mind which are contrary to the love we owe him.

*What be those evil passions?*

1. Anger, either rash or without cause; or passing measure, when the cause is just. *Mat.* 5. 21, 22. *Eph.* 4. 26, 31.
2. Hatred and malice: which is a murder in the mind. *1 Joh.* 3. 15.
3. Envy: whereby one hateth his brother (as *Cain* the murderer did) for some good that is in him. *Jan.* 3. 14. *Prov.* 14. 30. *1 Joh.* 3. 12.
4. Grudging and repining against our Brother, which is a branch of envy. *1 Tim.* 2. 8.

Evil passions opposite to these duties.

5. Unmercifulness, and want of compassion. *Rom.* 1. 31. *Amos* 6. 6.
6. Desire of revenge. *Rom.* 12. 19.
7. Cruelty. *Psal.* 5. 6. *Gen.* 49. 5, 7.
8. Pride: which is the mother of all contention. *Prov.* 13. 10.
9. Uncharitable suspicions, (*1 Cor.* 13. 5, 7. *1 Sam.* 1. 13, 14.) yet godly jealousy over another is good, if it be for a good cause.
10. Frowardness, and uneasiness to be intreated. *Rom.* 1. 31.

*What use are we to make of this?*

That we should kill such affections at the first rising; and pray to God against them

*So much of the inward. What are the outward?*

They respect, either the Soul principally; or the whole man, and the Body more specially.

*What duties are required of us for preservation of the Souls of our Neighbours?*

1. The ministring of the food of spiritual life. *Esa.* 62. 6. *1 Pet.* 5. 2. *Acts* 20. 28.
2. Giving good counsel, and encouraging unto well doing. *Heb.* 10. 24, 25.
3. Walking without offence: which the Magistrate ought to be careful of in the Common-wealth, the Minister in the Church, and every one in his calling. For the Rule of the Apostle reacheth to all: *Give none offence, neither to the Jews, nor to the Gentiles, nor to the Church of God.* *1 Cor.* 10. 32.
4. Giving good example, and thereby provoking one another to love and good works. *Mat.* 5. 16. *2 Cor.* 9. 2. *Heb.* 10. 24.

Outward duties respecting the souls of our Neighbours.

5. Reproving our Brothers sins, by seasonable admonition. *Levit. 19. 11*  
*1 Thes. 5. 14. Psal. 141. 5.*  
 6. Comforting the feeble minded, and supporting the weak. *1 Thes. 4. 28.*  
 & *5. 14.*

*What are the contrary vices here condemned?*

The contrary  
vices to the  
former  
duties.

1. When the food of spiritual life is with-holden. (*Prov. 29. 18. Amos 7. 13.*) which charge specially lieth upon such Ministers, as are either *Ignorant* shepherds and cannot: or *Idle*, and will not feed the flock committed to their charge, or for the most part neglect their own, and busie themselves elsewhere, without any necessary and lawful calling. *Ezek. 3. 18. and 13. 19. Jer. 48. 10. Esa. 56. 10. Act. 20. 26, 27, 28.*

2. When the Word is corrupted by erroneous, or vain and curious expositions. *1 Tim. 1. 4*

3. When Magistrates procure not, so much as in them lyeth, that the people under their government do frequent the hearing of the Word read and preached, and receiving of the Sacraments, in the appointed times.

4. When men command, or tempt others to things unlawful. *1 Kings 12. 28.*

5. When men give offence, either by evil example of life, (*Prov. 29. 12.*) or by unseasonable use of Christian liberty. *1 Cor. 8. 10, 11.*

6. When we rebuke not our neighbour, being in fault; but suffer him to sin. *Lev. 19. 17.*

7. When the blind lead the blind; (*Mat 15. 14.*) and those that be seduced, seduce others. *Mat. 23. 15. 2 Tim. 3. 13.*

*So much of that which concerneth the Soul of our Neighbour principally.*

*Wherein consisteth that, which respecteth his whole person, and his Body: more specially?*

In Gestures, Words and Deeds.

*What are required in our Gestures?*

Gestures.

A friendly countenance, (that we look cheerfully upon our Neighbours) and an amiable behaviour. *Phil. 4. 8. Jam. 3. 13.*

*What is here forbidden?*

All such Gestures as declare the scornfulness, anger, or hatred of the heart; with all froward and churlish behaviour. *1 Sam. 25. 17.* So that here is condemned, 1. A scornful look; and any disdainful sign, expressed by the gestures of the head, nose, tongue, finger, or any other member of our body: as nodding the head, putting out the tongue, pointing with the finger, and all manner of deriding of our neighbour. (*Mat. 27. 39. Gen. 21. 9. compared with Gal. 4. 29.*) 2. A louring countenance, (such as was in *Cain, Gen. 4. 5, 6.*) fawning, (*Psal. 110. 5.*) frowning, &c. which, as sparks, come from the fire of wrath and hatred.

*What doth this teach us?*

That we are to look to our very countenance, that it bewray not the filthiness of our hearts. For God hath so adorned the countenance and face of man, that in it may be seen the very affections of the heart. *1 Cor. 11. 7.*

*What is required in our words?*

Duties required in words.

That we salute our Neighbour gently, speak kindly, and use courteous and amiable speeches unto him, which (according to the Hebrew phrase) is called a speaking to the heart one of another. *Eph. 4. 32. Ruth. 2. 13.*

*What are the contrary vices here forbidden?*

The opposite  
vices.

1. Evil speaking of a brother; although the matter be not false in it self; when it is not done either to a right end, or in due time, or in a right manner.

2. Disdainful



2. Disdainful speaking, when words are contemptuously uttered, whether they carry with them any further signification or no. As to say Tush; or to call our Brother *Raca*, (*Mat. 5. 22.*) and such like.

3. Bitter and angry words, or speeches wrathfully uttered, by any evil or vile terms, as *Fool*, and such like. *Mat. 5. 22.*

4. Mockings, for some want of the body (*Lev. 19. 14.*) especially for piety. (*Gen. 21. 9. 2 Sam. 6. 20.*) instead that they ought to be an eye to the blind and a foot to the lame. (*Job. 29. 15.*) yet Gods children may sometimes use mocking in a godly manner: as *Elias* did to the Priests of *Baal*. *1 Kin. 18. 27.*

5. Grudgings, and complaints one of another. *Jam. 5. 9.*

6. Brawling, threatening, and provoking of others. *Tit. 3. 2.*

7. Crying: which is an unseemly lifting up of the voice. *Eph. 4. 31.*

8. Despightful words, reviling and cursed speaking. *Prov. 12. 18.* Yet men in authority may use such terms, as the sin of those with home they deal doth deserve.

*What use are you to make of all this?*

That according to the counsel of *St. Paul*, we see that *no corrupt communication proceed out of our mouth, but that which is good, to the use of edifying, that it may minister grace unto the hearers.* *Eph. 4. 29.* that our speech be always gracious, seasoned with salt, that we may know how we ought to answer every man. *Col. 4. 6.* For as flesh in the Summer, if it be not powdered with salt will smell: so it will be with them that have not their hearts seasoned with the word of truth. And thence for want of care, proceed angry, wrathful, and loathsome speeches against our brother: which are in the Scripture compared to Juniper coals, which burn most fiercely; (*Psal. 120. 4.*) or to the pricking of a sword, or a razor, which cutteth most sharply. (*Prov. 12. 18. Psal. 52. 2.*) Whereupon the tongue is by *St. James* said to be an unruly evil, set on fire of Hell. *Jam. 3. 6, 8.* We ought therefore to govern our tongues by the Word of God, and take heed of vile speeches.

*So much of our Gestures and Words. What is required in our Deeds?*

1. That we do good unto our Neighbour, so far as our power and calling will suffer. Duties required in our deeds.

2. That we visit and comfort him in sickness and affliction. *Mat. 25. 36.*

*Jam. 1. 27.*

3. That we give meat, drink, and cloth to the poor and needy.

4. That we give relief to the distressed, and succour to the oppressed.

*Job. 29. 15, &c.*

5. That we foresee and prevent mischiefs before they come.

6. That we rescue our Neighbour from danger, and defend him with our hands, if we can, if we may.

*What be the contrary sins forbidden?*

1. Oppression and cruelty, in withdrawing the means of life: (*Jam. 5. 4.*) as by usury, and by letting out of land so that men cannot live by it, &c. The contrary vices to the former duties.

2. Not looking unto the sick, and those that be in distress.

3. Neglect of Hospitality; especially to the poor, which by the commandment of God must be provided for.

4. Not preventing mischiefs and turning away strokes from our Neighbour, so much as in us lieth.

5. Extremity and cruelty in punishing: when the correction is excessive; (*Deut. 25. 3. 2 Cor. 11. 24.*) or is not inflicted in love of justice. *Deut. 16. 19,*

6. All angry and despiteful striking, how little soever it be.
7. Fighting, smiting, wounding, or maiming of the body of our brother or neighbour. *Jam.* 4. 1. *Lev.* 24. 19, 28.
8. The endangering or taking away of his life.

*How is this done ?*

Either directly, or indirectly.

*How indirectly ?*

How we do indirectly endanger our Neighbours life.

1. When one defendeth himself with injury, or purpose of revenge, or to hurt his adversary, and not only to save himself. *Rom.* 12. 21. *Exod.* 22. 2, 3.
2. When women with child, either by mid diet, or strein by reaching, violent exercise, riding by Coach or otherwife, and much more by dancing; either hurt the fruit of their womb, or altogether miscarry.
3. When children begotten in fornication or adultery, are committed to them to keep, which have no care of them.
4. When those to whom it appertaineth, do not punish the breach of this Commandment *Numb.* 35. 31, 32. *Prov.* 17. 15.
5. Keeping of harmful beasts, *Exod.* 21. 29.
6. All dangerous pastimes, &c.
7. When things are so made, that men may take harm by them; or much care is not had of them as ought to be. As when the high ways and Bridges are not mended: or when stairs are so made, that they are like to hurt either Children, Servants, or others: Or when Wells or Ditches (or any such like dangerous places) are not covered, or fenced. *Exo.* 21. 33. whereunto belongeth that the Lord commandeth the Israelites to have battlements upon their Houses. *Deut.* 22. 8.

*How directly ?*

How we do directly take away our neighbours life.

When a man (without a calling) doth actually take away the life of his Brother; (*Gen.* 9. 6.) otherwise then in case of publick justice, (*John* 7. 19.) just War, (*Deut.* 20. 12, 13.) or necessary defence. *Exo.* 22. 2.

*How many sorts of this direct killing are there ?*

Three

First, Chance-medly.

Secondly, Man-slaughter.

Thirdly, Wilful-murther.

*What is that which we call Chance-medly ?*

Chance-medly, and how proved to be a sin.

When it is simply against our will, and we think nothing of it: as he which felleth a Tree, and his Ax head falleth, and hurteth, and killeth a man. *Deut.* 19. 45. Which is the least sin of the three, and by mans Law deserveth not death: and therefore by the Law of *Moses*, in this case the benefit of sanctuary was granted. *Exod.* 21. 13.

*But how appeareth it to be a sin at all ?*

1. Because by the Law of *Moses*, the party that committed this fact, was to lose his liberty, until the death of the high Priest, to signifie, that he could not be freed from the guilt thereof, but by the death of Jesus Christ the great high Priest.

2. Because it is a fruit of the sin of our first Parents: who if they had stood in that integrity wherein God created them, such an act as that should never have happened.

3. Because there is some imprudency in him that doth it, and want of consideration.

*What should this teach us ?*

To

To take heed of all occasions, that may make us guilty of this sin.

*What do you account Man-slaughter ?*

When one killeth another in his own defence. Whercunto also may be referred : if one should kill a man at unawares, in hurling stones to no use ; or if a Drunkard in reeling should fell another, whereof he should dye. For this is different from that which cometh by Chance-medley, when a man is employed in a good and lawful work.

Of Man-slaughter.

*What think you of killing one another in quarelling, and challenges to the field?*

It deserveth death, by the law of God and man.

*What is wilful Murther ?*

When a man advisedly, wittingly, and maliciously, doth slay or poison his Neighbour. Which is a sin of a high nature, and at no hand by the Magistrate to be pardoned : because thereby the Land is defiled. *Gen. 9. 5, 6. Hof. 4. 2, 3. Numb. 35. 31, 33, 34. Dent. 21. 2, 7, 8, 9.*

Of Duets.

*What reasons are there to set out the detestation of this sin ?*

1. If a man deface the Image of a Prince, he is severely punished : how much more if he deface the Image of God ? *Gen. 9. 6.*

2. By the Law of *Moses*, if a beast (an unreasonable creature) had killed a man ; it should be slain, and the flesh of it (although otherwise clean) was not to be eaten. *Exod. 21. 28.*

3. By the same Law, if this sin go unpunished ; God will require it at the place where it was committed, and at the Magistrates hands. *Numb. 35. 33.*

*Hitherto of the duties of this Commandment belonging to the person of our Neighbour while he is alive, What are they after his death?*

They either concern himself, or those that pertain to him.

*What are the duties that concern himself?*

1. Friends and Neighbours should see that his body be honestly buried, and Funerals decently performed. *Gen. 23. 4, 19. & 25. 9. 1 Sam. 25. 1. Psal. 79. 3.*

Duties to be performed to our neighbour after his death.

2. Moderate mourning is to be used for him. *Eccle. 12. 7. 1 Thes. 4. 13.*

3. We are to report well of him, as he hath deserved.

4. We are to judge the best of him.

*What is that which concerneth those that belong unto him?*

To provide for his Wife, children and posterity ; that he may live in them. *Ruth 2. 20. 2 Sam. 9. 7.*

*So much of the respect which we do owe our Neighbours. Is it not required also, that we should shew mercifulness unto our beasts?*

Yes. A righteous man is to regard the life of his beast. *Pro. 12. 10.* And all hard usage of the creatures of God is forbidden, (*Dent. 22. 6, 7. and 25. 4.*) yet not so much in regard of them, (*1 Cor. 9. 9, 10.*) as that thereby the Lord would train us forward to shew mercy to our Neighbour. For it being unlawful to use the dumb creatures cruelly ; it is much more unlawful to use men so.

*What are the breakers of this Commandment to expect?*

The Apostle *James* teacheth that, when he saith : *Judgment without mercy shall be upon those that are mercilefs. James. 2. 13.*

*Of how many sorts are those judgments?*

They either concern this life, or that which is to come.

*What be those that concern this life.*

1. Severe punishments (by the Law) are to be inflicted upon the body ; as of this commandment.

Of punishments due to the breakers of this commandment.

limb for limb, eye for eye, hand for hand, tooth for tooth, wound for wound, blood for blood, life for life: (*Exod.* 21. 23. *Jud.* 1. 5, 6, 7.) although it were a beast, if it were known to be a striker. *Exod.* 21. 28.

2. Short life. *Psal.* 55. 23. *Blood-thirsty men live not out half their days.*

3. Magistrates, that should punish Murderers, if they spare them, their lives are in danger to go for the offenders: as *Achab's* did for *Benhadad's*. *1 Kin.* 20. 42. *David* was exceedingly punished for sparing blood-thirsty men, (such as was his son *Absalom*) and not punishing them. *2 Sam.* 13. 28, 29. & 14. 33. & 16. 11.

4. God threatneth; that he will not only revenge the blood of the slain upon the Murderer himself, but also upon his issue and posterity, in unrecoverable diseases. *2 Sam.* 3. 29.

*What is the punishment that concerneth the life to come?*

1. That their prayers are not heard. *Esa.* 1. 15. *1 Tim.* 2. 8.

2. Everlasting death both of body and soul, in the bottomless pit of Hell. And as the degrees of sin are, so shall the punishment be.

*What helps are we to use for the furthering us to the obedience of this Commandment?*

Means furthering us in the obedience of this commandment.

It behoveth us to consider, that first, all men are made in the image of God; (*Gen.* 9. 6.) and of one blood with us; (*Acts* 17. 26.) and all Christians in the image of Christ also, in whom we are all *one body*. *1 Cor.* 12. 27.

Secondly that God hath appointed the Magistrate to punish proportionably every offender in his kind: (*Gen.* 9. 6. *Levit.* 24. 20, 21.) yea himself also extraordinarily bringing Murderers to light and punishment. *Gen.* 4. 9. *Prov.* 28. 17. *Act.* 28. 4.

*What must we avoid as hindrances to the obedience of this Commandment?*

Hindrances of our obedience to this Commandment.

1. The false opinion of the World, placing manhood in revenge and bloodshed. *Gen.* 4. 23, 24.

2. The company of furious and unmerciful men. *Proverbs* 22. 24, 25.

3. Greedy desire of gain. *Pro.* 1. 19. *Mich.* 3. 3.

4. Pride. *Pro.* 13. 10.

5. Riot and drunkenness. *Pro.* 23. 29.

*Hitherto of the general duties that belong to the person of Man, contained in the sixth Commandment, what followeth?*

The duties which we owe to Man, in regard of the things which belong unto him: the first whereof concerneth those that be most dear unto him; namely his family and his wife especially, who is nearest unto him, and as himself; being one flesh with him. In respect whereof, Temperance and Chastity is required in the next Commandment.

*What are the words of the seventh Commandment?*

The seventh Commandment.

**Thou shalt not commit Adultery.** *Exod.* 20. 14.

*What is comprehended under this name of Adultery?*

All sins of that sort, committed either in the body or in the mind of persons, whether married or unmarried, are signified by this name; to shew the villainy of the breach of this Commandment.

The meaning and scope of the seventh Commandment.

*What then is the meaning and scope of the Commandment?*

That all uncleanness and impurity be avoided, and chastity by all means preserved. *2 Cor.* 7. 1. *1 Thes.* 4. 3, 4, 5.

What

All impurity and uncleanness, together with all means and provocations to lust.

*What is required?*

All purity, honest behaviour, continent and chaste usage, towards our selves and towards our neighbour. 1 *Thef.* 2. 3. & 5. 23. 1 *Cor.* 7. 34.

*What are the special breaches of this Commandment?*

They are either Inward, or Outward.

*What is the Inward!*

The unchastity and dishonesty of the mind: with all filthy imaginations, and inordinate lusts, *Mat.* 5. 28. *Col.* 3. 5.

*What are the special branches of this inward impurity?*

1. The desire of strange flesh, with resolution to have it, if he could. *Col.* 3. 5. 1 *Thef.* 4. 5. For a lust after a strange Woman, with consent of heart, is forbidden in this; (*Mat.* 5. 28.) as lust without consent is in the last Commandment. Not that the bare affection is of it self a sin, being rightly directed to a true and good object: but the abuse of the affection, the right subject, manner and measure being not observed.

2. Inward boyling and burning in affection: Whereby godly motions, as with a fire, are burnt up, and a mans mind is so carryed away, that he is hindered in all other things belonging to his calling. This is an high degree of corruption, which if it be not restrained, will break forth into further mischief: (*Jam.* 1. 15.) and therefore we are earnestly to pray to God against it; and if we can no otherwise prevail, we must use the remedy of Marriage prescribed by God himself: for it is better to marry then to burn. 1 *Cor.* 7. 9.

3. Evil thoughts and cogitations in the mind, arising from foolish and vain talk, but first and principally from our own concupiscence, when a man suffers as it were, his soul to be trampled under foot with impure imaginations. *Jam.* 1. 14. 15.

4. Jealousie in the mind, betwixt two persons, upon no just occasion or good ground: which is contrary to that entire love and affection, which a man should have towards his wife. *Numb.* 5.

*What is the inward vertue here commanded?*

The virginity and continency of the mind; and the chastity and purity of the heart. 1 *Cor.* 7. 34. 1 *Thef.* 4. 3, 4. & 5. 23.

*What is the outward breach of this Commandment?*

Such uncleanness, as being once seated in the mind, after sheweth it self outwardly.

*Wherein doth it shew it self?*

Either in things that belong to the body, or else in the body it self.

*How in those things that belong to the body?*

In the abuse either of Apparel, or of Meat and Drink.

*How is this Commandment broken in the abuse of apparel, and the ornaments of the Body?*

1. By excess: when it is above our estate, or ability. *Mat.* 11. 8. *Isa.* 3. 16. Abuse
2. By lightness: when it is wanton and laicivious. Whence some apparel is called by the Holy Ghost, *whorish*: (*Pro.* 7. 10.) which is a great occasion of lust and uncleanness.
3. By immodesty, and wearing of such attire as doth disfigure the body.
4. By new fangledness: when it is not according to the custome of the Country, City, or Town where we dwell, 2 *Sam.* 13. 4, 18.

4. When it is otherwise than belongeth to the sex : as if a man put on woman's apparel, or a woman a mans. Which is abominable to God, *Dent. 22. 5.*

*What are the reasons hereof ?*

1. God would have every sex hereby maintained ; that the man should not become effeminate, nor the woman mannish.

2. To avoid a most notorious occasion of a shameless and nameless sin. For if a man may be inflamed with a wanton Picture painted : much more with a lively Image, and portraiture of the sex.

3. It is a dishonour for a man to bely his sex, and to spoil himself of the dignity God hath given him ; and presumption for a woman to desire the reputation of a better sex than God hath set her in.

*May not women in their apparel submit themselves to please their Husbands ?*

They must seek to please them by lawful means, and therefore by clothing themselves in decent apparel, with sobriety ; and for their success, to put their trust in God, who is able by modesty in apparel, without any such indirect means, to maintain their husbands love towards them. *1 Pet. 3. 5.*

*What apparel are we then to use ?*

Such as cometh under the rule of the Apostle ; namely, such as may witness our godliness and modesty, *1 Tim. 2. 9. Tit. 2. 3.* And therefore, although some (exceeding this measure) say they do it not to allure any : yet if others be allured by it, it is a sin in them ; although not so grievous and great as in the other, who propound to themselves (by their wanton apparel) to allure.

*How is this Commandment broken in the abuse of meat and drink :*

Either in regard of the quality or quantity thereof.

*How in regard of the quality ?*

1. When we seek for too much daintiness. *Dent. 14. 21. Luke 16. 19.*

2. When we seek such kinds of meat and drink, which provoke this sin.

*How in regard of the quantity ?*

By excess, and intemperance in diet : when we feed to fulness, and give ourselves to surfeiting and drunkenness. *Ezek. 16. 49.*

*What be the contrary duties here commended ?*

1. Temperance, in using a sober and moderate diet ; (*Ecc. 10. 16.*) according to our ability, and the use of the Country where we be.

2. Convenient abstinence. *1 Cor. 9. 27.*

*So much of the breach of this Commandment in the abuse of those things which belong to the body. Wherein consisteth the abuse of the body it self ?*

Partly in the gestures and carriage of the body ; partly in speech and words ; partly in act and deed.

*How is the wantonness of the heart manifested by the countenance, gestures and carriage of the body ?*

1. By impudency or lightness in countenance, gesture or behaviour. *Pro. 6. 13. and 7. 10, &c.*

2. By wanton looks : when the eye (which is the seat of Adultery, or of Chastity) is suffered to wander without regard ; and either giveth occasion to others to commit adultery, or is so fixed to behold the beauty of another, or else lascivious and wicked pictures (wherein many set their delight) and the like things, that the heart is inflamed to lust, and allured to filthiness thereby, *2 Pet. 2. 14. Mat. 5. 28. Gen. 39. 7. Job 31. 1. Ezek. 23. 14.*

3. By uncovering of the nakedness of the breasts, and other parts of the body, for the allurement of others. Whereunto may be referred the Apostles Commandment for women to be covered : (*1 Cor. 11. 6.*) and the example of

*Rebekah,*

Of the abuse  
of meat and  
drink.

Wanton  
Gestures.

*Rebekah*, who for modesty put a veil upon her face. (*Gen.* 24. 65.) not as many do now a-days, for other respects.

4. By painting the face, and counterfeiting the complexion: as wicked *Jesabel* did, who was afterwards (by the just judgment of God) eaten up of dogs.

5. By mincing and tinkling with the feet; by wanton dancing of men and women together, (which is a great inticement to this lust) and all other lascivious motions. *Esa.* 3. 16. *Mar.* 6. 22.

6. By dalliance; and abuse of any parts of the body to the provocation of others unto lust, or suffering them to wander in wantonness.

*What be the contrary virtues here commanded?*

Chastity in the eyes, countenance, and all the parts of the body; modesty, and gravity in behaviour: (*Tit.* 2. 2, 3.) that we make a covenant with our eyes; (*Job.* 31. 1.) and pray that the Lord would turn them away from seeing vanity: (*Psal.* 119. 37.) finally that we so carry and direct all the members of the body, as that they be not weapons of uncleanness. *Rom.* 6. 13, 19.

*How is this Commandment broken by evil Words?*

1. By vain and wanton speeches, corrupt and rotten communication: Wanton whereby not only the speakers heart, but also the hearts of the hearers are inflamed. *Eph.* 4. 29. and 5. 3, 4. *1 Cor.* 15. 33.

2. By giving ear to filthy words, and taking delight in hearing dishonest things; although (for our credit) we will not speak them. *1 Cor.* 15. 33.

3. By making of love-Epistles, amorous Books, lewd Songs and Ballads, and such like.

4. By reading or hearing of wanton Poems, naughty Songs, and bad Books; and much more by learning of them: whereby the memory is cloyed, and so better things kept forth.

*What is contrary to this?*

Chastity in tongue and ears: speech favouring of sobriety and grace, (*Thef.* 4. 23.) modest and chaste talk. Where we are to follow the example of the Holy Ghost, who speaking (by necessity) of matters unseemly to be spoken plainly of, useth chaste speech: as, *he knew her, he covered his feet,* &c. *Judg.* 3. 24. *1 Sam.* 1. 19.

*What say you here to Interludes, and Stage-plays?*

They offend against many branches of this Commandment together, both in the abuse of apparel, tongue, eyes, countenance, gestures, and all parts almost of the body. For besides the wantonness therein used, both in attire, speech, and action; the man putteth on the apparel of the woman, (which is forbidden, as a thing abominable (*Deut.* 22. 5.) much filthy is presented to the beholders, and foolish talking, and jesting, which are not convenient: lastly, fornication and all uncleanness (which ought not to be once named amongst Christians) is made a spectacle of joy and laughter. (*Ephes.* 5. 3, 4.) Therefore they that go to see such sights, and hear such words, shew their neglect of Christian duty, and carelessness in sinning, when as they willingly commit themselves into the snare of the Devil. *1 Cor.* 25. 33.

*There remaineth now the breach of this Commandment in Act and Deed.*

*What is that?*

Fleishly pollution, and impurity in action: of which the unlawful Vows of continency are nurser. *Heb.* 13. 4. *1 Tim.* 4. 1, 3.

*What is the contrary virtue?*

The possessing of our vessels in holiness and honour: (*1 Thef.* 4. 4.) for

the preservation of which purity, holy wedlock is commanded to such have not got the gift of continency. 1 Cor. 7. 9.

*How doth a man exercise uncleanness in act?*

Either by himself, or with others.

*How by himself?*

By the horrible sin of *Onan*; (*Gen.* 38. 9.) lustful dreams, and nocturnal pollutions, (*Deu.* 23. 10.) rising from excessive eating, and unclean cogitations, or other sinful means, *Jude* v. 8. 2 *Pet.* 2. 10. *Gal.* 5. 19. *Col.* 3. 5.

*How is it with others?*

Either in lawful conjunction, or unlawful separation.

*What be the kinds of unlawful conjunction?*

It is either with those that are of diverse, or of the same kind.

*What is the filthiness, which consisteth in the conjunction of divers kinds?*

It is either *Bestial*, or *Diabolical*?

*What is the Bestial?*

When a man or woman committeth filthiness with a beast. Which is a most abominable confusion. *Levi.* 18. 23. & 20. 15, 16.

*What is the Diabolical?*

When a man or a woman hath company with an unclean spirit, under the shape of a man or woman. Thus witches sometimes prostrate their bodies to the Devil, who to fulfil their lusts, doth present himself unto them in an humane form,

*How is sin committed betwixt those of the same kind?*

When men do carnally company with others out of marriage, or otherwise than the laws of holy marriage do require.

*What is common to those unlawful mixtures?*

Of Stews, & the unlawful acts of them.

That they all be either voluntary in both, or by force in the one. To the former may be referred the maintenance of Stews, which are permitted and defend in Popery: to the latter, the case of Rape.

*How do you prove the unlawfulness of Stews?*

1. They are so far from being the remedies of uncleanness, that they be the special nourishers thereof. For the acting of sin doth not extinguish, but increase the flame of concupiscence.

2. They are expressly forbidden in the Law of God. *Lev.* 19. 29. *Deu.* 23. 17.

3. The Kings are commended in Scriptures, who took away such filthiness out of the land. 1 *King.* 15. 12. 2. *King.* 23. 7.

4. By them, not fornication onely, but Adulteries, yea Incests also were committed, when as both married, and unmarried came thither; and oftentimes some of the same blood and affinity, committed villany with one whore. *Ezek.* 22. 11.

Of Rape.

*What do you say to the case of Rape?*

Herein the party forced is to be holden guiltless: but the offence of the other is highly aggravated hereby. *Deu.* 22. 25, 26. 2 *Sam.* 13. 14.

*Of how many sorts are these unlawful mixtures?*

They are either of one sex with the same sex; or of both sexes, the one with the other.

*What is that of one sex with the same sex?*

Sodomy, or Buggery: when man with man, or woman with woman, committeth filthiness *Lev.* 18. 22. & 20. 13. *Deu.* 23. 17. *Rom.* 1. 26, 27.

*What be the unlawful mixtures of both Sexes, the male and female together?*

They



They are either more unnatural, or less contrary to nature.

*What are the more unnatural?*

1. When there is a mixture of those bodies that are within the degrees of kindred and alliance, forbidden by the Law of God. (*Lev.* 18. 6. &c.) Incest. whether it be in marriage, or otherwise. 2. *Sam.* 13. 14. *Gen.* 38. 16. which sin is called *Incest*?

*Of what sorts are Incests?*

They are either in degrees of *Consanguinity*, or *Affinity*.

*What is the incest of Consanguinity?*

Confusion of blood, either in the *right line* upward, as Father with Daughter; *Collateral*, as Brother with Sister; or *overthwart* and oblique, as Son with Aunt, Daughter with Uncle

*May Cousin-Germans (being in the second degree) marry by the Law of God?*

Yea: but in divers respects it is unnecessary and inconvenient.

*What are the Incests of Affinity?*

There is the same prohibition of *Affinity* as of *Consanguinity*: as for a man to have his Sister in Law, &c.

*What use make you of this?*

It condemneth the Pope, who dispenseth with the degrees prohibited by God, and prohibiteth many degrees which God alloweth: making that to be sin, which is no sin, and that which is no sin to be sin.

*What be the unlawful conjunctions of man and woman, that are less contrary to nature.*

They are either betwixt strangers, or betwixt man and wife.

*What be the kinds of the former;*

*Fornication* and *Adultery*. *Heb.* 13. 4.

*What is Fornication?*

When two single persons come together out of the state of Matrimony. *Fornication.* *Deut.* 22. 28, 29. *Eph.* 5. 3.

*What is Adultery?*

When a man or a woman, whereof the one at least is contracted in marriage, commit filthiness together. *Adultery.*

*How manifold is this Adultery?*

Either Single or Double.

*What call you single Adultery?*

When the one party is single, and the other married or espoused.

*What is the double?*

When two persons married or contracted, do company together: which is a most high degree of offence, as being committed against four persons.

*What is the unlawful conjunction between man and wife?*

It is either betwixt one and many, or betwixt one and one.

*What is the former?*

*Polygamy*, and the having of many wives at once: which was ever unlawful in conscience, however for a time it was born with of God, (in regard of the encreasing of the World and Church,) and not punished by the positive Law. *Gen.* 4. 24. *Lev.* 18. 18. *Malac.* 2. 15, 16. *1 Cor.* 6. 16. & 7. 2.

*What is the latter?*

When the holy laws of Matrimony, and the order which God hath appointed in his word, are not observed. *116*

*What be those Laws and orders?*

They do either concern the entrance into Marriage, or the holy use thereof, after it is consummate. *117*

What is required in the entrance into Marriage.

- What is required in the entrance ?*
1. That the persons be joyned in wedlock, meditate of the ends of Matrimony : that it is ordained for procreation sake, and for their own mutual comfort and preservation, not for fulfilling of lust only. *Gal.*
  2. That they use prayer for a blessing upon them.
  3. That they look to the degrees of Consanguinity and Affinity prescribed. *skin*
  4. That they look that either of them be free from any former Contract.
  5. That they be of the same Religion.
  6. That they have consent of Parents, and those which have charge over them. For Parents have as great interest in their children, as in any of their goods.
  7. That there be due consent likewise betwixt themselves. Where Parents must have a care to marry them, when they have understanding and discretion.
  8. That due respect be had to the age of the parties.
  9. That there be espousals before marriage ; and that the parties espoused joyn not themselves together before the marriage be confirmed by the prayers of the Congregation. According to the example of *Joseph and Mary. Mat. 1.*

The contrary abuses.

- What be the contrary abuses ?*
1. When Meditation and Prayer are neglected.
  2. When nearness of blood and kindred is not respected.
  3. When either of the parties is formerly married, or contracted to some other. *Malac. 2. 15.*
  4. When they are of a divers Religion. *Gen. 6. 2.*
  5. When there wanteth consent of Parents. *Exod. 22. 16, 17.* Where stealing away of mens daughters cometh within the compass of Adultery, and is condemned in this Commandment.
  6. When there is not due consent between the parties themselves, *Gen. 29.*
  23. Where untimely marriages come to be condemned ; which are the causes of many discords, and so great dissention between Husbands and Wives, when they are come to discretion and age.
  7. When there is great disparity of age in the parties contracted.
  8. When espousals are neglected, or the parties espoused come together before the consummation of the marriage. Both which are breaches of God's Ordinance.

*Holy Use.*

What is required in the holy use of Marriage.

- What is required in the Holy use of marriage ?*
1. An holy and Christian conversation together, during the whole term of their life.
  2. The sober use of the marriage bed.

*What is required in the former ?*

That there be mutual delight, (*Prov. 5. 19.*) fidelity (*Rom. 7. 2.*) and confidence each in other. *Prov. 31. 11.*

*What in the latter ?*

That they render due benevolence one to the other ; (*1 Cor. 7. 3, 4, 5.*) and abuse not the marriage bed, either unseasonably, or intemperately.

*How unseasonably ?*

In not observing the time, either of natural separation, (*Lev. 18. 19.*) or of solemn humiliation ; wherein (with consent) they are to give themselves unto fasting and Prayer. Which though it be not strictly commanded, is yet permitted. *1 Cor. 7. 5, 6, 7.*

*How*

*How intemperately?*

When the honourable and chaste estate of Matrimony is used to wantonness, *note - in* and not with moderation and seemliness. 1 *Thef.* 4. 4, 5. For as a man may *how - ever* commit a fault in excess of wine, although it be his own: so may he sin in abusing his body with his own wife.

*Hitherto of the unlawful conjunction. Wherein doth unlawful separation consist?*

Either in the utter abjuration of marriage, or in the breach of conjugal society. Unlawful separation

*How is the former sin committed?*

By the unlawful vows of continency: where we must abhor the doctrine of devils, depraving and denying holy marriage. 1 *Timothy* 4. 1, 3.

*How is the latter committed?*

Either when the party is present, or when he is absent.

*How when the party is present?*

When due benevolence is not yielded, although there be aptness thereunto, not any hindrance by consent, in respect of extraordinary prayer. 1 *Cor.* 7. 3, 4.

*How when the party is absent?*

Either privately, or publicly.

*How privately?*

When the party withdraweth it self in dislike, or loathsomness; or else by long and unnecessary journeys of travelling, of merchandise, wars, &c. or maketh a desertion for hatred of Religion. 1 *Cor.* 7. 12, 13, 15.

*How publicly?*

When separation hath been made by the Magistrate, without lawful cause.

*Is there any lawful cause of divorce?*

Yes. Adultery is a lawful cause of separation: but not contention, or discord, or any thing beside. *Mat.* 5. 32.

*So much of the Commandment. What are the punishments of the breach of it?*

1. When many other sins are hid, this is most commonly discovered. *Num.* 5. 13, &c. *Prov.* 5. 11, &c. *John* 4. 16. The punishments of the breach of this Commandment.
2. The sin is a judgment of it self, *Prov.* 22. 14. *Ecc.* 7. 27, 28. *Rom.* 1. 24.
3. God judgeth them oftentimes in this world, always in the world to come. *Heb.* 13. 4. 1 *Cor.* 6. 9, 10. *Num.* 25. 8. *Gen.* 12. 17. 1 *Cor.* 10. 8. *Gen.* 34. 25. *Judg.* 19. 29. *Prov.* 7. 23, 26, 27. *Job.* 31. 9, 10, 11, 12. 2 *Sam.* 13. 14, 28.
4. More particularly; whipping for Fornication, and death for Adultery and other unlawful mixtures. *Lev.* 20. 10.
5. It spendeth the goods. *Prov.* 15. 10. & 6. 26.
6. It hurteth, wasteth, and consumeth the body, *Prov.* 5. 11.
7. It bereaveth a man of his understanding and judgment. *Hosea.* 4. 11.
8. It not only reacheth to the offenders themselves, but also to their children; who are the children of Adultery. And by *Moses's* law, the Bastard (to the tenth generation) might not enter into the Sanctuary. *Dent.* 23. 2.
9. He sinneth against his wife and lawful children, whilst thereby he oftentimes maketh a stew of his house: as *David* did by the Adultery he committed with the wife of *Urias*. 2 *Sam.* 16. 21.
10. Barrenness in his wife. *Lev.* 20. 20.
11. Children begotten in horrible incest were to be burnt or slain in their mothers womb. What:

*What are the helps to the obedience of this Commandment?*

Helps and means of keeping this Commandment.

Unto the fore-mentioned helps there must be added:

1. Care to keep a good Conscience. *Ecc. 7. 28.*
2. Labour in our vocations;
3. Watchfulness over our own spirit. *Mal. 2. 16.*
4. A Covenant with our eyes. *Joh. 31. 1.*
5. Love of God and of his wisdom. *Prov. 2. 10. &c.*
6. Prayer. *Psal. 119. 37.*
7. Holy meditations.

*What are the hindrances to be avoided?*

Hindrances of obedience.

Beside the unlawful vows of continency, and other provocations unto this kind of sin, before noted: we must beware of.

1. Idleness: in ceasing from doing any profitable thing *Ezek. 16. 49. 2 Sam. 11. 12. 1 Tim. 5. 11, 13. Gen. 34. 1. &c.*
2. The breach of peace with God. *Prov. 22. 14.*
3. Running on in sin; (*Ecc. 7. 28.*) especially superstition and Idolatry: (*Rom. 1. 25. 26.*) in which cases God giveth men over to vile lusts?
4. Lewd company. *Prov. 5. 20. & 7. 25.*
5. Idle and unwarrantable exercises. *Gen. 34. 1. &c.*

*So much of the seventh Commandment, where Chastity is commanded. There follow the general duties which we do owe to man in other things appertaining unto him. What be they?*

They either regard the preservation of his goods, as the eighth; or his good name, as the ninth Commandment.

*What are the words of the eighth Commandment?*

The eighth Commandment.

**Thou shalt not steal.** *Exod. 20. 15.*

*What doth it contain?*

A charge of our own and our Neighbours goods: that we shew love and faithfulness therein, and not only not impeach or hinder, but by all means preserve and further the same.

*What special matter do ye learn from hence?*

The gross error of the Anabaptists, that hold community of goods: which by the whole drift and scope of this Commandment is manifestly overthrown.

*What is forbidden in this commandment?*

Whatsoever is prejudicial to our own or our Neighbours wealth: that we no way hinder, diminish, or abuse the same.

*What is required?*

Whatsoever may further and prosper our own or our Neighbours wealth: that we give to every one that which is his, and do our best (as far as our callings and means will suffer) to preserve his goods, and (as occasion serveth) help to encrease them; by all lawful courses, (*Eph. 4. 28.*) and honest dealing (*Tir. 2. 10.*)

*What is the end of this Commandment?*

The end of the eighth Commandment.

It is divers. First, in respect of God: that the goods which he hath bestowed on us should be conserved and employed to those uses for which he hath intrusted them unto us: and principally to the setting forth of his glory whom he gave them.

Secondly, in respect of the Church. For whatsoever is given unto any member

member thereof, whether it be either spiritual or external good, it is given for the common benefit of the whole body. And therefore he that taketh away the goods of any member, or refuseth to imploy for the common profit what he hath, he neglecteth this communion; and consequently sinneth against this Commandment.

Thirdly, in respect of the Common-wealth: for the preservation whereof justice is required, in giving unto every one that which is his own; which being neglected great Kingdoms are great Thieveries.

Lastly, in respect of every singular person: that every man may freely and quietly enjoy those his goods which God hath given him.

*What was the occasion of this Commandment?*

It was that covetousness which naturally adhereth unto us; whereof it cometh to pass, that we are not contented with our estate and means, but lust and long after other mens. and use all our endeavours to compass them whether it be by right or wrong. And from hence arise injuries, oppressions, thefts and robberies: by which means what is gotten doth naturally more delight and please us, than that we get in our lawful callings. *Prov. 9. 17. & 20. 17.*

The occasion of this Commandment.

*What is here forbidden?*

Theft in all the kinds thereof.

*What is theft?*

It is the fraudulent imbezeling or taking away of those goods which belong to another man, without the knowledge or against the will of the owner: or the unjust detaining of it from him, when we know that in right it belongeth unto him.

Theft.

*What things are chiefly to be here considered?*

Two. First, the Objects, about which it is chiefly exercised: and Secondly, the virtues and Vices commanded and forbidden.

*What are the Objects?*

Our own and our Neighbours goods; or as they commonly speak, *Meum & Tuum*, mine and thine. For whereas he forbiddeth theft, and commandeth beneficence, he imployeth and requireth, that there should be distinct properties and possessions: for otherwise there could be no theft, nor exercise of bounty and beneficence. For a man cannot steal but that which is anothers, nor give but that which is his own.

*What are the Virtues commanded, and the Vices forbidden in this Commandment?*

The Apostle hath comprised all in a brief sum, *Ephes. 4. 28. Let him that stole steal no more, but rather labour, working with his hands the thing which is good, that he may have to give to him that needeth.* Of which the Apostle propoundeth himself for an example; *Act. 20. 33, 34, 35.*

*What then are the parts of this Commandment?*

Two. First, the negative, forbidding all Theft. Secondly the affirmative, enjoying the just getting, and the just and liberal use of our goods.

The parts of this eighth Commandment.

*What understand you by stealing or Theft?*

All vices of the same nature and kind, whereby we any ways hinder or hurt our selves, or our neighbours in our goods. And as Theft it self is here forbidden, so also the cause and root of it, which is covetousness; together with the means and signs of it, and the procuring of it in others. as also the contrary virtues hereunto are required.

*How must we proceed in handling of them?*

From the generals to the more special.

*What are the degrees of general duties?*

General duties com-  
manded.

They are three.

First; to abstain from all injuries and injustice, whereby we hurt or hinder our selves or our neighbour, in our own or his goods

Secondly that we use our best endeavour to preserve by all lawful means, both our own and his.

Thirdly, that we cheerfully communicate our goods to the relieving of our neighbours necessities.

*What are the vices opposite hereunto?*

Opposite vices.

They are three.

First, injuriously to hurt or hinder our selves or neighbours in our goods.

Secondly, to be wanting in any means whereby they may justly be preserved.

Thirdly to be wanting to our neighbours in relieving them when their necessities require our help. For we are not absolute owners of the things which we possess: but God's Stewards, who are enjoined to employ his Talents to such uses as he requireth; and particularly to the benefit of our fellow servants *Luk. 16. 2 Luke 19. 13. Mat. 25. 14, 15. 19.*

*What is the second general duty respecting our own and our neighbour's goods?*

That we use our best endeavour to preserve them. First, our own. For though we may not set our hearts upon them (*Psalms 62. 10.*) yet seeing they are Gods gifts, and are to be employed for his glory and our own and neighbours good, if we should wilfully or negligently suffer them to perish, we should be worse then the unprofitable servant, who kept the Talent committed unto him, though he did not increase it: *Mat. 25. 25.*

Secondly, we must do our best to conserve our neighbours goods; seeing they have not by chance come unto them but by the wise disposing of God's providence: whose wise dispensation we resist, if by our best endeavour we do not preserve them for their use. And to this end that Law concerning our neighbours Cattle tendeth *Deut. 22. 1, 2, 3. Exod. 23. 4, 5.*

Special duties here required.

*What are the special duties here required?*

They are of two sorts: the first, respect the just getting and possessing; the other, the right using and employing of our goods.

*What are the duties which are referred to the former?*

They are either internal, or external.

*What are the internal.*

They are chiefly four:

First, little or no love and desire of money.

Secondly, self-contentedness.

Thirdly, a lawful measure of our appetite; or moderate concupiscence and desires.

Fourthly, lawful providence without taking care; or a laudable study and endeavour in getting goods.

*What do you mean by little or no love of money?*

When we do not set our hearts upon riches and worldly wealth: (*Psal. 62. 10.*) But first seek Gods Kingdom and righteousness. *Matthew 6. 33.*

*What is opposite hereunto?*

Love of money: that is, when we set our hearts upon riches and worldly things; which should be devoted unto, and fixed upon God.

*By what arguments may we be dissuaded from this vice?*

By divers; especially these that follow.

Because

Because it is a foolish vice: seeing riches to those that immoderately love them, are not only vain, but also hurtful and pernicious. *Hab. 2. 6. 1 Tim. 6. 9.* Secondly, because it is unseemly. For we are Pilgrims in this world, and Citizens of Heaven: and therefore we should not set our hearts and affections on earthly, but on heavenly things, *Phil. 3. 20. Col. 3. 1, 2.*

Arguments dissuading from the love of money and earthly things.

Thirdly, because it is iniquious. For 1. He that loveth the world loveth not God: (*1 Joh. 2. 15. Jam. 4. 4.*) neither can we serve God and Mammon. (*Mat. 6. 24.*) 2. Because a lover of money is an Idolater. *Ephe. 5. 5.* For that is our God on which we set our hearts.

Fourthly, Because it is pernicious. For, *he that soweth unto the flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption, Gal. 6. 8. and their end is destruction who mind earthly things.* *Phil. 3. 19. 1 Tim. 6. 9.*

Fifthly, because the love of money is the root of all evil, and exposeth men to all tentations. *1 Tim. 9. 9, 10.*

*What is the second special vertue here commanded?*

Self-contentedness: when a man is contented with that estate and condition which God in his wise providence hath allotted unto him; and doth not covet either that which is another mans, or that which is unnecessary and superfluous. *Phi 4. 11, 17.* And this springeth partly from the neglect of money and contempt of worldly things; and partly from our affiance in God, resting it self upon his promises, providence, goodness, and all-sufficiency.

Self-contentedness.

*What motives may induce us to embrace this vertue?*

1. By the consideration of the vanity of worldly things, and the profit which ariseth from piety and the love of divine excellencies, *1 Tim. 6. 6, 7, 8. Godliness is great gain with contentation.* For this abundantly supplyeth all our wants. *1 Tim. 4. 8 Psal. 34. 10, 11. & 37. 16. Mat. 6. 33. Prov. 15. 16 Better is a little with the fear of the Lord, than great treasures and trouble therewith.*

2. Of God's providence; who is our provident and loving Father. And therefore seeing we are his sons, we ought to be content with our portion which our gracious Father hath allotted unto us; and to say with *David. Psal. 16. 6. The lines are fallen unto me in pleasant places.* For he best knoweth what we stand in need of. (*Mat. 9. 32.*) Therefore let us submit our selves to his will and providence.

Thirdly, Let us meditate on Gods promises, *Heb. 13. 5, 6. Be content with such things as you have; for he hath said, I will never leave nor forsake thee.* And therefore let us cast our care upon God, for he careth for us, *1 Pet. 5. 7. Psal. 55. 22. Cast thy burthen upon the Lord, and he shall sustain thee, &c.*

*What is the vice opposite to this vertue?*

Not to be contented with our present State and condition but immoderately to desire more and greater things; and to afflict our selves with distracting, and carking cares in getting and compassing them.

*Who are most addicted to this vice?*

Those who will not live according to the proportion of their means which God hath given them. For the wanting more than is needful, their ordinary comings in and lawful means do not suffice them, but they desire and seek things superfluous by unlawful means; as food and rayment above their state and ability.

Motives perswading to self-contentedness.

*But is it then unlawful, in a mean and poor condition to use means to improve and better our estate?*

Our affiance in God, and self-contentedness do not hinder us from using

all lawful means to better our condition, nor make us slothful in our callings; so that our desires be moderate, and the means we use be lawful, we in the mean time resting upon God's just and wise providence with contentation.

*What is the third internal duty, respecting the lawful getting and possessing of earthly things?*

Lawful measuring of our appetite.

The lawful measuring of our appetite, and the moderating of our concupiscence. For all appetite and desire is not unlawful, but that only which is inordinate and immoderate: For that desire which tendeth to the necessary sustentation of our selves and others is commendable.

*What things are here considerable?*

Two things. First, what is necessary. Secondly, when the appetite is lawful. Concerning the former, things are said to be necessary, in respect of the necessity, either of our selves or others.

*What things are to be reputed necessary in respect of our selves?*

There may be a threefold necessity: in respect of Nature, Person, or Estate.

*What in respect of Nature.*

Those things which are required to the sustaining of nature, as we are men; that is, food and rayment. *1 Tim 6. 8.*

*What is necessary in respect of Person?*

When we have sufficient for our selves, and those that belong unto us. *1 Ti. 5. 8.*

*What is necessary in respect of State?*

When we have that which is sufficient to maintain us according to our rank, place, and calling; whether it be Magistrates, Ministers, or ordinary men.

*What is necessary in respect of others?*

It is either private, or publick.

*What is that necessity which respecteth the private?*

When we have wherewith to relieve the necessities of private men: after which ability all ought to labour. *For it is a more blessed thing to give, than to receive. Acts 20. 35.*

*What in respect of the publick?*

It either concerneth the Church or Common-wealth: unto both which we must be serviceable, as being born not only for our selves, but also for them. Therefore we may justly desire and labour after such abilities, as that we may not be wanting in either of them, when their necessities require our help.

*When is the appetite lawful?*

When it is ordinate and moderate.

*When is it ordinate?*

When it is subordinate to our study and desire of God's glory, and our own salvation. *Mat. 6. 33.* and contrarywise it is inordinate and preposterous, when earthly things are more affected and desired than heavenly.

*Who do sin in this kind?*

Those who seek worldly things by sinful and unlawful means, to the hazard of their souls, and their eternal salvation. Such are more foolish than *Esau*, that sold his birth-right for a mess of pottage. *Mark. 8. 36. Heb. 12. 16.*

*What is a moderate appetite or desire?*

When we desire only things necessary; and these also so, as that we can be content, though we cannot get them. An example whereof we have in *Paul*, *Phil. 4. 11, 12.* and in *Agur*, *Prov. 30. 8.* And *Christ* hath taught us to pray, *Give us this day our daily bread; that is, food convenient and necessary.*



*What are the extreames opposed hereunto ?*

They are two: The first is voluntary affectation of poverty; as in the begging Fryers among the Papiſts, commending that for a vertue and a degree of perfection, which the ſpirit of God hath taught us to pray againſt, *1rov.* 30. 8. and hath enjoyned us not to beg, but to labour with our hands, that we may be helpful unto others. *Ephes.* 4. 28.

*What is the other extreame ?*

The immoderate affectation of riches and honours; and that in a greater measure than is needful for us. The former we call Covetouſneſs; the other Ambition.

*What is Covetouſneſs ?*

An immoderate deſire of Riches: In which theſe vices concur.

1. An exceſſive love of Riches, and the fixing of our hearts upon them. Covetouſneſs.
2. A reſolution to become rich, either by lawful or unlawful means. *1 Tim.* 6. 9.
3. Too much haſt in gathering riches, joynd with impatience of any delay. *Prov.* 28. 20, 22. & 20. 21.
4. An unſatiabie appetite which can never be ſatisfied: but when they have too much, they ſtill deſire more, and have never enough. *Ecc.* 4. 8. like the Horſeleech. *Prov.* 30. 15. The Dropſie and Hell it ſelf, *Prov.* 27. 20.
5. Miſer like tenacity; whereby they reſuſe to communicate their goods either for the uſe of others or themſelves.
6. Cruelty, *Prov.* 1. 18, 19. exerciſed both in their unmercifulneſs and oppreſſion of the poor.

*What do you think of this vice ?*

That it is a moſt hainous ſin. For it is Idolatry, and the root of all evil, (*Col.* 3. 5. *1 Tim.* 6. 10.) a pernicious Thorn that ſtiſteth all grace, and choaketh the ſeed of the word, (*Mat.* 13. 22.) and pierceth men through with many ſorrows, *1 Tim.* 6. 10. and drowneth them in deſtruction and perdition, *ver.* 9.

*What is ambition ?*

An immoderate love and deſire of honours: which is a vice compounded of Covetouſneſs and Pride; in which concur all thoſe vices in covetouſneſs before ſpoken of. As an immoderate love of honours, a reſolution to aſpire unto honours, either by lawful or unlawful means, too much haſt in aſpiring unto honours, not waiting upon God for preferment in the uſe of lawful means, unſatiableneſs in aſpiring higher, and higher and enlarging of the ambitious mans deſire like unto Hell. *Heb.* 2. 5. Unto which may be added Arrogancy, whereby he coveteth to be preferred before all others, and Envy, whereby he diſdaineth that any ſhould be preferred before him.

*What is the fourth and laſt vice here forbidden ?*

Immoderate and carking care in the purſuing of theſe earthly things, riches and honours. As contrariwiſe, moderate appetite and deſires of having, and moderate care of procuring them, is approved and required; that we may not be burthenſome but rather helpful unto others. *2 Cor.* 12. 13. *Eph.* 4. 28.

*What are the extreames opposed to the former vertue ?*

They are two. The firſt is careleſneſs and neglect of our goods and ſtate: For as he is commended who gathereth in ſeaſonable times: ſo he is condemned, who neglecteth thoſe opportunities, (*Prov.* 10. 5. & 6. 6.) and is cenſured by the Apoſtle to be worſe than an Infidel. *1 Tim.* 5. 8.

*What*

*What is the other extrem?*  
 Sollicitous and distracting cares. Anxious and solicitous care, which distracteth the mind that it cannot be wholly intent to Gods service. And this doth partly arise from Covetousness, and partly from diffidence in Gods Promises and Providence.

*What are the reasons that may dissuade from this vice?*

They are chiefly two. First, because it is impious, Secondly, because it is foolish.

*Why is it impious;*

Because it chargeth God either with ignorance, that he knoweth not our wants, (contrary to that, *Mat. 6. 32.*) or of carefulness, that he neglecteth us; or of impotency, that he is not able to supply our wants. Whereas he is omniscient, and knoweth our necessities; omnipotent and able to relieve us; (*Eph. 3. 20.*) and our most gracious Father, and therefore willing and ready to help us in time of need.

Secondly, because it divideth the heart betwixt God and Mammon; and we cannot at once serve these masters. *Mat. 6. 24. 1 John 2. 15. Jam. 4. 4.*

Thirdly, Because it is heathenish. *Mat. 6. 32.*

*Why is it foolish?*

Because it is both superfluous and vain. Superfluous, because God hath undertaken to provide for us; and therefore in the use of lawful means we must cast all our care upon him. *1 Pet. 5. 7. Psal. 55. 22.*

*How is it vain?*

Because it is Gods blessing only that maketh rich: (*Prov. 10. 22. Deut. 8. 18.*) and by our own care we can no more add to that stint of state which he hath allotted unto us, than we can thereby add one cubit to our stature *Mat. 6. 27.*

*You have spoken generally of the internal duties: what duties are externally, and more specially?*

They respect either the just acquisition and getting of our goods; or the just retention and possessing of them. Unto which is opposed the unjust getting and keeping of them: which are here forbidden under the name of Theft.

*What is required to just getting?*

What required to just getting

That we get them by just and lawful means. For riches are thorns: which are not to be hastily caught, but to be handled warily and with much caution; that they do not pierce the soul, and wound the conscience.

*What may move us hereunto?*

First, by considering, that a little justly gotten is better then abundance gotten unjustly, *Prov. 16. 8. Psal. 37. 16.*

Secondly, that what is justly gotten is the gift of God, and a pledge of his love; but that which is gotten unjustly, is given in his wrath, and is a snare or the Devil to our destruction.

Thirdly, that as goods justly gotten are Gods gifts, which he blesseth unto us; (*Prov. 10. 22.*) so that which is ill gotten, is lyable to his curse. *Pro 17. 11. Heb. 2. 9.*

*How many ways are goods lawfully gotten?*

Two ways, First, without Contract. Secondly, by Contract. Of Contract, either such as are gotten by our selves, or received from others.

*How gotten by our selves?*

Either ordinarily, or extraordinary. Ordinary getting is by the sweat of our brows in our lawful callings. So that here two things are required. First, a lawful

a lawful calling : and Secondly, that we labour in it. *Eph.* 4. 28.

*What is a lawful calling ?*

It is the setting apart of singular men unto some lawful labour and employment, according to the variety of their gifts, and inclinations, whether they be publick or private. Lawful calling and labour.

*What is in the second place required of every man ?*

That they diligently labour in their lawful calling, (*2 Thef.* 3. 10.) and that variously, according to every mans condition, and the variety of their several callings. For if *Adam* was not to be idle in the state of Innocency; (*Gen.* 2. 15.) much less we after the fall *Gen.* 3. 19.

*What do you call extraordinary getting ?*

That which is acquired by the Law of nature, or the law of Nations: as that which is gotten by the law of Arms, or that which is casually found, being lost of another; unto which men have right, when as by diligent inquiry the owner cannot be known. Extraordinary getting.

*How are goods justly gotten as they are retained from others ?*

When as by a civil right we retain them from others, who are the true and lawful owners: and that either by free gift, or by succession and inheritances; whether it be given unto us by the Testators will, or by law and right do fall unto us.

*What are the vices opposite to the former vertues ?*

All means and kinds of unjust getting, opposite to just acquisitions; whether ordinary or extraordinary.

*What is opposite to ordinary just getting ?*

Inordinate walkings; *2 Thef.* 3. 6, 7, 11. which is opposed either to a lawful calling, or to labour required in it.

*What is opposed to a lawful Calling ?*

Either no Calling at all, or such a Calling as is unlawful. They who have no Calling, are unprofitable burdens to the Common-wealth, and like pernicious humours in the body. What is opposite to a lawful Calling.

*Who are those ?*

First, sturdy beggers and rogues, who can work and will not, but live upon other mens labours: which kind of people are not to be suffered in a Common-wealth. For though we shall have the poor always; (*Deut.* 15. 11. *Mat.* 26. 11.) yet there ought to be no beggers, and inordinate walkers, who eat and labour not. *2 Thef.* 3. 10. 12.

Secondly, idle and superfluous Gentlemen; who having no Calling spend all their time in pleasure, hunting, hawking, revelling, gaming, &c.

Thirdly, such as thrust themselves into such Callings for which they have no right.

*What are unlawful callings ?*

Those that have no warrant out of Gods Word, or the Laws of the Land: as those that live by unlawful Arts; as Whores, Bawds, *Deo.* 23. 17, 18. Witches, Wizards, *Deut.* 18. 11, 12. Stage-players, Bear-wards, Gamesters, and the like.

*What is opposed to lawful labour in our Calling ?*

An idle life: which as it is condemned in the seventh Commandment, as being a cause and incentive of lust; so here, as a companion and cause of theft. *Eph.* 4. 28. *Prov.* 18. 9. For sloth causeth beggery; and this, stealing. *Pro.* 6. 11. & 28. 19. & 30. 9.

*What are the kinds of unjust getting out of Contract ?*

They

- They are two:
1. Theft.
  2. Rapine or Robbery. *Lev.* 19. 13. Both which men may commit either as principals, or accessories.
- What is Theft?*
- Theft. The fraudulent taking of another mans goods, against the knowledge or the will of the owner. Which is the sin that is chiefly forbidden in this Commandment, and comprehendeth under it all the rest; and is a great sin, strictly forbidden by God, *Lev.* 19. 11. and severely punished, *Zech.* 5. 3, 4. *I Cor.* 6. 10. and by our Laws also made Capital.
- What are the kinds of Theft?*
- Domestical theft. They are either Domestical, and in the Family, or out of the Family. Thefts in the Family, are either of the wife, or children, or of servants.
- What is the Theft of the Wife?*
- When she purloineth her Husbands goods, either without his knowledge, or against his will. For howsoever she hath a right unto them in respect of use; yet the propriety belongeth only to the Husband.
- What is the Theft of the Children?*
- When they take away their Parents goods, either without their privity, or against their will. For howsoever children think this to be no Theft; yet *Solomon* saith otherwise. *Pro.* 28. 24. *Who so robbeth his Father or his Mother, and saith it is no transgression; the same is the companion of a destroyer.*
- What is the Theft of Servants?*
- When they are unfaithful, or wastful. Unfaithful, when as they purloin their Masters goods, *Job.* 12. 6. *Tit.* 2. 10. or are idle or negligent in their service; or run away from them, as did *Onesimus*, *Philem.* 12. or give away their goods without their knowledge and consent, though it be to good uses. Wastful, when as they wastfully and riotously consume their Masters substance.
- How is Theft that is committed out of the Family distinguished?*
- Theft committed out of the family. It is either of goods, or of persons. Of goods, either common or sacred: and those, either private or publick. Private, are such goods as belong to private men; whether it be Cattel, money, or any thing that is money-worth.
- What is the Theft of publick things?*
- When things are stolen which belong to the publick State or Body of the Common-Wealth: which is more hainous and capital then that which is committed against a private man. And in this kind inclosures of Commons are to be reputed as theft. *Prov.* 23. 10, 11.
- What is the Theft of sacred things?*
- Sacrilege. When things consecrated to an holy and sacred use, are purloined and embzled: which we usually call Sacrilege. As when the utensils and instruments of divine worship are stolen; when the Lands or Tythes devoted unto God for the maintenance of his Ministers are imbed, withheld, or taken away. *Mal.* 3. 8. In which kind, the chief offenders are corrupt Patrons, who having only the right of presentation of fit persons, do incroach upon part of the Tythes, or sell Church livings for money; and also Proprietaries, who seize upon Church livings devoted to the maintenance of the Ministry, and convert them to their own proper and private use: and finally, the Court Harpies, who seize upon the revenues of the Church, by preferring of unworthy, idle, and ambitious men.
- What do you think of this sin?*

That it is most hainous : seeing such as commit it, rob God himself; (*Mal.* 3. 8.) and thereby bring his heavy curse upon them, *v.* 9. As we see in the example of *Achan, Nebuchadnezzar, Belshazzar, Ananias, Saphira,* and the rest.

*What is the Theft of Persons?*

It is an hainous sin punished by the Law of God with death: (*Exod.* 21. 16. *Deut.* 24. 7.) being so much worse than the theft of goods, as the persons of men are better than they. *Mat.* 6. 25. And this is committed by such as steal men or children, to sell them for slaves; and by lustful or covetous woers, who steal mens daughters to make them their wives.

*You have spoken of Theft so properly called. What is the other kind which is more improper?*

Rapine: which is a violent taking away of another mans goods. And this is done, either under the pretext of Authority and legal power, or else without it. The former are publick Thieves, of which *Solomon* speaketh, *Prov.* 12. 7. which are worse than common thieves, and shall be more severely punished, *Wis.* 6. 6. because their sin is aggravated by the abusing of their Authority; and because commonly violence and cruelty is joynd with it. *Zeph.* 3. 3. *Ezekiel* 22. 27. *Mic.* 3. 2, 3. *Esa.* 3. 14, 15.

*What is this Theft called?*

Oppression, and extortion: when a man spoileth his neighbour under colour of law; as *Abab* and *Jezabel* did *Naboth.* 1 *Kin.* 21.

*What is that rapine which is committed without any pretext of Authority?*

It is either in War or in Peace. In War, either by Land, when Soldiers being not content with their pay, do spoil and plunder, not only their enemies but also their friends. *Deut.* 2. 5, 6. *Luke* 3. 14. Or by Sea, when as Pirates they rob and spoil all they meet with and can master.

*What is that rapine which is exercised on the Land?*

It is either robbery by the high way; (*Luke* 10. 30. *Joh.* 18. 40.) or Burglary, when as they break open houses that they may rob the inhabitants.

*Are there no others to be esteemed thieves but those only who act theft themselves?*

Yes, They also who are accessaries, *Psal.* 50. 18. and do consent to the theft of others. And these thefts are either common to all, or proper to Superiours. The former is committed before, with, or after the theft.

*How is a man an accessary before the theft?*

When he counselleth or provoketh another unto it: as *Jezabel* did *Abab,* 1 *Kings* 21. *Prov.* 1. 11, 13, 14.

*How with, or in the Theft?*

Either when he aideth the Thief, or doth not hinder him when as it is in his power.

*How after the Theft?*

First, When he receiveth, and concealeth what is stolen; or hideth, or keepeth the Thief from being apprehended.

Secondly, When he partaketh with him in the stolen goods. *Prov.* 29. 24. And this is done, 1. When he taketh the goods from the Thief that he may keep them to himself. 2. When he knowingly buyeth stolen goods, which ought to be restored to the owners. 3. When by silence he concealeth the Thief.

*How are the Superiours accessary?*

When they do any ways encourage, or do not punish them: especially when they do acquit them for a bribe.

So much of that acquisition, and getting of goods which is out of Contract.  
Now shew that which is in, or by Contract: And first: what a lawful contract is, and what is required in it?

Acquisition  
by lawful  
Contract.

A Contract is an agreement between parties, by mutual consent about the alienation of goods from one to another, upon some just and honest conditions. And this either respecteth the things themselves, or their use for a time.

*What is required in a lawful Contract?*

That it be done in simplicity add integrity without guile and deceit. Unto which three things are required: First, *truth* in our words. Secondly, *fidelity* in our promises. Thirdly, *justice* in our deeds. *Psal.* 15. 4. *Zach.* 8. 16.

*What is opposed herunto?*

First, All collusion and deceit; whereby one seeketh to circumvent another 1 *Thef.* 4. 6. which is a vice odious unto God, (*Ezek.* 22. 12.) and severely punished. *Psal.* 5. 6. & 55. 23. *Mic.* 7: 2.

Secondly, lyes in contracting the bargain; (*Prov.* 21. 6.) and most of all when they are confirmed by oaths.

Thirdly, Perfidiousness in promises; when covenants are not kept.

Lastly, Injustice in Contracts; when equality is not observed.

*What are the sorts of the things gotten by Contract?*

They are either of things alienated, or committed to trust: and the former is either liberal or illiberal.

Acquisition  
by liberal a-  
lienation.

*What is liberal alienation?*

It is either for ever, or only for a certain time. For ever, as when things are given absolutely, or upon certain conditions.

*What is liberal alienation for a time?*

When as things are lent for a time; either to be restored in the same, or in the like kind; as money, corn, and such like.

*What is opposed herunto?*

When the Borrower being able doth not pay all, or not at the appointed time; or doth not do his best endeavour to pay it. *Psal.* 37. 21.

*What is that acquisition which you call illiberal alienation?*

Acquisition  
by liberal a-  
lienation.

That which is made by way of recompence, or exchange: which is either of the thing it self, or the use of it, or of labour and industry. In which the general rule to be observed is, that there be an equal and just proportion in the recompence or exchange, between the things exchanged: as between the price and thing prized, the industry, labour and reward.

*What is opposite herunto?*

When as this just proportion is not observed.

*What are the kinds of the alienation of the thing it self?*

They are two: either that which is for ever, or that which is only for a certain time.

*What do you call alienation for ever?*

Merchandise.

Merchandise; which consisteth in buying and selling: and it is a commutation either of money for ware, which is buying; or of ware for money, which is selling.

*What do you think of it?*

I hold that Merchandise is a lawful calling, but liable to much danger of sin in the managing of it. *Ecclus.* 26. and *last.* 27. 1, 2. *Hof.* 12. 7. *Mat.* 21. 12, 13.

*What is selling?*

A contract

A contract about the alienation of goods for ever at a certain price agreed upon between the seller and the buyer, without any fraud or guile.

*What is required in just selling?*

First, in respect of the person: that he be the just owner, or by him appointed to sell in his right.

Secondly, in respect of the goods: that it be saleable, and neither sophisticated by mixture, nor base and corrupt in respect of the substance.

Thirdly, in respect of use: that it be profitable for necessity of life, or for ornament and delight.

Fourthly, in respect of the manner of selling: that it be without any deceit.

Fifthly, that it be sold in a just and equal price, according to the worth: respect being had both to the use of the thing itself, and also to the necessary pains and danger which the Seller hath been at in getting of it.

*What is required to the manner of lawful selling?*

That it be done with simplicity and integrity; and that we do not in bargaining defraud and over reach one another. 1 *Thes.* 4. 6. *Levit.* 24. 14.

*What are the vices and corruptions in selling, opposite hereto?*

They are many: and concern either the Seller himself, The Ware or things sold, the price or the manner of selling.

Vices and corruptions in selling.

*What are the vices which respect the person of the seller?*

First, when as he selleth that which is not his own.

Secondly, when as he selleth that which is not vendible. As, first, when it is defective and faulty, or not useful. Secondly, when as it is such a thing as ought not to be sold: as *Gebazi*, 2 *Ki.* 5. 20. did with the miracle of healing, wrought by divine power; and when Magistrates for bribes sell justice. *Amos.* 2. 6. *Esa.* 5. 23. & 1. 23. Thirdly, when men by lying and false-witness-bearing sell the truth; in which rank Lawyers are chiefly to be numbred, who wittingly for fees plead ill causes.

*How doth the seller offend in respect of the price?*

When as he observeth not a just and equal proportion between the price, and the worth of the thing sold. And this is the vice either of private men, or of whole societies. Private men who thus offend, are those which we call Regraters, Monopolists, hoarders up of Corn, and other commodities, to raise the Market by making a dearth and scarcity. *Prov.* 11. 26.

*How do whole societies in this kind offend?*

First, when as they of the same Trade and Craft agree together to sell their wares at an unequal rate above the true worth.

Secondly, not to finish the work which another hath begun, though he dealeth deceitfully and unjustly with his work-Master.

*What are the sins committed by the Seller in respect of the manner?*

They may be referred to two heads; either his Words or Deeds.

*How offendeth he in Words?*

First, when as he immoderately praifeth his wares above their true worth; and concealeth the faults and defects in them which he well knoweth.

Secondly, when as he asketh much above the worth, and protesteth that he cannot afford it better cheap.

*How doth he offend in his Deeds?*

Either in respect of the kind, quality, or quantity of his wares. In respect of the kind, when as he selleth one thing for another, or one colour for another; presuming on the ignorance of the buyer.

*How in respect of the quality?*

When as he deceitfully selleth old for new, that which is corrupt and sophisticated for that which is pure and simple, and bad for good. To which end he useth many arts, and false lights, and shewing course and bad wares, to commend those for the best which he sheweth after, though they be but a little better.

*How in respect of the Quantity?*

When he detracteth from the just and equal proportion, by using false weights and measures not agreeable to Standard; using less and lighter when they sell, and larger and heavier when they buy: which God forbiddeeth as abominable. *Lev.* 19. 35, 36. *Deut.* 25. 14, 15. *Prov.* 11. 1. & 20. 10, 23. *Hof.* 12. 2. *Amos* 8. 5, *Mic.* 6. 10, 11.

*You have spoken of Selling. Now what is that alienation which is by buying?*

Of buying & what is required unto it.

Buying is a contract, whereby money or a just price is alienated and parted with for wares of proportionable worth.

*What is required in buying?*

Things answerable to those before spoken of in selling: and respect; first the person buying. Secondly, the thing bought. Thirdly, the price given. And fourthly, the manner of buying.

*What is required in respect of the person buying?*

That he buy only of him whom he thinketh to be the right owner of the thing sold. For he that buyeth known stolen goods, communicateth in the theft.

*What in respect of the thing?*

That he buy that only which he knoweth may be lawfully bought and sold.

*How do men sin in this respect?*

When as they offer to buy, with *Simon Magus*, spiritual gifts and graces, or things consecrated to divine worship; that they may alienate them from their right use; pardons, and Indulgences, sacred Ordination, Benefices, and the like.

Secondly, they which buy justice, and much more injustice, by bribery.

Thirdly, they that buy lies and false testimonies to prevent justice.

*What is required of the buyer in respect of the price?*

That according to his knowledge and judgment he give a just, equal, and proportionable price, according to the true value of the things sold, and bought. Especially when he buyeth of the poor, who are by present necessity enforced to sell, whether it be wares or labour: upon which if any take advantage to bear down the just price, they grievously oppress the poor. *Amos* 8. 6. & 2. 6. *Mic.* 2. 2, 3.

*What is required of Buyers in respect of the manner?*

That they use all simplicity, and upright dealing; and shun all injustice and deceit, both in their words and deeds.

*How in words?*

First, that they do not offer much under the true value of the wares they buy according to their knowledge and judgment.

Secondly, that they do not undeservedly dispraise it, and without cause, to beat down the price; yea, even when they inwardly like and approve it. *Prov.* 20. 14.

*How in deeds?*

When as they do not pay at all, or less than the price that was agreed upon.



upon. And this deceit respecteth either the quality, when as they put off in payment base and adulterate mony; or in quantity, when as they pass for payment clipt many, (*Gen. 33. 16.*) or such as is defective in weight or number; And to these private thefts in buying, we may add one that is more publick; when as the buyer buyeth up and ingrosseth a whole commodity; that having all in his own hand, he may raise the market, and sell at what rate he listeth.

*Hitherto of that liberal alienation which is for ever. What is that which is only for a time?*

It is called pawning. Which is a contract whereby the dominion and right of a mans goods is alienated from the owner to another man, only for a time, upon some condition agreed upon between the parties: which condition being not observed, the right of the thing belongeth to the receiver, at least so long till it be performed. And this pawning is either of moveables, and is called properly pawning; or of immoveables; and is called mortgaging.

Of pawning, and what is required unto it.

*What is his duty who layeth a thing to pawn?*

First, to provide, that the thing pawned be at least of equal worth to that for which it is pawned.

Secondly, that he redeem it at the appointed time.

*What is his duty that receiveth a pawn?*

First, that if the party be poor, and the thing pawned necessary to the preservation of life; that either he do not receive it, or that he do restore it to the owner when his necessity requireth it. *Deut. 24. 6. and 24. 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15. Exod. 22. 26.*

Secondly, that if the borrower be not able to restore it at the appointed time, he do not use extremity, nor take advantage upon his necessity, to make him forfeit the thing pawned; but at the most, provide only for his own indemnity. *Ezek. 18. 7, 12. & 33. 15.*

*So much of the illiberal Alienation of the thing it self. Now what is the illiberal Alienation only of the use?*

This contract of Alienation concerning only the use, is either location and letting, which is the alienation of the thing for hire: or hiring and conducting, which is the alienation of the hire for the use of the thing.

Of Location and Letting.

*What is Location or Letting?*

It is a contract, whereby only the use of a thing, and not the interest and dominion, is alienated from the owner to another, for hire and wages agreed upon, and that only for a certain time. And therefore, by this contract, the same individual is to be returned.

*What is his duty that letteth?*

1. That he require an equal and proportionable price for the thing he letteth.

2. That he letteth only such things as are useful to him that hireth them.

3. That he do not exact any recompence for any hurt with happeneth to the thing hired, which cometh not by the fault or negligence of him that hireth it. *Exod. 22. 11,*

*What is conduction or hiring?*

It is a contract whereby a man getteth the use of a thing for a certain time, for a just price or reward.

Of conduction and hiring

*What is the duty that thus hireth any thing?*

First, that he use the thing hired only for that end and purpose to which he hired it.

Secondly,

Secondly, that he use it no worse than if it were his own.

Thirdly, that he restore it to the owner at the time agreed upon.

Lastly, that he restore whole and sound the thing hired; or if through his fault or negligence it have received any hurt, that he give to the owner a valuable recompence. *Exod.* 22. 12.

*What is that we call Usury?*

Of Usury.

It is a lending in expectation of certain gain.

*What do you think of it?*

If you speak of that properly, which the Scriptures forbid and condemn; it is a wicked and unlawful contract, into which as a common sink, the filth of many other sins and unlawful contracts do run: a fruitful womb, in which many vices and corruptions are bred; and by which if we live and dye in it without repentance, we are excluded out of the Kingdom of Heaven. *Psal.* 15. 5. & *Ezek.* 18. 8. & 22. 13.

*But there is much question what this Usury is, which the Scripture condemneth?*

Therefore it shall be our wisdom in matters concerning our salvation to take the surest and safest course: and that is, wholly to forbear it, and not to put our souls, which are of more value than the whole world, upon nice disputes and subtil distinctions. *Mark.* 8. 36.

*Ten have spoken of that alienation which is in illiberal Contracts, in respect of the things themselves, or the use of them. Now what is that alienation which is for recompence of care, labour, and industry?*

These Contracts are either publick or private. The private are either in the Common-wealth, between the Magistrate and people; or in the Church, between the Ministers and people.

*What is the Contract between the Magistrate and people?*

Of Contracts  
between Ma-  
gistrates and  
people.

That the Magistrates should receive from them their stipends, tribute, and maintenance; and the people from them, and by them, protection, direction, and peaceable government.

*What then is the Magistrates duty to the People?*

That he faithfully bestow all his labour and industry, his care and diligence, that he may in the Lord Govern the people committed to his charge; and direct, correct, and protect them for the common good. *Rom.* 13. 4. *Psal.* 78. 71, 72. And if they have their reward and neglect their duty, they are guilty of theft, and sin against this Commandment. *Ezek.* 34. 2, 3.

*What is the peoples duty to them?*

That they faithfully pay unto them their tribute and due, as an honourable reward of their pains and care. *Mat.* 22. 21. *Rom.* 13. 7.

*What is the publick Contract between Ministers and People?*

Of Contracts  
between Mi-  
nisters and  
people.

That the Ministers receive their portion and maintenance from the people or rather from God himself, feed the people committed to their charge with the bread of life; faithfully preaching the Word and administering the Sacraments, and shining before them by an holy example and the light of a godly life, seeking rather them than theirs. *2 Tim.* 4. 1, 2. *2 Cor.* 12. 14.

*What is this theft?*

1. When he receiveth his reward, and neglecteth his duty. As when he presseth into his Calling uncalled, by the window and not by the door: (*Jeh.* 10. 1.) being neither qualified with gifts, nor willing to employ those he hath for the good of the people.

2. When he feedeth himself and not the people; eating the milk and clothing

ing himself with the wool, but neglecting the flock. *Ezek.* 34. 2, 3. *Zach.* 11. 15. 17.

3. When for gain he either preacheth false doctrine, or concealeth the truth. *Mic.* 3. 11.

*What is the duty of the people?*

That receiving spiritual things from their Ministers, they communicate and impart unto them their carnal things. *1 Cor.* 9. 10.

*What is the peoples theft?*

When receiving these spiritual things, they defraud them of their dues, and withhold from them their means and maintenance which the Laws of God and Man do allot unto them. Which is not only theft but even Sacrilege; and the robbing of God himself. *Malac.* 3. 8.

*What is that alienation which is in private Contracts?*

When as men employ others to do their work upon promise of reward; or any ways to use their gifts and abilities, their care, industry and labour; for a just recompence. Of Workma-  
sters and hire-  
lings, and  
their duties.

*What is required of such as thus employ others?*

1. That they give an equal and proportionable recompence to those whom they thus hire. *1 Tim.* 5. 18.

2. That they pay it without delay: especially to the poor who are not able, nor willing to forbear it. *Deut.* 24. 14, 15. *Lev.* 19. 13.

*What then is their Theft?*

When either they give not an equal and just recompence, or delay to pay it to the poor who are unable to forbear it. *Jam.* 5. 4.

*What are the duties of the mercenary or hireling?*

1. That he require no more than such wages as is equal and proportionable to his skill care and labour.

2. That he do his work that hireth him, faithfully and dilligently.

*You have spoken of such Contracts as respect Alienation and change. Now what are those which are of things committed to trust?*

They are either of things committed to others only for safe custody, or such as are committed to Feoffees of trust for uses appointed, or such as by last will are entrusted to Executors. Of things de-  
posited and  
committed to  
trust.

*What is the nature of things deposited?*

When neither the dominion and right, nor the use of the thing is alienated, but only the safe custody is committed to a man.

*What is his duty?*

That he safely keep that which is committed to his trust, and willingly restore it to the owner when he calleth for it.

*What is his Theft?*

First, When he converteth the thing committed to his keeping unto his own use.

Secondly, when he will not restore it to the owner when he desireth to have it.

*But what if the things deposited were stoln, or become worse?*

If it be by his default that had the keeping of them, he is to make it good: but if by oath he can clear himself of all unfaithfulness and negligence, the owner and not he must bear the loss. *Exod.* 22. 7, 8.

*What is the duty of Fiduciaries and Executors?*

That they faithfully discharge their trust, and do their will (and not their own) who have reposed confidence in them. The duty of  
Executors.

*How do they offend?*

When they fail in their trust; and aim more at their own profit, than at the performing of their will who have entrusted them, or the faithful discharge of their duty. Theft.

*These are duties which respect things committed to trust. What say you of persons thus intrusted?*

Of persons committed to trust.

Those are Pupils, and children in their nonage: who being unable to govern, direct, protect, and order themselves, are by the Laws of God and man, committed to the care and tuition of others.

*What is the duty of their Tutors and Guardians?*

That they carry themselves towards them faithfully, according to the trust reposed in them; and like Parents aim chiefly at the good of their Pupils and Wards, and not their own gain and profit. *Est.* 2. 7. remembering that they shall one day be called to give an account of these persons committed to their charge and trust, and of all the goods belonging unto them.

*So much of just getting goods. Now in the order propounded we are come to the just possession and retention of them. What is required unto this just possession?*

Of just possession of goods, and what is required unto it.

Two things.

First, the keeping of our own goods.

Secondly, The restitution of that which justly belongeth to others.

*What doth this Commandment require of us in the former respect?*

That we be not wanting to the just preservation, not only of our neighbours, but also of our own goods.

*How prove you this?*

Because our goods are Gods Talents, committed unto us; of which we must give an account to our great Lord and Master. And therefore if through our own fault and negligence we suffer them to be lost, or to be taken unjustly from us; we rob our selves, and the poor also, who have right unto that which we can well spare from our own uses.

*What doth this Commandment require concerning restitution of other mens goods?*

Of Restitution, and what is to be considered in it.

That we readily restore those goods, which either we have unjustly gotten from the right owners, or which we cannot justly retain.

*How do you prove that goods unjustly gotten ought to be restored?*

Both by Gods Precepts, the examples of the godly, and necessary reasons. For the first, God strictly requireth, that if any thing be unjustly gotten, as either by violence, or by fraud and deceit, or any other ways, restitution be made to the true owner. *Levit.* 6. 2. 3. 4. 5. *Numb.* 5. 6, 7, 8.

*By what examples do you evince it?*

Before the Law, by the example of *Jacob* and his sons. *Gen.* 43. 12. 21. Under the law; by the profession of *Samuel*, *1 Sam.* 12. 4. and the practice of *Micah*, *Judges* 17. 2. who though an Idolater, made conscience of it. And of the Jews, *Nehem.* 5. 11. 12. And under the Gospel we have the example of *Zacchaeus*, *Luk.* 19. 8. Yea *Judas* himself being convinced of his sin, maketh restitution: so that they herein are worse than *Judas* who refuse to do it.

*What reason have you for it?*

Because it is a duty necessarily to be performed by all that hope for salvation. For without restitution we can neither have any true faith to persuade us that our sin of theft is remitted, nor any sincere Repentance. For God pardons no sin which we will pertinaciously retain and live in, *Prov.* 28. 13. But he that restoreth not ill gotten goods, liveth still in his theft, and repenteth not of it: seeing restitution is an inseparable fruit of repentance. *Ezek.* 33. 15.

*But what is to be considered in this restitution?*

Four things.

First, who is to make it: namely every man who hath gotten any thing unjustly, either by force or fraud, by contract or out of contract, by calumny, and false accusation, by lying, oppression, or any other evil course. *Luke 19. 8. Numb. 5. 6. Levit. 6. 2, 3.*

Secondly, to whom restitution is to be made: namely, to him who is wronged, defrauded, or oppressed. *Lev. 6. 5.* or to his kindred if he be dead, or if none such can be found, to pious uses.

Thirdly, how much ought to be restored: to wit, all the whole that is unjustly gotten if he be able, or at least so much to the uttermost as he is able. Yea the law of God required, that to the principal a fifth part should be added. *Lev. 6. 5. Numb. 5. 7.* And even equity it self requireth, that beside the principal it self, so much more should be added as the party is damnified by this unjust detension of his goods.

Fourthly, when this restitution ought to be made: namely, not at the end of our lives or after our death; but as soon as we repent, and desire at God's hands that our sin should be forgiven. We must confess, bewail and forsake our sin, that God may be reconciled unto us: and then we must make satisfaction to our wronged neighbour. *Mat. 5. 23, 24.*

*What are the things, which though they be justly gotten, yet are unjustly detained?*

Such things as others having lost, we have found. For such things come unto us by the disposing of God's providence, and we may justly keep them till we can find out the true owners: so that we make diligent inquiry after them, with a resolution to restore what we have thus found, when we know to whom they belong. *Deut. 22. 3. Exod. 23. 4.*

*Hitherto of the duties which belong to just getting and possessing of goods.*

*Now what is required to the right use of them?*

Two things: Fruition, in respect of our selves; and Communication, in respect of others. *Prov. 5. 15, 16.*

Of the right use and fruition of goods.

*What is required to the former?*

That we thankfully and comfortably enjoy God's blessings, which he hath bestowed on us. *Eccles. 5. 17, 18.*

*How must this be done?*

By exercising two virtues. The first is Parsimony or thriftiness: whereby we honestly keep and preserve our goods, that they be not vainly and unprofitably mispent. *John 6. 12. Prov. 27. 23, to 28.*

Of Parsimony and frugality.

The second is Frugality: whereby we dispose of our goods justly and honestly gotten, to fit and necessary uses, in a sober and moderate manner.

*What virtues then must here concur in the right use of our goods?*

These four

1. Justice in getting them.
2. Thriftiness in keeping them.
3. Frugality in enjoying them.
4. Liberality in communicating them.

For without justice, parsimony degenerateth into covetousness; Frugality without liberality, into fordid miserliness; Liberality without parsimony and frugality, into prodigality.

*What vices are opposed to these virtues?*

Two:

1. Tenacity, or fordid gripingness.  
Secondly, profusion and wastfulness.

*What is Tenacity?*

Of tenacity  
and miserli-  
ness.

A kind of covetousness which restraineth men, both from communicating their goods to others, and from enjoying themselves. *Ecc. 6. 2. & 6. 10.*

11.

*Wherein do such offend?*

By committing a double theft.

First against their neighbours: seeing God hath not made them absolute owners of their riches, but Stewards, who must dispose of them also for the good of others; which if they do not, they rob them of their right. *Jam. 5.*

1, 2, 3.

Secondly, against themselves: in defrauding their own souls of the use of those blessings which God hath allowed them, *Ecc. 4. 8.*

*What do you think of such Misers?*

First, that none are more wicked; seeing they are neither good for themselves, nor others. *Eccles. 4. 8. & 5. 12, 13, 14.*

Secondly, more poor; seeing though they possess much, yet they enjoy nothing: and want as well what they have, as what they have not.

Thirdly, none more foolish; seeing they want for fear of wanting, and live poor that they may dye rich.

Fourthly, none more wretched; seeing they deprive themselves both of the comforts of this life, and the joys of the life to come.

*What is the other extrem?*

Profusion and  
Prodigality.

Profusion and wastfulness. And this is two fold: either in spending above their means in unnecessary expences; whereby they either ruine their estates, or expose themselves to the devils tentations, in using unlawful means to recover that which they have wastfully mispent.

Or secondly, in wasting their goods in dishonest and riotous courses, tending to luxury and ryot; whereby they necessitate themselves to use all unlawful means to get so much more wealth as may serve to maintain their riotous expences. And so luxury becometh the mother of Covetousness; and Covetousness the nurse of Luxuriousness.

*What is the use of goods respecting others?*

It is by communication or liberal alienation of them for the use and benefit of others.

*What virtues are hereunto required?*

Of Liberali-  
ty.

Two: Liberality and Justice. Liberality; whereby we communicate our goods with a ready and cheerful mind. Justice; whereby we thus communicate that only which is our own. And these must go hand in hand; and are therefore conjoined by *Solomon, Proverbs 21. 21.*

*What are the kinds of liberal alienation?*

They are two. For it is for a certain time only, or for ever.

*What is that which is only for a certain time?*

Of lending.

It is either a liberal alienation of the use only of a thing for a certain time, or of the dominion also, and that freely, without any expectation of recompence. For both these ought to be liberal, respecting only the profit of the receiver: and secondly, just; to which is required that which is lent be his own who lendeth it, and fit for his use who borroweth it. And this duty is commended, *Psal. 112. 5.* and commanded, *Deut. 16. 7. 8. Mat. 5. 42.*

*Luke. 6. 35.*

*What*

*What is that alienation which is for ever ?*

It is free giving : when as goods are alienated from the true owner unto <sup>Of free gi-</sup> another liberally, and without expectation of any recompence. *2 Cor. 9. 7.* <sup>ving.</sup>  
*Act 20. 35.*

*What is further required to it ?*

That it be not only free, but also just ; giving that only which is a mans own and not anothers, which were no better than theft. As when a man by lavish giving defraudeth his children of their inheritance, or giveth his goods or lands from his daughters to strangers, or remote kindred of his name, because he hath no sons to continue it.

Secondly, that we make good choice of those upon whom we confer benefits, either for their worth or indigency ; but especially we must give and do good to those who are of the household of faith. *Gal. 6. 10.*

*What are the uses unto which we must freely contribute ?*

They are either publick or private : and the publick are either Civil or Ecclesiastical.

*What are the Civil ?*

When as we freely give our goods for the service, preservation and benefit of the Common wealth, both in the time of Peace and War. To which uses we must give freely, to the uttermost of our ability : yea, even above it, when the necessity of the State requireth it ; seeing the good of the whole body must be preferred before the good of any particular member. *2 Sam. 17. 27, 28, 29.*

*What are the Ecclesiastical ?*

When as we give freely for the maintenance of the Ministry, and means of Gods Worship, tending to the Salvation of our souls. To which uses we must give so much the more cheerfully, as the soul is to be preferred before the body, or outward estate. *Luk. 10. and last. Prov. 3. 9.* An example whereof we have in the Israelites, *Exod. 36. 5, 6. 1 Chro. 29. 9.* And if they were so free and liberal in giving towards the building of the Tabernacle and Temple : how much more should we towards the building of God's spiritual Houses and Temples for the holy Ghost ?

*What are the private uses ?*

For the benefit and relief of private men, whose necessity doth require it of us according to our abilities. And these are those Alms-deeds, and other works of mercy, unto which the Apostle exhorteth, *Heb. 13. 16.* and are partly fruits of mercy, and partly of brotherly love and Christian Charity.

*Hitherto you have spoken of the duties respecting our own and our neighbours person, both in regard of life in the sixth, and of Chastity in the seventh ; as also our own and their goods in the eighth. Now what is the ninth Commandment ?*

**Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy Neighbour.**  
*Exod. 20. 16.*

The ninth  
 Command-  
 ment.

What is the main scope and end, at which God aimeth in this Command-  
 ment ? The scope or  
 end.

The conservation of truth amongst men, and of our own and our Neigh-  
 bours fame and good name.

*Why doth God so much regard truth ?*

Because it is most dear unto him. For he is the God of truth, *Deut.* 32. 4. *Psal.* 31. 5. yea truth it self, *Job.* 14. 6. Therefore Christ came into the world, that he might bear witness unto the truth, *Joh.* 18. 37. and by speaking the truth God is glorified. *Joh.* 7. 19.

*Why doth he respect so much our fame and good name ?*

Because it is his own good gift ; and therefore he taketh care to preserve that unto us, which himself hath given.

*What was the occasion of this Commandment ?*

The occasion of this Commandment.

First, our natural corruption, which maketh us prone to lying *Psa.* 58. 3. *Ro.* 3. 4. as appeareth hereby, in that we no sooner speak than lye, and not only for advantage, but without any cause, out of meer vanity.

Secondly, out of a natural disposition men are ready to trespass against the fame and good name of others ; and this ariseth out of meer envy and pride, which maketh us ready to abase others to advance our selves.

*What is the thing that is here chiefly forbidden ?*

The chief fin here forbidden.

That we should not in legal proceedings and Courts of justice give a false testimony concerning our neighbours: as appeareth by the words expressly used, *Thou shalt not answer a false testimony concerning thy Neighbour*; which implies a precedent question or examination. Unless we will say that answering is here used for speaking or saying, as it is oftentimes ; *Mat.* 11. 25. *Luk.* 14. 3. 5. *Mar.* 28. 5. and then the meaning is, that we must not give a false testimony of our neighbour either publicly or privately, whether it be with or against him. Or if we had rather take it of legal testimonies in Courts of Justice, then by a *Synecdoche* we must under this one kind understand all other kinds of false testimonies: but this is here named as the chief, and of all the rest most hurtful and pernicious, to comprehend under it all the rest, as it is in the other commandments.

*What then is the negative part of this Commandment ?*

The negative part.

It generally forbiddeth all false, vain, and offensive speeches concerning our neighbour; whether it be for or against him, whether in Judgment or out of Judgment: although principally here are forbidden all false testimonies which tend to the prejudice of the fame or state of our neighbours; or more briefly, it forbiddeth all fallity and untruth; especially that which is prejudicial to our neighbour in any respect, or to our selves.

*What doth the affirmative part require ?*

The affirmative part.

Two things: the conservation of the *truth*, and of our own and neighbours *good name*; with all duties of the tongue homogeneal and of the same nature and kind, with all helps and means tending herunto.

*Why are our words and speeches so much to be regarded, seeing they are but wind, as is commonly supposed ?*

Great care is to be had of our speech, seeing it is an excellent faculty peculiar to man ; and being a special gift of God, it must not be abused to God's dishonour and our own destruction. Neither are words slightly to be regarded, seeing we must give account of every idle word ; and by our words we shall be justified or condemned. And the wife man telleth us, *that death and life are in the power of the tongue*, *Prov.* 18. 21. and that a *wholesome tongue is a tree of life*, whereas an *evil tongue is an unruly evil, and full of deadly poison*, *Jam.* 3. 8. which if we do not subdue and rule, whatsoever profession we make of Religion, it is all in vain. *Jam.* 1. 26.

*What is the sum of the duties of the tongue here required ?*

That



That our speeches be both true and charitable: for these must inseparably go together. For charity rejoiceth in truth, 1 Cor. 13. 6. and the truth must be spoken in love, Ep. 4. 15. For truth without love savourth of malice; and charity without truth is false, vain, and foolish.

The sum of the duties here required

*Unto what heads then are these duties of the Tongue required in this Commandment, to be referred?*

Unto two: 1. The conservation of truth amongst men. 2. The conservation of our own and our neighbours fame and good name.

*What have you to say concerning truth?*

Two things. First, what the truth is. Secondly, the means of conserving it.

Of truth.

*What is to be considered in truth it self?*

Three things. First, what it is? Secondly, whether it be to be professed? Thirdly, after what manner?

*What is truth or veracity?*

It is an habit of speaking that which is true from our hearts Psal. 15. 2.

*What is required hereunto?*

Two things. First, that our speech be agreeable to our minds.

Secondly, that our minds be agreeable to the thing. For though we speak that which is true, yet if we think it false, we are lyars; because our tongue agreeth not with our minds: and if that we speak be false, and yet we think it true, we do not speak truly. For though truth be in our hearts, yet a lye is in our mouths: and though we cannot be called lyars, because we speak as we think, yet may we be said to tell a lye, because that we say is false.

*What great necessity is there of this truth?*

Very great. For if speech be necessary, (as all confes) then also speaking truth; without which there would be no use of speech. For take away truth, and it were better that we were dumb, than that we should be endued with this faculty of speaking.

*What other motives are there to embrace it?*

Because it is both commended and commanded in the Scripture. It is commended as a vertue which God greatly loveth; as a note of a Citizen of heaven, Psal. 15. 2. and of one who shall be established for ever, Prov. 12. 19. It is commanded, Eph. 4. 25. Zach. 8. 16, 19.

*Is it only sufficient to know the truth and believe it?*

No: we must also upon all fit occasions profess it with our mouths. Rom. 10. 9, 10. Mat. 10. 32, 33.

*How must the truth be professed?*

Freely and simply.

*How it is done freely?*

When as we profess it willingly and undauntedly; so far forth as the matter, place, and time do require. So Dan. 3. 16, 17, 18. Act. 4. 8, 10, 13.

*How is it done simply?*

When as it is done without guile and dissimulation, shifts or shuffles.

*What are the vices opposite to truth?*

They are two. First, falsity and lying. Secondly, vanity, or an habit of lying.

Opposites to truth.

*What is lying?*

It is twofold, First, when we speak that which is false.

Lying.

Secondly, when we speak that which is true, falsely, and with a mind to deceive.

What?

*What is it to speak that which is false ;*

When as you do not speak as the thing is ; whether we think it true or false.

*What is it to speak falsely ?*

When as we do not speak as we think ; whether the thing be true or false.

*What are the reasons which may dissuade from lying ?*

Reasons to  
dissuade from  
lying.

1. Because God is true and the Author of truth ; and the Devil a liar, and the Father of lyes : and as truth maketh us like unto God, so lyes make us like unto the Devil.

2. Because it is strictly forbidden in the Scriptures. *Exod. 23. 7. Col. 3. 9. Eph. 4. 25.*

3. Because the lye sinneth grievously, not only against his Neighbour, but also against God himself. *Lev. 6. 2.*

4. Because the Scriptures condemn lying as the spawn of the old serpent, *Job. 8. 44.* and as a thing abominable and odious unto God. *Prov. 12. 22. & 6. 16, 17.*

5. Because it perverteth the use of speech, taketh away all credit and faith between man and man, and quite overthroweth all humane society ; which cannot stand without contracts and commerce, nor they without truth.

Lastly, because God severely punisheth lyes, *Prov. 19. 5, 9. Psal. 5. 6. Acts 5. 1, 2, 3. &c.* and that both in this life with infamy and disgrace ; (for it maketh a man esteemed base and of no credit ; so that the usual liar is not believed when he speaketh truth, *Ecclesi. 34. 4.*) and in the life to come. For it excludeth out of Heaven, *Apoc. 22. 15.* and casteth men into that lake which burneth with fire and brimstone. *chap. 21. 8.*

*How are lye usually distinguished ?*

Three sorts of  
Lyes.

Into three sorts, 

}	Pernicious	}	Lyes.
	Officious		
	Merry		

*What are merry lyes ?*

Such as are spoken only to delight the hearers, and make sport.

*Are such to be condemned as sinful, seeing they do no man hurt ?*

Yes verily. For first, the Scriptures condemn not only false, but also all vain speeches, *Mat. 12. 36.*

Secondly, Because they are against truth ; and cannot be spoken without impeaching of it.

Thirdly, lyes must not be spoken to delight Princes, who have most cause of care and trouble. *Hos. 7. 3.*

Fourthly, lyes must not be spoken for profit ; and therefore much less for delight.

*What are officious lyes ?*

Such as are spoken either for our own or our neighbours profit, and do not hurt any man.

*Are such lyes unlawful likewise ?*

Yes surely, and upon the same grounds. For though we may buy the truth at a dear purchase ; yet we must not sell it at any rate. *Prov. 23. 23.* And if it be unlawful to lye in the cause of God, because it hath no need to be supported by our lyes : (*Job. 13. 7, 8.*) much less for our own or our neighbours profit.

*What do you call vanity in lying ?*

When men by a corrupt custome are so habituated to lying, that they will lye for every cause ; yea even for no cause, and when they might attain their ends as well and easily by speaking truth.

*What*

*What vices are opposite to freedom and liberty in speaking the truth?*

They are either in the excess, or in the defect.

*What in the excess?*

Vices opposite to freedom of speech.

Unreasonable and indiscreet profession of the truth, with the danger or loss of our selves or others; when neither the glory of God, nor our own or our neighbours good doth require it. And in such cases our Saviour himself would not profess the truth; though he were pressed unto it by his malicious enemies: (*Joh. 18. 20, 21.*) because he should thereby have but cast Pearls before Swine; contrary to his own doctrine. *Mat. 7. 6.*

*What is opposite in defect?*

When either out of a cowardly fear, or some other sinister respect, we deny the truth in our words, or betray it by our silence. Of the former we have an example in *Peter, Mat. 26.* of the other in those weak Christians. *2 Tim. 4. 16.*

*But it is not sometime lawful to conceal the truth?*

Yes surely: when neither the glory of God, nor our own or our neighbours good do require the profession of it; but yet with this caution, that we do not speak any untruth to conceal it. *1 Sam. 16. 2, 5.*

*What is opposed to simplicity in speaking the truth?*

Simulation or double dealing. Which is two-fold: either in our words, or deeds.

Opposites to simplicity of speaking truth.

*What is that in our words?*

When we speak one thing, and think another; or speak with an heart and a heart in the Scripture phrase, *Psalms 12. 2.* This is called a deceitful tongue and mouth, *Zeph. 3. 13.* and a tongue that frameth deceit, *Psal. 50. 19.* as it is described. *Psal. 52. 2. Jer. 9. 8, 9.* The which is to be avoyded, *Psal. 34. 13.* and Christs example to be imitated. *1 Pet. 2. 22.*

*What is simulation in our Deeds?*

When as one thing is pretended, and another thing is intended. So *Joab* killed *Abner* and *Amasa*, under pretence of friendship. But howsoever this is esteemed policy with men, yet it is odious to God. *Psal. 5, 6.* and punished with immature death. *Psal. 55. 23.*

*You have spoken of truth it self, and the opposites unto it, now shew what are the means of it?*

They are of two sorts.

First, that it may be amongst men.

Secondly, that it may have a profitable being.

Means of preserving truth.

*What is required to the being of it?*

Two things.

First, that it may be known.

Secondly, that being known, it may be preserved.

*What is required to the knowing of it?*

Two things.

First, a love of the truth.

Secondly, teachableness.

*What is the love of truth?*

First, when as men are so affected towards the truth; that they study with all their endeavour to get it, but will not sell it at any price. *Prov. 23. 23.*

Secondly, when as they are willing to defend it upon all occasions. *Eccles.*

First, love of lies: which excludeth out of heaven. *Apoc.* 22 15.

Secondly, voluntary ignorance. *2 Pet.* 3. 5.

*What is opposite to the defence of truth?*

When as it is deserted or opposed.

*What is teachableness?*

A fruit of the love of truth: when as men are ready and willing to admit the truth, and to give place to better reasons. *Acts* 17. 11.

*What is further required to the preserving of truth?*

That we be constant, and not carried away with every wind of doctrine, *Eph.* 4. 14. And these two virtues must concur: for teachableness without constancy degenerateth into levity and vain credulity; and constancy without teachableness into pertinacy.

*What are the means of the profitable being of truth amongst men?*

Profitable speech: which is accompanied and furthered with curtesie and civility, and remedied with silence.

*When is our speech profitable?*

Profitable  
speech.

First, when it advanceth God's glory, either in respect of the matter of it, or the end. The matter; when as we praise God, and celebrate his glory, *Psal.* 50. 23. *Eph.* 5. 4. *Jam.* 5. 13. And God's glory is the end of our speech; when as it is chiefly referred thereunto.

*How do our speech tend to our neighbours profit?*

First and chiefly, when it tendeth to his spiritual good and edification; as instructing the ignorant, counselling them that need counsel, comforting the afflicted, strengthening the weak, exhorting the sluggish, admonishing them that err, and rebuking them who wilfully offend.

Secondly, when it tendeth to his temporal profit: either for his honest delight in a witty and facetious way called Urbanity; (which may be called the sawce that seasoneth truth, *2 Cor.* 12. 15) or for his profit, when as it hath some necessary use for the good of his body or state.

*What is the means of furthering this profitable truth in our speeches?*

Courtesie and  
affability.

Courtesie and affability: which is a virtue whereby we are easily drawn to communicate with others, by talking with them in a humane and courteous manner, with expressions of love and good-will. An example whereof we have in Christ. *Job.* 4. 7, 10. who for this cause was said to be a friend to publicans and sinners.

*What is the remedy against the contrary vice?*

Seasonable  
silence.

Taciturnity, or seasonable silence: which is a virtue that keepeth counsel, and restraineth us from uttering secrets, or any unprofitable, unnecessary, and unseasonable speeches. Which in the Scriptures is made a note of a wise man, *Prov.* 17. 28. & 10. 19. *Jam.* 1. 19. and is commended to all; especially to women, *1 Tim.* 2. 11, 12. and young men in the presence of their elders and betters, *Eccles.* 32 9. And these two virtues, taciturnity and affability, must go together. For affability without seasonable silence degenerateth into vain babbling; and silence without affability into Cynical silence and sour churlishness.

*What are the opposites to these virtues, and namely to profitable speech?*

Opposites to  
profitable  
speech.  
Unprofitable.

They are two. First, speech unprofitable.

Secondly, that which is hurtful.

*What is unprofitable and vain speech?*

That which is not referred either to God's glory, or our own or our neighbour's good. Which is condemned in the Scriptures, *Psal.* 12 2. *D ut.* 5. 20.

*Tit.* 3. 9.

*Tit.* 3. 9. *Prov.* 30. 8. and accountable at the day of judgment. *Mat.* 12. 36.

*What is hurtful speech?*

First, that which tendeth to God's dishonour; as imprecations, blasphemies, rash and false oaths. 2. Hurtful speech.

Secondly, that which tendeth to our own and our neighbours hurt, and is opposed either to edification, or the temporal good of his person, name, or state.

*What is speech opposite to edification?*

Rotten and unfavoury speech, *Eph.* 4. 29. which is called rotten, because it springeth from a rotten and poysonous fountain, and is also apt to infect and poison the hearers. *1 Cor.* 15. 33. 3. Rotten speech.

*What are the kinds of this rotten speech?*

They are many: as by our words to mis-lead men, to give evil counsel, grieve the afflicted, to encourage men to run on in sin, to praise men in their evil courses, and the like.

*What vices are opposed to Urbanity?*

There are divers; some in the excess, as witty speeches wantonly wicked, scurrility, talkativeness, and vain babling. In the defect, such speeches as are foolish and unfavoury.

*What vices are opposite to Affability?*

In the excess, counterfeit Compliments. *2 Sam.* 15. 5. Secondly, lightness, and idle talk. And in the defect, Morosity, and churlish speeches.

*What vices are opposed to seasonable silence?*

First, Prating and immoderate and unseasonable multiplying of words. *Pro.* 10. 19. *Psal.* 140. 11.

Secondly, frutlity; when men can hold in no secrets, but unseasonably vent out all that is in their minds. *Prov.* 15. 28. & 12. 23. & 29. 11.

Thirdly, unseasonable suppressing of truth with silence.

*You have spoken of conserving of truth: now speak of our fame and good name; and first shew why it is to be respected;*

We ought to have singular care of preserving of our own and our neighbours good name; because it is no less dear to a good man than his life. *Prov.* 15. 30. & 22. 1. *Eccles.* 7. 1, 2. Fame and Good name.

*What is required to the conserving of our neighbours good name?*

First, an internal disposition, care, and study of preserving it: which we shall shew by these fruits. First, when we are glad of it, and rejoyce in it; (*Rom.* 1. 8. *Col.* 13. 4.) and are grieved when as it is blacked and blemished.

*What other fruits are there of it?*

They respect either our hearing, judgment, or reports.

Our hearing; First, when as we shut our ears to whisperers and slanderers, for their detractions and slanders cannot hurt our neighbours good name, if we will not hear and believe them. *Prov.* 25. 23. And this is a note of a Citizen of heaven. *Psal.* 15. 3.

Secondly, when as we willingly and chearfully hear the praises of our neighbours: which is a sign of an honest heart, that is free from self love and envy.

*What is required in the judgment?*

A candid and ingenuous disposition to preserve our neighbours fame, and in all things doubtful to judge the best of his words and deeds.

*What are the fruits thereof?*

First, not to nourish hard conceits of him; but when they arise to suppress them, if the grounds of them be not very probable.

Secondly, not to believe rashly any evil of our neighbour.  
Thirdly, to take and confree all things well done and spoken by him in the best sense.

Fourthly, to interpret and take things doubtful in the better part.

*What are the fruits respecting reports?*

Silence and secrecy. For it is a Christian duty to keep secret our neighbours faults, which proceed from infirmity and humane frailty: unless it be to amend him by admonition or seasonable reproof. *Lev.* 19. 17. *Mat.* 18 15, 16. *Gen.* 37. 2. *1 Cor.* 1. 11. or to give warning to the hearer, that he may prevent some evil that is intended against him. *Jer.* 40. 14. *Act.* 23. 16. or to preserve him that he be not infected with the contagion of his sin, with whom he converseth: or finally, when himself is necessitated to discover anothers faults and crimes, lest by silence he become accessory unto them; as in case of Felony, Murther or Treason. *Ecclef.* 19. 8.

*What are the vices opposite to these virtues?*

To the care of preserving our neighbours name is opposed,

First, carelessness, as if it did not concern us: which argueth defect of love.

Secondly, a study and desire to contract from his fame, and to lessen his credit and estimation: which is a fruit of hatred and envy. *Mat.* 12. 15.

*What are the vices opposite to those virtues which respect the means?*

They are referred either to hearing, the judgment or report.

*What are those which respect hearing?*

First, to have itching ears after such rumors as tend to our neighbours infamy and disgrace; forbidden, *Exod.* 23. 1. *Prov.* 17. 4. which was *Saul's* sin. *1 Sam.* 24. 10.

Secondly, to have our ears open to hear calumnies and reproaches, and shut to our neighbours praises: which is a fruit of envy and self-love.

*What are the vices which respect the judgment?*

They are vices opposite to candid ingenuity. As first, suspiciousness: when we suspect evil of our neighbour without just cause, and upon every slight occasion; (*1 Tim.* 6. 4.) which is a false testimony of the heart.

Secondly, to believe rashly rumours reported from others, tending to the disgrace of our Neighbours, which have no sure ground: which was *Potiphar's* fault, *Gen.* 39. 19. and *David's.* *2 Sam.* 16. 3, 4.

Thirdly, hard and uncharitable censures: either in respect of their sayings and doings, sinisterly interpreting things well spoken or done, or taking things doubtful in the worst sense; or in respect of their persons, censuring and condemning them rashly, when as we have no just cause. *1 Sam.* 1. 13. *Act.* 2. 13. *Luke* 7. 39. & 13. 1. *Act.* 28. 4.

*What vice respecteth report?*

First, when as men raise false reports against their neighbours.

Secondly, when as they discover uncharitably their secret faults; especially arising from infirmity, and humane frailty. *Prov.* 10. 18.

*What is opposite to the external profession of truth, concerning our Neighbour, which ought to be charitable?*

First, a malicious testimony, though true, which ariseth from malice and envy, and tendeth to a sinister and evil end. *1 Sam.* 22. 9. *Psal.* 52. 3, 4.

Secondly, a false testimony: which is either simply false, as that *1 Kin.* 21. 13. *Act.* 6. 13. or true in the letter of the words, but false in the sense; as that against Christ. *Mat.* 26. 69, 71. *John.* 2. 19.

*Into what sorts are testimonies spoken of in this Commandment to be distinguished?*

They are either publick, or private: and the publick, either in the Courts of Justice or out of them. Publick Testimonies.

*Of which doth this Commandment principally speak?*

Of publick and legal testimonies: which are to be regarded above others, because it is the judgment of God rather than man, *Deut. 1. 17. 2 Chron. 19. 6.* and therefore he that perverteth this judgment, maketh God himself, as much as in him is, guilty of his sin of injustice.

*What are the kinds of legal testimonies?*

They are either of the Judge, or of the Notary, or the Parties suing, contending and pleading, or of the Witnesses.

*What is the testimony of the Judge?*

It is the sentence which he giveth in the cause tryed before him.

*What is herein required of him?*

First, that before he give sentence, he throughly examine and find out the truth and equity of the cause; *Deut. 13. 14. & 17. 4. & 19. 18.* according to God's own example. *Gen. 3. 9, 10, & 18. 21.*

Secondly, that in passing sentence he judge according to truth, justice, and equity. For Judges must be men of truth, *Exod. 18. 21.* Secondly, just and righteous. *Deut. 1. 16. & 16. 18, 19, 20. Lev. 19. 15.* And thirdly, not just in a rigid and extreme way, according to the letter of the Law; but so as when there is just occasion he must moderate the rigour of the Law with equity; which is the true fence and life of the Law.

*But is not the Judge to give sentence according to things legally alleged and proved?*

Yes ordinarily. But if he undoubtedly, upon his own certain knowledge find that things are otherwise then they seem to be by Testimonies, pleadings and reasons alleged; he must judge according to known truth, and defend the cause, being just, which is oppressed by false evidences and reasons: or otherwise he shall sin against his own knowledge and conscience. *Prov. 31. 8, 9.*

*What are the vices opposit hereunto?*

They are two:

*Rash and Perverse judgment.*

*What is rash judgment?*

It is done divers wayes.

First, when as the Judges pronounce sentence before the cause be sufficiently examined and known. *Prov. 18. 13.* Rash judgment.

Secondly, when as they condemn any man before they have heard his cause. *Aët. 25. 15, 16.*

Thirdly, when as they pronounce sentence, having heard one part only. *So David. 2 Sam. 16. 4.* Let such remember that of *Solomon. Prov. 18. 17.*

Fourthly, when as they in matters concerning life and death give sentence upon the single testimony of one witness. *Deut 17. 6.*

*What is perverse judgment?*

When as truth is oppressed, and justice and right is perverted; whereby the wicked is acquitted and the just condemned. *Prov. 17 5.* which for the most part happeneth, because the Judge is corrupted with bribes, or accepteth persons: both which are forbidden and condemned, *Deut. 16. 19. Exod. 23. 8. Prov. 24. 23, 24. & 28. 21. Lev. 19. 15. Deut. 1. 16, 17.* Perverse Judgment.

*What must Judges do to avoid this?*

They must ever remember that in the Seat of Justice they represent God himself, and in that regard are called Gods. *Exod.* 28. 21. *Psa.* 28. 1, 2. and therefore they must Judge as God would if he were present, *2 Chron.* 19. 6. which if they do not, they must expect that woe threatned. *Isa.* 5. 22, 23. Neither must they protract suits, but put as speedy an end unto them as the cause will permit. *Exod.* 18. 17, 23.

*What is the duty of the Notary?*

That he commit things truly to writing, conserve them truly, and truly recite them.

*What are the persons suing and contending in Law?*

The duties of the Plaintiff, and the vices opposite hereunto.

They are either the principal, or less principal. The principal are the Plaintiff and Defendant: to both which these common duties do belong.

1. That they do not contend in Law, unless in their consciences they are perswaded that their cause is good and just; yea and necessary also.

2. That in pursuing of it they do no say or do any thing that is false and unjust.

*What are the vices opposite hereunto?*

First, to commence suits out of a love and desire of contention.

Secondly, to produce false instruments, writings, proofs, seals, and suborn false witnesses.

*What are the special corruptions of the Plaintiff?*

First; to calumniate upon a false or uncertain ground. *Deut.* 19. 16. So *Haman.* *Esth.* 3. 8. So *Ach.* 25. 7.

Secondly, when prevaricating and trifling in the cause, they conceal and let pass weighty matters and hainous crimes, and insist upon those which are light, feigned, and impertinent; so as they may seem to dayly trifle with their adversary, rather than to contend in a legal manner.

Thirdly, when as they fall off, and hang back from a just accusation once undertaken.

*What are the special sins of the defendant?*

To defend himself in a false way: which is done in a various manner.

The vices of the Defendant.

First, by false speaking; in denying the fault whereof he is accused, and standing guilty, as it is usual amongst us: where as we should give glory unto God by confessing our sin, (*Jos.* 7. 19. *Job.* 31. 33.) and not by denying the truth; to add sin unto Sins.

Secondly, by concealing and hiding the truth, which he ought to confess.

Thirdly, by answering indirectly; and so waving a just accusation. So *Adam Gen.* 3. 12.

*How else doth the Defendant?*

First, by making an unjust appeal to protract the suit.

Secondly, by resisting a just sentence: which is to resist God's ordinance: in a lawful power instituted by him, and so to make himself liable to damnation *Rom.* 13. 2.

*Who are the Persons that are less principal?*

The Lawyers who plead the cause of the parties and principals.

*What are their duties?*

The duties of Lawyers; and the opposite vices.

First, to undertake the defence of such causes only as in their judgment appear to be good and just.

Secondly, to defend them in a true and just manner.

*What.*



*What are the corruptions opposite hereunto?*

First, wittingly to undertake the defence of ill and unjust causes: When in they sin; first, against God, whilst they labour to overturn truth and judgment. *Eccles. 5. 6, 33.*

Secondly, against our neighbour: as, First, against the Judge; in seeking to corrupt his Judgment, that he may pass an unjust sentence. Secondly, against his Clients; by encouraging him in a sinful course, if he prevail; or defrauding him of his money, if he do not. Thirdly, against his adversary; whom he woundeth, either in his body, goods, or fame. *Pro. 25. 18.*

Thirdly, against his own soul. First, in a sinful defence of an unjust cause. *Exod. 23. 1. 2. 2 Chron. 19. 2. Rom. 1. 30. 32.* Secondly, by setting his tongue to sale to speak lyes for fees. (*Pro. 21. 6.*) and with their tongue their souls also.

*What other vice do Lawyers commit by handling of their causes in an evil manner?*

They handle them ill;

First, by lying either for their Client or against their adversary: in both which they are guilty of a false testimony.

Secondly, by prevarication, in betraying the cause of their Client, whilst they seem to defend it: and this is the worst kind of coufenage and theft.

*What is the testimony of the witness which this Commandment specially respecteth, and what is required unto it?*

Two things.

First, that he be ready and willing to give his testimony when need requireth. The duty of witnesses.

Secondly, that we do give a true testimony.

*When doth need require it?*

Either when lawful authority calleth for it; or when thereby he can do his neighbour good. *Prov. 24. 11. Psal. 82. 4. Prov. 14. 25.*

*What are the vices opposite hereunto?*

First, to detract and withhold a true testimony. Secondly, to give a false testimony.

*What do you think of this sin?*

That it is odious, and abominable to God. *Prov. 6. 16, 19.* and therefore God made choice of this sin as most hainous; to comprehend under it all sins of the like kind; as in the other Commandments forbidding murder, adultery, theft.

Secondly, because he addeth perjury to his false testimony.

Thirdly, because he sinneth against the Judge, whom he laboureth to pervert; against the Plaintiff and the Defendant; (*Prov. 25. 18.*) and most of all against his own soul; as before, *Prov. 19. 5. 9. & 21. 18. Dent. 19. 16, 19. Apoc. 21. 8. & 22. 15.*

*You have spoken of publick testimonies in Courts of Justice. Now what are these which are given out of the Courts?*

They are either open and manifest, or else hid and secret.

*What are those that are open and manifest?*

They are either in the publick Ministry of the word, or in publick Writings, or in Elections.

*How in the publick Ministry?*

He giveth therein a false testimony, who preacheth false doctrine, which is repugnant to God's glory, or hindreth mans salvation, which God hath appointed

False testimony in the publick Ministry of the word.

appointed to be punished with death, *Zach.* 13. 3. And the same is to be said of those who in their publick writings broach errors, or oppose the truth.

*How in elections?*

When those are not preferred that are worthy, but those that are unworthy: for in elections men testify their excellency that are chosen before others.

*What are the false Testimonies that are hidden and in secret?*

They are either infamous Libels, which by the Civil Law disable a man from giving any testimony; or the spreading of false rumours and scandalous reports, tending to the disgrace of our neighbours. *Exod.* 23. 1.

*You have spoken of publick testimonies: now what are private testimonies, or the private profession of the truth with charity?*

It is either of the virtues or vices of our neighbours.

*What is the duty which respects the vertues of our neighbours?*

It is willingly to acknowledge, and ingenuously to commend, the vertues and good parts of our neighbours, both absent and present; to the glory of God that gave them and the increase of virtue in him that hath received it. *1 Cor.* 11. 2.

*What is that duty which respecteth the vices of our neighbour?*

It is freely to admonish and reprove him being present: (*Mat.* 18. 15. *Lev.* 19. 17. *Prov.* 27. 5, 6. *Psal.* 141. 5.) and in his absence to cover his faults, as far as will stand with justice and charity. *1 Pet.* 4. 8.

*What are the opposite vices?*

They are two: Flattery, and Evil speaking.

*What is Flattery?*

Flattery.

It is fair and fawning speech, whereby a man is falsely and unworthily praised.

*How doth the Flatterer offend?*

First, in respect of the object; when they commend another either for a thing doubtful and uncertain, whether it be good or evil; or for a known evil. *Prov.* 28. 4. & 24. 24, 25.

Secondly, in respect of the manner: and that either in dissimulation. (*Prov.* 27. 14.) or above measure. (*Act.* 12. 22.)

Thirdly, in respect of the end: and that either for their own profit, as Parasites do; or for his hurt and ruine whom they flatter. *Prov.* 29. 5. *Jer.* 9. 8. *Mat.* 22. 15, 16.

*What is the second opposite vice?*

Evil speaking

It is evil speaking. And this is either against one present, by railing and reproachful words tending to his discredit and disgrace; (*Mat.* 5. 22. *1 Cor.* 6. 10.) and by scoffing and mocking, which is a kind of persecution: (*Gen.* 21. 9. *Gal.* 4. 29.) or else against one absent, which is whispering, or obtrusion, or detraction.

*What evils are in the vice of whispering?*

Whispering

Whisperers defame their neighbours, by discovering their faults and failings; dissolve all friendship between man and man. (*Prov.* 16. 28.) and sow dissensions between them. *Prov.* 26. 20.

Secondly, they spoil their neighbours of their good name, (which is better than riches. *Prov.* 22. 1. and more sweet than a precious ointment. *Ecl.* 7. 1.) and also of their friends, by sowing discord among them. *Prov.* 6. 19.

*What is Obtrusion?*

The blacking and branding of our neighbours good name by secret and malicious words: and that either by detracting from his vertues, or by malicious discovering of his vices. Obtrefaction

*What do you think of this vice?*

That it is a grievous sin: for it deeply woundeth our Neighbour in his life, goods and fame. In which regard it is compared to Bows and Arrows that shoot in secret, *Jer. 9. 3, 8. Psal. 64. 3, 4.* to coals of Juniper, *Psal. 120. 4.* to a Sword, *Psal. 64. 3. Prov. 12. 18.* to a Rasor, *Psal. 52. 2.* to the tongue of a Serpent, *Psal. 140. 3. Eccl. 10. 11.*

*How should we keep our selves from it, being naturally addicted to it?*

By considering that the Scriptures forbid it, *Lev. 19. 16. James 4. 11.* and condemn it as an hainous sin, *Psal. 50. 20. Ezeck. 22. 9. Rom. 1. 30.*

Secondly, because it is a sign of an hypocrite; who will declaim against the sins of others, that himself may be thought religious. *Jam. 1. 26.*

Thirdly, because above other sins it maketh them like unto the devil; who hath his name from slandering, being a slanderer from the beginning. *2 Tim. 3. 3. Tit. 2. 3.*

Lastly, because God's heavy judgments and punishments are denounced against it. *Psal. 50. 20, 21. Ezeck. 22. 9, Psal. 15. 3. & 52. 4.*

*But is it not lawful to speak truly of our neighbours faults?*

There are few detractors and back-biters do so; but either devise calumnies of things that are not, or add something that is untrue of their own. But though a man speak truth, yet if it be maliciously to do hurt, or out of a vain custom to keep their tongue in ure; he is a slanderer, and offendeth, if not against truth, yet against charity.

*What is the chief cause of detraction?*

To be curious in prying into other mens lives and manners, and negligent in looking into our own and judging our selves.

*You have spoken concerning our Neighbours fame: now what is required to the conserving of our own.*

Two things. First, that every one have a care of preserving his own good name. Conserving of our own good name.

Secondly, that every one give a true testimony of himself.

*What is to be considered in the former?*

Three things. First, what this good fame is. Secondly, how highly to be esteemed, that hereby we may be moved to this care of preserving it.

Thirdly, by what means it may be attained unto and kept.

*What is good Fame?*

It is a good opinion and esteem which men conceive of others for their vertues and deeds well done. And this is highly to be valued, *Prov. 22. 1. Eccl. 7. 1.* as being not only profitable to our selves, but also unto others, who are refreshed with the smell of this fragrant oyntment, and studiously to be sought after. *Phil. 4. 8.*

*Wherein doth the care of conserving our good name consist?*

First, in prosecuting and using the means of getting it.

Secondly, in avoiding the means of both vain-glory, and also infamy.

*What are the means of getting and conserving our fame and good name?*

First, and above all things to seek God's glory, his kingdome, and righteousness; and to glorifie him by our serious study, to walk before him in honesty of life, and the exercise of all good works. *Mat 6. 33. & 5. 16. Psal. 112. 6. 1 Sam. 2. 30. Prov. 10. 7.* The means of getting a good name.

Secondly,

Secondly, we must avoid the means of vain-glory, whereby men seek more the praise of men than of God. *John* 5. 44. & 12. 43.

Thirdly, to prefer the testimony of a good conscience before the applause of men. *2 Cor.* 1. 12.

Fourthly, to look more to the inward than the outward man, and take more care to be good than to seem good, and to approve our hearts unto God than our outward actions unto men. *Rom.* 2. 25.

Fifthly, to avoid hypocrisy and dissimulation: which though for a time it may gain the praise of men, yet at length God will pull off this false vizard, and expose the hypocrite to shame and contempt.

Sixthly, Go shun that glory which men seek to gain by vanity and vice: (*2 Sam.* 18. 18.) which were to glory in our shame.

Seventhly, to abhor flatterers, and parasites; and to love those who faithfully admonish us when we err, and reprove us when we offend. *1 Kings* 22. 38.

Eighthly, to be severe in judging our selves, and charitable in censuring others. *Mat.* 7. 1, 2. For if we think well of others, they likewise will think well of us.

Lastly, not to undertake great matters above our strength, to gain an opinion of our great parts and abilities; but to be lowly in our own eyes. *Psal.* 131. 1. *Luke* 14. 28, 29.

*But may we not at all in our good actions seek the praise of men?*

We may not principally, and in the first place aim at this end in performing our duties; but rather God's glory, and the adorning of the Gospel which we profess; yet if God cast upon us this blessing of a good name and praise of well-doing, as a vantage unto the bargain, it is not to be neglected; seeing contempt of others opinion of us, especially those that are good, argueth both arrogancy and desperate dissoluteness. We must seek God's glory by good report and evil report (*2 Cor.* 6. 8.) but if he be pleased to bless us with unaffected fame, let us thankfully accept it, and use it as an encouragement in well-doing. *1 Thl.* 4. 8. *Rom.* 13. 3. *1 Pet.* 2. 14.

*What are the means of infamy from our selves?*

All manner of sin. For as sin is the cause of shame, so shame the punishment of sin. Therefore all sin is to be avoided of him that would preserve his fame. As first, open sins: (*Eccles.* 10. 1.) yea not only the sin it self, but all appearance of it. *1 Thes.* 5. 22. *Rom.* 14. 16.

Secondly, secret sins: which if they be not repented of, God will discover them to our shame, (*2 Sam.* 12. 12.) if not in this life, yet at Christ's coming before men and Angels. *Luke* 12. 2. *Mat.* 25. 31. *Luk.* 8. 17. *1 John* 2. 28.

*What are the means of infamy from others?*

Either the opprobrious obloquies of Railers, or the rumours and whippings of Back-biters and Sycophants, against which we are bound to preserve our fame by speaking, writing, and (if need be) by the authority of the Magistrate: especially if we be publick persons, whose infamy may prejudice the Church and Common-wealth.

*You have spoken of preserving our fame: what say you to the second thing propounded, that is, a true testimony of our selves?*

Every one is bound by this Commandment to give a true testimony of himself, as occasion is offered. For as we must speak nothing but truth to our neighbours, so also of our selves.

*How is this done ;*

Either by modest acknowledging that which is good in us, or ingenuous confessing that which is evil ; or by denying a false good attributed unto us modestly and humbly, or a false evil wisely and warily.

*What is opposite herunto ?*

When as we give a false testimony of our selves, by denying any truth ; to affirm any thing false concerning our selves, whether it be good or evil,

*May we then acknowledge that which is good in our selves without vanity ?*

Yes if we do it with modesty, and chiefly to God's glory, from whom we have received all that is good in us. 1 Cor. 15. 10.

*What is opposite to the profession of truth concerning our selves ?*

First an ironical speech, whereby true good in our selves is denied.

Secondly, boasting or bragging ; whereby it is falsely arrogated.

The opposites to the profession of truth concerning our selves.

*How is the former vice committed ?*

Either out of simplicity, when in an humble conceit of themselves men speak as they think, though it be not true ; and therefore do not properly lye, because their words agree with their mind, who are not wholly to be justified, because they speak that which is not true : yet their falsity is no more to be condemned then their humility to be commended. And such was the excuse of Moses, Exod. 3. 11. & 4. 10, 13 and of Jeremy, Jer. 1. 6.

Or secondly, they speak worse of themselves then they are in their own opinion : and that either out of modesty, to avoid bragging ; (which though it cannot be wholly excused from being sinful, because it is ingratitude to God to deny his gifts, and so derogatory to his glory and bounty, and not free from lying ; yet it is extenuated by modesty and humility : ) or else it proceedeth from a dissembling and counterfeit modesty and pride of heart, when men deny the good that is attributed unto them in a slight manner, to draw on double praise ; and so men offend both in opposing truth by lying, and humility also by seeking praise in a cunning way.

*What is the other opposite ?*

Boasting and arrogancy. For as we must truly profess the good that is in us or done by us, to God's glory, when need requireth, in a modest manner ; so must we carefully shun all vain bragging, in arrogating unto our selves that good which belongeth not to us, or extolling it above due measure : seeing it cannot stand with modesty, (Prov. 27. 2.) and is opposite to God's glory from which we so much detract as we arrogate to our selves. 1 Cor. 4. 7. Job. 5. 13.

Arrogancy & boasting.

*In what respect doth the arrogant boaster offend ?*

Three ways. First, in respect of the object. Secondly, the manner. Thirdly, the end.

*How in respect of the object ?*

When that he boasteth of that which is not truly good, but evil : which argueth desperate wickedness ; as in Daeg, Psal. 52. 1 Phil. 3. 19. Gen. 4. 23, 24. And such are those who glory in their drinking and whoring.

*How in respect of the manner ?*

When this boasting is contrary to truth or charity, To truth ; either in respect of the thing it self, or of opinion.

*How in respect of the thing it self ?*

When he arrogateth to himself the good he hath not, or in a greater measure then it is So. Mat. 26. 33, 35.

*How in respect of opinion ?*

Either his own when he arrogateth that to himself which in his own opinion belongeth not to him : or the opinion of others, when his boasting exceedeth that merit and worth, which men truly conceive is not his due, or above that measure that he deserveth.

*How doth he sin against charity?*

Both in respect of God and his Neighbour. In respect of God : either openly and professedly, as when he arrogates to himself that which is due only to him; (*Ezek. 28. 2. Exod. 5. 2. Esa. 36. 20. Dan. 3. 15.*) or else more covertly and cunningly, when he spoils God of his glory, by attributing the praise of the good things he hath given him unto himself. *Esa. 10. 15.*

Secondly, in respect of his neighbour, when as his own praises tend to the disgrace of others. *Luke. 18. 10, 11.*

*How do men sin in respect of the end?*

When as they boast and brag ; either for their glory, which usually is accompanied with shame; (*Rom. 1. 22. Prov. 26. 12.*) or for their gain, as when they glory in their skill to draw on profit ; which is the practice of Empericks and Mountebanks. *Act. 8. 9.*

*What is the confession of truth concerning the evil that is in us, or done by us?*

Confession of sin.

It is either before God, or man. Before God we must confess our sins; if we expect to have them pardoned. *Pro. 28. 13. 1 Joh. 1. 9. Psal. 32. 5.*

*How are they to be confessed before men?*

So far forth as the glory of God requireth it, (*Josh. 7. 19. John 1. 20.*) or the good and salvation of our neighbours, or our own profit and necessity, (*Jam. 5. 15, 16.*) otherwise it is not necessary that we should lay them open to our own shame. But however we may conceal that which is evil in us, yet when it is questioned we must not deny that which is true, nor confess that which is false in us. For by denying the truth, we lye, and add sin unto sin (*Gen. 18. 15.*) and by confessing that evil falsely which is not in us we also lye and expose our selves to disgrace and dangers; (*2 Sam. 1. 10.* compared with *1 Sam. 31. 4. 5.*)

*What is the tenth Commandment?*

**Thou shalt not covet thy Neighbours house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbours wife, &c. Exodus 20. 17,**

The 10 Commandment.

*What is the sin chiefly here forbidden?*

Concupiscence, that is, those secret and internal sins, which go before consent of will, and are the seeds of all other vices : of which sort are wicked and corrupt inclinations thoughts, desires, which are repugnant to charity.

*What is the end of this Commandment?*

It respecteth either God, our Neighbours, or our selves.

*What is the end which respecteth God?*

The end of this Commandment.

That he might shew the perfection of that Charity which in His Law He requireth of us, and the excellency of it above all other humane laws. For humane and divine laws differ, as the Law-givers themselves. And as God is a Spirit, who is omniscient and searcheth the heart, so He requireth spiritual obedience. *Rom. 7. 14.* and bindeth by his Law, (which is spiritual, like Himself) not only the hand, tongue, and out-ward man, as men do by humane laws; but even the most inward, hidden, and secret thoughts and desires of the mind and heart.

*What*

*What is the end respecting our Neighbours?*

That we might not think or desire any thing tending to their hurt; but that with all the powers of our souls, we exercise charity in doing them good, not seeking our own good only but theirs also. *1 Cor. 13. 5.*

*What is the end of this Commandment respecting our selves?*

That it might discover unto us our corruption, and how far we are from that perfection which Gods law requireth. *Rom. 7. 7, 13, 24. Prov. 20. 9. Psal. 19. 11, 12.* and secondly, that it might be unto us a perfect rule of spiritual obedience; and might teach us chiefly to observe our hearts, (*Prov. 4. 23.*) to suppress the first and inward motions of sin, and to aspire to that original purity, that we had by creation.

*What was the occasion of this Commandment?*

Three-fold: first, the pravity of our hearts and thoughts: *Gen. 6. 5.* and *S. 21.* The occasion of this Commandment.

Secondly, the blindness and stupidity of our minds and hearts; which could neither see nor feel their own pravity and corruption. *Rom. 7. 7, 8.*

Thirdly, the error of our judgments; which suppose that our thoughts be free, and that concupiscence and first thoughts are not sins till they have our consent, because they are not in our power to restrain them.

*What is the difference between the spiritual obedience required in this and the other Commandments?*

In that it not only requireth the internal obedience of the heart, with the outward man, as the rest do; but also restraineth the first motions and inclinations, which go before consent. If we had not rather say, that it is added to the other, as a full and more clear explication of that spiritual obedience which is required in all the rest.

*Now shew the meaning of this Commandment: and first, what is that concupiscence which it here spoken of?*

There are two sorts of concupiscence, or of the affections of the heart: the first called *Irafcible*, conceived against things evil which we shun, as anger, hatred, fear, grief, &c. the other called *Concupiscible*, conceived towards things good and desirable, as love, joy, delight, &c. And these are things either truly evil or good, or else so only in appearance. Two sorts of concupiscence

*Is all concupiscence here forbidden?*

No: for there is some good and lawful, some evil and unlawful; the one commanded, the other forbidden.

*What is lawful concupiscence?*

It is either natural, or spiritual. Natural, that which desireth things good and necessary to our being or well-being; as food, cloathing, and other lawful comforts of this life. Spiritual, which lusteth and fighteth against the flesh, (*Gal. 5. 17.*) and affecteth and coveteth after spiritual things. *Psal. 119. 40.* Lawful concupiscence.

*What is opposite hereunto?*

Unlawful and evil concupiscence, (*Col. 3. 5.*) which is also called concupiscence of men, (*Pet. 4. 2.*) concupiscence of the flesh, (*Gal. 5. 16, 17.*) worldly concupiscence, (*1 Tim. 2. 12.*) lusts of the Devil. (*Joh. 8. 44.*) Unlawful concupiscence and the kind thereof.

*What are the kinds of this concupiscence?*

Either habitual, or actual. Habitual, is an evil inclination and proneness to that which is evil; or an evil desiring of it, which is a part of original injustice. *Rem. 8. 6, 7.*

*What is that evil concupiscence which is actual?*

It is distinguished into two kinds.

First, in respect of the form.

Secondly, in respect of the object.

*What is that which respecteth the form?*

It is either *inchoat and imperfect*, which is an act of sensuality only, and the first and sudden motions of concupiscence; which go before the act of reason and the will, tickling the mind and heart with a kind of delight; or it is *formed and perfected*, having also the act of the will joining with it, and consenting to it. *1 Thef. 4. 5.*

*What are the degrees of that inchoat concupiscence?*

They are three. First, an evil motion cast into our minds, by either the Devil, the World, or our own Flesh, corrupting the sense, memory, or phantasia; whereby we have an hanging and hankering appetite after that which is our neighbours, as thinking it fit and convenient for us.

Secondly, a longing after it, and wishing for it, following that motion.

Thirdly, a tickling delight, arising from a conceit of the pleasure or profit which we should have in the enjoying of it. *Jam. 1. 13, 14, 15*

*How then doth sin grow from its first conception to its full growth?*

The growth  
of sin.

Saint James in respect of the degrees of it compareth it to the conception, growth and birth of an Infant, in and from the womb. *James 1. 14, 15.*

The first is, the abstraction of the mind and heart from good to evil, by the evil motion and appetite: which may be called the carnal copulation between the heart and sin and Satan.

The second, inexcitation and enticing of the heart with delight and consent unto it; as it were the retention of the seed.

The third, consent to the acting of it; which may be called the conception of it.

The fourth, deliberation after this consent, by what means and how it may be acted; which is the articulation and shaping of the parts and members.

The fifth is the acting of sin it self, that is the birth of it; which being born causeth death. Which degrees and growth of sin may be observed in the example of *Eve, Ahab, and David* him self.

*How many evil concupiscence be distinguished in respect of the Object?*

Into three kinds.

First, Of pleasure; which is the lust of the Flesh.

Secondly, of profit; which is the lust of the eyes.

Thirdly, of honour and glory; which is the pride of life. *1 John 2. 16*

*What are the parts of this Commandment?*

Two. First, the Affirmative: Secondly, the Negative. The first is here to be understood; the other is plainly expressed.

*What is forbidden in the Negative?*

Evil concupiscence: which is twofold, either original or actual.

*What is original concupiscence?*

The parts of  
this Com-  
mandment,  
and first the  
negative.

Original con-  
cupiscence.

Original sin: which is the corruption and disorder of all the powers and faculties of soul and body, disposing them to all that is evil. It is also called habitual concupiscence: which is nothing else but an evil inclination and proneness to the transgression of Gods Law, which by corrupt nature is bred with us.

*How is it called in the Scripture?*



The old man, (*Eph.* 4. 22. *Col.* 3. 9.) Sin inhabiting and dwelling in us, the Law of sin, the Law of the members warring against the Law of the mind, the flesh, the encompassing of sin, &c. *Rom.* 7. 23. *Gal.* 5. 17, 24. *Heb.* 12. 1.

*Is this to be reputed sin?*

Yes; and a great sin: as may appear by these reasons.

First, because it defileth and corrupteth the whole man, soul and body, with all their faculties, powers, and parts: as the mind, will, memory, heart, affections, appetite; with all the members of the body, which it maketh to be the instruments of evil.

That original  
concupiscence  
is sin.

Secondly, it polluteth all our words and works, and maketh them all repugnant to the law of God.

Thirdly, it is the root and fountain of all our actual sins; from which they grow and spring.

Fourthly, because it continually warreth against the Spirit, and choaketh and quencheth the good motions of it *Gal.* 5. 17. *1 Pet.* 2. 11.

Fifthly, because it maketh a man the slave of sin and Satan. *Rom.* 7. 14, 23

Sixthly, because it joyneth with the Devil and the World, and betrayeth us to their tentations. *Eph.* 2. 2, 3.

Seventhly, because it is an incurable evil; seeing it so hangeth upon us that we cannot shake it off. *Heb.* 12. 21.

Eighthly, because it is but the more irritated by the Law of God, which should suppress it *Rom.* 7. 8.

Lastly, because it maketh us children of wrath, and liable to everlasting condemnation; although dying in child-hood, we should never commit any actual transgression. *For death and damnation reigneth even over them which had not sinned after the similitude of Adam,* that is by actual transgression. *Rom.* 5. 14.

*But doth this Commandment extend to the prohibition of Original sin in the whole body, and all the parts of it;*

No For it forbiddeth sins committed against our Neighbours only, like all other Commandments of the second Table, as appeareth by the words themselves, and the Apostles epitomizing of this whole Table, in those words; *Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thy self,* *Rom.* 13. 9. And therefore, all original injustice, wicked inclination, thoughts, and affections are here only forbidden; as they respect our neighbours, and are opposite to charity: but as they respect God, and are repugnant to the love of him, they are forbidden in the first Table.

*What are actual concupiscences?*

They are evil motions which are repugnant to charity.

*What are the kinds of them?*

Actual Con-  
cupiscence.

They are either such as are vain and unprofitable, or such as are hurtful and pernicious.

*How are they unprofitable?*

So far forth as they fasten mens minds to earthly things, and thereby withdraw them from heavenly.

*In what respect are they hurtful?*

First, because they are instruments of sin: as they are fit objects to every sin in its kind. For if any objects are offered to the mind or senses; which self-love causeth them to think to be profitable, pleasant and desirable; concupiscence presently apprehendeth and catcheth at them to satisfy worldly lusts.

Secondly, they choak the seed of the Word in the hearts of Carnal men. *Mark.* 4. 19.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, they make men insatiable; knowing no end or measure in pursuing worldly things.

Fourthly, they cast men headlong, in whom they reign, into sin. (*Eph.* 2. 3.) and give them up to vile lusts, and reprobate minds. (*Rom.* 1. 24. (*Psal.* 81. 12.

Fifthly, they fight against the Soul; and if they overcome, bring it to destruction. *1 Pet.* 2. 11.

*How many ways are these motions evil?*

Two ways either in respect of the phantasia and cogitations of the mind; or in respect of the affections and imaginations of the heart,

*When are the thoughts evil?*

Evil thoughts.

Then and so far forth, as they sollicit and encline us unto evil.

*Why do men think that thoughts are free, and not to be charged upon men. or called to account?*

Foolish men think and say so: but the Scriptures say otherwise, and affirm them to be sins. (*Prov.* 24. 9. as being repugnant to charity, *1 Cor.* 13. 5. and therefore forbid them. *Deut.* 15. 9. injoin us to confess them, and to crave pardon for them. *Isa.* 55. 7. *Act.* 8. 22. And though we slight them, yet God taketh notice of them; (*Psa.* 94. 11. *1 Chro.* 28. 9. *Ezek.* 11. 5. *Psal.* 139. 2.) yea, he hateth evil thoughts, as abominable, (*Prov.* 15. 26. *Zach.* 8. 17.) and severely punisheth them, as we see in the example of the old world. *Gen.* 6. 5. & 8. 21.

*Whence do those evil thoughts arise?*

They are either injected by Satan; or else arise from original concupiscence: and both of them befall men either walking or sleeping.

*How are they injected by Satan?*

Evil thoughts injected by Satan.

Either immediately by himself, (*1 Chron.* 21. 1. *John* 13. 2.) or mediately by his instruments, as of old by the serpent. And that he may the more easily insinuate into his mind whom he tempteth, he often suborneth those that are nearest and dearest unto us to be his Instruments: as we see in the example of Job's wife, and Peter. *Job.* 2. 9. *Matth.* 16. 22, 23.

*But are these tentations to be reputed our sins?*

Not if we reject and extinguish them, as fire in water: for Christ himself was tempted, yet without sin. (*Heb.* 4. 15.) But if we admit them, and do not presently reject them, they infect our minds and hearts with their poison, and become our sins.

*How else do evil thoughts arise in us?*

Evil thoughts arising from natural corruption.

From our natural corruption, and habitual concupiscence. *Luk.* 34. 38. *Gen.* 5. *Mat.* 15. 19. *2 Cor.* 3. 5.

*How are these motions evil, in respect of the affections of the heart?*

These though they have not the consent of the will to act them, yet are they sinful in respect of the sins which arise from them; of which also they are the first degrees: as we see in the first boiling of anger in the heart and of lust and unclean motions; which proceed from the defect of that charity and purity which God requireth in us and afterwards produce the acts of murder and fornication, when the will consenteth unto them. *Mat.* 5. 22, 28.

*Are there no degrees of those evil affections and perturbations of the heart?*

Yes: for they are to be considered either in their first beginnings, as they are the first motions of concupiscence, by which the mind is first withdrawn from its rectitude, and then the heart suddenly affected; or else, when by the

pleasure and delight in those first motions they are tickled and inticed to retain them still, that they may enjoy a greater and more full measure of delight.

*What followeth this pleasure thus retained and continued in the mind and heart?*

Consent to the acting of the sin, which in God's light is all one with the sin it self: seeing he reputeth the will for the deed, whether it be in good or evil. 2 Cor. 8. 12. Mat. 5. 28.

*Why then it seemeth that it were as good for a man to act sin, as to consent to the acting of it?*

Not so: For though they be both sins, the one as well as the other, yet not equal, and in the same degree: but as the one is more hainous then the other, and more defileth the conscience, so maketh it a man liable to a deeper degree of hellish condemnation.

*You have spoken of the degrees of evil affections: now shew what are the kinds?*

They are either *concupiscible*, about things affected and desired, or *irascible*, about things which they abhor and shun; as sudden and rash anger, and the first motions of envy, &c.

*How are the concupiscible distinguished?*

By the Objects. For it is either the lust of the eyes, the lust of the flesh, or the pride of life, 1 John 2. 16. all which are forbidden in the first Commandment, as they are repugnant to the love of God: and in this Commandment, as they are opposit to the love of our neighbours; and so far forth as they are more secret and covert, and the first motions of concupiscence, and the first principles and degrees of the sins against our neighbours forbidden in the other Commandments.

*You have shewed what concupiscence is in the generals: now shew what is that special kind of it which is here expressly forbidden?*

The special kind of concupiscence here forbidden.

The concupiscence of the eyes: which is varied and diversified by the removing of divers objects

*But why is this rather forbidden, than any other kind?*

Because it is the worst of all and most pernicious, and therefore fittest to comprehend under it all the rest: as it is done in the other Commandments.

*Why is it the most pernicious?*

First, because it is the root of all the vices forbidden in the other Commandments, either in begetting or nourishing them.

Secondly, because it extinguisheth charity towards God, by turning the heart from him after earthly things: (Eph. 5. 5. Col. 3. 5.) and towards our neighbours by disposing mens hearts to cruelty, lust, and covetousness; and making them averse to charity, mercy and Christian beneficence.

Thirdly, because it is unfatiable. Eccl. 4. 8.

Fourthly, because it is unquiet and restless; vexing the covetous mind and heart as it were hellish furies. 1 Tim. 6. 10. 1 Ki: 21. 4.

Fifthly, because it is joynd with self love and envy.

Lastly, because it betrayeth men unto Satans tentations, to their destruction. 1 Tim. 6. 9.

*But is all concupiscence here forbidden as unlawful?*

No: but that only which is repugnant to charity towards God and our neighbours; that which is inordinate, and that which by unlawful means seeketh

both to be satisfied and tendeth to an evil end, *James* 4. 3. Finally, that which is either immoderate, having no bounds; or else unjust, coveting that which is another mans, against their will and profit.

*What are the objects which are here removed?*

They are infinite and innumerable: but for examples sake, he insisteth upon some which men more usually and ardently covet after.

*What meaneth he by the house of our neighbour?*

What is meant by our neighbour's house.

Both his place of habitation, and his Family. (*Gen.* 17. 72.) for a house is necessary to him that hath a family. Which convinceth them of a great sin, that for every slight cause thrust their Tenants out of their houses. *Esa* 5. 8.

*What are the parts of the Family here numbered?*

Neighbours &c.

The wife, servant, maid, &c. The wife of another must not be coveted: for such is the union in marriage between man and wife, that it is unlawful to covet another mans wife; not only to commit adultery with her, but to enjoy her for his own, though by lawful means, and after the others death.

*What are the other parts of the Family?*

Our Neighbours servant.

Servants, men and maidens: whom we are here forbidden to covet, or to use any means to entice them from their masters to come to us. For though this were a greater sin amongst the Jews, because they had propriety in them, their servants being part of their goods: yet it is a sin also amongst us, as being against charity and the common rule of Justice, which enjoineth us to let every one have his own, and to do to another as we would have him do unto us.

*What other things doth this Commandment forbid to covet?*

His Ox and Ass.

Our neighbours Ox, or Ass: which are here named, to comprehend all other goods, immoveable or moveable; because they are of most necessary use for mans life. And lest we should think it lawful to covet any other thing not here named, he includeth all in the last words; *Nor any thing that is thy neighbours*: whether it be for necessity, profit, or delight.

*What do you further gather from hence?*

First, that those things are our neighbours which God hath given him.

Secondly; that by this gift of God every man hath a propriety and distinct right in that he possesseth by vertue of this tenure.

Thirdly, that he ought to be contented with that portion which God hath given him, and not to covet another mans: and consequently, that the doctrine and practice of the Familists is erroneous and wicked.

*You have spoken hitherto of the Negative part: now shew what is the Affirmative?*

The affirmative part.

Here is commanded a pure, charitable, and just heart towards our neighbours; (*1 Tim.* 1. 5) unto which, though none can attain in a legal perfection, yet ought all to desire and aspire unto it.

*Wherein doth this purity consist?*

In two things:

First, in original justice, and internal perfect charity, in which we were created.

Secondly, in spiritual concupiscence.

*What is original Justice?*

Not only an exact purity from all sorts of unrighteousness, but also a disposition to perform cheerfully all Offices of Charity and Justice.

*What*

*What is spiritual Concupiscence?*

It contains two things ;

First, good motions of the Spirit.

Secondly, a fight of the Spirit against the lust of the Flesh.

*What are those good motions of the Spirit ?*

Charitable and just motions, thoughts, desires, and affections ; that all which we think or desire may be for our neighbours good. And this we must do frequently and constantly.

*What is the fight against fleshly lusts ?*

When as being regenerate, and assisted by Gods Spirit, we make war against the flesh, and the lusts thereof ; and in all we may, labour to mortifie, crucifie, and subdue them, because they make war against our souls and spiritual part. Gal. 5. 17. 1 Pet. 2. 11. Rom. 7. 23.

*What are the means moving and enabling us to perform the duties required in this Commandment ?*

They are either general and common ; or else more special and proper.

The means enabling us to obey this commandment.

*What are the general means ?*

Such as tend to the conserving of the heart in purity, that it may shun all sinful concupiscence. As first, to walk with God, and so to demean our selves at all times, and in all things, as being always in his presence, who searcheth the heart and reins.

Secondly, to observe and set a watch over our hearts. Prov. 4. 23. And first, that it do not admit any evil concupiscence. Secondly ; that if it be admitted, it be not retained. And this care must be taken both when we be awake, that we keep our minds intent unto lawful and good things ; and when we go to sleep, that by hearty prayer we commend them to Gods keeping.

*But what if the heart have admitted evil concupiscences ?*

We must strive and fight against them, and never be at rest, until we have cast them out and extinguished them.

*What further is required to the conserving of the heart in purity ?*

In the third place we must observe our senses, that they do not bring into our minds such objects as being apprehended, will stir up in us evil concupiscence. Gen. 3. 6. & 6. 2. Josh. 7. 21. 2 Sam. 11. 2. Matth. 5. 28. Job. 31. 1. Psa. 119. 37.

*What are the special means to suppress or take away the concupiscence of the eyes ?*

First, we must mortifie self-love, and not seek our own, but every man anothers wealth. 1 Cor. 10. 24.

Secondly, we must pull out the eyes of envy.

Thirdly, we must labour after contentation. Phil 4. 11. And to this end consider : First, how many want those good things, which thou enjoyest, who are far more worthy of them. Secondly, thine own unworthiness of the least of Gods benefits. Thirdly, meditate on Gods providence and fatherly care, who provideth all things necessary for thy good and salvation.

*What do you learn from this Commandment thus expounded ?*

That it is most impossible for any man to keep it. For who can say, that his heart is clean from the first motions of sin, and concupiscence, that go before consent ? Prov. 20. 9.

The impossibility of keeping this Commandment.

*To What purpose serveth the knowledge of this impossibility?*

To humble us in the sight and sense of our sins, which have made us subject to the wrath of God, and the curse of the Law: that so despairing in our own merits, we may be driven out of our selves, and with more ardent desire flee unto the mercies of God in the satisfaction and obedience of Jesus Christ.

*What other use are we to make of it.*

That being by Christ freed from the curse of the Law, we study and endeavour to conform our selves, or souls, and lives according to the prescript rule of this holy and most perfect law: (*Matth. 5. 48.*) and that mortifying the flesh, with all the carnal concupiscences and lusts of it, we be daily more and more renewed unto the Image of God in all holiness and righteousness, and walk worthy of our high calling, as it becometh Saints. *Eph. 4. 1.*

## Hitherto we have treated of the rule and square of our Sanctification, viz. The Ten Commandments.

*Now wherein is the effect or exercise of Sanctification seen?*

Repentance and new obedience.

**I**N unfeigned *repentance*, and *new obedience* springing from thence. For the fruits of Sanctification, are; First, inward vertues, whereby all the powers of the mind are rightly ordered. Secondly, the exercise of the same, by putting those heavenly and sanctified abilities to holy use and service.

*If then the exercise of Sanctification be first seen in repentance: what is Repentance?*

Repentance what it is

An inward and true sorrow for sin, especially that we have offended so gracious a God, and so loving a Father; together with a setled purpose of heart, and a careful endeavour to leave all our sins, and to live a Christian life, according to all Gods Commandments. (*Psal. 119. 57-112.*) Or, A turning of our selves to God, whereby we crucifie and kill the corruptions of our nature, and reform our selves in the inward man, according to Gods will.

*What is it to crucifie the corruption of our nature?*

It is truly and with all our hearts to be sorry that we have angered God with.

with it and with our other sins, and every day more and more to hate it and them, and to fly from them.

*How is this wrought in us?*

It is wrought in us, partly by the threatning of the Law, and the fear of Gods judgments; but especially increased by feeling the fruit of Christs death, whereby we have power, to hate sin and to leave it. For when the sinner once humbled with the terrours of the Law, flyeth to the comforts of the Gospel; he there seeth in Christ crucified, not only the mercy of God discharging him of all his sins; but also how deep the wounds of sin are, wherewith he hath pierced his Saviour, (*Zach. 12. 10.*) and how severe the wrath of God is against sin, even to the slaughtering of his own Son; and hence (*1 Pet. 4. 1.*) cometh he to hate his sins, (*Psal. 97. 10.*) as God hateth them, and to look back thereon with godly sorrow; (*2 Cor. 7. 10.*) resolving for ever after to forsake them all.

*How is the reformation of our selves to newness of life wrought in us?*

Only by the promise of the Gospel, whereby we feel the fruit of the rising again of Christ.

*What doth insue hereof?*

Hereby we are raised up into a new life, having the Law written in our hearts, and so reform our selves.

*Wherein then doth Repentance properly consist?*

In a through changing of our purpose and desires from the evil which Gods Word rebuketh in us, to the good which it requireth of us, *Rom. 12. 1. Psal. 1. 1, 2.*

*What is required in respect of the evil we turn from?*

First, a knowledge of the evil, then a condemning of the same, together with a judging of our selves for it: and then with godly sorrow for that which is past, a hatred of it for ever, and all this because it is sin, and displeaseth our God.

*What is required in regard of the good we turn unto?*

First, a knowledge and approbation of good to be done, with a purpose of heart to do it: then, an earnest love of the same, shewed by care, desire and endeavour.

*Can men repent of themselves, or when they list?*

No: for it is the gift of God, given unto them that are born again.

*Is it sufficient once to have repented?*

No: we must continue it always in disposition, and renew it also in act, as occasion is given by our transgressions, and Gods displeasure: for there is none of Gods Saints but always carrying this corruption about them, they sometimes fall and are far from that perfection and goodness which the Lord requireth: and therefore stand in need of Repentance as long as they live.

*When then is this repentance to be practised of us?*

The practice of Repentance ought to be a continual abhorring of evil, and cleaving unto that which is good, (*Rom. 12. 9.*) for as much time as we remain in the flesh after our conversion: (*1 Pet. 4. 2, 3.*) yet at times there ought to be a more special practice and renewing thereof; as after grievous falls, (*Psal. 51.*) in fear of imminent judgments, (*Amos 4. 12.*) or when we would fit our selves to receive special mercies. (*Gen. 35. 2, 3, &c.*)

*In what manner must the special practice of Repentance, in such cases, be performed?*

What Repentance is to be exercised.

- There must be
1. A ferious *search* and enquiry after all sins, (*Lam.* 3. 60.) as Traitors against God; but especially special sins, (*Fer.* 8. 6. *Pfal.* 18. 23.) as the Arch-rebels.
    1. Of necessity unto God, with *shame* of face, and true *sorrow* of heart. *Prov.* 28. 13. *Fer.* 31. 18, 19.
      1. The Church; for satisfaction of the publick offence, do enjoyn open acknowledgment. *2 Cor.* 26.
      2. Some personal wrongs demand private reconciliation. *Luke.* 17. 4.
      3. The weakness of the labouring conscience do require the secret assistance of a faithful, and able Minister or Brother. *James* 5. 16.
  2. Humble confession of sins: and that,
    - 2: Unto men conditionally: viz. if either
  3. Fervent and faithful prayer (*Pfal.* 51. 1, 2. &c.) to God in Christ, both for pardon of what is past, (*verse.* 7.) and for supply of renewing grace for the time to come. (*ver.* 10.)
  4. Promise of amendment; and satisfaction to such as we have endamaged.
- Seeing many do falsely pretend: that they repent; how may we know that our repentance is true?*

A true Tryal of unfeigned Repentance may be taken.

1. From the generality of it viz. if it extend to the abhorring and shunning of all sins (*Pfal.* 119. 128. & 139. 24.) and to the love and practice of all duties without reservation. *Pfal.* 119. 6.
2. From the thorough performance of each part: viz.
  1. Of hatred of sin: in spiritual warfare against it; and that even unto blood if need be, *Heb.* 12. 4.
  2. Of the love of righteousness: in bringing forth fruit worthy amendment of life, (*Mat.* 3. 8.) to wit, good works.

*What is the spiritual warfare?*

Of the spiritual warfare.

The daily exercise of our spiritual strength, and armour, against all adversaries, with assured confidence of victory. For the state of the faithful in this life is such, that they are sure in Christ, and yet fight against sin: there being joyned with repentance a continual fighting and "rugling against" the assaults of a mans own flesh, against the motions of the Devil, and enticements of the world.

*How shall we overcome these enemies?*

By a lively faith in Christ Jesus.

*What is then our principal strength?*

Of the spiritual Armour.

The powerful assistance of God in Christ, *2 Cor.* 12. 9. *Phil.* 4. 13. who hath loved us: whereby we become more than Conquerours. *Rom.* 8. 37.

*What is our spiritual Armour?*

The compleat furniture of saving and sanctifying graces; called therefore the  *Armour of righteousness*, (*2 Cor.* 6. 7.) and the *Panoplie* or the whole Armour of God. *Eph.* 6. 11, 14. &c. viz.

1. The girdle of verity or sincerity.



2. *The breast-plate of righteousness*, that is, holiness of life and a good Conscience.

3. *The shoes of the preparation* (or resolution to go through with the profession) *of the Gospel of peace.*

4. *The Shield of faith.*

5. *The helmet of the hope of Salvation.*

6. *The Sword of the Spirit, which is the* (sound knowledge and wise application of the) *Word of God.*

7. Finally, *continual, and instant prayer in the Spirit.*

*Who are our adversaries in the spiritual conflict?*

They are either our *friends proving us*, or our *enemies seducing and endangering us.*

*Who is that friend of ours, that for our probation entreteth into conflict with us?*

God himself: who though he tempt no man unto evil, (no more then he can himself be tempted; *Jam. 1. 13.*) yet as a Master of defence enureth us to the conflict by contending with us, even in his own person; *viz.* sometimes by probatory commandments, (*Gen. 22. 1.*) or sensible apparitions: (*Gen. 32. 24.*) but more ordinarily by striking our hearts with his terrors, (*Job 6. 4.*) withdrawing the comfort of his gracious presence, (*Psal. 77. 7.*) leaving us for a time to our selves, (*2 Chr. 32. 31.*) that by our falls we may acknowledge our own weakness: finally exercising us under the cross and yoke of outward afflictions, *Heb. 12. 5, 6. Rev. 3. 19.*

*How must we contend with God?*

No otherwife, then *Jacob*, (*Hof. 12. 3, 4.*) and other holy men have done, that is, by obedience, humility, patience, and fervent prayer unto God; who only inableth us to prevail with himself, giving us the blessing and name of *Israel*, *Gen. 32. 28.*

*What are those enemies of ours that seek to seduce and endanger us?*

Whatsoever marcheth under the banner of *Satan*, the *God and Prince of the darknes of this world*, (*2 Cor. 4. 4. Eph. 6. 12.*) who sometimes immediately assaileth us with impious and odious suggestions, (*2 Cor. 12. 7. Zech. 3. 1.*) but more usually employeth his *forces or attendants*, namely, the *World*, (*1 Job. 2. 15.*) and the *flesh*; (*Gal. 5. 24.*) So that the faithful in this life have battle both *without*, by the temptations of *Satan* and the *World*; and *within*, by the battle of the flesh against the *Spirit*.

*How do these enemies fight against our souls?*

By implying all *force and fraud*, to draw us by sin from the obedience and favour of God, unto damnation. *1 Job. 2. 15.*

*What must we do being thus assaulted?*

We must *stand fast*, being *strong in the Lord*, and in the power of his might, and taking unto us the whole armour of God, (*Ephes. 6. 10, 11, 12.*) that we may be able to resist in the evil day, and to lead our captivity captive.

*How shall we overcome?*

By a lively faith in *Jesus Christ*.

*To come then to those enemies in particular. What call you Satan?*

The adversary or enemy of God and his people.

*How may we be able to stand against his assaults?*

First, we must labour to inform our selves, that we may not be ignorant of his enterprises or stratagems. *2 Cor. 2. 11.*

Secondly, we must boldly resist. (*Jam. 4. 7. 1 Pet. 5. 9.*) that is, give no place

Of our first enemy, Satan.

or ground unto him. (*Eph. 4. 27.*) or admit any confereace with him, but rather neglect and despise his suggestions.

Thirdly, we must take the shield of faith in Christ, and his assistance (setting him on our right hand who is mighty to save, (*Psal. 16. 8. Isa. 63. 1.*) whereby we may quench all the fiery darts of the wicked one. *Eph. 6. 16.*

Fourthly, we must brandish against him the sword of the Spirit, that is, the word of God; (*Eph. 6. 17.*) after the example of our Saviour; (*Mat. 44. &c.*) keeping our selves to that only, which God revealeth to us, and requireth of us.

*What is the first assault of Satan against us?*

By subtilty he allureth us to sin: and therefore he is called a Tempter, and a Serpent.

*How shall we overcome him in these temptations?*

First, by faith in Jesus Christ, who overcame all Satans temptations in his own person, that so we might overcome in him.

Secondly, by resisting the inward motions and outward occasions of sin.

*How shall we do that?*

By believing that we are baptized in the death and resurrection of Christ.

*What is the second assault of Satan against us?*

He lyeth fearfully to our charge our sins committed: and therefore he is called the Devil, an accuser.

*How shall we overcome him in these accusations?*

First, by faith in Jesus Christ, who hath justified us from all the sins for which Satan can accuse us.

Secondly, by all those comfortable promises of forgiveness of sins, which in Christs name are made unto us.

*What is the third assault of Satan against us?*

He seeketh by manifold inward terrours, and outward troubles; to swallow us up: and therefore is called a roaring Lion.

*How shall we overcome him in these terrours and troubles?*

1. By faith in Jesus Christ; who was heard in all his troubles; to give us assurance, that we shall not be overcome in them.

Secondly, by faith in Gods providence; whereby we know that Satan can do no more harm unto us then the Lord doth direct him for our good.

*So much of Satan the first enemy: what call you the World?*

2. Enemy, the World.

The corrupt state and condition of men, and of the rest of the Creatures, which Satan abuseth as his store house and armory of temptations, *1 Job. 2. 15.*

*How doth the world fight against us?*

By alluring us and withdrawing us to the corruption thereof.

*What means doth it use?*

First it allureth us to evil, with hope of false pleasures, gain, and profit preferment and glory of this world, from our obedience to God. *1 John 2. 16.*

Secondly, otherwhiles with fear of pains, troubles, losses, reproaches, &c. it discourageth us from our duty, and allureth us to distrust Gods promises. *Job. 16. 32.*

*How may we withstand the temptations of the World?*

By our faith, (*1 Job. 5. 4.*) which setteth a better world, even Gods heavenly kingdom, before our eyes; and so enableth us both to condemn, (*Heb. 11. 24. &c.*) and crucifie (*Gal. 6. 14.*) the love of this present world; and to endure manfully the threats and wrongs thereof. (*Heb. 11. 35, 37.*) both confessing Christ in peril, and suffering martyrdom for his sake, if we be thereto called. *Rev. 12. 11.*

*How are then the pleasures, profits, and glory of this world to be overcome?*

First, by a true faith in Jesus Christ, who despised all these things to work our salvation, and to make us overcome them.

Secondly, by faith in Gods word, that feareth us from doing any thing that is against his will.

*And how shall we overcome the pains, losses, and reproaches of this world?*

First, by a lively faith in Jesus Christ, who suffered all these things to work our salvation, and to enable us to suffer them.

Secondly, by a stedfast faith in Gods promises and providence, that we shall want no good things and that all things seeming hurtful shall be turned to the furtherance of our salvation.

*So much of the World, the second enemy: what call you the Flesh?*

The corruption of our nature, wherein we were born and conceived.

*Doth that remain, after Regeneration?*

Yea: it dwelleth in us, and cleaveth fast unto us, so long as we carry the outward flesh about us.

*How doth the flesh fight against the Spirit?*

As a treacherous part without us, being by Satan stirred up, and inviegled with the baits of the world, or discouraged with the evil entreaty thereof, it fighteth on his side against our soul, (1 Pet. 2. 11.) that is, our spiritual life and welfare; by continual lusting against the Spirit, Gal. 5. 17.

*How is that?*

First, by hindring or corrupting us in the good motions, word and deeds of the Spirit.

Secondly, by continual moving us to evil motions, words, and deeds.

*What call you the Spirit?*

The holy Spirit which God in Christ hath given us, whereby we are begotten again.

*Do we not receive the Spirit in full measure, and in perfection at the first?*

No: but first we receive the first fruits, and afterwards daily increase of the same unto the end, if the fault be not in our selves.

*How doth the Spirit fight in us?*

By lusting against the flesh.

*How doth it lust against the flesh?*

First, partly by rebuking and partly by restraining in us the evil motions and deeds of the flesh.

Secondly, by continual enlightning and affecting us with thoughts, words, and deeds, agreeable to God's will.

*How may we withstand the temptations of our flesh?*

By setting before our eyes the pattern of the death of Christ, and arming our selves with the same mind, that it behoveth us also to suffer in the flesh, ceasing from sin; (1 Pet. 4. 1.) hereto craving and employing the power of the same death of Christ, to sabdue and crucifie our carnal lusts and affections (Rom. 6. 2. &c.) Whereunto also belongeth the help of Abstinence for the resisting of the inordinate desires of nature. 1 Cor. 9. 26. &c.

*So much of the spiritual fight. What followeth after a man hath gotten the victory in any temptation or affliction?*

Experience of God's love in Christ, and so increase of peace of conscience, and joy in the Holy Ghost. Rom. 5. 3. 2 Cor. 1. 5.

*What follows if in any temptation he be overcome, and through infirmity fall?*

After

Third enemy  
our flesh.

After a while there will arise *godly sorrow*; which is, when a man is grieved for no other cause in the world but for this only, that by his sin he hath displeased God, who hath been unto him a most merciful and loving father. 2 Cor. 7. 8, 9. Mat. 26. 75.

*What sign is there of this sorrow?*

Repentance renewed afresh. 2 Cor. 7. 11.

*By what signs will this repentance appear?*

By seven. (2 Cor. 7. 11.)

1. A care to leave the sin whereunto he is fast.
2. An utter condemning of himself for it with a craving of pardon.
3. A great anger against himself for his carelessness.
4. A fear lest he should fall into the same sin again.
5. A desire ever after to please God.
6. A zeal of the same.
7. Revenge upon himself for his former offences.

*Thus far of Repentance, and the spiritual warfare accompanying the same.*

*What are those good works wherein our new Obedience is exercised?*

New obedience.

That which proceeding from a person acceptable, is something of God commanded, performed in right manner, and directed unto a good end; namely, whatsoever thing is done of us, not by the force or conduct of nature, (2 Cor. 3. 5.) but by the power of the spirit of Christ dwelling in us, (Rom. 8. 10.) and according to the rule of the known will of God, (Rom. 12. 2.) unto the glory of God, (1 Cor. 10. 31.) the assurance of our Election, (2 Pet. 1. 10. &c.) and the edification of others. 1 Cor. 10. 23.

*How many things then are needful for the making of our actions good? and what properties are to be required in good works?*

Of good works in general, and of the Properties of them.

Five:

1. They that do them must be such as are ingrafted into Christ, and continue in him; that so their persons may be acceptable unto God.
2. They must be agreeable to the Law of God: and he that doth them must know that he hath a warrant for his action from the commandment of God.
3. He that doth them must not only have a warrant for his action, and know that it is lawful; but he must also do it in that manner which God hath appointed.
4. He that doth them must be persuaded in his heart that God alloweth them.
5. They must be done to that holy end for which God hath commanded them: namely to glorify God, and to assure our own salvation.

*Cannot all men do good works?*

No, but only the *regenerate*: who are for that purpose created anew, and endued in some measure with the spirit of Christ, and power of his Resurrection, and carry the Image of God in them. Eph. 2. 10. 2 Tim. 2. 21.

*What say you then of the good works of the unregenerate?*

They do no good works: because they neither are as yet members of Christ, nor do offer them to God in the name of Christ, and therefore are the evil tree, which bringeth forth only evil fruit. Mat. 7. 17, &c. Jer. 13. 23.

*Is there no difference between those men, though unregenerate, which keep themselves to their own wives, and those that take other mens? or between him that stealeth, and him that liveth of his own labour?*

Yes verily. For the former actions are civilly good, and profitable for the maintenance

maintenance of the society of men, and before God not so abominable as those which are committed against civil honesty: yet coming from some other cause (either of vain-glory, or of servile fear, or opinion of merit) than from faith, and consequently the love of God, they are no better than sins, what shew of goodnesssoever they have.

*Is there no concurrence of nature in the doing of a good work?*

Taking *nature* (in the common sense of Scripture) for that hereditary corruption that cleaveth to all the sons of *Adam*, (*Eph. 2. 3. 1 Cor. 2. 14.*) no good work hath any ground or help from nature, but is altogether contrary thereto: (*Rom. 8. 7.*) But if we understand by *nature*, (as *Rom. 2. 14.*) the created abilities of soul and body, as the light of reason, liberty of will, motion of the bodily members, &c. we acknowledge *nature* not to be the principal mover or guide, (*Math. 16. 17.*) but the thing moved and guided by grace, in well doing. *1 Thes. 5. 23.*

*Do not our good works make us worthy of eternal life? or in some part justify us? or any whit merit and deserve the favour of God?*

No; because,

1. We are ten thousand times more indebted to God, than all our good works or our selves are worth.

That there is no merit in good works.

2. We can do no good thing but that which cometh from God.

3. The righteousness which is able to stand in the judgment of God, must be perfect in all respects. But in many things we sin all: and again, our best works are imperfect, corrupt and defiled with sin; and therefore can deserve nothing at the hands of God, who being perfect righteousness it self, will find in the best works we do, more matter of damnation than of salvation; wherefore we must rather condemn our selves for our good works, than look to be justified before God thereby. *Psal. 143: 2. Isa. 64. 6. Job 9. 3.*

*Is there no work of man perfectly good?*

No work of a sinful man is wholly free from sin: neither is there any good work perfect, no not for the most perfect in this life, by reason of the remainders of corruption; (*Isa. 64. 6. Gal. 5. 17.*) but only the work of Christ, in whom alone there was no mixture of sin. *1 Pet. 2. 22.*

*But when our sanctification here begun shall be perfect in the world to come; shall we not then be justified by an inherent righteousness?*

No, but by the imputed righteousness of our Saviour Christ, which being once given us, is never taken away from us.

*How is pollution conveyed into the good works which God worketh in us?*

There is (beside the work of his own hand, through the operation of his holy Spirit) a pollution in us, and an infection of ours, which cometh from the sin that dwelleth in us: as clear water put into an unclean Vessel, or running through a filthy channel, receiveth some evil quality thereof.

*Wherein do our good works fail of Gods justice?*

Partly in the instrumental causes, from whence they proceed; and partly in the final cause, or end whereunto they aim.

*What are the instrumental causes hindring the perfection of our works?*

1. Our Understanding; in that the work is not done with knowledge absolute and thoroughly perfect.

Wherein our good works fail.

2. Our Memory; in that our remembrance is infeebled, and doth not so fully retain that which the Understanding conceiveth.

3. Our Will and affections; in that they are short of their duty.

4. Our Body ; in that it is not so apt and nimble for the execution of good things, as is required.

*Express this by a Similitude.*

We are in the instrumental causes like to a common labourer, which being hired by the day, worketh with one hand, whereas both are required ; or worketh a piece of the day, being hired for the whole.

*What is the final end wherein good works fail ?*

In that we have not so direct an eye to God's glory, or the good of our neighbour, as is required : but look aquint (as it were) at those duties which are enjoyned us. Like to those Artificers, who prefer their own credit in their skill, before their Masters profit.

*If then it be so that sin cleaveth to our best works, are not our good works sin, and are not all evil works equal ?*

No doubtles: be it far from us to think of it; For their imperfection is sinful, but the good work is not a sin : and even in bad actions (as hath been said some are better, that is, less evil and hurtful than others.

*But seeing our ways are thus corrupt, how can they please God ? and why doth he promise a reward unto them ?*

Why God rewardeth our works.

First, the reward that God doth promise, is not for the desert of our works, but of his own grace and mercy.

Secondly, the corruption and pollution that cleaveth unto our good works is taken away by the intercession of our Saviour Christ ? for whose sake God covering their imperfection, accepteth and accounteth of them, and so rewardeth, them, as if they were perfect. 1 Pet. 2. 5. Exod. 28. 36, 37, 38.

*What Doctrine is hence to be gathered ?*

A doctrine of great comfort to the children of God to stir them up to abound in good works, lieth they are so acceptable to God in Christ Jesus, for when men know any thing to be delightfome to their Prince, they will with all indeavour strive for it : how much more then ought we to be pricked forward to the service of God, who quencheth not the smoaking flax, nor breaketh the bruised Reed, (Mat. 12. 20.) yea, which forgetteth not a cup of cold water given in faith, and for his sake ? Mat. 10. 42.

*Declare now the ends for which good works are to be done ?*

The ends of good works.

1. That by them God's glory may be advanced.
2. That by them we may shew our thankfulness unto God for all his benefits.
3. That by them we may be assured of our faith and election.
4. That by our good works we may edifie others.

*How may we edifie others ?*

1. By encomaging and strengthening those that are good.
2. By stopping the mouths of the wicked, and of those that are incorrigible.

*Is it not lawfull to seek our own praise, and merit by our good works ?*

No : for all our good works are imperfect, and salvation is only merited by the death and obedience of Christ ; as hath been said.

*But will not this doctrine make men careles of well doing ?*

No : for they that are ingrafted into Christ, must needs bring forth good works : and good works are necessary (as hath been declared) though not for merit, yet for God's glory, the edification of others, and our own assured comfort.

*Are good works so needful that without them we cannot be saved?*

Yea: for although good works do not work our salvation in any part; yet because they that are justified are also sanctified, they that do no good works declare that they neither are justified nor sanctified, and therefore cannot be saved.

*Then they must much more be condemned which commit sin and lye in it?*

Yea, for such are not only pronounced to be accursed by the law, but also the Gospel hath denounced, that they shall not inherit the Kingdom of heaven.

*What considerations may draw us to be zealous in good works?*

That if we do well, we shall have well; as the old saying is.

*But that is a hard thing to be perswaded of.*

So it is indeed: because our hearts are naturally distrustful in the promises of God; as also our flesh, the world and the devil do suggest unto us, that it is a vain thing to do good. *Mal. 3. 14.*

*What remedy is there against these assaults?*

That it shall be well with them that do well; by the testimony of God himself commanding the Prophet *Esaiab* to say so to the righteous: (*Esa. 3. 10.*) which ought to teach all men, that laying aside all their own opinions, and whatsoever seemeth good in their own eyes, they should rely wholly on the direction of God.

*What may be gathered of this?*

That it is better to endanger our selves with obedience to God, then with disobedience to rid our selves out of appearance of trouble.

*But why did the Lord thus charge the Prophet?*

Because the wicked (as saith *Malachi*) wearied God with their blasphemies, saying that he delighted in their wickedness. *Mal. 2. 17.*

*How secondly is that point confirmed?*

By a continual practice and experience from time to time, as the friends of *Job* do well reason thereupon.

*What is the third proof?*

That first the Lord must do either good for good, or evil for good; and that it is absurd, yea blasphemous, to say, that God doth evil for good: it must needs follow, that he will do good for good. For if a reasonable honest man would not requite kindness with unkindness; it can much less fall into the nature of God so to do: especially seeing he did then shew kindness unto us, when we were enemies unto him.

*How fourthly is it confirmed?*

In that God is said to write up the good deeds of his servants into his book of records; as the Kings of the earth are wont to do, *Mal. 3. 16, 17, 18.*

*But this seemeth not so; sith the wicked do so triumph over the godly, as if there were no difference?*

A difference shall specially appear at the day of Judgment, when by the sentence of the great Judge the wicked like stubble shall be consumed with fire, and the Sun of righteousness shall shine upon the just. *Mal. 4. 1, 2.*

*Is there no difference at all in this life?*

Yes, inwardly. For the godly in doing well have always a good conscience, howsoever earthly things go with them: so that the green sallet of herbs,

or dry bread, is better to them than all the rich man's wealth: because the grace of God goeth with them whithersoever they go; whereas the wicked have a hell in their conscience, how well soever they fare outwardly.

*So much of good works in general: What special good works are commended to us in the Word of God?*

Of special good works required.

The things which we give unto God, prescribed in the first Table: and the giving of alms to our needy Neighbour; touching which among all the duties of the second Table, our Saviour giveth special direction in the 6. of *Matthew*, where he treateth of Prayer and Fasting.

*What are those things that we give unto God?*

Prayers and Vows: *Psa.* 50. 13, 14. & 66. 13, 14. which being special parts of Gods worship, may not be communicated unto any other. *Isa.* 42. 8. & 48. 11.

*What is Prayer?*

Of Prayer what it is.

It is a familiar speech with God, in the name of Christ, (1 *Joh.* 5. 14.) opening the desires of our hearts unto him: and so lifting up of the mind, and a pouring out of the heart before God; for the more ample and free fruition of the good things we have need of. *Psal.* 50. 15. *Jer.* 33. 3. *Lam.* 2. 19. *Phil.* 4. 6.

*What gather you hence?*

That we can never honour God aright in calling upon his name, unless we bring *faithful* and *feeling* hearts before him. *Jam.* 1. 6, 7. 1 *Sam.* 1. 16.

*Describe Prayer yet more largely?*

It is a religious calling upon God alone, in the name of Christ, by the titles wherewith in the Scripture he is set forth unto us; as well thereby to do service and homage unto the Lord, as to obtain those further things and graces that are necessary for us. Or thus. It is the holy request of an *humble* and *sanctified* heart, together with *thanksgiving*, (*Phil.* 4. 6.) offered by the power of the *Spirit* of prayer, (*Rom.* 8. 26.) as a special *service* unto God. (*Psal.* 50. 15.) in the name of Christ, (*John* 14. 14.) in behalf of *our selves and others*, (*Ep.* 6. 18.) with *assurance* to be heard, in what we pray for, according to the will of God. *Joh.* 5. 14. *Jam.* 1. 6.

*Why do we call it a request with thanksgiving?*

Because in all our Prayers, there must be both *Petition* of the good things we need, and *thankful acknowledgment* of those we have obtained; (1 *The.* 5. 17, 18.) As for those forms which contain neither supplication nor giving of thanks, (as the *Articles* of the Belief, the *Decalogue*, &c.) they may and ought, for other good purposes, be committed to memory and rehearsed; (*Dent.* 6. 7.) but to use them as Prayers, savoureth of deep ignorance, if not of superstition. *Mat.* 6. 7.

*Why do you call it the request of the heart?*

Not to exclude the use of *bodily gesture*, much less of the *voice* and *tongue*, in the action of Invocation; (therefore called *the Cavess of the Lips*, *Hos.* 14. 2.) but to shew, First, that the heart is, on our part, the principal mover and speaker in prayer; from whence both voice and gesture have their force and grace, 1 *Cor.* 14. 15. *Psal.* 45. 1. & 8. 108.

Secondly, that Prayer on sudden occasion may be secretly and powerfully offered, and is of God heard and accepted, when neither any *voice* is uttered, nor any *bodily gesture* employed. *Exod.* 14. 15. *Neb.* 2. 4.

*Why*



*Why do you add, of an humble and sanctified heart ?*

Because as in general, none can pray or do any thing acceptably, (*Pfal. observe* 109. 7.) but such as are truly regenerate, and sanctified unto this and every good work : (*Pfal. 51. 15.*) so in special (and for the present action of prayer) it is required as the *Sum of all sacrifices*, that the heart be humble and contrite, (*Pfal. 51. 17.*) acknowledging its own unworthiness, by reason of sin, (*Dan. 9. 8, 9.*) feeling the want of Gods grace and mercy. (*Pfal. 143. 6.*) and submitting it self unto him, willing to be beholding for the least degree of favour. *Luk. 15. 18, 19.*

*What then is required of us that our prayers may be holy ?*

1. That we pray with faith and assurance that God for Christ's sake will hear us.
2. That we pray with fear and reverence of God.
3. That we pray with humility and a lively sense of our own unworthiness to obtain any thing at Gods hands.
4. That we pray with a true feeling of our own wants, and an earnest desire to obtain those things for which we pray.
5. That our affections be agreeable to the matter for which we pray.
6. That we purpose to use all good means for the obtaining of those things for which we pray.

What is required that prayer may be holy.

In brief: these be the special properties of true Prayer. It must be,

1. In *faith*, without wavering, *Jam. 1. 6.*
2. In *truth*, without feigning, *Pfal. 145. 18.*
3. In *humility*, without swelling, *Luk. 18. 13.*
4. In *zeal*, without cooling, *Jam. 5. 16.*
5. In *constancy*, without fainting, *Luk. 18. 1.*

*What learn you hence ?*

That even they which are most frequent and fervent in this duty, had need to pray to God to forgive their prayers, in conscience of their own frailties and infirmities. *Esa. 38. 14, 15. Psal. 77. 9, 10. & 32. 3, 5.*

*What is the spirit of Prayer ?*

An especial grace and operation of the holy Ghost, *Jude. 20.* called therefore the *spirit of grace and supplication*, *Zach. 12. 10.* enabling us to pour out our souls unto the Lord (*Psal. 62. 8.*) with sighs that cannot be expressed. (*Rom 8 26.*) For the holy Ghost must be our helper in prayer, to teach us both what to pray and how to pray. *Rom. 8. 26.*

*To whom must we pray ?*

To God alone and to none other. For 1. He alone as the searcher of the hearts, heareth the voice, and knoweth the meaning of the spirit of prayer. *Pfal. 65. 2. Rom. 8. 27.* That we must pray to God alone.

2. He is able to grant whatsoever we demand. *Eph. 3. 20.*

3. He challengeth our faith and confidence, without which we cannot pray. *Rom. 10 14.* Wherefore seeing he alone hears all prayer, heals all sins, knows all suitors ; (*Jer. 31. 18. 2 Chron. 7. 14. & 6. 30. 1 Chron 28. 9. Psal. 44. 21.*) he alone hath *love* enough to pity all, and *power* enough to relieve all our wants and necessities : to him alone we are to pray, and to none other

*What learn you hence ?*

That seeing the Scripture forbiddeth us to communicate Gods honour to any other ; (*Isa. 42. 8. & 48. 11.*) such as pray either to Saint or Angel, (*Col. 2. 18.*) have forgottea the name of their God. *Pfal. 44. 20.* Which condemns

eth those of the Church of *Rome*, who would have us to pray to Angels and Saints departed.

*Whether must we direct our prayers to the Father, or the Son, or to the Holy Ghost?*

We must pray to the Trinity of the Persons in the Unity of the Godhead; this is to say, to one God in Trinity.

*In whose name, or for whose sake must we pray to God?*

That we must pray only in the mediation of Christ.

In the only name and for the only sake of his Son, our Lord Jesus Christ, (*Dan. 9. 17. Joh. 16. 23, 24.*) the alone Mediator between God and Man. (*1 Tim. 2. 5.*) as of propitiation, so of intercession; (*1 Joh. 2. 1, 2. Rom. 8. 34.*) who through the veil of his flesh, and merit of his blood, hath prepared for us a new and living way, whereby we may be bold to enter into the holy place: (*Heb. 10. 19.*) in whom alone we are made the children of God, and have liberty to call him Father; (*Gal. 4. 6.*) finally in, with, and for whom, God giveth all good things to his Elect. *Rom. 8. 32.*

*Who are condemned by this doctrine?*

They of the Church of *Rome*, who teach us to pray in the name of Saints, and make them to be mediators between God and us.

*For whom are we to pray?*

For whom we must pray.

For our selves and others; us and ours: in a word, First for all men, (*1 Tim. 2. 1.*) even our enemies (*Mat. 5. 44.*) because they bear the common Image of God, (*Jam. 3. 9.*) and blood of mankind, whereof we are all made; (*Act. 17. 26.*) unless it be apparent that any one hath committed the unpardonable sin: (*1 Joh. 5. 16.*) but principally, for such as are our Brethren in Christ and of the household of faith. *Eph. 6. 18. Gal. 6. 10.*

Secondly, for all sorts and degrees of men; especially publick persons, as *Rulers*, and such as are in authority: (*1 Tim. 2. 2.*) *Ministers*, that watch over our souls; (*Eph. 6. 19. Col. 4. 3.*) &c. *Mat. 6. 18-19.*

*What assurance have we, that we shall be heard in what we pray for?*

Because we pray to that God that heareth prayer, (*Psal. 65. 2.*) and is the rewarder of all that come unto him; (*Heb. 11. 6.*) and in his name, to whom God denyeth nothing: (*Joh. 11. 42.*) (and therefore howsoever we are not always answered at the present, (*Psal. 77. 3.*) or in the same kind that we desire, (*2 Cor. 12. 9.*) yet sooner or later, we are sure to receive, even above that we are able to ask or think, if we continue with constancy, patience, and importunity, to sue unto him according to his will. *Luk. 11. 5. to 9. & 18. 1. 1 Joh. 5. 14.*

*What things must we come to God in prayer for?*

Not for trifles and toys, but for things needful and necessary, and such as God hath made us promise of: some whereof do immediately concern the glory of God, others the necessity of man; either in things belonging to this present life, or those especially which belong to the life to come.

*But how can we remember all the promises that God hath made, thereon to ground our petitions; especially being unletter'd?*

There are general promises, that whatsoever we shall ask according to his will, it shall be given us, *1 Joh. 5. 14.* Again, whatsoever we read or hear that the servants of God have demanded in the Scripture uncontrolledly, or without special calling, that is a good warrant for us to demand at the hands of God.

*Where then is that will of God revealed, according whereto we must direct our prayers?*

Throughout

Throughout the whole book of the Scriptures of God; which inform us, as concerning other duties, so especially concerning this of prayer; recording also for this purpose many excellent prayers, as of *Moses, David, Daniel, Nehemiah, Paul, &c.* but most absolutely in that passage or portion delivered by our Saviour himself, and therefore commonly called the *Lord's Prayer*?

*What learn you from hence?*

That for help of our weakness and rudeness in prayer, we are to look unto the prayers of the holy men of God set down in Scripture, according as the estate wherein they were at the time of those prayers may best fort with the special cases wherein we are when we pray. But especially and above any other, yea above all of them together, we are to look to that most absolute prayer, which our Saviour Christ hath taught us in the Gospel.

*What is the special end and use of prayer?*

To recover our peace, and to nourish our communion with our God, *Dan. 9. 9. Phil. 4. 6, 7. Joh. 17. or 1 John 1. 3, 4.*

*What gather you hence?*

That such as have least care, and make least conscience to call upon him, have also least acquaintance and acceptance with him. *Psal. 14. 4.*

*How farther is the necessity of Prayer considered?*

Prayer is a key to open the Store houses of all God's treasures unto us; and as by knocking we enter into the place we desire to go to, so by Prayer we obtain those things we need. Also as men provide gifts to make way for favour: (*Prov. 17. 8.*) so Prayer is a gift to appease God's anger towards us; and as a hook to reach those things that are above our reach, and to put by those things that stand in our way and let us. Add hereunto, that it is so necessary, as without it the use and enjoying of the things we have is unlawful. *1 Tim. 4. 5.* For as if we take any thing that is our neighbours without asking him leave, we are accounted Thieves; so to take any thing of Gods (whose all things are) without asking them at his hand, is Felony. Finally, Prayer is a principal means serving for the strengthening and increasing of Faith, and for the further advancing, and more plentiful effecting of the outward means of salvation. *Jude 20. 1 Thes. 5. 17, 18. Psal. 4. 6, 7.* And therefore the Apostles did not only say unto Christ, *Increase our faith*; *Luke 17. 5.* but also, *Lord teach us to pray, as John also taught his disciples, Luke 11. 1.*

*What is the excellency of this duty?*

It setteth head, and heart, and all our best affections a work; giving God the praise of his Majesty and Mercy, Goodness and Greatness both together. *1 Sam. 1. 10, 13. Jam. 5. 13, 14. Psal. 50. 23.* And therefore it is compared to Incense or sweet perfumes; (*Psal. 141. 2.*) for that it is acceptable to the Lord, as perfumes are to men: and to the drops of honey, as it were dropping from the lips of the Church, as from an honey-comb. *Cant. 4. 11. Thy lips, O my Spouse, drop as the honey-comb: honey and milk are under thy tongue.*

*How can God so infinitely wise, take delight in our prayers that are so rude?*

Because in Christ he taketh us for his children: and therefore as Parents rather take pleasure to hear their children stammer, than some other to speak eloquently; so doth the Lord take pleasure in the weak prayers of the Saints.

*Abuse in  
and Rom. in  
the 10th  
p. 309 509*

*11.*

*11.*

*Hitherto of Invocation and Prayer in general. What are the parts thereof?*

The parts of Prayer.

Two principally: (*Psal.* 63, 15, 23. *1 Thes.* 5. 17, 18. *1 Tim.* 2. 1. *Phil.* 4. 6.) *Petition* or Request (properly called Prayer,) whereby we crave things needful; and *Thanksgiving* or Praise, whereby we magnifie the goodness of God, and give thanks for benefits received. To the which is annexed *Confession* of sins, and of the righteous judgment of God against them; at the view whereof we being humbled, may come more preparedly to prayer in both kinds.

*What is Petition?*

Of Petition.

*Petition* (or Prayer properly so called) is a religious calling upon the name of God by suit or request, in which we desire and beg all things necessary. *Luk* 11. 1, 2, 3. *Phil.* 4. 6, 7. *Psal.* 50. 15. And it is either for things of this present life, with this exception, so far forth as the same shall be thought good unto the wisdom of God; or (and that especially) for the things of the life to come, without exception. *Mat.* 8. 2. *2 Sam.* 15. 25, 26.

*What learn you of this, that it is a religious calling upon God?*

First, that we may not rush unadvisedly into Gods presence, but approach his Throne with fear and reverence. *Heb.* 12. 28. *Eccl.* 5. 1.

Secondly, that the best hearing is in heaven, and readiest help from God's hand. *2 Chron.* 7. 14.

*What do you mean by calling upon God?*

Not the calling of the tongue, but the cry of the heart: as *Hannah* called upon God, when her voice was not heard; (*1 Sam.* 1. 13.) and *Moses* cried unto the Lord when he spake not a word, *Exod.* 14. 15.

*What gather you hence;*

That the heart without the tongue may pray with fruit and feeling: (*1 Sam.* 1. 10.) but the tongue without the heart is nothing but vain babbling. *Mat.* 6. 7.

*What do you mean by the name of God?*

God himself considered in his Attributes and Properties, whereby (as men by their names) he is known unto us. *Exod.* 34. 5, 6, 7.

*What learn you hence?*

First, that neither any may claim, nor we may yield this duty, but where we may find the power and properties of the Deity. *Psal.* 44. 20, 21.

Secondly, that it is a good ground of prayer to stay our hearts on such of God's properties, as are best suiting with our necessities: *2 Chron.* 20. 6, 7, 8, 9. *Neh.* 1. 5.

Thirdly, that they that will not settle their hearts on God alone by faith can never lift up their hearts to him alone in prayer. *Rom.* 10. 14. *Psal.* 44. 20. *Lam.* 3. 41.

Fourthly, that in every state and condition, they that pray best, speed best, and live best. *Dan.* 9. 13, 14, 23. *Psal.* 50. 15. & 66. 18, 19.

*It seemeth to be of no use to make our petitions unto God; seeing he both knoweth what we need, either for his glory or our good, and hath determined what to bestow upon us?*

Yes verily, we must ask, and that continually (that is, at set times, without intermission) by the Commandment of Christ himself, bidding us *ask and we shall receive, seek and we shall find, knock and it shall be opened to us:* (*Mat.* 7. 7.) wherein we should rest. For as God hath foreappointed all necessaryes to be given us; so hath he also appointed the means whereby they should be brought to pass, whereof Prayer is a chief.

*It is by the Spirit of God  
that we are made to  
ask and we shall receive  
Right in this  
Duty of Prayer*

*What*

*What other reason have you for this?*

We should therefore pray for the things we have need of, that having received them, we may be assured we had them of God, and not by accident or fortune as natural men do say.

*Doth not God oftentimes bestow his benefits without prayer?*

Yes: both upon the wicked, (either to provoke them to repent or to make them inexcusable: and upon his own children. Even as a loving Father in regard of his ignorant, or sometimes negligent child, doth give things unasked; even so doth God toward his.

*Why will the Lord have us beg his blessing of him?*

To exercise our faith in seeking, (*Mat. 7. 7.*) and our Patience in waiting; (*Jam. 5. 10, 11.*) as also to stir up a feeling of our wants, (*Mat. 15. 22.*) and to quicken our affections unto good things. *Phil. 4. 6.*

*What gather you hence?*

That where the heart is faithless, the prayer must needs be fruitless: for according to our faith it shall be unto us. *Luk. 18. 11, 14. Jam. 1. 6, 7.*

*But why doth not he answer when we ask, but delays to help us when yet he sees and hears us?*

Because we are sometimes too haughty and he will humble us; sometimes too hasty and he will curb us. *2 Cor. 12. 7, 8, 9.* Sometimes we fail in matter, asking we know not what: sometimes in the manner, asking we know not how: and sometimes in the end, asking we know not wherefore. *Jam. 4. 2, 3.*

*Doth he not sometimes delay us, when yet he purposeth to answer us?*

Yes he doth:

First, because he loves to hear the voice of his own spirit in us. *Rom. 8. 26. 27.*

Secondly, because the suit may be good, and yet the season not so meet for us. *Rev. 6. 10, 11. Acts 1. 7.*

Thirdly, he takes pleasure in our constancy, being a fruit of faith and fervency. *Luk. 18. 1. Mat 15. 27, 28.*

Fourthly, because such blessings as are won by long and strong prayers, are always esteemed very highly, received in humility, enjoyed in sobriety, and employed faithfully for mans good and God's glory. *1 Sam. 1. 10, 21. 1 Chro. 29. 14, 15.*

*What gather you hence?*

That if we faint not in praying, we shall in due season be sure of a blessing (*Luk. 18. 7. 8.*) and that when our God *denyes* us or *delays* us in that which seems good unto us, even then he gives us that which he knows is better for us. *2 Cor. 12. 8, 9.*

*What good means may we use to obtain the gift of prayer in some measure?*

1. To get some true feeling for our Misery: for the sense of Misery breeds suit for mercy. *Mat. 15. 22.*

2. Bring hungry and thirsty souls after grace and good things, *Psal. 42.* The means of obtaining the gift of prayer.

1, 2. when the soul panteth most, the heart prayeth best.

3. Gather principles of knowledge: that the head may guide the heart. *1 Cor. 14. 15.* for what we know is worth the having, he will not lose for the asking.

4. Consider the examples of God's servants in like sorrows, and make like suits. *Dan. 9. Nehem. 9.* Be thou as they were to him and he will be to thee what he was to them.

5. Be well persuaded of Christ's ordinance, *Master teach us to pray*; (Luk. 11. 1.) and of God's acceptance, reckon of him as of our Father: (Matth. 6. 5, 9.) for according to our faith it shall be unto us.

6. Be resolute against sin, neither living in grosser iniquities, nor allowing lesser infirmities: (Rom. 7. 15.) and so he will never shut out our prayers, nor withhold his mercies from us *Psal. 66. 19, 20.*

7. In reading or hearing, turn Precepts into Prayers; Lord give what thou commandest, and command what thou wilt. *Duties enjoyed, graces commended blessings promised, and curses threatned, do all quicken us to prayer, and furnish us with matter for the same. Matth. 5. 6, 7. Rom. 12. Eph. 6.*

*But when for all this our Prayers are few and faint, cold and weak? what special help may we then have against our infirmities?*

None better then to pray for the Spirit of Prayer, which helpeth and healeth our infirmities, and teacheth us both for manner, measure, and matter, to lay open all our necessities. *Rom. 8. 26. Luk. 11. 13* And secondly, call others which are best acquainted with the practice and power of prayer, to pray with us being present. (*Jam. 5. 14.*) and for us being absent from us. *Rom. 1. 9.*

*What be the signs of a sound Prayer?*

1. To use all other good means carefully. *Acts 27. 23. 31.*
2. To seek God's glory principally. *Exod. 32. 11, 12.*
3. To desire the best things most earnestly. *Col. 1. 9. 10, 11.*
4. To ask nothing but what God's Word warranteth us. *1 John. 6. 14.*
5. To wait patiently till he hear and help us. *Psal. 40 1. James 5. 10, 11.*

*What motives may we have to stir up our hearts to this duty?*

Motives to Prayer.

Many and good, because prayer is the voice of God's spirit in us. (*Rom. 8. 26.*) a Jewel of grace bequeathed by Christ unto us, (*Luk. 11. 2.*) It is the Hand of Faith, the Key of God's treasure, the Souls Sollicitor, the Hearts Armour-bearer, and the Minds Interpreter. *Matth. 7. 7. Ephes. 6. 18.* It procureth all blessings, preventeth curses, (*2 Chr. 7. 14.*) sanctifieth all creatures, that they may do us good. (*1 Tim. 4. 5.*) seasoneth all crosses, that they can do us no hurt. Lastly, it keeps the heart in humility, the life in sobriety, strengtheneth all graces, overcometh all temptations, subdueth corruptions, purgeth our affections, makes our duties acceptable to God, our lives profitable unto men, and both life and death comfortable unto our selves. *Acts 9. 11. Eph. 6 18, Jude. 20. Acts. 4. 24. & 7. 59.*

*What are the lets and hindrances of Prayer?*

Hindrances of Prayer.

There be some which hinder the power of it, as our ordinary Infirmities: (*Mark. 9. 23, 24.*) other, which hinder either the practice or the fruit of it, as our customary and grosser Iniquities. *Psal. 66. 18.*

*What are the Infirmities that weaken the Power of Prayer?*

Roving imaginations, inordinate affections, dulness of spirit, weakness of faith, coldness in feeling, faintness in asking, weariness in waiting, too much passion in our own matters, and too little compassion in other mens miseries. *Psal 32. 3, 4 Mar. 9. 24. Isa. 38. 13, 14. Jonah 4. 2. 3.*

*What be the customary Iniquities which hinder the Practice of Prayer?*

- 1 The prophane of the Atheists, in not calling upon God. *Psal. 14. 4.*
2. The scottishness of the Papists, lifting up their hearts and hands to base Idols. *Psa. 44. 20.*
3. The sensuality of the voluptuous, drowning all his desires in delights, and his prayers in pleasures. *2 Tim. 3. 4.*

4. The

4. The stupidity of worldlings, that think they have no need of praying, but of carking and caring, toiling and moyling in the world. *Luk.* 12. 17, 18. *Phil.* 3. 19.

5. The foolishness of the malicious, which because they will not forgive their brother an hundred pence, cannot pray to God to forgive them their ten thousand Talents. *Mat.* 18. 32.

*What be the gross sins which shut the ears of the Lord and hinder the fruit of our Prayers?*

1. Graceless hypocrisie, drawing near with our lips, but having our hearts far from him. *Isa.* 29. 13.

2. Shameless impiety, when turning our ears from his precepts he turneth away his from our prayers. *Prov.* 28. 9.

3. Senceless impenitency, when the cry of our sins unrepented of, drowns the vice of our prayers that are offered. *Zach.* 7. 13.

4. Merciless cruelty, when we either cause or suffer the afflicted to cry without hearing; the Lord hearing us cry in our affliction, without helping. *Gen.* 42. 22.

*What is the general subject of our requests?*

Good, or evil. Good to obtain it, and Evil to remove or prevent it. *Col.* 1. 10. *1 Thes.* 3. 1, 2. That wherein we pray for good things is called *Supplication*. The subject of our requests.  
 (1 *Tim.* 2. 1. 2. That wherein we pray against any evil, is called *Deprecation*.

*What do you mean by good or Evil?*

Whatsoever is helpful or hurtful either for soul or body: goods and graces, sins and sorrows, mercies or judgments in spiritual or in carnal things. *Phil.* 1. 9. *Luk.* 18. 13. *Dan.* 9.

*What gather you hence?*

1. That as Prayer is the key of our heart to open all our necessities unto God, (*Lam.* 2. 19.) so is it also the key of his treasury to obtain his mercies from him. *Matth.* 7. 7.

2. That the gift of Prayer is a pledge and earnest penny of all other good gifts and graces whatsoever; (*Rom.* 8. 26, 27, 32.) and that so long as we can pray, the greatest evil cannot hurt us, (*Jonah.* 2. 1. &c. 2 *Cor.* 12. 7, 3). nor the greatest good without Prayer be ever profitable unto us. 1 *Tim.* 4. 5.

*Are we only bound to pray for our selves by request for Good, and against Evil things?*

No: we are also bound to pray likewise for others; which kind of prayer is called *Intercession*. 1 *Tim.* 2. 1, 2. Prayer for others.

*What is Intercession?*

It is the suit of the heart unto God for the good of others. As *Abraham* prayed for *Abimelech*, (*Gen.* 20. 17.) *Jacob* for his sons, (*Gen.* 49.) *Paul* for the people, (1 *Thes.* 1. 2.) and they for him.

*Why doth the Lord require this duty of us?*

1. For communicating our gifts and his graces. *Jam.* 5. 14, 15.
2. For nourishing our love.
3. For increase of our comforts.
4. For mutual support and relief in all Crosses.

*What gather you hence?*

That all such persons as are linked together in nearest bonds of society are also mutually bound to discharge this duty 1 *Tim.* 2. 1, 2. As first, in the household

household of faith, the stronger is to pray for the weaker that he fail not, (*Phi. 1. 9.*) and the weaker for the stronger that he fail not. *2 The. 3. 1, 2.*

Secondly, the Sovereign for the Subject that he may obey in piety and loyalty, (*2 Chron. 6. 13. 14.* the Subject of the Sovereign that he may rule in righteousness and religious policy: (*1 Tim. 2. 1. 2.*) and so in all societies, whether of publick assemblies, or of private families. *Job. 1. 5. Deut. 33. 6. 1 Chr. 29. 11.*

*What followeth of all this?*

Strong consolation: that when we find small power or comfort in our prayers, the Lord hath ordained that we may seek and find both, in the prayers of his Church and children. *Jam. 5. 14, 15. Act. 12. 5, 7.*

*You have now spoken of the first part of Invocation, namely Petition: What followeth?*

The second, which is Praise and Thanksgiving. *1 Thef. 5. 18.*

*What is this Praise or Thanksgiving?*

Of thanksgiving-

It is a reverent calling upon the name of God, wherein the heart being cheered with some taste of his goodness, acknowledgeth all from his Mercy, and purposeth all for his Glory. *Luke 10. 21. 1 Chr. 29. 10, 11, 12, 13.* And it is either in praising all his goodness, wisdom, power, mercy, and generally for the government of his Church; or for those particular favours, that by Petition we have received from his merciful hand.

*Whence doth this duty of Praise arise?*

As Petition ariseth from the feeling of our misery: so Praise from the feeling of God's mercy. Petition begetteth what we want, and praise acknowledgeth what and whence we have it. *Rev. 15. 3. 1 Chron. 29. 12.*

*What gather you hence?*

That when the Lord hath granted unto us our Petitions, we are forthwith bound to render unto him his due praises. *Exodus 15. 1. Psal. 66. 19, 20.*

*Wherein doth this duty of Praise especially consist?*

In what thanksgiving consisteth.

1. In emptying our selves of all worthiness. *Gen. 32. 10.*
2. In acknowledging him the author of every good gift, and fountain of living waters. *Jam. 17. 17. Jer. 2. 13.*
3. In speaking good of his name to others, *Psal. 40. 9, 10.*
4. In rejoycing before him in all his mercies. *Deut. 26. 11.*
5. In resolving to bestow all for his honour and service. *1 Chron. 29. 2, 3.*

*Wherefore doth the Lord require praise and thanksgiving at our hands?*

What thanksgiving is required.

- First, because it is the fairest and sweetest fruit of true piety. *Psal. 92. 1.*  
 Secondly, it entirely preserveth God's glory.  
 Thirdly, it boweth the heart of true humility.  
 Fourthly, it is the condition of the Covenant, when he gives and we receive any mercy. *Psal. 50. 15.*

Fifthly, it provoketh others to faithfulness and cheerfulness in God's service. *Psal. 95. 1.*

Sixthly, it maintaineth the intercourse of mercies and duties betwixt God and man.

*What be the properties of true praise?*

The properties of praise.

1. It must be faithful without glozing, with a single not with a double heart. *Psal. 145. 18.*
2. It must be plentiful. *Psal. 18. 1, 2.* If God gives his mercies by showers we may not yield our praises by drops.
3. It must be cheerful. *1 Chron. 29. 14.* he gives freely and we must offer, willingly: for he loves a cheerful giver. *2 Cor. 9. 7.*



4. It must be *powerful* in the best measure, with the best member. *Psal.* 81.

1, 2.  
5. It must be *skilful*, in the best manner, suiting his several properties with their due praises according to the nature of the present blessings. *Exod.* 15. 2, 3. *Psal.* 144 1, 2.

6. It must be *continual*, as long as his mercy endureth and life lasteth *Psal.* 146. 2. 1 *Thef.* 5. 18.

*What means may we use to attain unto this duty?*

1. A serious consideration of the great things he hath done for us so vile creatures. 1 *Sam.* 12. 24. The means of thanksgiving.

2. To desire to taste God's love in the least of his mercies. *Gen.* 28. 20, 21.

3. To give him a taste of our love in the best of our services. *Psal.* 116. 12.

4. To rest content with our allowance and estate wherein he hath set us *Phil.* 4. 11.

5. To compare our estate with many of God's Saints who want several of those comforts which we enjoy, and feel many sorrows which we feel not. *Psal.* 147. 20

6. To be faithful in all talents and fruitful in all graces, will be great means to make us praise God in all his mercies, *Mar.* 25. 23. *Phil.* 1. 11.

*What motives have we to provoke us to praise?*

1. It is a good, comely, and pleasant thing to praise God. *Psal.* 147. 1.

2. It is his will thus to be honoured. 1 *Thef.* 5. 18.

3. It is a duty of Saints and Angels, both here and hereafter. *Luk.* 2. 13, 14.

4. It spreadeth abroad religion, magnifieth and sanctifieth him that is most High and most Holy *Psal.* 145. 1, 2, 3. *Esa.* 8. 13.

5. It keeps the heart from swelling, and the soul from surfeiting with God's blessings.

6. It fits the heart for further graces, and provokes the Lord to fresh mercies.

*What be the special signs and marks, of one that desires to be thankful, and unfeignedly to praise God in all things?*

1. Contentedness *Phil.* 4. 11.

2. Cheerfulness in the use of God's blessings. *Deut.* 26. 11. *Psal.* 63. 5. Signs of thankfulness.

3. Faithfulness in our duties, both of our persons and places.

4. Readiness to draw others into the fellowship of God's praises. *Psal.* 66. 16. & 135. 1.

5. Rejoycing in God, even in the midst of many crosses. *Jeb.* 1.

6. Fruitfulness in good words and works. *John* 15. 8.

7. A conscionable carefulness to take all occasions and use all means to feel up our love, and set forth God's glory.

*So much of the principal parts of Invocation, Petition and Thanksgiving.*

*Are we limited and bound in certain words, how and wherein to pray?*

No verily: but we have a prescript rule and perfect pattern of Prayer of all kinds, left us in that Prayer which our Saviour Christ taught his Disciples, (and in them all succeeding ages) called the Lord's prayer.

*What is the Lord's prayer?*

It is an absolute prayer in it self, and a Prayer giving a perfect direction to frame all other prayers by. Of the Lord's Prayer.

*It is thought by some not to be a Prayer, but only a platform to direct all our prayers by;*

It is both a Prayer, which we both may and ought to pray; and also a Platform

platform of Prayer, whereunto we are to conform, and by which we ought to square all ours. And therefore as St. *Matthew* biddeth us pray after this sort ; (*Mat. 6. 9.*) so St. *Luke* biddeth us say ; *Our Father, &c.* (*Luk. 11. 2.*) the one propounding it as the most perfect platform to be imitated ; the other, as the most excellent form, to be used of all Christians.

*What is the platform propounded in this Prayer, whereunto we ought to look ?*

It teacheth both the manner how to pray, and the matter for which to pray. It teacheth us in all our prayers to whom, and through whom, and for what to pray ; also what difference to make of the things we ask, and with what affection we are to come unto God in Prayer.

*What are the words of the Lord's Prayer ?*

They are thus set down in the sixth Chapter of the Gospel according to St. *Matthew* : *After this manner therefore pray ye ?*

### Our Father which art in heaven, &c.

*What do you observe here in general ?*

That Prayer is to be made in a language which we understand, for our Saviour Christ taught his disciples here in a tongue which they understood, and not in an unknown language. Which condemneth the practice of the Church of *Rome*, which teach the people to pray in an unknown tongue : contrary to Christ's practice here, and the will of God who commandeth us to serve him with all our hearts, and therefore with our understanding as well as our affection.

*What are the parts of this Prayer ?*

They are three.

1. A Preface of compellation, for entrance into prayer ; in the first words, *Our Father which art in heaven ?*

2. A body of Petitions, containing the matter of Prayer in the words following.

3. A conclusion (or shutting up) for the confirmation and close of prayer ; in the last words, *For thine is the kingdom, &c.*

*What gather you of this, that there is a preface ?*

That Christian men are not to come malapertly or rashly, but with preparation. *Ecc. 5. 1. Psal. 26. 6. Exod. 3. 5.* For the Angel of the Lord standeth at the entry, to strike with hardness and blindness, &c. those that come not with preparation. And if we make preparation before we come to an earthly Prince, and bethink us of our words and gesture : how much more ought we to do it, when we come before the Prince and Lord of heaven and earth ?

*How are we to prepare our selves ?*

Not only to put off our evil affections. (*1 Tim. 2. 8.*) but even our honest and (otherwise in their due time) necessary cogitations ; as the cares and thoughts of our particular vocations, as of house or family.

*What doth the preface put us in mind of ?*

1. Of him to whom we pray. 2. Of our own estate in prayer : That we come unto God as to our Father, with boldness and yet with reverence of his Majesty that filleth the heavens.

*What are we taught concerning him to whom we must pray ?*

That God and God only (not any Saint or Angel) is to be prayed unto. *Psal. 73. 25:* For although there be other fathers besides God, and others

in heaven besides him: yet there is none which is our father in heaven but God alone. Beside that this being a perfect platform and pattern of all prayers, it is evident that all prayers (as in other things so in this) must be framed unto it.

*Why do you here name the Father?*

Because discerning the persons, we pray to the Father secretly understanding that we do it in the mediation of his Son, by the working of the holy Ghost; and so come to the first person in the Trinity, by his Son, through the holy Ghost, which form is to be kept for the most part, although it be also lawful to pray unto Christ, or to his blessed Spirit particularly: (*Act. 7. 59. 2 Corin. 13. 14.*) if so be that in our understanding we do conjoyn them, as those which cannot be separated in any actions, either belonging to the life to come, or pertaining to this life.

*Why must we pray to the Father in the mediation of Jesus Christ his Son?*

Because God being displeas'd for sin, we can have no dealing with him, but only by the means of his Son, in whom he is well pleas'd; (*Mat. 3. 17.*) and in whom alone we have liberty to call him Father. *Gal. 4. 5.*

*Why is it required that we pray by the working of the Holy Ghost?*

Because the Holy Ghost assureth us that he is our Father: and whereas we know not what to pray, nor how to pray, the Holy Ghost doth teach us both.

*What must we be persuaded of, and how must we be affected in Prayer?*

Partly concerning	Our selves :	1.	We must be truly humbled: which is wrought in us, with a certain persuasion.	1.	Of our sinful misery and unworthiness to be helped.
		2.	We must have a certain confidence we shall be heard: and this is wrought in us by faith, being persuaded that	2.	Of the glorious Majesty of God in heaven that must help us.
		1.	God loveth us as his own Children in our Lord Jesus Christ.	2.	Our Father being God Almighty, he is able to do whatsoever he will in heaven and in earth.
	Others: {	1.	That all God's people pray for us.		
		2.	We must be persuaded, that it is our bounden duty to pray for others as well as our selves.		

*Why doth our Saviour direct us to give such Titles unto God in the entrance of our Prayers?*

That thereby we may encrease and strengthen our faith in God; considering what he is to us, to whom we are about to pray. *Heb. 11. 6.* Our Father.

*What are we taught to consider from this, that we are taught to call God Father?*

That God in Christ is become our Father, and giveth us both the privilege, (*John 1. 12.*) and spirit of sons, (*Gal. 4. 6.*) so to call him.

*What ariseth from hence?*

First, confidence in his fatherly love and compassion towards us, as his children; (*Psal. 103. 13.*) with assurance of obtaining our suits and desires. *1 Job. 5. 14. 15.* For as young children desire to come unto their Fathers bosom or to sit upon the knee or in the Mothers lap, so we by prayer do creep into the Lord's bosom, and (as it were) do stand between the Lord's legs:

[*Deut. 33. 3.*]

[*Deut.* 33. 3.] coming with boldness to him, as to our merciful Father, whose bowels are larger in pitiful affection than any parents, yea than the mothers towards the tenderest child; if we come with faith and assurance that he will grant what we require. For if parents will give good things to their children when they ask them; much more will the Lord give his spirit to them that ask it of him without doubting. *Mat.* 7. 11. *Luk.* 11. 13. And this doubting is the cause why many go away so often from prayer without profit and comfort. *James* 1. 5. Which overthroweth the long and idle prayers of the Papists, who have not assurance of God's love towards them in the thing they demand.

Secondly, necessity of duty, on our parts; that we both reverence, (*Mat.* 1. 6.) and imitate him, (*Mat.* 5. 45.) as our Father. *Eph.* 5. 1. 1. *Pet.* 1. 17.

Thirdly, that to come in any other name than our Saviour Christ's, is abominable: which was figured in *Moses*. (*Exod.* 24. 2. & 19, 20. 21. & 20. 19.) and *Aaron*, (*Levit.* 16. 17.) but is notably set forth of the Apostle, *1 Tim.* 2. 5. Therefore it is abominable to come by Saints, as in Popery they do.

*What is to be considered by this, that we are directed to call him [our] Father?*

The nature of faith, which is to apply it home to himself. *Joh.* 20. 28. *Gal.* 2. 20. *Mat.* 27. 46. Also that our Saviour Christ is the natural Son, as we his sons by grace and adoption.

*May not a man say in his prayer, My Father?*

Yes verily: and that with warrant of our Saviour Christ's example. *Mat.* 26. 39, 4, 2.

*Why then are we taught here to say, Our Father?*

As the word *Father* directeth us to meditate upon the relation between God and our selves: so the word *Our* directeth us to meditate upon the relation between our selves, and so many as are or may be the Children of the same Father with us.

*What doth this put us in mind of?*

First, that we must at all times maintain or renew, love and peace one with another: but especially when we make our prayers, we must come in love, as one brother loveth another; and therefore reconcile our selves, if there be any breach. *1 Tim.* 2. 8. *Esa.* 1. 15. *Mat.* 5. 23. &c. Secondly, that we are bound to pray, and to be suitors to our God and Father one for another, as well as for our selves: (*Jam.* 5. 16.) that every one praying for all, and all for every one, we may joyntly encrease and enjoy the benefit of the common stock of prayers laid in the hands of God.

*Whereto do the words following direct us, when we say, Which art in Heaven.*

Which art in Heaven.

To the meditation of the glory, powerful providence, wisdom, and holiness of God; in which regards he is said to dwell in the *high* and *holy* place: (*Isa.* 11, 4. *Esa.* 57. 15.) not that he is excluded from earth, or included in heaven or any place, (who filleth all places. *Jer.* 23. 24. yea, whom the heaven of heavens is not able to contain: *1 Kings* 8. 27.) but first, because his wisdom, power, and glory appeareth most evidently in the rule of the heavens, as of the most excellent bodily creatures by which inferior natures are ruled. *Psa.* 19. 1, & 8. 3. & 104. 1, &c.

Secondly, for that in heaven he doth make himself, and his goodness known to the Angels and blessed Spirits of men immediately, and without the helps and aids which we have.

Thirdly

Thirdly, because he communicateth himself and his goodness more powerfully to them than to us: and so God is said to be present in the Temple, and in the Elect.

Fourthly, because there, and not on earth, we should now seek him (*Psal.* 123. 1. *Col.* 3. 1, 2.) where also we hope, another day to dwell with him in the same happy fellowship, which now the holy Angels and blessed souls do enjoy: Which teacheth us not to have any fleshly conceit, but to have our cogitations above any worldly matter.

Fifthly, to teach us that as we are to come boldly unto him as to a Father, so we also are to come with humility, and reverence of his Majesty, who is so high above us: we wretched men being as worms crawling upon the earth and he sitting in great Majesty in the highest heavens. *Eccl.* 4. 16. & 5. 1.

Sixthly, to teach us to pray not only reverently, but also fervently before him, so directing and lifting up our hearts to Almighty God that our prayers may ascend into heaven. *2 Chron.* 32. 20.

Seventhly, to encrease our confidence in him, who is both ready and able to do all things for us. That acknowledging him to ride on the heavens for our help, able (as in heaven) to do for us whatsoever (as a father) he will; (*Psa.* 115. 3.) we may with full confidence in his power and love, ask every good thing of him. *Psa.* 2. 8. *Luk.* 11. 13.

*Thus much of the Preface: now are we come to the prayer it self, What is general unto it?*

That our affections, with zeal and earnestness ought to wait and attend on prayer: which appeareth by the shortness of all the petitions.

*What is declared hereby?*

The great affection we should have to the things we come for, which giveth a check to our cold prayers, where the understanding is without the affection, and (as it were) the sacrifice without the heavenly fire to lift it up and make it mount into heaven, both in publick and private prayers.

*So much of the attention general to the Prayer. What are the parts thereof?*

A form of Petition and of Thanksgiving.

*What is taught hereby?*

First, that whensoever we come unto God in Petition, we are also to give him thanks: (*Phil.* 4. 6. *Luk.* 17. 17, 18.) things not to be severed, and means to make way for further graces and benefits to be obtained,

Secondly, that it is a fault of us (when we are distressed) in publick prayer to come unto God in Petition, but not to return thanksgiving for our benefits received.

*How many Petitions are there in the Lord's Prayer?*

Six (equally divided, as it were, into two Tables:) whereof three do concern God, as doth the first Table of the Law; three do concern our selves and our neighbours, as doth the second Table. For in the three first we make request for those things that concern God's Majesty, whose glory and service we are to prefer before our own good: (*John* 12. 27. 28.) in the three latter, for those things that concern the necessity of man, and our own welfare, which we must refer to the former. (*Psal.* 50. 15.) So that by the very order of the Petitions we learn this instruction; that we must and ought first to think upon God's glory before any thing that appertains or belongs to us: and that we should seek the service of God before our own good; (*Joh.* 12.

The parts of the Lord's Prayer.

6. Petitions in the Lord's Prayer.

27, & 8.) yea, and prefer the glorifying of the name of God before our own salvation: (*Rom. 9. 3.*) as also by the order of the Commandment, which being divided into two Tables, the first concerneth the worship of God, the second our selves.

*What observe you from this?*

Our hypocritie: for were it not for our selves, and our wants, we would not come to God at all in prayer: as in Popery, all their prayers are for themselves, and their salvation, &c. Whereas this word (*thy*) in all these Petitions, doth shew forth the consideration of our selves, to the end that we might have our minds altogether fastned upon the service of God.

*What further observe you proper to those Petitions that concern the glory of God?*

That as they must be begged in the first place, so must they likewise be performed with further zeal of spirit and earnestness of affection; as may be gathered, in that they are propounded without any band or coupling of one with another.

*How are these three Petitions divided?*

Thus: the first concerneth God's glory it self: the other two the things whereby God is glorified; as when this Kingdom cometh, and his Will is done.

*What are the words of the first Petition?*

1. Petition.

**Hallowed be thy Name.** Mat. 6. 9. Luke 11. 2.

*What is the sum of this Petition?*

That in all things God may be glorified. That he, who in himself, his word and works, is most holy and glorious; may be acknowledged and honoured for such, by us. *Psa. 96. 8. 1 Pet. 2. 9.*

*Why is this Petition set before all?*

Because it is that which ought to be dearest unto us; and for that all things are to be referred unto it. *Prov. 16. 4. 1 Cor. 10. 31.*

*What is to be considered for the further opening of this Petition?*

First, the meaning of the words apart; then of them together.

*What is meant by the word, Name?*

What is meant by Name.

By the Name of God, we are to understand God himself, (*1 Kings 5. 5. Isa. 26. 8.*) as he maketh known to us the fame and glory of his nature, otherwise unconceivable (*Gen. 32. 29*) For the Name of God in the Scripture signifieth God himself (because the nature of a thing is taken for what it is the name of: as *Acts 1. 15.*) is Essence, and all things by which he is known unto us.

*What are those Names, whereby God is made known unto us?*

First, his Titles: as *Jehovah, Elohim, the Lord of Hosts,* and such like. *Exod. 3. 14. and 6. 3.*

Secondly, his Attributes and Properties; as his wisdom, power, love, goodness, mercy, justice, truth (*Exod. 33. 18, 19, &c. & 34. 5, 6, &c.*) which being essential in him, are for our capacity expressed under the name of such qualities in us and are called the names of God, because as names serve to discern things, by, so God is known by these things.

Thirdly, his memorials; signified by his name, because he getteth glory by them.

*What*

*What are those Memorials ?*

First, the works and actions of God : as the *Creation* and *Government* of the world, (*Psal.* 104.) but especially, the work of *Redemption.* *Psal.* 119. 14

Secondly, the things that belong unto God : as his *Worship*, *Word*, *Sacrament* and *discipline*, but especially his *Word* (*Psal.* 138. 2. & 119. 7, &c.) which is the book of grace, and the box of ointment, out of which the sweet favour of his name is most effectually powred. *Can.* 1. 2, 3.

*What is meant by the word; Hallowed ?*

Sanctified and revered. For to *hallow*, is to set apart a thing from the common use to some proper end : and therefore to hallow the name of God, is to separate it from all profane and unholy abuse, to a holy and reverend use.

*Can any man add any thing unto God's holiness ?*

No we cannot add any holiness unto God, or take any from him. But as God is holy in his Proprieties and Actions, and also in his Ordinances, both in the Church and Common-wealth ; so we desire they may be (and that not only by our selves, but also by all men) acknowledged and reputed as they are worthy in themselves to be reputed and accounted. And in this respect only are we said to hallow his name, when we acknowledge it and honour it for such : (*Psal.* 96. 7, 8.) thereby (as it were) setting the Crown of holiness and honour upon the head of God. Contrariwise, failing so to do, we are guilty of the profanation of God's holy name : not that he can receive any pollution from us, but only as the man that lusteth after a chaste woman, is said by our Saviour to be guilty of adultery with her, though she remaineth in her self spotless and undefiled. *Mat.* 5. 28.

What is meant by hallowed ?

*May none else be glorified but the name of God ?*

When it is said, *Hallowed be thy name* : there is noted, that no glory or honour should be given to any thing in the world, but to the name of God, (*Esa.* 42. 8. 48. 11) further then they are instruments, whereby we may arise to the glorifying of it : for God will not give his glory to any other thing, no not to the manhood of our Saviour Christ.

*What is to be considered in the words together ?*

That it is a singular benefit of God to admit us to the sanctifying of his name and (as it were) to set the Crown (which is his glory) upon his head, and to hold it there : especially seeing he is able himself alone to do it ; and when he would use others thereto he hath so many Legions of Angels to do it, yea, can raise up stones to do it.

*What do you then ask of God in this Petition ?*

That as God is glorious in himself, so he may be declared and made known unto men. That therefore God would have himself known and acknowledged by all men, but especially by my self, to be most holy. That whether we speak, think, or any way use his name, properties works or Word, we may do it holily and with all reverence. That his Wisdom, power, goodness, mercy, truth, righteousness, and eternity, may more and more be imparted unto me and other of God's people. That he may be acknowledged just, wife, &c. in all his works, even in his ordaining of some to eternal life, and other some to everlasting damnation. That his infinite justice, and infinite mercy over all his creatures (but especially over his Church) may be revered and adored by all men, but specially by my self. That the name of God may be reverently and holily used of all men, but especially of my self. That when the glory of God cometh in question between my self and any thing

What we ask in this petition.

that belougeth unto me, I may prefer that unto this. Finally, that God would vouchsafe to plant and increase in me and others such grace whereby his name may be glorified.

*What are those graces for which we pray here in particular?*

What graces  
we here pray  
for,

1. Knowledge of God: (*Psal.* 100. 3. & 67. 2.) that God would give us the knowledge of himself, his Word, and Works; for we cannot glorifie his name unless we know it.

2. Belief of his Word: that we and others may sanctifie God in believing his word, how unlikely soever. *John.* 3. 33. Wherefore *Moses* and *Aaron* are said not to have sanctified the name of God, in that they believed not. (*Num.* 20. 12.) Contrariwise *Abraham* glorified God in believing. *Rom.* 4. 20.

3. Fearing the Lord alone, and not men. That *the Lord be our fear*, *Esa.* 8. 12, 13. 1 *Pet.* 3. 14, 18.

4. Humility (for our selves and others) without which we cannot glorifie God, as it is meet. *Psal.* 115. 1. 2 *Sam.* 7. 18 *Psal.* 8. 4. 5. and 144. 3. *Luk.* 14. 8

5. Patience, (arising from thence:) whereby we do willingly submit our selves unto the correcting hand of God, as *Eli*, (1 *Sam.* 3. 18) and *Hezekiah*, (*Esa.* 39. 8.)

6. Thankfulness: that we may praise him for his benefits more particularly. Where we are to hallow God's name, as well by praising it for the benefits we have received, as for the wonderful works in the creation, and government of the world, the Church especially.

7. Lips opened, and tongues tuned to speak of him with reverence. *Psal.* 51. 15. & 44. 1. & 45. 1.

8. A life so ordered, that men may say, he is a holy God, who by his grace maketh us an holy people. *Mat.* 5. 16. 1 *Pet.* 2. 9. *Tir.* 2. 10. That, according as we know the vertues of our good God, so the fruits of them may appear in ours and all God's peoples lives; that so his name may be honoured and praised, and he may get glory by the godly conversation of us and others.

*What do we pray against in this Petition?*

What things  
we here pray  
against.

We pray against all ignorance of holy things we should know, (*Hof.* 8. 13.) against infidelity and want of good works, whereby God wants of his glory.

We pray against all lofty and high things, that hinder that God only cannot be exalted; (*Esa.* 2. 11, 12, 13, 14, 15.) especially the pride of our hearts, which we are to confesse and lament. (*Prov.* 8. 13.) We pray against all false Religion, all Prophaneness, impatience, unthankfulness, (*Rom.* 1. 21.) &c. those tongue-worms of swearing, blasphemy, and unevent speaking of God; (*Exod.* 20. 7.) together with all wickedness and ungodliness, whereby God's name is dishonoured. In a word, we pray that God would remove, and root out of our hearts, tongues and lives, all such vices, by and for which his name is dishonoured, especially an evil and scandalous life, for which the name of God, and his religion, is evil spoken of in the world. *Rom.* 2. 23. 24.

*What doth this teach us?*

Our dulness is hereby condemned; who by nature are so ill disposed to glorifie God, and to use his name holily and reverently.

*What is to be considered in the second Petition?*

The second  
Petition.

**Let thy Kingdom come.** *Mat.* 6. 10. *Luke.* 11. 2.



One of the means how to have the name of God sanctified ; which is a dependence of the former Petition.

*What is the sum of this Petition ?*

That God may reign in our hearts and not sin : and that the Kingdom of our Lord Jesus Christ, both by the inward working of his spirit, and also by the outward means, may be enlarged dayly until it be perfected at the coming of Christ to judgment. That the Kingdom of sin and Satan being more and more abolished, (*Acts 26. 18. Col. 1. 13.*) Christ may now reign in our hearts by grace, (*Col. 3. 15, 16.*) and we with him for ever in glory. *2 Tim. 2. 12.*

*What is meant here by Kingdom ?*

That government which our Saviour Christ exerciseth, first in this world, then in the last day, both in the whole Church and in every member thereof. For by the Kingdom of God we must understand here, not so much that universal sovereignty which, as Creator, he exerciseth over all creatures, disposing them all to their proper ends for his glory: (*Esa. 6. 5. Psalm. 95. 3. &c.* as the spiritual regiment *Psalm. 110. 2. 1 Cor 15. 25.*) of the Church (and of all things for the good of the Church) wherein God hath appointed Christ to be the King (*Psal. 2. 6. Hof. 3. 5*) the Saints his Subjects, (*Revel 15. 3.*) the word his Law, (*Job. 22. 22.*) the Angels and all creatures his servants, (*Heb. 1. 6*) the Ministers his Heralds and Ambassadors; (*2 Cor. 5. 20.*) finally, the Devils kingdom. (*Matth. 12. 26.*) that is, wicked Angels and men (enemies to the Kingdom of Christ, *Luk. 19. 17.*) his footstool. *Psalm. 110. 1.*

What is meant by Kingdom.

*How is this Kingdom said to come ?*

1. In regard of means, where the word of the Kingdom is published. *Mat. 12. 28. & 13. 19 Mark. 4. 15.*
2. In regard of efficacy, where from the heart obedience is yielded. *Rom. 6. 17.*

What is meant by coming.

3. In regard of perfection it hath these degrees:
 

{	1. Increase of grace in the time of <i>this life.</i> <i>Mat 13. 8.</i>
{	2. The translation of blessed souls into heaven, in the moment of <i>death.</i> <i>Luk. 23. 42, 43.</i>
{	3. Finally, the full redemption and glorification of the Saints in soul and body, in the <i>life to come</i> <i>Matth. 25, 34.</i>

*What do we then desire concerning the Kingdom of God, in this Petition ?*

We pray either for that he exerciseth in this world, or for that he exerciseth in the world to come, called the kingdom of glory.

*How many sorts are there of that Kingdom he exerciseth in this world ?*

Two. First, that he exerciseth over all men, and other creatures, called the Kingdom of power. Secondly, that he exerciseth over the Church; called the Kingdom of grace.

*What desire we of God concerning the government he exerciseth over all Creatures ?*

That he would govern all the creatures, both in the natural course of things, and in the civil and domestic government of men, yea, in the rule of the Devils themselves, in such sort as they may serve for the good of his Church. *Psal. 97. 1. Mat. 6. 13. John 17. 2.*

*What desire we concerning his government in the Church ?*

That

That it may be here in this world enlarged, and that it may be accomplished in the last day. *Pfal.* 122. 6. *Isa.* 62. 7.

*What do we desire for the enlargement of it in this world?*

That by Christ the head of the Church, God would govern his people to the perfect salvation of the elect, and to the utter destruction of the reprobate, whether open rebels, or feigned and hollowed-hearted Subjects.

*What great need is there that we should pray for the Kingdom of God?*

For that being taught that we should pray that the Kingdom of God may come, hereby we are put in mind of another Kingdom of Satan and darkness, which opposeth strongly against his Kingdom *Mat.* 14. 24, 25. *1 Cor.* 6. 14, 15, 16.

*Why, all men do naturally abhor Satan, even to the very name of him.*

They do in words and shew: but when they do his will, live under his laws, delight in his works of darkness, subject themselves to the Pope and other his instruments; they are found indeed to love him as their father, and honour him as their Prince, whom in words they would seem to abhor. For as the same men are affirmed by our Saviour Christ to approach unto God with their lips and to have their hearts far from him: (*Mat.* 15. 8.) so are they in their lips far from Satan, but near him in their hearts.

*What other oppositions are there against God's Kingdom?*

The flesh, and the world. *Gal.* 5. 16, 17.

*What be the means we ought to pray for, that our Saviour Christ may govern his Church in this world thereby?*

Inward, and outward.

*What inward things do we pray for?*

That God would give his holy Spirit, as the chief and principal means whereby our Saviour Christ gathereth and ruleth his Church, conveying his Spirit of knowledge and good motions into his people: and consequently, we pray against the motions and temptations of Satan and of our own flesh.

*What are the outward things we pray for?*

The means whereby the Spirit is conveyed: namely, the Word, and the dependance thereof, the Sacraments and Censures.

*What pray we for concerning the Word?*

That it being the scepter of Christ's Kingdom, the rod and standard of his power (*Pfal.* 110. 2, *Isa.* 12. 4, 10.) and called the word of the kingdom, (*Mar.* 1. 14) and the kingdom of heaven; (*Mat.* 13.) may have free passage every where, (2 *Thef.* 3. 1.) and be gloriously lifted up and advanced: and, it only having place, all not good thereunto, all traditions and inventions of men may be rejected.

*What pray we for concerning the Sacraments?*

That as they are the Seals of God's promises and the whole Covenant of grace: so they may be both ministered and received in that pureness and sincerity, which is according to this Word; and all false Sacraments and sacrifices put under foot.

*What pray we for concerning the Censures?*

That not only private persons, but the whole Church may be ruled by the line of God's Word; that so well doers may be advanced, and evil doers censured and corrected, according to the degree of their fault: and therefore that all either impunity or tyrannous tortures of conscience, may be taken away.

*What further do we pray for?*

That God would furnish his Church with all such Officers as he appro-

veteth;

veth; that being indued with special gifts may be both able and willing to execute their charge diligently and faithfully.

*What further desire you in this Petition?*

That where these things are only begun, they may be perfected; and that every Church may be polished and garnished, that *Sion* may appear in her perfect beauty; and so the Jews may be called, and so many of the Gentiles as belong unto Christ; and the contrary enemies may be either converted or confounded.

*What do we pray for, in respect of every member of the Church?*

Even as poor captives are always creeping to the prison door, and labouring to get off their bolts; so we, out of a forrowful feeling of the spiritual bondage we are in to Satan and sin, pray that the kingdom of Christ may come, and be advanced in every one of our hearts, in justice, righteousness, peace, and joy in the Holy Ghost: (*Rom. 14. 17.*) that as *Kings* unto God, we may subdue within us all those either opinions or affections that rise up and rebel against God.

*What then are the particulars concerning the kingdom of grace, that we do crave of God, in this Petition?*

1. That Satans kingdom may be abolished, (*Act. 26. 18.*) the bands of spiritual captivity loosed, (*2 Tim. 2. 26. Col. 1. 13*) the power of corruption that maketh us like well of our bondage, abated, (*Gal. 5. 24*) the instruments of Satans tyranny (as the Turk, and Pope, and all such out-laws from Christ) defeated. *2. Thef. 2. 8.*

The particulars here prayed for, 1. respecting the Kingdom of grace.

2. That it would please God to gather out of every part of the world those that belong to the election.

3. That God for the gathering of them would raise up faithful and painful Ministers in every part of the world where there are any which belong to his election. That all loyterers, and tongue-tyed Ministers being removed. (*Esa. 56. 10; 11.*) faithful and able watchmen may be set over the flock of Christ, (*Mat 9. 38.*) with sufficient encouragement of maintenance, countenance, protection, &c. and the word of God may be freely preached every where. *2. Thef. 3. 1.*

4. That it would please God with the blessing of his Spirit to accompany the word; so that it may be of power to covert those that belong unto him.

5. That it would please God every day more and more to increase the holy gifts, and graces of his holy Spirit in the hearts of those whom he hath already called effectually.

6. That the Lord, by his Word and Spirit, would rule in the hearts and lives of his Saints, (*Col. 3. 15. 16*) making them Kings, in part, by overcoming the corruption, which is in the world through lust. *2 Pet 1. 4*

7. That God would raise up godly and religious Magistrates, which should further and countenance his worship as much as in them lyeth.

8. That the eyes of all men, especially Princes, may be opened to see the filthiness of the whore of Babylon, (*Rev. 17. 16.*) and the true beauty of pure Religion, and of the Spouse of Christ, *Isa. 60. 3.*

9. That God would banish and root out of his Church all those things which may hinder the proceeding of his kingdom in the heart. of those that belong unto him.

10. Finally that he would finish the Kingdom of grace, calling his elect uncalled, (*Gen. 9. 27. Rom. 9. 25, 26.*) confirming such as stand, (*2 Thef. 2. 17.*) raising the fallen, (*Jam. 5. 15, 16.*) comforting the afflicted, (*Isa. 61. 3.*) and hasten the kingdom of glory.

Wkar

*What do we desire of God in this Petition concerning the Kingdom of glory, and our good in the world to come?*

2. Respecting the kingdom of glory.  
1. That God would be pleased to take us in due time (so soon as he doth see fit to make for his glory and our good) out of this sinful and conflicting life, into peace with Christ, and translate us unto the kingdom of heaven. *Phil. 1. 23.*

2. That the number of the elect being accomplished, the final dissolution of all things may come: That God would hasten the second coming of his Son to judgment for the elects sake, who with singular love and affection long for it, saying: *Come Lord Jesus, come quickly: Revel. 2. 20. 2 Tim 4. 8.*) that we, and all his chosen, may obtain; full salvation; and enjoy the fruition of that glory prepared for us before the beginning of the world.

3. That God would get himself glory by the final confusion of his enemies.

*What are the words of the third Petition?*

The third Petition.

**Thy will be done in Earth as it is in Heaven** Mar. 6. 10.  
Luke 11. 2:

*What is the sum of this Petition?*

That God would grant us that we may voluntarily and willingly subject our selves unto him, and his providence: that renouncing the will of Satan, and our own corrupt inclination, (2 *Tim. 2. 26. 1 Pet. 4. 2.*) and rejecting all things that are contrary to the will of God, we may do his will; not as we will, nor grudgingly, but readily. (*Psal. 119. 60.* and heartily, (*Col. 3. 23.*) following in our measure the example of the Angels and Saints that are in heaven: (*Psa. 103. 20.*) finally, that obedience may be given to Christ, in ruling us, until we be as the holy Angels.

*What is meant by this word [Thy:]*

Hereby we exclude all wills opposed to, or diverse from the will of God; whether the will of Satan, (2 *Tim. 2. 26.*) or our own (1 *Pet. 4. 2.*) naturally corrupt and enthralled to Satan; yea, whatsoever lawful intentions or desires, repugnant to the secret will of God. (2 *Sam. 2. 7. James 4. 15.*) For when we pray for obedience to God's will, we pray that all wills of wicked Angels (*Zac. 3. 3.*) and men. (*Psa. 140. 8.*) as contrary to the will of God, may be disappointed: we desire also the suppression of our own will, as that which being prone to all sin, as a match to take fire, is naught and repugnant to the will of God; so far are we from having any free-will naturally to do that which is good (*Psa. 86, 11. & 119. 37. Ge. 6. 5. & 8. 21. Rom. 8. 6. & 7. 24.*) Which we must bewail both in our selves and others: (2 *Pet. 2. 7. Ezek. 9. 4.*) freely acknowledging, that we cannot of our selves do the will of God but by his assistance; and desiring grace, that we may obey his will, and not the lusts of our flesh.

*How manifold is the will of God?*

Twofold: (*Deut. 29. 29.*)

1. His secret and hidden will; whereof the Scripture speaketh thus, *If so be the will of God,* (1 *Pet. 3. 17.*) Whereunto are to be referred his eternal counsel, the events of outward things, (*Prov. 27. 1.*) times and seasons, &c. *Acts 1. 7.*

2. His manifest will, which is revealed and made known unto us in the Word;

Word; both in his *Promises*, which we are to believe, and in his *Precepts* and *Commandments*, which (as conditions of obedience, in way of thanksgiving annexed unto the promises) we are to perform.

*What will are we to understand in this Petition?*

Not so much that part, which God keepeth secret from us, as that part hereof, which he hath revealed in his Word, wherein is set down what we ought to do, or leave undone.

*How doth that appear?*

1. Because it is unlawful to search or enquire into the secret will of God, and impossible for man to know it until it come to pass: whereas to the doing of this will, knowledge is requisite.

2. No man can resist or withstand God's secret will, neither is it any thank for us to accomplish it. *Act. 4. 28.*

3. There are no promises for the performing the secret will of God: seeing a man may do it and perish; as *Pilate, &c.*

4. God purposeth many things in his secret will, for which it is not lawful for us to pray.

*What then must we especially pray for in the secret will of God?*

That when God bringeth any thing to pass by his secret will, which is grievous to our natures, we may with patience and contentment submit our wills to his will. *Acts 21. 14.*

*What do we ask of God in this Petition, concerning his revealed will?*

1. That we may know his will; without the which we cannot do it.

2. That we may do his will, being known, and shew our selves obedient to our heavenly Father and Lord.

3. That he would bestow upon us the gifts and graces of his Spirit; that so our hearts being by grace set at large, strengthened, and directed, (*Psa. 119. 32, 36.*) we may be inabled to do his will.

4. That he would remove from us all things that shall hinder us (from knowing his will and putting it in execution: as ignorance of the revealed will of God, (*Psa. 119. 18.*) rebellion, disobedience murmuring, &c. (*1 Sam. 15. 22, 23.*) all pretences and dispensations, or powers presuming to dispence with the will of God. In a word, that so many as are subjects in the kingdom of Christ may do the duty of good subjects, and be obedient to the revealed will of God, seeking his kingdom and his righteousness. (*Mat. 6. 33.*) so that there is a mutual relation of this petition to the former, where we pray that God may rule; as here, that his rule may be obeyed.

*What understand you in this petition by Doing?*

Not a good intent only in the heart, or profession of obedience in word and pretence: (*Mat. 21. 30.*) but an actual and thorough performance of what is required of us. *James 1. 25.* And therefore we pray here, that the will of God may not only be intended and indeavoured, but also accomplished, although it be with grief and smart. *Phil. 2. 13. Acts 20. 24.*

*What is here meant by Earth and Heaven?*

By Earth, those that are in earth; and by Heaven, those that are in heaven. For here we propound to our selves the patterns of the Angels and blessed souls, who being freed from all mixture of corruption, do in their kind perfectly obey God. (*Psal. 103. 20, 22.*) Whereby we learn, that our obedience should be done most humbly, willingly, readily, cheerfully, and wholly; not doing one, and leaving another undone) even as the will of God is done by the Angels: (*Mat. 18. 10.*) who therefore are set forth winged, to shew their

speediness. *Isa.* 6. 2 and round footed, to express their readiness to all and every Commandment of God. *Ezek.* 1. 7.

*But seeing we are sinful, and the Angels; holy how can we imitate them?*

We desire to imitate them in the *manner*, though we know we cannot equal them in *measure* and degree of obedience. And hereby we are taught that we should endeavour to the like holiness, and so grow therein daily more and more till we be like unto them: not that we can perform it to the full as they do. As also in this regard God himself saith; *Be ye as I am holy: (Levit.* 11. 44. *1 Pet.* 1. 16.) and yet it were absurd to say or think, that any man could come to the holiness of God, whose holiness he is commanded to follow. And this answereth to our desire of hastening the Lord's coming in the former Petition.

*What then do we desire here for the manner of performance of God's will?*

That we may (after the heavenly pattern aforementioned) willingly without constraint or repugnancy, (*Psal.* 110. 3.) speedily without delay, (*Psal.* 113. 60.) sincerely without hypocrisy, (*Deut.* 5. 28, 29. fully without reservation (*Psa.* 119. 6.) and constantly without intermission (*Psal.* 119. 112.) believe the promises of mercy, and obey the precepts of holiness. And so all unwilling, and by law only enforced obedience is here condemned: and we enjoyed to perform our service with delight, joy and alacrity.

*Thus far of the three first Petitions, for things concerning God. To come to the three latter, that concern our selves, and our neighbours: what are we generally to note in them?*

The three last  
Petitions.

First, the order and dependance they have from the former three concerning God: whereby we are taught, that there is no lawful use of these Petitions which follow, or any of them, unless we first labour in the former Petitions concerning the service of God. For we are then hallowed, and not till then, (*Luk.* 17. 7. &c.) to seek good things for our selves, when we have first minded and sought those things that concern the glory of God: because unto godliness only the promises of this life and that which is to come, are entailed. *1 Tim.* 4. 8.

*What further?*

That as in the former the word [*Thy*] did only respect God: so in these following, by these words [*Our* and *Us*] we learn to have a fellow-feeling of the miseries and necessities of others; and therefore in care to pray for them; which is one trial of the true spirit of prayer.

*Is there any else common to them all.*

That in all these Petitions, under one thing expressed, other things are figuratively included; and under one kind all the rest, and all the means to obtain them, are comprehended: as shall appear.

*How are these petitions divided?*

The first concerneth mans body and the things of this life: the two last concern the soul and things pertaining to the life to come. For all which we are taught to depend on God: and namely, according to the order observed in the Creed, (called the Apostles,) 1. On the *providence* of God the Father, our Creator, for our nourishment, and all outward blessings.

2. On the *mercy* of Christ, our Saviour, for pardon of our sins.

3. On the *power* and assistance of the holy Spirit, our sanctifier, for strength to resist and subdue all temptations unto evil.

*What*

*What observe you out of the order of these Petitions?*

That we have but one Petition for outward things, as less to be esteemed: but for spiritual things two, as about which our care is to be doubled: (*Mat. 6. 33.*) To teach us how small earthly things are to be accounted in regard of heavenly: and therefore that our prayers for the things of this life should be short, and further drawn out for the things that belong to the life to come.

*Why then is the Petition for the temporal things put before the Petitions for the spiritual?*

The first place is given to outward things, not because they are chiefest: but because,

First, it is the manner of the Scriptures, commonly to put things first that are soonest dispatched.

Secondly, that outward things may be helps to enable us to spiritual duties: (*Gen. 28. 20, 21.*) and that in having beforehand earthly things, we may be the more ready and earnest to intreat for heavenly things: so our Saviour Christ healed the bodily diseases, to provoke all men to come unto him for the cure of the spiritual.

Thirdly, that outward things may be as steps or degrees, whereby our weak faith may the better ascend to lay claim and hold on spiritual graces: (*Act. 17. 27, 28.*) that by experience of the smaller things, we may climb up to higher. Whereby their hypocrisie is discovered, which pretend great assurance of forgiveness of sins, and of the keeping from the evil one; whereas they are distrustful for the things of this life.

Fourthly, God hath a consideration of our weakness; who are unapt to perform any duties or service to God, if we want the things of this life and that which is requisite to sustain and suffice nature.

*To proceed in order: What are the words of the fourth Petition, which concerneth the things of this life?*

**Give us this day our daily bread. Mat. 6. 11. Luke 11. 3.**

*What is the sum of this Petition?*

That God would provide for us competent means, and such a portion of outward blessings, as he shall see meet for us; (*Pro. 30. 8.*) not only for our necessities, but also for our Christian and sober delight, according to our calling, and his blessing upon us. Likewise, that he would give us grace to rely our selves upon his providence for all the means of this temporal life, and to rest contented with that allowance which he shall think fit for us. (*Phil. 4. 11, 12.*)

The fourth Petition.

*What is meant by Bread?*

All outward things, serving both for our necessity, and sober delight: (*Pro. 27. 27. & 31. 14.*) as health, wealth, food, physick, sleep, raiment, house, &c. together with all the helps and means to attain them; as good Princes, Magistrates, Peace, seasonable weather, and such like: as also the removal of the contrary; as war, plague, famine, evil weather, &c. and the blessing of God upon those creatures which he bestoweth upon us.

What is meant by (bread.)

*What is here to be observed?*

That we must desire Bread: not Quails or delicates, not riches and superfluities; (*James 4. 3. Num. 11. 4, 5, 6.*) but a proportion of maintenance, credit, liberty, &c. convenient for us: (*Prov. 30. 8. 1 Tim. 6. 8.*) and that with condition;

If God shall see it good for us, or so be his good pleasure: (*Mat. 8. 2. Jam. 4. 15. 2 Sam. 7. 27.*) which exception is a caution *proper* to this petition for outward things.

*What need is there of asking these things?*

The frailty of our nature, not able to continue in health scarce one day without these helps, and as it were props to uphold this decayed and ruinous cottage of our mortal bodies; less able to forbear them than many beasts. For seeing there was a necessary use of our meat in the time of innocency, the necessity by our fall is much greater.

*What learn you from the word [Give?]*

What is  
meant by  
(Give)

First, that from God all things come: (*Psal. 104. 27, 28, 29, 30. Act. 14. 17.*) which we are ready to ascribe, either to the earth, called the nurse; or to our money, wherewith we buy them; or to our friends, that give them us. As if we should look upon the Steward only, and pass by the Master of the Family; or upon the breast that giveth suck, and neglect the nurse and bottle we drink of, and pass by the giver.

*What next?*

That although in regard of our labour or buying any thing, it may be called ours: yet we say, *Give Lord*, both because we are unable by any service or labour to deserve the least crum of bread or drop of water, (much less the kingdom of heaven and salvation) at the hands of God; (*Luk. 17. 10. Gen. 32. 10.*) and because our labour and diligence cannot prevail without God's blessing.

*What learn you further?*

That seeing God giveth to whom he will, and what he will; we learn to be content with whatsoever we have received. Moreover to be thankful for it; seeing all things in regard of God are sanctified by the Word and in regard of our selves by prayer and thanksgiving (*1 Tim. 4. 5.*) And last of all, not to envy at other mens plenty, being God's doing. *Mat. 20. 15.*

*What reason is there that they should pray for these things of God, which have them already in their Barners, Cellars, &c. in abundance?*

Very great. Because. 1. our right unto the creatures being forfeited in *Adam*, we have now nothing to plead, but only God's Deed of gift made unto us in *Christ*, the second *Adam*, and heir of all things; in whom and with whom all things are conveyed to us; (*Psal. 8. 7, 8, 9. Heb. 1. 2. Rom. 8. 32. 1 Cor. 3. 22.*) so that although we possess them, yet are we not right owners of them but by faith, which is, declared by prayer for them.

2. The things we do possess, we may easily a hundred ways be thrust from the possession of them, before we come to use them: according to the proverb, that *many things come between the cup and lip.* *1 Sam. 30. 16, 17. Dan. 5. 5. 2 Kings 7. 17.*

3. Although we have the use of them, yet will they not profit us, neither in feeling nor cloathing us, unless we have the blessing of God upon them; yea, without the which they may be hurtful and poisonable unto us. *Esa. 3. 1. Haggai 1. 6. Prov. 12. 22. Dan. 1. 13, 14, 15. Psal. 78. 30, 31.* By all which reasons it may appear, that the rich are as well to use this petition as the poore: praying therein, not so much for the outward things as God's blessing upon them.

Give us

*Why do we say give [Us?]*

Hereby



Hereby we profess our selves petitioners for all men, especially the household of faith: that for the most part every one may have sufficient, and where want is, others may be enabled to supply it out of their abundance. 2 Cor. 8. 14.

*Why do we say, This day, or For this day?*

That we are to pray for bread for a day and not for a month, or year, &c. This day. it is to teach us to refrain our care, that it reach not too far: but to rest in God's providence, and present blessing; and therefore not to be covetous. Exod. 16. 19, 20, 21. Prov. 30. 8. So that hereby we profess the moderation of our care, and desire of earthly things: (Mat. 6. 34.) with our purpose every day, by labour and prayer, to seek these blessings at the hands of God.

*Is it not lawful to provide for children and family?*

Yes verily, not only lawful, but also needful. Gen. 41. 34, 35. Act. 11. 28, 29. 2 Cor. 12. 14. 1 Tim. 5. 8. But here our affections are only forbidden to pass measure; as to have a carking and troubling care, seeing the vexation of the day is enough for itself: (Mat. 6. 34.) but to commit our ways unto the Lord, and to roll our matters upon him, who will bring them to pass. Psal. 37. 5. Prov. 16. 3.

*Why is bread called ours; seeing that God must give it us?*

To teach us, that we must come unto it by our own labour, (Gen. 3. 17. Our. Psal. 128. 1, 2. 1 Thes. 4. 11.) in which respect, he that will not labour, should not eat, (2 Thes. 3. 8. 9. 10.) For that is called our bread, which cometh to us by the blessing of God on our lawful labours, (2 Thes. 3. 12.) so that neither God, nor man can justly implead us for it.

*What is the reason of the word Daily?*

By daily bread, or bread instantly, or such as is to be added to our substance Daily. we understand such provision, and such a proportion thereof, as may best agree with our nature, charge and calling. Prov. 30. 8. For this word in the Evangelists, (Mat. 6. 11. Luk. 11. 3.) and in the proper language of the spirit of God, is the bread fit for me, or agreeable to my condition. Which is a special lesson for all estates, and callings, to keep them within their bounds not onely of necessity, but of Christian and sober delight, and not to ask them for the fulfilling of our fleshly desires. Psal. 104. 15. Prov. 30. 8. 1 Tim. 6. 8. Rom. 13. 14. Jam. 4. 3. Hereby also we are taught, that every day we must require these blessings at God's hands.

*What do we beg of God in this Petition?*

1. That it would please God to preserve this mortal life of ours, so long as he seeth good in his wisdom that it maketh for his glory and our good. What we beg in this Petition.
2. That he would bestow upon us all good things needful for the preservation of this life.
3. That he would give us care and conscience to get those needful things by lawful means. Which condemneth: First those that use wicked and unlawful means towards men. Secondly those that go to the Devil.
4. That he would give us grace to use painfulness and faithfulness in our callings: that labouring with our hands the thing that is good, we may eat our own bread. Eph. 4. 28. 2 Thes. 3. 12.
5. That we may add unto our labour prayer, (that it would please God to bless our labours in getting those things) and thanksgiving, (for them being gotten;) as whereby, on our part, all God's blessings are assured and sanctified unto us. 1 Tim. 4. 4, 5.

6. That

6. That we may put our confidence not in the means, but in God's providence, and contain our selves within the care for the means, leaving events unto God's only disposition. *Phil. 4. 6. Psa. 37. 5.*

7. That it would please God to give us faith and grace, as well in want as in abundance, to depend on his providence for outward things. *Phil. 4. 12.*

8. That we may be contented with, and thankful for, that portion of temporal blessings which it shall please the Lord to measure out unto us, as his gift; (*Heb. 13. 5. Psa. 16. 6.*) not envying such to whom he giveth more.

*So much of the Petition for things belonging to this life. What do we desire in those two which belong unto the life to come?*

Perfect salvation: standing in the deliverance from the evils past, contained in the former, and those to come, comprized in the latter. By the former we pray for Justification, and by the latter for Sanctification.

*To begin then with the former: What are the words of the fifth Petition?*

**And forgive us our debts, as even we forgive them that are debtors unto us** *Mat. 6. 12. Luk. 11. 4.*

The fifth Petition.

Where we are to observe:

1. The Petition for the forgiveness of our sins.
2. The reason added for the confirmation thereof, or, a reason of the persuasion that they are forgiven.

*What is the sum of this Petition?*

That we may be justified, and be at peace with God. That God giving us a true knowledge and feeling of our sins, would forgive us freely for his Son's sake; and make us daily assured of the forgiveness of our sins, as we are privy to our selves of the forgiveness of those trespasses which men have offended us by. *Job 33. 24. Psa. 35. 3. Jer. 14. 7. Col. 3. 13.*

*What is meant here by Debts.*

The comparison is drawn from debtors, which are not able to pay their creditors to whom all we are compared, for that we have all sinned. Therefore by debts we must understand sins (as Saint Luke expoundeth the Metaphor:) and that not in themselves, as branches of the Law of God, (for who would say that we owe and are to pay sin unto God?) but with respect to the punishment, and satisfaction due to God's justice for the offence of sins. For our debt being properly obedience, whereto we are bound under penalty of all the curses of the Law, especially eternal death; (*Rom 8. 12. & 13. 8. Gal. 5. 3.*) we all in Adam forfeited that bond, whereby the penalty became our debt, and is daily increased in us all by sinning. *Luk. 13. 4. Mat. 18. 24 &c. Rom. 6. 23.*

*What learn you from hence?*

Here hence two things are implied: One, a frank and humble confession, that we have sinned both originally and actually; Another that there is no power in us to make satisfaction for our sins.

*What use is there of confession?*

Great: for that we have naturally a senselessnes of sin; or else being convinced thereof, we are ready to lessen it, and make it light: the contrary whereof appeareth

What is meant by debts.

pareth in the Children of God. 1 *Job.* 1. 8,9. *Pfal.* 32. 3,4. *Prov.* 28. 13. *Job* 31. 33. 1 *Sam.* 15. 19, 20. *Psa.* 51. 3, 4, 5. 6. *Act.* 22. 3, 4, 5. 1 *Tim.* 1. 13, 15,

*How can a man confess his sins, being not known, and without number?*

Those that are known we must expressly confess; and the other that are unknown, and cannot be reckoned, generally, *Pfal.* 19. 12.

*How appeareth it that we are not able to pay this debt?*

Because by the Law, as by an obligation, every one being bound to keep it wholly and continually, (*Deut.* 27. 26. *Gal.* 3. 10.) so that the breach thereof even once, and in the least point, maketh us debtors presently; (as having forfeited our obligation) there is no man that can either avoid the breach of it, or when he hath broken it, make amends unto God for it: considering that whatsoever he doth after the breach, is both imperfectly done; and if it were perfect, yet it is due by obligation of the Law, and therefore cannot go for payment, no more than a man can pay one debt with another.

*What doth it draw with it, that causeth it to be so impossible to be satisfied.*

The reward of it, which is everlasting death, both of body and soul, *Rom.* 6. 23. The greatness, and also number whereof, is declared by the parable of ten thousand talents, which no man is able to pay, being not able to satisfy so much as one farthing.

*But are we not able to satisfy some part of it, as a man in great debt is sometimes able to make some satisfaction, especially if he have a day given him?*

No. And therefore we are compared to a child new born, red with blood, and not able to wash himself, nor to help himself: (*Ezek.* 16. 4, 5.) and to captives close shut up in prison and fetters, kept by a strong one; (*Luk.* 4. 18. *Mat.* 12. 29.) so that there is as small likelihood of our deliverance out of the power of Satan as that a poor Lamb should deliver it self from the gripes and paws of a Lyon.

*What is the means to free us from this debt?*

By this petition Christ teacheth us, that being pressed with the burden of our sin, we should flee unto the mercy of God, and to entreat him for the forgiveness of our debt, (*Mat.* 11. 28. *Esa.* 55. 1.) even the cancelling of our obligation, that in Law it be not available against us. In which respect, the preaching of the Gospel is compared to the year of jubilee, when no man might demand his debt of his brother, *Luk.* 4. 19.

*How shall we obtain this at God's hands?*

By the onely blood and suffering of Christ, as the only ranfome for sin. Contrary to the Papists, who confessing that original sin is taken away by Christ in Baptism, do teach that we must make part of our satisfaction for our actual sins: and therefore some of them whip themselves, as if their blood might satisfy for sin; which is abominable to think.

*What do you then understand here by forgiveness?*

Such remission, as may agree with God's justice, which will not endure him to be a lofer. Wherefore it is forgiveness of us, by taking payment of another. (*Job.* 33. 24.) even of our surety Jesus Christ, in our behalf. 1 *Job.*

2. 2.

*What mean you by saying, Us, and Ours?*

We include with our selves, in this petition, as many as are in Christ enabled

bled by a true faith to lay hold on him, and to plead his payment and satisfaction. *Pfal.* 130. 7, 8. & 51. 18.

*Do we here pray for the sins of this day, as before for the bread of this day?*

Not only for them, but also for all that ever we have done at all times before; to the end, that we might be the further confirmed in the assurance of the remission of all our sins.

*What is further to be considered in this Petition?*

That as in the former by *Bread* more was understood, so here under one part of our Justification, to wit, the Remission, or not imputation of sins unto death, by means of the satisfaction of Christ's sufferings, we do also conceive the other part, which is the imputation of his holiness unto life eternal, implied under the former, and inseparably annexed thereto. For as Christ hath taken away our sins by suffering, so he hath also clothed us with his righteousness, by fulfilling of the Law for us. *Dan.* 9. 24. *2 Cor.* 5. 21.

*What do we then ask of God in this Petition?*

Six things. *viz.*

What we ask  
of God in this  
fifth Petition

Grace feelingly to know and frankly and tremblingly to confess without excuse or extenuation, the great debt of our sins, (*Psal* 51. 3.) and our utter inability to satisfy for the same, or for the least part thereof. *Psal.* 103. 3. & 143. 2.

2. That God would bestow upon us Christ Jesus; and for his sake remove out of his sight all our sins, and the guilt and punishment due unto us for the same.

3. The power of saving faith (*Luk.* 17. 5.) to lay hold on the meritorious sufferings and obedience of our Lord Jesus Christ unto our full Justification *Esa.* 53. 5.

4. The spirit of prayer: that with grief and sorrow for our sins, we may crave pardon for sins and increase of faith. *Zach.* 12. 10. *Mark.* 9. 24.

5. An assurance of the forgiveness of our sins: by the testimony of the spirit of Christ, (*Ro.* 8. 15, 16.) exemplifying, and applying the general pardon of sins, once for all granted unto us at our conversion, unto the several sins and debts of every day and moment of our life.

6. We pray for remission of sin, not as intending, our selves, to undergo the punishment, or any part thereof, (*Jer.* 14. 7.) but contrariwise, the whole debt (which is properly the punishment, as hath been shewed) may be accepted at the hands of Christ our surety, and we fully discharged and acquitted; so that nothing may remain on our account, but the righteousness of Christ (*Phil.* 3. 8, 9.) whereby the favour and kingdom of God is purchased for us.

*So much of Petition: What is set down in the reason?*

The reason of  
the Petition.

A true note to certify us, whether our sins are forgiven us, or not; by that we forgive, or not forgive others that have offended us.

*Doth this reason bind God to forgive us?*

No otherwise than by his gracious and true promise: this being a necessary consequent and fruit of the other, and not a cause. For when we say, *As we, or, for we also forgive. &c.* we argue with the Lord, not from merit, but from the model of God's grace in us; (*Mat.* 6. 14, 15.) which being incomparably inferior to the mercy and love of God, and yet disposing us to forgive and let fall (in regard of hatred, or private revenge,) (*Rom.* 12. 19.) any wrongs and

and injuries of our brethren against us, may both *stir up* the compassion of the Lord toward us his children, (*Neb. 5. 19.*) and *assure* us of the attaining of this our request. *Jam. 2. 13.* And therefore that we may not be destitute of so important an argument, (*Mar. 11. 25. 1 Job. 3. 14.*) both to plead for mercy with God, and to assure our selves of success; we desire of God a portion of that mercy, which is so abundant in him, that we may be tenderly affected one towards another, forgiving one another, even as God for Christ's sake forgiveth us. *Eph. 4. 32. Col. 3. 13.*

*But seeing God alone forgiveth sins,* Mat. 9. 2. Mat. 2. 7. Job. 14. 4. Esa. 43. 25.) *here understood by the word Debt: how is it said that we forgive sins?*

We forgive not the sin so far as it is sin against God, but to far as it bringeth grief and hinderance unto us, we may forgive it.

*Are we hereby bound to forgive all our debts?*

No verily; we may both crave our debts of our debtors, and if there be no other remedy, go to law, in a simple desire of Justice; (yea, in lawful war we may kill our enemies, and yet forgive them) being free from anger and revenge: yet so, that if our debtors be not able to pay, we are bound in duty to forgive them, or at least to have a conscionable regard to their inability.

*How is the reason drawn?*

From the less to the greater, thus. If we wretched sinners upon earth can forgive others; how much more will the gracious God of heaven forgive us? *Mat. 5. 7. & 6. 14, 15.* If we, having but a drop of mercy, can forgive others, how much more will God, who is a sea full of grace? *1 Job. 2. 10. & 3. 14.* especially when we by forgiving, sometimes suffer loss; whereas from God by forgiving us nothing falleth away.

*Wherein appeareth the inequality between our debt unto God, and mans debt unto us?*

First, in the number: our debts to God's being compared to ten thousand; men's debts to us, to one hundred.

Secondly, in the weight: our debts to God being compared to ten thousand talents, mens debts to us to an hundred pence.

*How riseth this great inequality in the weight?*

From the great inequality between God and man. For if to strike a King be much more hainous than to strike a poor boy: what is it then to strike God, who is infinitely greater than all the Kings of the earth?

*What is to be gathered out of this reason?*

That we should daily pray unto God, that he would work in us a merciful affection, and give us loving and charitable hearts towards all men, free from malice and revenge, and make us desirous of their salvation. And that as this is a testimony to our hearts, that God will forgive us, if we for his sake can heartily forgive such as have offended us: so on the other side, if we can shew no favour unto others, we can look for none at the hands of God. And therefore to pray without forgiving such as have offended us, were not only a meer babbling, but also a procuring of God's wrath more heavily against us. Which condemneth the hypocritie of many which assuring themselves in great confidence of the forgiveness of their sins, yet cannot find in their hearts to forgive others; and so by mocking the Lord, bring a curse upon themselves in stead of a blessing: seeing heart, hand, and mouth should go together.

*What further learn we by this reason ?*

That as our forgiveness is nothing, unless the danger of imprisonment be taken away, which inability of paying the debt doth draw with it ; so it availeth us nothing to have our sins forgiven us of God, unless the punishment also be forgiven. Contrary to the Papists, who teach that sin and the guilt thereof is taken away by Christ ; but that we must fatisfie for the temporary punishment of it. Wherein they make God like unto those hypocrites (here also condemned,) who will seem to forgive, and yet keep a picque and quarrel in their hearts, watching all occasions of advantage ; which say, they will forgive, but not forget.

The sixth Petition.

*So much of the former Petition belonging to the life to come. What are the words of the latter ; which is the sixth and last Petition of the Lords prayer ?*

**And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil. Mat. 6. 13. Luk. 11. 4.**

*What is the sum of it ?*

The sum of the sixth Petition.

In it we pray for Sanctification, and strength against our sins. That sin may not only be pardoned unto us but daily mortified in us : (*Rom. 6. 1, 2.*) and we either kept by the providence of God from temptations, (*Pro. 30. 8. 2 Cor. 12. 8.*) or preserved by his grace from being hurt thereby : (*1 Cor. 10. 13. 2 Cor. 12. 9.*) And as we pray, that by the power of God we may be strengthened against all temptations : so do we also pray, that by the same power we may be raised up to new obedience. For under one part of sanctification, that is, the avoiding and mortifying of sin, is implied the other part also, which is ability unto new obedience. *2 Cor. 7. 1. Rom. 6. 11.*

*What is here to be observed in regard of the order ; that this Petition consequently followeth upon the former ?*

That therefore to strengthen our faith for the obtaining of this Petition, we must be assured of the former. That seeing God hath forgiven us our sins, he will be pleased also to mortifie our flesh, and quicken our Spirit : which are the two parts of Sanctification, and never severed from true Justification.

*What learn you of this ?*

That we cannot rightly desire God to forgive us our sins, unless we crave also power to abstain from the like in time to come : else our prayer is but babbling. So that here we would be stirred to pray for strength to avoid those sins whereof we craved pardon for before : so far is it, that men should think that they are justified, when they have not so much as a purpose to leave their sin. For who being delivered from a great disease will return to it again, and not rather desire a diet whereby he may escape it ? Swine indeed after they are washed, and dogs after their vomit, return, the one to their mire the other to their vomit ; (*Pro. 26. 11. 2 Pet. 2. 22.*) as do also the Papists, who after auricular confession being discharged in their opinion, will go to their sins afresh : but those that are truly washed with the blood of Christ, will never give themselves over to their sins again.

*If they cannot return to their vomit, what need have they to pray ?*

Yes, very great : because God hath ordained prayer one means of keeping them from revolt. And they ought to be so much the more earnest in prayer as they are more subject to be beaten and buffeted with temptations, then others : *Zach. 1. 11. Luk. 11. 21,*

*What*

*What learn you from hence ?*

Much comfort in temptations ; in that it is a token of God's favour and of pardon of our sins, that we are subject to temptation.

*What other cause is there to pray, that we be not led into temptation ?*

For that the condition of them that are called to the hope of life, will be worse than the state of those that never tasted of the good word of God, if they give themselves to evil : as a relapse in diseases is more dangerous than the first sickness was. *Job. 5. 14. 2 Pet. 2. 22. Mt. 12. 43.*

Of temptations and the causes why we must pray against them.

*May we pray simply and absolutely against all temptations ?*

No verily.

For first, the best men that ever were (yea, the Son of God himself) were subject to temptations.

Secondly, all temptations are not evil, but some are tryals of our faith and hope, and oftentimes make for our good. In which regard, they are pronounced blessed that fall into divers temptations. And therefore ought we not to pray simply and without exception to be delivered from them ; (*Jam. 1. 2. Deut. 8. 2. & 13. 3.*) but only from the evil of them.

*What then do we pray for concerning them ?*

That if the Lord will be pleased to take tryal of the grace he hath bestowed upon us, either by afflictions, or by occasion of temptation to sin offered us ; that we be not given over to them, or overcome by them ; but that we may have a good issue, and escape from them : (*1 Cor. 10. 13.*) and that if either we must go under trouble, or offend the Lord, we may rather chuse affliction than sin : *Job. 36. 21.*

*Why are they called Temptations ?*

Because by them God trieth our obedience, to notify our faith and patience, both to our selves and others, whether we will follow him or not : and therefore we may be assured, that so often as we beat back or overcome the temptations, we have as many undoubted testimonies of his love.

*What is here meant then by the word Temptation ?*

Sin, and whatsoever things, by the corruption of our nature, are occasions to lead us into sin ; as prosperity, adversity, &c. (*Prov. 30. 9.*) which otherwise simply are not to be numbred among these temptations we desire here to be delivered from.

*How many wayes may a man be tempted ?*

Three :

1. By God.
2. By Satan and his wicked instruments.
3. By a man's own corruption.

*How may God be said to tempt ?*

Though God tempteth no man unto evil, as he is tempted of none, (*James* How God tempteth us. *1. 13.*) yet sometimes he leadeth men into temptations of probation : (*Mat. 4. 1. & 6. 13.*) and that first, by unusual probatory precepts : as when he commanded *Abraham* to kill his son. *Gen. 22. 1. &c.* Secondly, by sending an extraordinary measure of prosperity or adversity. *Deut. 8. 16.* Thirdly, by letting loose Satan (his band-dog) to buffet and molest the godly, as *Saint Paul*, (*2 Cor. 12. 7.*) or to seduce the wicked, as *Abah's Prophets*. *1 King. 22. 22.* Fourthly, by desertion, leaving men to themselves : whether for a time, (*Hos. 5. 15.*) as *Ezechias* in the business of the King of *Babels* Embassage ; (*2 Chr. 32. 31.*) or utterly, as those whom he justly giveth up to their own lusts. *Rom. 1. 26, 28.*) and the power of Satan. *Act. 5. 3.*

*How agreeth it with the goodness of the Lord, to lead thus into temptation?*

When all things are of him and by him, it must needs follow, that the things that are done are provided and governed of him; yet in such sort, as none of the evil which is in the transgressors cleaveth unto him.

*But how can that be without stain of his righteousness?*

It is a righteous thing with God to punish sin with sin, and to cast a sinner into further sins by way of just punishment. Therefore we desire God not to give us over to our selves, by withdrawing his spirit from us. As when men do delight in lyes, he giveth them over to believe lies: (2 *Thef.* 2. 11.) and for idolatry, he justly punisheth them with corporal filthiness in the same degree. (*Hof.* 4. 14. *Rom.* 1. 24.) Now being naturally prone to sin when by the just judgment of God we are left to our selves, we rush into all evil, even as a horse into the battle to whom we put the spurs, or as an Eagle flyeth to her prey.

*May not earthly Magistrates thus punish sin;*

No verily: it were a cursed thing in Magistrates so to do. But God is above all Magistrates; who even for our natural corruption may justly give us over to all naughty affections.

*Why do the Papists say? [And suffer us not to be led into temptation?]*

In a vain foolish fear of making God to be guilty of sin, if he should be said to lead us into temptation: and therefore they lay the Lords words (as it were) in water, and change his tongue, and set him to the Grammar School to teach him to speak, which teacheth all men to speak. Whose folly is so much the greater, as it is the usual phrase of Scripture. *Exod.* 4. 21. & 9. 16. 1. *Kings* 22. 20, 21, 22. *Rom.* 1. 24, 26, 28. 2 *Thef.* 2. 11.

*What inconvenience followeth upon this addition?*

Very great For by this bare permission of evil they rob God of his glory, (working in the most things that are done of men) yea even of the best things, the doings, whereof is attributed to his permission. *Heb.* 6. 3.

*May we not offer our selves unto temptation, as Christ did?*

In no wise. For he was carried extraordinarily by the power of his God-head into the desert, to be tempted for our sakes; that in his victory we might overcome.

*What learn you of this?*

1. That no godly man should chuse his dwelling among those of a sinful profession; as a chaste man among stewes, or a temperate man among drunksards, belly-gods, &c.

2. If we fall into such companies or occasions at unaware; (as did *Joseph*, *Gen.* 39. 12. and *David*, 1 *Sam.* 25. 13, 22.) that we pray God for his assistance, to carry our selves godly, and in no wise to be infected by them.

*What is meant by [deliver us from evil?]*

This expoundeth the former by a flat contrary, as thus; [*Lead us not into Temptation*] but pull us out of it (even when we fall into it by our own infirmity) and that with force. For by *delivering* here is meant a forcible rescuing of our nature, (*Rom.* 7. 24) neither able nor willing to help it self out of these dangers,

*What doth this teach us?*

That men are deeply plunged into sin, as a beast into the mire, which must be forcibly pulled out: although a beast will help it self more, than we can do our selves of our selves. Not that there is not a freedom and willingness



in that which is well done : but, as that force cometh from that which is without, so the grace cometh not from us, but from God. Therefore the Church saith, *Cant. 1. 4. Draw me, we will run*; and Christ, *Joh. 6. 44. No man can come unto me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him*. Whence we learn, that to have this desire of being drawn out, is a singular favour of God.

*What is God's hand to pull us out of this evil?*

The Ministry of the Word, whereby he frameth our wills through the power of his Spirit to yield to his work.

*Whar gather you of this?*

That we kick not at the Ministers for reproving our sins, seeing that they strive to pluck us out of the mire; but that we rejoyce and yield to their exhortation.

*What is meant here by Evil?*

First, *that evil one*, (1 John 5. 18. 19.) Satan, (who pretendeth to have power over us) and in him, all his instruments and provocations to sin. Then secondly, the effects of temptation, which without the special grace of God is extremely evil; to wit, sin and damnation. 1 Tim. 6. 9.

*Is not the Devil the author of all evil?*

Yes, he is the first Author: but properly those evils are called his, which in his own person he suggesteth.

*From how many kinds of evils then desire we deliverance?*

From two:

1. The inward concupiscences of our hearts, which are our greatest enemies; James 1. 14, 15.

2. The outward, as the Devil, and the World, which do work upon us by the former: and therefore if we can subdue the inward, these outward cannot annoy us.

*From what evils should we desire principally to be delivered?*

Those whereunto we are most bent and naturally inclined, or wherein our Country especially, or our neighbours amongst whom we converse, (Mat. 8. 28.) do most delight: that we make the hedg highest, where Satan striveth most to leap over; who, although he knoweth not our secrets, yet seeing his subtilty and sharpness of discovering us even by a beck or countenance is very great, we must desire wisdom of God to discern his temptations, and power also to resist them.

*Shew now briefly, as you have done in the rest, what things we pray for in this last Petition?*

1. That seeing we cannot be tempted without the will of God (Job 1. 10) nor resist without his power; (2 Cor. 12. 9.) if it be his blessed will, he would give us neither poverty nor riches, (Pro 30. 8.) nor any such thing as may endanger our spiritual estate, but remove those causes away which lead us into temptation.

2. That he would tye up Satan, and restrain his malice and power, (2 Cor. 12. 8.) or else make us wise to know and avoid his stratagems: (2 Cor. 2. 11.) preserve us from the evil that is in the world, (Joh. 17. 15;) and abate the power of the corruption that is within us. Rom. 7. 24, 25:

3. That in our tryals (if he see good to prove us) he would keep us from charging him with any injustice or hard measure: (Job 1. 22.) and that he would give us grace to behold his holy hand therein, and to make that holy use of them for which he hath sent them. Esa. 27. 9.

4. That

What things we pray for in the sixth Petition.

4. That he would not take his holy spirit from us in our trials, but give us sustentation in our temptations, and always stand by us with his grace, to keep us from falling, and not suffer us to be overcome by the temptations, 1 Cor. 10. 13 *Jude verse 24.*

5. That, leaving us at any time to our own weakness for our humiliation, he would graciously raise us up again, with increase of spiritual strength and courage. *Psal. 51. 12.*

6. That he would keep us from all carnal security, from despair, and presumption of his mercies.

7. That he would put an end to all tryals, and to these daies of conflict, in his own good time, treading Satan, with his forces, for ever under feet. *Rom. 16. 20.*

8. That he would increase and perfect the work of his grace in us, enabling us to every good work, (*Heb. 13. 21.*) and, instead of temptations to the contrary, affording us all helps unto well-doing, and all things that may further us in holiness; as good company, godly examples, holy counsel and encouragements, &c.

*Hitherto of the Petitions. There remaineth the Conclusion; containing both the Thanksgiving, (Which is the second part of Prayer) and a Confirmation of the former requests. What are the words of this close of the Lord's Prayer?*

Conclusion of  
the Lords  
Prayer.

**For thine is the Kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever: Amen** Mat. 6. 13.

Which words, though they be not repeated by St. *Luke*, yet are expressly mentioned by St. *Matthew*: and therefore causelessly, and without warrant omitted by the Church of *Rome*.

*What observe you therein?*

Their sacrilege, who steal away this Thanksgiving from prayer, as if it were no part of it. So that it is no marvail that in Popery, all the whole body of their doctrine is of the salvation of men; God's glory being buried in a deep silence.

*Whence is this form of Thanksgiving drawn?*

Out of *Daniel 7. 14.* and *1 Chron. 29. 10, 11, 12, 13.* where *David* useth the like phrase in praising of God. But that which *David* enlargeth there, our Saviour shortneth here; and yet comprehendeth the marrow of all.

*What is the sum thereof?*

That we ground our assurance of obtaining our prayers in God; from whom all things we ask do come, and to whom therefore all glory must return.

*What observe you in this?*

That Christ maketh this Thanksgiving, consisting in the praise of God, to be a reason of all the Petitions going before; and therefore a further assurance of obtaining our suits: for so good men in praying for new blessings, do always joynt thanksgiving for the former.

*What do you here understand by [Kingdom?]*

God's absolute Sovereignty and right over all things; *1 Chro. 29. 11.* which answereth to the *second* Petition. And therefore this reason, of God's right and authority over all, ought to move us to pray to him, and to him alone, as to one that hath only right to any thing we have need of.

What is  
meant By  
Kingdom.

*What*

*What is meant by [Power?]*

The omnipotency of God, whereby he is able to do all things. *Luke* 1. 37. What is  
That besides his right, noted in the former word, he is also able to bring to  
pass whatsoever he will: both which concur in God, though not always in  
earthly Princes. Which seemeth to answer unto the *third* Petition, and  
ought to give us encouragement to pray unto him, who is able to effect any  
thing we pray for according to his will; and to strengthen us to any thing  
which in duty we ought to do, although there be no strength in us. Power.

*What is meant by [Glory?]*

That due, which riseth from the two former, of *Kingdom* and *Power*, doth  
rightly belong unto God, as following upon the concurrence of the other  
two. For if whatsoever we desire be granted unto us, in that he reigneth  
powerfully; it is reason, that from the establishing of his kingdom and pow-  
er, all glory and praise should return unto him again, Therefore hereby we  
do thankfully refer and return all good things to the honour and service of  
God that giveth them. *Psalms* 65. 1, 2. otherwise we have nor comfort of our  
prayers. And it answereth to the *first* Petition, and ought to move us to pray  
unto him, and to assure us that our prayers are granted; seeing by our pray-  
ers duly made and granted, he is glorified. And it is one of the most power-  
ful reason: that the servants of God have grounded their confidence of being  
heard, that the name of God therein should be glorified. What is  
meant by  
Glory.

*What mean you by the word [Thine?]*

Here by these titles of *Kingdom*, *Power*, and *Glory*, are appropriated unto  
God, to whom they do belong; and all creatures excluded from fellowship  
with him in these attributes. For howsoever, *Kingdom*, *Power* and *Glory*, are  
communicated unto some creatures (namely Kings and Princes, *Dan.* 2. 37.) as  
God's instruments, and Vice-gerents: *Psalms* 82. 6. yet God alone claimeth  
them originally of himself, and absolutely without dependence or control;  
others have them not of themselves, but as borrowed, and hold them of him  
as Tenants at will. *Rom.* 13. 1. *Prov.* 8. 15. *Job* 33. 13. What is  
meant by  
Thine.

*What is meant by the words, [for ever, or, for ages?]*

By *ages*, he meaneth eternity: *Dan.* 2. 4. and thereby putteth another diffe-  
rence between the *Kingdom*, *Power*, and *Glory* of God, which is eternal, with-  
out any beginning or end; *1 Tim.* 1. 17. and that in Princes, whose King-  
doms, powers and glory fade. What is  
meant by  
or for ever.

*How is this a close of confirmation to our requests?*

Because we do not only in general ascribe *Kingdom*, *Power*, and *Glory* un-  
to God, as his due, but also with respect unto our prayers and suits believing  
and professing, that he, as *King* of heaven and earth, hath authority to dis-  
pose of all his treasures; *Rev.* 3. 7. as *omnipotent*, is able to do exceeding  
abundantly above all that we can ask or think; *Eph.* 3. 20. finally, as the  
God of *glory*, is interested in the welfare of his servants for the maintaining  
of the honour of his name, *Psa.* 35. 27. and truth of his promises. *Psal.* 119. 49.  
Therefore there are here contained three reasons to move God to grant our  
Petitions. Because,

First, he is our King; and so tyed to help us, who are his Subjects.

Secondly, he hath power; and therefore is able to help us.

Thirdly, The granting of our Petitions will be to his glory and praise.  
Whereupon we firmly believe, that God the mighty and everlasting King,  
*1 Tim.* 1. 17. can, and for his own glory will grant the things we have thus  
demanded. *Eph.* 3. 20. *Jer.* 14. 7. *Ezek.* 36. 22.

What

What is  
meant by evil.

*What is understood by the last word [Amen?]*  
Not only, *So be it*, as commonly men say; but also, *So it is or shall be*, as we have prayed. (Rev. 22. 20, 21.) For it is a note of confidence and declaration of Faith, (without which our prayers are rejected: whereby we assure our selves, that God will grant those things which we have prayed to him for.

*Why are we taught to conclude with this word?*

There being two things required in prayer, a fervent *desire*, (James 5. 17.) and Faith, (Jam. 1. 6.) which is a persuasion, that these things which we truly desire, God will grant them for Christ's sake: this is a testimony both of our earnest affection of having all those things performed, which in this prayer are comprehended, and the assurance of our faith to receive our desires, at least so far forth as God seeth good for us. And so hereby we do not only testify our earnest *desire* that so it may be, but also express our full *assurance* that so it shall be, as we have prayed, according to the will of God: and being already *let in* (Mat. 7. 8.) by the key of faithful prayer into the rich treasure of his mercies, we also set our *seal* (John 3. 11.) in the word of faith, *Amen*.

*Is it lawful to use no other form of words, than that which is set down in the Lord's Prayer?*

We may use another form of words: but we must pray for the same things, and with like affection, as is prescribed in that prayer.

*This form being so absolute, what need we use any other words in praying?*

Whether law-  
ful to use any  
other form of  
Prayer.

Because, as to refuse this form favoureth of a proud contempt of Christ's ordinance, so to confine our selves to these words alone, argueth extreme idleness in this duty, wherein variety of words is required for the pouring out of our souls before the Lord, (Hos. 14. 3.) and oftentimes according to the occasion some one Petition is more than the rest to be insisted on and importuned. (Mat. 26. 44.) Wherefore our blessed Saviour hath commended this form unto us, as an excellent copy or lesson, to be both repeated, and imitated, or at the least, aimed at by us his Scholars: for which cause, both he himself, (Job. 17. 1, &c.) and his *Apostles*, (Act. 4. 24, &c.) are recorded to have prayed in other words, which yet may be referred to these. Finally the liberty which the Lord affordeth us is not to be abridged, or despised, who admitteth all languages, words and forms, agreeable to this pattern, whether read, rehearsed by heart, or presently conceived; (2 Chron. 23. 30. Psal. 90. & 92. in the Titles. Num. 10. 35, 36.) so be it we pray both with *spirit* and affection, and with understanding also. 1 Cor. 14. 15.

*May there not then besides this prayer of the Lord, be now under the Gospel a set form of Prayer in the Church?*

Yes verily: so that it be left at the liberty of the Church (not of private men without consent of the Church) to alter it.

*Wherefore is it necessary or convenient that there be a set form of Prayer?*

To help the weaker and ruder sort of people especially: and yet so as the set form make not men sluggish in stirring up the gift of Prayer in themselves according to divers occurrents; it being incident to the children of God, to have some gift of Prayer in some measure. Zach. 12. 10.

*Remaineth there yet any thing necessary to be considered of prayer?*

Something would be spoken of the *Kinds* and *Circumstances* thereof.

*What kinds are there of Prayer?*

Prayer

Prayer is either publick or private: and both of them, either ordinary or extraordinary. *Act. 6. 4. &c. 1 Tim. 2. 12. Mat. 6. 6. Act. 10. 4. Joel. 2. 15. Jonah 3. 6, &c.*

*What is publick Prayer?*

It is prayer is made of and in the Congregation, assembled for the service of God. *Psa. 84. 1, &c.* What Publick Prayer is

*What is private Prayer?*

It is that Prayer which is made out of the Congregation, and it is either less private; as when the whole Family, or private friends, meet in that exercise: (*2 Sam. 6. 20. Eph. 4. 16.*) or more private; when either one of the members of the family, (*Nehe. 1. 4, 5, 6. Gen. 25. 21.*) or some by reason of special duty they have, joyntly together make their prayers. *1 Peter 3. 7.* What private Prayer is.

*Is it not enough for every one in a family to make prayers with the rest of the body of that household?*

No: it is required also that we pray *solitarily* by our selves. *Mat. 6. 6.* For as every man hath committed special sins, which others in the family have not; and hath special defects; and hath received special favours, that others have not: so in these regards it is meet that he should have a special resort unto God in Confession, Petition, and Thanksgiving.

*What is ordinary Prayer?*

It is that prayer which is made daily upon ordinary occasions. *Psal. 55. 17. Dan. 6. 11.* What ordinary prayer is

*What is the extraordinary?*

That which is made upon some special occasion, or extraordinary accident falling out; by reason whereof it is both longer and ferventer. *Psal. 119. 62. Act. 12. 5. Joel 2. 15. Jonah 3. 6.* What extraordinary prayer is.

*Are the same persons always to keep the private extraordinary Prayers that keep the publick?*

No, not such persons as are under the commandment of others; unless it be publick, or with consent of their commanders. *Numb. 30. 13, 14, &c.*

*What are the ordinary circumstances of Prayer?*

Geures, Place, and Times.

*What behaviour and gestures must we use in praying?*

We must use such holy behaviour and comely gestures of body, as are befeeming the Majesty of God with whom we have to deal, and so holy an exercise which we have in hand: namely, such as may best express and encrease the reverence, humility, fervency, and affiance, that ought to be in our hearts. As the bowing of our knees, (*Eph. 3. 14.*) lifting up of our hands and eyes to heaven, (*La. 3. 41. Job. 17. 1.*) &c. which yet are not always or absolutely necessary, (*Luk. 18. 13.*) so our hearts be lifted up, (*Psa. 25. 1. & 143. 8.*) and the knees of our conscience bowed before the Lord, (*Phik. 2. 10.*) and nothing done unbefeming the company, with whom we pray, and the kind of prayer.

*Is not the behaviour all one, in every kind of prayer?*

No. In private prayer it sufficeth. that we use such words, gestures, &c. as may express our reverence and faith towards God: (*1 Cor. 14. 2.*) in publick prayer our behaviour must be such, as may also witness our communion one with another, and desire of mutual edification. (*1 Cor. 14. 4, 17, 40.*) When we pray by our selves, we have more liberty of words and gestures, than in company. (*1 Kings 18. 42.*) In extraordinary prayers the publick must be done with open shew of affection, either sorrow or joy, (*Esa. 1. and 58. Joel 2. 13.*) which in the private must be covert and secret. *Mat. 6. 17.*

Circumstances of prayer Gesture. 1.

*Where must we pray?*

Generally all places are allowed, (1 *Tim.* 2. 8.) the ceremonial difference of places being removed, (*John* 4. 21.) and Christ our propitiatory every where present before us (*Mat.* 18. 20.) Notwithstanding, according to the kinds before mentioned, the publick place of resort, for the worship of God, be fitteth common prayers, (*Esa.* 56. 7. *Joel* 2. 17.) and the private house, or closet, is most convenient for private supplication: (*Mat.* 6. 6.) howsoever the sudden lifting up of the heart in secret unto God, may be as occasion is, (with-out gesture) in any place or company. *Neh.* 2. 4.

*When must we pray?*

3. Time of  
Prayer.

Continually; as the Apostle enjoyneth, 1 *Thes.* 5. 17. For the whole course of a Christian is a perpetual *intercourse* with the Lord. either suing for mercies, or waiting for the answer of his suits, or rendering thanks for graces received. (*Psal.* 5. 3. *Luke* 2. 37.) Nevertheless *ordinarily* the Sabbath among the days of the week, *Psal.* 92. *Title:* and morning and evening among the hours of the day, *ibid. verse* 2. are to be preferred, whereto such times may be added, wherein we enter into any business. *Col.* 3. 17. *Prov.* 3. 6. or receive any of the creatures or blessings of God: 1 *Cor.* 10. 31. 1 *Tim.* 4. 4, 5. *Extraordinarily* other days, or hours, must also be set apart for prayer, especially in cases requiring longer continuance therein. *Psal.* 55. 17. & 119. 62, 164.

*What circumstances are annexed unto such extraordinary prayers?*

An holy *fasting*; or *feasting*. 1 *Cor.* 7. 5. *Zac.* 8. 18. *Neh.* 8. 10. the one, to further our Zeal in *Petition*; the other in *Thanksgiving*.

*What mean you by Fasting?*

Of Fasting

Not any *natural* abstinence, arising from sickness: nor *medicinal*, used to prevent or remove the same; nor *civil*, enjoyed sometimes by authority, as in case of death; sometimes enforced by necessity, as in siege, 2 *Kin.* 6. 25. seafaring, &c. not yet *moral*, for subduing of carnal concupiscence, 1 *Cor.* 9. 27. and preservation of chastity, required especially in some constitutions by virtue of the seventh Commandment: but *religious*, *Joel* 1. 14. that is, referred to religious ends, for the furtherance of the special practice of repentance, and the enforcing of our prayers.

*Is fasting a good work?*

Fasting is not properly a good work, but an help, and assistance thereto; namely to Prayer: neither is the outward exercise thereof a certain mark of a godly name. The Pharisees which fasted, *Luk.* 5. 33. came not to our Saviour Christ to learn of him, (as the disciples of *John* did, *Matth.* 9. 24. although it were in weakness) but to discredit him; namely, to make the world believe that he was a belly god: as the Church of *Rome* doth charge the children of God now, to open a school to all liberty to the flesh, following the steps of their old fathers the Pharisees.

*What is an holy Fast?*

What an holy  
F. is.

The chastising of our nature, and laying aside the delights of the senses for a time; *Joel* 2. 16. 1 *Cor.* 7. 5. to the end thereby to humble our selves, and to make us more apt to prayer. Or more fully: Fasting is a religious abstinence, commanded of God, whereby we forbear the use not only of meat and drink, but also of all other earthly comforts and commodities of this life, so far as necessity and comeliness will suffer, to the end that we being humbled and afflicted in our souls, by the due consideration of our sins and punishment, may, grounded upon the promises of God, more earnestly and fervently call upon God, either for the obtaining of some singular benefit or special

special favour we have need of; or for the avoiding of some special punishment or notable judgment hanging over our heads, or already pressed upon us. *Act.* 16. 30, 31, 32. & 14. 23. 2 *Chron.* 20. *Joel* 1. & 2. 12, 16.

*Is there any necessity of this exercise of Fasting?*

Yes verily. in that it is necessary to humble our selves under the mighty and fearful hand of God; and to afflict our souls with the consideration and conscience of our sins, and the punishment due unto them; unto which this outward exercise of Fasting is a good aid. For howsoever the kingdom of God consisteth not properly in the matter of meat and drink, whether used or forborn; (*Rom.* 1. 4. 17.) yet fasting, as an extraordinary help unto the chief exercises of piety, hath the warrant and weight of a duty, as well from precepts as examples, both out of the old Testament, (*Lev.* 23. 27. & *c.* *Joel.* 2. 12. *Esa.* 22. 12.) and the new. (*Mat.* 9. 14, 15. *Act.* 13. 3.) And our Saviour Christ (*Luk.* 5. 35.) doth expressly say, that the time shall come, when his disciples shall fast, where both by the circumstances of the persons, and of the time, the necessity of fasting is enforced.

*How so?*

By the persons; for that the Apostles themselves have need of this help of fasting for their further humiliation. And by the times; for that even after the Ascension of our Saviour Christ, when the graces of God were most abundant upon them, they should have need of this exercise.

*What is gathered hereof?*

That it is a shameful thing for men to say, that Fasting is Jewish or Ceremonial.

*What do you gather in that our Saviour would not have his disciples to fast till after his Ascension?*

His singular kindness, in that he would not suffer any great trouble, or cause of fast to come unto them, before they had strength to bear them, or were prepared for them.

*When is the time of Fasting?*

As oft as there are urgent and extraordinary causes of prayer; either for the avoiding of some great evil or notable calamity, (*1 Sam.* 7. 6. *Est.* 4. 16.) or for the obtaining of some great mercy or special benefit at the hand of God. (*Neb.* 1. 4. *Act.* 10. 30.) For in that our Saviour Christ teacheth, (*Luk.* 5. 34) that it muſt not be, when he, who is as it were the Bridegroom, is with his disciples, to furnish them with all manner of benefits they had need of: we are taught, that the time is, when any great calamity is hanging over us, or fallen upon us, whereby the gracious presence of Christ is taken from us; or when there is any weighty matter to be taken in hand.

*What gather you hereof?*

That the fast in Popery is foolish, which is holden at set times, whether the times be prosperous, or not prosperous; whether the affairs be common and ordinary, or whether they be special and extraordinary.

*When then is this Religious exercise of Fasting to be performed of Christians?*

When God calleth upon us for this duty by the occasions, arising from his providence, and our own necessities. *Mat.* 9. 15.

*What are those occasions, whereby the Lord calleth us to fasting?*

There are generally two (as hath been noted;) viz.  
1. Evils, which, being felt or feared, we desire to remove, or to prevent; as sins, (*1 Sam.* 7. 6. *1 Cor.* 5. 2.) and the judgment of God for sin, *Est.* 4. 16. *Jonah* 3. 7. *Matth.* 17. 21.

2. Good things, *spiritual* (*Acts* 10. 30.) or *outward*, (*Neh.* 1. 4.) which we desire to enjoy; and therefore do thus seek them, and prepare our selves for the receiving of them.

*When is this Fast to begin and end?*

As in all holy rests, after preparation, (*Luk.* 23. 54.) it is to begin in the morning of the day of the Fast, and to continue to the morning of the day following; *Mark* 16. 2. *Luke* 24. 1.

*It seemeth by this, that the law of Fasting will not suffer a man to sup the night of that day when the Fast is holden.*

The Fast is so long continued as hath been said: but so, as there be that refreshing, whereby health may be preserved. For such as be sick or weak, or to take somewhat for their sustenance, thereby to be better able to serve God in the Fast; provided that they do not abuse this to licence of the flesh.

*Is it of necessity, that the Fast should always begin in the morning, and continue until night?*

No. It may be from morning till evening; (*Judg.* 20. 26. *2 Sam.* 3. 35.) or from evening till evening again. (*Lev.* 23. 32.) And according to the greatness of the affliction, the Fast is to be prolonged, even to the space of three days; as appeareth by the examples of the Jews, *Est.* 4. 16. and *Paul*, *Acts* 9. 9.

*What are the kinds of Fasting?*

It is either publick or private.

*What is the publick Fast?*

It is when for a general cause the Churches do fast: *viz.* when the Governours and Magistrates, (*Joel.* 2. 15.) stirred up by consideration of common sins, (*Neh.* 9. 1. &c.) calamities, (*Jonah.* 3. 7, 8.) necessities, or busineses of great importance, do in the name of God blow the trumpet, and call a solemn assembly, or assemblies; in which case he that obeyeth not, is culpable before God and man. *Lev.* 23. 29. And it is either more publick, when all Churches fast generally; or else less publick, when some particular Churches are humbled in fasting:

*What is the private Fast?*

When upon the view either of *publick* causes, not considered by such as are in authority, (*Ezek.* 9. 4. & 13. 17.) or of the like, but more *private* occasions (as domestical or personal, &c.) a Christian is moved either with his family, or special friends, (*Zach.* 12. 12. *1 Cor.* 7. 5.) or by himself solitarily, (*Mat.* 6. 17.) to humble himself before the Lord. For it is more or less private: less private, as when a particular house; more private, when a particular person is humbled in fasting.

*Is there any difference in the manner of holding a publick and private Fast?*

Yes. In a publick Fast, the sorrow and grief ought to be declared openly to the view of all: which ought to be covered, as much as may be, in the private Fast; wherein the more secrecy is used, the greater proof is there of sincerity and hope of blessing. Wherefore our Saviour Christ reproveth the private fast of Hypocrites, that would outwardly appear to men to fast; and commandeth the contrary. *Matth.* 6. 16, 17, 18.

*Whom doth God call to this exercise of fasting?*

All Christians, enabled by understanding, and grace, to judg, and to perform aright this weighty duty: (*Zach.* 12. 12. &c.) unless any be exempted by

Of the kinds  
of Fasting.

Of publick  
Fast.

Of private  
Fast.

Who are to  
fast.



by present debility; (*Mat. 12. 7. 1 Sam. 14. 29, 30.*) but differently according to the divers occasions of fasting, and kinds thereon depending, (whereof before hath been spoken.)

*May those that are under the government of their Parents or Masters fast, without leave of them?*

No: but in the publick all may fast.

*Are all persons meet for this exercise of fasting?*

By the unfitness of his own Disciples for it, our Saviour Christ teacheth, that they that meet for this exercise must not be Novices in the profession of the truth: no more than he that is accustomed with the drinking of old wine, can suddenly fall in liking of new wine, *Luk. 5. 33.*

*Is it so hard a matter to abstain from a meals meat, and such bodily comforts for a short time; which the young sucking babes, and the beasts of Nineveh did, and divers beasts are better able to perform than any man?*

No verily. But hereby appeareth, that there is an inward strength of the mind required, not only in knowledge of our behaviour in this service of God, but also of power and ability to go under the weight of the things we humble our selves for: which strength if it be wanting, the fast will be to those that are exercised in it, as a piece of new cloth sewed into an old garment; which because it is not able to bear the stress and strength of, hath a greater rent made into it, than if there were no piece at all.

*What gather you hereof?*

That it is no marvel, if where there is any abstinence and corporal exercise in Popery; yet that the same makes them nothing better, but rather worse: having not so much as the knowledge of the service of God; much less any spiritual strength and ability to perform it with.

*What then are the parts of a true Christian Fast?*

They are partly outward, partly inward. 1. Bodily exercise, serving to the inward substance, *1 Tim. 4. 8.*

Of the parts of a Christian fast.

2. An inward substance, sanctifying the bodily exercise, and making it profitable unto the users.

*What is the bodily exercise in fasting?*

It is the forbearing of things, otherwise lawful and convenient, in whole or in part, for the time of humiliation: so as nature be chastised but not disabled for service; and the delights of the sense laid aside, but yet without annoyance and uncomeliness.

*What are those outward things that are to be forborn during the time of the fast?*

First food: *Esther 4. 16. Jonah 3. 7.* from whence the whole action hath the name of *Fasting*: and the word doth signifie an utter abstinence from all meats, and drinks, and not a sober use of them, which ought to be all the times of our life. Wherefore this outward exercise is thus described. *Luk. 5. 33. The disciples of John and the Pharisees fast; but thine eat and drink.*

*What is here to be considered?*

A charge upon Popery. For the greater sort of people among them, in the day of their Fast, fill their bellies with bread and drink; and the richer sort with all kind of delicates, (flesh, and that which cometh of flesh only excepted:) so that the fastings of the one and the other is but a fulness; and the latter may be more truly said to feast than fast.

*It seemeth you make it unlawful for those that fast to eat any thing during their fasting.*

Not so; if for help of weakness, the taking of meat be moderately and sparingly used, as before hath been observed.

*What other things are outward?*

The ceasing from labour in our vocations, on the day of the Fast; (*Num. 29. 7.*) to the end we may the better attend to the holy exercises used in fasting: in which respect such times are called Sabbaths (*Levit. 23. 32.*) the laying aside of choice apparel, or whatsoever ornaments of the body, and wearing of homely and courser garments. (*Exod. 33. 4, 5. Jonah 3. 5, 6.*) The forbearing of Sleep, Musick, Mirth, Perfumes, &c. (*Dan. 6. 18. & 10. 2, 3.*) And this abstinence is required of all that celebrate the Fast. But of married persons there is further required a forbearance of the use of the marriagebed, and of the company each of others. *1 Cor. 7. 5. Joel 2. 16.*

*What is the meaning of the abstinence from these outward things?*

By abstinence from meat and drink, by wearing of courser apparel, by ceasing from labour in our callings, and by separation in married persons for the time; we thereby profess our selves unworthy of all the benefits of this present life, and that we are worthy to be as far underneath the earth as we are above it; yea, that we are worthy to be cast into the bottom of hell: which the holy Fathers in times past did signifie, by putting ashes upon their heads; (*Job 2. 12. Est. 4. 3. Jer. 6. 26. Ezek. 27. 30. Dan. 9. 3.*) the truth whereof remaineth still, although the ceremony be not used.

*What is the spiritual substance of duty, whereto the bodily exercise serveth?*

It is an extraordinary endeavour of humbling our souls before the Lord, and of seeking his face and favour; (*Ezra 8. 21.*) wherein that inward power and strength, whereof we speak, is seen.

*Wherein doth it consist?*

1. In the abasing of our selves, (*Joel 2. 13.*) by examination, confession, and hearty bewailing of our own, and the common sins. *Ezra, 9. 3, 4. &c. Neh. 9. 1, 2, &c. Dan. 9. 3, 4, 5, &c.*

2. In drawing near unto the Lord by faith, (*Luk 15, 18, 21.*) and earnest invocation of his name; (*Jona. 3. 8. Eisa. 58. 4.*)

The former is grounded upon the meditation of the Law and threats of God: the latter upon the Gospel and promises of God, touching the removing of our sins and God's judgments upon us for them.

*How agreeth this with the Popish Fast?*

It faileth in both parts. For instead of humbling themselves and afflicting their souls, they pride themselves, and lift up their minds, in thinking they deserve something at God's hand for their fasting: which is great abomination. Neither have they upon the daies of their fast any extraordinary exercise of Prayer, more then upon other daies. Of all which it may appear, how small cause they have to boast of their fasting, which in all the warp thereof hath not a thread which is not full of leprolie.

*What is required in our humiliation?*

Anguish and grief of our hearts, conceived for our sins, and the punishment of God upon us, for which we ought to be humbled in fasting. For the effecting whereof, we are to set before our eyes:

1. The glass of God's holy Law, with the bitter curses threatned to the breakers thereof.

2. The examples of vengeance on the wicked.
3. The judgments new felt, or feared of us.
4. The spiritual contemplation of our blessed Saviour, bleeding on the Cross, with the wounds which our sins have forced upon him, *Zach. 12. 10, &c.*

*What is required in our drawing near unto the Lord by Faith?*

Not only fervently and importunately to knock at the gate of his mercy for the pardon of our sins, removal of judgment, and grant of the graces and blessings we need: (*Psal. 51. 1, 2, &c and verse 14.*) but also to make a sure Covenant with his Majesty, (*Nehem 9. 38. Ezra 10. 3, 5.*) of renewing and bettering our repentance thence forward, in a more earnest and effectual hatred of sin, and love of righteousness. *Esa. 55. 7. Jonah 3. 8.*

*What fruit or success may we look for, having thus sought the Lord?*

Who knoweth whether by this means we may stand in the gap, and cause the Lord to repent of the evil intended, and to spare his people? (*Joel 2. 14, 18, &c. Jona. 3. 9, 10.*) At the least, for our particular, we shall receive the mark and mercy promised to such as mourn for the abominations generally committed; (*Ezek. 9. 4, 6.*) together with plentiful evidence of our salvation, and assurance of the love of God towards us; (*Mat. 6. 18. Prov. 28. 13. 1 Job. 1. 9.*) strength against temptations; patience and comfort in afflictions; with all other graces, plentifully vouchsafed (especially upon such renewing of acquaintance) by him who is the rewarder of all that come unto him; (*Heb. 11. 6.*) so that we need not doubt, but that as we have sown in tears, so we shall reap in joy: (*Pf. 126. 5.*) and as we have sought the Lord with fasting and mourning so he yet again will be sought, *Ezek. 36. 37.* and found of us, with holy feasting and spiritual rejoicing.

*What is an holy feasting?*

A comfortable enjoying of God's blessings, to stir us up to thankfulness and spiritual rejoicing. Or, (to describe it more largely) It is a solemn Thanksgiving unto God for some singular benefit, (or deliverance from some notable evils either upon us, or hanging over us;) which he hath bestowed upon us, especially after that in fasting we have begged the same at his hands. *Zach. 8. 19. Esther. 9. 17, 18, 20, 21, 22, 30, 31.* for this is a duty specially required for the acknowledgment of such mercies, as we have by the former course obtained: (*Isa. 30. 11, 12 & 50. 51. Esther 9. 22.*) and so answering thereto, that from the one, with due reference, the other may be conceived.

*What ought especially to be the time of this duty?*

That time that is nearest unto the mercy and benefit which we have received: as we see in the story, *Esth. 9.* where the Jews that were in the country, and in the provinces, did celebrate their feast on the 14. day of the month *Adar*, because they had overthrown their adversaries the 13. day before: and the Jews in *Shushan*, because they made not an end of the slaughter of their enemies before the 14. day was past, they celebrated it the 15. day. Look 2 *Chro. 20. 29.* and the example of *Jacob*, checked for deferring the payment of his vow at *Beihel. Gen. 35. 1. 3.* with 20. 28.

*Wherefore ought we to take the time that is next the deliverance?*

Because we being most strongly and thoroughly affected with the benefit we receive the first time it is bestowed upon us, especially where there is not only notable benefit befallen unto us, but thereby also we are freed from some notable evil that was upon us, or near unto us, we are then most fit to hold a feast unto the Lord.

*Why is the ordinance of a yearly feast by Mordochæus, rather commanded upon the day after the slaughter of their enemies, than the day of the slaughter?*

To set forth that rejoicing ought not to be so much for the destruction of our enemies, as that thereby we obtain peace to serve God in.

*Wherein doth this feast consist?*

In what an  
holy feast consisteth

The scope and drift of it is, to rejoyce before the Lord; and to shew our selves thankfull for the benefit received: not only in that we are delivered, but that we are delivered by prayer that we have made unto God; whereby our joy encreaseth, and whereby it differeth from the joy of the wicked, which rejoyce that they are delivered, as well as we.

*How may that be best performed?*

Partly by outward and bodily exercifes; and partly by spiritual exercifes of godliness.

*What are the outward exercifes?*

A more liberal use of the creatures, both in meat and apparel, than is ordinary.

*May we eat and drink on that day more than on others?*

No: the exceeding is not in the quantity of meat and drink, but in a more dainty and bountifull diet than ordinary. (*Neh.* 8. 10.) Which yet is to be referred to the exercise of godliness; and therefore ought to be used in that moderation and sobriety, as men may be made more able thereunto: even as the abstinence in fasting is used to further humiliation of the mind, and affecting of the soul.

*What is the exercise of godliness?*

It is either in piety and duty unto God, or in kindness unto men.

*What is the duty unto God?*

To lift up our voice in thanksgiving unto him, as for all other his mercies (whereof this benefit should cause the remembrance; as one sin causeth the remembrance of others; (*Psalms* 51.) so for that present benefit, and for that purpose to call the remembrance, and to compare the former evils which either we were in, or were near unto, with the present mercy, and every part of the one with the members of the other.

*What other duty of Piety is to be performed unto God?*

By a diligent meditation of the present benefit, to confirm our faith and confidence in God; that he that hath so mightily and graciously delivered us at this time, will also in the same or the like dangers deliver us hereafter, so far as the same should be good for us.

*What is the kindness we should shew towards men?*

An exercise of liberality according to our power, out of the feeling of the bountifull hand of God towards us.

*To whom must that be shewed?*

To our friends in presents, and as it were in New-years-gifts, (*Rev.* 11. 10.) and portions to be sent to the poor and needy. *Neh.* 8. 10.

*What remaineth further of these holy Feasts?*

The sorts and kinds of them; which are, as before we have heard of Fasts.

*Hiberto of Prayer, and the extraordinary circumstances thereof, Fasting and Feasting. What is a vow?*

Of Vows.

A solemn promise made unto God by fit persons, of some lawful thing that is in their choice and power to perform.

*It is thought that vows are Ceremonial, and not to pertain to the times of the Gospel?*

They are indeed good, yea excellent persons, that think so; which carry so much the more a dislike of Vows, because they have been abused in Popery. Howbeit, it appears by the fiftieth Psalm, verse 14, 15. That it is a constant and perpetual service of God, as shall appear.

*What is the proper end and use of a Vow?*

It is twofold :

First, to strengthen and confirm our faith.

Secondly, to testify our thankfulness unto God: but no way to merit any thing at God's hand. So that whereas the exercise of a Fast is in adversity, and of a Feast in prosperity; the Vow may be in both.

*Who are the fit persons that may Vow?*

Such as have knowledge, judgment, and ability to discern of a Vow, and of the duties belonging to the performance of the same. *Numbers 30.*

Gen. 28. 28.  
Judg. 11. 30.  
31. 1 Sam. 1.  
11.

Who are to  
vow.

*Are all such bound to vow?*

Not simply, all (for it is no sin not to vow: *Deut. 23. 22.*) but those only, which either being in distress feel a want of feeling of God's assistance, thereby to strengthen their faith for necessary aid: or they, who being delivered from some necessary evil, or have received some singular good, where no vow hath gone before should witness their thankfulness. *Deut. 23. 21, 22, 23. N. mb. 30. 2. & 6. 2, &c.*

*What have we herein further to consider?*

That the Vow must be of lawful things: else it is better not to pay the vow, then to pay. As *Herod*, and the forty mentioned in *Act. 23. 24.* and as the Monks, Fryers and Nuns vow wilful poverty, perpetual abstinence from Marriage, and Canonical obedience, and the peoples pilgrimage.

*May we vow any thing which is lawful to be done?*

We may not vow any vile or base thing: as if a wealthy man should vow to give to the poor some small value, far under his ability. For what either token of thankfulness can that be; or what comfort in his troubles can he take of the performance thereof?

*What have we secondly to consider?*

That the vow must be of such things as are in our choice to perform.

What is to  
be vowed.

*How many ways fail men against this?*

Two ways:

1. In vowing that which we are not able to perform.
2. In vowing that which otherwise by the law of God we are bound to perform.

*Who be they which vow that they cannot perform?*

They are either they whose strength doth fall through the common frailty of all men (as those that vow perpetual continency) whose lets come from themselves: or they which cannot perform it, by reason of subjection unto others; as wives unto their husbands, children to their parents, servants to their masters, &c. In whose power they are, to perform their vows, or not to perform them, *Num. 30. 3, 4, &c.*

*Why may not a man vow such things as he is otherwise bound to do?*

For that they are due unto God without the service of a vow, and therefore it were a dalliance with God, to make shew of some special and extraordinary service, where the common and ordinary is only performed: as

if a man would present as a gift unto his Lord, the rent of his house due for the occupation thereof.

*What may we then lawfully vow ?*

An increase of God's service : as to pray more often every day than ordinarily is used : or to be more liberal to the poor with some strain of our ability ; building of Colledges, Alms-houses, &c.

*What is the duty of those that have vowed ?*

The duty of those that have vowed.

1. To have a diligent care to perform their vows : *Ecclef. 5. 3, 4. Deut. 23. 21, 22, 23.* For it be a reproachful thing to deal with God as with a man : it is more reproachful to deal worse with God than we dare deal with many men.

2. Not to delay the performance of it. *Ecclef. 5. 3.* For God corrected sharply in *Jacob* the deferring of the payment of his vows : (*Gen. 35. 1.*) 1. By his daughters deflowring. 2. By the rage and murder committed by his sons.

*Is the necessity of performing vows so great, that they may no ways be omitted ?*

Not so : for to the performance of a greater duty a man may omit his vow for a time, and after a time return, and be not a Vow-breaker. As the Rechabites for safety of their lives came and dwelt in *Jerusalem*, notwithstanding a former vow, that they would not dwell in a house ; (*Jer. 35. 9, 10, 11.*) and yet God witnesseth, that the vow was not broken thereby : so to help our neighbours in some present necessity, we may cease from any vowed duty at that time, and not sin. Wherein the Papi's greatly fail, who having vow'd unlawfully, yet think they may not intermit their vows.

*If a man in vowing, doth not consider sufficiently the greatness of the matter ; may he not break that vow that he hath not so advisedly made ?*

No : the vow being otherwise lawful, that rashness is to be repented, but the vow must be kept.

*What have we to learn of all this ?*

That we be advised in that we do, and not to enquire after we have vowed, to find some starting hole where to go out ; but either not to vow at all ; or if we vow, to have a good remembrance of it, and a diligent care in the due time to perform it. *Prov. 20. 25.*

*Having spoken of those good things which we do give unto God : let us*

*proceed to that which we do give unto our needy Neighbour. What is Almes ?*

Of Almes.

It is a duty of Christian love, whereby such as have this worlds good, do freely impart to such as are in want, 1 *John 3. 17.* 1 *Tim. 6. 17, 18. Mat. 5. 42.*

*How can it be both a duty, and withal free ?*

1. That it is a duty, appeareth by many formal precepts touching this matter. (*Deut. 15. 7. &c. Heb. 13. 16.*) in that it is called our justice, or righteousness ; (*Psal. 112. 9. Mat. 6. 1.*) in that every man is a steward of God's blessings for the benefit of others ; (*1 Pet. 4. 10.*) finally, in that according to the performance, or neglect, even of this duty, men shall be judged at the last day. *Mat. 25. 35, 42.*

2. It is free, not as being left by God unto our choice, whether we will do it or no, but as proceeding from an heart freely and cheerfully performing this obedience to God, and relief of our brother, without compulsion of human law, &c. 2 *Cor. 9. 7.*

*Who are to give Almes?*

Whosoever hath this worlds good, (1 *Job*. 3. 17.) that is such a portion out of which by frugality something may be spared, though it be but two mites (*Lu*. 21. 2, 3.) And therefore not only rich men and householders are to give; 1 *Tim*. 6. 17. but also such as labour with their hands, (*Ep*. 4. 28.) out of their earnings; servants out of their wages; children out of their parents allowance; wives out of any portion they have in several without their husbands, or allowance from their husbands or out of the common stock they enjoy with their husbands: provided the husbands consent in whom the possession fundamentally remaineth be either expressed, or by silence, or not gainsaying implied: Finally, even they that live upon liberal almes, must spare something unto those that have little or no supply. 2. *Cor*. 8. 2, 24.

*May there not be some cases, wherein such as are accomptable to others may give without their knowledge, yea against their will?*

Yes; as appeareth in the wife and commendable example of *Abigail*, (1 *Sam*. 25. 3. &c.) to wit, when the life and whole estate of the giver or receiver, may be now or not at all, thus or not otherwise preserved. For extreme necessity dispenseth with the ordinary course of duty, both to God and man. *Matth*. 12. 7.

*Whereof must we give Alms?*

Of that good thing, (*Ne*. 8. 10.) that is wholesome and profitable to the receiver, which is justly our own, not another mans; unless in case of extremity before mentioned. For otherwise of goods evil gotten, or wrongfully detained, not almes, but restitution must be made, *Luke* 19. 8.

*How much must we give?*

We must sow liberally, that we may reap also liberally; 2 *Cor*. 9. 6. *Gal*. 6. 7. *Prov*. 11. 25. notwithstanding, in the quantity and proportion of almes, respect must be had;

1. To the ability of the giver (*Luke* 3. 11. 1 *Cor*. 16. 2.) who is not bound so to give, as utterly to impoverish himself, (2 *Cor*. 8. 13.) and to make himself of a giver a receiver; (*Acts* 20. 35.) that in a common and extream necessity of the Church, every one must be content to abate of his revenues that the rest may not perish; (2 *Cor*. 8. 1, 2, 9. *Luke* 12. 33.) and some whose hearts God shall move, may voluntarily and commendably sell all, and put it into the common stock: (*Acts* 4. 34, 35. with *Acts* 5. 4.) yea, it is unlawful so to give unto some one good use, as to disable our selves for the service of the common-wealth, Church, or Saints in general, or for the relief of our Family or kindred in special. 1 *Tim*. 5. 8.

2. To the condition of the receiver, that his necessity may be supplied; (2 *Cor*. 9. 12. *Job* 31. 17, 18. &c. *Jam*. 2. 15, 16.) not as to make him of a receiver a giver: for this is to give a patrimony, not an almes; and belongeth rather to Justice, binding men to provide for those of their own household, than to mercy.

*To whom must we give?*

To such as are in want; (*Mat*. 5. 42. *Ro*. 12. 10.) but with this difference; To whom in present extremity, we must preserve life in whomsoever, without inquiring who or what an one the party be. *Luke* 10. 33. with *John* 4. 9.

2. In cases admitting deliberation (*Pf*. 41. 1.) we must confine our almes to such as God hath made poor: (*Deu*. 15. 7, 11.) as Orphans, Aged, Sick, Blind, Lame, the trembling hand, (*Lev*. 25. 35.) &c. Wherein such gifts are most commendable, as extend unto perpetuity; as the erecting or endowing

most commendable, as extend unto perpetuity; as the erecting or endowing of Churches, (*Luk. 7. 5.*) Schools of good Learning, (*2 King. 6. 1. &c. 2 Chr. 34. 22.*) Hospitals, &c. But as for such as turn begging into an art or occupation, they are by order to be compelled to work for their maintenance: (*2 Thef. 3. 10, 11, 12.*) which is the best and greatest almes.

*What order must we observe in giving?*

What order  
must be obser-  
ved in giving.

We must begin with such, as are nearest to us in regard of *domestical*, (*1 Tim. 5. 8. Mat. 15. 5, 6.*) *civil*, (*Deut. 15. 7.*) or *Christian* (*Gal. 6. 10.*) neighbourhood, according as the laws of Nature. Nations and Religion direct us, unless other circumstances, as the extremity of want, or the dignity of the person to be relieved, (*1 Kings 17. 31.*) do dispence: and so proceed to such as are farther off, according as our ability can extend.

*What are the times, and places fittest for this duty?*

For *publick* almes the fittest *time* is, when we meet together for the solemn worship of God; (*1 Cor. 16. 2.*) Likewise the fittest *place* where provision is made for publick collections. (*Luk. 21. 1.*) For *private*, when, and wherefoever the necessity of our poor brother offereth it self unto us. (*Job. 31. 16. Prov. 3. 28.*)

*With what affection must we do almes deeds?*

With what af-  
fection almes  
must be given.

1. With pity and compassion on our needy brother. (*Psal. 112. 4.*)
2. With humility, and secrecy, not seeking praise from men, but approving our selves to God. (*Mat. 6. 1. &c.*)
3. With cheerfulness; (*Rom. 12. 8.*) because God loveth a cheerful giver. (*2 Cor. 9. 7.*)
4. With simplicity, (*Rom. 12. 8.*) not respecting our selves, but the glory of God, and the good of our fellow members. (*2 Cor. 8. 4, 5.*)

*How many ways may almes-deeds be performed?*

For only by giving; but also,

First, by *lending*, (*Deut. 15. 8. Mat. 5. 42.*) to such as are not able to lend to us again, (*Luke 6. 34. Psal. 37. 26.* (some being no less relieved by lending, than others by gift:) provided we take nothing for the loan, (*Exo. 22. 25.*) yea, in some cases either remit part of the loan; (*Neh. 5. 12.*) or commit it into the hands of our poor brother without assurance to receive from him the principal again. (*Luk. 6. 35.*)

Secondly, by *selling*, when we do not only bring forth the commodity, as of corn, &c. which others keep in. (*Prov. 11. 26.*) but also in a merciful commiseration of our poor brother abate somewhat of the extrem price.

Thirdly, by *forbearing* whatsoever is our right in case of great necessity. (*Nehem. 5. 18.*)

*What fruit may we expect out of this duty?*

The fruits of  
Almes-deeds.

- Not thereby to merit at the hands of God: (*1 Chro. 29. 14.*) but yet,
1. To make God our *Debtor*, (*Pro. 19. 17.*) according to his gracious promise; who also in Christ will *acknowledge* and *requite* it at the last day. (*Mat. 10. 42. & 25. 35. 2 Tim. 1. 18.*)
  2. To seal the truth of our Religion. (*Jam. 1. 27.*)
  3. To assure our salvation. (*Heb. 6. 9, 10. 1 Job. 3. 14. 1 Tim. 6. 19.*)
  4. To make amends to men, for former covetousness and cruelty. (*Dan. 4. 24, 25. Luk. 19. 8.*)
  5. To sanctifie our store (*Luk. 11. 41.*) and bring a blessing on our labours (*Deut. 15. 10.*) yea & upon our posterity after us. (*Pf. 11. 2. 2. & 37. 26. 2 Tim. 1. 16.*)

We



We have spoken at large of the participation of the grace of Christ, and the benefits of the Gospel: Now we are to come unto the means whereby God doth effect these things.

Shew therefore how, and in what manner, God doth offer and communicate the Covenant of grace unto mankind.

By Vocation, or Calling, (Rom. 8. 30. Heb. 3. 1.) when God, by the means of his Word and Spirit, acquainting men with his gracious purpose of salvation by Christ, inviteth them to come unto him; (Hos. 2. 14.) and revealing unto them his Covenant of grace, (Mat. 11. 27. & 16. 17. Joh. 14. 21. Psa. 25. 14.) bringeth them out of darkness to light. Act. 26. 18.

Is this calling of one sort only?

No, there is an external gathering common to all, together with some light of the Spirit, and certain fruits of the same, attained unto by some that are no heirs of the promise: for many are called with this outward and ineffectuall calling, who are not chosen. Isa. 48. 12. Mat. 22. 14.

And there is an internal and effectual calling, peculiar to those few that are elect, whereby unfeigned faith and true repentance is wrought in the heart of Gods chosen; and God become in Christ their Father, doth not only outwardly by his word invite, but inwardly also and powerfully by his Spirit allure and win their hearts to cleave to him inseparably unto salvation. Gen. 9. 27. Ps. 25. 14. & 65. 4. Joel. 2. 32. Acts 2. 39.

How do both these kinds of Callings differ?

Howsoever we are to judge charitably of all outwardly called, (1 Cor. 1. 2.) because who among them are also inwardly called is only known to God; (2 Tim. 2. 19.) yet doth this outward calling differ from the inward.

1. In that it is wrought only by outward means and common illumination, (Heb. 4. 2.) without the spirit of regeneration, (Iude verse 19.) or any portion of saving faith. Luk. 8. 13.

2. In that they are admitted only to an outward and temporary league of formal profession, (Act. 8. 13. Rom. 9. 4, 5.) not to that intire fellowship with Christ, required unto salvation. 1 John 2. 19. 1 Cor. 1. 8, 9.

What are the means which God hath appointed to call us by?

They are partly inward, and partly outward, 1 Thes. 5. 19, 20. Acts 10. 44. Means of Vocation.

What are the inward?

The spirit of God, which is given by the outward things. Gal. 3. 2, 3: 1 Tim. 1. 14.

What mean you by the spirit of God in this place?

That power of God which worketh in the hearts of men things which the natural discourse of reason is not able to attain unto.

Being incomprehensible, how may we come to some understanding and sense of it?

By the things whereunto it is compared.

1. To wind, Act. 2. to shew the marvellous power of it in operation.
2. To oyl, Heb. 1. 2. that is of a hot nature, that pierceth and suppleth.
3. To water, John 4. that cooleth, scowreth, and cleanseth.
4. To fire, Mat. 3. Acts 2. that severeth dross and good metal.

How is the operation of it?

Divers: as softning and hardning, enlightning, and darkning; which it worketh after a diverse manner, by the word, in the hearts of the elect and reprobate, according to the good pleasure of God's secret will only; and after

after that, according to the good pleasure of his revealed will. So, that the lawful use thereof is rewarded with a gracious increase of blessing; and the abuse punished with further hardness to condemnation.

*What then doth the spirit work in the wicked?*

Finding them heard, it hardeneth them more (by with-holding of grace) to their further condemnation.

*What doth the same spirit work in the Godly?*

Faith; whereby they take hold on Christ, with all his benefits. *Eph. 2. 8.*

*What are the outward things which God hath given to call us by?*

They are either common to the whole world, or proper to the Church.

*What are the things common to the whole world?*

God's works, not unprofitably given, although not sufficient to salvation.

*Is not the knowledge of the wisdom, power and goodness of God in the Creation and government of the Heaven and Earth, with the things that are in them, sufficient to make us wise to salvation?*

No. First It serveth rather to further condemnation, without the word: *Rom. 1. 19, 20, 21.* Secondly; as by, and with the word the due meditation and consideration of God's works is a good help to further us in religion, and in the graces of God's Spirit. *1 Cor. 1. 21, 22.*

Of the  
Church.

*Sith then God doth not reveal the Covenant of grace, nor afford sufficient means to salvation to the whole world, but only to the Church: explain here what you mean by the Church.*

We speak not here of that part of God's Church which is *triumphant* in glory: who being in perfect fruition, have no need of these outward means of communion with him: (*Rev. 21. 22, 23.*) but the subject here is the Church *militant*. And that we consider also, as *visible* in the parts of it; consisting of divers assemblies and companies of believers, making profession of the same common faith: howbeit many times, by force of persecution, the exercise of publick ordinances may for a time be suspended among them.

*But are none to be accounted members of this Church, but such as are true believers, and so inseparably united unto Christ their head?*

Truly and properly none other. (*1 John 2. 19.*) Howbeit, because God doth use outward means with the inward, for the gathering of his Saints; and calleth them as well to outward profession among themselves, (*Affs. 2. 42. Cant. 1. 7.*) as to inward fellowship with his Son, whereby the Church becomes visible: hence it is, that so many as partake of the outward means, and joyne with the Church in league of visible profession, are therefore in human judgment accounted members of the true Church, and Saints by calling, (*1 Cor. 1. 1.*) until the Lord (who only knoweth who are his) do make known the contrary. As we are taught in the Parable of the Tares, *Matth. 13. 24, 47, &c.* and of the draw-net, and the threshing floor, where lyeth both good corn and chaff; *Matth. 3.*

*Hath Christ then his Church visible upon earth?*

Yea, throughout the world, in the particular congregations of Christians, (*Rom. 3. 3.*) called to the profession of the true faith and obedience of the Gospel. In which visible assemblies, and not else where, the true members of the true Church invisible, on earth, are to be sought (*Rom. 11. 5.*) and unto which therefore all that seek for salvation must gladly joyne themselves. *Esa. 60. 4.*

*Doth the visible Church consist of good and bad, or of good only?*

It consisteth of good and bad : as at the beginning we may see it did in Cain and Abel. Whereupon our Saviour compareth the Church to a net, in which are fishes good and bad ; and to a field, which in it hath wheat and cockle. *Matth.* 13. 24, 47, &c.

The marks of a true visible Church

*What are the marks and infallible notes whereby to discern a true visible Church, with which we may safely joyn ?*

First and principally, the truth of Doctrin which is professed and the sincere preaching of the Word ; together with the due administration of the Sacraments, according to the Commandment of Christ our Saviour, *Mat.* 28.

Secondarily, the right order which is kept ; with a sincere and conscionable obedience yielded to the word of God.

*Why do you make the first to be the principal mark of visible profession ?*

Because they are the only outward means, appointed by God for the calling and gathering of the Saints ; and which prove the Church to be a Pillar of truth. *Tim.* 3. 15.

*Can the Church want these, and yet be a Church ?*

Ye ; it may want them in the time of war or persecution : and in such a time we may safely joyn our selves to a company which allows of the publick ministry of the word of God and administration of the Sacraments, howsoever the exercise of the same by reason of those garboiles be wanting for a time.

*Are we to joyn with all Churches, that have these marks ?*

Ye : neither must we separate from any, farther then they separate from Christ, *Phil.* 1. 18. *Cant.* 1. 5. as shall be shewed.

*What say you to the other notes that are commonly given of the Church ?*

Either they are accidental, and in great part separable ; or utterly impertinent, and forged for the upholding of the Romish Synagogue.

*But is not Antiquity a certain note of the Church ?*

No : for errors are very ancient ; and the Church when it began, was a Church, yet had no antiquity.

*Is not Multitude a note ?*

No : for Christ's flock is a little flock ; (*Luk.* 12. 32.) and Antichrist's, very great. *Apoc.* 13. 3, 4, 8. & 18. 3.

*Are not Miracles a mark of the Church ?*

No : for beside that wicked people may work them, (*Mat.* 7. 22, 23.) the Church of Christ hath been without miracles ; and the coming of Antichrist is foretold to be with all power, and signs, and lying wonders : (*2 Thef.* 2. 9. *Apo.* 13. 13, 14.) such as those are whereof the Papists brag and boast, which are indeed no true miracles

*May the Church err, and be corrupted, or fall, and become no Church ?*

First, we must distinguish of errors. Some are fundamental, such as raze the foundation of the Church (as the denying that Christ came in the flesh, or the denying of the resurrection :) and in these the Church cannot err. Others are of less moment ; and in these it may err.

Secondly, the Catholick Church considered in her true members, can never utterly fall : (*Matth.* 16. 18. *Phil.* 1. 6. 1 *Thef.* 5. 24.) howsoever no Congregation be so pure, that it may be said at any time to be free from all corruption, (*Cant.* 1. 4, 5.) or so constant, but that, at times it may be shiken in the very foundation of truth ; as may appear by the Churches of *Corinth*, *Galatia*, &c. *1 Cor.* 15. 12, 13, 33. *Gal.* 3. 1. &c.

Thirdly,

Thirdly, the Church being considered with respect to the place; God doth not always continue a succession of true believers within the same limits and borders: and hence we say, that divers Churches are fallen, as those of *Asia, &c.* Neither is any place so privileged, but that for sin the Candlestick may in time be thence removed. *Rev. 2. 5.*

*How may we judge of a Church corrupt, or ceasing to be a Church?*

Where God utterly taking away the means of his Word and Worship, (*Act. 13. 46.*) hath apparently given the bill of divorce, (*Ef. 50. 1.*) there are we not to acknowledge any Church at all: as at this day in *Jerusalem*, once the holy City. But where these means are yet continued, we are to acknowledge a Church of Christ, (*Rev. 2. 12, 13.*) howsoever more or less corrupt, according to the greater or less abuse of God's Word and Worship.

In what cases we may separate from a corrupt Church.

*Since Churches may be so diversly corrupted; from which, and how far are we to separate?*

From Churches mortally sick of heresie (*Tir. 3. 10, 11.*) or Idolatry as it were a contagious plague or leprosie, we are to separate: (*Rev. 18. 4.*) howbeit, whiles there is yet any life, rather from the scab or sore, then from the body; that is, from the prevailing faction, maintaining fundamental errors, and forcing to Idolatrous worship. Such is our separation from the present Church of *Rome*, not from such therein, who either meaning well in general, are ignorant of the depth of Satan. (*Rev. 2. 24.*) or secretly dissent from these damnable corruptions; (*1 Kin. 19. 18.*) with whom, as a body yet retaining life, we desire to joyn, (*Phil. 1. 18.*) so far, as we may with safety from the foresaid contagion.

*Are we to continue fellowship with all other Churches, not so deadly and dangerously corrupt?*

From Churches holding the foundation, in substance of faith and worship, though otherwise not free from blemish, we are not to separate (*1 Kin. 15. 14. & 22. 43.*) farther then in dislike and refusal of that wherein they do apparently separate from Christ, in respect either of manners, doctrine, or form of publick worship.

*What are the enemies of the Church?*

Of the enemies of the Church.

Besides these spiritual wickednesses, which fight against our souls; there are outward enemies also, that visibly oppose the Church of Christ.

*How doth Christ defend his Church against those enemies?*

This is partly to be done by the Civil Magistrate, to whom it belongeth by civil means to maintain the Church in that truth and liberty, which Christ hath given unto it: and partly by the breath of Christ's own mouth in the preaching of the Gospel; yet not perfectly, but by the brightness of his coming in the latter day.

*What is the estate of the Church, when these enemies do prevail?*

The Church is often oppressed and darkened so by them, that it doth partly degenerate, and is partly hid; but never wholly destroyed, nor altogether invisible.

*Is not the Church always visible in her parts?*

The persons are always visible. For Christ hath, and ever had from the beginning, his Church visible upon earth, (*Rom. 11. 1, 2, 3, 4.*) that is, some companies of Believers making profession of the same common faith. Yet the persecution may be such, that the visible Church may not appear thoroughly for a time: the professors being forced thereby to hide themselves from

from the eye of the world, (*Rev.* 12. 14.) and happily by the rage of the enemy so scattered, that (as in the days of *Elias*, *1 Kin.* 19. 10, 14, 18.) they can hardly be known or have intercourse between themselves: And hence it is that the Church is compared to the Moon, sometimes in the full, and sometimes in the wane.

*What distinction is there of the numbers of the visible Church?*

Generally, they are all the *family of Christ*. (*Eph.* 3. 15.) which as sheep of his flock, are to hear his voice and follow him: (*Joh.* 10. 2, 3, 4) but more specially out of these Christ the chief Prince and Shepherd, hath instituted some to be above, some to be under; ordaining some to have pre-eminence and government, others to be governed and guided by them. *Heb.* 13. 17.

*Whom hath Christ appointed to be governours and guides unto the rest?*

1. Church officers and ministers, appointed to teach and govern the flock of Christ, and to feed it with the wholesome food of the Word and Sacraments. *1 Cor.* 12. 18. *1 Tim.* 5. 17. *Joh.* 21. 15. *1 Pet.* 5. 2.

2. Princes and Civil Magistrates, whom Christ hath charged to see to the ways of his household, (and so to rule and order it outwardly) that all, both Ministers and People, do their office and duty, even in *things concerning God*. *Psal.* 78. 71, 72. *2 Chron.* 35. 2, &c. & 34. 32, 33.

*What are the parts of the Ministry, committed to the officers of the Church?*

The Word: (*Rom.* 10. 17. *Joh.* 5. 25. & 6. 68.) and the dependents thereof, viz. Sacraments, (*1 Cor.* 10. 1, 2, 3, 4.) and Censures. *Matth.* 18. 15. *1 Cor.* 5.

*What is the Word?*

That part of the outward Ministry which consisteth in the delivery of Doctrine. (*2 Chron.* 17. 9. *Act.* 2. 40, 41. & 11. 20. *1 Cor.* 4. 15.) And this is the ordinary instrument which God useth in begetting of faith. *Joh.* 17. 20. *Rom.* 10. 17. *Eph.* 1. 13.

*What order is there used in the delivery of the Word, for the begetting of Faith?*

First, the Covenant of the Law is urged, to make sin and the punishment thereof known: whereupon the sting of conscience pricketh the heart with a sense of God's wrath, and maketh a man utterly to despair of any ability in himself to obtain everlasting life. After this preparation, the promises of the Gospel are propounded: whereupon the sinner, conceiving hope of pardon, cometh to God for mercy; and particularly applieth to his own soul those comfortable promises which in the word are propounded.

*What is the inward means for the begetting of Faith?*

The holy Spirit of God.

*Is it not lawful to separate the inward means from the outward?*

In no case: for those things which God hath joyned together no man may separate. *Matth.* 19. 6.

*How doth it appear, that God hath joyned both these means together?*

Because he saith by the Prophet, *Esa.* 59. 21. that this is the Covenant that he will make with his people; to put his Spirit and Word in them, and in all the posterity of the Church. The Apostle in like manner, *1 Thes.* 5. 19; 20. joyneeth these two together: *Quench not the Spirit, and Despise not prophesying.*

*It would seem by these words of the Apostle, that the spirit of Adoption and Sanctification, proper to the faithful, may be lost; whilst he exhorteth that we should not quench the Spirit.*

*Rom.* 3. 19, &  
7, 9, 10.  
*Gal.* 3. 22, 23.  
*Acts.* 2. 37.  
*Mat.* 15. 24.  
*Gal.* 2. 19, 20.  
*Heb.* 4. 16.  
*Hosea.* 14. 2, 3.  
*Rom.* 8. 15, 16.

By no means: but as God doth assure the faithful of their continuance in him, so he doth declare by these exhortations, that the only means whereby we should nourish this holy fire in us, is to take heed unto the preaching of the Word.

*Is by the word prophesying only meant the preaching of the Word?*

No: but by a figurative speech, all those outward means whereby God useth to give his holy Spirit, as are the Sacraments and the discipline of the Church; over and above the preaching of the Word, which being principal of all, is here set down for the rest.

*Why doth the Apostle set the Spirit before the preaching of the Word, meant by Prophecie: considering that by and after preaching of the Word the Lord giveth his Spirit?*

1. Because the Spirit is the chief of the two: the Word being but the instrument whereby the Spirit of God worketh.
2. For that the work of the Spirit is more general, and reacheth to some to whom the preaching of the Word cannot reach.
3. For that the Word is never profitable without the Spirit: but the Spirit may be profitable without the Word, as after will appear.

*What do you learn of this, that the means of God's Spirit and Word are usually conjoyued together?*

That no man is to content himself with this phantasie, to think that he hath the Spirit, and so to neglect the Word: because they go together.

*Who are by this condemned?*

The Anabaptists, Papists and Libertines, which ascribe to the spirit that which they like, although wickedly: seeing the Spirit doth not ordinarily suggest any thing to us, but that which it teacheth us out of the Word. *Job. 14. 26.*

*What other sort of men are here condemned;*

The Stancarists, who esteem the Word to be fit to chatechise, and to initiate or enter us in the Rudiments of Religion; but too base to exercise our selves continually in it: whereas the Prophets and Apo<sup>le</sup>, most excellent men did notwithstanding exercise themselves in the Scriptures. *Mar. 4. 1, 2, &c. compared with Ihu. 2. 1, 2, &c. 2 Pet. 3. 15, 16.*

*Are none saved without hearing of the Word?*

Yes. For first, children which are within the Covenant, have the Spirit of God, without the ordinary means of the Word and Sacraments, *Mat. 2. Ko. 8. 9, 14.* Secondly, some also of age in places where these means are not to be had. Thirdly, some also which live in places where such means are, yet have not capacity to understand them; as some natural fools, mad men, or deaf born, to shew that God is not tyed to means.

*What must we here take heed of?*

That we presume not upon this, sith that notwithstanding this secret working of God, yet it is as impossible to come to heaven, if having the means and capacity of receiving them, we contemn the means; as it is impossible to have a harvest, where no seed time hath gone before; (*Mat. 13.*) or to have children without the Parents seed: (*1 Pet. 1. 23.*) seeing amongst such the Spirit of God works faith onely by the preaching of the Word. Indeed where the Lord placeth not the preaching of the Word, there he can and doth work faith without it: but where he hath placed it, he will not do it without. In times and places where Popery hath prevailed, many were, (and may be so at this day in *Spain* and *Rome*) converted by the very bare

bare reading of the Word, yea without the reading of the Word: but not so among them who have or may have it, either by going from home to it, or fetching it home to them.

*How is the divers working of God's Spirit, by the Ministry of the Word, set out unto us?*

By the parable of the seed, three parts whereof fell into barren and unprofitable ground, one into good and fruitful. *Mat. 13. 3, 9, 18, 19, 24.*

*Are not three parts of the four in the Church likely to be condemned by this Parable?*

No, in no case. For it is both curious, and uncomfortable doctrine: it being a far different thing to have three sorts of wicked men in four sorts and to have thrice as many of one sort.

*What is the first thing you observe here common to the Godly with the wicked?*

To understand something of the word of grace; and to give consent unto the same.

*If they understand it, how is it that the first sort of unfruitful bearers are said not to understand?* *Mat. 13. 19.*

They have some understanding, but it is said to be none, because it is no clear knowledge, (whereof they can give a reason out of the Word) nor effectual. Which ariseth from hence; for that they come without affection, and go away without care.

*What are we here to learn?*

1. To take heed not to deceive our selves in a bare profession or light knowledge of the Word; and that we come to hear it with zeal, and depart with care to profit.

2. To beware of the great subtilty of Satan, who as a swift bird, snatcheth the Word out of unprepared hearts; even as also doth a thief, which taketh away whatsoever he findeth loofe.

*What observe you in the second sort, common to the Godly with the wicked?*

To have some kind of delight in the Word, and a glimpse of the life to come. *Mat. 13. 20. Heb. 6. 5.*

*What difference is there between a godly joy and this?*

1. This is like the blaze of the fire, and is never full and sufficient: whereas the Godly joy is above that in gold and silver.

2. The wickeds delight is for another purpose, than is the Godlyes. For it is onely to satisfie a humour desirous to know something more than others: whereas the Godlyes joy is to know further, to the end they may practise.

*Why is it said they have no root?* *Mat. 13. 21.*

Because, though they understand the things, yet are they not grounded upon the reasons and testimonies of the Word, nor transformed into the obedience of the Gospel: and therefore when persecution cometh, they wither away.

*Proceed to the third sort.*

They are they which keep it, (it may be with some suffering of persecution:) yet the thorns of covetousness, or of worldly delights, overgrow the good seed, and make it unfruitful.

*So much of the three sorts of unfruitful soyl, and therein of the things common to the godly with the wicked. What are the things proper to the godly; signified by the good and fruitful ground?*

Things proper to Godly hearers.

1. The receiving of the seed in a good heart.
2. The bringing forth of fruit with patience. *Luk. 8. 15.*

*What is there meant by receiving the seed into a good heart?*

By the seed, is meant, the word of promise; whereby God hath said he will be merciful to us in Christ. By receiving it into a good heart, is meant, the receiving it by faith in Christ.

*Where it is said, that the Word must be received into a good heart; it may seem that a man hath a good heart before he receiveth that seed?*

Doubtless naturally they are all alike, and there is never a barrel better herring (as they say :) but as the face answereth the face in the glass; so one of the sons of Adam is like another in their nativity they have by their parents, till they be regenerated. And therefore it is called a good heart, in respect of God's changing of it by the ingrafted word. (*Ja. 1. 21.*) And by these words he putteth difference between the fruits of the three former, and the fruits of this last: for that there is no difference in the outward shew of fruits but only in regard that those fruits proceed from an unclean heart, and those from a heart that is cleansed.

*How may we know that we have true faith; and so approve our selves that we are good ground?*

By good fruits, which are the effects of faith.

*What are the effects of faith?*

Reconciliation, and Sanctification. (*Rom. 8. 1, 2, 3. Eph. 2. 6. Col. 2. 1, 2, 3;*) The fruits of the former are set down, *Rom. 5. 1, 2, 3, 4.* The fruits of the latter, are Repentance and new Obedience: which have been already declared.

*What special tokens observe you out of the former whereby we may discern a justifying faith from the faith of worldlings?*

The end of our faith being the salvation of our souls, which shall be at the day of judgment, if we can willingly forsake father and mother, sister and brother, wife and children, and abandon the world, and say; *Come Lord Jesus, come quickly:* we may assure our selves we are in a happy case.

*What special marks of a justifying faith observe you out of the latter?*

1. To be zealous of God's glory.
2. To love God's children. For these be the special effects of our holy Faith.

*What is the Word rather compared with, and likened unto?*

The Apostle Peter, *1. c. p. 2. v. 1, 2.* compares it unto milk: *As new born babes desire the sincere milk of the word, that you may grow thereby.* Teaching us, that the word is not only of use for our begetting unto God; but for our daily nourishment, that we may grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ. *2. Pet. 3. 18.* So it is called a light, a lantern; and is appointed to be our guide, our Counsellor, our Comforter, &c.

*Is this meant only of the word preached?*

Doubtless, the blessing of God doth in an especial manner wait upon that ordinance. Whence it is said, that when Christ ascended up on high, he gave gifts to men, some Apostles, and some Pastors and teachers, for the gathering of the Saints, for the edifying of the body of Christ, (*Ep. 4. 12.*) yet withal, the reading of the Word with prayer and diligence, is of singular use and benefit, and commended unto us by our Saviour, *Search the Scriptures?* *Joh. 5. 39.* and *how readest thou?* *Luk. 10. 26.* and by the example of the Bereans, who searched the Scriptures daily, and examined the things they heard in the publick ministry of them. *Acts 17. 11.*

How justifying faith differeth from the faith of worldlings.



*So much of the Word.*

*What are the dependants annexed to it?*

Sacraments, (1 Cor. 10. 3, 4.) and Censures: (Matth. 18. 15. 1 Cor. 5.) the one, sealing the promises; the other, the threatenings of the Gospel.

*What are Sacraments?*

Seals of the promise of God in Christ: wherein by certain outward signs, (and sacramental actions concerning the same) commanded by God, and delivered by his minister, Christ Jesus with all his saving graces is signified, conveyed, and sealed unto the heart of a Christian. For Sacraments are seals annexed by God to the word of the Covenant of grace; (Rom. 4. 11. 1 Cor. 11. 23.) to instruct, assure, and possess us of our part in Christ and his benefits, (Gal. 3. 27.) and to bind us to all thankful obedience unto God in him Rom. 6. 4.

Of the Sacraments.

*Was not God's Word sufficient? What need have we of Sacraments?*

This argues our infirmity, and manifesteth God's great love and mercy: who for the furthering of our understanding hath added visible signs to his Word, that our ear might not only be informed of the truth, but our eyes also might more plainly see it; and for the greater strengthening of our faith, vouchsafe to confirm the covenant of grace unto us not only by promise, but also by outward seals annexed thereunto. The like means had Adam himself in Paradise, to put him in remembrance of God's will. And if he in perfection needed a token of God's favour, (which was the tree of life,) how much more we that are corrupt and sinful? If we were Spirits or Angels, we should not need these helps: but since God knowing our frailties and what is best for us, hath given us these seals to our further comfort, let us use the receipt of so skilful a Physician, unless we will hasten our own deaths.

The Sacraments of great use.

*How doth God by the Sacraments assure us of his mercies in Christ?*

By exhibiting to the worthy receiver, by such outward signs, (whether Elements, or Actions) as himself for the relief of our weakness hath prescribed, whole Christ, God and man, with all his benefits; (1 Cor. 10. 4.) in whom all the promises of God are yea and Amen. 2. Cor. 1. 20.

*Do they seal nothing else but the promise of God unto us?*

Yes: they seal our promise unto God, that we take him only for our God and Redeemer; whom alone by faith we rest on, and whom we will obey.

*How do they bind us unto God?*

We receiving them as pledges of his infinite love in Christ, do thereby profess our selves bound to express our thankfulness, by all duties to his Majesty; (Col. 2. 6, 7.) and for his sake one to another. Eph. 4. 3, 4, 5.

*Describe yet more largely what a Sacrament is?*

A Sacrament is an ordinance of God, wherein by giving and receiving of outward elements, according to his will, the promises of the Covenant of grace, made in the blood of Christ, being represented, exhibited and applied unto us, are further signified and sealed betwixt God and man. Or, It is an action of the whole Church, wherein by certain visible signs and outward things done according to God's instruction, inward things being betokened, Christ with all his benefits is both offered unto us, and received by us: offered (I say) to all in the Church, but exhibited only to the faithful, for the strengthening of their faith in the eternal Covenant, and the bringing

What a Sacrament is.

bringing them more effectually to the practice of God's Commandments. Ex. 12. 6. Luk. 1. 59. & 3. 3, 16. 1 Cor. 11. 23. Mat. 26. 26. Rom. 4. 11. & 6. 4. 1 Pet. 3. 21.

*Why call you it an action?*

Because it is not a bare sign alone, but a work. 1 Cor. 11. 24, 25.

*Why call you it an action of the whole Church?*

Because it is a publick action, and appertaineth to the whole Church: and therefore ought to be done in the presence of the congregation, by the example of *John*, (Matth. 3. 11, 12.) and commended of *Paul*, 1 Cor. 11. 18, 20, 22. it being a greater indignity for the Sacraments to be administered privately, than for the civil judgement, which is open and publick; that we say nothing of the Sacrifices under the Law, which were not so excellent as these; and yet it was not lawful to offer them in private. Which reproveth the disorder of the Papists, who turn the Communion into a private Mass, and minister the Lord's Supper to one alone without the presence of the Congregation.

*But may not the Sacraments be so administered upon necessity; as namely to a sick man ready to depart out of this life?*

There is no such necessity. For a man believing, wanting that opportunity of coming to the Lord's Supper, wanteth not the effect thereof: seeing the Lord promised by *Ezekiel*, that he would be a *Tabernacle* to his people, being banished from it. (Eze. 37. 27.) And therefore the want of the Sacraments doth not hurt, when with conveniency a man cannot enjoy them; but the contempt or neglect of them, when they may conveniently be come unto.

*What then is the fittest time and place for the administration of the Sacraments?*

The fittest time, is the Lord's day or some other day of publick meeting: The most convenient place is the Church and usual place of the assembly of the Congregation.

*Did not Abraham minister the Sacrament of Circumcision in his private house?*

His house was at that time the Church of God, and therefore not private. And so in the time of persecution, the Godly did oft-times meet in Barns and such obscure places; which were indeed publick, because of the Church of God there: the house or place availing nothing to make it publick or private. Even as wheresoever the Prince is, there is the Court also said to be although it were in a poor Cottage.

*What difference is there between a Sacrament and a Sacrifice?*

In a Sacrifice, there is an offering made to God; in a Sacrament there is an offer made by God to us. In the Sacrifices Christ was signified as given for us, in the Sacraments as given to us: the Sacrifices were only signs, the Sacraments seals also.

*Who is the author of a Sacrament?*

God alone; because he only can bestow those graces which are sealed in a Sacrament.

*How doth God ordain a Sacrament?*

By his Word.

*How many parts of God's Word are there, whereby he doth institute and ordain a Sacrament?*

First, a commandment to do it.

Secondly a promise of a blessing upon the right using of it.

*Was not the Rainbow a Sacrament, being a sign ordained by God?*

No. For though it were a sign, yet it was no sign of salvation by Christ.

*What is the matter and substance of every Sacrament?*

One and the same Jesus Christ although diversly communicated in divers Sacraments, and in some more forcibly than in others; because of some Elements communication with or taking hold of, or reaching to more of our senses.

*What things then are required in a Sacrament?*

Three.

First, the outward signs; and sacramental actions concerning the same.

Secondly, the inward things signified thereby: viz. Christ Jesus, with his saving graces and spiritual actions concerning the same.

Thirdly, a similitude betwixt them both. As in Baptism for example; that as water doth wash the body, so doth the blood of Christ wash away the spots of the soul.

*What signs are used in Sacraments;*

Some only representing, as water, bread and wine: some applying; as washing, eating, drinking, and such like.

*What are the things signified?*

First, Christ Jesus and his merits: and secondly, the applying of the same unto us in particular.

*Wherein do the signs and the things signified differ?*

1. In Nature.
2. In the manner of receiving.
3. In the parts which do receive them.
4. In the necessity of the receiving of them.

*Wherein do they agree?*

In this, that the sign doth so fitly represent the things signified thereby, that the mind of a Christian is drawn by the sign to consider of the things signified.

*What then is the Sacramental union, betwixt the signs and the things signified?*

Such as betwixt a sealed will, and the things conveyed in the same. From whence it is, that the names, effects, and properties of the one are given to the other.

*What is the cause that moved the Lord to grace the outward signs in the Sacraments, with the names of the things signified?*

The outward elements have the names of the spiritual things they set forth: 1. because of their fit proportion and agreement, in regard of the resemblance and similitude of the elements and the things signified; in which respect they are called *Signs*. 2. To shew the inseparable conjunction of the things signified with the sign, in the worthy receiver; in which regard they are called *Seals*: as in the person of Christ his two natures are so inseparably united, that often times the properties and effects of the one are attributed to the other.

*What is the ground of this sacramental union?*

In general, the institution of Christ, whereby fit things are appointed so

to

to be used, with a promise annexed. In special, the applying of that word unto certain special signs with prayer. In particular and unto me the ground is, my reverent and worthy receiving.

*What is the use of Sacraments?*

God hath ordained them, to the end that by comparing and conferring the outward things with the inward, they might help,

1. Our understanding; in which regard they are as it were Images and glasses. *Gal. 3. 1.*

2. Our remembrance; in which respect they are monuments. *Luk. 22. 19. 1 Cor. 11. 24.*

3. And specially, the persuasions of our hearts; by reason whereof they are seals and pledges. *Rom. 4. 11.* For they are appointed by God to strengthen us in the promises of salvation, which God hath not only made to us in word, but also confirmed the same by writ: and lest that we should any ways doubt (as naturally we are inclined) he hath set to his seals, according to the manner of men; that nothing might be lacking which should increase our strength.

*What doctrine is here to be gathered?*

1. What root of blindness, of forgetfulness, and especially hardness of heart to believe, is in us; that the Word and Oath of God is not sufficient to pluck up, but that we must have such aids.

2. The mercy of God, that applieth himself to our weakness.

3. What miserable men they are that refuse the Sacraments.

*Repeat the principal ends, for which God hath instituted the Sacraments?*

To help our insight as clear glasses; to relieve our memories as lasting monuments; and to confirm our faith, as most certain seals and pledges: from whence they become our bonds of obedience, and the marks and badges of our profession. So the ends for which they are appointed are these four.

1. The clearing of our knowledge.

2. The helping of our memories.

3. The strengthening of our faith.

4. The quickning of our obedience.

*How may we more clearly consider of those things which are ministered in the Sacraments?*

By considering distinctly, the things given and received, and the persons giving and receiving.

*What are the things given and received?*

They are partly outward, and partly inward.

*What are the outward?*

The visible creatures, ordained for signs and figures of Christ: as under the time of the Gospel, Water, Bread, and Wine.

*Why hath God made choice of these creatures?*

Both in respect they are for their natural properties most fit to represent the spiritual things: as also for that they are most generally used of all nations in the world.

*What are we to learn from hence?*

The wonderful wisdom of God, that hath chosen base and common things, for so high and singular mysteries: whereas he might have chosen things more rare and of greater price, to set out such excellent benefits as are offered to us in the Sacraments. Wherein there is great difference between the time of the Law and of the Gospel.

*What*

*What are the inward things?*

The invisible and spiritual: Graces namely, Christ, with all his benefits.

*What learn you of this?*

Not to stick to the outward elements, but to lift up our hearts unto God; accounting the elements as a ladder, whereby to climb up to those celestial things which they represent.

*So much of the things, what are the persons?*

The Giver, and the Receiver.

*How many Givers are there?*

Two: the outward, giving the outward; and the inward, giving the inward things.

The Persons that are actors in Sacraments and their actions.

*Who is the inward Giver?*

God himself: even the holy Trinity, God the Father, God the Son, and God the holy Ghost.

*What be the actions of God in a Sacrament?*

They are principally two:

1. To offer and teach forth Christ and his graces.
2. To apply them to the heart of the faithful communicant.

*Who are the outward givers?*

The Ministers especially, representing unto us the Lord, whose stewards they are. *Mat. 28. 19. 1 Cor. 4. 1.*

*What is the Ministers office herein?*

To consecrate the elements, and then to distribute them.

*Wherein consisteth the consecration of the elements?*

Partly in declaring the institution of the Sacraments, and partly in going before the Congregation in prayer unto God. First in praising God, who hath ordained such means for the relief of our weakness: then in suing to God, that he would please to make those means effectual to that end, for which they were ordained.

*Is not the substance of the elements changed by this consecration?*

No verily: only the use is altered in that they are separated from a common to a holy use: which change and alteration continueth only while the action is in hand.

*Doth the Minister with the signs give the thing signified also?*

No: he only dispenseth the signs: but it is God that giveth and dispenseth the things signified. *Matth. 3. 11.*

*Is God always present to give the thing signified to all them that the Minister giveth the sign?*

No, not to all: for some in receiving the signs, receive together with them their own judgment. (*1 Cor. 11. 29*) Yet he is always ready to give the thing signified to all those that are fit to receive the Sacraments: and to such persons the signs and things signified are always conjoynd.

*Who are the persons that are to receive the Sacraments?*

All Christians that are prepared thereunto.

*Is there any special preparation required to the receiving of the Sacraments?*

Yes verily: for seeing men ought to come with preparation to the hearing of the Word alone; they ought much more to come when the Sacraments are administered also, wherein God doth offer himself more familiarly and visibly to us. *Exod. 3. 5. 1 Cor. 11. 28.*

*What is the preparation that is required in them that come to receive the Sacraments?*

Of preparation  
to the Sacra-  
ments.

There is required in those that are of years of discretion, to a worthy participation of the Sacraments, knowledge, faith, and feeling, both in the Law, and in the Gospel.

*Seeing no man is able to attain the knowledge of the Law and the Gospel perfectly, much less the simple and common people: tell me, how far is this knowledge, faith and feeling, necessary?*

First, concerning the Law, it is necessary that the receiver of the Sacrament be able to understand and believe the common corruption of all men, both in the bitter root of original sin, and in the poisoned fruits thereof, together with the curse of everlasting death due thereunto; and that he be able to apply both these, that is, the sin and wages thereof, to himself.

Secondly, concerning the Gospel, that he be able (in some measure) to understand the Covenant of grace, which God in Christ hath made with the sons of men; and then that by faith he be able (in some measure) to apply the same to himself.

*What ariseth from this knowledge, faith, and feeling, to a further preparation thereunto?*

A true and earnest desire to be made partaker of the Sacraments; with a conscionable care to perform special duties, in and after the action of receiving. *Matth. 3. 13. Act. 8. 36. Luk. 22. 15.*

*What duties in the action of receiving are to be performed?*

First, a grave and reverent behaviour, besitting such holy mysteries.

Secondly, an attentive heedfulness in comparing the outward signs and actions in the Sacraments, with the inward and spiritual things which they betoken.

*What duties are to be performed after the partaking of the Sacraments?*

If we have a sense and feeling of the gracious work of God by them, we are to rejoyce with thanksgiving; if not, we are to enter into judgment with our selves, and to humble, our selves for want therein. And though we ought to be humbled, if we feel not the work of God in us, in or after the Sacraments: as that which argueth want of preparation before, or attention in receiving of them; yet ought we not therefore to be altogether dismayed: for as the sick man feleth not the nourishment of his meat, because of his malady, and yet notwithstanding is nourished; so it is in such faithful ones, as do not sensibly feel the working of God in and by the Sacraments, through the weakness of their faith. And although we cannot feel it immediately, yet after (by the fruits thereof) we shall be able to discern of our profiting thereby.

*How many kinds of Sacraments be there?*

Two. The first of the *Admission* of God's children into the Church there to be partakers of an everlasting communion with Christ. The second of their *Preservation* and nourishment therein; to assure them of their continual increase in Christ. (*1 Cor. 10. 1, 2, 3, 4. Exod. 12. 48.*) In which respect the former is once onely; the latter often to be administered.

*Hath the administration of the Gospel been always after the same manner?*

For substance it always hath been the same: but in regard of the manner proper to certain times, it is distinguished into two kinds; the *Old* and the *New*. *Heb. 11. & 13. & 13. 8. Acts 10. 43. & 15. 11. & c. 26. 6, 7. Luke 16. 16. Job. 1. 17. Heb. 11. 2. & 8. 8, 9, 10, 13. & 9. 9, 10, 11. 2 Cor 3. 6, 7, 8.*

*What*

Duties in the  
action of re-  
ceiving.

Duties after  
receiving.

*What call you the old Ministry?*

That which was delivered unto the Fathers, to continue until the fullness of times; wherein by the coming of Christ it was to be reformed. *Heb.* 1. 1. & 9. 10. *Acts* 7. 44. 2 *Cor.* 3. 7, 11.

The Old Testament: and the Sacraments of it.

*What were the properties of this Ministry?*

First, the commandments of the Law were more largely, and the promises of Christ more sparingly and darkly propounded: these latter being so much the more generally and obscurely delivered, as the manifesting of them was further off. *Malach.* 4. 4, 5. *Jer.* 31. 32, 33. *Heb.* 11. 13. 2 *Cor.* 3. 13, 18.

Secondly, the promises of things to come were shadowed with a multitude of types and figures; which when the truth should be exhibited, were to vanish away. *Heb.* 8. 9, 13. & 9. 1, 8, 9, 10. 2 *Cor.* 3. 11, 13. *Gal.* 4. 3, 4. *Col.* 2. 16, 17.

*What were the chief States and Periods of this old Ministry?*

The first from *Adam* to *Abraham*; the second from *Abraham* to *Christ*.

*What were the special properties of the latter of these two Periods?*

First it was more specially restrained unto a certain Family and Nation. *Luke.* 1. 54, 55. *Psal.* 147. 19, 20. *Rom.* 9. 4. *Act.* 13. 17. *Deut.* 4. 1, 6, 7, 8. & 14. 2. & 26. 18, 19.

Secondly, it had joyued with it a solemn repetition and declaration of the first Covenant of the Law. *John* 1. 17. *Exod.* 24. 7, 8. *Deut.* 4. 12, 13. & 5. 2, 5. & 27. 26. *Rom.* 10. 5.

Thirdly, besides the ceremonies, (which were greatly enlarged under *Moses*) it had Sacraments also added unto it. *Heb.* 9. 1, 2, 3. *Acts* 7. 44, 45, 46, 47.

*What were the ordinary Sacraments of this ministry?*

The Sacrament of Admission into the Church was circumcision instituted in the days of *Abraham*: (*Gen.* 17. 9, 10. *John* 7. 22. *Exod.* 12. 48. *Deut.* 30. 6, 7, 8. *Act.* 7. 8. *Rom.* 2. 28, 29. & 4. 11. *Col.* 2. 11.) The other of continual Preservation and nourishment, was the Paschal Lamb, instituted in the time of *Moses*. *Exod.* 12. 3, 4. *Num.* 9. 11, 12. *Deut.* 16. 2. 1 *Cor.* 5. 7. 1 *Pet.* 1. 19. *John* 19. 36. with *Exod.* 12. 46.

*What is the new administration of the Gospel?*

That which was delivered unto us by *Christ*: which is to continue unto the end of the world. *Job.* 1. 17. *Heb.* 1. 2. & 2. 3, 4. & 3. 5, 6. & 12. 25, 26, 27, 28. 2 *Cor.* 3. 11.

The new administration of the Gospel.

*What are the properties thereof?*

First it is propounded differently to all people, whether they be Jews or Gentiles; and in that respect is Catholick or universal. *Esa.* 54. 1, 2, 3. & 60. 3, 4, 5. & 65. 1. & 66. 12, 19, 20. *Mat.* 18. 19, 20. *Rom.* 16. 25, 26. *Eph.* 3. 5, 6, 8, 9. *Col.* 1. 5, 6.

Secondly, it is full of grace and truth; bringing joyful tydings unto mankind that whatsoever was formerly promised of *Christ*, is now performed, and so instead of the ancient types and shadows, exhibiteth the things themselves; with a large and clear declaration of all the benefits of the Gospel. *Job.* 1. 17. & 17. 21, 25. *Rem.* 1. 1, 2, 3. 1 *Pet.* 1. 10, 11, 12. 1 *Cor.* 1. 23, 24. & 2. 9, 16. 2. *Cor.* 3. 11, 13, 14, 18.

*What be the principal points of the Word of his ministry?*

That *Christ* our Saviour (whom God by his prophets had promised to send into the world) is come in the flesh, and hath accomplished the work

of our Redemption. That he was conceived of the Holy Ghost, born of the Virgin *Mary*, suffered under *Pontius Pilate*, was crucified, and dyed upon the Cross. That the body and soul being thus separated, his *Body* was laid in the grave, and remained there under the power of death, and his *Soul* went into the place appointed for the souls of the righteous; namely, Paradise, the seat of the blessed. That the third day, body and soul being joyned together again, he rose from the dead, and afterwards ascended into Heaven; where he sitteth at the right hand of his Father, until such times as from thence he shall come unto the last Judgment. *Rom.* 1. 35. *Joh.* 1. 14, 15. & 19. 28, 30. *Heb.* 9. 12, 26, 28. 1 *Tim.* 3. 16. *Luke* 1. 35. *Matt.* 1. 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23. & 27. 2, 26. *verse ad.* 50. & 12. 40. & 27. 59, 60. *Rom.* 6. 9. *Luke* 23. 43, 46, 47. *Matth.* 16. 21. & 28. 19, 17. 1 *Cor.* 15. 4, 5, 6. 2 *Tim.* 2. 8. *Mar.* 16. 19. *Acts* 1. 2, 3, 9, 10, 11. *Ephes.* 4. 10. *Heb.* 1. 3. 2 *Tim.* 4. 1.

*How do the Sacraments of the new Testament differ from those of the Old?*

In respect, not of the *Author*, God; the *substance*, Christ; or the *receivers*, the people of God; which are in both the same: (*Rom.* 4. 11. 1 *Cor.* 10. 2, 3, 4.) But of *continuance*. (*Matth.* 28. 19, 20.) *evidence*, (1 *Cor.* 11. 26.) *easie performance*, and *efficacy*; in all which those of the new Testament have great preeminence; (2 *Cor.* 3. 9.)

*What Sacraments be there of the New Testament?*

The Sacraments of the New Testament, two w<sup>l</sup>.

Only two: to wit, *Baptism*, succeeding in the place of *Circumcision*; and the *Supper of the Lord*, answering to the *Passover*. (*Rom.* 4. 1. *Gen.* 17. 11, 12. 1 *Cor.* 10. 1, 2, 3. and 12. 13. *Matth.* 26. 26. and 28. 19.) By the former we have our *admission* into the true Church of God: by the latter we are nourished and *preserved* in the Church after our admission.

*How may it appear, that there be no more then two Sacraments of the New Testament?*

First, when the number of Sacraments were most necessary (as under the law) they had but two: whereof we need require no more. 1 *Cor.* 10. 1, 2, 3.

Secondly, having meat, drink and cloths, we ought therewith to be content. (1 *Tim.* 6. 8.) Now by the Sacrament of our entrance, our spiritual cloathing is sealed unto us: (*Gal.* 3. 27.) and by that of our growth is sealed our feeding. (1 *Cor.* 10. 16.)

Thirdly, these two seals assure us of all God's graces; as of our regeneration, entrance and ingrafting into Christ, so of our growth and continuance in him: and therefore we need no more. (1 *Cor.* 12. 13.) For there are as many Sacraments, as there be things that need to be betokened to us about our justification. Now they be two; our birth in Christ, and our nourishment after we are born: as in the bodily life we see that we need no more, but to be born, and then to have this life preserved. The Sacrament of Baptism sheweth us the first; the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper the second.

Therefore those five other Sacraments, of Confirmation, Penance, Matrimony, Orders and extreme Unction, joyned by the Papists, are superfluous. Because some of them have no warrant at all out of the Word of God, and God hath not promised a blessing upon the using of them; others of them, though they be agreeable to the Word, yet are without the nature and number of Sacraments.



*What is Baptism?*

It is the first Sacrament of the New Testament by the *washing of water* (*Eph.* 5. 26.) representing the powerful *washing of the blood and spirit of Christ*; (*1 Cor.* 6. 11. *Heb.* 10. 22.) and so sealing our *regeneration or new birth, our entrance into the Covenant of Grace, and our ingrafting into Christ, and into the body of Christ, which is his Church.* (*John* 3. 5. *Tir.* 3. 5. *Act.* 8. 27.) The word *Baptism* signifieth in general any *washing*: but here is specially taken for that sacramental washing which sealeth unto those that are within God's covenant, their birth in Christ and entrance into Christiani-ty.

Of Baptism and what it is.

*How was this Sacrament ordained and brought into the Church, in the place of Circumcision?*

At the Commandment of God, (*Joh* 1. 33.) by the Ministry of *John*, therefore called the *Baptist*: (*Matth.* 3. 1.) after sanctified and confirmed by our Saviour Christ himself, being baptized by *John*, (*Mar.* 3. 13.) and giving commission to his Apostles and Ministers, to continue the same in his Church unto the end. (*Mar.* 28. 18, 19.)

*Why call you it the first Sacrament?*

Because Christ gave order to his Apostles, that after they have taught, and men believe. they shall baptize them; that so they might be enroled amongst those of the household of God, and entred into the number of the Citizens and Burgeses of the heavenly *Jerusalem*.

*What abuse doth this take away?*

That which sometimes the ancient Church was infected withal: namely, that they baptized men at their deaths, and let them receive the Lord's Supper twice or thrice a year; whereas this is the first Sacrament of the Covenant.

*What are the essential parts of this Sacrament of Baptism?*

As of all other Sacraments, two: the outward signs, and the inward things signified. Where also is to be considered, the proportion and union which is between those two parts, which is as it were the very form and inward excellency of a Sacrament.

*What are the outward signs in Baptism?*

They are the outward elements of water, and the outward sacramental actions performed about it.

*What are those Sacramental actions?*

First, the Ministers blessing and consecrating the water. And secondly, the right applying it so consecrated, to the party to be baptized.

*May none but a lawful Minister baptize?*

No. For Baptism is a part of the publick Ministry of the Church, and Christ hath given warrant and authority to none to baptize, but those whom he hath called to preach the Gospel: *Go, Preach and Baptize.* *Mat.* 28. 19. those only may stand in the room of God himself, and ministerially set to the seal of the Covenant. And it is monstrous presumption for Women, or any other private persons, (who are not called) to meddle with such high Mysteries; nor can there be any case of necessity to urge, as will appear afterwards.

*Touching the first action of the Minister; how is he to bless and consecrate the water?*

First, by opening to them that are present the doctrine of Baptism, and the right institution and use of it; what inward mysteries are signified and sealed up by those outward signs. So did *John*, when he baptized: he preached

preached the doctrine of Repentance, and taught the people the inward baptism of the Spirit, signified by his baptizing with water. *Math. 3. 11.*

Secondly, by acknowledging in the name of the congregation mans natural pollution that we stand in need of spiritual washing; by giving thanks to God the Father for giving his Son for a propitiation for our sins, and appointing his blood to be a fountain to the house of *Israel*, to wash in; and for ordaining of this service to be a Sacrament and seal of so great a mystery.

Thirdly, by making profession of Faith in God's promises in that behalf, and praying that they may be made good unto the party that is to receive the seal thereof. For as every thing is sanctified by the Word of God and prayer: so in especial manner the Sacramental water in Baptism is blessed and consecrated by the Word of institution, and prayer to God for a blessing upon his own Ordinance.

*What is the second Sacramental action?*

The action of washing, that is, of applying the Sacramental water unto the party to be baptized; diving or dipping him into it, or sprinkling him with it, *In the name of the Father, the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.*

*Is the action of diving, or dipping, material and essential to the Sacrament? or is there absolute ground and warrant for sprinkling; which is most commonly practised with us in these cold Countries?*

Mat. 28. 19.

Whether diving or dipping be essential to Baptism.

Some there are that stand strictly for the particular action of diving or dipping, the baptized under water, as the only action which the institution of this Sacrament will bear; and our Church allows no other, except in case of the child's weakness, and there is exprest in our Saviour's baptism, both his descending into the water and rising up: so that some think our common sprinkling to be (through ease and tendernefs) a stretching the liberty of the Church further than either the Church would, or the symbolicalness of the outward sign with the thing signified can safely admit, it typifying our spiritual burial and resurrection. *Rom 6. 8.*

Others conceive the action of sprinkling of water upon the face of the baptized very warrantable; especially in young children, to whom further wetting may be dangerous, and the grounds are these.

First, it seems that neither dipping is essential to the Sacrament of Baptism, nor sprinkling; but only washing and applying water to the body, as a cleanser of the filth thereof.

Secondly, then as in the other Sacrament, a spoonful of wine is as significant as a whole Gallon; so here, a handful of water is as significant as a whole River.

Thirdly, the action of sprinkling bears fit resemblance with the inward as well as dipping and hath authority in the Scriptures. Read *1 Pet. 1. 2.* and *Heb. 12. 24.* Where is speech of the sprinkling of the blood of Christ, and *the blood of sprinkling speaking better things than the blood of Abel.*

Fourthly, it is not unlikely that the Apostles baptized as well by sprinkling or pouring upon, as by diving and dipping into; sith we read of divers baptized in houses, as well as others in rivers. However the washing the body by water is essential (*Ephes, 5. 26.*) though whether way it be done, seem not to be essential; so water be applied to the body for the cleansing of it.

*Thus much of the Sacramental element, and Sacramental actions, which are the outward part of Baptism.*

*What now is the inward part?*

Those spiritual things which are signified and represented, and exhibited in and by the outward element and actions. As the water signifies the blood of Christ, the Ministers consecrating the water signifies God the Father's setting apart his Son for the expiation of the sins of the world by his blood; the Ministers applying the water to the body of the baptized to cleanse it, signifieth God's applying the blood of his Son to cleanse the soul for justification and remission of sins: and not only to signify but to seal up unto the believer, that the inward part is effected as well as the outward.

The inward part or thing signified in Baptism.

*How come these visible things to signify such invisible mysteries?*

There is a natural fitness and aptness in the outward things to express the inward. As for water to be a resemblance of the blood of Christ; thus they agree.

The similitude between the sign and thing signified.

First, water is a necessary element; the natural life of man cannot be without it: and the blood of Christ is as necessary to his spiritual life.

Secondly, water is a comfortable element; as the *Hart panteth after the water brooks*. *Psal.* 42. 1. The thirst of the body cannot be quenched but by water: whence the height of misery is described by a *barren and dry ground where no water is*, *Psal.* 63. 1. So the thirst of the soul cannot be quenched but by the blood of Christ. *John* 4. 13, 14.

Thirdly, water is a free element: as it is necessary, useful, and comfortable, so it is cheap and easie to come by without cost. So is the blood of Christ. *Esa.* 55. 1 *Ho, he that thirsteth come and drink freely?*

Fourthly, water is a common element: none are barred from it, any may go to the river and drink. And the blood of Christ is offered as generally to all, rich and poor, high and low, bond and free; every one may lay claim unto him, come and have interest in him, *John* 1. 12. Whoever receiveth him, whoever believeth, the proposal is without restraint; none can say I am shut out or excepted.

Fifthly, water is a copious and plentiful element; there is no less in the River for thy drinking of it, there is enough for all men. So is the blood of Christ all-sufficient, it can never be drawn dry: of his fulness we may all receive, and yet he never the more empty. Hence the Scripture speaks of plentiful redemption.

Sixthly, lastly and especially, water is a cleansing and a purifying element: and it resembles the blood of Christ fitly in that; for *1 John* 1. 7. *The blood of Christ cleanseth us from all sin.*

And here we may also observe the symbolicalness between the Sacramental action of washing, and the inward grace signified.

First, nothing is washed but that which is unclean: even so the Sacramental washing implies our natural pollution: Whosoever submits to this Sacrament of Baptism, doth by so doing acknowledge himself to be defiled; whoever brings a child to be baptized, doth by so doing make confession of original corruption and sinfulness, as *John's* hearers were baptized of him in *Jordan* confessing their sins. *Mat.* 3. 6.

Secondly, as the applying of the water to the body washeth and cleanseth; so it is with the blood of Christ; it cleanseth not the soul, but by being applied to it, in the merit and efficacy of it, by the sanctifying Spirit; of which the outward ministerial washing is a sign and seal. *1 Cor.* 6.

11.

*What is there besides the natural fitness of the outward things to express the inward?*

There

There is also considerable God's divine institution, ordaining and appointing these things to typifie to the foul Christ crucified in his cleansing quality. For otherwise though there were never such aptness in the creature; yet it hath nothing to do to meddle with a Sacrament, unless the Lord do specially appropriate it to serve for such a purpose. And then with God's institution there goeth a blessing and a special virtue and power attends on a divine Ordinance. That which makes the outward signs significant, is God's Word and Appointment.

*But is Christ and the cleansing power of his blood only barely signified in the Sacrament of Baptism?*

Nay more: the inward things are really exhibited to the believer as well as the outward; there is that sacramental union between them, that the one is conveyed and sealed up by the other. Hence are those *parafes of being born again of water and of the Holy Ghost*, John 3. 5. of cleansing by the washing of water, *Ephes. 5. 26, &c. 10, Arise and be baptized, and wash away thy sins*, Acts 22. 16. *10 Rom. 6. 3. We are buried with Christ by Baptism, &c.* The Sacraments being rightly received, do effect that which they do represent.

*Are all they then that are partakers of the outward washing of Baptism, partakers also of the inward washing of the Spirit? Doth this Sacrament seal up their spiritual ingrafting into Christ to all who externally receive it?*

Surely no. Though God hath ordained these outward means for the conveyance of the inward grace to our souls; yet there is no necessity that we should tie the working of God's Spirit to the Sacraments more than to the Word. The promises of salvation, Christ and all his benefits are preached and offered to all in the Ministry of the Word: yet all hearers have not them conveyed to their souls by the Spirit; but those whom God hath ordained to life. So in the Sacraments, the outward elements are dispensed to all, who make an outward profession of the Gospel, (for in infants their being born in the bosome of the Church is instead of an outward profession) because man is not able to distinguish corn from chaff: but the inward grace of the Sacrament is not communicated to all, but to those only who are heirs of those promises whereof the Sacraments are seals. For without a man have his name in the Covenant the Seal set to it confirms nothing to him.

*What is the advantage then or benefit of Baptism to a common Christian?*

The same as was the benefit of Circumcision to the *Jew* outward, *Rom. 2. 28. Rom. 3. 1, 2.* there is a general grace of Baptism which all the baptized partake as of a common favour; and that is their admission into the visible body of the Church, their matriculation and outward incorporating into the number of the Worshipers of God by external communion. And so as Circumcision was not only a seal of the righteousness which is by faith but as an overplus God appointed it to be like a wall of separation between *Jew* and *Gentile*: so is Baptism a badge of an outward member of the Church, a distinction from the common rout of Heathen; and God thereby seals a right upon the party baptized to his ordinances, that he may use them as his priviledges, and wait for an inward blessing by them. Yet this is but the porch, the shel, and outside: all that are outwardly received into the visible Church, are not spiritually ingrafted into the mystical body of Christ. Baptism always is attended upon by the general grace, but not always with this special.

The benefit  
of baptism to  
a common  
Christian.

*To whom then is Baptism effectual to the sealing up this inward and special grace?*

We must here distinguish of persons baptized. The Church doth not only baptize those that are grown and of years; if any such being bred Pagans be brought within the place of the Church, and testify their competent understanding of Christianity, and profess their faith in the Lord Jesus and in God's precious promises of remission of sins by his blood; and their earnest desire to be sealed with Baptism for the strengthening of their souls in this faith: but the Church also Baptized her infants such as being born within her bosom of believing parents are within the Covenant; and so have right unto the seal thereof.

To whom baptism is effectual.

*Doth the inward grace always accompany the outward sign in those of years baptized?*

No; but only then when the profession of their faith is not outward only and counterfeit, but sincere and hearty; they laying hold on Christ offered in the Sacrament by a lively faith, which is the hand to receive the mercies offered. *Acts 8. 37. If thou believest with all thy heart, thou mayst be baptized; faith Philip to the Eunuch.* For it were absurd to extend the benefit of the seal beyond the Covenant. Now the Covenant is made only in the faithful, *John 1. 12. Mark. 16. 16. He that believeth and is baptized shall be saved; but he that believeth not, whether he be baptized or no, shall be condemned. Simon Magus (Acts 8. 13.) and Julian, and thousands of Hypocrites and Formalists shall find no help in the day of the Lord by the holy water of their baptism, without it be to encrease their judgment.*

*But what say you of Infants baptized that are born in the Church; doth the inward grace in their baptism always attend upon the outward sign?*

Surely no: the Sacrament of baptism is effectual in Infants, only to those and to all those who belong unto the election of grace. Which thing though we (in the judgment of charity) do judge of every particular Infant, yet we have no ground to judge so of all in general: or if we should judge so, yet it is not any judgment of certainty; we may be mistaken.

*Is every elect Infant then actually sanctified and united unto Christ in and by Baptism?*

We must here also distinguish of elect Infants baptized, whereof some dye in their Infancy, and never come to the use of reason; others God hath appointed to live and enjoy the ordinay means of faith and salvation.

*What is to be thought of elect Infants that die in their infancy, and have no other outward means of salvation but their baptism?*

Doubtless in all those the inward grace is united to the outward signs; and the Holy Ghost doth as truly, and really, and actually apply the merits and blood of Christ in the justifying and sanctifying vertue unto the soul of the elect Infant, as the Minister doth the water to its body, and the invisible grace of the Sacrament is conveyed by the outward means.

*But how can an Infant be capable of the grace of the Sacrament?*

Very well. Though Infants be not capable of the grace of the Sacrament by that way whereby the grown are, by hearing, conceiving, believing yet it followeth not that Infants are not capable in and by another way. It is easie to distinguish between the gift conveyed, and the manner of conveying it. Faith is not of absolute necessity to all God's elect, but only to those to whom God affords means of believing. It is the application of Christ's righteousness that justifieth us, not our apprehending it: God can supply

How Infants may be capable of the grace of the Sacrament.

the defect of faith by his sanctifying Spirit, which can do all things on our part which faith should do. Do we not know that the sin of *Adam* is imputed to children, and they defiled by it, though they be not capable to understand it; even so the righteousness of *Christ* may be, and is, by God's secret and unknown way to elect Infants: and so to those that are born deaf, and fools, not capable of understanding. For though God tieth us to means, yet not himself: he that hath said of Infants, *to them belongs the kingdom of God*, knows how to settle upon them the title of the kingdom. And we have no reason to think, but that even before, or in, at or by, the act of Baptism, the Spirit of *Christ* doth unite the soul of the elect infant to *Christ*, and cloath it with his righteousness, and impute unto it the title of a son or daughter by Adoption, and the image of God by sanctification; and so fit it for the state of glory.

*But what is to be thought of the effect of Baptism in those elect Infants whom God hath appointed to live to years of discretion?*

What benefit elect Infants that live to years have by Baptism for the present.

In them we have no warrant to promise constantly and extraordinary work to whom God intends to afford ordinary means. For though God do sometimes sanctifie from the womb, as in *Jeremy* and *John Baptist*, sometime in Baptism as he pleaseth; yet it is hard to affirm (as some do) that every elect Infant doth ordinarily before or in Baptism receive initial regeneration and the seed of faith and grace. For if there were such a habit of grace then infused, it could not be so utterly lost or secreted as never to shew it self but by being attained by new induction. But we may rather deem and judge that Baptism is not actually effectual to justifie and sanctifie, until the party do believe and embrace the promises.

*Is not Baptism then for the most part a vain empty shew, consisting of shadows without the Substance, and a sign without the thing signified?*

No: it is always an effectual seal to all those that are heirs of the Covenant of grace: the promises of God touching Justification, Remission, Adoption are made and sealed in Baptism to every elect child of God; then to be actually enjoyed, when the party baptized shall actually lay hold upon them by faith. Thus Baptism to every elect Infant is a seal of the righteousness of *Christ*, to be extraordinarily applied by the holy Ghost, if it die in its infancy; to be apprehended by faith, if it live to years of discretion. So that as baptism administered to those of years is not effectual unless they believe; so we can make no comfortable use of our Baptism administered in our infancy until we believe. The righteousness of *Christ* and all the promises of grace were in my Baptism sealed upon me and sealed up unto me on God's part: but then I come to have the profit and benefit of them, when I come to understand what grant God in Baptism hath sealed unto me, and actually to lay hold upon it by faith.

*Explain this more clearly?*

We know that an estate may be made unto an Infant, and in his infancy he hath right unto it, though not actual possession of it until such years. Now the time of the child's incapability, the use and comfort of this estate is lost indeed; but the right and title is not vain and empty, but true and real, and stands firmly secured unto the child to be claimed what time soever he is capable of it. Even so Infants elect have *Christ* and all his benefits sealed up unto them in the Sacrament of Baptism; yet through their incapableness they have not actual fruition of them, until God give them

them actual faith to apprehend them. Is Baptism lost then which is administered in our infancy? Was it a vain and an empty Ceremony? No, it was a complete and effectual Sacrament; and Gods invisible graces were truly sealed up under visible signs. And though the use and the comfort of Baptism be not for the present enjoyed by the Infant; yet by the parent it is, who believes God's promises for himself and for his seed, and so by the whole Congregation: and the things then done shall be actually effectual to the Infant, when ever it shall be capable to make use of them.

*But are there not some who utterly deny the baptizing of Infants to be warrantable?*

Yes; but not to insist upon answering their weak arguments, sufficient and clear ground for the practice of our Church in this behalf may both be pickt out of that which hath been spoken before; and further evidenced by these following arguments. The lawfulness of Infants Baptism.

1. The first we draw from the use of Circumcision in the old Testament, which answereth to Baptism: yet that was applyed to the Infant the eighth day. There can be no reason given to deprive Infants of Baptism, but that which may be given against Circumcision; the main whereof is their incapableness of the grace of the Sacrament.

2. To them to whom the Covenant belongs to them belongs the seal of the Covenant that confirms the right unto them. But to the infants of faithful parents the Covenant belongs: To you and to your children are the promises made, saith Peter, Acts 2. 39. and to them belongs the Kingdom of God: if the thing it self, then the sign and seal of it. And the Apostle saith, Your children are holy, 1 Cor. 7. 14. there is a federal sanctity, or external and visible holiness at least in children of believing parents; and they are to be judged of the true flock of Christ, until they shew the contrary.

*Yea, but it is objected that they do not believe; which is in the Scripture required of those that are to be baptized, that they make profession of their faith.*

The Scripture requiring faith in the party to be baptized, speaks of grown men. When the Apostle gives a rule that none should eat but those that labour, it were monstrous from thence to deny meat to children or impotent persons. Besides, it is not simply an improper speech to call the Infant of believing parents a believer. Our Saviour reckoneth them among Believers, Mat. 18. 6. he took a child and said, Whosoever offendeth one of these little ones that believe in me. What do we deem of Christian Infants? is there no difference between them and Pagans? Certainly as it were hard to call them infidels. so it were not harsh to call them Believers. And further it is the received judgment of our Church, that the faith of the parents (or of those that instead of parents present the child in the Congregation) is so far the Infants, as to give him right unto the Covenant. And lastly, as we have said before, the Spirit of God in elect Infants supplies the room of faith: and however it be Adams corruption cannot be more effectual to pollute the Infant, then Christ's blood and innocency is to sanctify them; and God's wisdom wants not means to apply it, though we cannot attain unto the manner.

*But the Anabaptists urge, we have no rule in Scripture for baptizing Infants, nor example.*

But do we read any thing in Scripture that may infringe the liberty of the Church therein? nay, do not the Scriptures afford many friendly proofs by consequence of it; we read of such an one baptized, and all his household, the house of *Lydia*, of the Jaylor, of *Crispus*, of *Stephanus*, &c. why should we imagine that there were no infants there, or that they were left out? And if the Scriptures not expressing directly the baptizing of infants, were sufficient reason why that Sacrament should be denied them: then by the same reason the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper should be denied to women. For (to my remembrance) it is not expressed in all the new Testament, that any women did partake of it which thing yet were senseless to doubt of.

*But is Baptism of absolute necessity to salvation?*

Baptism not of absolute necessity to salvation.

Baptism, as we have seen, is a high Ordinance of God, and a means whereby he hath appointed to communicate Christ and his benefits to our souls; and therefore not to be neglected or slightly esteemed, but used with all reverence and thankful devotion when it may be had. Yet where God denyeth it, either in regard of shortness of the the infants life, or by any other unavoidable necessity, there comes no danger from the want of the Sacraments, but only from the contempt of them.

*Who are here to be confuted?*

First, the Papists; who have contrived in their own brains a room near hell which they call (*Limbus infantum*) a receptacle for the souls of infants which die without Baptism; and where, as they feign, they are deprived of God's presence, and never partake of joy and happiness.

Secondly, many ignorant people amongst us; who for want of better teaching, harbor in their minds such Popish concepts, especially that Baptism doth confer grace upon all by the work done, (for they commonly look no higher;) and they conceive a kind of inherent vertue, and Christendom (as they call it) necessarily infused into children by having the water cast upon their faces. Hence the minister is oft posted for to baptize in a private chamber, to the dishonour of that Ordinance: and which is more intolerable, in case of the want of a Minister, women will undertake to be Baptizers; which is a monstrous prophanation of so high a service.

*How may these errors of opinion and practice be avoided?*

They proceed from gross ignorance: and therefore the means to cure them is to be informed in the right nature and use of Sacraments, and in the extent and limitation of the necessity of them.

*How may that be done?*

We must know that Sacraments properly do not give us any right unto God and his Christ, but only seal up and confirm that right and interest which already we have in God's Covenant and promise. God promised to *Adam* life; and then he gave him the Tree of life to be a pledge of his promise: It was not the Tree of life that gave *Adam* life, but the promise. *Adam* might have lived by the promise without the Tree; but the Tree could do him no good without the promise. Thus God promiseth Christ and his benefits to the faithful and to their seed, and then he gives us Baptism to seal these promises: it is not Baptism that saves us, but the promises; it is not water that purgeth our sins, but the blood of the Covenant.

*Why then was the Sacrament added?*

For our weakness, to be a strengthening to our faith; not to give any strength or efficacy to the Covenant made in the blood of Christ. God's Word is as sure as his bond, his promise is as sure and effectual as his seal  
and



and shall as surely be accomplished; the Sacraments only give strength to our faith in apprehending it.

*What infer you from this?*

That where God is pleased to dispence his seals and Sacraments, they are great comforts and pledges of his love; and to despise or slight them were a horrible slighting even of the Covenant it self. But where he denieth means and opportunity of enjoying the signs, the things signified are never the farther off, or less effectual. It is said, *Gen. 7. 14.* that the uncircumcised should be cut off from God's people, because he had broke the Covenant but it is meant only of voluntary and wilful refusing of Circumcision. For the people of God in the wilderness were forty years without the outward sign of Circumcision; yet they were not without the inward grace. *David's* child dyed the seventh day, a day before the time appointed for Circumcision: and yet both his words and his carriage exprefs that he doubted not of the salvation of it; the thief upon the Cross believing in Christ, was received with Christ into Paradise, though he were never baptized: he had the inward grace of Baptism, the washing of the blood of Christ, though not the outward sign. When God affordeth means, we must wait upon him for a blessing in them and by them: when he doth not afford means, we must not tye the working of his grace to them. God who sanctifieth some in the womb, knows how to sanctifie all his elect infants, and by his Spirit apply the merits of Christ unto them without the outward water. Some have the outward sign and not the inward grace; some have the inward grace and not the outward sign, we must not commit Idolatry by deifying the outward element. The rule will hold. It is not the want of the Sacraments, but the contempt or wilful neglect of them that is dangerous.

*What other errors of opinion and practice do you observe about Baptism?*

As some through ignorance and superstition have too high a concept of the outward signs, so others through ignorance and prophaneness have too mean and base an opinion of them. Some there are who esteem of Baptism as of a meer Ecclesiastical ceremony and Church complement; as if there were no serious vertue or efficacy in it, or profit to be expected by it; or had no other use, but to give the child a name and there is an end, they look no further.

*How doth it appear that some have so slight an opinion of this Ordinance?*

By their answerable practices: such as these and the like. 1. Often Baptism is deferred, and that upon every trifling occasion, as if it were a business of no great weight and moment, but might attend every ones leisure: and many times, through delay, the child dieth without it. Which though, it doth nothing prejudice the childs salvation; yet it will lie heavy upon the parents conscience, for neglecting God's ordinance when he afforded opportunity.

That many have a slight esteem of this Ordinance.

2. Often the minister is sent for home to perform that service with few in a private chamber, when no imminent necessity urgeth; to the dishonour of so sacred a business, which ought to be a most solemn and publick action of the whole Congregation.

3. Though the child be brought to Church, yet often some by-day is chosen, and not the Lord's Sabbath; and it is then done as if it were only womens work to be present at Baptism, who have most leisure to spend time about matters of smaller consequence.

4. If

4. If it be on the Sabbath; then the main care and preparation is about matters of outward pomp and state: every thing is fitted and prepared for the purpose, but only that which should chiefly be; *viz.* the hearts and minds of those that go about a business of that nature.

5. While the Sacrament is in performing, the demeanor of many sheweth that they have a slight opinion of that service: some turning their backs upon it and going out of the Church so soon as Sermon is done, as if the word was worth the minding, but not the Sacrament; others prating and talking all the while, as if there were nothing for them to learn by, but no duty for them to perform in that action.

6. Lastly, Infants are brought to the Sacrament of Baptism in their infancy, but are never by their Parents taught the doctrine of Baptism when they come to years of understanding: Baptism is not made use of, as it ought, in the whole course of mens lives. These things shew, that men commonly have a mean conceit of this Ordinance.

*What is the best way to reform these irreligious practices?*

What are the means to reform this slight esteem.

A serious pondering and considering of the high dignity of this divine ordinance: which will cause a devout and reverent demeanor in that holy business.

1. Every one shall consider that it is no customary formality, but an honorable ordinance instituted by the lawful authority of God himself; who never imposed any service upon his Church in vain. It was honoured by our Saviour Christ himself, who sanctified it unto us by submitting unto it in his own sacred person; confirmed by his practice, by his precept, &c.

2. Every one should consider, that there are infinite mercies sealed up by it to the faithful, and to their seed. It is a visible admittance of thy child (if thou beest a Parent) into the congregation of Christ's flock, signifying its interest in the heavenly Jerusalem which is above. Is this a business to be mumbled over in a corner? Christ came from *Galilee to Jordan* to be baptized. Is the receiving of thy child into the bosom of the Church in a full Congregation, no comfort unto thee? is it not mercy to see the blood of Christ ministerially sealed up unto thy Infant to purge it from that pollution which it hath brought into the world with it; which also thou makest confession of by presenting it to this mystical washing? Is it not joy to thy heart, to hear the whole congregation of God's Saints pray for thy child: And that God hath honoured thee so much, as to count thy very child holy and within this Covenant? think on these things.

3. Everyone that is present at Baptism should consider, that that being a publick action of the Congregation, every particular person ought reverently to joyn in it. Shall the whole Trinity be present at Baptism (*Mar. 3.*) and we be gone? Joyn ought every one in prayer to God for the Infant, joyn in praises to God for his mercy, that we, and our children are brought forth, and brought up within the pale of his Church (whereas the rest of the world are like a wilderness) and thank God for adding at the present a member to his Church. Joyn every one ought in meditation of the pollution of nature, of the blessed means of redemption by Christ, of the happy benefits that God seals up unto us in our Baptism, even before we knew them; of the vows and promises which we in our child-hood made by those who were undertakers for us: and finding our failings, every time we are present at Baptism, we should renew our Covenant with God, and labour to get new strength to close with his promises, which in our Baptism he made

made unto us. Thus if we were wise to make a right use of it; we might learn as much at a Baptism as at a Sermon.

4. Parents should always bear in mind the promises which their children have made to God by them, and they for their children; labouring to bring them up accordingly in the instruction and information of the Lord, teaching them (so soon as they understand) the meaning of that Sacrament, unfolding unto them God's precious promises, and their strict engagements. The negligence of parents herein, is a cause of monstrous profaneness in many: they bring children to receive Christ's badge, but bring them up to the service of the Devil: and God hath not so much dishonour by Heathens and Pagans, as by those who have taken upon them the name of Christians.

Lastly, Baptism should be of continual use through a Christians whole life: It is administered but once, but it is always lasting in the vertue and efficacy of it. Baptism loseth not it's strength by time. In all thy fears and doubts look back to thy Baptism, and the promises of God sealed up unto thee there; lay hold on them by faith, and thou shalt have the actual comfort of thy Baptism, and feel the effect of it, though thou never saw it. In thy failings, slips, and revolts, to recover thy self have recourse to thy Baptism: new baptism shall not need; the Covenant and seal of God stands firm, he changeth not: only renew thy repentance, renew thy faith in those blessed promises of grace which were sealed up unto thee in thy Baptism.

*So much for Baptism. What is the Lord's Supper?*

It is the second Sacrament of the new Testament, wherein God by the signs of bread and wine signifieth, sealeth and exhibiteth to every faithful receiver, the body and blood of Christ, for his spiritual nourishment and growth in Christ: and so sealing unto him his continuance with increase in the body of Christ, which is his Church confirmeth him in the Covenant of grace. Or thus: It is a Sacrament of the Gospel, wherein by the outward elements of Bread and wine, sanctified and exhibited by the minister, and rightly received by the communicant, assurance is given to those that are ingrafted into Christ, of their continuance in him and receiving nourishment by him unto eternal life.

Of the Lords Supper and what it is.

*Are there divers graces offered to us in Baptism and in the Lord's Supper?*

No. the Covenant solemnly ratified in Baptism, is renewed in the Lord's Supper, between the Lord himself and the receiver: and the same graces offered again, but to divers ends: in Baptism, to the investing and entering of us into Christianity (for of that entrance Baptism is a seal :) in the Lord's Supper, to the nourishing and continuing of us in it; of which growth and continuance in Christianity, it is a seal. And therefore as unto the Sacrament of Baptism, so unto this of the Lord's Supper, the Popish feigned Sacrament of Confirmation is notably injurious.

*Wherein then doth Baptism differ from the Lord's Supper?*

1. in regard of the thing signified. Baptism (as hath been said) is a seal of our entrance into the Church of God, the Supper of the Lord of our continuance in the same; the one of our new birth, the other of our spiritual food. The former is ordain'd to this end, that being out of Christ by nature, we might by the Sacrament of our new birth be ingrafted into his body: (Tit. 3. 5. Job. 3. 5.) the latter, that being in Christ by grace, we might continue and increase in him. 1 Cor. 10. 16. & 11. 23. 1 Pet. 3. 21.

The difference between Baptism and the Lords Supper.

2. In regard of the outward sign. Water in the one, bread and wine in the other.

3. In

3. In regard of the Communicants. Unto Baptism both Infants, and those that are of years of discretion are to be admitted; but unto the Supper of the Lord, only those of years of discretion.

4. In regard of the time. The Supper of the Lord is to be received as often as the Lord shall give occasion; Baptism but once.

*Why is this called the Lord's Supper? seeing we use not to make it a Supper?*

Why is it called the Lord's Supper.

It is called the Lord's Supper, (1 Cor. 11. 20.) not because he appointed it a supper to us; but because our Lord Jesus Christ sitting at his last Supper ordained it instead of our Passover. For in the night that he was betrayed, (1 Cor. 11. 23.) immediately after that he had eaten the Passover with his Disciples, he did both himself with them celebrate this holy Sacrament, (Mat. 26. 26. &c.) and withal, give charge for continuance of the same in the Church until his second coming. 1 Cor. 11. 26.

*What may we learn by this? that both our Saviour Christ and his Apostles likewise administered this Sacrament after Supper?*

That we must not come unto it for our bellies, but have our minds lifted up from these earthly elements to our Saviour Christ represented by them. For men after supper set not bread and wine, but banqueting dishes upon the Table. Which serveth to reprove.

1. Such prophane persons, as come for a draught of Wine only.
2. Those that rest only in the outward Elements.

*But doth not the example of our Saviour Christ and his Apostles tie us to administer this Sacrament in the night time?*

No: because they had special cause so to do, which we have not.

*What cause had our Saviour so to do?*

He was not to administer it after supper.

First, because it was to come in lieu and stead of the Passover; and therefore was presently after the eating of it.

Secondly, that it might go immediately before his passion, the better to shew whereunto it should have relation. Where also is another difference: our Saviour Christ's Supper representing his death, which followed the Supper and was to come; our Sacrament representing the death of Christ already suffered and past.

*What cause had the Apostles?*

They did it in the night, because it was not safe for the Church to meet in the day for fear of persecution. Wherefore hearing the laudable custom of the Church of administering it in the Morning, when our wits and capacities are best, is to be followed. In which respect also there is some difference between this Sacrament, and the Sacrament of Baptism which may without any inconvenience be administered in the afternoon.

*What is the fittest day for the administration of this Sacrament?*

The Lord's day is the fittest day for the administration of the Sacraments. For although our Saviour Christ did administer it on another day, (for the reasons before declared) yet he did not bid us so to do. But the Apostles example and religious practice herein is to be followed, which did celebrate the Supper of the Lord on the Lord's day.

*So much of the time. Now for the nature of this Sacrament, how may it be known?*

First, by the matter; and secondly, by the form of it.

*What is the matter of the Supper of the Lord?*

Partly

Partly outward, as the elements of bread and wine; partly inward, as the body and blood of Christ. Those outward elements signifying Christ and him crucified, with all the benefits of his death and passion; even whole Christ, with all the fruits of his mediation. *Mat. 26. 26, 27. 1 Cor. 11. 24, 25.*

*Of the matter of the Lord's Supper.*

*Wherefore did the Lord make choice of Bread and Wine for the outward elements of this Sacrament?*

Because meaning to set forth our spiritual nourishment by them, they are of all the means of our corporal nourishment the chiefest. *Pf. 104. 15.*

*Why did he not content himself with one of these only?*

He took both, that he might hereby shew how plentiful and assured redemption we have in Christ, whom these do represent. Wherefore it is no marvel, that the Papists in the prohibiting of the cup, do answerably teach our salvation to be neither wholly in Christ, nor assuredly.

*What argument do you observe, in the institution of the Sacrament against this robbery?*

The foreseeing spirit of Christ, knowing the sacrilege that Popery would bring in for the robbery of the people of the use of the Cup, hath prepared a preservative against it; speaking here more fully of the cup (which he did not of the bread) *Drink ye all of this. Mat. 26. 27.*

*What Bread used our Saviour Christ?*

Ordinary bread such as was used at the common Table, at that time. It was indeed unleavened bread: but it was so, because no other was then lawful at the feast of the Passover.

*Are not the Bread and Wine, changed into the Body and Blood of Christ in this Sacrament?*

No: they are not changed in nature, but in use (*1 Cor. 10. 16.*) For the words of eating and drinking do properly belong to the outward elements of bread and wine, and by a borrowed speech do improperly belong to the body and blood of Christ: to note unto us the communion we have with our Saviour Christ, of whom we are verily partakers by a lively faith, as of the bread and wine, by eating and drinking them. And thus we say that these elements are changed in use: because being separated from a common use, they are consecrate to sign and seal unto us our spiritual nourishment and growth by the body and blood of Christ Jesus. (*Luke 22. 19. 1 Cor. 10. 3, 4.*) For as the Sacrament of Baptism doth seal to us a spiritual regeneration; so the Lord's Supper, a spiritual feeding: and even as well the body and blood of Christ, is in Baptism given us for cloathing, as they are given in the Lord's Supper for nourishment: Therefore the bread and wine are not the true body and blood of Christ, but the signs and tokens of them, as in Baptism, the water was only a sign of Christ's blood, not the blood.

*That the bread and wine are not changed into the body and blood of Christ.*

*What further reasons have you to overthrow the carnal presence of Christ in the Sacrament?*

1. If the bread were turned into Christ; then there should be two Christs, one that giveth, another that is given: for our Saviour Christ gave the bread, &c.

2. If the bread be the very body of Christ, there should then be no sign of the thing signified; and so no Sacrament. (*Rom. 4. 11.*) Where their miserable shift, that the whiteness is the seal and sign, is not worthy the answer.

3. The wicked receiver might then eat and drink Christ's body and blood as well as any true believer. *Joh. 13. 2, 30.*

4. The Minister cannot give the inward grace, but the outward element in the administration of the Sacrament. *Luk. 3. 16.*

*What reason was there to move our Saviour Christ to use such a borrowed speech in this so great a mystery?*

Because it is ordinary and usual in the Scripture, to give the name of the thing signified and signified to the sign: as it is called the tree of life, which was but a sign of life. (*Gen. 2. 6.*) So in the Sacraments of the Old Testament, circumcision is called the covenant, (*Gen. 17. 10.*) that is, the token of the Covenant: (*Verse 11.*) and the Lamb or Kid the Pascheover, whereof it was a sign only. (*Exod. 12.*) The self same manner of speech is also used in the new Testament, of Baptism, called the new birth and washing away of sins, whereof it is only a seal. So that unless the Lord would in this Sacrament have departed from the wisdom of the Spirit of God accustomedly received; he must needs here also tread in the same steps of a borrowed and figurative speech.

*Howbeit, it may seem that to have used a more proper speech, would have been more meet for him, being near unto his death, and more convenient for their understanding?*

He did after his last Supper use as figurative speeches as this in the 13, 15, and 16 of *John*; and that without all danger of darknes of speech: there being often-times more light in a borrowed, than in a proper speech. And a trope of force must be yielded, when he saith, that the cup is the new Testament.

*It maketh further for the corporal presence, that our Saviour Christ saith in his Supper, that his body was then broken, and not that it should be broken after.*

That it is also usual to the Scripture, for further certainty to speak of things to come, as of them that are present.

*But there is nothing impossible unto God.*

1. The question is here, not of the power, but of the will of God; what he will have done.

2. God cannot do these things, in doing whereof he should contradict himself: and therefore the Scripture feareth not, without dishonour to God, to say that he cannot lie, nor cannot deny himself. *Tit. 1. 2. 2. Tim. 2. 13.*

*Why is the cup called, the cup of the new Testament?*

Because it is a seal of the promises of God touching our salvation in Christ, which being in old time under the Law shadowed by the shedding of blood of beasts, is now after a new manner accomplished in the blood of Christ himself.

*Thus much of matter of this Sacrament: wherein consisteth the form thereof?*

Of the form of the Sacrament of the Lords Supper.

Partly in the outward actions both of the Ministers and of the receivers; partly in the inward and spiritual things signified thereby: these outward actions being a second seal, set by the Lord's own hand unto his Covenant.

*What be the Sacramental actions of the Minister in the Lords Supper?*

The Sacramental actions of the Minister.

1. Four. First to take the bread and wine into his hands, and to separate it from ordinary bread and wine.

*What doth this signifie?*

That God in his eternal decree had separated Christ from all other men

to be our mediator : and that he was set apart to that office, and separated from sinners. *Exod. 12. 5. Heb. 7. 26.*

*What is the second?*

2 To bless and consecrate the bread and wine, by the Word and Prayer.

*What doth that signifie?*

That God in his due time sent Christ into the world and sanctified him, furnishing him with all gifts needful for a Mediator.

*How are the Bread and Wine to be blessed and consecrated?*

By doing that which at the first institution Christ did.

*What is that?*

1. He declared the doctrine of the mystery of the Sacrament unto his Apostles, which received it, by teaching the truth of that which these outward signs did signifie.

Of the consecration of the Bread and Wine.

2. He thanketh his heavenly Father for that he had so loved the world, that he gave him, which was his only Son, to die for it; through the breaking of his most holy Body, and shedding his most precious blood. Also he gave him thanks, for that he had ordained these outward elements, to seal our spiritual nourishment in Christ.

3. By a trope of the chief part of Prayer (which is thanksgiving) for the whole, the Evangelist giveth to understand; that our Saviour Christ sued to God his heavenly Father, that his death, in it self sufficient to save, might by the working of his holy spirit, be effectual to the elect, and that those outward signs of Bread and Wine might, through the operation of his holy spirit, be effectual to the purposes they were ordained unto.

*How shall it be known that he gave thanks, and prayer for these things; seeing there is no mention of these things in the Evangelists?*

1. The very matter it self that is handled, doth guide us to the knowledge of these things.

2. The like manner of speech in other places of Scripture; where there being no mention what words he used, yet must needs be granted that he gave thanks and prayed, proportionably to the prayer and thanks here used. For taking the barley loaves and fishes, and giving thanks; what can be understood, but that he giving thanks to God, that had given those creatures for the bodily nourishment, prayed that he would bless them, and make them effectual to that purpose and end? (*Mat. 14. 19. and 15. 36. John 6. 11.*) And as it is not lawful to eat and drink the common meat and drink, without such prayer and thanksgiving; so it is not lawful to communicate these elements without thanksgiving and prayer.

*So much for the second action (which the Minister indeed performeth with the Communicants. But yet as chief in the action); What is the third?*

To break the Bread and pour out the Wine.

*What doth it signifie?*

The passion and suffering of Christ, with all the torments which he endured for our sins both in body and soul: his blessed body being bruised and crucified, his precious blood shed (trickling and streaming down from all parts of him to the ground) and his righteous soul powred out unto death; (*Isa. 53. 5, 10, 12. Heb. 9. 14.*) That Christ himself of his own accord offered his body to be broken, and his blood to be shed, upon the Cross: and that as the Bread nourisheth not, if it remain whole and unbroken; so there is no life for us in Christ, but in as much as he died.

*What is the fourth?*

13 To give and distribute the Bread and Wine to the Receivers.

*What doth that signifie?*

That God giveth Christ, and Christ himself unto us: that Christ Jesus with all his merits is offered to all sorts of receivers; and that God hath given him unto faithful receivers, to feed their souls unto eternal life. *John.* 3. 14, 15 and 6. 50, 51.

*What be the Sacramental actions of the Receivers?*

1 They be two: first to take the bread and wine offered by the Minister.

*What doth that signifie?*

The Sacramental actions of the Receivers.

The receiving of Christ into our soul with all his benefits by faith. That they, and only they, have benefit by Christ crucified, which thus apply Christ to themselves by a true and lively faith. *John.* 1. 12.

*What is the second?*

2 To eat the bread and drink the wine; receiving them in the body, and digesting them, *1 Cor.* 11. 26.

*What doth that signifie?*

Our uniting unto Christ, and enjoying of him. That we must with delight apply Christ and his merits to all the necessities of our soul; spiritually feeding upon him, and growing by him. For the eating of the bread to strengthen our nature, betokeneth the inward strengthening of our souls by grace, through the merit of the breaking of Christ's body for us: and the drinking of the wine to cherish our bodys, betokens, that the blood of Christ shed on the Cross, and (as it were) drunken by faith, cherisheth our souls. And as God doth bless these outward elements, to preserve and strengthen the body of the receiver: so Christ apprehended and received by faith, doth nourish him, and preserve both body and soul unto eternal life. *John.* 6. 50, 51. *1 Cor.* 10. 3, 11, 16, 17.

*Is Christ's body and blood, together with the outward elements, received of all Communicants?*

No. For howsoever they be offered by God to all, (*Mat.* 26. 26.) yet are they received by such alone, as have the hand of faith to lay hold on Christ. And these with the bread and wine spiritually receive Christ with all his saving graces. As for the wicked and those that come without faith they receive only the outward elements, *1 Cor.* 11. 27. and withal judgment and condemnation to themselves: *verse* 29.

*So much of the matter and form: Shew now the special ends and uses for which the Lord's Supper was ordained.*

The ends and uses of the Lords Supper.

1. To call to mind and renew the memory and vertue of Christ's death. *1 Cor.* 11. 24.

2. To increase our faith, begotten by the Word preached: and to confirm unto us our nourishment therein by the means of Christ's death.

3. To increase our love.

4. To increase our joy in the Holy Ghost, our peace of conscience, our hope of eternal life, and all other graces of God in us.

5. To stir us up with greater boldness to profess Christ, then heretofore we had done.

6. To quicken our hearts to all holy duties.

7. To shew our thankfulness to God for his mercy bestowed upon us in Christ.

8. To make a difference betwixt our selves and the enemies of Christ.

9. To knit us more near in good will one to another.



10. To preserve the publick ministry of the Word and Prayer in Christian assemblies.

*Who are to be partakers of this Sacrament ?*

All baptized who are of years and sound judgment to discern the Lord's body, ought to repair to this Sacrament. But those only come *worthily*, who professing the true faith, have duly examined and prepared themselves. (Esa. 66. 23. 1 Cor. 11. 27, 28.) Whereby all not of age and sound judgment, are shut from this Sacrament; which are not always from the other of Baptism.

*May none be admitted by the Church to the Supper of the Lord, but such as have these things in them which God requireth at their hands?*

Yes, Those who having knowledge, do make profession of Religion and are found guilty of no great error or crime unrepented of.

*What if any thrust themselves to the Lord's Table, who are ignorant, or guilty of such crimes ?*

They are to be kept back by the discipline of the Church.

*What is to be performed by every Christian, that he may worthily partake of the Lord's Supper ?*

There must be a careful preparation before the action, great heed in the whole action, and a joyful and thankful close and shutting up of it. All which must be performed as well by the Minister as the people. For there is great difference betwixt our Saviour Christ, the first deliverer of this Sacrament, and all other Ministers. He having no battel of the spirit and flesh in him, but being always prepared unto every good work: had no need of these things: but other Ministers have as much need thereof as the people.

*How are we to prepare our selves to this Sacrament ?*

By due search and tryal of our own souls, whether we can find in our selves the thing which God doth require in worthy communicants.

*How may we perform that ?*

By fitting our *minds*, and framing our *hearts* thereunto. 1 Cor. 10. 15, 16. and 11. 28.

*How may we fit our minds ?*

By examining our wisdom and knowlege both of God's will in general, and of the nature and use of this holy Sacrament in particular: whether we can give a reason of the representation of Christ in the bread and wine; and bring the resemblance and difference of the proportion of the bread and wine, with the body and blood of Christ; and of the eating and drinking of the elements, with the partaking of the spiritual things, Rom. 4. 11. 1 Cor. 18. 3, 4, 16, 17.

*How may our hearts be framed for the feeling of the vertue and power of this Sacrament ?*

1. By weighing with our selves what need we have of it, and what benefit we may reap by it.

2. By examining of our Faith, (2 Cor. 13. 5. 1 Tim. 1. 5, 15.) and Repentance, (Heb. 10. 22. James 4. 8.) attended with true love of God, (Zach. 12. 10.) and of our brethren. 1 Cor. 16. 4.

3. By fervent Invocation, praying for a blessing upon this ordinance of God. Mat. 26. 26.

*How may we find what need we have of this Sacrament ?*

Partly by our wretched estate by nature, and partly by our weak estate by grace.

What

*What may we find by our estate by nature ?*

That being prone to all evil, we have need of this Sacrament to nourish and preserve the life of grace new begun, which other wise by our own corruption might die or decay in us. 1 Cor. 10. 16.

*What need have we of this Sacrament for relief of our weak estate by grace ?*

That being weak in *understanding* and feeble in *memory*, we may by the signs of Bread and Wine, have our understanding bettered, and our memory confirmed in the death of Christ. 1 Cor. 11. 24, 26.

*What further need may we find of it ?*

That being frail in *faith* and cold in *love*, we may by the same creatures, as by seals and pledges, have our faith further strengthened and our love more inflamed to God and God's children.

*What benefit then may we reap by the Lord's Supper ?*

We see already the benefit is great : this Sacrament being as a glass for the *mind*, a monument for the *memory*, a support of *faith*, a provocation to *love*. a quickning to *obedience*, and a sign and seal of all the mercies of God in Christ Jesus.

*How must the heart be prepared to find the power of this Sacrament for supply of these wants and obtaining of these benefits ?*

The heart must be purged by Repentance and purified by Faith. Cor. 10. 14, 16, 21. Acts 15. 9.

*How may the heart be purified by faith ?*

If I have not only knowlege what Christ hath done for his chosen, but a full assurance that whatsoever he hath done he hath done it *for me* as well as any other. 1 Cor. 2. 2. Job. 17. 3. Gal. 2. 20.

*What gather you hence ?*

That they only are to present themselves at the Lord's table, who after their baptism are able to make a profession of their true faith, and can find that they do truly believe in Christ : seeing ignorant and unbelieving persons do rather eat and drink their own judgment, then reap any benefit by this Sacrament. 1 Cor. 11. 29, 30, 31.

*How may thy heart be purged by repentance ?*

If from my heart I do repent of my particular sins past, and judge my self for them, bewailing and forsaking them : and frame the rest of my life according to God's will. 1 Cor. 11. 30, 31. Gal. 6. 16.

*What learn you hence ?*

That it is dangerous for such as remain in their old sins, or after the sacrament return unto them, once to offer themselves to the Lord's Table : forasmuch as by this means they procure the wrath of God against them and those that belong unto them ; although not in condemnation in the world to come (which the faithful notwithstanding their unworthy receiving cannot come unto) yet to fearful plagues and judgments in this world.

*Is it not meet that we be free from all malice in our hearts, when we come to the Lord's Supper ?*

Yes it is : for this Sacrament is a seal both of our conjunction with Christ, and of our society one with another : (1 Cor. 10. 17.) and we must know that true *repentance* purgeth out malice amongst other sins ; and a sound *faith* worketh by love towards God and our Brethren. Mat. 5. 22, 23. James 1. 19, 20, 21. 1 Pet. 2. 1. Gal. 5. 6.

So much for Examination and Preparation required before the action :  
What is to be done by the Communicants in the present action ;

1. They

1. They are to use reverent attention, the better to apply the whole action: hearkning to the doctrine of the Sacrament delivered by the Minister, joyning with him in his prayers, making use of all the sacramental actions, and so commemorating the Lord's death for the comfort and refreshing of their own souls, 1 Cor. 11. 17, 26.

2. According as it is commanded, all must take the Bread and Wine into their hands. Contrary to the superstition of divers, which will either have it thrust into their mouths, or else take it with their gloves: as if the hand of a Christian, which God hath both made and sanctified, were not as fit as the skin of a beast, which the Artificer hath tanned and sewed.

3. They must moreover, according to the commandment of Christ, eat and drink the Bread and Wine; not laying or hanging it up, or worshipping it, as the Papists do.

4. Lastly they must use thanksgiving: offering up themselves both souls and bodies as a sacrifice of thanks; (Rom. 12. 1.) in which regard this Sacrament is called the *Eucharist*.

*What is to be done after the action?*

1. We must by and by use joyful thanksgiving, with prayer and meditation: being so comforted in heart in the favour of God towards us, that we be ready with a feeling joy to sing a Psalm unto the Lord. Mar. 26. 30. What duties are to be performed after the action.

2. We must continually endeavour to find an increase of our faith in Christ, love to God and all his Saints, power to subdue sin and practise obedience, with all other sanctifying and saving graces: (1 Cor. 10. 16, 17. and 11. 21. Col. 2. 6, 7. 2 Pet. 3. 18.) For a true receiver shall feel in himself, after the receiving of the Sacrament, an encrease of faith and sanctification; a further deadning of the old man, and so a greater measure of dying unto sin; a further strength of the new man, and so a greater care to live in newness of life, and to walk the more strongly and steadily in the ways of God all the days of his life. This being a Sacrament, not of our incorporation, as Baptism, but of our growth: which albeit one cannot always discern immediately after the action, yet between that and the next Communion it may be easily espied in our service towards God and men.

*What if a man after the receiving of the Sacrament never find any such thing in himself?*

He may well suspect himself, whether he did ever repent or not; and therefore is to use means to come to sound faith and repentance. For the Lord is not usually wanting to his ordinances, if men prepare their hearts to meet him in them. If we receive no good nor refreshment at this spiritual feast, if God send us away empty: either it is because we have no right unto his mercies, being not in Christ, and so not accepted; or because some secret unmortified lust remaineth in us, like *Achan's* wedge of gold. So some beloved sin (either not seen, or not sufficiently sorrowed for, and resolved against) lyeth glowing in the heart, which causeth God to frown upon our services; and like a dead fly causeth the ointment to stink: and therefore in this case, a man should descend into himself, and make a more strict search into his conscience, that he may again come before the Lord with more humility, and better preparedness, and God will reveal himself in due time to every one who unfeignedly seeks after him in his ordinances.

*So much of the Sacraments. What are the Censures?*

They are the judgments of the Church, for ratification of the threats of the Gospel, against the abusers of the Word and Sacraments. Of the Censures of the Church.

*What*

*What do these Censures profit the Church of God ?*

Very much. For by them the godly having strayed from the course of sincerity, are through obedience brought home again; but the wicked are hardened by them through disobedience: whereof it is, that the wicked are properly said to be punished, the Godly only chastened and corrected.

*But it seems that corrections rather belong to Magistrates than to Ministers ?*

The Magistrates by the laws of the Common-wealth punish some by death, others by other torments, and some by purse: which belongeth not to the Minister, who hath to do only with the soul. And these spiritual censures are of as necessary use in the Church (both to help the godly, and to restrain and root out the wicked out of the Church) as those penal laws of the Magistrate in the Common-wealth. They therefore who upon this pretence that God forceth no man to come unto him, suppose the censures to be unprofitable; are like unto children that will have no rod in the house.

*Whereby doth the necessity of Censures appear ?*

Easily. For sith in the Church of God there be of all sorts, as in a net cast into the sea, which catcheth good and bad: it is impossible, without correction, to keep good order in the Church; especially to restrain the wicked hypocrites from offending and thereby slandering their profession.

*If then there were no hypocrites, there were no use of Censures.*

Not so: but they serve most of all for them that make no conscience of their calling. For the best man that is, having some sparks of his natural corruption remaining unregenerate, may fall and offend, and therefore must be chastened by the Church. But this is the difference: the godly falling by infirmity, by correction do amend; but the wicked offending purposely, by punishment are hardened:

*What is to gathered of this ?*

That sith censures are as needful in the Church, as the rod in the house, or the Magistrates sword in the common-wealth for offenders; (yea and of so much more use as these are for the body and this life, and the other for the soul and life to come) they that set themselves against them, care not what disorder there be in the Church, but seek to exempt themselves from punishment, that they might do what they list and make the Gospel a covert for all their wickedness: who are like to them in the second Psalm, that would not bear the yoke of Government.

*So much for the use and necessity of Censures. Where is the doctrine of them especially delivered ?*

In the 18 chapter of Saint *Matthew*, from the 15 verse to 20. where both their Institution and Ratification is laid down. For first our Saviour declareth the degrees of the censures ordained for such as are called brethren (which are generally corrections according to the greatness of the offences,) and then treateth of their power and authority.

*What is to be observed in the degrees of the censures ?*

That the censures be according to the offences: as if the offence be private, the censure thereof must be private. Wherein the censurer is to deal circumspectly. 1. That he know the offence. 2. That he admonish the offender secretly. 3. That he do it in love, convincing his offence so to be by the word of God.

*What further duty is required of us in this case ?*

1. That we run not to others to slander the offender: which *Moses* forbiddeth, *Levit.* 19. 16.

Of the degrees of Censures.

2. Not to keep the injury in mind, of purpose afterwards to revenge it.
3. Not to deal roughly with one, under pretence of seeking the glory of God.
4. Not to despise the offender, but by all means to seek his amendment.

*Who are to be admonished openly in the Church?*

Those that sin openly.

*What if they will not amend by admonition?*

Then they are by *suspension* to be barred for a time from some exercises of religion: and if by that they will not amend, then they are by *excommunication* to be cut off from the Church, and delivered unto Satan, as shall be declared.

*How are the Censures ratified, and the authority of the Church confirmed by our Saviour Christ?*

That appeareth by his words unto the disciples, *Matth. 18. 18. Whatsoever you bind on earth, (meaning according to the rule) shall be bound in heaven? and whatsoever you loose on earth; shall be loosed in heaven.* Which is as much as if a Prince, giving authority to one of small reputation, should bid him execute justice, he would bear him out.

*How is this further used?*

It is further confirmed in the verse following, by a reason of comparison. *If two or three shall agree upon any thing, and shall ask it in my name; it shall be granted.* If Christ will ratify the deed of two or three, done in his name; how much more then, that which the whole Church shall do accordingly.

*Why is it said; And shall ask it in my name?*

To declare that by prayer unto God in the name of our Saviour Christ all the censures of the Church, but especially Excommunication, should be undertaken as the Apostle saith. *1 Cor. 5. 4. When you are gathered together in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ, (that is, calling upon the name) deliver such an one unto Satan,*

*What need is there of this ratifying of the Churches authority in exercising the Censures?*

Because some do contemn the Censures of the Church, as proceeding from men only, as if thereby they were no whit debarred from the favour of God: whereas nevertheless, whom the Church separateth from the outward seals, them also Christ depriveth of inward graces; banishing them from his kingdom, whom the Church hath given over to Satan.

*What gather you of this?*

That men should not slightly shake off, but with reverence esteem the censures of the Church as the voice of God himself: and although they be never so high and stout, yet are they to subject themselves to the judgment of God in the Church, unless they will set themselves against the Lord himself.

Of the kinds of Censures.

*We have heard of the general doctrine of Censures. What are the kinds of them?*

They are either of Sovereign medicine, (*Mat. 18. 15, 16. 1 Cor. 5.*) or of fearful revenge: (*1 Cor. 16. 22. 2 Tim. 4. 14.*) the former properly are *corrections*, the latter *punishments*.

*What are the Medicinal Censures?*

They are such as serve to bring men to repentance: the principal end of the next glory of God, being the salvation of his soul that is censured.

*What things are required of them that do execute these Censures against any man?*

Six. 1. Wisdom. 2. Freedom from the sin reprov'd. 3. Love. 4. Sorrow. 5. Patience. 6. Prayer for the party.

*Of what sort are the Medicinal Censures?*

They are either in Word or Deed.

*What are they in Word?*

The chidings or rebukes of the Church for sin: which we call *Admonitions*.

*How many sorts of Admonitions are there?*

Private admonitions.

Two: the first is private, betwixt brother and brother; (*Levit. 19. 17. Mat. 18. 15, 16.*) the other publick, by the Minister assisted by the congregation, when the private will not prevail. *Mat. 18. 17. 1 Tim. 5. 20.*

*What are we to observe in the private Admonitions?*

That we should watch one another diligently, witnessing thereby our mutual love, which God requireth of us. As if any man seeing another (whose journey he knoweth) wander out of the way, if he should not admonish him, he might justly be accounted unnatural: much more we knowing all men think to journey toward heaven, if we see any go the wrong ways, (as by Robberies, Adulteries, Usury, Swearing, or Drunkenness) and do not admonish them, are even guilty of their wandering; especially sith the other belongeth to the body, but this both to body and soul.

*But it is not sufficient for men to watch themselves; seeing every man standeth or falleth to God?*

Such was the wicked answer of *Cain*: and they that use it, are like unto him. But if God commanded in the law, to help our enemies Ox or Ass, having need of help; we are more bound by the law of charity to help himself. And unless we reprove him, we are partakers of his sin; (as hath been said;) which we ought not to be, because we have enough of our own.

*What are the degrees of private admonition?*

The degrees of private admonitions.

They be two. The former is most private, done by one; the other is private also, but more publick then the first; and it is done by two or three at the most, whereof he that first admonished, must be one. *Mat. 18. 15, 16.*

*Why hath our saviour Christ limited us with these degrees?*

By all means to win the offender, if it be possible: if not, that his condemnation may appear to be most just, after so many warnings.

*How is the first degree of private Admonition expressed?*

*If thy brother offend against thee, or, in thy knowlege only; tell him between thee and him. Mat. 18. 15.*

*Are we bound to reprove all men of what profession soever?*

No: but him that is of the same profession of Christianity that we be of, whom the Scripture termeth a *brother*; (thereby shutting forth Jews, Turks, Hereticks, and Atheists.) except we have some particular bond; as of a master to his servant; or a father to his child, or magistrate to his subject. &c.

*What learn you thereby?*

1. That we observe this in our admonitions; that he be a *brother* whom we admonish, and not such a one as is a scorner.

2. That we are not to make light of, or condemn the admonitions of others, but to accept of them and account of them as a precious balm.

How we must reprove.

*How must we reprove our brothers faults?*

First, we must be sure that it is a fault we reprove him for: and then we must

must be able to convince him thereof out of the word of God, so that he shall not be able to gainsay us, unless he do it contemptuously; it being better for us not to reprove him, then not to be able to convince him by the word of that we have reprov'd him in. Lastly, we ought to do it with all love and mildness, regarding the circumstances of persons, time, and place: not inconsiderately, nor of hatred, or to reproach him, or as one that is glad of somewhat to hurt his good name.

*What is meant by, Tell him between thee and him? Mat. 18. 15.*

That the good name and report of another man should be so regarded by us, that if his fault be private, we are not to spread it abroad: as some that think they be burthened, unless they tell it to others; which is not the rule of charity.

*Why is this added, If he hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother?*

As a notable means to encourage us in this duty. For if the bestowing of a Cup of cold water should not be unrewarded: how much more gaining of a soul from Satan?

*What if our brother hear us not, and so we do not gain him?*

Notwithstanding we lose not our labour: but our reward is laid up with God. *Ia. 49. 4.* For that which is done for God's cause, though it be never so evil taken or used, shall certainly be remembered of God; who will recompence it plentifully, and lay it up among our good deeds. Also this shall serve against him that is reprov'd, in judgment, for refusing such a profitable means.

*What is the second degree of Private Admonitions?*

It is more publick then the former. If thy brother hear thee not, take yet with thee *one or two*, *Matth. 18. 16.* For although he hear not the first admonition, yet love will not give him over: but as the case requireth, and the nature and the condition of the offender may be discern'd to be easie or hard to repent; the admonisher is to take with him one, or if need be two at the most, to assist him.

The second degree of private Admonition.

*The first Admonition not availing, may we take whom we will to the second?*

The choice is to be made which is likeliest to take effect. And therefore we may not take his enemy, or one that is not able to convince: but we must chuse one or two such, whom either he reverenceth or at least favoureth, or otherwise may do most good with him, either by graciousness of speech, or ability of personage, or some other gift; in a word, such as be fittest both for gifts and authority to recover him; of whom the Pastor may be one; as he also may be the first.

*May the first admonisher substitute another in his place the second time?*

No. For our Saviour Christ doth not leave it free so to do; but will have him that did first admonish to be one; both for the better conferring of the former dealing with the latter; as also for keeping the fault of the offender in as much silence and secrecy as may be.

*What is gathered hereby?*

That great love and care of our Saviour Christ towards him; as also what diligence we must use, and what care for our brother.

*What may not one alone deal with him the second time?*

Because that by the testimony of two or three he might be brought to reverence now, that which he would not at the first admonition: and further, that way may be made to the publick judgment of the Church, yea

to the others way before the Church, which under two testimonies at least cannot proceed further against him. For *in the mouth of two or three witnesses every truth is confirmed.* *Matth.* 8. 16.

*Thus far of the private Admonitions. What is the publick?*

Publick ad-  
monitions.

That which is done by the whole Church, or the Minister assisted by the Congregation (1 *Tim.* 5. 20.) For if the second warning serve not, our Saviour would have the offender present to the Church, as to the highest Court, (*Matth.* 18. 19.) not of greatest personages, but of the most learned, and beautified with inward graces, whose presence he cannot chuse but reverence. As in the book of *Numbers*, a wife suspected of adultery, was brought unto the priest in the house of God; that the reverence of the place and person might strike a fear in her heart, to cause her to confess the truth. (*Num.* 5. 15, 16.) Wherein appeareth a further step and degree of God's singular love and affection.

*But the bringing of him to open shame seemeth rather hurtful then profitable?*

Not to the godly, to whom it is prepared as a sovereign medicine for his diseases. For as a wealthy man being sick, assembleth a whole College of Physicians to consult of his disease and the remedy thereof, so the whole Church in the like case having *Urim & Thummim*, that is, treasures of knowledge, should consult upon the recovery of the offender; who therefore hearing their Admonition, is to be received, notwithstanding his former obstinacy. But the hearts of the wicked by the warning are the more hardened to their everlasting perdition.

*Hitherto of the Corrections which are in Word: what are they in Deed?*

Of suspension!

Suspension, (*Num.* 12. 14. *Exod.* 33. 6, 7.) and Excommunication. *Mat.* 18. 17. 1 *Cor.* 5.

*What is suspension?*

A certain separation of him that will not amend by Admonition, from some holy things in the Church: as 1. the use of the Sacrament: 2. some offices in the Church.

*What is Excommunication?*

Of excom-  
munication.

The casting of the stubborn sinner out of the Church, and delivering him unto Satan. Who being thus disfranchised of all the liberties, and deprived of all the benefits and common society of the church, is separated, as it were, from that protection and mercy which may be looked for at the hands of God.

*What is the end of this casting out?*

It is twofold:

First, in regard of God's glory;

Secondly in regard of men.

*How in regard of God?*

Because that his holy Name and Religion should not be evil spoken of by suffering wicked and unclean persons, (as blasphemers, adulterers, &c.) in the Church; which should not be like unto a stie, but clean from all shew of filthiness. For in houses of good report, a proud person, detracter, or lyer, (much less a drunkard or filthy person) is not suffered: much less ought such an one to be in the church, which is the house of the living God, lest the Gospel come to reproach through such; in that godless persons would thereby take occasion to open their mouths against the truth.

*How in regard of men?*

That likewise is two fold: either respecting the good of the person excommunicated, or the rest of the church.

*What*



*What is the regard that concerneth the Church?*

That they be not infected with his naughtiness, and that they may keep themselves from the like offence. For that if he remain in the Church, and be not banished,

First, other men would be provoked to commit the like sins. For the Apostle comparing a sinful man to leaven, 1 Cor. 5. 6. teacheth, that as a little leaven will sour the whole batch; so one wicked man will infect the whole Church.

Secondly, the weak would take occasion thereby of falling away from the truth; and others yet without, would be holden from coming unto it.

*What is the regard that concerneth him that is cast out?*

That he being shamed, may be brought to repent and turn unto the Lord: as the Apostle saith of the incestuous person; who should be cut off for the destruction of the flesh, that is, the natural corruption, and for saving of the spirit, that is the man regenerate. 1 Cor. 5. 5. 1 Tim. 1. 20.

*If the severity of this censure be such as hath been declared; how then tendeth it to reformation?*

They that are thus censured, are only delivered to Satan conditionally, if they repent not. So it is a means either to bring them to Christ, or send them to the devil: as a hand almost cut off, and hanging but by the skin, is in danger to be lost, unless some skilful Chirurgeon bind it up.

*What is to be done to him if he repent?*

He is to be received of the Church; whom as they loose in earth, our Saviour Christ looseth in heaven. Yet he is not by and by to be admitted to all privileges of the Church, but to be suspended for a time, till the fruits of repentance may better appear. For if some in the Law, for a certain pollution in a lawful duty of burying the dead, were suspended from the Passover; (Num. 9. 6.) much more in the Gospel for such obstinacy.

*How many sorts of Suspensions then are there?*

Two: one going before Excommunication, and the other following the same, towards them that are penitent. Both which were shadowed in the Levitical law, in the case of Leprosie. For first in the 13. of Lev. we find that upon suspicion of Leprosie a man was shut up for a time, not only from the worship of God, but also from all society of men: how much more then may it be lawful under the Gospel, to execute the censure of suspension after two admonitions upon a known offence? Secondly, it is set down in the 14. of Levit. That a man cleansed from his leprosie, was brought home unto the camp and placed in his tent, where he stayed for certain days; it being not lawful for him to come into the Tabernacle.

*So much of the Medicinal censures. What is the last censure of fearful revenge?*

The curse unto death called by S. Paul, *Anathema Maranatha*, 1 Cor. 16. *Anathema* 22. that is accursed until the Lord come, or everlastingly. Which is thought to have been executed upon *Hymeneus* and *Alexander* by Paul, (1 Tim. 1. 20.) and afterwards upon *Julian* by the Church then.

*Against whom is this Censure to proceed?*

This everlasting curse, which is the most fearful thunder-clap of God's judgment, is to be pronounced only against such as are desperately wicked, that have nothing profited by the former censures, and shewed their incorrigibleness by their obstinate and malicious resisting all means graciously used to reclaim them: giving tokens even of that unpardonable sin against

the Holy Ghost. Which fearful sin, by how much the more difficult it is to be discerned and known; by so much the more carefully is this heavy doom to be used by the church. Yet doubtless God doth sometimes give clear tokens thereof in blasphemous Apostates, such as *Julian* and others, who maliciously oppose, deride and persecute that truth of God which they have been enlightened in. And where God doth set such marks upon them, the Church of God may pronounce them to be such, and carry it self towards them accordingly.

*Who are the outward enemies that oppose themselves against the Church of Christ?*

Of the ene-  
mic of the  
Church

Some do under shew of friendship, and some with profession of enmity.

*Who are the open enemies?*

Heathens, Jews, Turks, and all that make profession of profaneness, by sitting down in the seat of scornors.

*What enemies are they, that make shew of friendship?*

Of the gene-  
ral Apostasy.

Such are all those, that bearing the name of Christians, do obstinately deny the faith, whereby we are joynd unto Christ, which are called *Hereticks*; or that break the bond of charity, whereby we are tied in communion one to another, which are termed *Schismaticks*; or else add tyranny to schism, and heresie, as that great *Antichrist*, the head of the general Apostasie, which the Scriptures forewarned of by name.

*Where are we forewarned of that Apostasie?*

In 1 *Tim.* 4. 1. and 2 *Thess.* 2. 3. where the Apostle foretelleth, that there shall be a general Apostasie, or falling away from the truth of the Gospel, before the latter day.

*Is it meant, that the whole Church shall fall away from Christ?*

No: it were impossible that a perfect head should be without a body.

*Why is it then called general?*

Because the Gospel having been universally preached throughout the world; from it, both whole nations did fall, and the most part alie even of those Nations that keep the profession of it: howbeit still there remained a Church, though there were no settled estate thereof.

*Is it likely the Lord would bar so many nations that lived under Antichrist and that so long, from the means of salvation?*

Why not? and that most justly. For if the whole world of the Gentiles were rejected, when the Church was only in *fury*, for some 1500 years and seeing even the Jews ten Tribes were rejected, and of the remainder, but a few were of the Church: with great reason might the Lord reject those nations and people for so many ages; seeing they rejected God's grace in falling away from the Gospel, which the Lord most graciously revealed unto them, rather then unto their Fathers before them.

*Is this Apostasie necessarily laid upon the See of Rome?*

Yes verily: as by the description that followeth may evidently appear.

*What are the parts of this Apost. se.?*

The head and the body. For as Christ is the head of the Church, which is his body: so Antichrist is the head of the Romish Church which is his

*Who is that Antichrist?*

Of Antichrist  
and who he is

He is one who under the colour of being for Christ; and under title of his *Vicgerent*, exalteth himself above, and against Christ; opposing himself unto him in all his offices, and ordinances, both in Church and Common-

wealth:

wealth : bearing authority in the Church of God ; ruling over that City with seven Hills, which did bear rule over nations, and put our Lord to death : a Man of sin, a Harlot, a Mother of spiritual fornications to the Kings and people of the nations, a child of perdition, and a destroyer ; establishing himself by lying miracles, and false wonders. All which marks together do agree with none but the Pope of *Rome*.

*How doth the Apostle in 2 Thess. 2. 3. describe this Antichristian head unto us ?*

First, he describeth what he is towards others : and then what he is in himself.

*What is he towards others ?*

That is declared by two special titles the *Man of sin*, and *Son of perdition* : declaring hereby, not so much his own sin and perdition, which is exceeding great ; as of those that receive his mark, whom he causeth to sin, and consequently to fall into perdition, as *Jeroboam*, who is often branded with the mark of causing *Israel* to sin. And he is so much more detestable then he ; by how much both his Idolatry is more execrable, and hath drawn more Kingdoms after him, then *Jeroboam* did Tribes.

*In what respect is he called the man of sin ?*

In that he caused many to sin : and this the Pope doth in a high degree ; justifying sin, not by oversight, but by Laws advisedly made ; not only commanding some sins, which we are by our corrupt nature prone unto. as spiritual fornication, but also (to the great profanation of the holy name and profession of Christ) permitting and teaching for lawful such as even our corrupt nature (not wholly subverted through enormous custom of sin) abhorreth : as incestuous marriages, and breaking of faith and leagues, equivocating, and the like ; which profane men (by the very light of nature) do detest.

*In what sence is he called the child of perdition ?*

Not as the unthrift mentioned in the Gospel, (*Luk. 15. 32.*) neither as *Judas*, who is passively called the Son of perdition, (*Joh. 17. 12.*) but actively, as it is other-where expounded, where he is called the destroyer, (*Rev. 9. 11.*) because he destroyeth many. And that the Pope is such an one, some of his own Secretaries make it good ; confessing that many who were well disposed persons before their entring into that See, became cursed and cruel beasts when once they were settled in the same, as if there were some pestilent poyson in that seat infecting those that sit therein.

*What learn you of this ?*

That the calling of the Pope is unlawful. For every office or calling which the Lord doth not bless, or wherein none occupying the place groweth in piety, is to be esteemed for an unlawful calling : for in a lawful calling some (at the least) are found in all ages profitable to the Church or Commonwealth.

*What is the use of all this doctrine ?*

That whosoever are partakers of the sins of *Rome*, are also under the same curse : and therefore such of us as have lived in Popery should examine our selves if we have truly repented us of it ; first, by the change of our understanding, as whether we have grown in the knowledge of the truth : and secondly, by the change of our affections, as whether we hate Popery, and love the truth unfeignedly ; and so let every one judge himself, that he be

not judged, and that with harder judgment, according as God hath been the longer patient towards us. *Rom. 2. 4.*

*What further?*

That there can be no found agreement betwixt Popery and the profession of the Gospel; no more than betwixt light and darkness, falshood and truth, God and Belial: and therefore no reconciliation can be devised betwixt them. For if the members of Antichrist shall be destroyed, we cannot in any sort communicate with them in their errors, unless we will bear them company in their destruction also.

*Doth every error destroy the soul?*

2 Pet. 2. 1.

No verily. For as every wound killeth not a man, so every error depriveth not a man of salvation: but as the vital parts being wounded or infected, bring death, so those errors that destroy the fundamentall points and heads of faith bring everlasting destruction; in which kind is Popery, which sundry wayes overthroweth the principles and grounds of our holy faith, and therefore is termed an Apostasie, or departing from the faith.

*Is it then impossible for a Pope to be saved?*

No; it is not impossible, his sin being not necessarily against the Holy Ghost, to which only repentance is denied. For some (in likely hood) have entred into, and continued in that See ignorantly; and therefore may possibly find place to repentance. But if any be saved, it is a secret hidden with God: for concerning any thing that appears by the end of any Pope, since he was lift up into the Emperours chair, and discovered to be the man of sin, there is no grounded hope given to persuade that any one of them is saved.

*So much of Antichrist, what he is towards others. What is he in himself?*

That is set down in two points. First, in that (contrary to right, and by meer usurpation) he feareth himself in the Temple of God, as if he were Christ's Vicar, being indeed his enemy: both which the word Antichrist noteth.

Secondly, in that he is expressly named an adversary, and one that is contrary to Christ.

*Wherein is the Pope adversary unto Christ?*

Every way; in life, and in office.

*How in life?*

In that Christ being most pure and holy, yea holiness it self; the Popes many of them are, and have been, most filthy and abominable in blaspheming, conjuring, murdering, covetousness, whoring, and that incestuously and Sodomitically: and yet will they in their ordinary Titles be called holy, yea holiness it self; which is proper only to Christ.

*How in office?*

First, in his Kingdom. Christ's Kingdom is without all outward shew or pomp: but the Popes Kingdom consisteth wholly in Pomp, and Shews, as imitating his Predecessors the Emperours of Rome in his proud, stately, and lordly offices, princely train, and outrageous expences in every sort.

Secondly, in his Priest-hood: in raising up another Sacrifice than Christ's, another Priest-hood than his, other Mediators than him.

Thirdly, in his propheticall office: in that he teacheth clean contrary to him. Christ taught nothing but what he received of his Father: the Pope setteth out his own Canons and decrees of Councils; and in them he teacheth

teacheth such doctrine as overthroweth the main foundation of that which Christ taught.

*What is the second effect?*

That he is exceeding lifted up against all that is called God.

*How doth this agree to the Pope?*

More fitly than to any other person. For Christ being very God, abaseth himself unto the assuming of the nature of man: the Pope a vile man, advanceth himself to the Throne of God. Christ being above all secular power, paid tribute, and was taxed, and suffered himself to be crowned with a Crown of Thorns, and bear his own Cross: but the Pope, being under all secular power, exalteth himself above all secular powers, exacteth Tribute of Kings, setteth his foot on the neck of Emperours, carrieth a triple Crown of gold, and is born upon mens shoulders.

*But he calleth himself the servant of servants?*

Though he do, yet (by the confession of his own Canonists) he doth it but dissemblingly and in hypocrisie, which is double iniquity; for they say, that he doth in humility only say so; not that he is indeed so as he saith.

*What are the effects of this his pride?*

They are two. First, he sitteth in the Church as God. For he bindeth the consciences of men by his decrees, which no Prince's Law can do. For though men observe no such Laws, yet if they break them not of contempt, they are discharged, if they did bear the penalty prescribed in them.

*By this it seemeth that the Church of Rome is yet the Church of God although corrupt; seeing it is said, that he sitteth in the Temple of God?*

No verily: but it is so said, first, because it beareth the name of the Church: for the Scripture giveth the name to a thing according to that it hath been; as when Christ saith, *The abomination of desolation shall stand in the holy place*; he meaneth not that the Temple was then holy, which at that time, (being no figure nor shadow of Christ and his Church) was profaned, but that it had been holy: so we confess that there had been a true Church in Rome; which is now no Church of Christ, but the Synagogue of Satan.

Secondly, he is said to sit in the Temple of God, because he exerciseth his tyrannical rule in the christian world, and is most busie in those parts where Christ hath his church, and the Gospel is professed; labouring in all places, either by himself or his wicked instruments, to overthrow or corrupt, poyson or hinder the free course of the Gospel: so that in this regard he may be said to sit in the Temple of God, that is, to reign and tyrannize in the Church of God; though the city where he is, be *Sodom*, and the Church whereof he is head, the Synagogue of Satan.

*What is the other effect of his pride?*

He boasteth himself that he is God: as the Popes flatterers in the canon Law call him, *Our Lord God the Pope*. Neither doth his pride stay there, but also he challengeth to himself things proper to God: as the title of Holiness, also power to forgive sins; and to carry infinite souls to hell without check or controlement, and to make of nothing something; yea, to make the Scriptures to be no Scriptures, and no Scripture to be Scripture, at his pleasure, yea to make of the Creature the Creator.

*It may seem to be an impossible thing, that men should be carried away from the faith of the Gospel, by one so monstrous and directly opposite to Christ?*

It might seem so indeed, if at once at a sudden he had shewed himself in such foul colours; and therefore by certain degrees of iniquity he raised himself to this height of wickedness, and did not at the first shew himself in such a monstrous shape and likeness.

*How doth that appear?*

By the Apostle, who in the 2 *Thef.* 2. 3. unto 13. sheweth of two courses the Devil held to bring this to pass: one secret and covert, before this man of sin was revealed; the other when he was revealed and set up in his Seat

*What were the wayes of Antichrists coming before he was revealed?*

Those several errors which were spread, partly in the Apostles time, and partly after their time, thereby to make a way for his coming. And in this respect, this mystery of iniquity was begun to be wrought (as it were) under ground and secretly in the Apostles time.

*How was this mystery of iniquity wrought in the Apostles time?*

By many ambitious spirits, (as it were) petty Antichrists, which were desirous to be Lord's over the church; and wicked Hereticks, which then sowed many errors and Heresies, as justification by works: worshipping of Angels, and which put Religion in meats, and condemned marriage, &c. which were beginnings and grounds of Popery and Antichristianism. 2 *John* 9. *Acts* 5. 1. *Gal.* 1. 6, 7. & 2. 16. *Col.* 2. 18, 21. 1 *Tim.* 4. 3.

*What gather you of this?*

That those whom God hath freed from the bondage of Popery, should strive to free themselves from all the remnants thereof; lest if they cleave still to any of them, God in judgment bring the whole upon them again.

*How shall Antichrist's Kingdom be continued and advanced after that he is revealed?*

By the power of Satan, in lying miracles and false wonders.

*What difference is there betwixt Christ's miracles and theirs?*

The differences between Christ's miracles and the Popes.

Very great every way. For Christ's miracles were true: whereas these are false and lying and by legerdemain. Christ's miracles were from God: but theirs, where there is any strange thing and above the common reach of men, from the Devil. Christ's miracles were for the most part profitable to the health of man: but theirs altogether unprofitable, and for a vain shew. Christ's miracles were to confirm the truth: but theirs to confirm falsehood.

*What gather you of this?*

Mat. 24. 24.  
Deu. 13. 1, 2, 3.

That seeing the Popes Kingdom glorieth so much in wonders, it is most like, that he is Antichrist: seeing the false Christs and the false Prophets shall do great wonders to deceive (if it were possible) the very Elect, and that some of the false Prophets Prophecies shall come to pass, we should not therefore believe the doctrine of Popery for their wonders sake, seeing the Lord thereby tryeth our faith; who hath given to Satan great knowledge and power to work stranger things, to bring those to damnation who are appointed unto it. Moreover, whatsoever Miracles are not profitable to some good, neither tend to confirm a truth, they are false and lying. So that as the Lord left an evident difference between his miracles and the enchantments of the Egyptians; so hath he left an evident difference between the miracles of Christ and his Apostles, and those of the Romish Synagogue:

Exod. 7. 2.

*Are not miracles as necessary now, as they were in time of the Apostles?*

No

No verily. For the doctrine of the Gospel being then new unto the world, had need to have been confirmed with miracles from heaven: but being once confirmed there is no more need of miracles; and therefore we keeping the lame doctrine of Christ and his Apostles, must content our selves with the confirmation which hath already been given.

*What ariseth out of this?*

That the doctrine of Popery is a new doctrine, which had need to be confirmed with new miracles; and so it is not the doctrine of Christ, neither is established by his miracles.

*What force shall the Miracles of Antichrist have?*

Marvellous great, to bring many men to damnation: God, in just revenge of the contempt of the truth, sending a strong delusion among them.

*Hitherto we have heard Antichrist described by his effects and properties: now tell me, where is the place of his special residence?*

That is the City of Rome.

*How doth that appear?*

First, because he that letteth at the time when Paul wrote, was the Empe- The fear of Antichrist.  
rour of Rome, who did then sit there and must be dis-seated, (as the learned Papists themselves grant) e'er Antichrist could enter upon it. Secondly, John called the City where he must sit, the Lady of the world: (Rev. 17. 18.) which at that time agreed only to Rome, being the Mother City of the world. Thirdly, it was that City which was seated upon seven hills (Rev. 17. 9.) which by all ancient records belongeth properly to Rome. As for the occasion of the Popes placing there, it came by the means of translating of the seat of the Empire from Rome to Constantinople, from whence ensued also the parting of the Empire into two parts: by which division it being weakened, and after also sundred in affection, as well as in place, was the easier to be entred upon, and obtained by the Pope.

*What do you further gather of that the Apostle saith, that he that letteth shall let?*

That the Antichrist is not one particular man, as the Papists do fancy; for then by the like phrase he that letteth must be one particular man: where it cannot be that one man should live so many hundred years, as from Paul's time to the time of the translation of the Empire from Rome, much less until within two years and a half of the latter day, as they imagine the time of Antichrist. And therefore as by him that letteth is understood a succession of Emperours, not one man alone: so by Antichrist the man of sin is understood a succession of men, and not one only man: So in Dan. 7. 3, 17. the four beasts, and the four Kings, do not signifie four particular men, but four governments; in every one whereof there were sundry men that ruled. So that the argument of the Papists, who upon the words (the man of sin) would prove, that the Antichrist the Apostle speaketh of, is one singular man, is but vain, and hath no consequence in it.

*But how can Antichrist be already come, seeing the Empire yet standeth?*

The name of the Empire only remaineth, the thing is gone. For he hath neither the chief City, nor the Tribute: nor the command of the people: and therefore he can be no let to the Antichrists coming; especially the Pope having gotten such an upper hand over him, as to cause him to wait at his gate barefoot, and to hold his stirrop.

*What shall be the end of this Antichrist?*

God shall confound him with the breath of his mouth, that is, with the preaching of his Word. Which serveth for another argument to prove the Pope to be Antichrist: for whereas he had subdued Kingdoms and Empires under his feet, he hath been of late mightily suppressed by the word preached, and not by outward force, as other Potentates use to be.

*What learn you of this?*

The marvellous power of God's word to suppress whatsoever riseth against it: for if the mightiest cannot stand before it, much less the smallest. And therefore it is expressed by a mighty wind, *Acts* 2. 2, 3. which carrieth all before it; and by fire, which consumeth all, and pierceth all. And it declareth a marvellous easie victory against the enemies, when it is said that with the breath of his mouth he shall consume his enemies.

*What else shall be the overthrow of Antichrist?*

The glorious appearance of the Son of God in the latter day.

*What gather you of this?*

That before the Last day he shall not be utterly consumed. Whereof notwithstanding it followeth not that the head should remain till then: for the Beast and the false Prophet shall be taken and cast into the fire before the latter day; but some shall retain a liking of him and his errors and superstitions, even till the last day.

*Hitherto of the head of the general Apostasie. What are the members of it?*

They are first described by their end, even a number of people that should perish: which accordeth with that name and property of the head, *the Destroyer or Son of perdition*; being truly verified in them, in regard of the fearful end he shall bring them to.

*What is the use of this?*

That as no poyson can take away the life of an elect: so small occasions carry away such as are appointed to destruction.

*How other wise are these members of Antichrist described?*

By this that they never love the truth, although they understood and professed it.

*How should a man love the truth?*

For the truths sake; not for vain glory, fleshly delight or commodity.

*How appeareth it that men love the word of God?*

When they walk accordingly, and keep faith and a good conscience; which some losing by their wicked life, lost also their Faith, that is their Religion. *1 Tim.* 1. 19.

*How is it to be understood, that God giveth men up to strong delusions?*

Because God is a just Judge, which by them either punisheth or correcteth former sins, and especially the contempt of the Gospel: in which regard even amongst us now, some are cast into the sink of Popery, some into the Family of love; some become *Arians*, some *Anabaptists*; all which are (as it were) divers Gaols and Dungeons, whereinto he throweth those that are cold and careless Professors of the Gospel.

*What learn you by this?*

That they which imagine God favourable unto them notwithstanding their sins, because their life, or goods, or honours are spared, are foully deceived. For when the Lord ceaseth to reprove any, or to strive with them; then doth he give them up into vanity of their own minds, to do their



their own wicked wills ; which is the greatest judgment, and very usual with God to do. *Rom. 1. 24, 26.*

*What is our duty in such cases ?*

To pray to the Lord to keep us from all error : but if for our trial, or further hardning of others, it please him to send errors amongst us, that it would please him to preserve us in that danger, that we talk not of that bait, whereby Satan seeketh to catch us.

*What other cause is there of sending these errors ;*

That those may be damned, which believe not the truth : for as God hath appointed them to damnation, so betwixt his counsel in rejecting them, and the final effect of it, there must be sin to bring the effect justly upon them.

*What reason is annexed of their just damnation ?*

Because they rest in unrighteousness, having their ears itching after error ; which they drink in, as the earth drinketh up rain, or the fishes water. So that albeit they be powerfully sent to God in his Judgment ; yet are they also greedily desired and affected of them.

*Having spoken at large of the Providence of God's disposing of men to this world : it followeth to speak of his Providence concerning mankind in the world to come. How doth God then deal with men after this life ?*

He bringeth them all unto Judgment.

*What is meant here by Judgment ?*

The pronouncing, and executing of the irrevocable sentence of Absolution or Condemnation.

*How is that done ?*

Partly, on every man in particular at the hour of his death : (*Heb. 9. 27.*) but fully and generally upon all men, at the second coming of Christ (*Act 17. 31.*) The death of every one severally goeth immediately before the particular Judgment. The general Resurrection of all goeth before the final Judgment which shall be at the last day.

*Must all men then die ?*

Yea, all both good and bad : (*Psal. 49. 10. Eccles. 2. 16.*) save that unto some, namely such as shall be found alive at the coming of Christ a Change shall be in stead of Death.

*Death being the punishment of sin ; how cometh it to pass that the righteous die, to whom all sins are forgiven ?*

Death indeed came on all mankind by reason of sin : (*Rom. 5. 12.*) but yet it is not in all things the same to the godly and to the wicked. For howsoever unto both it be the enemy of nature, as the end of natural life : (*1 Cor. 15. 26. Psal 90. 3.*) yet

1. Unto the godly it is a token of Gods love ; unto the wicked of his anger : *Psal. 37. 38. 6. Job. 18. 13, 14.*

2. Unto the godly it is a rest from labour and misery : (*Apoc. 14. 13.*) unto the wicked it is the height of all worldly evils. *Luk. 12. 20.*

3. Unto the godly it is the utter abolishing of sin, and perfection of mortification : (*Rom. 6. 7.*) unto the wicked it is the conquest of sin and accomplishment of their spiritual captivity.

4. Unto the godly it is so far from being a separation from Christ, that even the body severed from the soul, and rotting in the grave, is yet united unto Christ, and the soul freed from the body is with him in Paradise : (*Luke 23. 43. Phil. 1. 23*) unto the wicked it is an utter cutting off from the favourable presence, and fruition of God.

5. Unto

5. Unto the godly it is the beginning of heavenly glory; unto the wicked it is the entrance into hellish and endless torments. *Luke 16. 22, 23.*

*How are men judged at the hour of death?*

Of particular judgment at the hour of death.

1. God at that instant pronounceth and conscience apprehendeth, the sentence of blessing or cursing. *Heb. 6. 27.*

2. The soul of every man accordingly is (by the power of God, and the ministry of Angels) immediately conveyed into that state of happiness or misery, wherein it shall remain till the Resurrection, and from thence forth both body and soul for ever. *Luke 16. 22, 23, 26. Eccl. 11. 3.*

*What gather you of this?*

That the doctrine of Purgatory and Prayer for the dead is vain: seeing it appeareth by the word of God, that the souls of those that die in God's favour are presently received into joy. *Esa. 57. 2. Joh. 5, 24. Luke 23. 43. Apoc. 14. 13. with 1 Thef. 4. 16.* and the souls of those that die in their sins, cast into endless torments; no means being left after death to procure remission of sins. *Isa. 22. 14. John 8. 24. & 9. 4. Rom. 6, 10.*

*What is the general and final Judgment?*

The general judgment  
*Eccl. 12. 24.  
1 Cor. 5. 10.*

That great day of assize for the whole world; wherein all mens lives that ever have been, are, or shall be, being duly examined, every one shall receive according to his works. (*Acts 17. 31. Eccles. 12. 14. 2 Cor. 5. 10.*) In which judgment we are to consider;

1. The preparation to it.
2. The acting of it.
3. The execution of the sentence.

*Wherein doth the preparation to the last judgment consist?*

In five things.

The preparation to the last judgment  
*Acts 1. 7.  
Mat. 13. 32.*

First, in the foretoking of the time thereof: which though it be so sealed up in the treasury of God's counsel, that neither man nor Angels, nor yet our Saviour himself, as a man in the days of his flesh, had exprest notice thereof, (that from the uncertainty and suddenness of it we might be taught to be always in readines for it;) yet it hath pleased God to acquaint us with some signs whereby we may discern Christ's approaching, as men in the Spring time may discern Summer approaching by the shooting forth of the Fig tree. *Mat. 24. 32, 33.*

*What are the signs foretoking the last judgment?*

The signs of the last judgment.  
*Mat. 24.*

They are certain notable changes in the World and Church: some further off, some nearer unto the coming of Christ; as,

1. The publishing and receiving the Gospel throughout the world.
2. The Apostasie of most part of professors not loving the truth.
3. The revealing of Antichrist that man of sin and Child of perdition.
4. Common corruptions in manners joyned with security; as in the days of Noah and Lot.
5. Wars and troubles in the world and Church.
6. False Christs; attended with false Prophets, and armed with false miracles.

1 Tim 4. 1.  
2 Thef. 1. 3.

7. The calling of the Jews unto the faith of the Gospel.  
8. And lastly, signs in Heaven, Earth, and all the Elements. As the darkning of the Sun, and Moon, &c. Yea, firing of the whole frame of Heaven, and Earth, with the sign of the Son of man; whereby his coming shall then be clearly apprehended by all men. *2 Pet. 3. 7. Matt. 24. 30.*

*What is the second thing in the preparation?*

The coming of Jesus Christ the Judge of the world: who in his humane visible body (but yet with unspeakable glory) shall suddenly break forth like lightning through the Heavens, riding on the clouds, environed with a flame of fire, attended with all the host of the elect Angels, and specially with the voice and shout of an Archangel and the Trumpet of God; and so shall sit down in the royal throne of judgment.

The second thing in the preparation.

*What is the third thing?*

The summoning and presenting of all both dead and living men, together with Devils, before the glorious throne of Christ the Judge.

The third thing.

*How shall all men both dead and living be summoned?*

By the voice of Christ, and the ministry of his Angels; and namely by the shut and Trumpet of the Archangel: whereto the Lord joyning his divine power (as unto the word preached for the work of the first resurrection (shall in a moment both raise the dead with their own bodies and every part hereof though never so dispersed; and change the living, so that it shall be with them as if they had been a long time dead and were now raised to life again.

John 5. 28.  
Mat. 24. 31.  
1 Cor. 15. 52.

*Shall there be no difference between the resurrection of the Elect and Reprobate?*

Yes. For howsoever they shall both rise by the same mighty voice and power of Christ in the same bodies wherein they lived upon earth, and those so altered in quality, as then they shall be able to abide for ever in that estate whereunto they shall be Judged: yet,

1. The Elect shall be raised, as members of the body of Christ, by vertue derived from his resurrection: the Reprobate, as Malefactors, shall be brought forth of the prison of the grave, by vertue of the judiciary power of Christ and of the curse of the law.

2. The Elect shall come forth to everlasting life, which is called the resurrection of life, the Reprobate to shame and perpetual contempt, called the resurrection of condemnation.

3. The bodies of the Elect shall be spiritual, that is glorious, powerful, nimble, impatient, (1 Cor. 15. 42, 43, 44. Phil. 3. 21.) but the bodies of the Reprobate shall be full of uncomeliness and horror, agreeable to the guiltiness and terror of their conscience, and liable to extrem torment.

*How shall all men be presented before the throne of Christ?*

1. The Elect being gathered by the Angels, shall with great joy be caught up into the air to meet the Lord. Luk. 21. 28. 1 Theff. 4. 17.

2. The Reprobate, together with the Devil and his Angels, shall with extrem horror and confusion be drawn into his presence. Rev. 6. 15.

*What is the fourth thing?*

The separation of the Elect from the Reprobate. For Christ, the great Shepherd, shall then place the Elect, as his Sheep that have heard his voice and followed him, on his right hand; and the Reprobates with the Devils, as straying Goats, on the left hand. Mat. 25. 33.

The fourth thing.

*What is the fifth and last thing?*

The opening of the book of record, by which the dead shall be judged! Rev. 20. 12. viz.

The fifth thing.

1. The Several books of mens consciences: which then, by the glorious illumination of Christ, the Sun of righteousness, shining in his full strength, shall be so enlightned, that men shall perfectly remember whatever good or evil they did in the time of the life; the secrets of all hearts being then revealed.

2. The

2. The book of life, that is the eternal decree of God to save his Elect by Christ: which decree shall then at length be made known to all.

*Thus far of the preparation to judgment: What are we to consider in the second place?*

The act of judgment, and how performed.

The act of judgment: wherein the Elect shall first be acquitted, that they may after as assistants Joyn with Christ in the Judgment of the reprobate men and Angels.

*How shall the act of judgment be performed?*

1. By examination.
2. By pronouncing sentence.

*How shall the examination be?*

1. According to the law of God, which hath been revealed unto men: whether it be the law of nature only, which is the remainder of the moral Law written in the hearts of our first parents, and conveyed by the power of God unto all men, to leave them without excuse; or that written Word of God, vouchsafed unto the church in the Scriptures, first of the old, and after also of the new Testament as the rule of faith and life. *Rom. 2. 12.*

Mat. 12. 27,  
41, 42

2. By the evidence of every mans conscience, bringing all his works, whether good or evil, to light; bearing witness with him or against him: together with the testimony of such, who either by doctrine, company, or example, have approved or condemned him.

*Shall there be no difference in the examination of the Elect & the Reprobate?*

Ezek. 18. 22.  
Rev. 14. 17.

Yes. For, 1. The Elect shall not have their sins, for which Christ satisfied, but only their good works, remembred.

2. Being in Christ, they and their works shall not undergo the strict trial of the Law simply in it self; but as the obedience thereof doth prove them to be true partakers of the grace of the Gospel.

*Shall there be any such reasoning at the last judgment, as seemeth Mat. 7. & 25?*

No but the consciences of men being then enlightned by Christ shall clear all those doubts, and reject those objections and excuses, which they seem now to apprehend.

*How shall the sentence be pronounced?*

By the Judg himself, our Lord Jesus Christ: who according to the evidence and verdict of conscience touching works, shall adjudg the Elect unto the blessing of the kingdom of God his Father; and the Reprobates, with the Devil and his Angels, unto the curse of everlasting fire.

*Shall men then be judged to salvation or damnation for their works sake?*

Rom. 6. 23.

1. The wicked shall be condemned for the merit of their works; because being perfectly evil, they deserve the wages of damnation.

2. The godly shall be pronounced Just, because their works, though imperfect, do prove their faith (whereby they lay hold on Christ and his meritorious righteousness) to be a true faith; as working by love in all parts of obedience.

James 2. 18.  
Gal. 5. 7.

*Hitherto of the act of judgment. What are we to consider in the third and last place?*

The execution of the last judgment.  
Mat. 25. 46.  
Mal. 58. 10.

The execution of his Judgment: Christ, by his almighty power and ministry of his Angels, casting the Devils and Reprobate men into hell; and bringing God's Elect into the possession of his glorious kingdom. Wherein the Reprobates shall first be dispatched, that the righteous may joyce

to see the vengeance; and as it were wash their feet in the blood of the wicked.

*What shall be the state of the Reprobates in hell?*

They shall remain for ever in unspeakable torment of body, and anguish of mind; being cast out from the favourable presence of God, and glorious fellowship of Christ and his Saints (whose happiness they shall see and envy) into that horrible Dungeon figured in Scripture by utter darkness, blackness of darkness, weeping and gnashing of teeth, the Worm that never dieth, the fire that never goeth out, &c.

The estate of the Reprobates in hell  
2 Theff. 2. p

*What shall be the estate of the Elect in Heaven?*

They shall be unspeakably and everlastingly blessed and glorious in body and soul; being freed from all imperfections and infirmities, yea from such Graces as imply imperfection, as Faith, Hope, Repentance, &c. endowed with perfect Wisdom and Holiness, possessed with all the pleasures that are at the right hand of God, seated as Princes in Thrones of Majesty, crowned with Crowns of Glory, possessing the new Heaven and Earth wherein dwelleth Righteousness, beholding and being filled with the fruition of the glorious presence of God, and of the Lamb, Jesus Christ, in the company of innumerable Angels and holy Saints, as the Scripture phrases are.

The estate of the Elect in heaven.

*What shall follow this?*

Christ shall deliver up that dispensatory kingdom (which he received for the subduing of his enemies and accomplishing the salvation of his Church) unto God the Father, and God shall be all in all for all eternity.

*What use may we make of this doctrine concerning this general end and final judgment?*

First, it serveth to confute, not only heathen Philosophers; who, as in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was full of darkness, (*Rom. 1. 21*) being destitute of the Word of God to guide them: but also to confute many profane Atheists, in the church of God, who do not believe in their hearts those Articles of the resurrection and of the general judgment. It is much indeed, that there should be Atheists in the Church of God, and none in Hell; that any should deny, or doubt of that which the Devils fear and tremble at. But sure the Apostle *Peters* prophecy is fulfilled, *2 Pet. 3. 3. There shall come in the last dayes scoffers, walking after their own lusts, and saying? Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers died, all things continue alike from the beginning of the creation, and (as they would persuade themselves) so they shall for ever.* And answerable their lives are to such conceits: *Eccles. 11. 9.* But if neither the light of reason; (it being impossible that the truth and goodness and justice of God should take effect, if there were not after this life a doom and recompence, *1 Theff. 1. 6.*) Nor secondly, the light of conscience, which doubtless with *Felix, Acts 24. 25.* makes them tremble in the mid<sup>d</sup> of their obstinate gain-saying; Nor thirdly the light of Scripture can convince and persuade men of this truth: then we must leave them to be confuted and taught by woful experience, even by the feeling of those flames, which they will not believe to be any other than fancies; and by seeing the Lord Jesus coming in the clouds when all nations shall weep before him; and these Atheists especially, lament their obstinate infidelity with ever dropping tears, and ever enduring misery.

The use of this doctrine concerning the last judgment.

And this doctrine may be terrour to all graceless and wicked livers; to consider that the wrath of God shall be revealed from heaven against all ungodliness

ungodliness and unrighteousness of men : *Thef.* 1. 6. when all the sweetness of their sinful pleasures shall be turned into gall and bitterness for ever. *Wisd.* 5. 6, 7, 8.

*How may the consideration of this doctrine, touching the end of the world and the day of Judgment, be useful to the Godly?*

First, it should teach us: not to seek for happiness in this world, or set our affections on things below: for this world passeth away, and the things thereof.

Secondly, here is a fountain of Christian comfort, and a ground of Christian patience in all troubles, that there shall be an end, and a Saints hope shall not be cut off. *If in this life only we had hope, we were of all men most miserable.* 1 *Cor.* 15. 19. But here is the comfort and patience of the Saints: they wait for another world, and they know it is a just thing with God, to give them rest after their labours, 2 *Thef.* 1. 9. and a Crown after their combate, 2 *Tim.* 4. 8. and after their long pilgrimage, an everlasting habitation, 2 *Cor.* 5. 1. *Be patient* (saith the Apostle) *and settle your hearts for the coming of the Lord draweth near.* *James* 5. 7. when they that have sown in tears shall reap in joy. *Isa.* 126. 5.

Thirdly, from this doctrine, excellent arguments may be drawn to press Christians to a holy life. 2 *Pet.* 3. 11. *Seeing then all these things must be dissolved? what manner of persons ought we to be in all holy conversation, and godliness?* And verse 14. *Wherefore seeing ye look for such things, give diligence that you may be found of him in peace.* We should always live in expectation of the Lord Jesus in the Clouds, with Oyl in our Lamps, prepared for his coming. *Blessed is that servant whom his master when he cometh shall find so doing: he shall say unto him; Well done good and faithful servant, enter into thy Masters joy.*

*James.* 5. 7.  
*Heb.* 10. 36.

*Luke* 12. 43.  
*Mat.* 25. 21.

FINIS.

THE  
PRINCIPLES  
OF  
Christian Religion

WITH  
A brief METHOD of the  
DOCTRIN thereof.

---

Now fully *Corrected*, and much enlarged  
by the *Author*

James Usher, Archbishop of ARMAGH.

---

With his Preface thereunto.

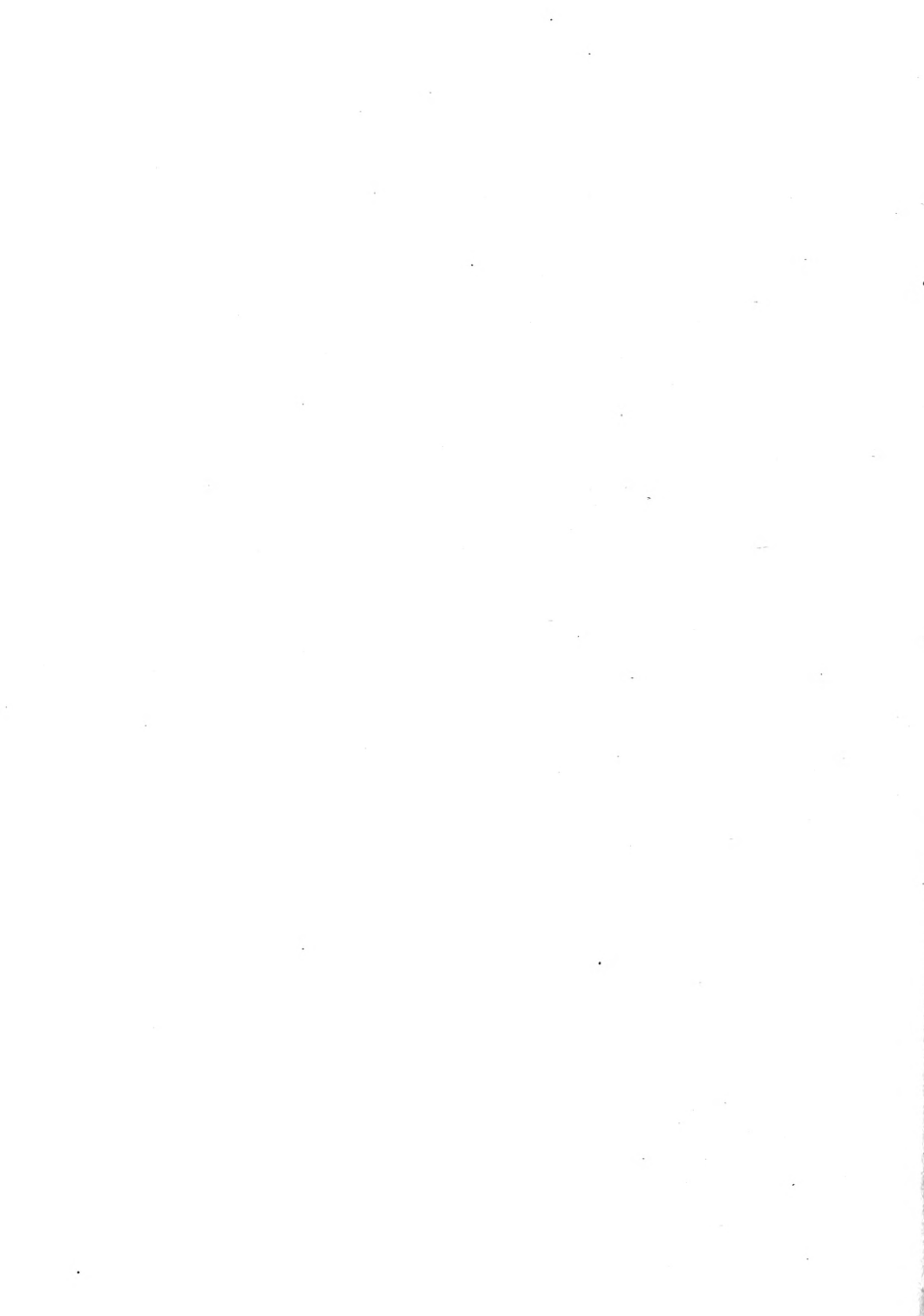
---

2. Tim. 1. 13.  
*Hold fast the form of sound words, which thou hast heard of me, in  
faith and love which is in Christ Jesus.*

---

LONDON,

Printed for Jonathan Robinson and A. and J.  
Churchill, J. Taylor and J. Wyat in St. Paul's  
Church-Yard. 1702







*To the Reader.*

**W**Hen I was about the age of two or three and twenty years, I drew up these two short Summaries of the heads of Christian Religion; the one containing the more necessary and plainer Principles thereof, fit to be known of all: the other, the methodica and more full declaration of some chief points thereof, framed to the capacity of such as had made a further progress in the knowledge of these heavenly truths. I little then Imagined, that such rude draughts as these were, should ever have been presented unto the publick view of the world. But seeing, contrary to my mind, they have by many Impressions been divulged, and that in a very faulty manner: I have been perswaded at last, upon some re-vi-sal of them, to let them now go abroad in some more tolerable condition than they did before. Hoping, that as at the first I had the favour from God, that none did despise my youth; so now these first fruits of mine will not altogether be contemned, being by me again presented unto thee when my Head is gray,

**JAMES ARMAGH.**

**THE**





THE  
PRINCIPLES  
OF  
Christian Religion

---

Question.

**W**hat sure ground have we to build our Religion upon?

*Answer.* The word of God contained in the Scriptures.

*Q. What are those Scriptures?*

*A.* Holy writings, indited by God himself for the perfect instruction of his Church.

*Q. What gather you of this, that God is the Author of these Writings?*

*A.* That therefore they are of most certain credit, and highest authority.

*Q. How serve they for the perfect instruction of the Church?*

*A.* In that they are able to instruct us sufficiently, in all points of Faith that we are bound to believe, and all good duties that we are bound to practise.

*Q. What gather you of this?*

*A.* That it is our duty to acquaint our selves with these holy writings, and not to receive any doctrine that hath not warrant from thence.

*Q. What is the first point of Religion, you are to learn out of God's word?*

*A.* The Nature of God.

*Q. What is God?*

*A.* God is a Spirit, most perfect, most wise, almighty and most holy.

*Q. What mean you by calling God Spirit?*

*A.* That God hath no body at all: and therefore must not be thought to be like unto any thing which may be seen by the eye of man.

*Q. Are there any more God's than one?*

*A.* No: there is only one God: though in that one Godhead there be three persons.

*Q. Which*

Q. Which is the first of these persons ?

A. The Father, who begetteth the Son.

Q. Which is the second ?

A. The Son begotten of the Father.

Q. Which is the third ?

A. The Holy Ghost proceeding from the Father and the Son.

Q. What did God determine concerning his Creatures ?

A. He did before all time, by his unchangeable counsel, ordain whatsoever after wards should come to pass.

Q. In what manner had all things their beginning ?

A. In the beginning of time, when no creature had any being, God by his Word alone. In the space of six days created all things.

Q. Which are the principal Creatures ?

A. Angels and men.

Q. What is the nature of Angels ?

A. They are wholly spiritual, having no body at all.

Q. What is the nature of Man ?

A. Man consisteth of two diverse parts ; a body and a Soul.

Q. What is the body ?

A. The outward and earthly part of man ; made at the beginning of the dust of the earth.

Q. What is the Soul ?

A. The inward and spiritual part of man ; which is immortal, and never can die.

Q. How did God make man at the beginning ?

A. According to his own likeness and image.

Q. Wherein was the Image of God principally seen ?

A. In the perfection of the Understanding ; and the freedom and holiness of the Will.

Q. How many of mankind were created at the beginning ?

A. Two ; Adam the man, and Eve the woman : from both whom, all mankind did afterward proceed.

Q. What doth God after the Creation ?

A. By his Providence he preserveth and governeth his Creatures, with all things belonging unto them.

Q. What befel unto the Angels after the creation ?

A. Some continued in that holy estate wherein they were created, some of them fell, and became Devils.

Q. May the good Angels fall hereafter ?

A. No : but they shall always continue in their holiness and happiness.

Q. Shall the wicked Angels ever recover their first estate ?

A. They shall not : but be tormented in Hell world without end.

Q. How did God deal with Man, after he made him ?

A. He made a Covenant or agreement with Adam, and in him with all mankind.

Q. What was man bound to do by this Covenant.

A. To continue as holy as God at the first made him, to keep all God's Commandments and never to break any of them.

Q. What did God promise unto Man, if he did thus keep his Commandments.

A. The continuance of his favour and everlasting life.

Q. What did God threaten unto Man, if he did sin and break his Commandments ?

A. His

A. His dreadful curse, and everlasting death.

Q. Did man continue in that obedience which he did owe unto God?

A. No, for Adam and Eve obeying rather the persuasion of the Devil than the Commandment of God did eat of the forbidden fruit, and so fell away from God.

Q. Was this the sin of Adam and Eve alone; or are we also guilty of the same?

A. All we, that are their children, are guilty of the same sin: for we all sinned in them.

Q. What followed upon this sin?

A. The loss of the perfection of the Image of God, and the corruption of nature, in Man called original sin.

Q. Wherein standeth the corruption of Man's nature?

A. In six things principally.

Q. What is the first?

A. The blindness of the Understanding; which is not able to conceive the things of God.

Q. What is the second?

A. The forgetfulness of the memory; unfit to remember good things.

Q. What is the third?

A. The rebellion of the Will; which is wholly bent to sin, and altogether disobedient unto the will of God.

Q. What is the fourth?

A. Disorder of the Affections, of Joy, heaviness, love, anger, fear, and such like.

Q. What is the fifth?

A. Fear and confusion in the Conscience; condemning where it should not, and excusing where it should condemn.

Q. What is the sixth?

A. Every member of the body is become a ready instrument to put sin in execution.

Q. What are the fruits that proceed from this natural corruption?

A. Actual sins: whereby we break the Commandments of God in the whole course of our life.

Q. How do we thus break God's Commandments?

A. In thought, word, and deed: not doing that which we ought to do, and doing that which we ought not to do.

Q. What punishment is mankind subject unto, by reason of original and actual sin?

A. He is subject to all the plagues of God in this life; and endless torments in Hell after this life.

Q. Did God leave man in this woful estate?

A. No: but of his free and undeserved mercy entred into a New covenant with mankind.

Q. What is offered unto man in this new Covenant?

A. Grace and life everlasting is freely offered by God unto all that shall be made partakers of his Son Jesus Christ; who alone is Mediator betwixt God and Man.

Q. What are you to consider in Christ the Mediator of this Covenant?

A. Two things: his Nature and his office.

Q. How many Natures be there in Christ?

A. Two: the Godhead and the Manhood, joyned together in one person; which is no other but the second person of the Trinity.

Q. *Why must Christ be God?*

A. That his obedience and suffering might be of infinite worth and value, as proceeding from such a person, as was God equal to the Father, that he might be able to overcome the sharpness of death (which himself was to undergo) and to raise us from the death of sin, by sending his holy Spirit into our hearts.

Q. *Why must Christ be Man?*

A. Because the Godhead could not suffer: and it was further requisite, that the same nature which had offended should suffer for the offence; and that our nature, which was corrupted in the first Adam, should be restored to his integrity in the second Adam, Christ Jesus our Lord.

Q. *What is the Office of Christ?*

A. To be a Mediator betwixt God and Man.

Q. *What was required of Christ for making peace and reconciliation betwixt God and Man.*

A. That he should satisfy the first Covenant wherunto man was tied.

Q. *Wherein was Christ to make satisfaction to the first Covenant?*

A. In performing that righteousness which the Law of God did require of Man: and in bearing the punishment which was due unto Man for breaking of the same Law.

Q. *How did Christ perform that righteousness which God's Law requireth of Man?*

A. In that he was conceived by the Holy Ghost, without all spot of original corruption; and lived most holy all the days of his life, without all actual sin.

Q. *How did he bear the punishment which was due unto Man for breaking God's Law?*

A. In that he willingly for mans sake made himself subject to the curse of Law, both in body and soul: and humbling himself even unto the death, offered up unto his Father a perfect sacrifice for the sins of the world.

Q. *What is required of Man for obtaining the benefits of the Gospel?*

A. That he receive Christ Jesus whom God doth freely offer unto him.

Q. *By what means are you to receive Christ?*

A. By faith, whereby I believe the gracious promises of the Gospel.

Q. *How do you receive Christ by faith?*

A. By laying hold of him, and applying him with all benefits to the comfort of mine own soul.

Q. *What is the first main benefit which we do get by thus receiving Christ?*

A. Justification; whereby, in Christ, we receive the forgiveness of our sins, and are accounted righteous: being by that means freed from the guilt of sin and condemnation, and estated in a new interest unto everlasting life.

Q. *Whereby then must we look to be justified in the sight of God?*

A. Only by the merits of Christ Jesus, received of us by Faith.

Q. *What other main benefit do we get by receiving Christ?*

A. Sanctification; whereby we are freed from the dominion of sin, and the image of God is renewed in us.

Q. *Wherein is this Sanctification seen?*

A. In Repentance, and new Obedience springing from thence

Q. *What is Repentance?*

A. Repentance is a gift of God whereby a godly sorrow is wrought in the heart of the faithful, for offending God their merciful father by their former transgressions; together with a resolution for the time to come, to forsake their former courses, and to lead a new life.

Q. *What*

*Q. What call you new Obedience ?*

*A.* A careful endeavour which the faithful have to give unfeigned obedience unto all God's Commandments, according to that measure of strength wherewith God doth enable them.

*Q. What rule have we for the direction of our obedience ?*

*A.* The Moral Law of God: the sum whereof is contained in the ten Commandments.

*Q. What are the chief parts of this Law ?*

*A.* The duties which we owe unto God, set down in the first Table: and that which we owe unto Man in the second.

*Q. What is the sum of the first Table ?*

*A.* That we love the Lord our God, with all our heart, with all our souls, and with all our minds.

*Q. How many Commandments belong to this Table ?*

*A.* Four.

*Q. Which is the first Commandment ?*

*A.* **I am the Lord thy God, which have brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage. Thou shalt have no other gods before me.**

*Q. What duty is enjoined in this Commandment ?*

*A.* That in the inward powers and faculties of our souls, the true eternal God be entertained, and he only.

*Q. Which is the second Commandment ?*

*A.* **Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image.**

*Q. What duty is enjoined in this Commandment ?*

*A.* That all outward means of religious and solemn worship be given unto the same God alone; and not so much as the least degree thereof (even the bowing of the body) be communicated to any Image or representation either of God, or of any thing else whatsoever.

*Q. Which is the third Commandment ?*

*A.* **Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain: for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that takes his name in vain.**

*Q. What is enjoined in this Commandment ?*

*A.* That in the ordinary course of our lives, we use the Name of God, (that is, his titles, words, works, judgments, and whatsoever he would have himself known by) with reverence and all holy respect, that in all things he may have his due glory given unto him.

*Q. Which is the fourth Commandment ?*

*A.* **Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy, &c.**

*Q. What doth this Commandment require ?*

*A.* That we keep holy the Sabbath day; by resting from the ordinary businesses of this life, and bestowing that leisure, upon the exercises of Religion both publick and private.

*Q. What is the sum of the second Table ?*

*A.* That we love our Neighbours as our selves.

*Q. What Commandments belong to this Table ?*

*A.* The six last.

*Q. Which is the fifth Commandment ?*

*A.* **Honour thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.**

*Q. What kind of duties are prescribed in this Commandment, which is the first of the second Table ?*

*A.* Such duties as are to be performed with a special respect of superiours, inferiours, and equals: as namely, reverence to all superiours, obedience to such of them as are in authority; and whatsoever special duties concern the Husband and Wife, Parents and Children, Masters and Servants, Magistrate and People, Pastors and Flock, and such like.

*Q. Which is the sixth Commandment ?*

*A. Thou shalt not kill.*

*Q. What doth this Commandment enjoyn ?*

*A.* The preservation of the safety of mens persons, with all means tending to the same.

*Q. Which is the seventh Commandment ?*

*A. Thou shalt not commit adultery.*

*Q. What is required in this Commandment ?*

*A.* The preservation of the chastity of mens persons: for the keeping whereof, Wedlock is commanded unto them that stand in need thereof.

*Q. Which is the eight Commandment :*

*A. Thou shalt not steal.*

*Q. What things are ordered in this Commandment ?*

*A.* Whatsoever concerneth the goods of this life; in regard either of our selves, or of our neighbours.

*Q. How in regard of our selves;*

*A.* That we labour diligently in an honest and profitable calling; content our selves with the goods well gotten, and with liberality employ them to good uses.

*Q. How in regard of our neighbours ?*

*A.* That we use just dealing unto them in this respect, and use all good means that may tend to the furtherance of their estate.

*Q. Which is the ninth Commandment ?*

*A. Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour.*

*Q. What doth this Commandment require ?*

*A.* The using of truth in our dealing one with another; especially to the preservation of the good name of our neighbours.

*Q. Which is the tenth and last Commandment ?*

*A. Thou shalt not covet thy neighbours house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbours wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor any thing that is thy neighbours.*

*Q. What doth this Commandment contain ?*

*A.* It condemneth all wandering thoughts, that disagree from the love which we owe unto our Neighbours; although we never yield consent thereunto.

*Q. What means doth God use to offer the benefits of the Gospel unto men, and to work and increase his grace in them ?*

*A.* The outward Ministry of the Gospel.

*Q. Where is the Ministry executed ?*

*A.* In the visible Churches of Christ.

*Q. What do you call a visible Church ?*

*A.* A company of men that live under the outward means of salvation.

*Q. What are the principal parts of this Ministry ?*

*A.* The administration of the Word and Sacraments ?

*Q. What is the Word ?*

*A.* That



*A.* That part of the outward Ministry, which consisteth in the delivery of doctrine.

*Q.* What is a Sacrament ?

*A.* A Sacrament is a visible sign, ordained by God to be a seal for confirmation of the promises of the Gospel unto the due receivers thereof.

*Q.* Which are the Sacraments ordained by Christ in the new Testament ?

*A.* Baptism and the Lord's Supper.

*Q.* What is Baptism ?

*A.* The Sacrament of our admission into the Church ; sealing unto us our new birth, by the communion which we have with Christ Jesus.

*Q.* What doth the element of water in Baptism represent unto us ?

*A.* The blood and spirit of Jesus Christ our Lord.

*Q.* What doth the cleansing of the body represent ?

*A.* The cleansing of the Soul by the forgiveness of sins and imputation of righteousness.

*Q.* What doth the being under the water, and the freeing from it again, represent ?

*A.* Our dying unto sin, by the force of Christ's death ; and living again unto righteousness, through his resurrection.

*Q.* What is the Lord's Supper ?

*A.* The Sacrament of our preservation in the Church ; sealing unto us our spiritual nourishment and continual increase in Christ.

*Q.* What do the elements of Bread and Wine in the Lord's Supper represent unto us ?

*A.* The Body and Blood of Christ.

*Q.* What doth the breaking of the Bread and pouring out of the Wine represent ?

*A.* The sufferings whereby our Saviour was broken for our iniquities ; the shedding of his precious blood and pouring out of his Soul unto death.

*Q.* What doth the receiving of the bread and wine represent ?

*A.* The receiving of Christ by faith.

*Q.* What doth the nourishment which our body receiveth by vertue of this outward meat and drink seal unto us ?

*A.* The perfect nourishment and continual increase of strength which the inward man enjoyeth by vertue of the communion with Jesus Christ.

*Q.* After the course of this life is ended ; what shall be the estate of man in the world to come ?

*A.* Every one is to be judged, and rewarded according to the life which he hath lead.

*Q.* How many kinds be there of this Judgment ?

*A.* Two ; the one particular, the other general.

*Q.* What call you the particular Judgment ?

*A.* That which is given up on the Soul of every man, as soon as it is departed from the body.

*Q.* What is the state of the Soul of man, as soon as he departeth out of this life ?

*A.* The Souls of God's Children be presently received into Heaven, there to enjoy unspeakable comforts : the Souls of the wicked are sent into hell, there to endure endless torments.

*Q.* What call you the general Judgment ?

*A.* That which Christ shall in a solemn manner give upon all men at once ; when he shall come at the last day with the glory of his Father, and all men that ever have been from the beginning of the world until that day shall appear together before him, both in body and soul, whether they be quick or dead.

*Q.* How

*How shall the dead appear before the Judgment Seat of Christ?*

*A.* The bodies which they had in their life time, shall by the almighty power of God be restored again, and quickned with their Souls: and so there shall be a general resurrection from the dead.

*Q.* *How shall the quick appear?*

*A.* Such as then remain alive, shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye: which shall be to them in stead of death.

*Q.* *What sentence shall Christ pronounce upon the righteous?*

*A.* Come ye blessed of my Father; inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.

*Q.* *What sentence shall he pronounce upon the wicked?*

*A.* Depart from me ye cursed into everlasting fire; which is prepared for the Devil and his Angels.

*Q.* *What shall follow this.*

*A.* Christ shall deliver up the kingdom of his Father, and God shall be all in all.

*[The Questions that are thus marked, are to be omitted by new beginners.]*

**FINIS.**

A B R I E F  
M E T H O D  
O F T H E  
D O C T R I N E  
O F  
Christian Religion:  
S H E W I N G

The *Connection* of the chief *Points* thereof, with a more particular *Declaration* of some principal *Heads* which were but shortly touched in the former *Sum*.

---

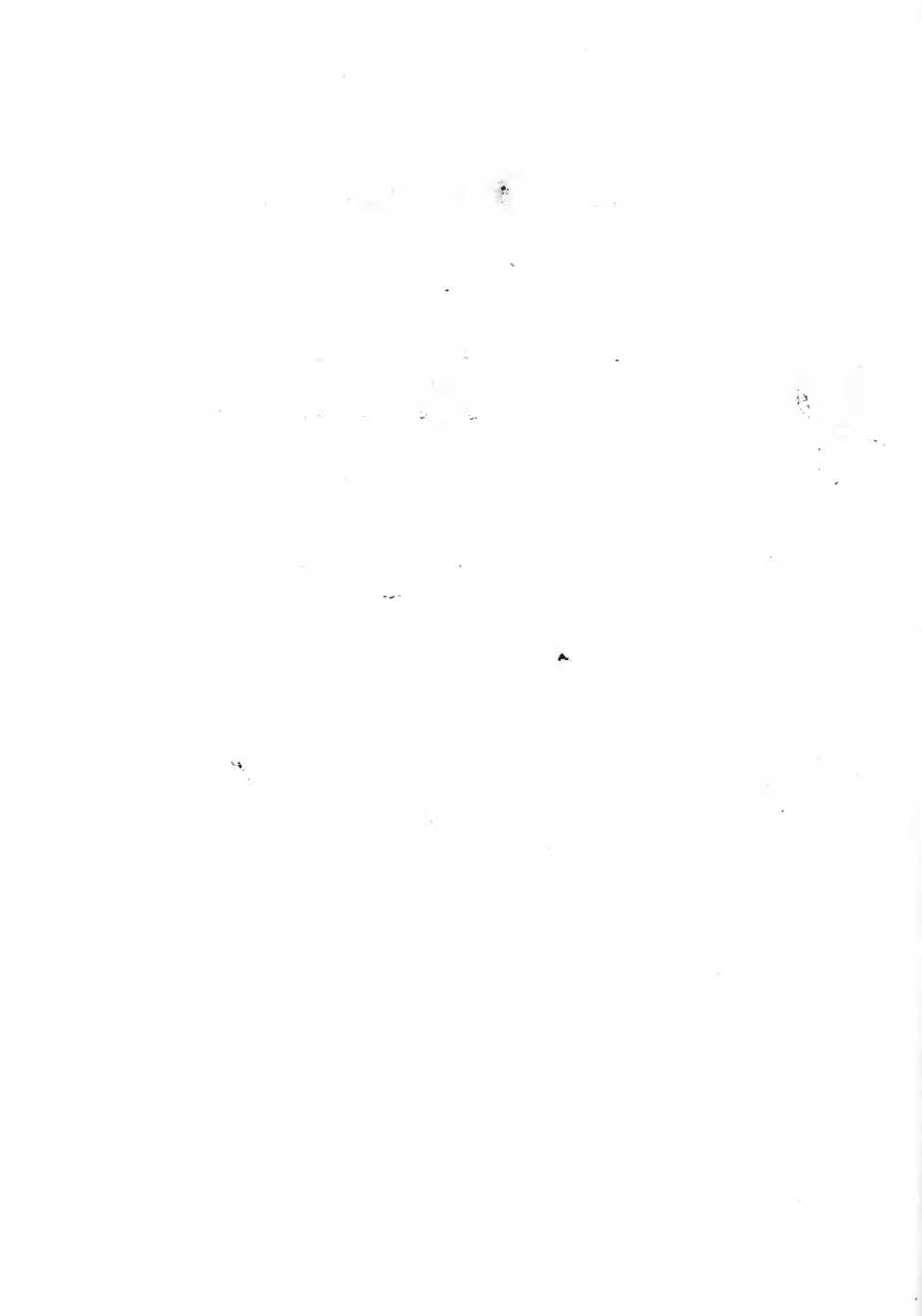
Heb. 6. 1.

*Therefore leaving the Doctrine of the beginning of Christ, let us be set forward unto perfection.*

---

L O N D O N,

Printed for *Jonathan Robinson* and *A. and J. Churchill, J. Taylor* and *J. Wyat* in *St. Paul's Church-Yard*. 1702



THE  
 METHOD  
 OF THE  
 DOCTRIN  
 OF  
 Christian Religion.

Question.

**W** *hat certain rule have we left us, for our direction in the knowledge of the true Religion, whereby we must be saved?*

*Answer.* The Holy Scriptures of the Old and New Testament: which God delivered unto us by the Ministry of his Servants the Prophets and Apostles, to inform us perfectly in all things that are needful for us to know in matters of Religion.

*Q. What be the general heads of Religion, which in these holy writings are delivered unto us?*

*A.* The knowledge of God's Nature and Kingdom.

*Q. What are we to consider in God's Nature?*

*A.* First his essence or being, which is but one, and then the Persons, which are three in number.

*Q. What do you consider in God's essence or being?*

*A.* His Perfection and Life.

*Q. How are we to conceive of God, in regard of his Perfection?*

*A.* That he is a Spirit, most single and infinite; having his being from himself, and having need of nothing which is without himself.

Q. Why do you call God a Spirit?

A. To declare his being to be such, as hath no body, and is not subject to our outward senses: that we admit not any base conceit of his glorious Majesty, in thinking him to be like unto any thing which can be seen by the eye of man.

Q. What understand you by the Singleness or Simplicity of God's Nature?

A. That he hath no parts nor quality in him, but whatsoever is in him, is God, and God's whole essence.

Q. What gather you of this, that God hath no parts nor qualities?

A. The he neither can be divided, nor changed; but remaineth always in the same state without any alteration at all.

Q. In what respects do you call Gods essence infinite?

A. In that it is free from all measure both of time and place.

Q. How is God free from all measure of time?

A. In that he is eternal, without beginning and without ending, never elder nor younger, and hath all things present unto him, nothing former or latter, past or to come.

Q. How is God infinite in regard of place?

A. In that he filleth all things and places, both within and without the World, present every where, and contained no where.

Q. How is he present every where? hath he one part of himself here, and another there?

A. No: for he hath no parts at all whereby he might be divided, and therefore must be wholly wheresoever he is.

Q. What do you call the Life of God?

A. That by which the divine nature is in perpetual action, most simply and infinitely moving it self: in respect whereof the Scripture calleth him the Living God.

Q. What gather you from the comparing of this infiniteness and simplicity (or singleness) of God's nature with his life and motion?

A. That when Strength, Justice, Mercy, and such like are attributed unto God, we must conceive that they are in him without all measure: and further also, that they be not divers vertues whereby his nature is qualified, but that all they and every one of them is nothing else but God himself, and his intire essence.

Q. Wherein doth the Life of God shew it self?

A. In his Allsufficiency and in his holy Will.

Q. Wherein standeth his Allsufficiency?

A. In his all knowing Wisdom, and his almighty Power.

Q. Wherein doth his Wisdom consist?

A. In perfect knowledg of all things, that either are or might be.

Q. In what sort doth God know all things? doth he as we do, see one thing after another?

A. No: but with one sight he continually beholdeth all things distinctly, whether they be past, present, or to come.

Q. How is God said to be Almighty?

A. Because he hath power to bring to pass all things that can be; howsoever to us they may seem impossible.

Q. Wherein is the Holiness of his Will seen?

A. In his goodness, and in his Justice.

Q. Wherein doth he shew his Goodness?

A. In being beneficial unto his creatures, and shewing mercy unto them in their miseries.

Q. *Wherein sheweth he his Justice ?*

A. Both in his Word and in his Deeds.

Q. *How sheweth he Justice in his Word ?*

A. Because the truth thereof is most certain.

Q. *How sheweth he Justice in his Deeds ?*

A. By ordering and disposing all things rightly ; and rendering to his creatures according to their works.

Q. *What do you call Persons in the God-head ?*

A. Such as having one essence (or being) equally common, are distinguished not divided one from another by some incommunicable property.

Q. *How cometh it to pass that there should be this diversity of persons in the God-head ?*

A. Though the essence or being of the God-head be the same, and most simple ( as hath been declared ) yet the manner of having this being is not the same ; and hence ariseth the distinction of persons : in that beside the being, which is common to all and the self-same in all, they have every one some special property which cannot be common to the rest.

Q. *Which are these persons and what are their personal properties ?*

A. The first person in order is the Father, who begetteth the Son. The second is the Son, begotten of the Father. The third is the Holy Ghost, proceeding from the Father and the Son.

Q. *Doth the God-head of the Father beget the God-head of the Son ?*

A. No : but the person of the Father begetteth the person of the Son.

Q. *Thus much of God's Nature : what are we to consider in his Kingdom ?*

A. First, the Decree made from all eternity : and then the Execution thereof accomplished in time.

Q. *How was the Decree made ?*

A. All things whatsoever should in time come to pass, with every small circumstance appertaining thereunto was ordained to be so from all eternity, by God's certain and unchangeable counsel.

Q. *Did God then before he made man, determine to save some and reject others ?*

A. Yes surely : before they had done either good or evil, God in his eternal counsel set some apart, upon whom he would in time shew the riches of his mercy ; and determine to withhold the same from others, upon whom he would shew the severity of his Justice.

Q. *What should move God to make this difference between Man and Man ?*

A. Only his own good pleasure : when by having purposed to create man for his own Glory, inasmuch as he was not bound to shew mercy unto any, and his Glory should as well appear as well in executing of justice as in shewing mercy ; it seemed good unto his heavenly Wisdom to choose out a certain number towards whom he would extend his undeserved mercy, leaving the rest to be spectacles of his justice.

Q. *Wherein doth the Execution of God's decree consist ?*

A. In the works of the Creation and Providence.

Q. *What was the manner of the Creation ?*

A. In the beginning of time, when no creature had any being, God by his word alone, did in the space of six days create all things, both visible and invisible, making every one of them exceeding good in their kind.

Q. *What are the principal creatures which were ordained unto an everlasting condition ?*

A. Angels,

*A.* Angels, altogether spiritual and void of bodies : and *Man* consisting of two parts, the body which is earthly, and the soul, which is spiritual, and therefore not subject to mortality.

*Q.* In what regard is man said to be made according to the Likeness and Image of God?

*A.* In regard especially of the perfections of the powers of the soul ; namely the wisdom of the mind, and the true holiness of his free will.

*Q.* How are you to consider of God's Providence?

*A.* Both as it is common unto all the creatures; which are thereby sustained in their being, and ordered according to the Lord's will : and as it properly concerneth the everlasting condition of the Principal Creatures, to wit, Angels and Men.

*Q.* What is that which concerneth Angels?

*A.* Some of them remained in that blessed condition wherein they were created, and are by God's grace for ever established therein. Others kept it not, but wiffully lost the same ; and therefore are condemned to everlasting torment in Hell, without all hope of recovery.

*Q.* How is the state of Mankind ordered?

*A.* In this life by the tenor of a twofold Covenant ; and in the World to come, by the sentence of a twofold Judgment.

*Q.* What is the first of these Covenants?

*A.* The Law, or the covenant of works : whereby God promiseth everlasting life unto man, upon condition that he perform intire and perfect obedience unto his Law, according to that strength wherewith he was indued by vertue of his creation ; and in like sort threatneth death unto him, if he do not perform the same.

*Q.* What seal did God use for the strengthening of this Covenant?

*A.* The two Trees which he planted in the middle of Paradise : the one of life, the other of knowledge of good and evil.

*Q.* What did the tree of life signifie?

*A.* That man should have assurance of everlasting life, if he continued in obedience.

*Q.* What did the Tree of Knowledge of good and evil signifie?

*A.* That if man did fall from obedience, he should be surely punished with everlasting death ; and so know by experience in himself, what evil was, as before he knew by experience that only which was good.

*Q.* What was the event of this Covenant?

*A.* By one man sin entred into the World, and Death by sin ; and so death went over all men, inasmuch as all have sinned.

*Q.* How did sin enter?

*A.* Whereas God had threatned unto our first Parents, that whatsoever day they did eat of the forbidden fruit they should certainly die : they, believing rather the word of the Devil that they should not die, and subscribing unto his reproachful blasphemy, whereby he charged God with envy towards their estate, as if he had therefore forbidden the fruit, lest by eating thereof they should become like God himself, entred into rebellion against the Lord who made them, and openly transgressed his Commandment.

*Q.* What followeth from this?

*A.* Fir<sup>st</sup>, the corruption of nature called original sin, derived by continual descent from Father to Son ; wherewith all the powers of the soul and body are infected, and that in all men equally ; and then actual sin, arising from

*Q.* Shew



*Q. Shew how the principal powers of the soul are defiled by this corruption of our nature?*

*A.* First, the understanding is blinded with ignorance and infidelity. Secondly, the memory is prone to forget the good things which the understanding hath conceived. Thirdly, the Will is disobedient to the will of God understood and remembered by us; (the freedom of holiness, which it had at the first, being now lost) and is wholly bent to sin. Fourthly, affections are ready to over rule the will, and are subject to all disorder. Lastly, the Conscience it self is distempered and polluted.

*Q. In what sort is the Conscience thus distempered?*

*A.* The duties thereof being two especially, to give direction in things to be done, and to give both witness and judgment in things done: for the first, it sometimes giveth no direction at all, and thereupon maketh a man to sin in doing of an action otherwise good and lawful, sometimes it giveth a direction, but a wrong one, and so becometh a blind guide, forbidding to do things which God alloweth, and commanding to do things which God forbiddeth. For the second, it sometimes giveth no judgment at all, not checking the offender as it should, but being benumbed and as it was seared with an hot Iron. It sometimes giveth judgment, but falsely; condemning where it should excuse, and excusing where it should condemn; thereby filling the mind with false fears or feeding it with vain comforts: and sometimes giveth true judgment, but uncomfortable and fearful, tormenting the guilty soul as it were with the flashes of hell-fire.

*Q. What are the kinds of actual sin?*

*A.* Such as are either *inward* in the thoughts of the mind and lusts of the heart; or *outward*, in word or deed: whereby those things are done which should be omitted, and those things omitted which should be done.

*Q. What is the death which all men are subject unto, by reason of these sins?*

*A.* The curse of God both upon the things that belong unto them (such as are their Wife and Children, honour possessions, use of God's Creatures, &c.) and upon their own persons, in life and death.

*Q. What are the curses they are subject to in this life?*

*A.* All temporal calamities both in body (which is subject unto infinite miseries) and in soul, which is plagued sometime with madness, sometime with the terror of a guilty Conscience, sometimes with a benumbed and seared Conscience, sometimes with hardness of heart, which cannot repent; and finally, a spiritual slavery under the power of the World and the Devil.

*Q. What is the death that followeth this miserable life?*

*A.* First, a separation of the soul from the body: and then, an everlasting separation of the whole man from the presence of God, with unspeakable torments in hell-fire never to be ended.

*Q. If all mankind be subject to this damnation; how then shall any man be saved?*

*A.* Surely by this first Covenant of the Law, no flesh can be saved; but every one must receive in himself the sentence of condemnation; yet the Lord, being a god of mercy, hath not left us here; but entred into a second Covenant with Mankind.

*Q. What is the second Covenant?*

*A.* The Gospel, or the Covenant of grace; whereby God promiseth everlasting life unto man, upon condition that he be reconciled unto him in Christ: for as the condition of the first, was the continuance of that righteousness

of facts which was to be found in mans own person : so the condition of the second is the obtaining of that righteousness which is without himself; even the righteousness of God which is by faith in the Mediator Jesus Christ.

*Q. What are we to consider in Christ our Mediator ?*

*A. Two things: his Nature and his Office.*

*Q. How many natures be there in Christ ?*

*A. Two, the Godhead, and the Manhood : remaining still distinct in their substance, properties and actions.*

*Q. How many persons hath he ?*

*A. Only one ; which is the person of the Son of God : for the second person in the Trinity took upon him, not the person but the nature of man ; to wit, a body and a reasonable soul : which do not subsist alone, as ( we see in all other men ) but are wholly sustained in the person of the Son of God.*

*Q. What is the use of this wonderful union of the Two Natures in one Person ?*

*A. Our nature being received into the union of the Person of the Son of God ; the sufferings and the obedience which it performed became of infinite value, as being the sufferings and the obedience of him who was God, equal with the Father.*

*Q. What is the office of Christ ?*

*A. To be a Mediator betwixt God and Man ?*

*Q. What part of his office did he exercise in things concerning God ?*

*A. His Priesthood.*

*Q. What are the parts of his Priestly office ;*

*A. The satisfaction of God's Justice, and Intercession.*

*Q. What is required of Christ for the satisfaction of God's Justice ?*

*A. The paying of the price which was due for the breach of the Law committed by mankind ; and the performance of that righteousness, which man by the Law was bound unto, but is now unable to accomplish.*

*Q. How was Christ to pay the price which was due for the sin of mankind ?*

*A. By that wonderful humiliation, whereby he that was equal with God, made himself of no reputation, and became obedient unto the death : sustaining both in body and soul, the curse that was due to the transgression of the Law.*

*Q. What righteousness was there required of Christ in our behalf ?*

*A. Both original, which he had from his conception ( being conceived by the Holy Ghost, in all pureness and holiness of nature ) : and actual ; which he performed by yielding perfect obedience in the whole course of his life, unto all the precepts of God's Law.*

*Q. What is the Intercession of Christ ?*

*A. That part of his priesthood, whereby he maketh request unto his Father for us, and presenteth unto him both our persons, and our imperfect Obedience ; making both of them ( howsoever in themselves polluted ) by the merit of his satisfaction, to be acceptable in God's sight.*

*Q. Thus much of that part of the office of the Mediator which is exercised in things concerning God : how doth he exercise his office in things concerning Man ?*

*A. By communicating unto man that grace and redemption which he hath purchased from his Father.*

*Q. What parts of this office doth he exercise here ?*

*A. His Prophetical and Kingly Office.*

*Q. What is his Prophetical Office ?*

*A. That whereby he informeth us of the benefits of our redemption, and revealeth*

revealeth the whole will of his Father unto us; both by the outward means which he hath provided for the instruction of his Church, and by the inward enlightning of our mind, by his holy spirit.

*Q. What is his Kingly office?*

*A.* That whereby he ruleth his *Subjects*, and confoundeth all his *Enemies*.

*Q. How doth he rule his Subjects?*

*A.* By making the Redemption, which he hath wrought effectual in the Elect: calling those, whom by his propheticall office he hath taught, to embrace the benefits offered unto them; and governing them being called: both by these outward ordinances which he hath instituted in his Church, and by the inward operation of his blessed spirit.

*Q. Having thus declared the Natures and Offices of Christ, the Mediatour of the new Covenant: What are you to consider in the condition of mankind which hold by him?*

*A.* Two things: the participation of the grace of Christ effectually communicated by the operation of God's spirit unto the Catholick Church, which is the Body and Spouse of Christ, out of which there is no salvation; and the outward means ordained for the offering and effecting of the same vouchsafed unto the visible Churches.

*Q. How is the grace of Christ effectually communicated to the Elect, of whom the Catholick Church doth consist?*

*A.* By that wonderful Union, whereby Christ and his Church are made one: so that all the Elect, being ingrafted into him, grow up together into one mystical body, whereof he is the head.

*Q. What is the bond of this union?*

*A.* The communion of God's spirit: which being derived from the Man Christ Jesus unto all the Elect, as from the Head unto the Members, giveth unto them spiritual life, and maketh them partakers of Christ with all his benefits.

*Q. What are the benefits which arise to God's Children from hence?*

*A.* Reconciliation and Sanctification.

*Q. What is Reconciliation?*

*A.* That grace, whereby we are freed from God's curse, and restored unto his favour.

*Q. What are the branches of this Reconciliation?*

*A.* Justification and Adoption.

*Q. What is Justification?*

*A.* That grace, whereby we are freed from the guilt of sin, and accounted righteous in Christ Jesus our Redeemer.

*Q. How then must sinful man look to be justified in the sight of God?*

*A.* By the mercy of God alone, whereby he freely bestoweth his Son upon him: whereupon the sinner being possessed of Jesus Christ, obtaineth of God remission of sins, and imputation of righteousness.

*Q. What is adoption?*

*A.* That grace whereby, we are not only made friends with God, but also his Sons and heirs with Christ.

*Q. What is Sanctification?*

*A.* That grace whereby we are freed from the bondage of sin remaining in us, and restored unto the freedom of righteousness.

*Q. What be the parts of Sanctification?*

*A.* Mortification whereby our natural corruption is subdued; and Vivification or quickning, whereby inherent holiness is renewed in us.

*Q. Is there no distinction to be made among them that thus receive Christ?*

*A. Yes: for some are not capable of knowledge; as Infants, and such as weterm naturals: other some are of discretion. In the former sort, we are not to proceed further then God's election, and the secret operation of the Holy Ghost. In the other there is required a lively faith, bringing forth fruit of true Holiness.*

*Q. Is it in mans power to attain this Faith and Holiness?*

*A. No: but God worketh them in his children, according to that measure which he in his wisdom seeth fit.*

*Q. What do you understand by Faith:*

*A. A gift of God whereby a man being perswaded not only of the truth of God's word in general, but also for the promises of the Gospel in particular applieth Christ, with all his benefits, unto the comfort of his own soul.*

*Q. How are we said to be justified by faith?*

*A. Not as though we were just for the worthiness of this vertue, for (in such a respect Christ alone is our righteousness;) but because faith, and faith, only, is the instrument fit to apprehend and receive (not to work or procure) our justification, and so to knit us unto Christ, that we may be made partakers of all his benefits.*

*Q. What is that Holiness, which accompanieth this justifying faith?*

*A. A gift of God whereby the heart of the believer is withdrawn from evil, and converted unto newness of life.*

*Q. Wherein doth this Holiness shew it self?*

*A. First, in unfeigned Repentance, and then in sincere Obedience springing from the same.*

*Q. What are the parts of Repentance?*

*A. Two. A true grief wrought in the heart of the believer, for offending so gracious a God by his former transgressions. And a conversion unto God again, with full purpose of heart ever after to cleave unto him, and to refrain from that which shall be displeasing in his sight.*

*Q. What is the direction of that Obedience which God requireth of Man?*

*A. The moral Law; whereof the ten Commandments are an abridgment.*

*Q. What is the sum of the Law?*

*A. Love.*

*Q. What be the parts thereof?*

*A. The love which we owe unto God, commanded in the first; and the love which we owe unto our Neighbour, commanded in the second Table.*

*Q. How do you distinguish the four Commandments which belong unto the first Table?*

*A. They do either respect the conforming of the inward powers of the soul to the acknowledgment of the true God, as the first Commandment; or the holy use of the outward means of God's worship, as the three following.*

*Q. What are the duties which concern the outward means of God's worship?*

*A. They are either such as are to be performed every day, or occasion shall require; or such as are appointed for a certain day.*

*Q. What Commandments do belong unto the first kind?*

*A. The Second, concerning the solemn worship of Religion; and the Third, concerning that respect which we are to have of God's honour in the common carriage of our life.*

*Q. What Commandment belongeth to the second kind?*

*A. The Fourth; enjoying the special sanctification of the Sabbath day.*

*Q. How*

*Q. How do you distinguish the six Commandments, belonging to the Second Table?*

*A.* The first five do order such actions as are joyned with consent of the mind at least: the last respecteth the first motions that arise in the heart, before any consent is given.

*Q. What are the duties appertaining to the first kind?*

*A.* They are either due unto certain persons in regard of some special bond; or unto all men in general, by a common right: the first sort is set down in the fifth Commandment; the other in the four next.

*Q. What is the outward means whereby the Gospel is offered unto mankind?*

*A.* The Ministry of the Gospel; which is exercised in the visible Church of Christ.

*Q. Of whom doth the visible Church consist?*

*A.* Of publick Officers, ordained to be ministers of Christ and disposers of heavenly things, according to the prescript of the Lord: and the rest of the Saints, who with obedience are to subject themselves unto the Ordinances of God.

*Q. What are the parts of the outward Ministry?*

*A.* The administration of the Word, and of the Ordinances annexed thereunto: which are especially Sacraments and Censures.

*Q. What is the Word?*

*A.* That part on the outward ministry, which consisteth in the delivery of Doctrine: and this is the ordinary instrument which God useth in begetting Faith.

*Q. What order is there used in the delivery of the Word for the begetting of Faith?*

*A.* First, the Covenant of the Law is urged, to make sin and the punishment thereof known: whereupon the sting of conscience pricketh the heart with a sense of God's wrath, and maketh man utterly to despair of any ability in himself to obtain everlasting life. After this preparation, the promises of the Gospel are propounded: whereupon the sinner conceiving hope of pardon, saeth unto God for mercy, and particularly applieth unto his own soul, those comfortable promises; and hath wrought in him, by the spirit of God an earnest desire at the least to believe and repent.

*Q. What is a Sacrament?*

*A.* A visible sign ordained by God to be a seal for confirmation of the promises of the Gospel unto those who perform the conditions required in the same.

*Q. How is this done by a Sacrament;*

*A.* By a fit similitude between the sign and the thing signified, the benefit of the Gospel is represented unto the eye, and the assurance of enjoying the same confirmed to such as are within the Covenant. Wherefore as the preaching of the Word is the ordinary means of begetting faith; so both it, and the holy use of the Sacraments, be the instruments of the Holy Ghost to increase and confirm the same.

*Q. How many kinds of Sacraments be there?*

*A.* Two: the first of our Admission into the Church: the second of our preservation and nourishment therein; to assure us of our continual increase in Christ. In which respect, the former is once only; the latter often to be administered.

*Q. What do you understand by Censures?*

*A.* The order which God hath appointed for the confirmation of the threatenings of the Gospel against the disobedient.

*Q. How are these Censures exercifed?*

*A.* Firft, by word alone. in Admonition. Secondly, by inflicting a penalty: either by shutting up the offender in the Lord's prifon, till fuch time as he fheweth tokens of repentance; or by cutting off the rotten member from the reft of the body.

*Q. Hath this adminiftration of the Gofpel been always after the fame manner?*

*A.* For fubftance it hath always been the fame: but in regard of the manner proper to certain times, it is diftinguifhed into two kinds; the old and the new.

*Q. What call you the old Miniſtery?*

*A.* That which was delivered unto the Fathers: which was to continue until the fulnefs of time, wherein by the coming of Chrift it was to be reformed.

*Q. What were the properties of this Miniſtery?*

*A.* Firft. the Commandments of the Law were more largely, and the promifes of Chrift, more fparingly and darkly propounded: thefe latter being fo much the more generally and obfcurely delivered, as the manifefting of them was further off. Secondly, the promifes of things to come were fhadowed with a multitude of Types and Figures; which when the truth ſhould be exhibited, were to vaniſh away.

*Q. What were chief States and Periods of this old Miniſtery?*

*A.* The firft from Adam to Abraham, the fecond from Abraham to Chrift.

*Q. What were the ſpecial Properties of the latter of thefe two Periods?*

*A.* Firft, it was more eſpecially reſtrained unto a certain Family and Nation. Secondly it had joyned with it a ſolemn repetition and declaration of the firft Covenant of the Law. Thirdly beſides the Ceremonies (which were greatly enlarged under Moſes) it had Sacraments alſo added unto it.

*Q. What were the ordinary Sacraments of this Miniſtery?*

*A.* The Sacrament of Admiſſion into the Church was Circumciſion, intituted in the days of Abraham: the other of continual Prefervation and nourifhment was the Paſchal Lamb, intituted in the time of Moſes.

*Q. What is the new adminiftration of the Gofpel?*

*A.* That which was delivered unto us by Chrift: which is to continue unto the end of the World.

*Q. What are the properties thereof?*

Firft it is indifferently propounded unto all people, whether they be Jews or Gentiles; and in that reſpect it is Catholick or Univerſal. Secondly, it is full of grace and truth, bringing joyfull tydings unto mankind that whatſoever was formerly promiſed of Chrift, is now performed: and ſo, inſtead of the ancient types and ſhadows, exhibiteth the things themſelves; with a large and clear declaration of all the benefits of the Gofpel.

*Q. What be the principal points of the Word of this Miniſtery?*

*A.* That Chrift our Saviour (whom God by his Prophets had promiſed to ſend into the World) is come in the fleſh, and hath accompliſhed the work of our redemption. That he was conceived by the Holy Ghoſt, born of the Virgin Mary, ſuffered under Pontius Pilate, was crucified and died upon the Crofs. That the Body and Soul being thus ſeparated, his body was laid in the grave, and remained under the power of Death: and his ſoul went into the place appointed for the ſouls of the righteous; namely Paradife, the feat of the Bleſſed. That the third day, body and ſoul being joyned together again, he roſe from the dead, and afterwards aſcended up into heaven: where he

he sitteth at the right hand of his Father, until such time as from thence he shall come unto the last Judgment.

*Q. What are the Sacraments of this Ministry;*

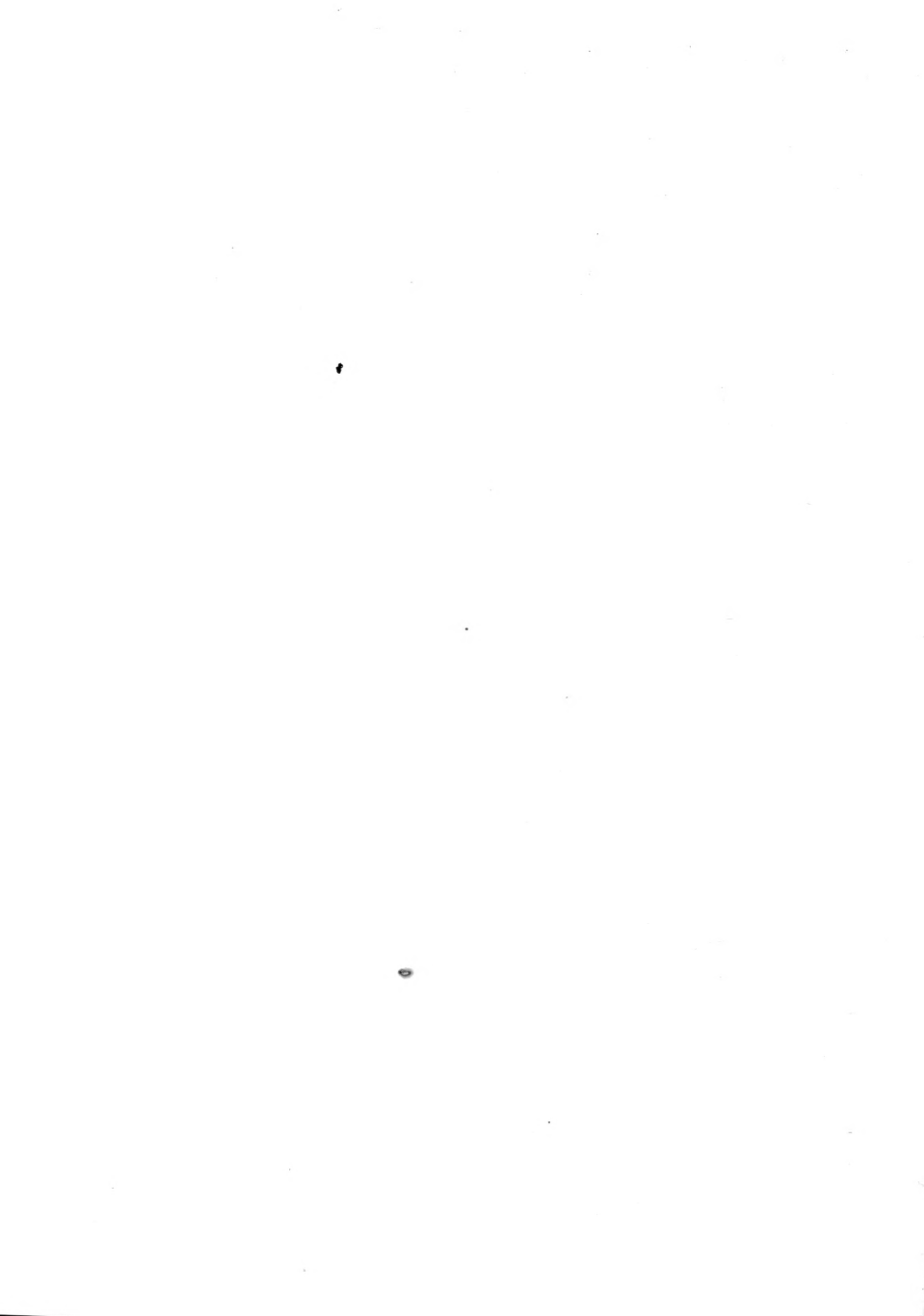
*A.* The Sacrament of Admission into the Church is Baptism; which seal-eth unto us our spiritual Birth: the other Sacrament of our continual Preservation is the Lords Supper; which seal-eth unto us our continual nourishment.

*Q. After the end of this life, what is to be looked for in the world to come?*

*A.* A twofold Judgment: the one *Particular*, upon the soul of every man at the time of his Death; the other *General*; upon the souls and bodies of all men together at the time of their Resurrection.

*[The particulars which concern the two Sacraments of the new Testament, and the twofold Judgment in the World to come, is to be supplied out of the latter end of the former Sum.]*

FINIS.





IMMANUEL:  
OR, THE  
MYSTERY  
OF THE  
INCARNATION  
OF THE  
Son of God

---

UNFOLDED  
By *James Usher*, Archbishop of ARMAGH.

---

JOHN I. 14.  
*The Word was made Flesh.*

---

LONDON,

Printed for *Jonathan Robinson* and *A. and J. Churchill, J. Taylor* and *J. Wyat* in *St. Paul's Church-Yard.* 1702

THE  
 MYSTERY  
 OF THE  
 INCARNATION  
 OF THE  
 Son Of God

---

(a) Prov 30.  
3-4.

**T**HE Holy Prophet, in the Book of the (a) *Proverbs*, poseth all such as have not *learned wisdom, nor known the knowledge of the holy*, with this Question. *Who hath ascended up into heaven, or descended? who hath gathered the wind in his fists? who hath established all the ends of the earth; what is his name and what is his SONS name, if thou canst tell?* To help us herein, the SON Himself

(b) John 3-13.

did tell us, when he was here upon earth, that (b) *None hath ascended up to heaven, but he that descended from heaven, even the Son of man which is in heaven.* And that we might not be ignorant of his name, the Prophet *Esay* did long before foretel, that (c) *Unto us a Child is born, and unto us a Son is given; whose name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The Mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.*

(c) Esa. 9-3.

Where if it be demanded, how these things can stand together? that the *Son of man* speaking upon earth, should yet at the same instant be in *heaven*; that the *Father of Eternity* should be *born in time*? and that the *Mighty God* should become a *Child*; which is the weakest state of man himself? we must call to mind that the first letter of this great Name, is **WONDERFUL**. When he appeared of old to *Manoah* his name was wonderful, and he did wonderfully. *Judg.* 13. 18, 19. But that and all the wonders that ever were, must give place to the great mystery of his incarnation; and in respect thereof cease to be wonderful; for of this work that may be verified, which is spoken of those wonderful judgments, that

God

God brought upon Egypt when he would (d) shew his power and have his name declared throughout all the earth (e) Before them were no such neither after them shall be the like. (d) Exod. 12. 41. (e) 1st Job. 12. 10. 14. 88. 11. 5.

Neither the creation of all things out of nothing, which was the beginning of the works of God (those six working days putting as it were an end to that long Sabbath that never had beginning: wherein the Father, Son, and holy Ghost did infinitely (f) glorifie themselves and (g) rejoyce in the fruition one of another, without communicating the notice thereof unto any creature) nor the Resurrection from the dead and the reparation of all things, the last work that shall go before that everlasting Sabbath (which shall have a beginning, but never shall have an end, neither that first, I say, nor the last, though most admirable pieces of work, may be compared with this, wherein the Lord was pleased to shew the highest pitch (if any thing may be said to be highest in that which is infinite and exempt from all measure and dimensions) of his Wisdom, Goodness, Power, and Glory.

The Heathen Chaldeans, to a question propounded by the King of Babel, make answer; (b) that it was a rare thing which he required, and that none other would shew it, except these Gods, whose dwelling is not with flesh. But the rarity of this lyeth in the contrary to that which they imagined to be so plain: that he (i) who is over all, God blessed for ever, should take our flesh and dwell, or pitch his Tabernacle with us. That as (k) the glory of God filled the Tabernacle (which was a (l) figure of the humane nature of our Lord) which was such a kind of fulness, that Moses himself was not able to approach unto it; (therein coming short. (m) as in all things, of the Lord of the house) and filled the Temple of Solomon (a type likewise of the body of our Prince of Peace) in (o) such sort that the Priests could not enter therein: so (p) in him all the fulness of the Godhead should dwell bodily.

And therefore, if of that Temple, built with hands: Solomon could say with admiration: (q) But will God in vny deed dwell with men on the earth? Behold, heaven and the heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house, which I have built? of the true temple, that is not of this building; we may with great wonderment say with the Apostle, (r) Without controversie, great is the mystery of Religion: God was manifested in the flesh; yea was made of a woman, and born of a Virgin; a thing so (t) wonderful, that it was given for a sign unto unbelievers seven hundred and forty years before it was accomplished; even a sign of God's own chosing, among all the wonders in the depth, or in the height above. Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign. Behold a Virgin shall conceive and bear a Son, and shall call his name Immanuel. Efa. 7. 14.

A notable wonder indeed, and great beyond all comparison. That the Son of God should be (s) made of a Woman; even made of that Woman, which was (u) made by himself. That her womb then, and the (x) heavens now, should contain him whom (y) The Heaven of Heavens cannot contain. That he who had both Father and Mother, whose pedigree is upon record even up unto Adam, who in the fulness of time was brought forth in Bethlehem, and when he had finished his course was cut off out of the land of the living at Jerusalem? should yet notwithstanding be in truth, that which his shadow Melchisedeck was only in the conceit of the men of his time, (z) without Father, without Mother, without Pedegree, having neither beginning of days

(b) Dan. 2. 11.  
(i) Rom. 9. 5.  
(k) 1st Cor. 13. 1.  
(l) John 1. 14.  
(m) Heb. 9. 9.  
(n) Heb. 3. 3.  
(o) Heb. 2. 19.  
(p) 2 Chron. 7. 1. 2.  
(q) Coloss. 2. 9.  
(r) 2 Chron. 6. 18.  
(s) 1 Tim. 3. 6.  
(t) Efa. 7. 14.  
(u) Gal. 4. 4.  
(v) 1st John. 3. Col. 1. 16.  
(x) Act. 3. 21.  
(y) 1 Kings 8. 27.  
(z) Heb. 7. 3. with Efa. 5. 2.

<sup>a</sup> John 24. 23. *days nor end of life.* That his Father should be (*a*) greater than he; and yet  
<sup>b</sup> John 5. 18. he his Fathers (*b*) equal. That he (*c*) is, before *Abraham* was, and yet *Abra-*  
 il. 2. 6. *ham's* birth preceded his, well-nigh the space of 2000 years. And finally,  
<sup>c</sup> John 8. 58. that he who was *Dauid's Son*, should yet be *Dauid's Lord*: (*d*) a case  
<sup>d</sup> Mat. 22. 42 which plnged the greatest Rabbies among the Pharisees; who had not yet  
 43. &c. *learned this wisdom, nor known this knowledge of the holy.*

The untying of this knot dependeth upon the right understanding of the wonderful conjunction of the divine and humane Nature in the unity of the Person of our Redeemer. For by reason of the strictness of this personal union, whatsoever may be verified of either of those Natures, the same may be truly spoken of the whole Person, from whithersoever of the Natures it be denominated. For the clearer conceiving whereof, we may call to mind <sup>e</sup> Col. 2. 9. that which the Apostle hath taught us touching our Saviour. (*e*) *In him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily,* that is to say by such a personal and real union, as doth inseparably and everlastingly conjoin that infinite Godhead with his infinite Manhood in the unity of the self-same individual Person.

*He* in whom that fulness dwelleth, is the *PERSON*: that fulness which so doth dwell in him, is the *NATURE*. Now there dwelleth in him not only the fulness of the *Godhead* but the fulness of the *Manhood* also. For we believe him to be both perfect God, begotten of the substance of his Father before all worlds; and perfect Man, made of the substance of his Mother in the fulness of time. And therefore we must hold, that there are two distinct *Natures* in him: and two so distinct, that they do not make one compounded nature: but still remain uncompounded and unconfounded together. *But He* in whom the fulness of the Manhood dwelleth is not one, and he in whom the fulness of the Godhead, another: but he in whom the fulness of both those natures dwelleth, is one and the same *Immanuel*, and consequently it must be believed as firmly, that he is but one *Person*.

And here we must consider, that the divine Nature did not assume an humane Person, but the divine Person did assume an humane Nature: and that of the three divine Persons, it was neither the first nor the third that did assume this Nature; but it was the middle Person who was to be the middle one, that must undertake this mediation betwixt God and us; which was otherwise also most requisite, as well for the better preservation of the integrity of the blessed Trinity in the Godhead, as for the higher advancement of Mankind by means of that relation which the second Person the Mediator did bear unto his Father: For if the fulness of the Godhead should have thus dwelt in any humane Person, there should then a fourth Person necessarily have been added unto the Godhead: and if any of the three Persons, beside the second, had been born of a woman; there should have been two Sons in the Trinity. Whereas now the Son of God and the Son of the blessed Virgin, being but one person, is consequently but one Son; and so no alteration at all made in the relations of the persons of the Trinity.

<sup>†</sup> Gal. 4. 4, 5, 7. Again in respect of us, the Apostle sheweth, that for this very end (*f*) *God sent his own SON made of a Woman? that WE might receive the adoption of SONS,* and thereupon maketh this inference; *Wherefore thou art no more a Servant but a SON, and if a SON, then an HEIR of God through Christ*; intimating thereby, that what relation Christ hath un-

to God by Nature, we being found in him have the same by Grace. By nature he is (g) *the only begotten Son of the Father*: but this is the high grace he hath purchased for us; that (b) *as many as received him, to them he gave power of privilege, to become the Sons of God, even to them that believe on his Name.* For although he reserve to himself the preeminence, which is due unto him in a \* peculiar manner, of being (d) *the first born among many brethren*: yet in him, and for him, the rest likewise by the grace of adoption are all of them accounted as *first borns*.

So God biddeth *Moses* to say unto *Pharaoh*: (k) *Israel is my Son, even my first born.* And I say unto thee; Let my son go, that he may serve me: and if thou refuse to let him go; behold I will slay thy son even thy first born. And the whole *Israel* of God, consisting of Jew and Gentile, is in the same sort described by the Apostle to be (l) *the general assembly and Church of the first born: enrolled in heaven.* For the same reason that maketh them to be *Sons*, to wit, their incorporation into Christ, the self-same also maketh them to be *first borns*: so as (however it fall out by the grounds of our Common Law) by the rule of the Gospel this consequence will still hold true; (m) *if children, then heirs, heirs of God and joynt heirs with Christ.* And so much for the *SON*, the *Person* assuming.

The *Nature* assumed, is the seed of *Abraham*. Heb. 2. 16. *the seed of David,* Rom. 1. 3. *the seed of the Woman,* Gen. 3. 15. the *WORD*, (n) the second person of the Trinity, being (o) made *FLESH*, that is to say, (p) *Gods own Son being made of a Woman,* and so becoming truly and really (q) *the fruit of her womb.* Neither did he take the substance of our nature only, but all the properties also and the qualities thereof: so as it might be said of him as it was of (r) *Elias* and the (s) *Apostles*; that he was a man subject, to like passions as we are. Yea he subjected himself (t) *in the days of his flesh to the same (u) weaknesses, infirmities*; and in a word, *in all things was made like unto his brethren*, \* *in* only excepted. Wherein yet we must consider, that as he took upon him, not an humane *Person*, but an humane *Nature*; so it was not requisite he should take upon him any *Personal* infirmities, such as are, madness, blindness, lameness, and particular kinds of diseases which are incident to some only and not to all men in general; but those alone which do accompany the whole nature of mankind, such as are hungering, thirsting, weariness, grief, pain and mortality.

We are further here to observe in this our (x) *Melchisedek*, that as he had no *Mother* in regard of one of his natures, so he was to have no *Father* in regard of the other; but must be born of a pure immaculate Virgin, without the help of any man.

And this also was most requisite, as for other respects, so for the exemption of the assumed nature from the imputation and pollution of *Adam's* sin. For (y) *sin* having by that one man entred into the world; every Father becometh an *Adam* unto his child, and conveyeth the corruption of his nature unto all those whom he doth beget. Therefore our Saviour assuming the substance of our nature, but not by the ordinary way of natural generation, is thereby freed from all the touch and taint of the corruption of our flesh; which by that means only is propagated from the first man unto his posterity. Whereupon, he being made of man but not by man, and so becoming the immediate fruit of the *womb*, and not of the *loyns* must of necessity be acknowledged to be (z) that *H O L Y T H I N G*, which so

g. Joh. 1. 14.  
& 3. 16.  
h. Joh. 1. 12.  
\* *Propter quod unum quodq; et uale, et ad ip san est magis tite.*  
i. Rom. 9. 29.  
k. Exod. 4. 22.  
l. Heb. 12. 23.  
m. Rom. 8. 17.  
n. 1. Joh. 15. 7.  
o. Joh. 1. 14.  
p. Gal. 4. 4.  
q. Luk. 1. 12.  
r. *Ηλίας άνθρωπος ἰσθμοιοπαθῶν ὡμῶν*  
s. *Ἰακώβου ὡμῶν*  
t. *Ἰησοῦ ἐστὶν ὡμῶν*  
u. *Ἰησοῦ ἐστὶν ὡμῶν*  
v. *Ἰησοῦ ἐστὶν ὡμῶν*  
x. *Ἰησοῦ ἐστὶν ὡμῶν*  
y. *Ἰησοῦ ἐστὶν ὡμῶν*  
z. *Ἰησοῦ ἐστὶν ὡμῶν*

was born of so blessed a Mother. Who although she were but the passive and material principle of which that precious flesh was made, and the holy Ghost the agent and efficient; yet cannot the Man Christ Jesus thereby be made the *Son* of his (a) own Spirit; because Fathers do beget their children out of their own substance the Holy Ghost did not so, but framed the flesh of him, from whom himself proceeded, out of the creature of them both, (b) *the handmaid of our Lord; whom from thence all generations shall call blessed.*

That blessed womb of hers was the Bride-chamber, wherein the holy Ghost did knit that indissoluble knot betwixt our humane nature and his Deity: the Son of God assuming into the unity of his person that which before he was not; and yet without change (for so must God still be) remaining that which he was; whereby it came to pass, that (c) *this holy thing which was born of her, was indeed and in truth to be called the SON OF GOD.* Which wonderful connexion of two so infinitely differing natures in the unity of one person, how it was there effected, is an inquisition fitter for an Angelical intelligence, then for our shallow capacity to look after; to which purpose we may also observe, that in the fabrick of the *Ark* of the Covenant (d) the posture of the faces of the *Cherubims* toward the *Mercy-seat* (the type of our Saviour) was such as would point unto us, that these are the things which

*the Angels desire to "scoop and look into?"*

And therefore let that satisfaction, which the Angel gave unto the Mother Virgin (whom it did more especially concern to move the question, (e) *How may this be?*) content us, (f) *The power of the Highest shall overshadow thee.* For as the former part of that speech may inform us, that (g) *with God nothing is possible:* so the latter may put us in mind, that the same God having overshadowed this mystery with his own veil, we should not presume with the men of (h) *Bethshemesb* to look into this *Ark* of his; lest for our curiosity we be smitten as they were. Only this we may safely say, and most firmly hold: that as the distinction of the Persons in the holy Trinity hindreth not the unity of the Nature of the Godhead, although every Person intirely holdeth his own incommunicable property; so neither doth the distinction of the two Natures in our Mediator any way cross the unity of his Person, although each nature remaineth intire in it self, and retaineth the properties agreeing thereunto, \*any conversion, composition, commixtion, or confusion.

When (i) *Moses* beheld the bush burning with fire, and yet no whit consumed, he wondered at the sight, and said; *I will now turn aside, and see this sight, why the bush is not burnt.* But when God thereupon called unto him out of the midst of the bush, and said; *Draw not nigh hither,* and told him who he was; *Moses* trembled, hid his face, and durst not behold God. Yet although, being thus warned, we dare not draw so nigh; what doth hinder but we may stand aloof off, and wonder at this great sight? (k) *Our God is a consuming fire;* saith the Apostle: and a question we find propounded in the Prophet, (l) *who amongst us shall dwell with the devouring fire? who amongst us shall dwell with the everlasting burning.* *Moses* was not like other Prophets, but (m) God spake unto him face to face, as man speaketh unto his friend: and yet for all that when he be sought the Lord that he would shew him his glory; he received this answer, (n) *Thou canst not see my face: for there shall no man see me and live.* *Abraham* before him though a special (o) *friend of God,* and the (p) *father of the faithful,* the children

a Gal. 4. 6.  
Rom. 8. 9.

b Luk. 1. 38,  
48.

c Luk. 1. 35.

d Exod. 37. 9.

\* Page 2.  
104.

e 1 Pet. 1. 12.

f Luke 1. 31.

g Ibid ver. 37.

h Ibid. ver. 37.

i 1 Sam. 6. 19.

\* Τα γυνώσκων,

ἀπρίπτος,

ἀδραπέτος,

ἀχωεῖσος.

(Concil. Chal-

ced.)

Act. 5. & apud

Evag. lib. 2.

kiji Ecl. c 4.)

inconfuse in-

commutabili-

ter indivise,

inreperabili-

ter. Fo. Maximi-

us in catholica

sue Professionis

unit. Concil.

Rom. sub Mar-

tino 1.)

l Exod. 3. 23,

c, 6.

Acts 7. 31, 32.

k Heb. 12. 29.

l Esa. 33. 14.

m Num. 12. 6.

7. 8.

Ex. 33. 18,

2c.

o Ecl. 4. 1, 8.

2 Chron. 2c. 7.

Jam. 2. 23.

p Rom. 4. 11,

16.

Gal. 3. 7.

children of God: yet held it a great matter that he should take upon him so much as to (q) speak unto God, being *but dust and ashes*. Yea, the very Angels themselves (r) *(which are greater in power and might)* are fain to (s) cover their faces, when they stand before him; as not being able to behold the brightness of his glory.

With what astonishment then may we behold our dust and ashes assumed into the undivided unity of God's own Person; and admitted to dwell here as an inmate, under the same roof? and yet in the midst of these everlasting burnings, the bush to remain unconsumed, and to continue fresh and green for ever more. Yea, how should not we with *Abraham* rejoice to see this day, wherein not only our nature in the person of our Lord Jesus is found to dwell for ever in those everlasting burnings; but, in and by him, our own persons also are brought so nigh thereto, that (t) God doth set his Sanctuary and Tabernacles among us, and dwell with us; and which is much more) maketh us our selves to be the (u) *house* and the (x) *habitation* on, wherein he is pleased to dwell by his Spirit; according to that of the Apostle: (y) *Ye are the temple of the living God, as God hath said; I will dwell in them and walk in them, and I will be their God, and they shall be my people*; and that most admirable prayer, which our Saviour himself made unto his Father in our behalf (z) *I pray not for them alone, but for them also which shall believe on me through their word: that all may be one, as thou Father art in me, and I in thee, that they also may be one in us; that the world may believe that thou hast sent me. I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast loved them as thou hast loved me.*

To compass this conjunction betwixt God and us, he that was to be our (a) *JESUS* or *Saviour*, must of necessity also be *IMMANUEL*: which being interpreted is, *God with us*? and therefore in his Person to be Immanuel, that is, God dwelling with our flesh; because he was by his Office too to be Immanuel, that is, he who must make God to be at one with us. For this being his proper office, to be (b) *Mediator between God and man*, he must partake with both: and being from all eternity consubstantial with his Father, he must at the appointed time become likewise consubstantial with his children (c) *Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh, and blood; he also himself likewise took part of the same*, saith the Apostle. We read in the Roman History, that the Sabines and the Romans joyned battle together, upon such an occasion as is mentioned in the last Chapter of the book of *Judges*; of the children of *Benjamin*, catching every man a wife of the daughters of *Shiloh*; the women being daughters to the one side, and wives to the other, interposed themselves, and took up the quarrel, so that by the mediation of those, who had a peculiar interest in either side, and by whose means this new alliance was contracted betwixt the two adverse parties; they who before stood upon highest terms of hostility, \* did not only entertain peace, but also joyned themselves together into one body and one state.

God and we were (d) *enemies*; before we were reconciled to him by his Son; He that is to be (e) *our peace*, and to reconcile us unto God, and to slay this enmity, must have an interest in both the parties that are at variance, and have such a reference unto either of them, that he may be able to send this comfortable message unto the sons of men, (f) *Go to my brethren, and say unto them: I ascend into my Father, and your Father; and to my God, and your God*.

q Gen. 3. 27.  
r 2 Pet. 2. 11.  
s Jer. 17. 13.

t Lev. 26. 11, 12.  
u Exo 37. 26, 27.  
x Rev. 21. 3.  
y Heb. 3. 6.  
z Eph. 2. 22.  
2 Cor. 6. 16.

John 17. 20, 21, 22, 23.

a Mat. 1. 21, 23.  
Sec. Anselmus.  
Cur Deus homo.

b 1 Tim. 2. 5.

c Heb. 2. 14.

\* Sic pax facta, factaque per amicitiam; res mira, ut in illis rebus Urbemque demeruerit, et cum amicis suis unum corpus fieret.

1. The history of Rom. 1. 1. 2. Rom. 5. 1. 3. Eph. 2. 13. 4. John 17. 21.

\* Heb. 2. 11. *your God.* For as long as (g) he is not ashamed to call us brethren; (h) God is  
 h Heb. 11. 15. *not ashamed to be called our God*; and his entering of our appearance, in his  
 i Heb. 2. 13. *own name and ours, after this manner; (i) Behold, I and the children which  
 God hath given me;* is a motive strong enough to appease his Father, and  
 to turn his favourable countenance towards us: as on the other side, when  
 we become unruly and prove rebellious children; no reproof can be more  
 forcible, nor inducement so prevalent (if there remain any spark of grace in  
 e Deut. 32. 6. *us*) to make us cast down our weapons and yield, than this. (k) *Do ye thus  
 requite the Lord, O foolish people and unwise? Is not he thy Father that hath bought  
 i 1. Pet. 1. 18. thee;* and bought thee (l) *not with corruptible things, as silver and gold, but with  
 19. the precious blood of his own Son.*

How dangerous a matter it is to be at odds with God, old *Eli* sheweth by  
 m Sam. 2. 25. *this main argument. (m) If one man sin against another, the Judge shall judge  
 him; but if a man sin against the Lord, who shall plead or intreat for him,  
 n Job 9. 2. 3. and Job, before him. (n) He is not a man as I am that I should answer him, and  
 we should come together in judgment: neither is there any Days-man or Umpire  
 betwixt us, that may lay his hand upon us both.* If this general should admit  
 no manner of exception, then were we in a woful case, and had cause to  
 weep much more then *S. John* did in the Revelation; when (o) none was  
 e Rev. 5. 5. 4. *found in Heaven, nor in earth, nor under the earth, that was able to open the  
 book which he saw in the right hand of him that sat upon the Throne, nei-  
 ther to look thereon.* But as *S. John* was wished there to refrain his weeping  
 p Rev. 5. 5. *because (p) the Lyon of the tribe of Juda, the root of David, had prevailed to  
 open the book and to loose the seven seals thereof:* so he himself elsewhere giveth  
 q 1 John 2. 1, 2. *the like comfort unto all of us in particular. (q) If any man sin we have an  
 Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous: and he is a propitiation for  
 our sins; and not for us only, but also for the sins of the whole world.*

r 1 Tim. 2. 5. 6. *For (r) there is one God, so is there one Mediator between God and men,  
 the man Christ Jesus, who gave himself for a ransom for all and in discharge  
 of this his office of mediation, as only fit umpire to take up this controver-  
 sie, was to lay his hand as well upon God the party so highly offended, as  
 upon Man the party so basely offending. In things concerning God, the  
 s Heb. 9. 1. 2. Priesthood of our Mediator is exercised. (s) For every high Priest is taken  
 2. 17. from among men, and ordained for men in things pertaining to God: The parts  
 of his Priestly function are two; Satisfaction and Intercession: the former  
 whereof giveth contentment to God's justice; the latter solliciteth his mercy,  
 for the application of this benefit to the children of God in particular. Where-  
 by it cometh to pass, that God in (t) shewing mercy upon whom he will  
 i Rom. 9. 15. shew mercy, is yet for his justice no loser: being both (u) just, and the justifier  
 16. of him which believeth in Jesus.*

u Rom. 9. 26. *By vertue of his Intercession, Our Mediator (x) appeareth in the presence  
 of God for us, and (y) maketh request for us. To this purpose, the  
 y Hebr. 9. 24. Apostle noteth in the 4. to the Hebrews, 1. That we have a great high  
 31. Priest that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God (ver. 14. 2.) that  
 H. b. 7. 25. we have not an high Priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our in-  
 firmities, but was in all things tempted as we are, yet without sin. (f. 15.)  
 Betwixt the having of such, and the not having of such an Intercessor,  
 betwixt the height of him in regard of the one and the lowliness in regard  
 of his other nature, standeth the comfort of the one and the poor sinner. He must be  
 g Heb. 2. 17. such a sutor as taketh our case to heart: and therefore (z) in all things it  
 behooved him to be made like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and  
 faithful*



*faithful high Priest.* In which respect as it was needful he should partake with our flesh and blood that he might be tenderly affected unto his brethren : so likewise for the obtaining of so great a fruit, it behoved he should be most dear to God the Father, and have so great an interest in him, as he might always be sure to be (a) heard in his requests : who therefore could be no other, but of whom the Father testified from heaven; (b) *This is my beloved* John 11. 12. Matt. 3. 17. *In whom I am well pleased.* It was fit our Intercessor should be Man, like unto our selves; that we might (c) *boldly* come to him, and find grace to help in time of need : It was fit he should be God, that he might *boldly* go to the Father, without any way disparaging him; as being his (d) *fellow* and (e) *equal.* 1 Zach. 13. 7. Phil. 2. 6.

But such was God's love to justice and hatred to sin; that he would not have his Justice swallowed up with mercy, nor sin pardoned without the making of fit reparation. And therefore our Mediator must not look to procure for us a simple pardon without more ado : but must be a (f) *propitiation* for our sins, and redeem us by fine and (g) *ransome* : and so not only be the master of our requests, to entreat the Lord for us; but also take upon him the part of an (h) *Advocate*, to plead full satisfaction made by himself, as our (i) *surety*, unto all the debt wherewith we any way stood chargeable. Now the satisfaction which our surety bound himself to perform in our behalf, was a double debt: the principal, and the accessory. The principal debt is obedience to God's most holy Law: which man was bound to pay as a perpetual tribute to his Creator, although he had never sinned, but being now by his own default become bankrupt, is not able to discharge in the least measure. His surety therefore being to satisfy in his stead none will be found fit to undertake such a payment, but he who is both God and man.

Man it is fit he should be, because man was the party that by the Articles of the first Covenant was tyed to his obedience; and it was requisite that, (k) as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one man likewise many should be made righteous, Again if our Mediator were only God, he could have performed no obedience (the Godhead being free from all manner of subjection: ) and if he were a bare man, although he had been as perfect as Adam in his integrity, or the Angels themselves; yet being left unto himself amidst all the temptations of Satan and this wicked world, he should be subject to fall, as they were: or if he should hold out, as (l) *the elect Angels* did; that must have been ascribed to the grace and favour of another : whereas the giving of strict satisfaction to God's Justice was the thing required in this behalf. But now being God, as well as Man, he by his own (m) *eternal Spirit* preserved himself without spot: presenting a far more satisfactory obedience unto God, then could have possible been performed by Adam in his integrity.

For, besides the infinite difference that was betwixt both their Persons, which maketh the actions of the one beyond all comparison to exceed the worth and value of the other: we know that Adam was not able to make himself holy; but what holiness he had, he received from him who created him according to his own image: so that whatsoever obedience Adam had performed, God should have (n) eaten but of the fruit of the vineyard which himself had planted; and (o) *of his own* would all that have been, which could be given unto him. But Christ did himself sanctify that humane nature which he assumed; according to his own saying, Job 17. 19. *For their sakes I sanctified myself*: and so out of his own peculiar store did

he

ἱκανοποιῶ  
Rom. 3. 25.  
1 John 2. 2. &  
4. 10.  
ἡ λύτρωσις ἀντὶ πολλῶν  
Mar. 20. 28.  
ἀσπίς πείρασου  
1 Tim. 2. 6.  
See Job 33.  
14.  
1 John 2. 1.  
1 Heb. 7. 22.

1 Rom. 5. 19  
1 Tim. 5. 21  
1 Heb. 9. 14

1 1 Cor. 9. 7.  
1 1 Cor. 25.  
14. 16.  
1 ἡ σὺ αὐτὸν τῶν  
σῶν.

he bring forth those precious treasures of holy obedience, which for the satisfaction of our debt he was pleased to tender unto his Father. Again, if *Adam* had (*p*) done all things which were commanded him, he must for all that have said: *I am an unprofitable servant; I have done that which was my duty to do.* Whereas in the voluntary obedience, which Christ subjected himself unto, the case stood far otherwise.

True it is, that if we respect him in his humane nature, (*q*) *his Father is greater than he*; and he is his Fathers (*r*) *servant*: yet in that he said and most truly said, *that God was his Father*, (*s*) the Jews did rightly infer from thence, that he thereby *made himself equal with God*; and (*t*) the Lord of Hosts himself hath proclaimed him to be *the man that is his fellow*. Being such a man therefore, and so highly born, by the privilege of his birth-right, he might have claimed an exemption from the ordinary service whereunto all other men are tyed: and by being (*u*) the Kings Son, have freed himself from the payment of that tribute which was to be exacted at the hands of Strangers. When (*v*) the Father brought this his first begotten into the world, he said; *Let all the Angels of God worship him*: and at the very instant wherein the Son advanced our nature into the highest pitch of dignity, by admitting it into the unity of his sacred Person, that nature so assumed was worthy to be crowned with all glory and honour: and he in that nature might then have set himself down (*y*) at the right hand of the throne of God; tyed to no other subjection than now he is, or hereafter shall be, when after the end of this world he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God the Father. For then also, in regard of his assumed nature, he (*z*) *shall be subjected unto him that put all other things under him.*

Thus the Son of God if he had minded only *his own things*, might at the very first have attained unto the joy that was set before him: but (*a*) looking on the things of others, he chose rather to come by a tedious way and wearisome journey unto it, not challenging the privilege of a Son, but taking upon him the form of a mean servant. Whereupon in the days of his flesh, he did not serve as an honourable Commander in the Lords host, but as an ordinary soldier, he *made himself of no reputation*, for the time as it were \*emptying himself of his high state and dignity; he *humbled himself and became obedient* until his death; being contented all his life long to be (*b*) *made under the Law*: yea, so far, that as he was sent (*c*) *in the likeness of sinful flesh*, so he disdaind not to subject himself unto the Law which properly did concern *sinful flesh*. And therefore howsoever *Circumcision* was by right applicable only unto such as were (*d*) *dead in their sins, and the circumcision of their flesh*; yet he in whom there was *no body of the sins of the flesh* to be put off, submitted himself notwithstanding thereunto: not only to testify his communion with the Fathers of the old Testament; but also by this means to tender unto his Father a bond, signed with his own blood, whereby he made himself in our behalf a debtor unto the whole Law. For I testifye (saith the (*e*) Apostle) *to every man that is circumcised, that he is a debtor to the whole law.*

In like manner *Baptism* appertained properly unto such as were defiled, and had need to have their (*f*) sins washed away: and therefore when all the land of *Juda* and they of *Jerusalem* went out unto *John*, they (*g*) were all baptized of him in the river *Jordan*, confessing their sins. Among the rest came our Saviour also: but the *Baptist* considering that he had need to be baptized by Christ, and Christ no need at all to be baptized by him, refused

refused to give way unto that action; as altogether unbefitting the state of that, immaculate Lamb of God, who was to take away the sins of the world. Yet did our Mediator submit himself to that Ordinance of God also: not only to testify his communion with the Christians of the new Testament; but especially (which is the reason yielded by himself) because *(h)* *it became him* h. Mat. 3. 16. *thus to fulfil all righteousness.* And so having fulfilled all righteousness, whereunto the meane man was tyed, in the days of his pilgrimage (which was more than he needed to have undergone, if he had respected only himself) the works which he performed were truly works of *supererogation*, which might be put upon the account of them whose debt he undertook to discharge; and being performed by the person of the Son of God, must in that respect not only be equivalent, but infinitely over-value the obedience of *Adam* and all his posterity, although they had remained in their integrity, and continued until this hour, instantly serving God day and night. And thus for our main and principal debt of Obedience, hath our Mediator given satisfaction unto the justice of his Father; with *(i)* *good measure, pressed* i. Luke 6. 38. *down, shaken together, and running over.*

But beside this, we were liable unto another debt; which we have incurred by our default, and drawn upon our selves by way of forfeiture and *nomine pœne*. For as *(k)* Obedience is a due debt, and God's servants in regard thereof are truly debtors: so likewise is sin a *(l)* debt, and sinners *(m)* k. Luk. 17. 12. Rom. 1. 12. Gal. 5. 3. l. Mat. 6. 12. compared with m. 2. Tim. 2. 13. Luk. 11. 4. n. Luk. 24. 26. o. Heb. 2. 10. debtors, in regard of the penalty due for the default. And as the payment from paying his yearly rent, which of it self would have been due although no default had been committed, so the due payment of the yearly rent after the default hath been made, is no sufficient satisfaction for the penalty already incurred. Therefore our surety, who standeth chargeable with all our debts, as he maketh payment for the one by his *Active*, so must he make amends for the other by his *Passive* obedience: he must first *(n)* suffer, and then enter into his glory *(o)* *For it became him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the Captain of their salvation perfect* (that is, a perfect accomplisher of the works which he had undertaken) *through sufferings.*

The Godhead is of that infinite perfection, that it cannot possibly be subject to any passion. He therefore that had no other nature but the Godhead, could not pay such a debt as this; the discharge whereof consisted, in suffering and dying. It was also fit, that God's justice should have been satisfied in that nature which had transgressed; and that the same nature should suffer the punishment, that had committed the offence. *(p)* *Forasmuch* p. Heb. 2. 14. 25. *then as the children were partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself took part of the same: that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the Devil; and deliver them who through fear of death were all their life time subject to bondage.* Such and so great was the love of God the Father towards us, that *(q)* *he spared not his own Son, but* q. Rom. 8. 26. *delivered him up for us all:* and so transcendent was the love of the Son of God towards the sons of men; that he desired not to be spared; but rather then they should lye under the power of death, was of himself most willing to suffer death for them: Which seeing in that infinite nature, which by eternal generation he received from his Father, he could not do; he resolved in the appointed time to take unto himself a Mother, and out of her substance to have a body framed unto himself, wherein he might *(r)* *be-* r. Phil. 2. 8. *come*

come obedient unto death, even the death of the Cross, for our redemption. And therefore (f) when he cometh into the world, he saith unto his Father: *A body hast thou sent me; Lo, I come to do thy will O God.* By the which will, (saith the (i) Apostle) we are sanctified, through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

Thus we see it was necessary for the satisfaction of this debt, that our Mediator should be Man: but he that had no more in him than a Man, could never be able to go through with so great a work. For if there should be found a Man as righteous as Adam was at his first creation, who would be content to suffer for the offence of others: his suffering could not possibly serve for the redemption of one soul; much less would it be a sufficient ransom for those (u) innumerable multitudes that were to be (x) redeemed to God out of every kindred, and tongue, and people, and Nation. Neither could any Man or Angel be able to hold out, if a punishment equivalent to the endless sufferings of all the sinners in the world should at once be laid upon him. Yea, the very powers of Christ himself, upon whom (y) the spirit of might did rest, were so shaken in this sharp encounter; that he, who was the most accomplish'd pattern of all fortitude, stood (z) fore amazed, and with (a) strong crying and tears prayed that, (b) if it were possible, the hour might pass from him.

(c) This man therefore being to offer one sacrifice for sins for ever; to the burning of that sacrifice he must not only bring the (d) coals of his love as strong as death, and as ardent as the fire which hath a most vehement flame, but he must add thereunto those (e) everlasting burnings also, even the flames of his most glorious Deity: and therefore (f) through the eternal spirit must he offer himself without spot unto God; that hereby he might (g) obtain for us an eternal redemption. The blood whereby the Church is purchased, must be (h) God's own blood: and to that end must (i) the Lord of glory be crucified? (k) the Prince and Author of life be killed; he (l) whose eternal generation no man can declare, be cut off out of the land of the living; and the man that is God's own fellow be thus smitten; according to that which God himself foretold by his Prophet. (m) *Awake O sword, against my shepherd, and against the man that is my fellow, saith the Lord of Hosts: smite the shepherd, and the sheep shall be scattered.* The people of Israel, we read did so value the life of David their King, that they counted him to be worth a tenthousand of themselves: how shall we then value the life of (o) David's Lord; (p) who is the blessed and only Potentate, the King of Kings, and Lord of Lords? It was indeed our nature that suffered; but he that suffered in that nature, (q) is over all. God blessed for ever: and for such a Person to have suffered but one hour, was more than if all other persons had suffered ten thousand millions of years.

But put case also, that the life of any other singular man might be equivalent to all the lives of mankind: yet the laying down of that life would not be sufficient to do the deed, unless he that had power to lay it down had power likewise to take it up again. For, to be detained always in that prison, (r) from whence there is no coming out before the payment of the uttermost farthing; is to lye always under execution, and to quit the plea of that full payment of the debt wherein our surety stood engaged for us. And therefore the Apostle upon that ground doth rightly conclude; that (s) if Christ be raised, our faith is vain, we are yet in our sins: and consequently, that as he must be (t) delivered to death for our offences, so he must be raised again for our justification.

Yea our Saviour himself, knowing full well what he was to undergo for our sakes, told us before-hand, that the Comforter whom he would send unto us, should (u) convince the world, that is fully satisfy the consciences of <sup>u</sup> John 16. 10. the sons of men, concerning that (x) everlasting righteousness, which was to <sup>x</sup> Dan. 9. 24. be brought in by him, upon this very ground: *Because I go to my Father, and ye see me no more.* For if he had broken prison and made an escape, the payment of the debt, which as our surety he took upon himself, being not yet satisfied; he should have been seen here again: Heaven would not have held him, more then Paradise did Adam, after he had fallen into God's debt and danger. But our Saviour raising himself from the dead, presenting himself in Heaven before him unto whom the debt was owing. and maintaining his standing there, hath hereby given good proof, that he is now a free man, and hath fully discharged that debt of ours, for which he stood committed. And this is the evidence we have to shew of that righteousness, whereby we stand justified in God's sight: according to that of the Apostle. (y) *Who shall lay any thing to the charge of God's Elect? It is God that* <sup>y</sup> Rom. 8. 33. *justifieth. Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather that is risen* <sup>34</sup> *again; who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for* <sup>us.</sup>

Now although any ordinary man may easily part with his life: yet doth it not ly in his power to resume it again at his own will and pleasure. But he that must do the turn for us, must be able to say as our J E S U S did. (z) *I lay down my life, that I might take it again. No man taketh it from me, but* <sup>z</sup> John 20. 17. *I lay it down of my self: I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it* <sup>18.</sup> *again.* And in another place: (a) *Destroy this Temple, and in three days I* <sup>a</sup> John 1. 17. *will raise it up;* saith he unto the Jews, speaking of the Temple of his body, <sup>21.</sup> An humane nature then he must have had, which might be subject to dissolution: but being once dissolved, he could not by his own strength (which was the thing here necessarily required) raise it up again; unless he had (b) <sup>b</sup> Rom. 1. 4. *declared himself to be the Son of God with power, by the resurrection from the dead.* The Manhood could suffer, but not overcome the sharpness of death: the Godhead could suffer nothing, but overcome any thing. He therefore that was to suffer and to overcome for us, must be partaker of both natures: that (c) <sup>c</sup> 1 Pet. 5. 18. *being put to death in the flesh, he might be able to quicken himself by his own Spirit.*

And now are we come to that part of Christ's mediation, which concerneth the conveyance of (d) *the redemption of this purchased possession* <sup>d</sup> Eph. 1. 14. *unto the sons of men.* A dear purchase indeed, which was to be redeemed with no less price than the blood of the Son of God: but what should the purchase of a stranger have been to us? or what should we have been the better for all this; if we could, not derive our descent from the purchaser, or raise some good title whereby we might estate our selves in his purchase? Now this was the manner in former time in Israel, concerning redemptions: that unto him who was the next of kin, belonged the right of being (e) <sup>e</sup> Ruth. 3. 12. *Goel* <sup>4.</sup> *or Redeemer.* And Job had before that left his glorious profession <sup>5.</sup> *of his faith unto the perpetual memory of all posterity.* (f) *I know that my* <sup>f</sup> Job. 19. 25. *Goel or Redeemer liveth, and at the last shall arise upon the dust* <sup>26.</sup> *or, stand up-* <sup>27.</sup> *on the earth.) And after this my skin is spent; yet in my flesh shall I see God. Whom I shall see for my self, and mine eyes shall behold, and not another* <sup>for me.</sup> Whereby we may easily understand, that his and our Redeemer was to be the invisible God; and yet in his assumed flesh made visible even to the ho-

dily eyes of those whom he redeemed. For if he had not thus assumed our flesh; how should we have been of his blood, or claimed any kindred to him and unless the Godhead had by a personal union been unseparably conjoined unto that flesh; how could he therein have been accounted our next of kin.

For the better clearing of which last reason; we may call to mind that sentence of the Apostle. (g) *The first man is of the earth earthly: the second man is the Lord from heaven.* Where, notwithstanding there were many millions of men in the world betwixt these two; yet we see our Redeemer reckoned the *second man*. And why? but because these two were the only men who could be accounted the prime fountains from whence all the rest of mankind did derive their existence and being. For as all men in the world by mean descents do draw their first original from the *first man*: so in respect of a more immediate influence of efficiency and operation do they own their being unto the *second man*, as he is the *Lord from heaven*. This is God's own language unto *Jeremiah*; (h) *Before I formed thee in the belly, I know; and this is David's acknowledgment, for his part; (i) Thy hands have made me and fashioned me (k) thou hast covered me in my mothers womb: (l) thou art he that took me out of my mothers bowels; and Jobs, for his also; (m) Thy hands have made me and fashioned me together round about: thou hast clothed me with skin and flesh, and hath fenced me with bones and sinews; and the (n) Apostle for us all; In him we live, and move, and have our being; who inferreth also thereupon, both that we are the off-spring or generation of God; and that he is not far from every one of us; this being to be admitted for a most certain truth (notwithstanding the opposition of all gain sayers) that God doth more immediately concur to the generation and all other motions of the creature, then any natural agent doth or can do. And therefore, (o) if by one mans offence, death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness, shall reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.* Considering that this *second man* is not only as universal a principal of all our beings, as was that *first*, and so may sustain the common person of us all, as well as he; but is a far more immediate agent in the production thereof: not, as the *first*, so many generations removed from us, but more neer unto us then our very next progenitors; and in that regard justly to be accounted our next of kin, even before them also.

Yet is not this sufficient neither: but there is another kind of generation required, for which we must be beholding unto the *second man, the Lord from Heaven*; before we can have interest in this purchased *Redemption*. For as the guilt of the *first mans* transgression is derived unto us by the means of carnal generation: so must the benefit of the *second mans* obedience be conveyed unto us by spiritual regeneration. And this must be laid down as a most undoubted verity: that, (p) *except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God; and that every such must be (q) born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.* Now, as our Mediator in respect of the Adoption of Sons, which he hath procured for us, (r) is not ashamed to call us *Brethren*: so in respect of this new birth, whereby he begetteth us to a spiritual and everlasting life, he disdaineth not to own us as his *Children*. (s) *When thou shalt make his seed and offering for sin, he shall see his seed: saith the Prophet Esaias. (t) A seed shall serve him; it shall be accounted to the Lord for a generation: saith his Father David likewise of him. And he himself of himself: (u) Behold I, and the children which*

\* Jer. 1. 5.  
\* Psal. 119. 73.  
\* Psal. 139.  
13.

\* Psal. 71. 6.  
\* Job 1. 5, 11.

\* Acts 17. 27.  
28, 29.

\* See Bread-  
wardia de.  
causa Dei, lib.  
1. cap. 3. & 4.  
\* Rom. 5. 17.

\* John 3. 3.  
\* John 1. 13.

\* Heb. 2. 11.

\* Esa. 53. 10.

\* Psal. 22. 30.  
\* Heb. 2. 13.

which God hath given me. Whence the Apostle deduceth this conclusion: (x) *Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same.* He himself, that is he who was God equal to the Father: for who else was able to make this (y) *new creature*, but the same (z) God that is the Creator of all things? (no less power being requisite to the effecting of this, then was at the first to the producing of all things out of nothing: ) and these new (a) babes being to be (b) *born of the Spirit*; who could have power to send the Spirit, thus to beget them, but the Father and the Son from whom he proceeded? the same blessed Spirit, who framed the natural body of our Lord in the womb of the Virgine, being to new mould and fashion every member of his mystical body unto his similitude and likeness.

For the further opening of which mystery (which went beyond the apprehension of (c) *Nicodemus*, though a *master of Israel*) we are to consider; that in every perfect generation, the creature produced receiveth two things from him that doth beget it: *Life and Likeness*. A curious Limner draweth his own sons pourtraiture to the life (as we say: ) yet because there is no true life in it but a likeness only; he cannot be said to be the begetter of his Picture, as he is of his Son. And some creatures there be that are bred out of mud or other putrid matter: which although they have life, yet because they have no correspondence in likeness unto the principle from whence they were derived, are therefore accounted to have but an improper and equivocal generation. Whereas in the right and proper course of generation (others being esteemed but monstrous births that swerve from that rule) every creature begetteth his like:

—nec imbellem feroces  
Progenerant aquilæ columbarum.

Now touching our spiritual death and life, these sayings of the Apostle would be thought upon. (d) *We thus judge, that if one dyed for all, then were all dead: and that he dyed for all, that they which live, should not henceforth live unto themselves, but unto him which dyed for them and rose again.* (e) *God who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, even when we were dead in our sins, hath quickened us together with Christ.* (f) *And you being dead in your sins, and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him having forgiven you all trespasses.* (g) *I am crucified with Christ. Nevertheless I live, yet not I, but Christ liveth in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh, I live by the Faith on the Son of God, who loved me and gave himself for me.* From all which we may easily gather, that if by the obedience and sufferings of a bare man, though never so perfect, the most sovereign medicine that could be thought upon should have been prepared for the curing of our wounds: yet all would be to no purpose, we being found dead, when the medicine did come to be applied.

Our Physician therefore must not only be able to restore us unto health, but unto life it self: which none can do but the Father, Son, and holy Ghost; one God, blessed for ever. Two which purpose, these passages of our Saviour also are to be considered. (h) *As the Father hath life in himself: so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself.* (i) *As the living Father hath sent me, and I live by the Father: so he that eateth me, even he shall live by me.* (k) *I am the living bread, which come down from heaven; if any man eat of this bread, he shall live for ever: and the bread that I will give,*

is my flesh, which I will give for the life of the world. The substance where-  
 1 Cor. 15. 45. of is briefly comprehended in this saying of the Apostle: (l) *The last Adam was made a quickning Spirit, An Adam therefore and perfect Man must he have been; that his flesh, given for us upon the Cross, might be made the conduit to convey life unto the world: and a quickning Spirit he could not have been, unless he were God, able to make that flesh an effectual instrument of life by the operation of his blessed Spirit. For, as himself hath declared, (m) It is the Spirit that quickeneth; without it, the flesh would profit nothing.*

John 6. 63.

Gen. 5. 3.

John 3. 6.

2 Cor. 15.

42, 49.

Phil. 3. 21.

Ibid. ver. 20.

Eph. 4. 22,

23, 24.

1 Cor. 11 7.

2 Cor. 4. 4.

Heb. 1. 3.

Rom. 8. 29.

2 Cor. 8. 23.

Num. 11. 17.

25.

John 3. 34.

Phil 1. 19.

Col. 1. 19.

John 1. 16.

As for the point of similitude and likeness: we read of *Adam* after his fall, that he (n) *begat a son in his own likeness, after his image.* And generally, as well touching the carnal as the spiritual generation, our Saviour hath taught us this lesson, (o) *That which is born of the flesh, is flesh; and that which is born of the spirit, is spirit.* Whereupon the Apostle maketh this comparison betwixt those who are born of that first man, who is of the earth earthly, and of the second man, who is the Lord from heaven. (p) *As is the earthly, such are they that are earthly; and as it is the heavenly, such are they also that are heavenly: and as we have born the image of the earth, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly.* We shall indeed hereafter bear it in full perfection: when (q) *The Lord Jesus Christ shall change our base body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working, whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.* Yet in the meantime also, such a conformity is required in us unto that heavenly man, that (r) *our conversation must be in heaven, whence we look for this Saviour: and that we must (s) put off, concerning the former conversation, that old man which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts, and be renewed in the spirit of our mind; and put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.* For as in one particular point of domestical authority, (t) *the Man is said to be the image and glory of God, and the Women the glory of the Man,* so in a more universal manner is Christ said to be (u) *the image of God, even (x) the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person;* and we (y) *to be conformed to his image, that he might be the first born among those many brethren, who in that respect are accounted (z) the glory of Christ.*

We read in the holy story, that God (a) *took of the spirit which was upon Moses, and gave it unto the seventy Elders;* that they might bear the burden of the people with him, and that he might not bear it, as before he had done, himself alone. It may be, his burden being thus lightened, the abilities that were left him for government were not altogether so great, as the necessity of his former employment required them to have been: and in that regard, what was given to his assistants, might perhaps be said to be taken from him. But we are sure the case was otherwise in him of whom now we speak: unto whom (b) *God did not thus give the Spirit by measure.* And therefore although so many millions of believers do continually receive this (c) *supply of the spirit of Jesus Christ;* yet neither is that fountain any way exhausted, nor the plenitude of that well-spring of grace any whit impaired or diminished: it being God's pleasure (d) *That in him should all fulness dwell;* and that (e) *of his fulness all we should receive, grace for grace.* That as in the natural generation there is such a correspondence in all parts betwixt the begetter and the Infant begotten, that there is no member to be seen in the Father, but there is the like answerable to be found in the child, although in a far less proportion: so it falleth out in the spiritual, that



that for every grace which in a most eminent manner is found in Christ, a like grace will appear in God's child, although in a far inferiour degree; similitudes and likenesses being defined by the Logicians to be comparisons made in *quality*, and not in *quantitie*.

We are yet further to take it into our consideration, that by thus inlivening and fashioning us according to his own image, Christ's purpose was not to raise a seed unto himself dispersedly and distractedly, but to *(f) gather* 10-f John 11. 52. *gather in one, the Children of God that were scattered abroad*; yea and to *(g) bring* g Eph. 1. 10. *all unto one head by himself, both the  $\alpha$  which are in Heaven and the  $\beta$  which are on the Earth*; that as in the Tabernacle, *(h) the veil divided between the Holy* h Exod. 26. 33; *place and the most Holy*; but the curtains which covered them both were so coupled together with the taches, that it might still *(i) be one Tabernacle*: so i Ib. v. 6. & 11. the Church militant and Triumphant, typified thereby, though distant as far the one from the other as Heaven is from Earth, yet is made but one Tabernacle in Jesus Christ; *(k) in whom all the building fully framed together* k Eph. 2. 21, *groweth unto an holy Temple in the Lord, and in whom all of us are builded together* 21. *for an habitation of God through the Spirit.*

The bond of this mystical union betwixt Christ and us (as *(l)* elsewhere l Sermon to the Commons hath more fully been declared) is on his part that *(m) quickning Spirit,* m the Commons house of Parliament, anno 1520. which being in him as the Head, is from thence diffused to the spiritual animation of all his members: and on our part *(n) Faith,* which is the prime n John 6. 63. act of life wrought in those who are capable of understanding by that same 1 Cor. 5. 17. & 15. 45. Phil. 2. 1 Rom. 8. 9. 1 John 3. 24. & 4. 13. Spirit. Both whereof must be acknowledged to be of so high a nature, that none could possible by such ligatures knit up so admirable a body, but he that was God Almighty. And therefore although we did suppose such a man might be found who should perform the Law for us, suffer the death that was due to our offence and overcome it; yet and whose obedience and sufferings should be of such value, that it were *sufficient* for the redemption of the whole world: yet could it not be *efficient* to make us live by o Gal. 2. 20. & Eph. 3. 17. faith, unless that Man had been able to send God's Spirit to apply the same unto us.

Which as no bare Man or any other Creature whatsoever can do; so for *Faith* we are taught by S. *(o) Paul,* that it is the *operation of God,* and a o Col. 2. 12. 2 Thess. 1. 11. *work of his power,* even of that same power wherewith Christ himself was raised from the dead. Which is the ground of that prayer of his, that the eyes *(p)* of our understanding being enlightened, we might know *what is the exceeding greatness of his mighty power to us ward who believe*; according to the p Eph. 1. 10. 20. & c. *working of his mighty power, which he wrought in Christ when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places for above all Principality, and Power, and Might, and every Name that is named not only in this world, but also in that to come: and hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be head over all things to the Church, which is his body, the fullness of him that filleth all in all.*

Yet was it fit also, that this *Head* should be of the same nature with the *Body* which is knit unto it: and therefore that he should be God, as that he might partake of our flesh likewise. *(q) For we are members of his body,* q Ephes. 5. 30. saith the same Apostle, *of his flesh, and of his bones.* And, *(r) except ye eat* r Joh. 6. 53. *the flesh of the Son of man, saith our Saviour himself, and drink his blood; ye have no life in you.* *(s) He that eateth my flesh, and drinketh my* s Ibid. ver. 56. *blood, dwelleth in me, and I in him.* Declared thereby, first, that by this mystical and supernatural union, we are as truly conjoyued with him, as the meat

meat and drink we take it with us ; when by the ordinary work of Nature, it is converted into our own substance. *Secondly*, that this conjunction is immediately made with his humane nature. *Thirdly*, that the (r) *Lamb slain*, that is, (u) *Christ crucified*, hath by that death of his, made his flesh broken, and his blood poured out for us upon the Cross, to befit food for the spiritual nourishment of our souls ; and the very well-spring from whence, by the power of his Godhead, all life and grace is derived unto us.

† Rev. 5. 12.  
& 13. 8.  
• 1 Cor. 1. 23.  
& 2. 2.

\* Heb. 10. 19,  
20.

• Joh. 14. 6.  
† Gen. 28. 12.  
13.

• Joh. 1. 5. 1.

• Exod. 26. 31.  
& 36. 35.  
• Heb. 12. 22,  
24,  
• Heb. 1. 14.

Upon this ground it is, that the Apostle telleth us, that we (x) *have boldness to enter into the Holiest by the blood of Jesus ; by a new and living way which he hath consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh*. That as in the Tabernacle, there was no passing from the Holy to the most Holy place, but by the veil : so now there is no passage to be looked for from the Church Militant to the Church Triumphant, but by the *flesh* of him, who hath said of himself ; (y) *I am the way, the truth and the life, no man cometh unto the Father but by me*. Jacob in his dream beheld (z) *a ladder set upon the Earth, the top whereof reached to Heaven, and the Angels of God ascending and descending on it, the Lord himself standing above it*. Of which vision none can give a better interpretation then he, who was prefigured therein, gave unto *Nathaniel*. (a) *Hereafter you shall see heaven opened, and the Angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man*. Whence we may well collect, that the only means whereby God standing above and his *Israel* lying here below are conjoined together, and the only ladder whereby Heaven may be seiled by us, is the *Son of man* ; the type of whose flesh, the *veil*, was therefore commanded to be (b) *made with Cherubims* ; to shew that we come (c) *to an innumerable company of Angels* when we come to *Jesus, the Mediator of the New Testament* : who as the head of the Church hath power to (d) *send forth all those ministering spirits, to minister for them who shall be Heirs of salvation*.

• Deut. 33. 10.  
Hagg. 2. 11.  
Mal. 2. 7.  
• Esa. 28. 7.  
• Jer. 6. 13. &  
8. 10. & 14.  
18. &  
23. 11, 13, 24.  
Lam. 2. 10  
• Eph. 4. 11.  
• 2 Pet. 1. 21.  
• πλουμας ως  
• πλουτες  
• τως.

Heb. 1. 1.  
• Heb. 3. 12.  
• Num. 12. 6,  
7. 8.

Lastly, we are to take into our consideration, that as in things concerning God, the main execution of our Saviours *Priest-hood* doth consist ; so in things concerning man, he exerciseth both his *Prophetical Office* ; whereby he openeth the will of his Father unto us, and his *Kingly*, whereby he ruleth and protecteth us. It was indeed a part of (e) the *Priests Office* in the old Testament to instruct the people in the law of God, and yet were (f) they distinguished from *Prophets* : like as in the new Testament also, (g) *Prophets* as well as *Apostles*, are made a different degree from ordinary *Pastours* and *Teachers*, who received not their doctrine by immediate inspiration from Heaven ; as those other (h) *Holy men of God* did, who speak as they were moved by the *Holy Ghost*. Whence *S. Paul* putteth the Hebrews in mind, that *God who (i) in sundry parts and in sundry manners spake in time past unto the Fathers by the prophets, hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son Christ Jesus* : whom therefore he stileth (k) the *Apostle*, as well as the *high Priest* of our profession ; who was faithful to him that appointed him, even as *Moses* was in all his house.

Now *Moses*, we know, had a singular prehemineace above all the rest of the *Prophets* : according to that ample testimony which God himself giveth of him. (l) *If there be a Prophet among you, I the Lord will make my self known unto him in a vision, and I will speak unto him in a dream. My servant Moses is not so, who is faithful in all mine house: with him will I speak mouth to mouth, even apparently, and not in dark speeches ; and the similitude of the Lord shall be behold*. And therefore we find, that our Mediatour, in

in the execution of his Prophetical office is in a more peculiar manner likened unto *Moses*: which he himself also did thus foretel. (m) *The Lord thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy Brethren, like unto me; and unto him ye shall hearken.* According to all that thou desiredst of the Lord thy God in Horeb, in the day of the assembly, saying, *Let me not hear again the voice of the Lord my God; neither let me see this great fire any more, that I dye not.* And the Lord said unto me, *They have well spoken, that which they have spoken. I will raise them up a Prophet from among their brethren, like unto thee, and will put my words in his mouth, and he shall speak unto them all that I shall command him. And it shall come to pass, that whosoever will not hearken unto my words, which he shall speak in my Name, I will require it of him*

Our Prophet therefore must be a Man railed from among his Brethren the *Israelites*, (n) (of whom, as concerning the flesh, he came) who was to perform unto us, that which the Father requested of *Moses*: (o) *Speak thou to us and we will hear; but let not God speak with us, lest we dye.* And yet (that in this also we may see, how our Mediator had the preheminence) (p) when *Aaron*, and all the children of *Israel* were to receive from the mouth of *Moses* all that the Lord had spoken with him in Mount *Sinai*, they were afraid to come nigh him, by reason of the glory of his shining countenance: so that he was fain to put a vail over his face, while he spake unto them that which he was commanded. But that which for a time was thus made glorious, had no glory in respect of the glory that excelleth; and both the glory thereof, and the vail which covered it, are now abolished in *Christ*: the vail of whose flesh doth so over shadow (r) the brightness of his glory, that yet under it we may (j) behold his glory, as the glory of the only begotten of the Father; yea, and (t) we all wish upon face, beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same Image, from glory, to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.

And this is daily effected by the power of the Ministry of the Gospel, instituted by the authority, and second by the power of this our great Prophet: whose transcendent excellency beyond *Moses* (unto whom, in the execution of that function he was otherwise likened) is thus set forth by the Apostle. (u) *He is counted worthy of more glory than *Moses*, in as much as he who hath builded the house hath more honour than the house. For every house is builded by some one: but he that hath built all things is God.* And *Moses* verily was faithful in all his house, as a servant, for a testimony of those things which were to be spoken after: But *Christ*, as the Son, over his own house (x) This house of God is no other then the Church of the living God: whereof as he is the only Lord, so is he properly the only Builder. *Christ* therefore being both the Lord and the (y) Builder of his Church, must be God as well as Man: which is the cause, why we find all the several mansions of this (z) great house to carry the title indifferently of the (a) Churches of God, and the (b) Churches of *Christ*.

True it is, that there are other ministerial builders, whom *Christ* employed in that service: this being not the least of those gifts which he bestowed upon men at his triumphant ascension into Heaven, that (c) he gave not only ordinary Pastors and Teachers, but Apostles likewise, and Prophets, and Evangelists; for the perfecting of the Saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of *Christ*. Which, what great power it requireth, he himself doth fully express in passing the grant of his high Commission

4 Mat. 23. 18, 19, 20. mission unto his Apostles. (d) *All power is given unto me in Heaven and in Earth. Go ye therefore and teach all Nations baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son and of the Holy Ghost; teaching them to observe all things, whatsoever I have commanded you: and lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the World. Amen.*

21 Cor. 15. 10. S. Paul professeth himself that he (e) *laboured more abundantly than all the rest of the Apostles: yet not I, saith he, but the grace of God which was*  
 ft Cor. 3. 9, 10. *with me. And therefore although (f) according to the grace of God which was given unto him, he denied not but that, as a wise Master-builder he had laid the foundation;*  
 g Ibid. v. 5, 6, 7. *yet he acknowledgeth that they upon whom he had wrought, were Gods building, as well as Gods husbandry. For who, saith (g) he, is Paul, and who is Apollo, but Ministers by whom you believed, even as the Lord gave to every man? I have planted, Apollo watered: but God gave the increase. So then, neither is he that planteth any thing, neither he that watereth: but God that giveth the increase.*

Two things therefore we find in our great Prophet, which do far exceed the ability of any bare Man; and so do difference him from all the (h) *Holy Prophets, which have been since the world began. For first, we are taught; that*

i Mat. 11. 27. *(i) no man knoweth the Father, save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him: and that (k) no man hath seen God at anytime; but the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him. Being in his bosom, he is become conscious of his secrets, and so out of his own immediate knowledge, inabled to discover the whole will of his Father unto us; whereas all other Prophets and Apostles receive their revelations at the second hand, and according to the grace given unto them by the Spirit of Christ. Witness that place of S. Peter, for the Prophets: (l) Of which*

k Joh. 1. 18. *salvation the Prophets have enquired, and searched diligently, who prophesied of the grace that should come unto you; searching what or what manner of time.*

i Pet. 1. 10, 11. **THE SPIRIT OF CHRIST WHICH WAS IN THEM**  
*did signifie, when it testified before hand the sufferings of Christ, and the glory that should follow. And for the Apostles, those heavenly words which our Saviour himself uttered unto them, whilst he was among them: (m) When the Spirit of Truth is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself, but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak; and he will shew you things to come. He shall glorifie me: for he shall receive of mine, and shew it unto you. All things that the Father hath are mine: therefore said I, that he shall take of mine, and shall shew it unto you.*

1 Joh. 6. 1. 13. *Secondly, all other Prophets and Apostles can do more (as hath been said) but plant and water; only God can give the increase: they may teach indeed and baptize; but unless Christ were with them by the powerful presence of his Spirit, they would not be able to give one soul by that Ministry of theirs.*

2 Joh. 6. 1. 13. *We (n) as lively stones, are built upon a spiritual house; but, (o) except the Lord do build this house, they labour in vain that build it. For who is able to breath the spirit of life into those dead stones, but he, of whom it is written; (p) The hour is coming, and now is when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God; and they that hear it shall live: and again: (q) Awake thou that sleepest, and arise from the dead; and Christ shall give the light. Who can awake us out of this dead sleep, and give light unto these blind eyes of ours; but the Lord our God, unto whom we pray, that he would (r) lighten our eyes, lest we sleep the sleep of death.*

1 Pet. 2. 5. *And as a blind man is not able to conceive the distinction of colours, although*

Psal. 127. 1. *although*

Joh. 5. 25. *although*

Eph. 5. 14. *although*

Psal. 13. 2. *although*

although the skilfullest man alive should use all the art he hid to teach him; because he wanteth the sense whereby that object is discernable: for (f) the natural man perceiveth not the things of the Spirit of God, (for they are foolishness unto him;) neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned. Whereupon the Apostle concludeth, concerning himself and all his fellow-labourers, that (t) God who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, hath shined in our hearts; to give the light of the knowledge of the glory of God, in the face of Jesus Christ: but we have this treasure in earthen vessels; that the excellency of the power may be of God, and not of us. Our Mediator therefore (who must (u) be able to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him) may not want the excellency of the power, whereby he may make us capable of this high knowledge of the things of God, propounded unto us by the ministry of his servants: and consequently, in this respect also, must be God as well as Man.

There remaineth the Kingdom of our Redeemer: described thus by the Prophet Esay, (x) Of the increase of his government and peace there shall be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his Kingdom; to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice, from henceforth even for ever: and by Daniel: (y) Behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of Heaven, and came to the Ancient of days; and they brought him near before him. And there was given him Dominion, and Glory, and a Kingdom, that all People, Nations and Languages should serve him, his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away; and his Kingdom that which shall not be destroyed: and by the Angel Gabriel in his Embassage to the blessed Virgin, (z) Behold thou shalt conceive in thy womb, and bring forth a Son, and thou shalt call his name Jesus. He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest; and the Lord God shall give him the Throne of his Father David. And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

This is that new (a) David our King, whom God hath raised up unto his (b) own Israel: who was in Truth, that which he was called; the Son of Man, and the Son of the Highest. That in the one respect, (c) we may say unto him, as the Israelites of old did unto their David; (d) Behold, we are thy bone, and thy flesh, and in the other, sing of him as David himself did; (e) The Lord said unto my Lord, Sit thou at my right hand, until I make thine enemies thy footstool. So that the promise made unto our first Parents, that (f) the seed of the woman should bruise the Serpents head, may well stand with that other saying of Saint Paul; that (g) the God of peace shall bruise Satan under our feet. Seeing (h) for this very purpose the Son of God was manifested in the flesh, that he might destroy the works of the Devil. And still that foundation of God will remain unshaken: I (i) even I am the Lord, and beside me there is no Saviour. (l) Thou shalt know no God but me; for there is no Saviour beside me.

Two special branches there be of this Kingdom of our Lord and Saviour, the one of Grace, whereby that part of the Church is governed which is Militant upon Earth; the other of Glory, belonging to that part which is Triumphant in Heaven. Here upon Earth, as by his Prophetical Office he worketh upon our Mind and Understanding, so by his Kingly, he ruleth our Will and Affections; (m) casting down imaginations and every high thing that exalteth it self against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ. Where as, we must needs acknowledge,

- " Phil. 2. 13. ledge, that (n) it is GOD which worketh in us both to will and to do, and  
 " 1 Theſ. 5. 32. that it is (o) he which ſanctifieth us wholly: ſo are we taught likewise to  
 " Heb. 2. 11. believe (p) both he who ſanctifieth, and they who are ſanctified, are all of one,  
 namely of one and the ſelf ſame nature; that the ſanctifier might not be aſha-  
 med to call thoſe, who are ſanctified by him, his brethren, that as their na-  
 ture was corrupted, and their blood tainted in the firſt Adam, ſo it might  
 be reſtored again in the ſecond Adam: and that as from the one a corrupt,  
 ſo from the other a pure and undefiled nature might be tranſmitted unto the  
 heirs of ſalvation.
- " Pſal. 84. 11. The ſame (q) God that giveth grace, is he alſo that giveth glory: yet ſo,  
 " 1 Cor. 15. 21. that the ſtreams of both of them muſt run to us through the golden pipe of  
 our Saviours humanity. (r) For ſince by man came death; it was fit that by man  
 alſo ſhould come the reſurrection of the dead. Even by that man who hath  
 ſaid: (ſ) Who ſo eateth my fleſh, and drinketh my blood, hath eternal life; and  
 " 2 Theſ. 1. 10. I will raiſe him up at the laſt day. Who then (t) ſhall come to be glorified in his  
 " u Phil. 3. 21. Saints, and to be made marvellous in all them that believe: and (u) ſhall change  
 this baſe body of ours, that it may be fashioned like unto his own glorious body; ac-  
 cording to the working, whereby he is able even to ſubdue all things unto himſelf. Unto  
 " x Rev. 1. 5, 6. him therefore that hath thus (x) loved us, and waſhed us from our ſins  
 in his own blood, and hath made us Kings and Priests unto God and his Father;  
 to him be glory and dominion for ever, and ever, AMEN.

## PHILIP. 3. 8.

I count all things but loſs for the Excellency of the Knowledge of  
 Chriſt Jeſus my Lord.

FINIS.

# THE TABLE.

<b>A</b>					
<b>A</b> dams sin	407	Not of absolute necessity to salvation	370		Page
<i>Demonition</i>	384	<i>Boasting</i>	195	289	
Private	384, &c.	<i>Body of Man, how made</i>	90		
Publick	386, &c.	Corrupted by sin	131		
<i>Adoption</i> with its benefits	178	What things respect it's welfare	252	131	
<i>Adversaries</i> in the spiritual conflict	341,	<i>Bondage</i> of Man	124	&c.	
	307, &c.	<i>Bread, what</i>	331		
<i>Adultery</i>	253, &c.	<i>Burial</i> of Christ	154		
<i>Affability</i>	280	<i>Buying, How to be performed</i>	268		
<i>Affections</i> corrupted	128	<b>C</b>			
Evil	299	<b>C</b> alling wordly Lawful, with it's op-			
<i>Affiance</i> in God	193	posities	263	&c.	
<i>Alienation</i> of estate	266	Spiritual, Effectual	169		
<i>Alms</i> who to give and how much &c.	354 &c.	<i>Carefulness</i> & <i>Cares</i> Distracting	261		
	356	<i>Carelessness</i>	261		
<i>Almightiness</i> of God: See <i>Omnipotency</i>	39	<i>Catechising, what, necessity of it</i>	2		
<i>Ambition</i>	261	<i>Catbolick Church</i>	167		
<i>Amen, what</i>	344	<i>Censures</i> of the Church what? 381 &c.	424		
<i>Anathema Maranatha, what</i>	387	<i>Ceremonys</i>	202		
<i>Angels</i>	86	<i>Chaos</i> what?	87		
Good	102	<i>Chance-medly, a sin</i>	246		
Evil	105, 106	<i>Chastity, in Eye, Speech &amp; Tongue</i>	251	&c.	
Their Apparition	104	<i>Children, Political</i>	235		
Ministry	105	Natural	235	&c.	
Uses of this Doctrine	108	<i>Christ, His Natures</i>	141	407	
<i>Anger, what in God</i>	63	Divine 142 408 and Humane	143		
<i>In Man</i>	243	The necessity of both	143	&c.	
<i>Antichrist, who he is</i>	390	Union of the 2 Names	146		
His Seat	393	Our Mediator	408		
<i>Apocrypha, not canonical, with it's er-</i>	12 &c.	Why <i>Jesus</i> is called <i>Christ</i>	148		
rors	388	See for his <i>Offices, Actions, and Passions,</i>			
<i>Apostacy, general</i>	249	&c. under their distinct Letters &c.	147		
<i>Apparel, abused, how</i>	260	<i>Christim</i> Religion method of the do-			
<i>Appetite, to be limited</i>	406	ctrine	415		
<i>Angels</i> and <i>Men</i> their Creation	300	<i>Church</i> of Christ	166	358	410
<i>Armour, spiritual</i>	280	How <i>Catbolick</i> and who the <i>Head</i> of it	167		
<i>Arrogancy</i>	164	Triumphant and Militant	167		
<i>Ascension</i> of Christ	26 &c.	Privileges of the members of it	169		
<i>Attributes, of God, what</i>	363 411	What the true <i>Marks</i> of it, and whether			
<b>B</b>					
<b>B</b> aptism, what	364 &c.	it may Err	359		
How to be Administred, with other	366	In what cases we may Separate	360		
things referring to it	367 &c.	It's <i>Censures</i>	381	&c.	
Of the Benefits	367 &c.	<i>Church</i> Enemies	388		
Of <i>Infant</i> Baptism	367 &c.	<i>Cloathing, at first, what</i>	121		
		How abused	249		
		<i>Commandments</i>	184		
		See <i>Decalogue</i>	Uuu 1	<i>Abbreviated</i>	

# The TABLE.

Abbreviated	409	<i>Fif</i> th	250 &c.
Communion, with <i>Christ</i>	172	<i>Six</i> th	240 &c.
Of <i>Saints</i>	170	<i>Seventh</i>	248 &c.
Company that is good	185	<i>Eight</i> th	256 &c.
Concupiscence, Two sorts of it	291	<i>Ninth</i>	275 &c.
Original	292	<i>Tenth</i>	290 &c.
Yet it is sin	293 &c.	Decrees of God	79 82 417
Actual	293 &c. 295	Their execution	ibid.
Confession of sin	290	<i>Deeds</i> , what to be our Neighbour	244
Confessance what	178	<i>Decendant</i> in Law Suits his vices	284
Good in God	178	<i>Devs</i> their Names and Actions	106
Evil in other things separate from God	196	<i>Divine</i> Nature of <i>Christ</i>	142
Confessors, corrupted	120	<i>Drink</i> , how abused	250
Contentedness	259 &c.	<i>Duels</i>	247
Contracts, Lawful	260	<b>E</b>	
Divers sorts	267 270	<i>E</i> arth It's creation	85
Corruption of sin, extensive	129 &c.	<i>E</i> arthly things, dissuasions from the Love of them.	196
Corruption of mans Nature consists in 6 things	407	<i>Election</i> , what	35
Covenant	418	<i>Elements</i> , four	88
Between God and Man	109 406 418	<i>Equals</i> , who and what their duty	230 &c.
Of <i>Works</i>	110	<i>Eternity</i> of God	28 33
Of <i>Grace</i>	138 &c.	<i>Evil</i> , what it is	341
The Difference and Agreement between those two	140	<i>Exaltation</i> of <i>Christ</i>	162
Coveting	291	<i>Excommunication</i> , what	386
Covetousness	261	<i>Executors</i> their Duty	271
Counsel of God, what	34	<i>Eye</i> , chaff	251
Courtesy	280	<b>F</b>	
Creation	82 &c. 418	<i>F</i> aith, various Acceptations and Di- vers Kinds	174 &c. 408 422
Of particular Creatures	86 &c. 90 &c.	<i>Justifying</i> , how differing from the <i>Faith</i> of <i>Worldlings</i>	364
How long since	ibid. &c. 88	<i>Fall</i> , Of <i>Angels</i>	106
<b>D</b>		<i>Man</i>	120 &c.
<i>D</i> aily bread what	333	<i>Effects</i> of it	ibid.
Day 7th. to be kept holy	217	<i>False-witness</i>	275
<i>Death</i> , First, and second	138	<i>Fame</i> , Good, to be preserved	281 &c.
Of <i>Christ</i> comfortable	154	The way of getting it	287
What Duties respect it	160	<i>Fasts</i> , what	200
What Duties belong to us after the death of others	242	<i>Fasting</i>	201 250 346
Why it befalls the righteous	395	It's Kinds	348 &c.
<i>Debts</i> , what	334 &c.	<i>Parts</i>	349
<i>Decalogue</i> , or the 10 <i>Commandments</i> all broken in Adams first sin	119	<i>Father</i> , first <i>Person</i> in the <i>Trinity</i>	69
<i>Decalogue</i> , or the 10 <i>Commandments</i>	184 &c.	Of <i>Heaven</i> , how to be prayed to	319
The <i>Preface</i> opened	129	What in <i>Prayer</i>	320
The <i>Exp</i> sition of the first <i>Commandment</i>	190 &c.	<i>Fear</i> , of God, what? Of other things separate from him sinful	196 &c.
Second	198 &c.	<i>Feasting</i> Holy	153
Third	211 &c.	<i>Flattery</i> , what?	286
Fourth	126 &c.	<i>Flesh</i> an Enemy	303
		<i>Forgetfulness</i> of God, what?	35
		<i>Forgiveness</i>	



# The TABLE.

Forgiveness of sin	336	Of Man wherein consisting	2
Form of Prayer, whether lawful	344	Religion means to obtain it	1
Fornication	253	In Paradise	11
Frugality, what?	273	Hatred of God	64
<b>G</b>			
Gesture of the Body, in Gods worship	194 345	Heavens, what their Duty	353
In our carriage to men	244	Heaven, why God is said to be there	321
Wanton Gestures	250	Heavens what?	85
Getting Just & Extraordinary	272 266 263	Heavens Etc	399
Several ways of Getting	267	Hell Christs descent	154
Gift of Prayer, Means to obtain it	315	Hell Reprobats	399
Giving of Men	275 386	Hirelings, their Duty	271
of God	23 323	Hiring of things	269
God, how Enjoyed and Known	3 24	Holiness of God, what	53 422
Nature 3 25 Essence 25 Name 26		In Christ, what	155
That there is One	24 64	Holy Ghost, the third Person in the Trinity	73 &c.
God's Glory acknowledged	343	He is true God	74 &c.
But One	64	Hope, what	193
Objections against it Answered	65	Humane Nature of Christ	143 &c.
God a Spirit	28	Humiliation of Christ	162
Properties & Attributes	27 31 &c.	Humility	186 195 242
Objections answered	33	Husbands Duties	233
See Particulars under their different Letters		<b>I</b>	
Definition of God not to be given but Description	28 416	Dolatry	198 205 &c.
Perfection and felicity of God	29	Who guilty of it	205 &c.
Singleness in God	30	What it is to countenance it	208
The will of God; what?	44 &c.	Reasons against it	208 &c.
Whether God doth will Evil	49	Zealously, what in God	209
Holiness of God	53	Jesus our Mediator	141
Of the fear of God	56	Name, Jesus Christ	148
Of his Mercy	59	Ignorance of God	192
God to be our God, what	190	Means of it	197 198
Godly Sorrow	298	Image of God in man, what	92
Goodness of God	55 &c.	Images, and making them	199
Good Works	304 &c.	Forbidden	207
Their Properties	304	Of God unlawful	206
That they Merit not	305	Of Christ unlawful	207
Why God rewarded them	306	Their worship, what	207
The Ends of them	306	Immensities of God	31 &c.
Gospel State of man, what	165	Immortality of the Soul	91
Gospel, how a Rule of obedience	181	Immutability of God	30 &c.
How differenced from the Law	181	Impurity	249
Gospel, the new Administration	361	Implicit Faith	176
Government of God referring to sin	97 &c.	Incarnation mystery	123
Gratiousness of God	55	Incest	253
Guilt of sin	137	Infamy, the means of it	287
<b>H</b>			
Allowing Gods name, what	322 &c.	Infants, how capable of Baptism	367
Happiness, desired by Men	1	The lawfulness of their Baptism	368
		Inferiours, who, and what their Duty	230 &c.
		Infinite	31
		Infinite	Infinite

# The TABLE.

	Page		Page
<i>Infinite Power</i> in God	39	What to do for the Souls of Subjects	232
<i>Innocency</i> , Man in this estate what	111	<i>Man</i> , his <i>Creation</i>	90
What the happiness and employment of this estate	112	God's <i>Providence</i> towards him	108
<i>Intercession</i> of <i>Christ</i>	156 422	In the state of corruption	112
<i>Joy</i> , sinful	197	His <i>Fall</i> , See <i>Fall</i> of Man	120
Godly	353	Magistral's duty	238
<i>Judgment</i> , rash	283	<i>Manslaughter</i>	247
Of the <i>Last Day</i>	395	<i>Marriage</i> , What required to enter upon it	254
<i>Particular</i>	396 411 425	The <i>Holiness</i> of it	254 &c.
General and	411	<i>Masters</i> , their <i>Dutys</i>	236
<i>Last Judgment</i> . The signs	396	<i>Meat</i> how abused	250
<i>Preparations</i>	397	<i>Mediator</i> of the <i>Covenant</i> of <i>Grace</i>	141 422
The <i>Execution</i>	398	<i>Christ's</i> <i>Mediatorship</i>	147
<i>Just</i> , as <i>Spoken</i> of Man different	62	<i>Memory</i> corrupted	129
<i>Justice</i> of God	61	<i>Merchandise</i>	267
<i>Original</i>	62	<i>Mercy</i> of God	59
<i>Justifications</i>	172 &c.	No merit in good works	305
different from <i>Sanctification</i>	180	<i>Ministers</i> <i>Duty</i>	237
<i>Justifying Faith</i> , see <i>Faith</i>	174 &c.	<i>Ministration</i> of <i>Angels</i>	104
<b>K</b>		<i>Ministry</i> old	411 387
<i>Kingdom</i> of God, what	78 325 &c. 342	Of the <i>Gospel</i>	43
What is meant by it's <i>Coming</i>	326 &c.	<i>Miracles</i> , true and False	39 223
<i>Kingly Office</i> of <i>Christ</i>	159 423	<i>Miserlings</i>	261
<i>Knowledge</i> of God	23 &c. 34 &c.	Of <i>Moses</i> and <i>Christ</i>	158
<i>Means</i> of it	192 197 &c.	<i>Money</i> , the love of it diffused	257
<b>L</b>		<i>Moral Law</i>	182 &c.
<i>Law</i> , Of <i>Works</i> <i>Moral</i>	119 82 409	<i>Murder</i> , how extensive	241 &c.
<i>Ceremonial</i> <i>Judicial</i>	182	<b>N</b>	
<i>Moral</i> , the <i>Rule</i> of <i>Sanctification</i>	181	<i>Nakedness</i> of our first <i>Parents</i> what	121
It's <i>End</i> and <i>Use</i>	182	<i>Name</i> of God, what	322 212 &c.
<i>Law</i> , and <i>Gospel</i> , how they differ	181	How taken in vain	219
<i>Rules</i> to be observed in interpreting the	183	<i>Good Name</i> to be preserved	287 &c.
<i>Law</i>	183	The way of getting it	288
<i>Lawyers</i> <i>Dutys</i>	284	<i>Natural estate</i> of Man what	120
<i>Lending</i>	274	<i>Neighbour</i> , <i>Dutys</i> respecting him	296 &c.
<i>Letting</i> things to hire	269	<i>Neighbour</i> who	296
<i>Liberty</i>	274	<b>O</b>	
<i>Life</i> what	34	<i>Obts</i> , their right use	213
<i>Life</i> long, what in the promise	240	What Persons may lawfully take	214
<i>Lights</i> in the Heavens	89	them	214
<i>Lords Day</i> , See <i>Sabbath Day Prayer</i>	317 &c.	<i>Obedience</i> , what	298 409
<i>Supper</i>	373 &c. 411	New wherein exercised	299 384
Who are to receive and how	379 &c.	<i>Obscurity</i> of <i>Scriptures</i> why	20
Of the <i>Dutys</i>	381	<i>Obtreciation</i>	286
<i>Love</i> of God, what	56 &c. 193	<i>Omnipotency</i> of God	41 &c.
<i>Inordinate</i>	196	<i>Oppression</i>	265
<i>Lying</i> , with it's sorts,	277 &c.	<i>Oracles</i> , what	4
<b>M</b>		<i>Original Languages</i> necessary	20
<i>Magick</i> , who guilty of it	25	<i>Sin</i> , with it's propagation	125
<i>Magistrates</i>	232 238	<i>Ornaments</i> ,	



# The TABLE.

<p>Son of God second Person in the Trinity 70          His Names That he is God His Generation 71          Sorrow, Godly 195          Sinful condemned 197          souls, what Dutys belong to their welfare 241          soul, It's Nature Immortality 91 &amp;c.          And Body 152          Speaking, evil, what 286          Speech, Chast 251          It's suffering kinds 280          Spirit, the Holy Ghost, why so called 76          What an one God is 77          Stage Plays, unlawful 251          Stealing, what 253 &amp;c.          Stews, Abominable 252          Subjects, their Dutys 239          Superstitious, what they are, and what their Duty 239 &amp;c.          Supper of our Lord, i.e. Lord's Supper 411          Superstition, what 386          Sufocation of God referring to all his Creatures 95 96 &amp;c.          Sufferings of Christ 153          Superstition what 194</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">U</p> <p><b>V</b>eracity, what 301          Unchangeableness in God what 30 &amp;c.          Uncleanness, what 249          Understanding of God 35          Of Man 129          Union, Of the two Natures in Christ 142 &amp;c.          Of the Saints with Christ 170 &amp;c.          Unity, of the God-head 64          In Religion 195          Vocation 357          Vows 200 253          With all their Circumstances 354 &amp;c.          Usury 270          A. E. Ushers Life and Relations 2          His Birth 4          Education 5          Advancement 6          Proficiency 8          His Works 11          Disputes 13          His Encomiums 15          His other Vertues 20 &amp;c.          His Prophecies 35          His powerful Praising 38 &amp;c.          His Death 40          His Labors 40          Warfare, Spiritual 300          Warriors, what 38          Wiping 286          Wise her Duty 234          Will Corrupted 129          Will of God both secret, and revealed 44 328          Whether God wills evil (or for) or not 49 &amp;c.          Will worship 199          Wisdom of God 34 &amp;c.          Wines, Falſe 285          Good 287          Woman, her Creation 94 423          Word, of God 5 360          Word in vain what 212          Word made flesh, The Wonder 229          The Manner 500          Words, what they ought to be to others 215          World, when created and why 83          How our Enemy 304          Work Majest, their Duties 236          Works, Divine, whereby God is known 3          Of the Six Days 88          See Good Works 304          Worship of God 200          How to be performed 201 &amp;c.          Preparation thereunto 201          Abuses, Defects and Errors in the Worship of God 202          What of it not to be given to any besides God 203          Not to Images 205          Helps in performing God's worship 204</p>
<p style="text-align: center;">T</p> <p><b>T</b>ables of the Law Two, the sum of them 186 &amp;c.          Taciturnity 280          Temptation 338 &amp;c.          As referred to God 339          Of Satan in Paradise 113          Tenacity 274          Ten Commandments, see Commandments, and Decalogue Testaments, Old, what the books of it 14          New in what Language, and how distinguish'd. 283          Testimonys, Publick 285          Of our selves, what 289          Thankfulness 194          Signs of it 224 316          Thanksgiving, with things referring to it 316 &amp;c.          Theft what 257 264          Divers kinds 258          Of Persons 264 &amp;c.          Thoughts, evil 294 &amp;c.          Whence they arise 294          Tongue Chast 251          Transubstantiation, or the carnal presence of the Sacrament confuted 375          Tree of Life 120          Of Knowledge &amp;c. 116 118          Trinity, of Persons in the God-head, Proved and illustrated 66 &amp;c.          What a person is in the Trinity 68 &amp;c.          Trust in God 196          To Commit to rust 236 &amp;c.          Truth what 277          Meas us to preserve it 278 &amp;c.          The profession of it 277</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">W</p> <p><b>W</b>arfare, Spiritual 300          Warriors, what 38          Wiping 286          Wise her Duty 234          Will Corrupted 129          Will of God both secret, and revealed 44 328          Whether God wills evil (or for) or not 49 &amp;c.          Will worship 199          Wisdom of God 34 &amp;c.          Wines, Falſe 285          Good 287          Woman, her Creation 94 423          Word, of God 5 360          Word in vain what 212          Word made flesh, The Wonder 229          The Manner 500          Words, what they ought to be to others 215          World, when created and why 83          How our Enemy 304          Work Majest, their Duties 236          Works, Divine, whereby God is known 3          Of the Six Days 88          See Good Works 304          Worship of God 200          How to be performed 201 &amp;c.          Preparation thereunto 201          Abuses, Defects and Errors in the Worship of God 202          What of it not to be given to any besides God 203          Not to Images 205          Helps in performing God's worship 204</p>

FINIS.

ERRATA in the Life.

p. Age. 2. Line. 7. Read *Endowments*. p. 3. l. 3. r. *New Translation*. p. 4. l. 16. after any r. other is really none of his. p. 15. l. 30. r. *and* p. 20. l. 32. for never read neither. p. 21. l. 41. r. Index. p. 40. r. Scholar. p. 24. l. 22. for *Act*. r. *And*. p. 25. l. r. 31. Repetition. p. 33. l. 4. r. *Motions*













Provision Technology & Services Library



1 1012 01018 8227